CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES

KELSEY

STATE LIBRARY
THE UNION
SALEM, OREGON

DISCARD

That Julius Caesar was a famous man;
With what his valour did enrich his wit,
His wit set down to make his valour live:
Death makes no conquest of this conqueror;
For now he lives in fame, though not in life. — RICHARD III.

C. IULII CAESARIS

COMMENTARII RERUM GESTARUM

CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES

THE GALLIC WAR, BOOKS I–IV, WITH SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS V–VII AND FROM THE CIVIL WAR

WITH AN INTRODUCTION, NOTES, A COMPANION TO CAESAR AND A VOCABULARY

STATE LIBRARY
SALEM OREGON

BY

FRANCIS W. KELSEY

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

Pierce Library
Eastern Oregon University
1410 L Avenue
La Grande, OR 97850

ALLYN AND BACON

Boston New York Chicago

Copyright, 1918, by
FRANCIS W. KELSEY

TDR

PREFACE

This edition aims to interest the High School pupil in Caesar, to assist him by notes adapted to his stage of progress, and to facilitate his accomplishment of the second year of Latin work with appreciation of and respect for the subject, and with a firm foundation for further study.

America's entrance into the world conflict has aroused universal interest in warfare. Viewed in the light of the great struggle, Caesar's Commentaries take on a new interest. Modern armies have clashed on the battlefields of the Gallic War; modern camps are laid out in a way to suggest the manner of the Romans. The strategy of Joffre and of Hindenburg finds its prototype in that of Caesar, and modern armor, especially in types of helmet and breastplate, strikingly resembles that of ancient times. In countless ways — even to Caesar's statement, "Of all these the bravest are the Belgians" — the World War reproduces on a larger scale the campaigns of Caesar.

Such points as these it has seemed worth while to attempt to bring out in the Introduction, the Notes, and the Companion to Caesar. In the Syntax a statement of a rule is accompanied by specific illustrations from Caesar; the exercises in Latin Composition are designed to strengthen the pupil's grasp of the Grammar. The Maps and Plans cannot fail to add definiteness to the study, and the pictures will aid the student to visualize the scenes and objects described or referred to in the text.

In preparing the book my obligations have been greatest to the well-known works of Dr. H. Meusel and Mr. T. Rice Holmes; on the side of the illustrations, to the *Manuel* of Joseph Déchelette. Mr. George R. Swain allowed the use of his unique

series of photographs, and Mr. G. F. Hill, of the British Museum, furnished a number of casts of Roman coins.

Many teachers have helped me with suggestions, of which I wish here to make acknowledgment; I am especially indebted to Miss Frances E. Sabin of the University of Wisconsin. Messrs. Allen and Phillips, of the Phillips Academy in Andover, have kindly permitted the use of their *Latin Composition*, and Dr. Gilbert H. Taylor rendered assistance in reading a part of the proof.

FRANCIS W. KELSEY.

Ann Arbor, Michigan.
January 15, 1918.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION—

PAGE

I. Warfare, Ancient and Modern ix

II. Caesar's Commentaries and the Great War . . . xx

III. The Civilization of the Gauls xxvii

IV. Caesar and the Historical Writers xxxiii

V. Caesar in Literature and Myth xxxvii

THE GALLIC WAR, TEXT AND NOTES—

Book I 1

Book II 129

Book III 190

Book IV 232

Book V 287

Book VI, Selections:

The Second Expedition into Germany 338

The Customs of the Gauls and Germans Contrasted . . . 340

The Hercynian Forest and the Wonderful Animals Found in It 358

Book VII, Selections:

Beginning of a General Uprising 364

The Siege and Destruction of Avaricum 374

The Siege of Gergovia 381

The Leadership of Vercingetorix and First Defeat . . . 390

The Siege and Fall of Aiesia 396

THE CIVIL WAR, SELECTIONS, TEXT AND NOTES—

Book II. The Second Sea-fight off Massilia 425

Book III. Heroic Endurance of Caesar's Soldiers 431

Caesar's Treatment of Two "Grafters" 435

Last Operations about Dyrrachium 438

The Battle of Pharsalus 440

PAGE

SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT READING—

1. The Pig's Last Will and Testament 463
(Petronii Satirae . . . Tertium edidit F. Buecheler, pp. 241-242)

2. Witticisms Attributed to Cicero 467
(M. Tulli Ciceronis Scripta . . . Recognovit C. F. W. Mueller, IV, 3, 1910, pp. 343-347)

3. Legal Maxims 471

4. Fables 472

5. The First Psalm 474
(Biblorum Sacrorum iuxta Vulgatam Clementinam Nova Editio, 1914, p. 470)

6. The Twenty-third Psalm 475
(Biblorum Sacrorum . . . Nova Editio, p. 481)

A COMPANION TO CAESAR—

Essentials of Latin Grammar for the Study of Caesar:

Inflections 479
Word Formation 525
The Derivation of English Words from the Latin . . . 528
Syntax 531
Figures of Speech 582
Expressions Relating to Time and Distance 584

Gaius Julius Caesar:

Life of Caesar 587
The Name Caesar 601
The Portraits of Caesar 602
Caesar's Commentaries 603
Caesar as an Orator 606

The Geography of Caesar's Commentaries 607

The Roman Art of War in Caesar's Time 615

EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION—

Reprinted, by permission, from *Latin Composition*, by Bernard M. Allen and John L. Phillips:

Points to be Noted in Writing Latin 641

Exercises 644

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS, WITH REFERENCES . . . 665

VOCABULARIES

PLATES[1]

The colored plates, and the plates illustrating the bridge across the Rhine, are from the designs of H. Rheinhard.

PLATE		FACING PAGE
I.	Statue of Caesar in Rome, in the Palazzo dei Conservatori (From a photograph)	*Frontispiece*
II.	Roman Officers, Standard-bearers, and Musicians (Colored)	70
III.	Roman Soldiers, Infantry and Cavalry (Colored)	128
IV.	Weapons, Standards, and Roman Camp (Colored)	216
V.	Caesar's Bridge across the Rhine, Sections	256
VI.	Caesar's Bridge across the Rhine, View	257
VII.	Military Devices (Colored)	286
VIII.	Chalk Cliffs near Dover (Photograph by George R. Swain)	294
IX.	Appliances for Siege and Defense (Colored)	364
X.	Bust of Caesar in the Museum of Naples (From a photograph)	424
XI.	An Ancient Sea-fight between Galleys (*The English Illustrated Magazine*, 1899, p. 449)	430
XII.	Storming of a Besieged City (Colored)	636

MAPS

The maps are based upon those in the Atlases accompanying the works of Napoleon III and Stoffel (p. xxxvii), with modifications from many sources, particularly, G. Veith's *Geschichte der Feldzüge Caesars* and, for Pharsalus, J. Kromayer's *Antike Schlachtfelder in Griechenland.*

GALLIA, General Reference Map, inside back cover.

MAP		FACING PAGE
1.	Campaigns of 58 and 57 B.C.	1
2.	Caesar's Line of Works along the Rhone	20

[1] A full List of the Illustrations, with references, will be found on pages 665–674.

MAP		FACING PAGE
3.	The Battle with the Helvetians	60
4.	The Battle with Ariovistus	120
5.	The Battle at the Aisne (Axona)	144
6.	The Battle at the Sambre (Sabis), First Phase	164
7.	The Battle at the Sambre (Sabis), Second Phase	172
8.	Operations against the Stronghold of the Atuatuci	180
9.	Operations of the Year 56 B.C.	198
10.	Sea-fight with the Venetans	208
11.	Operations of 55 and 54 B.C.	232
12.	Map of Britain as conceived by Caesar	300
13.	Operations of 53 and 52 B.C.	338
14.	The Siege of Avaricum	374
15.	The Siege of Gergovia	384
16.	Victory of Caesar over Vercingetorix	392
17.	The Siege of Alesia	400
18.	Second Sea-fight off Massilia	426
19.	Operations of the Year 48 B.C.	438
20.	The Battle of Pharsalus	448

INTRODUCTION

i. Warfare Ancient and Modern

Since the Roman period the art of war has undergone great changes. These have resulted from the invention of gunpowder and other explosives, from the use of field glasses, from the utilization of electricity, steam, and gasoline to provide means of communication and transportation, and finally, from

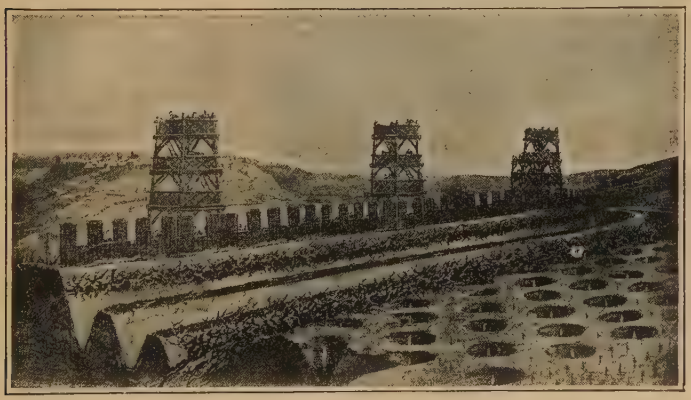


Figure 1. — Wolf-holes before Alesia.

Constructed by Caesar in 52 B.C., and discovered by excavation.
At the left of the wolf-holes are rows of hedge entanglements.
In front of the rampart are double trenches, and above we see the palisade and towers.

the mechanical perfecting of every kind of weapon. Nevertheless the most recent military operations have exemplified the use of means and methods of warfare devised by the ancients and skillfully employed by Caesar in the campaigns of which he has left a record in the Commentaries.

As a part of his defensive works when he was besieging Alesia Caesar made many wolf-holes. These are round holes with sloping sides, in the center of which a strong pointed

stake is firmly implanted. A glance at the illustration (Fig. 1) will show how slow and difficult an advance would be, particularly at night, over ground thus prepared; for the soldier picking his way, no matter how carefully, would run the risk of slipping and impaling himself upon the projecting point.

Figure 2. — Wolf-holes near Ypres, in Belgium.

These wolf-holes were constructed by the German army in 1914.

On the further side, near the left, the posts carrying the barb-wire entanglement are visible. (Courtesy of the Press Illustrating Company.)

Precisely such wolf-holes have been used in the Great War, as, for example, along the German line near Ypres, in Belgium (Fig. 2). In front the line is protected by barb-wire entanglements. Corresponding with these are the hedge entanglements used by Caesar (shown in Figure 1, behind the wolf-holes), which were made by firmly planting in rows, and closely interlocking, branches of trees with the projecting ends stripped of bark and sharpened to a point.

The Romans were the first nation to make trench-digging an essential part of warfare, but they limited it to the fortification of camps and to siege operations. Since the Roman trenches were not used as passageways, they were generally left V-shaped, as those seen in Figure 1; but occasionally trenches were made with perpendicular sides, as the long trench, or moat, 20 feet wide, before Alesia (Map 17). In modern warfare trenching has become still more important,

and now under many conditions soldiers are taught to "dig themselves in." But the process of digging is still the same, as may be seen from the comparison of a Roman trenching tool (Fig. 3) with the type of spade supplied as a part of the equipment of a soldier in the United States Army (Fig. 4).

When digging within range of the enemy's missiles the Roman soldiers protected themselves by movable shields, **pluteī** (Plate IX, 4–5), and sappers' huts, **vīneae** (Plate IX, 9). In trenching close to the Russian lines near Warsaw in 1914 the Germans used standing steel shields which were moved forward for the protection of the trenchers. A curious parallel to the ancient sapper's hut is the armored "one-man tank," designed for exceptionally hazardous service in front of the lines (Fig. 5).

Figure 3. — Roman trenching tool.

Discovered in the remains of the Roman Camp at Saalburg, near Homburg, Germany.

The wooden handle has rotted away.

The packs, **sarcinae**, of Caesar's legionaries were fully as heavy as those of modern infantry, perhaps heavier. They were carried on a forked stick over the left shoulder (Fig. 6), while the soldier of to-day has his pack strapped on his back (Fig. 7). The day's march of a small body of United States Infantry over fair roads will average approximately the same as that of Caesar's legionaries, about fifteen Roman miles. On forced marches recently European armies, moving on excellent roads and utilizing medical science to conserve the soldier's strength, have equaled, if they have not surpassed, Caesar's forced marches in the Gallic War.

In fighting there has been a surprising return to the methods of Caesar's time.

Caesar's legionaries held their weapons until they were within close range of the enemy, twelve to twenty yards; then they hurled their pikes. To-day in trench fighting the place of the pike is taken by the hand grenade, thrown often at even closer range; and soldiers are trained in the throwing of gre-

nades just as the legionary was in hurling the pike (Fig. 8). "Rifle fire in this warfare plays small part," wrote Owen Johnson from the front in 1915; "cartridges are all very well for machine guns, but for men, hand grenades and the cold steel." Soon after the first soldiers from the United States arrived in France, in 1917, it was found that by reason of skill acquired in playing baseball, they surpassed the European soldiers in throwing grenades, in point of range as well as accuracy.

Figure 4. — Modern trenching tool.

This is the trenching tool supplied to soldiers of the United States army.

The "iron" of the Roman pike (Fig. 49, p. 61) finds a parallel in a late type of French bayonet (Fig. 9). The length is nearly the same. The pike iron has a four-grooved point, barbed; the bayonet is grooved on the four sides, so that it makes a wound very similar in character. But even the spear has not gone out of use; in the Great War long lances have been used by divisions of cavalry on both sides.

More remarkable still is the return of recent warfare to the use of the helmet as a protection for the head, and of a metallic shield to protect the grenadier when exposing himself by throwing grenades (Fig. 8). In shape, however, the French helmet (Fig. 10) has as much in common with a certain type of ancient Gallic helmet (Fig. 11) as it has with the helmet of the Roman legionary (Fig. 12).

Modern armor seems to have reached its fullest development in the equipment of the Italian barb-wire cutter. His helmet (Fig. 13) is supplemented by a metallic veil, and his body is protected by a cuirass, his legs by greaves. This specialized armor, well designed for the purpose, is less flexible than the defensive equipment of the Roman legionary (Fig. 33, p. 19).

The modern helmet has been found serviceable in protecting

the head against shrapnel; hence we may well believe that the ancient helmet greatly reduced the casualties from the leaden bullets thrown by means of slings (Fig. 14), as well as those from blows.

The Gaul, as is noted elsewhere (p. 638), in fighting used a spear or dart, shield and sword, but his spear (Figs. 40 and 43) was not so effective as the Roman pike, and his sword was of an altogether different type (Fig. 39). Oddly enough, recent fighting in France has revived the use of wickerwork shields somewhat like those of ancient Gaul (Fig. 48, p. 60). As a protection against liquid fire French soldiers before Verdun in 1916 "carried big oblong shields of interwoven osier, covered with clay, against which the flaming liquid fell harmless," though the men, protected by masks, found "the smell terrible, almost suffocating."

Figure 5. — "One-man tank."
Designed for the protection of wire-cutters under fire.

In the night attack of Caesar's men upon the Helvetian corral, in 58 B.C., some of the defenders hurled darts from behind the wheels of the carts (I. 26); in 1916 a provision train of motor trucks, conveying supplies to General Pershing's force in Mexico, was attacked in a ravine, whereupon "the truck men and their soldier guard took a position behind the steel wheels of the cars," and routed the Mexicans by the accuracy of their fire.

Though the contending armies are vastly greater than those of Caesar's time, the Great War affords striking illustrations of the principles of military formation, tactics, and strategy[1] which he knew and applied.

[1] Under "Tactics" military men include the disposing of forces on land or sea in order of battle, and all manœuvres in the presence of the enemy;

In the battle with the Helvetians, and also in that with the Germans described in Book I, the more open formation of the smaller Roman force, whose soldiers were trained to fight with initiative, gave it a distinct advantage over the mass formation, called by Caesar *phalanx*, to which it was opposed. The mass formation of the modern German army is altogether different from that of ancient times; but again and again, in the Great War, German ranks, advancing with men almost touching elbows, have suffered much more heavily than British forces trained to attack in extended order and advancing against equally intensive fire.

Figure 6. — Roman legionary in marching order.

His pack is suspended on a forked stick over the left shoulder.

When Caesar first came into contact with the Germans, he was so impressed with their arrangement of cavalry that he made special mention of it, and afterwards he employed German horsemen as mercenaries. Each horseman, he tells us (I. 48), was accompanied by a foot-soldier; these foot-soldiers were swift runners, and

"Strategy" refers to the larger operations of war; it includes the laying out and conducting of campaigns as well as the execution of single movements designed to outwit and thwart the enemy.

exceedingly brave. In our illustration, which pictures a charge of the Scots Greys in northern France in the autumn of 1914 (Fig. 15), nimble footmen are seen charging with the cavalry.

The transportation of troops by train and auto truck has simplified the concentration of reserves to hold a threatened point; yet no modern general has surpassed Caesar in insight and quickness of decision in moving troops in time of battle in order to forestall or checkmate the movements of the enemy. This was well illustrated in the Battle of Pharsalus, where his quick shift in forming a fourth line to support his greatly outnumbered cavalry (C. III. 89, and Map 20) gained an initial victory and contributed in no slight degree to the sweeping success of the day.

Figure 7. — United States sailor standing with heavy marching-order equipment.

The marching-order equipment of the United States soldiers is the same, whether in land or naval service.

A typical stratagem of Caesar was that by which he accomplished the crossing of the Elaver (now Allier) in 52 B.C. (VII. 35). Vercingetorix, on the opposite side of the river, had broken down all the bridges. Caesar encamped in a wooded spot near a place where the piles of a bridge had escaped destruction. The next morning he concealed two legions in the forest and ordered the rest of his forces to march up the river, spreading them out so that the marching column seemed as long as usual. Thereupon Vercingetorix also marched upstream, on the opposite side. When he was far enough away, Caesar brought the two legions out of concealment, quickly rebuilt the bridge, recalled the troops that had marched up the river, and transferred his entire army across before Vercingetorix could interfere.

A similar stratagem was successfully employed in 1915. The German and Austrian commanders wished to cross the Vistula in Poland at a point northwest of Ivangorod. They moved

their forces upstream in such a way as to lead the Russians to believe that they intended to force a crossing at some distance northeast of the city. At the point previously determined upon, material for pontoon bridges was brought to the bank of the river loaded on wagons which were covered over with straw, so that they were reported by the Russian aviators merely as loads of straw; since the Russian commander had no information to the contrary, slight attention was paid to them. The ruse made it possible for the pontooners to start building the bridges before their presence or purpose was suspected. When the Russians finally brought their artillery to bear at the threatened point, it was too late to check the work; the Teutonic forces completed four bridges over the river and marched across.

Copyright by Underwood and Underwood, New York.

Figure 8. — French soldier hurling a hand grenade.

He is standing in a trench. His head is protected by a steel helmet. With the left forearm he holds a shield.

In the naval battles described in the Commentaries Caesar did not command his fleet in person, though in one instance he and his army witnessed

the engagement from the land (III. 14). The tactics employed have analogies in modern warfare.

On the Mediterranean Sea from a very early period there were two types of ships, those propelled by the wind, that is

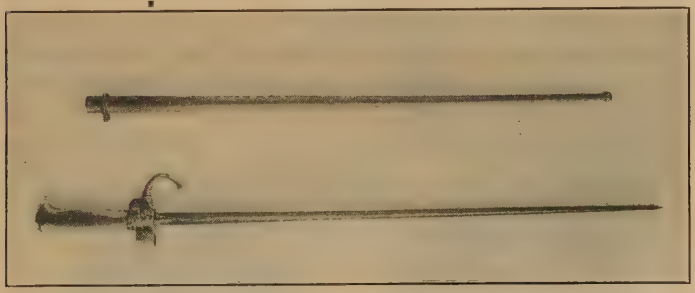


Figure 9. — French bayonet, with scabbard.

The bayonet can either be fastened at the end of a gun and used for thrusting, or detached and handled as a long dagger.

by a force outside the ship, and those propelled by a force inside the ship, by oarsmen. Since the Mediterranean is relatively narrow and almost tideless, since also ships driven by oars could be manœuvred more easily and with much greater steadiness of movement, the oar ship was developed into a war

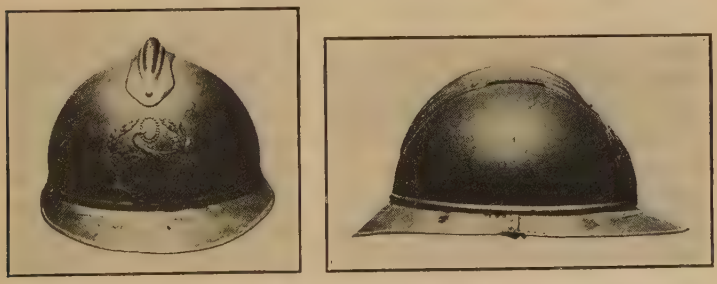


Figure 10. — French helmet, type of 1915, front and side views.

This helmet was worn by Richard N. Hall, a graduate of the Ann Arbor high school and of Dartmouth college, who served in a volunteer ambulance corps in France and was killed by a shell on Christmas eve, 1915, when driving his ambulance in the Vosges mountains.

vessel and was highly specialized to this end (Fig. 146, p. 427), while low-decked sailing vessels were used for freight and ordinary passenger service. It was a freight ship on which St. Paul and his military escort sailed for Italy, suffering shipwreck at Malta; the battleships, or galleys, of Caesar's time (p. 636) had ordinarily three banks of oars.

The boisterous waves and high tides of the North Atlantic made impracticable, except under extremely favorable condi-

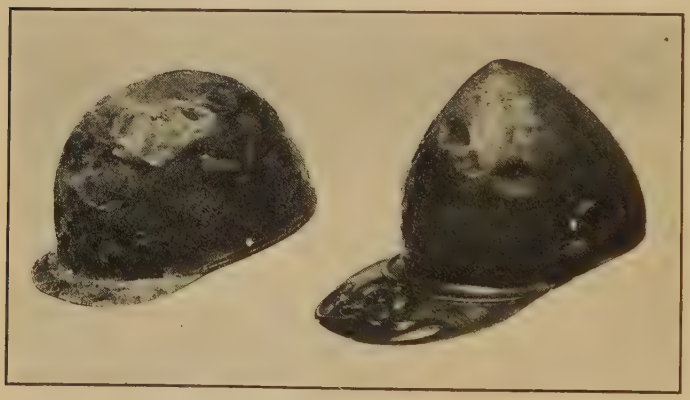


Figure 11. — Early Gallic helmets, of bronze.

Now in the British Museum. The neck-protector of the helmet at the right is ornamented in relief.

tions, the use either of galleys, which had to be built low in order to enable the oarsmen to dip their oars, or of the type of sailing vessel employed on the almost land-locked Mediterranean. Hence before Caesar's time the Venetans in northwestern Gaul (modern Brittany) had developed a strongly built high-decked sailing vessel, which, though small when compared with sea-going ships to-day, was able nevertheless to withstand the buffeting of ocean waves and to outride the gales. From Caesar's description (III. 13) it is evident that the Venetan ship was not like the type of vessel used later by the Vikings, but in essential features resembled the famous *Half-Moon* with which

Henry Hudson in 1609 crossed the Atlantic, discovering the river which bears his name.

Caesar found that he could not complete the conquest of northwestern Gaul without destroying the Venetan fleet. In the naval battle, of which we have a vivid account in Book III of the Gallic War, the two types of vessel were brought into hostile contact; the light and fast Roman galley, adapted for ramming and boarding, and carrying legionaries as its fighting men, was pitted against the Venetan sailer, which was so strong that it could not be rammed and so high that boarding was extremely difficult. Only quick ingenuity (III. 14), and sheer luck in the dying down of the wind at a crucial moment, gave to Caesar's men a complete victory.

Figure 12.— Helmet of a Roman legionary.

When not worn the helmet could be suspended by a cord passed through the ring at the top. The crest was fastened in the same ring before the soldier went into action.

Altogether different were the tactics of the sea-fight off Massilia, described in the second book of the Civil War (pp. 425–431). Just as on land at Pharsalus, and on both land and sea in the Great War, we find substantially the same military equipment on both sides, so in the sea-fight between Brutus and the fleets loyal to Pompey the type of battleship on both sides was the same, and victory rested with the side which had superior skill and fighting power.

Long after the nations of western Europe had developed to a high degree of effectiveness the wooden warship propelled by sails and armed with cannon, the galley continued to be used by the pirates of the Barbary States in northern Africa; "the vessels employed by the Barbary Corsairs were essentially rowing-boats,"[1] though after the sixteenth century they increasingly used ships like those of the European powers. Mu-

[1] *African Shores of the Mediterranean*, by C. F. and L. Grant (New York, 1912), p. 280. This work gives a graphic description of life on the modern galleys, and the lot of the galley-slaves, chained to the rowing-benches. The

tual jealousies of the European states allowed the Barbary corsairs to flourish until the nineteenth century. For a time the United States paid blackmail to the masters of the Tripoli pirates in order to safeguard American sailing vessels from their swift galleys and frigates, and our country did not free itself from the menace until 1815.

Like the galley, the modern battleship, with steam power replacing man power as propelling force, developed the tactic of ramming. This tactic had its best known exemplification in time of peace, in the accidental ramming and sinking of the battleship *Victoria* by her sister ship, the *Camperdown*, at the British manœuvres in the Mediterranean in 1893, in consequence of a mistake in orders. In recent years there has been a notable increase in the size and range of cannon mounted upon battleships, accompanied by a corresponding increase in the effectiveness of torpedoes; decisive engagements are now ordinarily fought at long range. Nevertheless in 1917 the British torpedo destroyer *Broke* rammed a German destroyer, and the marines, as in the olden time, finally fought hand to hand, the British gaining the victory.

ii. Caesar's Commentaries and the Great War

In September, 1914, the German armies, retiring from the drive toward Paris, established a line of trenches across the northeastern part of France. One portion of this line passed north of the city of Soissons, whose name is derived from that of the Gallic people called Suessiones; thence it ran eastward, not far from the river Aisne, which is so called from the river's ancient name, Axona. East of the village of Berry-au-Bac the German line of works crossed the Aisne to the south and passed east of Reims, which takes its name from the ancient people called Remi, and occupies the site of the Gallic city of Durocortorum, or Bigfort.

---

subject is more fully treated in *The Barbary Corsairs*, by S. Lane-Poole (New York, 1902); and G. W. Allen, *Our Navy and the Barbary Corsairs* (Boston, 1905).

This part of France in antiquity was reckoned as belonging to Belgium; for the southern boundary of Belgium, or Belgic Gaul, was along the rivers called by Caesar Matrona and Sequana, which have given us the modern names Marne and Seine. In this region, as also in eastern France and in the countries east of the Adriatic Sea, we find many points of contact not only between ancient and modern names but also between the events recorded in Caesar's Commentaries and those of the most recent history.

The marshes along the Miette brook, near Berry-au-Bac, in 57 B.C., prevented a frontal attack by the Belgians upon Caesar's legions drawn up to receive them (Map 5). Across the same marshes when dry, in September, 1914, the Germans ran intrenchments, which during the winter filled with water; this caused inconvenience, to be sure, but safeguarded that part of the German line from attack by either infantry or cavalry.

Figure 13. — Italian barb-wire cutter.

His wire-clippers are on the end of a long pole. He stands in front of the entrance of a well-screened refuge. (Medem Photo Service.)

When the Belgians tried to ford the Aisne, in the face of Caesar's archers and slingers, the stream was choked with dead (II. 10); dead and wounded again clogged the Aisne in 1914, when French and English troops near Berry-au-Bac built pontoon bridges within range of a murderous artillery fire.

Caesar commends the bravery of the Belgians who attempted to cross the Aisne over the bodies of the fallen (II. 10). Of all the peoples of Gaul, he elsewhere declared (I. 1), "the Belgians are the bravest." In 1914, the bravery of the modern Belgians was lauded by friend and foe alike, when at Liège and other points, against overwhelming odds, they tried to stem the tide of German invasion.

Thessaly, unlike the rest of Greece, has broad and fertile plains, well adapted to the raising of wheat. In 48 B.C., when Caesar was obliged to withdraw from Dyrrachium (now Durazzo), he led his half-starved troops into Thessaly and encamped in the midst of ripening grain-fields (C. III. 81); thither Pompey came to find him (Map 19), and the battle of Pharsalus followed. In June, 1917, one reason assigned for hastening the abdication of Constantine, King of Greece, was that the allied forces wished to make sure that the ripening harvests of Thessaly should be subject to their control; and immediately thereafter French and British troops occupied Pharsala (the ancient Pharsalus), as well as Larissa, on the site of the Larisa to which Pompey fled after the great battle. So it happened that the grain-fields of Thessaly were a factor in determining the site of the decisive battle between Caesar and Pompey, and, almost two thousand years later, in hastening the downfall of a Greek ruler.

The occurrence of similar events of war in the same localities may be ascribed in part to the influence of geographical features upon military operations, in part to continuing antagonism between adjacent populations of different stock. Broadly speaking, the military operations of the Germans in the western campaigns of the Great War have in no small degree been determined by the same physical conditions which first brought Caesar into hostile contact with Helvetians and Germans, and afterwards facilitated his conquest of northern Gaul.

To the Helvetians, bent upon migrating to western Gaul, the Jura mountains (Map GALLIA [1]) presented an almost im-

[1] A general map of Gaul has been placed at the end of this volume.

passable barrier, on the west side, while a northerly route would have exposed them to attack by Ariovistus. In consequence they were obliged to follow the exceedingly difficult route through the Mill-race gorge of the Rhone, Pas de l'Écluse (Map 2), and at once aroused Caesar's apprehension; for the Rhone was the boundary of the Roman Province.

Between the Jura mountains and the Vosges (ancient Vosegus) there is a broad opening in the mountain barrier along the east frontier of modern France. Through this gateway Ariovistus and his German hordes were pressing into Gaul,

Figure 14. — Roman slingshot, of lead, shown in two views.

Inscribed FERI POMP[EIVM], 'Strike Pompey,' referring to Pompeius Strabo, against whose army it was hurled when he was besieging Asculum, in the southeastern part of Italy, during the Social War, in 91–90 B.C.

having already seized upon the fertile plain now known as Alsace, between the Rhine and the Vosges mountains. The issue of the Helvetian campaign imposed upon Caesar the obligation to protect his Gallic allies against Ariovistus; and his first step was to seize the natural stronghold of Vesontio, now Besançon (I. 38), which he made a military base. In the last century France, fearing a German invasion by the same route, transformed Besançon into a fortress of the first class.

The victory over Ariovistus enabled Caesar to fix the upper Rhine as the boundary between the German territory and central Gaul. Secure against danger of attack from this side, he was free to carry his conquest northward into Belgium. In contrast with the highlands of central Gaul, and the mountainous country in the south, the greater part of ancient Belgium, corresponding with modern Holland, Belgium, and the northernmost corner of France, was low and fairly level. It

was therefore an easy matter for Caesar, after the battles at the Aisne and the Sambre (Book II), to overrun the country, before western Gaul, or the mountain strongholds of the Arvernians in the south, had been conquered. The accessibility of ancient Belgium hastened its conquest by Caesar.

When Caesar invaded Belgium he had not the excuse of a previous attack by Belgians. He had heard that they were arming, and forthwith marched into Belgic territory. In 1914, German armies marched across Belgian territory, and held it in subjection, not because there was the slightest prospect that Germany would be attacked by Belgians, but in order to secure a quick and easy route through that neutral country into France; for along the line of direct contact between French and German territory the routes were more difficult, and other points of vantage besides Besançon had been strongly fortified on the French side.

To Caesar the Rhine seemed the natural boundary of Gaul on the east. By the defeat of Ariovistus, and later by the destruction of the Usipetes and Tencteri (IV. 1–15), he checked German invasions. All Gaul became Romanized. For a part of its course the Rhine formed the boundary of the Roman Empire; "to maintain the frontiers of the Rhine and the Danube," said the historian Freeman, "was, from the first century to the fifth, the great object of Rome's policy and warfare."

After the fall of the Western Empire Gaul was overrun by the German Franks, the "spearmen," whose name survives in that of the country France.

After the defeat of Napoleon at the battle of Leipzig, in 1813, the Allies offered to leave to him "the natural boundaries of France: the Rhine, Alps, Pyrenees, and Ocean." Bitter indeed since then have been the strifes over the lands lying west of the Rhine, arising from acceptance or rejection of the stream as a political boundary; the "Watch on the Rhine" in preference to all other patriotic songs became the German national hymn. No element in the historical content of

Caesar's Commentaries is more significant than this, that they disclose to us the age-long struggle between peoples of Celtic and Germanic origin aligned along the Rhine, a struggle which has reached its awful culmination in our own time.

Besides issues and events of larger significance, Caesar's Commentaries make mention of military practices, and instances of bravery, to which the Great War has furnished abundant parallels.

Figure 15. — Charge of Scots Greys at St. Quentin, in 1914.
Highlanders, holding to the stirrups, are keeping up with the horsemen. (Courtesy of Collier's Weekly.)

In his conquest of Gaul, Caesar exacted many hostages. Hostages have also been seized by the Germans in conquered cities. On September 12, 1914, at Reims, then in German hands, the names of eighty persons were posted, with the following printed proclamation (translation from the French):

"In order adequately to assure the safety of our troops and quietness on the part of the population of Reims, the persons named have been seized as hostages by the commander of the German army. These hostages will be shot if there is the least disturbance. On the

other hand, if the city remains absolutely quiet and free from disturbance, these hostages and inhabitants will be placed under the protection of the army."

Regarding the fate of the hostages held by Caesar we have no information. Hostages taken by the Germans, as the records show, were in some cases shot, in others carried off to prison camps.

Among the most inspiring passages of the Commentaries are those in which Caesar makes note of the bravery of his men. Thus in describing the first expedition to Britain he tells us how the soldiers of the tenth legion, following their eagle-bearer, plunged into deep water, advanced against a storm of missiles from the shore, and drove the British back, effecting a landing (IV. 25).

Less spectacular, but not less brave, was the advance of the Italian infantry across the Isonzo in the assault upon Goritz in August of 1916. "With water up to their necks," writes Lord Northcliffe, who witnessed the movement, "carrying their rifles high above their heads and ecstatically singing patriotic songs, they forded the broad stream and carried the eastern bank. The enemy's shrapnel, which, falling among them, churned the water into foam, failed utterly to check or even retard their charge. Those who fell wounded in the water insisted upon being helped to gain the eastern bank, saying, 'Then they won't send us back.'"

Few modern officers have shown themselves more courageous and resourceful than the heroic Baculus, who was almost done to death in the battle at the Sambre (II. 25), but was restored to health and twice thereafter saved the day by his quick resolve and indomitable will (III. 5; VI. 38). No instance of individual bravery stands out so conspicuously, however, as that of the centurion Scaeva, who fought at his post, at the gate of a redoubt, though one eye was put out and he was wounded in shoulder and thigh; in his shield, after the battle, 120 holes were counted where it had been struck by arrows

(pp. 434–435). In June, 1916, E. A. Bigorne, machine gun operator on the front in France, remained in an advanced position after every other man in his trench had been killed, when it was obvious that an assault of the enemy was preparing. He gathered the ammunition of his fallen comrades, and when the assault came he still held his post, using his machine gun so effectively that he repulsed charge after charge against his trench, accounting for 800 Germans in killed, wounded, and fleeing, before he was relieved.

Caesar publicly commended Scaeva, and made him a present of money amounting to more than $8000; Bigorne received the decoration of the Legion of Honor, said to be the highest award ever given to a private soldier in France.

iii. The Civilization of the Gauls

Excavations and discoveries in France in recent decades have thrown new light upon the civilization of the Gauls in Caesar's time. To give an account of these within narrow limits is impossible. It may suffice to say that remains of city walls have been found on the site of Bibracte and other Gallic cities, so constructed as completely to verify Caesar's description of a Gallic wall in Book VII (chap. 23); that burial places and unearthed town sites in France, western Switzerland, Belgium, and England have yielded an incalculable number of objects of common life, now available for study in museums; and that with the help of such objects it is permitted to picture to ourselves the varied and picturesque life of ancient Gaul and Britain in a way unknown to previous centuries.

Disregarding the highest estimates, we may reckon the population of Transalpine Gaul in Caesar's time as twelve or thirteen millions; there were perhaps a fourth as many inhabitants as are found in the same area to-day. There were in Gaul not a few cities, some of which, as Avaricum with its 40,000 souls, would be reckoned as important towns in modern times.

The growth of towns implies advancement in both commerce and industry. In Caesar's time there was already developed

in Gaul a system of roads, with bridges across the rivers; and there is reason to believe that in many cases the line of a Gallic road was followed later by a Roman road, which in turn is now represented by a highway or railway.

Raw materials for industry and commerce were furnished by farming, by stock raising, and by mining (III. 21, and VII. 22). The Gauls were particularly fond of horses (IV. 2), the quality of which improved under their care. It was therefore no accident which led the Romans to import Gallic horses, and which gave to the Gauls such a lead in the invention of vehicles that the Romans borrowed from them the names of two kinds of cart, *carrus* (I. 3) and *carpentum*. From the Celtic, through the Latin and French, come our words "car" and "chariot"; and through the Anglo-Saxon, our word "cart."

The horse is a constantly recurring figure on Gallic coins (Figs. 17, 18, etc.). The fine quality of the horses still raised on Gallic soil is indicated by the fact that in 1910 there were imported into the United States from France and Belgium more than 4500 horses, nearly four times as many as were imported in that year from all other European countries.

The implications of Caesar's language about importations into Gaul, in Book I (chap. 1), Book II (chap. 15), and Book VI (chap. 24) are borne out by other evidence. The most convincing proof of the influence of both Greek and Italian traders, and of the commercial progress of the country, is to be found in the extensive and varied coinage of the Gallic states[1] in Caesar's time. The Gauls minted their own metal, though they had not the skill to produce coins of so fine workmanship as those of the Greeks and Romans. Their coinage was still in the imitative stage, reproducing, often crudely, designs of foreign coins which circulated among them.

Not a few Gallic coins were copied from a variety of widely

[1] In the United States the word **cīvitās** in passages relating to Gaul should not be translated "tribe," for the reason that in this country the word "tribe" is so closely associated with the American aborigines that to many it suggests a condition of savagery.

current Macedonian coins known as *staters*. An example is Figure 16, which is thought to have been struck by the Ambarri (I. 11). The head and the two-horse chariot are unmistakable copies of the obverse and reverse designs of a stater; and the unintelligible letters on the reverse, underneath the chariot, are the work of a Gallic coin-maker who did not know Greek, and imitated, without understanding them, the letters of the Greek name ΦΙΛΙΠΠΟΥ, "of Philip," which is found on the Macedonian coin.

Figure 16. — Gallic coin, perhaps of the Ambarri.

Gold. The Macedonian coins, from which this is copied, are of fine workmanship.

The head is that of a youth. The two-horse chariot on Greek coins was associated with games.

Just as clearly of Roman origin is the type of the two-headed Janus, found on a coin of the Mediomatrici (Fig. 17). On the reverse the Gallic designer has made a fanciful use of the chariot design, which appears on Roman coins as well as Greek; the charioteer has been resolved into the graceful curves which we see above the horse, while the chariot seems to be represented by a rosette underneath the horse, symbolizing a chariot wheel. The Gallic craftsman wished to make the horse prominent.

Figure 17. — Coin of the Mediomatrici.

Gold. Obverse, two-headed Janus. Reverse, design derived from a chariot type.

It is not surprising that in Caesar's time the Greek alphabet was in common use in Gaul (VI. 14), employed, for example, in making up the census lists of the Helvetians (I. 29); for Massilia, established originally as a Greek colony and trading post, was already an old city, having commercial relations with many Gallic states (p. 611).

Nevertheless we occasionally find Roman letters on Gallic coins, as in Figure 18, which reproduces a coin struck a short time before the downfall of Gallic power, in 52 B.C. The face on the obverse is intended to be a portrait of the Gallic leader Vercingetorix, but is highly conventional. Much more true to life is a later portrait of Vercingetorix on a Roman coin whose designer must have seen him when a captive in Rome (Fig. 145). In military matters Vercingetorix confessedly imitated the Romans (VII. 29).

Figure 18. — Arvernian coin.

Gold, alloyed with silver.

Obverse, head of Vercingetorix, spelled VERCINGETORIXS, with helmet.

Reverse, below the horse, two-handled wine jar; above, scroll-shaped ornament.

Various objects of metal, pottery, and other permanent materials, of which a few examples are shown in the illustrations to the notes of this book, strengthen the conviction that while the northern parts of Gaul were more backward, the higher classes in the central and southern portions of the country in Caesar's time had adopted a more refined mode of life (I. 1); thus the terrified women of Gergovia threw down silverware to the Roman soldiers scaling the wall (VII. 47). The common people were housed in round thatched huts, but people of means had houses of stone.

Figure 19. — Relief, on a marble altar.

Discovered at Nîmes. The war trumpet ends in a fanciful head with wide open mouth, pointed ears, and a crest. The bronze-covered shield is skillfully imitated in the marble.

The altar was a votive offering, erected by a Roman soldier, of Oriental birth, at Nemausus, now Nîmes.

Notwithstanding their use of writing for ordinary purposes, including "documents public and private" (VI. 14), the Gauls did not develop a literature. This may be due in part to the insistence of the Druids that their body of doctrine, poetic and mystical

though it was, should be transmitted only by memory (VI. 14). As the Druids were the intellectual leaders of the people, their practice in this respect must have discouraged literary effort.

This all-powerful priesthood, regarding which Caesar in Book VI gives the earliest authentic information, in their teachings united a theory of the universe with the doctrine of transmigration of souls. The power of the Druids in temporal affairs came from this fact, that while acting as arbiters and judges in disputes of every kind, they were enabled to enforce their decisions through the terrible penalty of excommunication (VI. 13).

Figure 20. — Coin of the Treverans or Leuci.

Bronze. Obverse, head copied from a coin of Augustus.

Reverse, bull, and inscription GERMAN[VS] INDVTILLI L[IBERTVS], 'Germanus, freedman of Indutillus.'

Outside the limited field of coins and minor objects the Gauls made almost no progress in art before the Roman Conquest. That they were ready for development in the fuller appreciation of art, if not also in expression, is evident from monuments of Gallic origin dating from the earlier years of the Roman occupation, in which an awakening of the artistic impulse is manifest. An example is the relief in Figure 19, showing a Gallic oval shield with metal covering and a war-trumpet with the head of a monster. Wind instruments with heads of animals or monsters, not of Gallic origin, may be seen in collections of musical instruments today.

Figure 21. — Coin of Tasciovanus, British ruler.

Gold. Obverse, tablet inscribed TASCIO, for TASCIOVANUS, between ornaments.

Reverse, horseman galloping to the right; on some of the coins he seems to be holding a trumpet. The significance of the letters SEGO is not clear.

Gallic and British coins struck after the Conquest indicate to us the adoption of Roman fashions within a few decades after Caesar's death, not only in Gaul but even in Britain. On

the coin reproduced in Figure 20 we find a prominent man of the Treverans (or of the Leuci), designated in the Roman style as "Germanus, freedman of Indutillus."

Figure 22. — Coin of Tasciovanus.

Silver. Obverse, winged horse, Pegasus, walking toward the left; letters TAS, irregularly placed, an abbreviation for TASCIOVANUS.

Reverse, winged Griffin, springing toward the right.

Figure 23. — Coin of Cunobelinus.

Bronze. Inscription, CUNOBELINI, TASCIOVANI F[ILII], 'of Cunobelinus, son of Tasciovanus.'

On the reverse is a centaur with a mantle, blowing a trumpet.

Inscribed with Roman letters also are gold coins of the British Virica (Fig. 140), as well as gold and silver coins of Tasciovanus (Figs. 21, 22). Tasciovanus was a contemporary of the Emperor Augustus. He was the father of Cunobelinus, the hero of Shakespeare's drama Cymbeline, as a bronze coin of Cunobelinus shows (Fig. 23).

Figure 24. — Coin of Lugdunum.

Bronze. Reverse: prow of a galley with beak; above, an obelisk, and a globe emitting rays. Inscription, COPIA; the official name of the colony was COLONIA COPIA AUGUSTA LUGDUNUM.

On the obverse of this coin the heads of Julius Caesar and Augustus are shown.

Both the Griffin and the Pegasus of the silver coin (Fig. 22), and the Centaur of the bronze (Fig. 23), were designs taken from the Graeco-Roman mythology, and current in the Classical Art of the period. They may have been brought to Britain by skilled craftsmen directly from southern cities, or have been introduced by way of Gaul; in either case they confirm the inference, suggested by the Roman letters on the coins, that Roman influence was strong in Britain in the interval between Caesar's expeditions and the Roman Conquest of the island (p. 611).

Complete Romanization of at least a part of central Gaul is indicated by a coin struck soon after 31 B.C. at Lugdunum, modern Lyons, which was one of the first Roman colonies established in Gaul outside the Province (Fig. 24).

iv. Caesar and the Historical Writers

The historians have written more about Julius Caesar than about any other Roman. There are, nevertheless, wide differences of opinion in regard to his motives and character.

In the eyes of some Caesar was a monster of wickedness, a despot guilty of subverting the liberties of his country. Others have viewed him as a statesman and patriot of exalted aims. To others still his career has seemed to mark the culmination of the inevitable trend of the Roman state toward absolutism, and they have interpreted it as the opportune appearance of a will and personality powerful enough to dominate, and fuse into lasting union, the inharmonious elements of a political life rapidly drifting into anarchy. Men's views of Caesar have generally been colored by their attitude toward the type of government which he established.

The extant Greek and Latin writings in which Caesar has a prominent place are now accessible in excellent translations; nearly all are included in the *Loeb Classical Library*.[1] Accessible in English also, with few exceptions, are the most important modern works in foreign languages dealing with Caesar and his times.

The earliest characterization of Caesar which we have, in Sallust's *Catiline* (chaps. 53, 54), forms part of a comparison between him and Cato. A biography of Caesar in Greek, together with biographies of Pompey, Crassus, Brutus, Cato, and Cicero, was included by Plutarch in his *Lives*, published near the end of the first century A.D. (translation by B. Perrin, 10 vols., *Loeb Classical Library*, 1913–). Plutarch records

[1] The volumes of the *Loeb Classical Library*, established by James Loeb of New York, have the original text and the English translation on opposite pages (publishers, G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York).

also a number of Caesar's sayings, with the incidents which called them forth, in his *Moralia* (*Plutarch's Essays and Miscellanies*, translation revised by W. W. Goodwin, 5 vols., Boston, 1906; Vol. 1, pp. 246–248). In 120 A.D. Suetonius published a biography of Julius Caesar as the first of his *Lives of the Caesars* (translation by J. C. Rolfe, 2 vols., *Loeb Classical Library*, 1914).

The closing period of the Roman Republic was treated with much detail by two late Greek historians, whose works in great part still survive. About the middle of the second century A.D. Appian wrote the *Civil Wars* (translation of Appian's works by Horace White, 4 vols., *Loeb Classical Library*, 1912–13); and in the earlier part of the third century Dio Cassius composed his *Roman History* (translation by H. B. Foster, revised by E. Cary, 9 vols., *Loeb Classical Library*, 1914–). The ancient literary sources are well summarized and evaluated in the *Annals of Caesar, A Critical Biography with a Survey of the Sources*, by E. G. Sihler, which follows the life of Caesar year by year (New York, 1911).

To the ancient material relating to Caesar belong the coins struck by his order, and a number of portraits. The most important coins are interpreted by H. A. Grueber in *Coins of the Roman Republic in the British Museum* (with 123 plates; 3 vols., London, 1910). The portraits of Caesar are discussed at length, but without adequate critical preparation, in *Portraitures of Julius Caesar*, by F. J. Scott (New York, 1903). The bust of Pompey in Copenhagen, three portraits of Cicero, and three of Caesar, are presented in *Greek and Roman Portraits*, by A. Hekler (New York, 1912; plates 155–161). Several gems with the portrait of Caesar are published by A. Furtwaengler, *Die Antiken Gemmen* (3 vols., Berlin, 1899, plates 45, 46).

Among the modern biographies the first place must be given to *Julius Caesar and the Foundation of the Roman Imperial System*, by W. Warde Fowler (New York, 1892). Less satisfactory is *Caesar, a Sketch*, by J. A. Froude (New York, 1883).

Interesting sidelights on Caesar's career are found in *Cicero and his Friends, A Study of Roman Society in the Time of Caesar*, by G. Boissier, translated from the French (New York, 1898); *The Life of Cicero*, by Anthony Trollope (2 vols., London and New York, 1880); *Cicero and the Fall of the Roman Republic*, by J. L. Strachan-Davidson (New York, 1896); and *Social Life in Rome in the Age of Cicero*, by W. Warde Fowler (New York, 1909).

Still of interest for the student of Caesar, though in most respects superseded by later works, are *Lectures on the History of Rome*, by B. G. Niebuhr (3 vols., 3d edition, London, 1853); *History of the Later Roman Commonwealth*, by Thomas Arnold (2 vols., London, 1845); and *The Decline of the Roman Republic*, by George Long (5 vols., London, 1874).

Of special importance are the interpretations of Caesar's career in the fifth volume of *The History of Rome*, by Theodor Mommsen (5 vols., New York, 1895); in the first portion of *The Romans under the Empire*, by C. Merivale (reprinted in 8 volumes, New York, 1890); *The Roman Triumvirates*, by C. Merivale, a volume of the series *Epochs of Ancient History*; the third volume of the richly illustrated *History of Rome*, by V. Duruy (6 vols., London, 1883–86); the second volume of G. Ferrero's highly imaginative but suggestive *Greatness and Decline of Rome* (5 vols., New York, 1907–09); and the third volume of *The Roman Republic*, by W. E. Heitland (3 vols., Cambridge, 1909).

It would be interesting if to the diverse modern estimates of Caesar's character and life-work we could add a statement by himself regarding his aims and achievements. In default of the written word, however, we have not a few suggestions in the imagery of the coins issued by his authority, the types of which were suggested, or at least approved, by him. Thus we are warranted in believing that he wished men to recall the story of his lineage (Fig. 153) and the origin of the name Caesar (Fig. 164), as well as his victories in Gaul (Fig. 159), Spain (Fig. 161), the East, and Africa.

A suggestion of Caesar's attitude toward his task, or at least the attitude he assumed, may be conveyed by a gold coin struck in 49 B.C., after Pompey had fled across the Adriatic (Fig. 25). Here we find, on the reverse, a design symbolizing his victories in Gaul; the design of the obverse shows the head of Pietas, the deified personification of loyalty to duty, particularly duty to the gods. Pietas in this connection has no relation to the

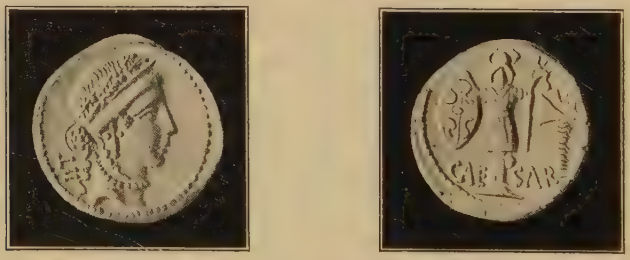


Figure 25. — Coin of Caesar struck in 49 B.C.

Gold, aureus. Obverse, head of Pietas, wearing a wreath of oak-leaves; the hair behind the head is gathered into a knot ornamented with jewels. The goddess is further adorned with an earring in the shape of a cross, and a necklace. The significance of the figure LII (52) is uncertain.

Reverse, symbols of victories in Gaul; cf. Fig. 159, p. 595.

office of Supreme Pontiff (Fig. 157). It suggests that Caesar, like the Trojan Aeneas in the Virgilian epic (Aen. I. 378), was the instrument of heaven in the accomplishment of a mission.

Illuminating studies relative to Caesar and the transformation of the Roman Republic into the Roman Empire, are *Roman Imperialism*, by J. R. Seeley, in his *Roman Imperialism and Other Lectures and Essays* (Boston, 1889); *Seven Roman Statesmen of the Later Republic*, by C. Oman, with four studies devoted to Crassus, Cato, Pompey, and Caesar (New York, 1902); *Caesar and Alexander*, in *Lectures on Modern History*, to which are added two essays dealing with ancient history, by Friedrich Schlegel (London, 1849); by suggestion rather than by direct bearing, the essay entitled *The Roman Empire and the British Empire in India*, by James Bryce, in his *Studies in History and Jurisprudence* (Oxford and New York, 1901).

Indispensable for the study of Caesar's Commentaries on the historical side are *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul* by T. Rice Holmes (2d edition, Oxford, 1911), and his *Ancient Britain and the Invasions of Julius Caesar* (Oxford, 1907). Very useful are the *History of Julius Caesar*, by Napoleon III, with the Atlas, on which have been founded most of the maps illustrating Caesar's campaigns in Gaul (2 vols., New York, 1866); two works by C. Stoffel, *Guerre de César et d'Arioviste et premières opérations de César en l'an 702* (Paris, 1890), and *Histoire de Jules César, Guerre civile* (2 vols., with Atlas, Paris, 1887); and *Histoire de la Gaule*, by C. Jullian (4 vols., Paris, 1908–13).

Both the historical and the literary significance of Caesar's Commentaries is estimated in *The Commentaries of Caesar* by Anthony Trollope, in *Ancient Classics for English Readers* (Philadelphia, 1871); in the *History of Roman Literature* by C. L. Cruttwell (London, 1878), *History of Latin Literature* by C. A. Simcox (2 vols., New York, 1883), and *Literary History of Rome*[3] by J. W. Duff (London, 1914). The title of the Commentaries is treated by F. W. Kelsey in *The title of Caesar's work on the Gallic and Civil Wars* (*Transactions of the American Philological Association*, vol. 36, 1905, pp. 211–238).

v. Caesar in Literature and Myth

Of deep human interest, and touching Caesar at many points, are the *Letters* of Marcus Cicero; among them are included a few letters written by Caesar and others intimately associated with him (edition, with full notes, by R. Y. Tyrrell and L. C. Purser, 7 vols., in part 3d edit., Dublin and London, 1901—; translation of the *Letters to Atticus* by E. O. Winstedt in the *Loeb Classical Library*, 2 vols., 1913.)

About a century after Caesar's death Lucan, reacting against the absolutism of Nero, composed the *Pharsalia*, an epic poem in ten books having for its subject the struggle between Caesar and Pompey, commencing with the crossing of the Rubicon. The poet's sympathies were with Pompey and Cato; but, even so, from the very force of his personality Caesar is the domi-

nating character. (Text with notes by C. E. Haskins, London, 1887: translation by Edward Ridley, New York, 1896.)

In modern times the singular power of Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar* has apparently deterred other dramatists from attempting the theme. The scene of the tragedy, *The False One*, by Beaumont and Fletcher (first published in 1647), is laid at Alexandria after the battle of Pharsalus; the young King Ptolemy, Achillas, and Septimius (C. III. 104), who is "the False One," all appear, as well as Cleopatra, Labienus, and Caesar, who declaims over the head of Pompey, presented to him by Achillas.

Recently John Masefield, in *The Tragedy of Pompey the Great* (New York, 1911), has skillfully developed an interpretation of Pompey's actions altogether different from the view that will present itself to most readers of Caesar's *Civil War*. Bernard Shaw's *Caesar and Cleopatra* is an amusing caricature.

Fewer historical novels concern themselves with the closing days of the Roman Republic than with the first century of the Empire. The best of them all is *A Friend of Caesar*, by W. S. Davis (New York, 1900). The hero of *The Wonderful Adventures of Phra the Phœnician*, by E. L. Arnold, son of Edwin Arnold (New York, 1890), in the first of his several eventful lives weds the daughter of a British ruler and joins with the natives in trying to prevent the landing of Caesar's forces.

To the domain of the essay, containing much suggestive generalization and psychological analysis, belong the sections and passages relating to Julius Caesar in *The Tragedy of the Caesars, A Study of the Characters of the Caesars of the Julian and Claudian Houses*, by S. Baring-Gould (3d edit., London, 1895); *Roman Days*, by V. Rydberg (2d edit., New York, 1887); *Imperial Purple*, by Edgar Saltus (Chicago, 1892); *Ave Roma Immortalis*, by F. M. Crawford, New York, 1902); as well as the older works, *Causes of the Grandeur and Decadence of the Romans*, by Montesquieu (new translation by J. Baker, New York, 1894; chap. 11, with the translator's note); and *The Caesars*, by Thomas de Quincey (in vol. 6 of his *Collected Writings*, edited by D. Masson, Edinburgh, 1890).

Wonderful portents accompanying the death of Caesar are described by Virgil in the first book of the *Georgics*, while the transformation of his soul into a comet is set forth by Ovid at the end of the *Metamorphoses;* thus within approximately a half century after his death the miraculous had gathered about his memory and had found literary expression.

Other marvelous stories about Caesar were current in the Roman Empire, and were reflected in later writings. The *Gesta Romanorum*, a collection of edifying tales made about the end of the thirteenth century, tells us how, as Caesar started to cross the Rubicon, a huge ghost stood in his way, and how Caesar met the challenge (Latin text edited by H. Oesterley, Berlin, 1872; trans. by C. Swan, 2 vols., London, 1824, vol. 1, p. 99).

The most persistent tale related to the safe-guarding of Caesar's ashes. In the earlier part of the first century A.D. a massive granite obelisk was brought to Rome from Egypt and erected in a circus near where St. Peter's church was afterwards built; on the top a large ball, or sphere, of bronze was placed (Fig. 26). The obelisk remained standing to modern times; until 1586, when the ball was taken down and found to be solid, many believed that it contained the ashes of Julius Caesar, placed there in order that, in the quaint language of a medieval guide-book, "as in his lifetime the whole world lay subdued before him, even so in his death the

Figure 26. — Bronze ball supposed to contain the ashes of Julius Caesar.

After the murder of Julius Caesar his body was taken to the Forum, and there burned.

In the Middle Ages his ashes were supposed to be preserved in the large round ball on the top of the obelisk which, till 1586, stood at the side of St. Peter's church in Rome, and now stands in the Piazza in front of St. Peter's. (Illustration from an engraving made in 1569.)

same may lie beneath him forever" (*Mirabilia Urbis Romae.* Latin text, H. Jordan, *Topographie der Stadt Rom*, vol. 2, p. 625; translation by F. M. Nichols, London, 1889, pp. 71–72).

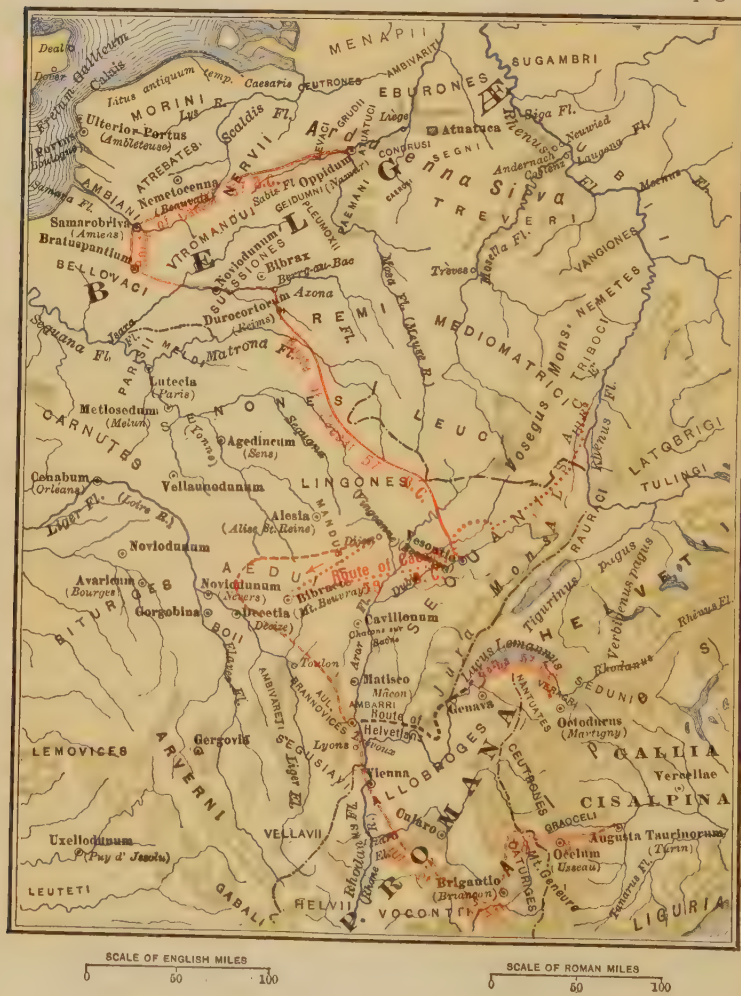
One version of the Swan Legend, most commonly associated with Lohengrin, tells us how a sister of Julius Caesar eloped with a Belgian prince, and in her northern home had a beautiful white swan. Her husband joined forces with Ariovistus and fell at the battle of Vesontio. Now in Caesar's army was a hero, Salvius Brabon, who was descended from the Trojan Hector. Hunting near the Rhine he saw a snow-white swan, "playfully pulling at the rope which bound a small skiff to the shore. Salvius leaped into the boat and cast it loose from its mooring. Then the bird swam before him as a guide, and he rowed after it." The swan conducted him to the sister of Caesar, who made herself known to him; he brought Caesar to her castle, and the conqueror embraced his sister with joy. Salvius asked Caesar for the widowed sister's hand; Caesar consented, and Salvius Brabon became the first Duke of Brabant (S. Baring-Gould, *Curious Myths of the Middle Ages*, second series, Philadelphia, 1868, pp. 332–335).

MAP I

CAMPAIGNS OF 58 AND 57 B.C.

Book I, 2–54; II, 1–33; III, 1–6

To face page 1


MENAPII
SUGAMBRI
EBURONES
Fretum Gallicum
Litus antiquum temp. Caesaris
CEUTRONES
Scaldis Fl.
MORINI
Ulterior Portus (Ambleteuse)
Portus Itius
ATREBATES
AMBIANI
NERVII
Sabis Fl.
Oppidum
Nemetocenna (Bavay)
Samarobriva (Amiens)
Bratuspantium
BELLOVACI
VIROMANDUI
Noviodunum
SUESSIONES
Bibrax (Beuvray or Bac)
Durocortorum (Reims)
REMI
Axona
Matrona Fl.
Sequana Fl.
Isara Fl.
PARISII
Lutecia (Paris)
Metlosedum (Melun)
SENONES
Agedincum (Sens)
CARNUTES
Cenabum (Orleans)
Vellaunodunum
LINGONES
Alesia (Alise Ste Reine)
Noviodunum
Lesocatia
Avaricum (Bourges)
Noviodunum (Nevers)
Gorgobina
Decetia (Decize)
Carillonum
Matisco (Mâcon)
Vienna
Ostodurus (Martigny)
Gergovia
Lyons
Vienna
LEMOVICES
ARVERNI
ALLOBROGES
CEUTRONES
GRAIOCELI
Augusta Taurinorum (Turin)
Ocelum (Usseau)
Vercellae
CISALPINA
Uxellodunum (Puy d' Issolu)
VELLAVII
LEUTETI
GABALI
HELVII
VOCONTII
Brigantio (Briançon)
LIGURIA
Rhodanus Fl.
Arar Fl.
Liger Fl.
Matrona Fl.
Mosa Fl.
Mosella Fl.
Rhenus Fl.
Sequana Fl.
Isara Fl.
Druentia Fl.
Durance Fl.
Varus Fl.
Rhone Fl.
Route of Caesar
Route of Helvetians
Mt. Genèvre
Mt. Cenis
Mt. Bernard
Lake Lemannus
Lake Verbanus
Lake Benacus
Lake Larius
Lake Sebinus
Lake Eupilis
Lake Ceresius
Lake Locarnus
Lake Clusius
Lake Trasimenus
Lake Fucinus
Lake Sabatinus
Lake Vadimonis
Lake Cimini
Lake Velinus
Lake Curtius
Lake Regillus
Lake Albanus
Lake Nemorensis
Lake Pilonis
Lake Gabinus
Lake Regill

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS

Geography of Gaul

Divisions and peoples.

1. GALLIA est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam, quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā,

---

Commentārius: 'Commentary.' *273.*[1] **prīmus**: *33*, *36*.

1. 1. **Gallia**: *2*, *a*, and *286*. **Gallia omnis**: 'Gaul as a whole,' contrasted with Gaul in the narrower sense, or Celtic Gaul; Celtic Gaul also is often called **Gallia**. *287*, *b*. **omnis**: *25*, *a*, and *80*, *b*. **dīvīsa**: 'divided,' the perfect passive participle of **dīvidō** used as a predicate adj. *148*, *c*. B. 337, 2; A. 495; H. 640, 3. **in**: 'into.' *124*, *a*. **partēs**: 'parts.' *17*, *b*. **trēs**: *37*, *b*, and *353*, *c*. **quārum**: 'of which.' *47*. Why genitive? *97*, *a*. B. 201, 1; A. 346, *a*, 1; H. 442. **ūnam**: sc. *partem*, 'one (part).' *23*, *a*. Look up the three 'parts' of Gaul on the Map at the end of this book.

2. **incolunt**: 'inhabit.' *55*. **Belgae**: *19*, *e*; *287*. **aliam** [partem]: 'another (part),' less precise than *alteram* (*partem*), 'a second (part),' which might have been used. *23*, *a*. **Aquītānī**: sc. *incolunt*. *89*, *a*. **tertiam, quī**: = *tertiam partem eī incolunt, quī*, 'a third part is inhabited by those who,' lit. 'those inhabit who.' *164*, *a*. **ipsōrum**: 'their own'; lit. 'of themselves.' *46*. **ipsōrum linguā**: 'in their own language.' *131*, *a*. B. 218; A. 409; H. 476.

3. **Celtae**: sc. *appellantur*. *88*, and *287*, *b*. **nostrā**: *nostrā linguā*, Latin. *157*, *c*. **appellantur**: 'are called.' *53*. **linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus**: 'in respect to language, institutions, and laws.' *142*, *a*, and *234*, *a*. B. 226; A. 418; H. 480.

---

[1] References in Italic type are to the "Companion to Caesar" and "Points to be Noted in Writing Latin," in this book; B., A., and H. refer to the Latin grammars by Bennett, Allen and Greenough, and Harkness, respectively. For other abbreviations consult the list preceding the Vocabulary.

īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant, atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

---

4. **inter sē**: 'from one another.' *159*. B. 245; A. 301, *f*; H. 502, 1. **differunt**: 'differ.' *69*, *b*.

5. **Garumna**: sc. *dīvidit*, 'separates.' **flūmen**: *12*, *e*, and *91*, *a*. Derivation? *74*, *d*. **Matrona**: *292*. **dīvidit**: singular number; why? *173*, *a*. B. 255, 3; A. 317, *b*; H. 392, 4.

6. **Hōrum**: *42*, *b*, and *97*, *a*. B. 201, 1; A. 346, *a*, 2; H. 442. **fortissimī**: 'the bravest.' *27*, *a*. **propterea**: adv. meaning 'on this account'; closely connected with **quod**, the two words together being translated 'because.' Three reasons are given for the bravery of the Belgians; what are they?

7. **cultū**: 'mode of life,' referring to the outward appearances of civilization. *20*. **atque**: *233*, *a*. **hūmānitāte**: 'refinement' in intellectual interests and in feeling. *10*, *f*. **prōvinciae**: 'of the Province.' *94*, *a*, and *290*. **longissimē absunt**: 'are furthest removed.' *34*, *a*, and *66*, *a*; also, *183*, *a*.

8. **mimimē — saepe**: 'very rarely'; lit. 'least often.' *35*. **eōs**: *44*, and *160*, *b*. **mercātōrēs**: 'traders' from the Province, especially from Massilia, followed the course of the Rhone, the Saône, and the Loire, so that naturally they did not often go so far north as the Belgian country. **commeant**: 'make their way to'; lit. 'go and come.' *53*. **ea**: 'those things,' object of *important*. *160*, *c*. Caesar seems to have had in mind particularly the importation of wine (II. 15; IV. 2).

9. **ad effēminandōs animōs**: 'to weaken the courage.' *230*, (3). B. 339, 2; A. 503, 506; H. 628. **animōs**: *6*, *a*, and *92*, *a*. **pertinent**: 'tend.' *54*. **important**: 'import.' *53*, and *175*, *a*.

10. **proximīque sunt**: 'and they are nearest.' *33*, and *233*, *b*. **Germānīs**: why dat.? *108*, *a*. B. 192, 1; A. 384; H. 434, 2. **trāns**: here 'on the other side of.' *122*, *a*. **quibuscum**: *125*, *c*.

11. **continenter**: 'continually.' **bellum gerunt**: 'they wage war.' *6*, *a*, and *55*.

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. 15

Figure 27. — Modern road in the Jura Mountains.

In Caesar's time there were only trails, over which the migrating Helvetians with their carts could not pass; no such barrier protected them from the Germans.

---

12. **Quā dē causā**: 'For this reason.' *167*. B. 251, 6; A. 308, *f*; H. 510. **quoque**: 'also.' **reliquōs**: 'the rest of the.' *171, a*. **Gallōs**: only the inhabitants of Celtic Gaul are meant, as indicated in l. 3; no comparison with the Belgians and the Aquitanians is implied. *113, a*. **virtūte**: 'in valor.' *142, a*. B. 226; A. 418; H. 480.

13. **praecēdunt**: 'excel.' *113, b*. **ferē**: 'almost.' **cotīdiānīs**: 'every day'; lit. 'daily.' *22, b*. **proeliīs**: 'in battle'; lit. 'by means of battles.' *131, a*. **cum**: the preposition *cum* is distinguished from the conjunction *cum* only by the sense and the connection.

14. **contendunt**: 'contend.' *55*. **cum**: *185, a*. **aut . . . aut**: 'either . . . or.' *235, b*. **suīs**: 'their own,' referring to the Helvetians. *158, a*. **fīnibus**: 'country'; lit. 'boundaries.' *14, b*, and *127, a*. B. 214, 2; A. 400; H. 464, 1. **eōs**: translate as if *Germānōs*, 'the Germans,' in order to avoid using 'them' and 'they' with reference to two different peoples in the same sentence. **prohibent**: 'are keeping (the Germans) out.' **ipsī**: 'themselves,' *162, a*. There is no detailed record of these border raids.

15. **eōrum**: translate as if *Germānōrum*. **fīnibus**: *124, a*.

[Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.]

The Campaign against the Helvetians. 2–29

Orgetorix, a Helvetian, persuades his countrymen to migrate.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī

16–25. **Eōrum . . . septentriōnēs**: there is reason for believing that this passage was not written by Caesar but was added after his time by some one who thought it worth while to give with greater detail the boundaries of the three divisions of Gaul mentioned by Caesar at the beginning of the chapter; the style is forced and difficult. If it is omitted, the transition from the statement about the Helvetians, in lines 12–15, to the activities of the Helvetian leader, Orgetorix, at the beginning of the second chapter, becomes easy and natural. Translation:

'One part of Gaul taken as a whole' (lit. 'of them'), 'which it has been said the Celts occupy, begins at the river Rhone; it is bounded by the Garonne river, the Ocean, and the country of the Belgians; on the side where the Sequanians and Helvetians are it extends also to the river Rhine; it lies to the north. The country of the Belgians commences at the most distant borders of Celtic Gaul and extends to the lower part of the river Rhine; it faces north and east. Aquitania extends from the Garonne river to the Pyrenees mountains and that part of the Ocean which is off Spain; it faces northwest.'

2. 1. **Apud**: *122, a.* **longē**: *153, b.* **nōbilissimus**: 'highest in rank.' *27, a,* and *353, a.* **dītissimus**: *31.*

2. **Orgetorīx**: *10, c.* **M.**: = *Mārcō*. *19, a.* **M. . . . cōnsulibus**: = 61 B.C. *144, b,* (1), and *240, a.* B. 227, 1; A. 419, *a*; H. 489. **rēgnī**; 'of kingly power,' objective genitive. *6, a,* and *102.*

cupiditāte inductus, coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent; *perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus* 5
Galliae imperiō potīrī.

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātis-

---

3. **cupiditāte**: 'by a desire.' *10, f*, and *135, a*. B. 219; A. 404, *b*; H. 475, 1. **inductus**: 'led on.' *226, b*, and *148, b*. **coniūrātiōnem**: 'conspiracy.' *12, c*. **nōbilitātis**: here used as a collective noun, lit. 'of the nobility'; trans. 'among the nobles.' *10, f*, and *92, b*. **fēcit**: *57, b*. **cīvitātī**: *10, f*, and *105*. B. 187, II, *a*; A. 367; H. 426, 2.

4. **persuāsit**: 'persuaded.' *79, b*. **ut . . . exīrent**: 'to go out,' 'to migrate'; kind of clause? *199, a*. B. 295, 1; A. 563; H. 565. **cum omnibus cōpiīs**: 'with all (their) effects,' as we say, "bag and baggage." *137, a*. **exīrent**: plural because *cīvitātī*, '(his) state,' to which the unexpressed subject refers, is thought of as if it were *cīvibus*, 'the people of (his) state.' *68, b*; *173, b*, and *238, h*. B. 254, 4, *a*; H. 389, 1.

5. **perfacile . . . potīrī**: indirect discourse, dependent on the idea of saying in *persuāsit*. *212, a*, and *c*, (5); *213, b*. B. 314, 2; A. 579, 580; H. 641–643. **perfacile esse**: '(saying) that it was exceedingly easy.' The subject of *esse* is *potīrī*, 'to obtain possession of.' *222, b*. Why is *perfacile* neuter? *148, d*. **virtūte**: *142, a*. B. 226; A. 418; H. 480. **omnibus**: *107, a*. B. 187, III, 1; A. 370; H. 429. **praestārent**: 'they excelled.' *53*, and *184, a*. B. 286, 2; A. 549; H. 598. **tōtīus**: *23, a*.

6. **tōtīus Galliae**: 'of the whole (of) Gaul.' *102*. **imperiō**: 'sovereignty.' Why ablative? *131, c*. B. 218, 1; A. 410; H. 477. **potīrī**: *60*, and *61, a*, (4).

7. **Id**: acc.; 'that (course)'. *117, a*, and *160, c*. B. 176, 2, *a*; A. 369; H. 426, 6. **hōc**: 'on this account,' referring to what follows. *135, a*, and *161, a*. B. 219; A. 404; H. 475. **facilius**: 'the more easily.' *34, a*. **eīs**: *44*, and *105*. **undique**: 'on all sides.' **locī nātūrā**: 'by natural features.' *131, a*. How lit.?

8. **continentur**: 'are hemmed in'; why indic.? *183, a*. **ūnā ex parte**: 'on one side,' the north side. *126, c*. **flūmine**: *131, a*. **lātissimō**: 'very wide.' *153, a*.

simō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus

Figure 28. — Long summit of the Jura range.

This range formed a natural barrier between the country of the Helvetians and that of the Sequanians, and now carries part of the boundary between France and Switzerland.

9. **altissimō**: here 'very deep,' but in l. 10 'very high.' **quī**: the antecedent is *Rhēnō*. *163, a.* **agrum**: here 'territory.' **ā Germānīs**: 'from (the territory of) the Germans.' *282*, and *127, c.*

10. **alterā**: for *secundā*, 'second,' as often. **monte Iūrā**: 'by the Jura range'; *mōns* refers sometimes to a single mountain, sometimes to a group or chain of mountains, or to a moderate elevation.

11. **tertiā**: sc. *ex parte*. **lacū**: *20, b.*

12. **Rhodanō**: the part of the Rhone just below Geneva; see Map 1. **prōvinciam**: *290*. **nostram**: i.e. *Rōmānam*. *157, c.* **Helvētiīs**: *282*. Caesar does not deem it necessary to give the boundary on the fourth or east side, in the Alps.

13. **Hīs rēbus**: 'Because of these conditions' (lit. 'these things'). *135, a.* **fīēbat**: 'it came about.' *70, a.* **ut . . . possent**: subject of *fīēbat*. *203*, (1). B. 297, 2; A. 569, 1; H. 571, 1. **et . . .**

facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte, hominēs bellandī cupidī, magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multi- 15
tūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

---

et: *233, a.* **minus lātē vagārentur**: 'they were more restricted in their movements,' lit. 'wandered less broadly,' than they wished. *177, a.* **minus**: *35.*

14. **fīnitimīs**: '(their) neighbors.' *107, b,* and *154, a.* B. 187, III, 2; A. 370; H. 429, 1. **īnferre**; 'wage.' *69, b.* **possent**: *66, b.* **quā ex parte**: 'and on that account.' *167.* **hominēs**: in apposition to the subject of *afficiēbantur*, '(being) men.' *12, b,* and *91, b.*

15. **bellandī**: 'of waging war.' *53,* and *230,* (1). B. 204, 1; A. 349, *a*; H. 451, 1. **cupidī**: 'fond (of).' *22, b.* **magnō dolōre afficiēbantur**: 'they were sorely' (lit. 'with great vexation') 'troubled.' *57, b.* **dolōre**: *11, d,* and *136, b.* **Prō**: 'Considering.' *125, a.* **multitūdine hominum**: '(their) population'; how lit.? The number was 263,000 (chap. 29). The Helvetian territory now supports a population of about 2,250,000.

16. **autem**: *236, b.* **glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis**: '(their) reputation for war' (lit. 'of war') 'and for bravery.' *102.*

17. **angustōs fīnēs**: 'too small' (lit. 'narrow') 'territories.' *113, a.* **sē habēre**: 'that they had.' *178,* and *213, a.* **arbitrābantur**: 'they thought,' lit. 'were thinking.' *175, a.* **quī**: i.e. *fīnēs.* **in longitūdinem**: 'in length.' *76.*

18. **mīlia passuum**: 'miles.' Length of the Roman 'pace' and Roman 'mile'? *243, b.* **mīlia**: *38, a,* and *118, a.* B. 181; A. 425; H. 417. **passuum**: *20, b,* and *97, a.* **CCXL**: *36,* and *38, b.* **lātitūdinem**: 'breadth.' *81.* **CLXXX**: *centum octōgintā*, sc. *mīlia passuum. 38, b.* As the actual distance across the Helvetian territory was about 80 Roman miles, it has been suggested that Caesar wrote LXXX, *octōgintā*, which was changed to CLXXX by an error in copying. **patēbant**: 'extended.' *54.* The territory occupied by the Helvetians comprised a large portion, or the whole, of the modern Swiss cantons of Vaud, Neuchâtel, Basel, Freiburg, Bern, Solothurn, and Aargau. At an earlier period the Helvetians had lived north of the Rhine, but they had been forced to the south side by the Germans.

They make preparations; Orgetorix forms a conspiracy.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī, et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī, cōnstituērunt ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus

3. 1. **Hīs rēbus adductī**: 'Prompted by these considerations.' **adductī**: agrees with the unexpressed subject of *cōnstituērunt*. **auctōritāte**: 'by the influence.' *135, a.* **permōtī**: 'stirred to action.'

2. **cōnstituērunt**: 'they (i.e. *Helvētiī*) determined'; followed by **comparāre**, 'to make ready.' *221, a.* B. 328, 1; A. 457; H. 607, 1. **ea**: 'those things'; after *comparāre. 113, a*, and *160, c.* **ad proficīscendum**: 'for emigration'; lit. 'for setting out.' *230*, (3). B. 338, 3; A. 506; H. 628. **pertinērent**: subjunctive as giving the thought of the Helvetians; 'were (as they thought) necessary,' lit. 'pertained (to).' *212, d.* B. 323; A. 592: H. 649, 1.

3. **iūmentōrum**: 'draft-animals'; horses, mules, and oxen. *97, a.* **carrōrum**: two-wheeled 'carts,' drawn largely by oxen. A Helvetian ox yoke, which was strapped to the horns of the oxen, is shown in Fig. 29.

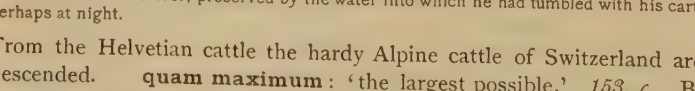


Figure 29. — Helvetian yoke, of wood, found in 1910.

Found near Lake Neuchâtel, with a wooden shield, a spear, the remains of a cart and the skeleton of the driver, preserved by the water into which he had tumbled with his cart, perhaps at night.

From the Helvetian cattle the hardy Alpine cattle of Switzerland are descended. **quam maximum**: 'the largest possible.' *153, c.* B. 240, 3; H. 159, 2. **numerum**: 'number.' *113, a.*

4. **coëmere**: 'to buy up.' **coëmere, facere, cōnfīrmāre**: after *cōnstituērunt. 221, a.* **sēmentēs quam maximās**: 'as large sowings as possible.' *14, b*, and *153, c.*

5. **in itinere**: 'on the way.' *18, c.* **cōpia frūmentī suppeteret**: 'there might be an adequate supply of grain,' lit. 'a supply of grain might be at hand.' *90, b.* **suppeteret**: *196, a.* B. 282; A. 531; H. 568. **proximīs**: 'neighboring,' lit. 'nearest.' *33.*

pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvi-

---

6. **pācem et amīcitiam**: '(relations of) peace and friendship.' **cōnfīrmāre**: '(and) to establish.' *234, a.* **Ad . . . cōnficiendās**: gerundive construction, 'to complete these preparations,' lit. 'for those things to be completed.' *230*, (3). B. 339, 2; A. 503; H. 626, 1.

7. **biennium satis esse**: 'that two years would be sufficient.' *212, d*, and *214, a.* **biennium**: *79, b.* **sibi**: 'for them.' *40, b*, and *158, a.* **dūxērunt**: here a verb of thought; 'they reckoned.' *213, a.* **in**: 'for.' **profectiōnem**: '(their) departure.' *157, a.*

8. **cōnfīrmant**: historical present; trans. by a past tense, 'they fixed.' *175, b.* Other historical presents which should be translated by a past tense are *dēligitur*, l. 9; *persuādet*, l. 10 and l. 17; *dat*, l. 18; *probat*, l. 19; *cōnfīrmat*, l. 23; *dant*, l. 25; *spērant*, l. 26.

9. **Ad . . . cōnficiendās**: 'to carry out these arrangements.' **dēligitur**: 'was chosen.' **sibi — suscēpit**: 'took upon himself.' *104, a.* B. 187, 1; A. 362; H. 424.

10. **lēgātiōnem**, etc.: 'the office of envoy to the states.' *150, d.*

11. **Casticō**: *105.* **Catamantāloedis**: *99.* **fīliō, Sēquanō**: *91, a.* B. 169, 2; A. 282; H. 393. **pater**: *11, b.* **rēgnum**: 'the chief authority'; at this time there was no hereditary or absolute monarchy among the Gauls. *1*, and *289, a.*

12. **annōs**: *118, a.* B. 181, 1; A. 423; H. 417. **obtinuerat**: 'had held.' *79, b.* **senātū populī Rōmānī**: 'the senate of the Roman people,' instead of *senātū populōque*, 'the senate and the Roman people,' because the Roman senate had the right to confer honorary titles on foreign rulers without a popular vote.

13. **amīcus**: 'friend.' *88.* B. 168, 2, *b*; A. 284; H. 393, 8. Such titles were conferred as a recognition of services rendered, or as a means of gaining favor.

tāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Aeduō, frātrī Diviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat *cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn esse dubium, quīn tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī pos-*

---

14. **suā**: *157, b.* **ut . . . occupāret**: 'to seize.' *199, a,* and *177, b.* **quod**: *not* 'because.' **item**: 'also.'

15. **Dumnorīgī**: *10, c,* and *105.* **frātrī**: *11, e.* **Dīviciācī**: *19, d.* **eō tempore**: 'at that time.' *147, a.* **prīncipātum**: 'the foremost place'; whether the dominant position of Dumnorix among the Aeduans was due wholly to his influence, or whether in 61 B.C. he had also a magistracy, is not indicated.

16. **cīvitāte**: '(his) state,' i.e. the Aeduan state. **obtinēbat**: force of the imperfect? *175, a.* **maximē acceptus**: 'very acceptable.' *30.* **plēbī**: *108, a.* Our English expression corresponding with *plēbī acceptus* is 'popular with the masses.'

17. **ut idem cōnārētur**: 'to attempt the same thing'; the construction is similar to that of *ut . . . occupāret* above. *61, a,* (1). **idem**: *45,* and *117, a.* **eī**: *104, a.* **in mātrimōnium**: 'in marriage.'

18. **dat**: *67, a,* and *175, b.*

19. **Perfacile . . . possent**: indirect discourse depending on *probat. 213, a.* **Perfacile**: in predicate after *esse,* as in chap. 2, l. 5. *212, c,* (5). **factū**: 'of accomplishment,' lit. 'in respect to the doing.' *232.* B. 340, 2; A. 510, N. 2; H. 635, 1. **esse**: *214, a.* **illīs probat**: 'he (Orgetorix) showed them.' *104, a.* **cōnāta**: '(their) undertakings.' *157, a.* **perficere**: 'to carry through'; subject of *esse. 57, b; 79, b,* and *222, b.*

20. **suae**: 'his own,' emphatic. *157, b.* **imperium**: 'the sovereign power.' *74, b.* **obtentūrus esset**: 'he was going to seize.' *63.* Why subjunctive? *214, a.* **nōn esse dubium**: 'that there was no doubt.'

21. **dubium**: in predicate; neuter because the subject of *esse* is a clause. **quīn . . . possent**: 'that the Helvetians were the most powerful (people) in all Gaul,' lit. 'were able the most of the whole (of) Gaul.' *201, b.* B. 298; A. 558, *a*; H. 595, 1. **Galliae**: *97, b.* B.

sent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat.

Hāc ōrātiōne adductī, inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant; et, rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs populōs, tōtius Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

The conspiracy is revealed; Orgetorix dies.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut īgnī cremārētur.

201, 1; A. 346, *a*, 2; H. 442. **plūrimum**: neuter acc. used substantively. *32*, and *118*, *b*. B. 176, 3, *a*; A. 214, *d*; H. 416, 2.

22. **sē suīs cōpiīs**: 'that he with his own means.' *157*, *b*, and *131*, *a*. **exercitū**: *not* 'army' but 'armed retinue,' like that with which Orgetorix afterwards overawed the judges, as related in the next chapter. **illīs**: *104*, *a*. **illīs rēgna conciliātūrum** [esse]: 'that he would get kingships for them.' *89*, *c*.

23. **cōnfīrmat**: 'he (Orgetorix) assured (them).'

24. **Hāc ōrātiōne adductī**: 'Won over by this presentation.' **inter sē**: *159*. **fidem et iūs iūrandum**: trans. 'an oath-bound pledge of good faith,' lit. 'good faith and oath'; hendiadys. *238*, *d*.

25. **rēgnō occupātō**: 'having seized the supreme power.' *144*, *a*. B. 227, 2; A. 420, 1; H. 489. **per**: 'with the help of.' *123*, *a*. **potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs**: 'very powerful and very firmly established.' *153*, *a*.

26. **populōs**: the Helvetians, the Sequanians, and the Aeduans. **Galliae**: after *potīrī*. *131*, *d*. B. 212, 2; A. 410 *a*; H. 458, 458, 3. **sēsē posse spērant**: 'they hoped that they would be able.' *213*, *a*. **potīrī**: after *posse*. *221*, *a*.

4. 1. **Ea rēs**: 'The matter,' i.e. Orgetorix's scheme; lit. 'that thing.' *160*, *d*. **Helvētiīs**: why dat.? **per indicium**: 'through (the agency of) informers'; lit. 'through information.' *92*, *b*, and *123*, *a*. **est ēnūntiāta**: 'was reported.' *172*, *a*. **Mōribus suīs**: 'In accordance with their customs,' as distinguished from the Roman procedure. *136*, *c*. B. 220, 3; A. 418, *a*; H. 475, 3.

2. **ex vinculīs**: 'in chains.' *126*, *c*. **causam dīcere**: 'to plead his case.' *221*, *a*. **coēgērunt**: 'they compelled.' *79*, *b*.

3. **damnātum**: agrees with *eum* understood as object of *sequī*; 'if

Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium
5 omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum mag-

---

condemned.' *209.* B. 337, 2, *b*; A. 496; H. 638, 2. **poenam**: subject of *sequī*; 'the penalty,' defined by the following *ut*-clause. **oportēbat**: *73, a, b.* **poenam sequī oportēbat**: 'the penalty would inevitably follow,' lit. 'it was necessary that the penalty follow.' **īgnī**: *14, b,* and *131, a.* **ut īgnī cremārētur**: 'of being burned by fire,' lit. 'that he should be burned by fire.' *203,* (4). B. 297, 3; A. 561, *a,* and 570; H. 571, 4. The Gauls punished some offenses by burning alive, and sometimes offered human sacrifices (VI. 16, 19; VII. 4).

Figure 30. — Gallic standard-bearer.

4. **Diē cōnstitūtā**: 'On the day appointed.' *21, a,* and *147, a.* B. 230; A. 423; H. 486. **dictiōnis**: dependent on *Diē*; 'for the pleading.' *102.* **iūdicium**: 'the (place of) judgment,' 'the trial.'

5. **familiam**: 'slaves'; lit. 'body of slaves,' taken collectively. **ad**: adv. modifying *decem*, 'about'; Caesar often gives a round number where it is impossible to be exact. **hominum**: *12, b,* and *97, a.* **mīlia**: appositive of *familiam. 38, a,* and *91, a.*

6. **clientēs**: 'retainers.' *17, c.* **obaerātōs**: 'debtors.' In Gaul debtors who were unable to pay might be forced into bondage (VI. 13).

num numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit.

Cum cīvitās, ob eam rem incitāta, armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

The Helvetians complete their preparations to migrate.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant.

---

7. **eōdem**: 'to the same place,' the place of judgment. **condūxit**: 'brought,' lit. 'led together.' **per eōs**: 'with their help,' lit. 'by means of them.' *123, a.*

8. **dīceret**: *196, a.* B. 282; A. 530, 531; H. 568. **nē . . . ēripuit**: 'he evaded the pleading of his case,' lit. 'he rescued himself that he might not plead his case'; Orgetorix overawed the judges so that they did not dare proceed with the trial.

9. **incitāta**: 'aroused.' *148, b.* **iūs suum**: 'its right' to call traitors to account. **exsequī**: 'enforce.' *200, b.*

10. **cōnārētur, cōgerent**: *185, c.* B. 288, 1, B; A. 546; H. 600, II, 1. Force of the imperfect tense? **hominum**: *98, a.* **agrīs**: 'the country.' *7, a,* and *130, a.* **magistrātūs**: 'the public officials'; here evidently the local officers are meant. *82, b.*

11. **mortuus est**: 'died.' *57, c,* and *176, a.* **neque abest suspīciō**: 'and there is ground for suspecting,' lit. 'nor is there lacking (ground for) suspecting.' *12, c,* and *233, a.*

12. **ut**: meanings of *ut?* See Vocab. **quīn . . . cōnscīverit**: 'that he committed suicide,' lit. 'that he himself inflicted death upon himself.' *201, b.* B. 298; A. 558; H. 595, 1. **mortem**: *17, c.*

5. 1. **Post**: *122, a.* **eius**: i.e. *Orgetorīgis.* **nihilō mīnus**: 'nevertheless'; lit. 'by nothing less.' *140.* B. 223; A. 414; H. 479. **id quod**: *160, c.*

2. **cōnantur**: *175, b.* **ut . . . exeant**: explains *id. 203,* (4). From the fact that, notwithstanding the treason and death of Orgetorix, the Helvetians carried out the plan of migrating, it is evident that behind the movement there was a general cause stronger than the influence of

Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

---

any individual. It seems probable that this cause was the pressure of the Germans, with whom, as stated in chapter 1, the Helvetians were constantly at war.

3. **Ubi iam**: 'As soon as'; lit. 'When now.' **rem**: 'undertaking.' **parātōs**: 'ready.' *148, c.* **oppida**: 'fortified towns.' *6, a.*

4. **numerō**: *142, a,* and *85.* B. 226; A. 418; H. 480. **ad**: adverb, as in chap. 4, l. 5. **vīcōs**: 'villages,' unfortified. **quadringentōs**: 'four hundred.' *36.*

5. **reliqua**: *171, a.* **prīvāta aedificia**: 'buildings belonging to individuals,' not in the walled towns or villages. **incendunt**: 'they set fire to.'

6. **praeter quod**: i.e. *praeter id* (*frūmentum*) *quod.* **sēcum**: 'with them.' *125, c.* **portātūrī erant**: 'they were going to take.' *63.* **combūrunt**: 'they burned.' *175, b.* **domum**: 'home.' *119, b.* B. 182, 1, *b*; A. 427, 2; H. 419, 1.

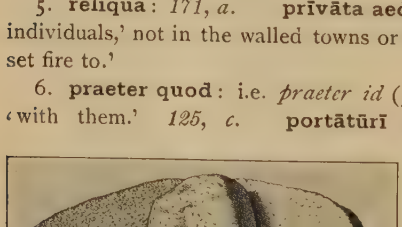


Figure 31. — Ancient Gallic mill.

Of sandstone. The small grinder was worked by hand over the grain in the hollow of the bedstone, which was about 19 inches long.

7. **reditiōnis**: 'of returning.' *12, c,* and *102.* **spē**: how declined? *21, b* and *c.* **spē sublātā**: 'as a result of taking away the hope,' lit. 'the hope having been taken away.' *144, b,* (3). **perīcula**: 'dangers.' *6, a.* **subeunda**: 'meet,' lit. 'to be met.' *68, b,* and *230,* (3). B. 339, 2; A. 503; H. 628.

8. **essent**: *196, a.* B. 282; A. 531, 1; H. 568. **trium**: *37, b.* **mēnsium**: *14, b.* **trium mēnsium**: 'for (lit. 'of') three months.' *100, a.* **molita cibāria**: 'ground rations.' The grain was to be

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs, fīnitimīs, 10
utī, eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur; Boiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi ascīscunt.

---

ground to coarse flour before starting, in contrast with the Roman custom of carrying unground grain on campaigns (*317*); probably the difficulty of carrying the stone mills, in addition to their other effects, occasioned the order (Fig. 31). **quemque**: *49, a*, and *170, b*. **sibi quemque efferre**: 'that each one for himself should carry away.' *178*.

9. **domō**: *20, c*, and *130, b*. B. 229, 1, *b*; A. 427, 1; H. 462, 4. **efferre**: *69, b*. B. 331, 11; A. 563, *a*; H. 614. **iubent**: '(and) they gave orders.' *200, b*, and *234, a*. On an allowance of three quarters of a pound of coarse flour per day for each person, more than 12,000 tons would be needed to feed 368,000 people (chap. 29) for 90 days. If each cart carried a ton, more than 12,000 carts would have been required to transport the supplies, and perhaps half as many more for other purposes; but it is hardly probable that the Helvetians and their allies took so great a quantity of supplies as the order contemplated. If we reckon 20 feet to a cart, 18,000 carts in single file would form a line 68 miles long.

10. **Rauracīs**: why dat.? The Rauraci, Tulingi, and Latobrigi were apparently north of the Helvetians (Map 1), and particularly exposed to the attacks and inroads of the Germans; hence their readiness to join the Helvetians in migrating. **et . . . et**: *234, a*. **fīnitimīs**: '(their) neighbors.' *91, a*, and *157, a*.

11. **utī . . . proficīscantur**: trans. by an infinitive, as *ut . . . exīrent* in chap. 2, l. 4. *199, a*, and *61, a*, (3). **ūsī**: 'adopting,' or 'to adopt'; lit. 'having used.' *61, a*, (3), and *228, a*. **cōnsiliō**: 'plan.' *131, c*. B. 218, 1; A. 410; H. 477. **oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs**: 'having burned' (or 'to burn') 'their towns and villages,' lit. 'their towns and villages having been burned.' *144, b*, (2). B. 227; A. 419; H. 489. **ūnā**: adv.

12. **eīs**: *Helvētiīs*. *160, b*, and *137, a*. **Boiōs**: N. to VI, 24, l. 3.

13. **agrum Nōricum**: 'the territory of the Norici,' corresponding, in general, with the western part of Austria south of the Danube, between Bavaria and Hungary. **trānsierant**: 'had passed over.' *68, b*.

14. **oppugnārant**: 'had taken' by storming. *340*. Full form? *64, a*, (1). B. 116, 1; A. 181, *a*; H. 238. **receptōs sociōs sibi**

Of two possible routes they choose that through the Province.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod

---

ascīscunt: 'they received and associated with themselves' (lit. 'to themselves') 'as allies.' *228, a.* B. 337, 5; A. 496, N. 2; H. 639. **sociōs**: *115, a.* Cf. N. to IV, 3, l. 4.

6. 1. **Erant**: 'There were.' *90, a.* **omnīnō**: 'only.' **duo**: *37, b.* **itineribus**: omit in translation. *165, a.* B. 251, 3; A. 307, *a*; H. 399, 1. **domō**: as in chap. 5, l. 9.

2. **possent**: subj. of characteristic. *194, a.* B. 283; A. 535; H. 591, 5. **ūnum, alterum** (l. 5): sc. *iter. 91, c.* B. 169, 5; A. 282, *a*; H. 393, 4. **per Sēquanōs**: *282.* **difficile**: 'difficult.' *29.*

3. **inter . . . Rhodanum**: on the right bank of the Rhone. There was no route across the Jura range practicable for so large a force, (Fig. 27), while the passage down the left bank of the Rhine, and westward between the Jura and the Vosges Mountains (Map 1), was left out of consideration, not only (we may assume) because it was less direct, but also because it was exposed to the attacks of Ariovistus. **vix**: 'hardly.' **quā**: 'where'; translate as if the order were *quā vix.* **singulī**: 'one at a time.'

4. **dūcerentur**: 'could' (lit. 'would') 'be drawn along'; subj. of characteristic, the relative adverb *quā* having the force of a relative pronoun. The narrowest point of the route is at the "Mill-race Gorge," or Pas de l'Écluse (Fig. 32), 19 Roman miles (about 17½ English miles; *243, b*), below Geneva. See Map 2. **mōns altissimus**: Mt. Crédo, now pierced by a tunnel, 2½ miles long, through which passes the railroad from Geneva to Lyons. **autem**: 'moreover.' *236, a* and *b.* **impendēbat**: 'overhung.' *54.*

5. **perpaucī**: 'very few' men, posted on the heights above the road; see Fig. 32. Force of *per? 79, b,* and Vocab. **prohibēre**: sc. *eōs.* **possent**: *197, a.* B. 284, 1; A. 537, 1; H. 570. **prōvinciam nostram**: *157, c,* and *290.*

6. **multō**: 'much,' lit. 'by much.' *140.* **facilius**: *29.* **expedītius**: 'more convenient.'

inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus, Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum

Figure 32. — Mill-race Gorge (Pas de l'Écluse), looking down the Rhone.

7. **Allobrogum**: *19, e.* **nūper**: 'recently,' in 61 B.C., after a revolt; the Allobroges were first conquered by Q. Fabius Maximus, in 121 B.C. (I. 45). **pācātī erant**: 'had been subdued.' *53*, and *192*.

8. **fluit**: 'flows.' **is**: 'it.' *160, b.* **nōn nūllīs**: 'some.' *23, a.* **locīs**: *6, c*, and *145, c.* **vadō trānsītur**: 'is fordable,' lit. 'is crossed by a ford.' *134, a*, and *68, c.*

9. **Extrēmum**: 'The most remote,' lit. 'utmost,' from the point of view of Rome. *33.*

10. **fīnibus**: *108, a.* B. 192, 1; A. 384; H. 434, 2. **pōns**: *17, c.* **Helvētiōs**: *282.*

11. **pertinet**: 'reaches across.' **Allobrogibus**: *105.* **vel . . . vel**: *235, b.* **persuāsūrōs**: sc. *esse. 89, c*; *213, a*, and *214, a.* **nōndum . . . vidērentur**: 'did not yet seem' to the Helvetians; Why is *vidērentur* subjunctive? *183, a.*

bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs, ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur.

Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Caesar hastens to Geneva, and parleys with the Helvetians.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et, quam maximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem

---

12. **bonō animō**: 'kindly disposed,' lit. 'of kindly feeling'; in predicate after *vidērentur*. *143, b.* B. 224, 1; A. 415; H. 473, 2. **in**: here 'toward.' **exīstimābant**: 'they believed.'

13. **vī**: 'by force.' *18, a.* **coāctūrōs**: i.e. *sēsē* (the Helvetians) *eōs* (the Allobroges) *coāctūrōs esse.* **ut . . . paterentur**: 'to permit,' substantive clause after *persuāsūrōs* (*esse*), *coāctūrōs* (*esse*). *199, a.* **eōs**: trans. as if *Helvētiōs*; N. to chap. 1, l. 14. **īre**: *68, a.*

14. **Omnibus . . . comparātīs**: 'when all preparations had been completed.' *144, b,* (2). How lit.? **dīcunt**: 'they appointed.'

15. **quā diē**: 'on which.' *147, a,* and *165, a.* B. 230; A. 423; H. 486. **ad rīpam**: 'on the bank' across from the Province; the north bank of the Rhone. **conveniant**: 'they should assemble'; subjunctive of purpose, as if *quā* were *ut eā*, 'that on that day.' *193.* B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; H. 590. **diēs**: gender? *21, a.*

16. **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.**: *ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs*, 'the fifth day before the Calends of April,' March 28 by our calendar. *241, a, b.* B. 371, 5; A. 631; H. 754, III, 2. **L. . . . cōnsulibus**: 58 B.C. *240, a,* and *144, b,* (1).

7. 1. **Caesarī**: *19, c,* and *353, e.* **nūntiātum esset**: 'had been reported.' *185, c.* B. 288, 1, B; A. 546; H. 600, II, 1. **eōs . . . cōnārī**: infinitive clause in apposition with *id*; the gist of the report, in the direct form, was *Helvētiī per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnantur. 214, a.*

2. **mātūrat**: 'he hastened.' *255, 256.* **urbe**: Rome, which by way of distinction was "*the* city." *17, b.*

3. **quam maximīs potest itineribus**: stronger than *quam maximīs itineribus*; 'with the utmost possible speed.' *153, c.* How lit.?

contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō s in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna); pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nam-

---

Galliam ulteriōrem: here including the Province, Caesar's immediate destination. *286*, and *290*.

4. **ad**: 'to the vicinity of.' *120, a.* **pervenit**: 'came,' lit. 'comes through.' If, as Plutarch says, Caesar arrived at the Rhone on the eighth day after leaving Rome, he must have traveled at the rate of about 100 Roman miles (about 92 English miles; *243, b*) per day. **Prōvinciae . . . imperat**: 'he levied upon the Province.' *106, a.* B. 187, 1; A. 369; H. 426, 1.

5. **mīlitum**: *10, b.* Legionary soldiers are meant. (Fig. 33.)

6. **legiō**: this 'legion' was the tenth, afterwards famous. *307, e.* **ūna**: *23, a.* **ad**: 'near.' **pontem . . . rescindī**: 'that the bridge be broken down.' *200, b.*

8. **adventū**: 'approach.' *20, b.* **certiōrēs factī sunt**: 'were informed,' lit. 'were made more certain.' *115, c.* **lēgātōs**: 'as envoys'; predicate accusative. *6, a,* and *115, a.*

9. **mittunt**: 'sent.' *175, b.*

Figure 33. — Roman legionary soldier.

He has a cuirass, a crested helmet, oval shield, and pike. Caesar's legionaries had oblong shields.

meius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent,

Sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat, L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris

---

nōbilissimōs: 'the most distinguished men.' *154, a.* **cuius lēgātiōnis**: 'and in this delegation'; lit. 'of which delegation.' *167.*

10. **prīncipem**: 'foremost.' *26, b,* and *10, a.* **quī dīcerent**: 'in order to say.' *193, a.* B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; H. 590.

12. **Sibi . . . liceat**: *212, a, b,* and *c,* (4). **Sibi esse in animō**: 'that it was their intention'; less freely, 'that they had it in mind,' *Sibi* being a dative of possession. *111,* and *214, a*; also, *178.* **sine**: 'without.' *125, a.* **ūllō**: *23, a.* **maleficiō**: 'wrong-doing'; we should say 'without doing any harm.'

13. **facere**: subject of *esse. 222, b.* **habērent**: *214, a.* **nūllum**: emphatic position. *353, d.* **rogāre**: sc. *sē*, '(and) that they requested.' *215,* and *234, a.*

14. **eius voluntāte**: 'with his consent.' *138.* **ut . . . liceat**: 'that permission might be granted'; subjunctive also in direct discourse. How lit.? *73, b,* and *199, a.* **facere**: *222, a.*

15. **memoriā**: *131, a.* B. 218; A. 409; H. 476. **memoriā tenēbat**: 'he remembered.' *183, a.* **L.**: *Lūcium. 19, a.*

16. **occīsum**: sc. *esse*, 'had been killed.' *89, c,* and *213, a.* **exercitum**: 'army.' *20, a, b,* and *74, b.* **pulsum** [esse]: 'had been routed.' *178.* **sub iugum**: 'under the yoke,' made by setting two spears upright and placing a third on them horizontally, as a cross-piece; under this captured soldiers were made to pass, bending over, as a token of complete submission and humiliation. The defeat of Cassius by the Helvetians took place in 107 B.C. *124, a.*

17. **concēdendum nōn putābat**: 'did not think that the request ought to be granted'; less freely, 'that the concession ought to be made.' *63,* and *73, e.* **neque**: trans. as if *et nōn.*

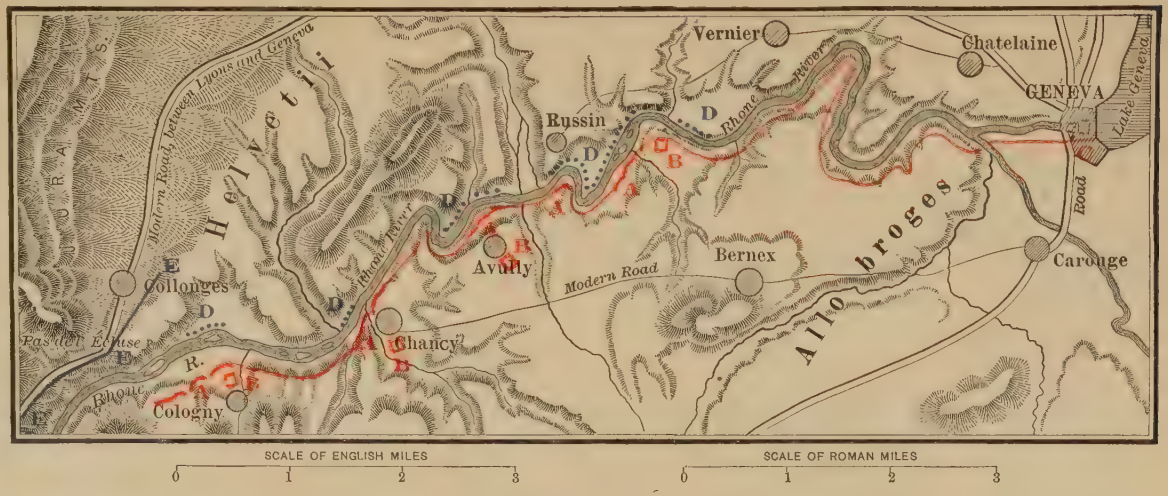
18. **inimīcō animō**: 'of hostile temper.' *143, a.* B. 224; A. 415; H. 473, 2. **datā facultāte**: = *sī facultās data esset*, 'if opportunity

MAP 2

CAESAR'S LINE OF WORKS ALONG THE RHONE FROM GENEVA TO MILL-RACE GORGE (PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE)

Book I, 8

To face page 20



EXPLANATION

A, A. Places where strong fortifications were needed, such as are shown in Figure 34. The lighter red line between these places indicates where less extensive fortifying was required.

B, B. Redoubts, *castella* (chap. 8, l. 6).

C. Site of ancient Geneva, on the south side of the Rhone. The modern city spreads out on both sides of the river.

D, D. Places where the Helvetians probably gathered, in their attempts to force the crossing of the Rhone (chap. 8, ll. 12–16).

E–E. Route of the Helvetian host entering Mill-race Gorge.

faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit,

Diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Aprīl. reverterentur.

Caesar prevents the Helvetians from entering the Province.

8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XVIIII mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit.

---

should have been granted.' *144, b,* (4). **itineris faciundī**: 'of marching.' *64, b,* and *230,* (1). How lit.?

19. **temperātūrōs** [esse]: 'would refrain.' *63.* **iniūriā**: 'violence.'

20. **Tamen**: 'Nevertheless.' *236, a.* **spatium**: trans. as if *tempus*, 'time.' **intercēdere**: 'intervene.' *221, a.* **dum**: 'until.'

21. **convenīrent**: 'should assemble.' *190, b.* B. 293, III, 2; A. 553; H. 603, II, 2. **respondit**: 'he made answer.'

22. **Diem**: 'time.' **sē**: *158, a.* **dēlīberandum**: 'for consideration.' *230,* (3). **sūmptūrum** [esse]: 'would take.' *63,* and *214, a.* **quid**: 'anything.' *168.* **vellent, reverterentur**: 'they wanted,' 'they should return'; in the direct form, *sī vultis, revertiminī. 206,* (2); *218,* (1), a, and *216.* B. 316; A. 588; H. 642.

23. **Īd. Aprīl.**: *Īdūs Aprīlēs,* April 13. *241, a, b.*

8. 1. **Intereā**: 'Meanwhile,' while the more distant troops levied on the Province were gathering at the Rhone, and the Helvetians were waiting for Caesar's answer. **legiōne, mīlitibus**: looked upon as instrument rather than as agent. *131, b.* **sēcum**: *125, c.*

3. **quī . . . īnfluit**: while Caesar's statement is not incorrect, modern geographers consider Lake Geneva as an enlargement of the Rhone, applying the name "Rhone" also to the principal feeder entering the lake at the upper end.

4. **Helvētiīs**: *282.* **mīlia**: *118, a,* and *243, b*; *38, a.* XVIIII.: *ūndēvīgintī. 36,* and *38, b.*

5. **mūrum**: 'a rampart.' *1.* **in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim**:

Pierce Library
Eastern Oregon University
1410 L Avenue

Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī, sē invītō, trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre possit.

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat, sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit.

'sixteen feet high.' How lit.? **pedum**: *10, b*, and *100, a*. B. 203, 2; A. 345, *b*; H. 440, 3. **fossam**: 'trench.' **perdūcit**: 'he constructed.' *175, b*. For much of the distance between Lake Geneva (Fig. 35) and Mill-race Gorge (17½ English miles; N. to chap. 6, l. 4) the left bank of the Rhone is steep enough to make extensive fortifying unnecessary. What Caesar did was, apparently, to make the slopes hard to surmount by cutting the face down from the top for sixteen feet and throwing the dirt out toward the river in such a way as to produce the effect of a rampart and trench (Fig. 34); palisades were probably driven in along the edge of the bluff. See Map 2.

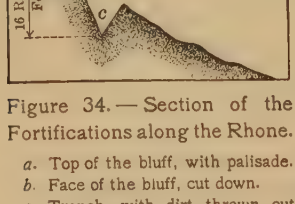


Figure 34. — Section of the Fortifications along the Rhone.

a. Top of the bluff, with palisade.
b. Face of the bluff, cut down.
c. Trench, with dirt thrown out toward the river.

6. **Eō opere perfectō**: 'When this work had been finished.' *13, e*, and *144, b*, (2). **praesidia**: 'detachments' of troops. **dispōnit**: 'he stationed at intervals.' *79, d*. **castella**: 'redoubts'; their probable location is shown on Map 2. **commūnit**: 'he strongly fortified.' **quō**: why used in place of *ut*? *193, b*. B. 282, 1, *a*; H. 568, 7.

7. **sē invītō**: 'without his permission,' lit. 'he (being) unwilling.' *144, a*. **cōnārentur**: *177, b*, and *220*. B. 324, 1; A. 593; H. 652. **prohibēre**: sc. *eōs*.

8. **ea diēs**: April 13; see chap. 7, l. 23.

9. **revertērunt**: 'returned.' *79, d*. **mōre et exemplō**: 'consistently with the settled usage,' lit. 'custom and precedent.' *136, c*. B. 220, 3; H. 475, 3.

10. **iter**: 'right of way.' **ūllī**: here used as a noun, 'to any one.' **vim facere**: 'use force.' *18, a*.

11. **cōnentur**, [sē eōs] **prohibitūrum** [esse]: in the direct form, *sī cōnābiminī, prohibēbō*. *215*; *218*, (1), a. B. 314, 1; A. 580; H. 643.

12. **eā spē dēiectī**: 'disappointed in their expectations,' lit. 'cast

Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent, cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

Figure 35. — Lake Geneva, ancient Lacus Lemannus.

down from that hope.' *57, b.* **spē**: *127, a.* **nāvibus . . . factīs**: 'joined boats together,' attempting to make a floating bridge, 'and made a number of rafts,' for poling across. How lit.? *144, b,* (2).

13. **aliī**: 'others,' relatively few, compared with the number who tried to cross in the ways just mentioned. **vadīs**: *134, a.* **minima**: *32.*

14. **nōn numquam**: 'sometimes.' **interdiū**: 'by day.' **saepius**: *35.* **noctū**: 'at night.'

15. **sī perrumpere possent**: '(to see) whether they could break through'; after *cōnātī. 204,* (4). B. 300, 3; A. 576, *a*; H. 649, II, 3. **cōnātī**: participle, but trans. 'tried.' *61, a,* (1), and *228, a.* **operis mūnītiōne**: 'by the strength of the fortifications,' i.e. *mūrus, fossa, castella.* How lit.?

16. **concursū**: 'by the rapid massing,' at points attacked. *1,* and *20, b.* **tēlīs**: 'by (their) missiles.' **repulsī**: 'forced back.' **cōnātū**: 'they gave up' (lit. 'desisted from') 'the attempt.' *127, a.* B. 214; A. 402; H. 462.

The Helvetians get leave to go through the country of the Sequanians.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā, Sēquanīs invītīs, propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātōre, ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorix grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit, et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per fīnēs suōs

---

9. 1. **Relinquēbātur**: 'There was left.' *90, a.* **ūna via**: 'only the way,' described in chap. 6, ll. 2–5. **quā**: *134, a.* **Sēquanōs**: *282.* **Sēquanīs invītīs**: *144, b,* (4).

2. **angustiās**: 'the narrowness' of the road through the Mill-race Gorge (Fig. 32). **Hīs**: *105.* **suā sponte**: 'by their own influence.' *17, d,* and *157, b.*

3. **possent**: *184, a,* and *66, b.*

4. **eō dēprecātōre**: 'through his intercession.' *144, b,* (6). **impetrārent**: 'they might gain their request.' *177, b,* and *196, a.* B. 268, 3; A. 485, *e*; H. 546.

5. **grātiā et largītiōne**: 'on account of his popularity and lavish giving.' *135, a.* **plūrimum poterat**: 'had very great influence,' lit. 'was able to a very great degree.' *118, b.* A fuller account of Dumnorix is given in chapter 18, where we learn that he had practical control of the revenues of the Aeduans and was bitterly opposed to Caesar; a coin struck by Dumnorix is shown in Fig. 42.

6. **Helvētiīs**: *108, a.* B. 192, 1; A. 384; H. 434.

7. **Orgetorīgis . . . dūxerat**: see chap. 3, ll. 15–18, and Notes.

8. **novīs rēbus studēbat**: 'was eager for a revolution.' *105.* B. 187, II, *a*; A. 368, 3; H. 426, 1. **quam plūrimās**: 'as many . . . as possible.' *153, c.*

9. **suō beneficiō obstrictās**: 'placed under obligation to himself,' lit. 'bound by his own favor.' **volēbat**: *71.* **Itaque**: 'Accordingly.'

10. **rem**: 'the negotiation.' **impetrat**: 'obtained a promise.' How lit.?

Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Caesar, learning of their plan, brings five legions from Italy.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, 5

---

11. **patiantur**: *199, a,* (8). **obsidēs . . . perficit**: 'and brought about an exchange of hostages' (lit. 'that they should give') 'between them.' Hostages were exchanged as a pledge of good faith; if the agreement were violated, they were liable to be put to death with tortures. **utī . . . dent**: after *perficit. 203,* (3). B. 297, 1; A. 568; H. 571.

12. **Sēquanī, Helvētiī**: in partitive apposition with the subject of *dent;* freely, 'the Sequanians (giving hostages).' *91, c.* **itinere**: *127, a.* B. 214, 2; A. 400; H. 464. **nē . . . prohibeant, ut . . . trānseant**: substantive clauses with the subjunctive of purpose, expressing the terms of the agreement for the ratification of which the exchange of hostages was arranged.

10. 1. **renūntiātur**: 'Word was brought (back) to Caesar,' *re-* implying that men had been sent out by him and now returned with the information. *79, d.* **esse**: subject of *renūntiātur;* cf. chap. 7, ll. 12–14, and Notes.

3. **nōn longē . . . absunt**: the territories of the Santones were on the west coast, more than 100 miles from the nearest point of the Province; see Map. If the Helvetians should reach their destination, they would be further from the Province than when they started; yet even at that distance they might become dangerous neighbors because they would no longer be kept on the defensive by the Germans. **quae cīvitās**: 'a state which,' the state of the Tolosates. *165, b.*

4. **Id**: the migration to the territory of the Santones, *iter . . . facere.* **fieret . . . futūrum** [esse]: in the direct form, *fīet . . . erit. 70, a,* and *218,* (1), a.

5. **cum**: *136, a.* **prōvinciae**: 'to' (lit. 'of') 'the Province.' *102.* **ut . . . habēret**: 'to have'; how lit.? *203,* (1). B. 297, 2; A. 569, 2; H. 571, 1. **bellicōsōs**: 'warlike.' *75, f.*

populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret.

Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit, duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit; et, quā proximum

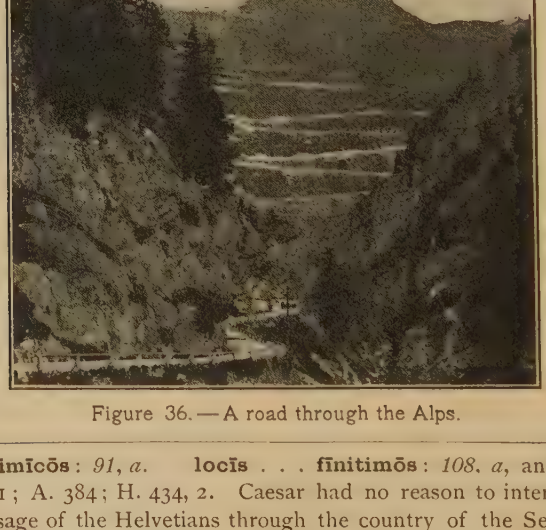


Figure 36. — A road through the Alps.

6. **inimīcōs**: *91, a.* **locīs . . . fīnitimōs**: *108. a*, and *115, b.* B. 192, 1; A. 384; H. 434, 2. Caesar had no reason to interfere with the passage of the Helvetians through the country of the Sequanians unless it was clear that Roman interests would be unfavorably affected by it. **patentibus**: 'open' to attack, not being protected by natural barriers. **frūmentāriīs**: 'productive' of grain. *30.*

8. **mūnītiōnī**: *107, b*, and *74, b.* **T.**: *Titum. 19, a.*

9. **lēgātum**: 'lieutenant-general,' or 'lieutenant.' *313, a.* **praefēcit**: 'placed in charge (of).' *57, b.* **Italiam**: Cisalpine Gaul is here meant. *283, b.*

10. **duās legiōnēs**: the 11th and 12th. **cōnscrībit**: 'raised,' by conscription. **trēs**: sc. *legiōnēs*, the 7th, 8th, and 9th legions. **circum**: 'in the neighborhood of,' lit. 'around'; the winter-quarters were not in the town. *122, a.*

11. **Aquileiam**: a flourishing Roman colony near the head of the

iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Com- 15
plūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī. 20

Adriatic Sea. **hiemābant**: 'were wintering.' **hībernīs**: '(their) winter quarters.' *127, c*, and *335, a, b*.

12. **ulteriōrem Galliam**: *286*. **Alpēs**: *291*. **cum**: *137, b*.

14. **Ibi**: i.e. in the Alps; Caesar's route lay over the pass of Mt. Genèvre, which is one of the best in the Alps. The roads over all the Alpine passes are of the same general character. See Map 1, and Figures 36 and 92. **locīs superiōribus occupātīs**: 'seized commanding heights and.' How lit.? *144, b*, (2).

15. **itinere**: *127, a*. B. 214, 2; A. 400; H. 464. **Complūribus proeliīs**: 'in a number of engagements.' *131, a*.

16. **hīs pulsīs**: 'driving them off.' How lit.? *144, b*, (2), and *160, b*. **ab**: here 'from.'

17. **citeriōris prōvinciae**: 'nearer' from the viewpoint of Rome. *284*. **extrēmum**: i.e. most westerly.

18. **ulteriōris prōvinciae**: *290*. **pervenit**: 'passed through.' *175, b*. **inde**: trace on Map 1 Caesar's route from Ocelum.

19. **exercitum**: three trained legions from near Aquileia, and two legions of recruits just levied in Cisalpine Gaul (the 11th and 12th), with which was joined the tenth legion, released from guarding the fortification below Geneva; for the campaign against the Helvetians Caesar had thus 6 legions, aggregating about 22,000 men, besides cavalry. Light-armed troops, used in the campaign of 57 and afterwards, are not mentioned in Book I. *307, e*.

20. **trāns Rhodanum**: Caesar probably crossed the Rhone by a pontoon bridge, a short distance above the junction with the Arar. The Segusiavi were clients of the Aeduans, hence on good terms with the Romans. Most of their territory was on the west side of the Rhone, but they seem to have occupied also the narrow corner between the Rhone and the Arar.

The Aeduans, Ambarri and Allobroges entreat Caesar's aid against the Helvetians, who are ravaging their country.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium:

Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī vāstārī, līberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint.

---

11. 1. **angustiās**: chap. 9, l. 2, and N.: chap. 6, ll. 2–5, and Notes. It must have taken Caesar 7 or 8 weeks to go to Cisalpine Gaul, gather his forces there, and bring them across the Province to the north side of the Rhone. Meanwhile the Helvetians with their throng of women and children and their loaded carts had slowly threaded the narrow Mill-race Gorge, and had advanced, in all, only about 100 miles.

2. **trādūxerant**: 'had led (across).' **Aeduōrum fīnēs**: on the west side of the Arar, which the van of the Helvetian host already had crossed. See Map 1.

3. **populābantur**: 'were laying waste.' *61, a,* (1), and *175, a.* **sua**: 'their possessions.' *154, a.*

4. **possent**: *184, a.* B. 286, 2; A. 549; H. 598.

5. **rogātum**: 'to ask for.' *231, a.* **auxilium**: 'help.' *231, b.*

6–8. **Direct form**: Ita (*nōs*) omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō *meritī sumus,* ut, paene in cōnspectū exercitūs *tuī,* agrī vāstārī, līberī *nostrī* in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn *dēbuerint.*

6. **Ita sē . . . meritōs esse**: '(saying) that they had so (well) deserved.' *213, b.* **omnī tempore**: 'at all times'; with us "every time" has a different force. More than 40 years before, in 121 B.C., the Aeduans had by treaty been recognized as *sociī populī Rōmānī,* 'allies of the Roman people.' The Romans were first led to intervene in the affairs of Transalpine Gaul, however, not in the interest of the Aeduans, but in response to a request of Massilia for protection against the incursions of Ligurian tribes east of the Rhone; this was in 155 B.C. **dē**: we should say 'of.'

7. **paene**: 'almost.' **nostrī**: *157, c.* **vāstārī**: 'to be laid waste.' *221, a.* **līberī eōrum**: 'their children.'

Eōdem tempore, quō Aeduī, Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, *sēsē, dēpopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre.* Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt, et dēmōnstrant, *sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī.* Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

8. **servitūtem**: 'slavery,' the penalty of capture. *10, f.* **abdūcī**: '(to be) led away.' **expugnārī**: '(to be) taken by assault.' **nōn dēbuerint**: 'ought not.' *197, b.* Why *dēbeant* in the direct form? *177, b,* and *357, b.*

9. **quō**: *147, a.* **Aeduī**: sc. *lēgātōs mittunt.* **necessāriī**: 'relatives,' including connections by marriage. *154, a,* and *91, a.*

10. **cōnsanguineī**: 'kinsmen,' comprising only blood relations. Notwithstanding their close relationship with the Aeduans, the Ambarri had a separate coinage (Fig. 16).

11. **dēpopulātīs agrīs**: '(their) lands had been ravaged and.' How lit.? *59, b,* and *144, b,* (2). B. 112, *b*; A. 190, *b*; H. 222, 2. **prohibēre**: *214, a,* and *213, a.*

12. **trāns Rhodanum**: i.e. on the north side of the Rhone, probably west of the Mill-race Gorge.

13. **fugā**: *136, b.* **sē recipiunt**: 'made their escape.'

14. **dēmōnstrant**: 'stated.' *175, b.* **sibi . . . nihil esse reliquī**: 'that they had nothing left.' *213, a.* **sibi**: *111.* B. 190; A. 373; H. 430. **agrī solum**: 'the bare ground'; how lit.? **reliquī**: used as a noun, dependent on *nihil. 97, a.* B. 201.

15. **Quibus**: *167.* **nōn exspectandum** [esse] **sibi**: 'that he ought not to wait.' *73, e,* and *89, c.* How lit.? **sibi**: *110.*

16. **dum . . . cōnsumptīs**: 'until everything that the allies had should have been destroyed, and.' How lit.? *144, b,* (2).

17. **Santonōs**: 'the (country of) the Santoni'; previously (chap. 10, l. 2), spelled 'Santones.' Caesar was inconsistent in the spelling of this name, which appears in Roman letters on a coin; see Vocab. under *Santones.* The name survives in that of the city Saintes. *19, e,* and *282.* **pervenīrent**: *190, b.* B. 293, III, 2; A. 553; H. 603, II, 2.

Caesar cuts to pieces one division of the Helvetians at the Arar.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētii ratibus ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant.

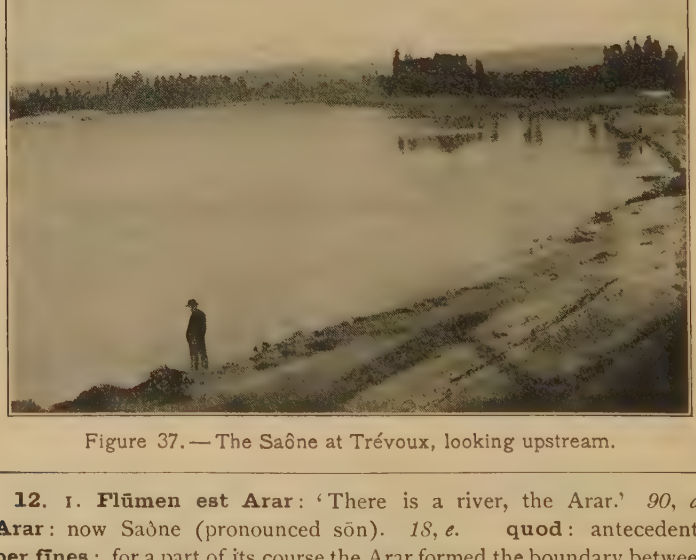


Figure 37. — The Saône at Trévoux, looking upstream.

12. 1. **Flūmen est Arar**: 'There is a river, the Arar.' *90, a.* **Arar**: now Saône (pronounced sōn). *18, e.* **quod**: antecedent? **per fīnes**: for a part of its course the Arar formed the boundary between the Aeduans and the Sequanians, who engaged in violent strifes over the right, claimed by both, to levy tolls on passing vessels. The country along the Arar furnished the best quality of bacon, which was exported to Rome.

2. **incrēdibilī lēnitāte**: 'of incredible sluggishness.' *143, a.* B. 224; A. 415; H. 473, 2. **incrēdibilī**: *74, f.*

3. **oculīs**: 'with the eye.' *92, a,* and *131, a.* **in utram partem**: 'in' (lit. 'into') 'which direction.' *23, a.* **fluat**: *204,* (3). B. 300, 1; A. 574; H. 649, II. **iūdicārī**: '(to) be determined.' *221, a.* **possit**: the subject is the indirect question *in . . . fluat*, but trans. 'it can not,' etc. Near Trévoux, 14 miles north of Lyons, the

Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus, magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est.

---

current of the Saône is to-day for a short distance as sluggish as in Caesar's time (Fig. 37); and here the Helvetians probably crossed the river.

4. **lintribus iūnctīs**: 'by (means of) small boats fastened together'; the floats thus constructed, as well as the rafts, could be easily poled across in the still water. *15, a*, and *131, a*.

5. **explōrātōrēs**: 'scouting parties.' *327*. **trēs ... trādūxisse**: trans. as if *Helvētiōs iam trēs partēs* ('three quarters') *cōpiārum trāns id flūmen dūxisse*. *114, a*. B. 179, 1; A. 395; H. 413.

7. **citrā**: 'on this side of,' i.e. the east side. *122, a*. **Ararim**: *18, e*. **dē tertiā vigiliā**: *242, d*.

8. **legiōnibus tribus**: about 11,000 men. *137, b*. **castrīs**: probably not far from Sathonay, east of the Saône, above its junction with the Rhone. See Map 1. **profectus**: *61, a*, (3).

9. **Eōs**: *160, b*.

10. **impedītōs et inopīnantēs**: 'hampered and off their guard.' The fighting men, scattered throughout the encampment, were completely surprised and had no chance to form a line of battle; the Roman soldiers plied their savage short swords rapidly and effectively. *322, e*. **aggressus**: 'attacking.' *57, c*, and *226, c*.

11. **concīdit**: how different from *concidit?* **reliquī**: *154, a*, and *171, a*. **mandārunt**: = *mandāvērunt*; lit. 'committed themselves to flight,' where we should say 'took to flight.' *64, a*, (1). **in**: trans. 'in'; lit. 'into,' on account of the idea of motion in *abdidērunt*, as if we should say they (went) 'into the neighboring woods' (and) 'concealed themselves.'

12. **pāgus**: 'canton,' properly a territorial division, here used of the inhabitants. **Tigurīnus**: *148, a*.

13. **cīvitās**: *288, a*. **dīvīsa**: *148, c*.

Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit.

Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

Caesar, bridging the Arar, crosses. The Helvetians send envoys.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit.

---

14. **domō**: *130, b.* B. 229, 1, *b*; A. 427, 1; H. 462, 4. **exīsset**: *68, b*, and *185, c.*

15. **memoriā**: 'within the memory.' *147, b.* B. 231; A. 423; H. 487. **L. Cassium . . . mīserat**: see chap. 7, ll. 15–17, and Notes.

16. **sīve . . . sīve**: *235, b.* **cāsū**: 'by chance.' *20, a*, and *135, a.* **deōrum**: *8, d.*

17. **quae pars**: trans. as if *ea pars cīvitātis Helvētiae, quae. 165, c.* **īnsignem**: 'notable.' *25, a.* **calamitātem**: 'disaster.'

18. **populō**: *104, a.* **prīnceps persolvit**: 'was the first to pay.' *152, b.* **poenās**: *92, a.*

20. **Quā**: *167.* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**: *236, d.*

21. **ultus est**: *61, a*, (3), and *176, a.* **quod . . . interfēcerant**: i.e. *quod Tigurīnī, eōdem proeliō quō Cassium (interfēcerant), interfēcerant Lūcium Pīsōnem lēgātum, avum Lūcī Pīsōnis, eius* (Caesar's) *socerī.* Lucius Calpurnius Piso, consul in 58 B.C., was the father of Caesar's fourth wife, Calpurnia, whom he had married in the previous year. *253.* **socerī**: *7, b.*

22. **proeliō**: *147, b.* B. 230, 2; A. 424, *d*; H. 486, 1.

13. 1. **Hōc proeliō factō**: trans. as if *post hōc proelium. 144, b*, (2).

2. **cōnsequī**: 'to pursue.' *61, a*, (3). **posset**: *196, a.* **pontem faciendum cūrat**: 'he (Caesar) had a bridge built,' i.e. by the me-

Helvētiī, repentīnō eius adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus XX aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit:

Figure 38. — The Rhone below Geneva.

chanics, *fabrī*, of whom there were a number enrolled in the legions; it was doubtless a pontoon bridge. *229, b*, and *310, b*. B. 337, 8, *b*, 2; A. 500, 4; H. 622. **in**: 'over.'

4. **repentīnō**: 'unexpected.' **commōtī**: 'alarmed.' **cum**, etc.: trans. as if *cum intellegerent illum* (Caesar) *ūnō diē fēcisse* ('had accomplished') *id quod*, etc. *178*, and *185, c*.

5. **XX**: *vīgintī*. *38, b*. **ut flūmen trānsīrent**: a substantive clause explaining *id;* trans. 'the crossing of the river.' *203*, (4).

7. **cuius lēgātiōnis**: 'and of this delegation.' *167*. **prīnceps**: *10, b*. **bellō Cassiānō**: 'in the war with Cassius.' *147, b*. As the defeat of Cassius took place in 107 B.C., at the time of which Caesar was writing, 58 B.C., Divico must have been between 70 and 80 years old. The Helvetians preferred to avoid a conflict with Caesar, but the tone of Divico's language made a mutual understanding impossible.

8. **cum Caesare ēgit**: 'treated with Caesar.' *137, c*.

Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī, quī flūmen trānsīssent, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dē-

---

9–13. **Direct form**: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs *faciet*, in eam partem *ībunt* atque ibi *erunt Helvētiī*, ubi eōs (*tū*) *cōnstitueris* atque esse *volueris*; sīn bellō persequī *persevērābis*, *reminīscere* et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

9. **faceret, itūrōs** [esse], **futūrōs** [esse]: *89, c*, and *218*, (1), a. B. 314, 1; A. 589; H. 642, 643.

10. **ubi**: = *in quā*.

11. **cōnstituisset, voluisset**: in the direct form, future perfect indicative; the tense is influenced by the tense of *ēgit*. *177, a*. B. 319, B, *a*; H. 644, 2. **bellō**: *131, a*. **persequī**: sc. *eōs*, 'to assail (them).' *61, a*, (3), and *221, a*. **persevērāret**: '(Caesar) should continue.'

12. **reminīscerētur**: 'he should remember.' *216*. B. 316; A. 588; H. 642. **veteris**: *26, a*. **incommodī**: the defeat of Cassius. Why genitive? *103, a*. B. 206, 2; A. 350, *c*; H. 454.

13. **prīstinae**: 'old-time.' **virtūtis**: *75, c*, and *81*.

14–21. **Direct form**: Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus *es*, cum eī, quī flūmen *trānsierant*, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, *nōlī* ob eam rem aut *tuae* magnopere virtūtī *tribuere*, aut *nōs dēspicere*; (*nōs*) ita ā patribus maiōribusque *nostrīs didicimus*, ut magis virtūte *contendāmus* quam dolō aut īnsidiīs *nītāmur*. Quārē *nōlī committere* ut is locus, ubi *cōnstiterimus* (future perfect), ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen *capiat* aut memoriam *prōdat*.

14. **Quod**: *198, b*. **imprōvīsō**: 'suddenly.' **pāgum**: what canton? see chap. 12. **adortus esset, trānsīssent**: *214, a*.

15. **suīs**: 'to their (countrymen).' *154, a*. **possent**: subjunctive also in the direct form. *185, c*.

16. **rem**: the 'fact' expressed by the clause *Quod . . . adortus esset*. **magnopere**: adv., takes the place of a direct object; 'that he should not presume overmuch.' **virtūtī**: *104, b*. **tribueret**: *216*. B.

spiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent, quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret, ut is locus, ubi cōnstitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen 20 *caperet aut memoriam prōderet.*

Caesar lays down conditions; the Helvetians scornfully reject them.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit:

Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī

316; A. 588, N. 2; H. 642. **aut . . . aut**: *235, a*, and *b*. **ipsōs**: 'them,' i.e. *Helvētiōs*. *162, b*.

17. **ita . . . ut**: *197, b*. **maiōribus**: 'forefathers.' *154, a*. **didicisse**: 'had learned.' *178*. **ut . . . contenderent**: 'to fight.' *197, a*. B. 284, 1; A. 537, 1; H. 570.

18. **magis**: 'rather.' *35*. **quam** [ut] **nīterentur**: 'than to rely upon.' **dolō aut īnsidiīs**: 'deceit or ambuscades.' *131, c*. B. 218, 3; A. 431; H. 476, 3.

19. **Quārē**: *237, a*. **nē committeret, ut is locus . . . caperet**: 'he should not allow that place to take'; how lit.? **committeret**: cf. *tribueret*, l. 16. **ubi cōnstitissent**: 'where they should have taken their stand,' in order to fight the Romans.

20. **interneciōne**: 'annihilation.' **exercitūs**: 'of an army,' i.e. Caesar's army. **nōmen**: so the name Bloody Brook, in Massachusetts, commemorates an Indian massacre.

21. **caperet**: *56*, and *203*, (3). B. 297, 1; A. 568, N. 1; H. 571, 3. **memoriam prōderet**: i.e. *memoriam calamitātis posterīs prōderet* ('transmit').

14. 1. **Hīs**: *lēgātīs Helvētiōrum. 104, b*.

2–7. **Direct form**: Eō *mihi* minus dubitātiōnis *datur*, quod eās rēs, quās *commemorāvistis*, memoriā *teneō*, atque eō gravius *ferō*, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī *accidērunt;* quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn *fuit* difficile cavēre; sed eō *deceptus est*, quod neque commissum [esse] ā sē *intellegēbat*, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum [esse] *putābat*.

2. **Eō**: 'for this reason,' explained by the following *quod*-clause. *135, a*, and *160, c*. **sibi . . . darī**: 'that he had less hesitation,' lit. 'that less of hesitation is given to him.' *97, b*. B. 201, 2; A. 346, *a*, 3; H. 442. **sibi**: *158, a*, and *104, a*.

Helvētiī commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret.

---

3. **commemorāssent**: *64, a,* (1). **memoriā tenēret**: 'he remembered.' *131, a.* **eō gravius ferre, quō minus**: sc. *sē*, 'that he felt all the more indignant' (lit. 'that he bears them by that the more heavily'), 'the less.' *140.* B. 223; A. 414, *a*; H. 479.

4. **meritō populī Rōmānī**: 'in accordance with what was due to' (lit. 'the desert of') 'the Roman people.' *136, c.* B. 220, 3. **accidissent**: 'they had happened.' *214, a.* **quī**: = *populus Rōmānus*, 'it,' or 'they.' *167.*

Figure 39. — Rusted Gallic swords and scabbards, found in France.

5. **alicuius**: from *aliquī. 49, a.* **iniūriae**: *102.* B. 204, 1; A. 349, *a*; H. 451, 1. **sibi**: *109, a.* **fuisse**: why *fuit* in the direct form? *208, b.* B. 304, 3, *a*; A. 437, *a*; H. 583, 3.

6. **cavēre**: 'to take precautions,' lit. 'to be on guard,' against reprisals, which the Roman people would have expected if they had in any way wronged the Helvetians. **eō**: as in l. 2. **dēceptum**: *eum* (i.e. *populum Rōmānum*) *deceptum esse*, 'that they had been deceived.' **neque . . . putāret**: 'on the one hand they understood that nothing had been done by them which should cause them to fear, and on the other they thought that they ought not to be afraid without cause.' How lit.? **commissum** [esse]: impersonal, but trans. with *neque* as if *et nihil commissum esse.*

7. **timēret**: subjunctive also in the direct form; trans. *quārē* as if *propter quod. 194, a.* B. 283, 1; A. 535, *a*; H. 591, 4. **timendum** [esse]: impersonal, lit. 'it ought not to be feared.' *73, e.*

Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod, eō invītō, iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod 10
Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse?

Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem

---

8–11. **Direct form**: Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī *volō*, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod, *mē* invītō, iter per prōvinciam per vim *temptāvistis*, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas *vexāvistis*, memoriam dēpōnere *possum?*

8. **Quod**: lit. 'as to which,' referring to the thought of the preceding sentence; trans. 'Even.' *118, d.* **veteris**: *28, b.* **contumēliae**: 'indignity,' the destruction of Cassius's army, in 107 B.C. *103, a.* B. 206, 2; A. 350, *b*; H. 454. **vellet**: *218*, (1), a. **num . . . posse**: *179, b*, (1).

9. **recentium iniūriārum**: dependent on *memoriam* in l. 11; 'of fresh outrages,' specified in the following appositional clauses introduced by *quod*, 'that.' *198, b*, and *214, a.* B. 299, 1, *a*; A. 572; H. 588, 3. **eō**: = *Caesare;* 'in despite of him,' lit. 'he (being) unwilling.' *144, b*, (5). B. 227, 1; A. 419, *a*; H. 489.

10. **temptāssent**: *64, a*, (1). **quod, quod**: sc. *vexāssent. 239, a*, and *89, a.*

11. **Allobrogas**: *19, f.* **dēpōnere**: 'put aside.' *221, a.*

12–17. **Direct form**: Quod *vestrā* victōriā tam īnsolenter *glōriāminī*, quodque tam diū *vōs* impūne iniūriās tulisse *admīrāminī*, *eōdem pertinet. Cōnsuērunt* enim *dī immortālēs*, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī *volunt*, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

12. **Quod**: 'The fact that'; the two clauses introduced by *quod* stand as subject of *pertinēre. 198, b*, and *214, a.* **suā victōriā**: 'of their victory' over the Romans under Cassius, 107 B.C. *135, a*, and *81.* **īnsolenter**: 'arrogantly.' *34, a.* **glōriārentur**: 'they were boasting.' *214, a.*

13. **tam . . . tulisse**: 'that they so long had kept on perpetrating wrongs without punishment.' How lit.? **admīrārentur**: 'they marveled.' *61, a*, (1). **eōdem pertinēre**: 'pointed in the same direction,' toward impending retribution for the wrongs committed by the Helvetians.

pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum.

Dīvicō respondit:

Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs

---

14. **Cōnsuēsse**: 'are wont.' *64, a,* (2), and *176, b*; also, *214, a.* **deōs**: *8, d.* **quō**: *193, b.* B. 282, 1, *a*; A. 531, 2, *a*; H. 568, 7. **gravius**: 'more bitterly.' *34, a.*

15. **ex commūtātiōne rērum**: 'in consequence of reverses.' How lit.? **doleant**: 'may suffer.' **scelere**: 'wickedness.' *13, e.*

16. **ulcīscī**: *223, b.* **hīs**: 'to those,' antecedent of *quōs* in l. 15. **secundiōrēs rēs**: 'a more prosperous estate.' **diūturniōrem**: 'more prolonged.' *76, b.*

17. **impūnitātem**: 'escape from punishment.' *106, a.* **concēdere**: after *Cōnsuēsse* in l. 14. *221, a,* and *113, b.*

18–21. **Direct form**: Cum *haec* ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs *ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur*, utī ea, quae *pollicēminī*, *vōs* factūrōs [esse] *intellegam*, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum *intulistis*, item sī Allobrogibus *satisfaciētis*, *vōbīscum* pācem *faciam.*

18. **Cum**: 'Although.' *187.* B. 309; A. 549; H. 598. **ea**: *haec* in the direct form. *160, a.* **tamen**: *236, a.*

19. **ea**: object of *factūrōs* [*esse*], with which supply *eōs* as subject. **polliceantur**: 'they promised.' *61, a,* (2). **Aeduīs**: dat. after *satisfaciant. 105.* **dē**: 'for.'

20. **ipsīs**: the Aeduans. **sociīs**: the Ambarri.

21. **satisfaciant**: 'they should make restitution.' *79, b.*

23–25. **Direct form**: Ita *Helvētiī* ā maiōribus suīs *īnstitūtī sunt*, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; *huius* reī *populus Rōmānus est testis.*

23. **Ita īnstitūtōs esse**: 'had inherited such traditions.' How lit.? **utī . . . cōnsuērint**: 'that they were accustomed.' *64, a,* (2), and *197, b.*

accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. 25

Hōc respōnsō datō, discessit.

The Helvetians resume their march, defeating Caesar's cavalry; Caesar follows.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī, cupidius novissimum 5 agmen īnsecūtī, aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus

---

25. **esse testem**: 'was a witness'; we should say 'could furnish testimony.'

26. **Hōc respōnsō datō**: 'after making this reply.' *144, b,* (2). **discessit**: 'he (Divico) withdrew.'

15. 1. **Posterō**: 'the following.' *33.* **movent**: sc. *Helvētiī. 175, b.* **Idem**: neuter accusative. *45.*

2. **equitātum**: 'his cavalry.' *157, a,* and *309, b.*

4. **coāctum habēbat**: *229, a.* B. 337, 7; A. 497, *b*; H. 431, 3. **quī videant**: 'to see'; how lit.? *193, a.* B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; H. 590. **videant**: plural because the subject *quī* is plural, on account of the idea of *equitēs* in the antecedent *equitātum. 164, d,* and *238, h.* **quās in partēs**: 'in what direction.' How lit.? *48, a.*

5. **faciant**: *204,* (2). B. 300, 1; A. 574; H. 649, II. **Quī**: *167.* **cupidius**: 'too eagerly.' *153, a.* **novissimum agmen**: the 'rear' of the Helvetians. *27, b,* and *12, e.*

6. **īnsecūtī**: *61, a,* (3). **aliēnō locō**: 'on unfavorable ground,' probably too hilly to admit of free movement. *145, c,* and *6, c.*

7. **dē nostrīs**: trans. as if *nostrōrum. 97, d.* From *paucī . . . cadunt* we infer that the rest made good their escape through flight. The kind of weapons used by the Helvetians may be inferred from the spear heads and dart heads shown in Fig. 40.

8. **sublātī**: 'elated'; see *tollō* in the Vocab. **quīngentīs**: *36.* **equitibus**: *131, b.*

tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre.

Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissi-

9. **prōpulerant**: 'had routed'; but the 4000 cavalry of Caesar were Gauls, only the officers being Romans. **audācius**: 'with greater boldness.' *34, a.* **subsistere**: 'to halt,' as they were marching.

10. **novissimō agmine**: 'with (their) rear,' attacking the Romans who were following them. *131, b,* and *152, a.* **proeliō**: *131, a.* **nostrōs**: 'our men.' *154, a.*

Figure 40. — Gallic spear heads and dart heads.

Of iron, of various types. Nos. 2, 4, 5, 7, and 8 were found in the Helvetian country, near Lake Neuchâtel; no. 6 was found on the site of Bibracte.

11. **lacessere**: 'to harass.' **coepērunt**: *72, b.* **suōs**: 'his soldiers.' *154, a.*

12. **satis habēbat**: 'considered (it) sufficient'; the object of *habēbat* is *prohibēre*, and *satis* is used as a predicate accusative. *115, a.* **in praesentiā**: 'for the present.' **rapīnīs, pabulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque**: 'from pillaging, foraging, and laying waste' the country. *92, a,* and *127, a.* B. 214, 2; A. 401; H. 464.

14. **Ita**: *197, b.* **diēs**: *118, a.* B. 181; A. 423; H. 417.

mum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

The Aeduans do not bring grain which they have promised; Liscus discloses treachery.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat, propterea minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus

---

15. **prīmum** [agmen]: 'van.' *328.* **amplius**: 'more,' subject of *interesset*. *154, a.*

16. **quīnīs, sēnīs**: distributive, 'five or six miles' each day. *36.* **mīlibus**: *129, a*; *243, b*, and *38, a*. B. 217; A. 406; H. 471. **interesset**: 'intervened.' *66, a.*

16. 1. **Interim**: 'Meanwhile.' **Aeduōs, frūmentum**: *116, a.* B. 178, 1, *a*; A. 396; H. 411. **quod essent pollicitī**: 'which (he said) they had promised'; Caesar the writer presents the statement of Caesar the commander as if it were quoted from someone else. *214, b.* B. 323; A. 592, 3; H. 649, 1.

2. **pūblicē**: 'in the name of the state.' **flāgitāre**: 'kept demanding.' *182.* B. 335; A. 463; H. 610. **frīgorā**: 'cold seasons,' the spring being later than in Italy. *92, c.*

3. **frūmenta**: the plural is used by Caesar of standing grain; 'crops of grain.' **mātūra**: 'ripe.' *81.* **nē . . . quidem**: 'not even.' *237, c.* **pābulī**: 'of fodder,' required for the baggage animals as well as the horses of the cavalry.

4. **autem**: *236, a.* **frūmentō**: after *ūtī*. *131, c.* B. 218, 1; A. 410; H. 477.

5. **flūmine**: *134, a.* B. 218, 9; A. 429, *a*; H. 476. **Ararī**: *18, e.* **subvexerat**: 'he had brought up.'

6. **āverterant**: the Helvetians had at first followed the valley of the Arar (*Saône*) northward, but now 'had turned away from the Arar' and passed westward into the valley of the Liger (*Loire*), avoiding the mountainous country opposite the place where they had crossed the Arar; see Map 1.

discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat,

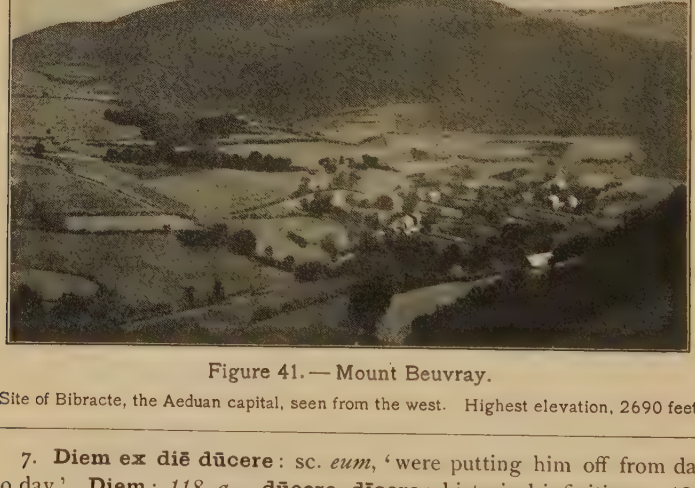


Figure 41. — Mount Beuvray.

Site of Bibracte, the Aeduan capital, seen from the west. Highest elevation, 2690 feet.

---

7. **Diem ex diē dūcere**: sc. *eum*, 'were putting him off from day to day.' **Diem**: *118, a.* **dūcere, dīcere**: historical infinitives. *182.* **cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse**: sc. *frūmentum*, 'that (the grain) was being collected' from individuals, 'that it was being brought' to Caesar's headquarters, 'that it was just at hand'; climax, with asyndeton. *238, a,* and *239, d.*

9. **diūtius**: 'too long.' *153, a.* **īnstāre**: 'was near.' *178,* and *213, a.* **diē**: not translated. *165, a.*

10. **frūmentum**: object of *mētīrī.* **mētīrī**: 'to measure out.' *61, a,* (4), and *222, a.* B. 327, 1; A. 454; H. 615. How often did the soldiers receive grain? *317.* **oportēret**: *73, a, b,* and *214, a.* **convocātīs**: 'having called together.' How lit.? *144, b,* (2).

12. **Dīviciācō et Liscō**: sc. *convocātīs.* **summō**: *33.* **magistrātuī**: *107, a,* and *82, b.* **praeerat**: we say 'held.' *66, a.*

quem 'vergobretum' appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eīs nōn sublevētur, praesertim cum, magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus, bellum suscēperit; multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus, ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit:

---

13. **vergobretum**: 'vergobret.' *115, a*, and *289, a*. Meaning? See Vocab. **quī**: 'who'; the antecedent is *vergobretum*. **creātur**: 'is elected.' The seat of government was at Bibracte, which was securely situated on the top of a mountain (Fig. 41). **annuus**: 'annually.' *151*.

14. **vītae necisque**: 'of life and death.' *102*. **in suōs**: 'over his countrymen.' *154, a*. **eōs accūsat**: 'he took them to task.' *175, b*.

15. **emī**: 'be purchased:' *55*. **neque . . . neque**: *233, a*. **posset**: sc. *frūmentum*. *220*.

16. **necessāriō tempore**: 'at so critical a time.' *147, a*. **hostibus**: *144, b*, (2).

17. **nōn sublevētur**: with *quod*, 'because (as he said) he received no help from them,' lit. 'was not helped by them.' *214, b*; see N. to chap. 16, l. 1, *quod essent pollicitī*. **praesertim cum**: 'especially since.' *184, a, b*. **magnā ex parte**: 'in great measure.' **eōrum precibus**: 'by their entreaties.' *135, a*.

18. **bellum**: 'campaign' against the Helvetians. **multō**: *140*. B. 223; A. 414; H. 471, 10.

19. **sit dēstitūtus**: translate as if pluperfect, 'he had been abandoned'; the time is past relatively to that of **queritur**, which is a historical present, 'he complained.' *177, b*, and *214, b*.

17. 2. **quod**: as antecedent supply *id* with *prōpōnit*. *160, c*. **anteā**: 'previously.' **tacuerat**: 'had kept to himself.' How lit.? **prōpōnit**: 'brought forward (saying),' i.e. 'declared.' *213, a*.

3–11. **Direct form**: *Nōn nūllī sunt*, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum *valet*, quī prīvātim plūs *possunt* quam ipsī magistrātūs.

Hī sēditiōsā atque improbā orātiōne multitūdinem *dēterrent*, nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod (*cōnferre*) *dēbent*; (*dīcunt*) praestāre . . . sint ēreptūrī.

Esse nōn nūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs.

Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre, nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre dēbēre, quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī.

---

3. **Esse nōn nūllōs**: *that there were some men.* *90, a*, and *212, b* and *c*; also *23, a*, and *154, a*. **plūrimum valeat**: 'carried very great weight.' *32*, and *118, b*.

4. **prīvātim**: 'as private individuals.' *77*. **plūs possint**: 'had more power.' The state of affairs here depicted arose from the feudal organization of society, which rendered it possible for the great landholders to control multitudes of personal adherents. Cf. chap. 4, ll. 4–8 and Book VI, chap. 15. *288, 289*.

6. **sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne**: 'by seditious and shameless propagandism.' Among the Aeduans there was a strong party opposed to the Romans.

7. **dēterrēre**: 'were holding back' by inspiring fear. **nē . . . cōnferant**: 'from furnishing.' *201, a*. B. 295, 3; A. 558, *b*; H. 566. **cōnferant**: plural because of the idea of plurality in *multitūdinem*. *173, b*. **dēbeant**: 'they were under obligation to furnish'; lit. 'owed.' **praestāre . . . ēreptūrī**: parenthetical indirect discourse, summarizing the line of argument (*ōrātiōne*, l. 6) by which the anti-Roman leaders influenced the Aeduan populace; '(saying) that it was better,' etc. *213, a*.

8. **sī iam . . . nōn possint**: 'if they (the Aeduans) could no longer.' *218*, (1), a. Formerly, for a considerable period, the Aeduans had been the leading people in Gaul (VI. 13). **Gallōrum**: 'of Gauls,' i.e. of Helvetians.

9. **imperia**: plural as referring to the acts of a sovereign power, trans. 'the rule.' **perferre**: 'to endure'; subject of *praestāre*. **neque dubitāre dēbēre**: sc. *sē* 'and they ought not to doubt that.'

10. **superāverint**: 'should have vanquished.' *218*, (1), b, and *219*. **ūnā**: adverb.

11. **Aeduīs**: dative. *109, b*. B. 188, 2, *d*; A. 381; H. 427.

Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coercērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

Privately Caesar learns that Dumnorix is the arch-traitor.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit,

---

sint ēreptūrī: 'they were going to take away'; subjunctive also in direct discourse. *201, c,* and *63.*

12–16. **Direct form**: Ab eīsdem *tua* cōnsilia, quaeque in castrīs *geruntur*, hostibus *ēnūntiantur; hī ā mē coercērī* nōn *possunt.* Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus *tibi ēnūntiāvī, intellegō*, quantō id cum perīculō *fēcerim*, et ob eam causam, quam diū *potuī, tacuī.*

12. **nostra**: from the Roman point of view. **quaeque . . . gerantur**: 'and whatever is done,' lit. 'and what things are done.'

13. **sē**: Liscus. **coercērī**: 'be restrained'; Liscus's 'power of life and death,' which he had as vergobret, was here of no avail. **Quīn etiam**: 'moreover.'

14. **quod . . . ēnūntiārit**: *64, a,* (1), and *198, c.* **coāctus**: 'under compulsion,' by reason of the vehemence of Caesar's complaints (chap. 16, ll. 14–15) and his position as the highest Aeduan official.

15. **id**: refers to the clause *quod . . . ēnūntiārit. 160, c.* **perīculō**: 'danger.' *137, c,* and *84.* **fēcerit**: trans. as if pluperfect. *204,* (3). **quam diū**: 'as long as.'

16. **tacuisse**: intransitive, sc. *sē* as subject; 'he had kept silent.'

18. 1. **Dumnorīgem**: *10, c.* **Dīviciācī**: *19, d,* and *289, c.*

2. **dēsignārī**: 'was meant.' *213, a.* **sentiēbat**: 'perceived.' **plūribus praesentibus**: 'with many persons present.' *144, b,* (2).

3. **rēs**: 'matters,' i.e. the real reasons why the state of the Aeduans had not made good its promises. **iactārī**: 'should be discussed.' *223, a.* **celeriter**: 'quickly,' so as to shut off discussion. *34, a.* **concilium**: 'the assembly' of leading Aeduans (*prīncipibus*, chap. 16, l. 11). **dīmittit**: 'dismissed.'

Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat; dīcit līberius atque audācius.

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit, reperit esse vēra: *Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod, illō licente, contrā licērī audeat nēmō.*

---

4. **retinet**: '(but) detained.' *238, a.* **Quaerit ex** [eō] **solō ea, quae**: '(Caesar) asked him alone about what,' lit. 'those things which.' *116, c.* **conventū**: 'the conference.' *1.*

5. **dīcit**: sc. *Liscus.* **līberius**: 'more freely.' *34, a.*

6. **sēcrētō**: 'privately.' *34, b.* **reperit**: 'he found.' **esse vēra**: sc. *ea*, 'that they (Liscus's statements) were true.' *148, c.*

7–11. **Direct form**: *Ipse est Dumnorīx*, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, *cupidus* rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta *habet*, propterea quod, illō licente, contrā licēri *audet* nēmō.

7. **Ipsum**: in predicate, but trans. 'that in fact it was Dumnorix,' as Caesar had surmised (l. 2). How lit.? *162, a.* For the indirect discourse see *212, a–c.* **summā audāciā**: '(a man) of the utmost audacity.' *143, a.* B. 224; A. 415; H. 473, 2.

8. **līberālitātem**: 'lavish giving.'

9. **annōs**: *118, a.* **portōria**: 'tolls,' levied chiefly, we may assume, upon goods passing through the country along the roads and rivers. **reliqua**: *171, a.*

10. **vectīgālia**: 'revenues' in general; *vectīgal* (derived from *vectus*, participle of *vehō*) means that which is 'brought in' to the public treasury. *16, d.* **pretiō**: 'price.' *141.* **redēmpta habēre**: trans. as if *redēmisse* '(he) had farmed.' *229, a.* The Aeduan revenues were "farmed out" as among the Romans; that is, the privilege of collecting taxes was sold at auction to the highest bidder, who guaranteed to the state a certain sum, did the collecting through his agents, and kept for himself all that he could make above the amount paid into the public treasury and the costs of collection. The "publicans" of the New Testament were collectors of taxes under this system, which afforded large opportunity for corruption and extortion.

11. **illō licente**: 'when he made a bid.' *61, a,* (2), and *144, a.*

Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse.

---

contrā: here an adverb. **nēmō**: *12, d.* Since no one dared to bid against Dumnorix, he could obtain the right to collect the taxes on terms most favorable to himself. (Fig. 42.)

Figure 42. — Coin of Dumnorix.

Silver. Obverse, helmeted head; inscription DUBNOCOU. Reverse, warrior carrying a Gallic standard with the image of a boar, of which only the lower part is seen; inscription, DUBNOREX.

12–19. **Direct form**: Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem *auxit* et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās *comparāvit*. Magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper *alit* et circum sē *habet;* neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter *potest*, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō *collocāvit; ipse* ex Helvētiīs uxōrem *habet*, sorōrem . . . *collocāvit.*

12. **et . . . et**: *233, a.* **rem familiārem**: 'private fortune.' **auxisse**: '(he) had increased.'

13. **ad largiendum**: 'for bribery.' *61, a,* (4), and *230,* (3). **comparāsse**: *64, a,* (1).

14. **suō sūmptū**: 'at his own expense.' **alere**: 'maintained.' **neque**: trans. as if *et nōn*. *233, a.*

15. **sōlum**: 'only.' *236, d.* **domī**: *20, c,* and *146.* **largiter posse**: 'had great influence.' How lit.?

16. **huius potentiae causā**: 'to increase this influence.' How lit.? *135, b.* **mātrem**: *11, e.* **Biturīgibus**: *10, c.*

17. **illīc**: 'of that country.' How lit.? **collocāsse**: '(he) had given in marriage.' **ipsum**: '(he) himself,' Dumnorix.

18. **uxōrem**: 'wife,' a daughter of Orgetorix (chap. 3, l. 17). *13, d.* **sorōrem ex mātre**: 'half-sister, on his mother's side.' **propinquās**: 'his female relatives.'

19. **nūptum in . . . collocāsse**: 'had settled in marriage among . . .' How lit.? *231, a.* B. 340, 1, *b*; A. 509; H. 633, 1.

Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērārc.

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam

---

20–26. **Direct form**: *Favet* et *cupit* Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, *ōdit* etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod adventū potentia eius *dēminūta* [*est*] et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris *est* restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī *veniat*: imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam *habet*, grātiā *dēspērat*.

20. **Favēre et cupere**: '(he) favored and wished (success).' **affīnitātem**: 'relationship.' **ōdisse**: '(he) hated.' *72, a, b.*

21. **suō nōmine**: 'personally.' How lit.? *135, a.*

22. **dēminūta** [sit]: 'had been lessened.' **in antīquum locum**: 'to his former position,' which the rise of Dumnorix had obscured. Diviciacus was a man of some culture. Five years previously, in 63 B.C., he had visited Rome.

23. **sit restitūtus**: 'had been restored.' **Sī . . . venīre**: *218*, (2). **quid**: *49, a*, and *168*.

24. **accidat**: here used of something unfavorable; our expression "if anything should happen to him," has a similar underlying suggestion. **per**: 'with the help of.' *123, a.* **rēgnī obtinendī**: *230*, (1).

25. **imperiō**: 'under the supremacy.' *138.* **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**: *236, d.* **dē rēgnō**: 'of the kingship.'

27. **quaerendō**: *230*, (4). **quod**, etc.: 'that (in) the disastrous cavalry engagement which had taken place'; *proelium* is attracted into the relative clause, while its proper place in the antecedent clause is taken by *fugae*.

28. **diēbus**: *140.* **initium**: 'the beginning.'

29. **factum**: sc. *esse*. The implication is that Dumnorix treacherously started with the Aeduan contingent to flee, and that this precipitated a general rout.

equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat), eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

Though convinced of the treachery of Dumnorix, Caesar consults his brother Diviciacus before taking action.

19. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia, nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs, fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret.

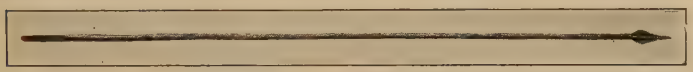


Figure 43. — Helvetian spear.
Found near the yoke shown in Figure 29.

30. **equitātuī**: *107, a.* **auxiliō Caesarī**: 'as an aid to Caesar.' *112, b.* B. 191, 2, *b*; A. 382, 1; H. 433, 2.

31. **esse perterritum**: 'had been thrown into a panic.'

19. 1. **Quibus rēbus cognitīs**: 'Having found out these things.' How lit.? **suspīciōnēs**: 'grounds for suspicion.'

2. **rēs**: 'facts,' specified in the following *quod*-clauses. **accēderent**: trans. as if *adderentur*, 'were added.' **quod . . . accūsārētur**: *198, b,* and *220.* B. 324, 1; A. 593; H. 652.

3. **obsidēs dandōs cūrāsset**: 'had effected an exchange of hostages.' *229, b.* **inter eōs**: between the two peoples, the Sequanians and the Helvetians.

4. **iniussū suō et cīvitātis**: 'without his own (Caesar's) authorization and that of the state' of the Aeduans. *135, b.*

5. **īnscientibus ipsīs**: 'without their knowledge'; *ipsīs* = *Caesare et Aeduīs. 144, b,* (2). **magistrātū Aeduōrum**: Liscus, the vergobret (chap. 16).

6. **satis . . . causae**: *97, b.* B. 201, 2; A. 346, *a,* 4; H. 443. **esse**: 'that there was.' *90, a.* **in eum ipse animadverteret**: 'he himself should punish him,' lit. 'should give attention to him.'

7. **animadverteret**: subjunctive also in direct discourse; *quārē* = *propter quam. 194, a.* **aut . . . aut**: *235, a, b.*

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam, nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet, verēbātur.

Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit, quae, ipsō prae-

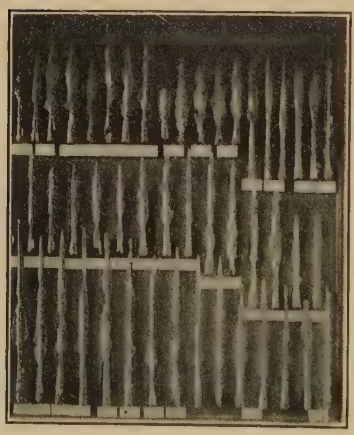


Figure 44. — Lance heads found at Alesia, now in the Museum of St. Germain.

8. **rēbus**: *105*. **ūnum**: 'one consideration.' *154, a*. **repugnābat**: 'weighed against,' lit. 'contended against.'

9. **frātris**: *11, e*. **studium**: 'devotion.' *81*.

10. **ēgregiam**: 'remarkable.' **temperantiam**: 'self-control.' *238, a*, and *81*.

11. **cognōverat**: 'was familiar with.' *176, b*. **eius**: trans. as if *Dumnorīgis*. **suppliciō**: 'by the punishment.'

12. **offenderet**: with *nē*, 'that he might offend.' *202*. **verēbātur**: 'he was afraid.' *61, a*, (2).

13. **cōnārētur**: *189, b*. **Dīviciācum vocārī**: 'that Diviciacus be summoned.' *223, a*.

14. **cotīdiānīs interpretibus**: 'the ordinary interpreters.' Diviciacus, notwithstanding his visit to Rome, had evidently not learned to speak Latin; and Caesar did not understand Celtic. *10, e*. **per**: *123, a*.

15. **Galliae prōvinciae**: *290*. **familiārem**: 'intimate friend.'

16. **cui . . . habēbat**: 'in' (lit. 'to') 'whom he had the utmost confidence in' (lit. 'of') 'all matters.'

17. **eō**: Diviciacus. **colloquitur**: 'he conversed.' **com-**

sente, in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit, quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cognitā, statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

Moved by the pleading of Diviciacus, Caesar pardons Dumnorix, but warns him.

20. Diviciācus, multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: *Scīre sē, illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulē-*

---

monefacit: 'he called to mind.' **quae**: *48, a*, and *204*, (2). **ipsō**: Diviciacus.

19. **sēparātim**: 'separately.' *77*. **quisque**: *49, a*. **apud sē**: 'in his (Caesar's) presence.' *158, a*.

20. **Petit atque hortātur**: 'He besought and urged (Diviciacus).' *60*. **ut . . . statuat, iubeat**: *199, a*. **eius**: dependent on *animī*: trans., with *sine offēnsiōne*, 'without suffering his (Diviciacus's) feelings to be hurt.' How lit.? **vel . . . vel**: *235, a, b*. **ipse . . . statuat**: lit., 'that he (Caesar) himself pass judgment'; the connection with the preceding *hortātur* shows that the underlying thought is: 'to permit him (Caesar), having heard the case, to pronounce judgment on Dumnorix (*dē eō*), or direct the state (of the Aeduans) to pronounce judgment.'

20. 1. **lacrimīs**: *136, a*. **complexus**: 'embracing.' *61, a*, (3), and *226, c*.

2. **obsecrāre**: 'to entreat (him).' **nē quid gravius statueret**: 'not to take too harsh measures.' How lit.? **quid**: substantive form. *49, a*; *117, a*, and *168*. **gravius**: *153, a*. **statueret**: *199, a*.

3. **Scīre sē**: '(saying) that he knew.' *213, b*, and *178*. **nec quemquam**: 'and that no one.' *49, a*, and *168*. **ex eō**: 'on account of that fact.' *160, c*. **plūs dolōris**: *25, b*, and *97, b*. B. 201, 1; A. 346, *a*, 3; H. 442.

4. **ipse**: Diviciacus. **grātiā**: *135, a*. **plūrimum**: sc. *posset*. *118, b*.

5. **domī**: i.e. *in Aeduīs*. *20, c*, and *146*. **ille**: Dumnorix.

scentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur.

Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum, nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat, fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, utī

---

minimum: *32*, and *118*, *b*. **adulēscentiam**: 'his youth.' Dumnorix apparently was considerably younger than Diviciacus.

6. **per sē crēvisset**: '(Dumnorix) had increased (in resources and strength) through his help.' *123*, *a*. **quibus**: 'and these.' *167*. **opibus**: 'resources.' Why ablative? *131*, *c*.

7. **ad minuendam grātiam**: 'to lessen his (Diviciacus's) popularity.' *230*, (3). **perniciem**: 'destruction.'

9. **frāternō**: i.e. *frātris*; 'by affection for his brother,' we should say. **exīstimātiōne vulgī**: 'by public opinion.' How lit.? *6*, *b*.

10. **Quod**: *118*, *d*. **eī**: = *Dumnorīgī*. **ā Caesare**: 'at the hands of Caesar.' **accidisset**: *218*, (1), b.

11. **cum**: 'while.' **eum . . . eum**: 'such a relation of friendship with Caesar.' How lit.?

12. **nōn factum** [esse]: 'that it was not done,' after *exīstimātūrum* [esse]. *213*, *a*. **suā voluntāte**: *136*, *c*. B. 220, 3; H. 473, 3. **futūrum** [esse]: 'it would come about'; the subject is *utī . . . āverterentur*. *203*, (1).

14. **cum . . . peteret**: *185*, *c*. **plūribus verbīs**: 'with very many words; so we often say, 'at great length.' *138*. **flēns**: *226*, *a*, and *227*, *b*.

15. **dextram**: 'right hand.' **prēndit**: 'grasped.' **cōnsōlātus rogat**: 'reassuring (Diviciacus) he asked (him).' *61*, *a*, (1), and *226*, *c*.

16. **ōrandī**: 'of his pleading.' *230*, (1). **faciat**: 'to make.' *200*, *a*. B. 295, 8; A. 565, *a*; H. 565, 4. **tantī . . . esse**: 'that his (Diviciacus's) influence with himself (*sē* refers to Caesar) was so great,' lit. 'of so great account.' *101*. B. 203, 3; A. 417; H. 448, 1.

et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet.

Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit.

Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Caesar plans to crush the Helvetians by a double surprise.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus, hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō,

---

17. **et . . . et**: *233, a.* **reī pūblicae**: *102.* **eius voluntātī**: 'in response to his wishes'; dative of indirect object on account of the meaning 'give' or 'present' in *con-dōnet. 104, a.*

18. **condōnet**: 'he would disregard.' *177, b.*

19. **frātrem adhibet**: 'he had the brother (Diviciacus) present.' *238, a.* **quae**: *48, a.*

20. **reprehendat**: 'he objected to.' *204,* (2). **intellegat**: = *sciat.* **cīvitās**: i.e. of the Aeduans, whose agreement to furnish grain had been broken.

21. **monet**: 'he warned (Dumnorix).' **in reliquum tempus**: 'for the future.'

22. **vītet**: 'he should avoid.' *199, a.* **praeterita**: neuter plural, 'the past.' *154, a.* **Dīviciācō frātrī**: dative, but trans., 'for the sake of Diviciacus, his brother.' *104, a.*

24. **cūstōdēs**: 'watches,' corresponding with the detectives of our day; for Dumnorix was not imprisoned. **agat**: *204,* (2). **quibuscum**: *125, c.*

21. 1. **Eōdem diē**: 'on the same day,' that he had summoned the council of Gallic leaders in camp (chap. 16, ll. 10–11), and had had the interviews with Diviciacus and Dumnorix. **explōrātōribus**: *327.* **hostēs. . . octō**: *213, a.* The Helvetians were now in the valley of the Liger (*Loire*), southeast of Bibracte; see Map 1.

2. **sub monte**: 'at the foot of an elevation.' *124, a.* **cōnsēdisse**: 'had encamped.' **mīlia passuum**: *118, a,* and *243, a, b.*

quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, quī cognōscerent, mīsit. Renūntiātum est, facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus, quī iter cognōverant,

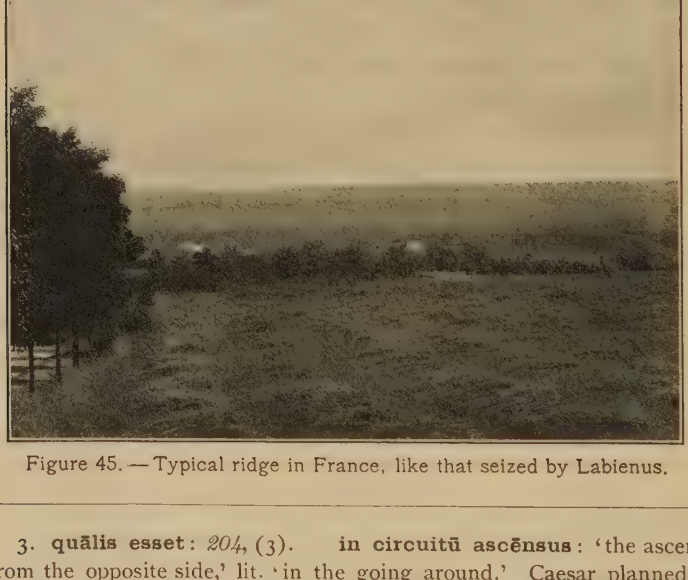


Figure 45. — Typical ridge in France, like that seized by Labienus.

3. **quālis esset**: *204*, (3). **in circuitū ascēnsus**: 'the ascent from the opposite side,' lit. 'in the going around.' Caesar planned a flank movement, with a surprise attack upon the Helvetians from two sides at once; a Roman force, following a circuitous route, would from the rear secretly ascend the height at the foot of which the Helvetians were encamped, and charge down upon them from above, while Caesar with the rest of the army attacked them in front.

4. **cognōscerent**: *193*, *a*. **mīsit**: sc. *explōrātōrēs* as antecedent of *quī*. **esse**: sc. *eum* (= *ascēnsum*).

5. **dē tertiā vigiliā**: *242*, *c* and *d*. **prō praetōre**: when a lieutenant was given a special responsibility, to act outside the presence of the commander, he was called 'lieutenant in place of the general,' or as we say 'second in command.' *313*.

6. **eīs ducibus**: 'with those as guides,' referring to the patrols previously sent out.

summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsiliī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit.

P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur, et in exercitū L. Sullae, et posteā in M. Crassī, fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

Through false information the plan miscarries.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit *montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Galli-*

7. **summum iugum montis**: 'the highest ridge of the elevation,' which was apparently long and uneven (Fig. 45). **ascendere**: 'to ascend.' *81*, and *200, b*. **quid suī cōnsiliī sit**: 'what his plan was,' lit. 'what is of his plan.' *94, d*. B. 198, 3; A. 343, *b*; H. 447.

8. **dē quārtā vigiliā**: *242, c, d*. **itinere, quō**: *134, a*. B. 218, 9; A. 429, *a*.

9. **equitātum**: the cavalry were to feel out the enemy. *328*.

11. **reī mīlitāris**: 'in the art of war.' *21, b*, and *102*. B. 204, 1; A. 349, *a*; H. 451, 1. **perītissimus**: *153, a*, and *148, c*. This favorable characterization of Considius is presented as a reason for having sent so unreliable an officer on so important a reconnoiter.

12. **L. Sullae, M. Crassī**: both of high repute as generals, Sulla for his services first in the war with Jugurtha in Africa, then in the Social War, and in the East; Crassus, for his decisive defeat of Spartacus (chap. 40, l. 17, and N.). *19, a*. **M. Crassī**: sc. *exercitū*.

22. 1. **Prīmā lūce**: 'At daybreak.' *152, a*. B. 241, 1; A. 293; H. 497, 4. As it was now not far from July 1, daybreak was about four o'clock. **summus**: *152, a*.

3. **passibus**: *129, a*. **abesset, cognitus esset**: *185, c*. **neque**: *233, a*. **captīvīs**: 'prisoners.' **comperit**: 'he ascertained.'

5. **equō admissō**: *144, b*, (7). **accurrit**: 'hastened.' How lit.?

6. **occupārī**: *occupō*, meaning 'seize,' 'take possession of,' is

cīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit.

Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat.

Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit, et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium, timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse.

Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur, et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

---

generally much stronger than its English derivative "occupy." *81.* **voluerit**: *214, a.* **Gallicīs armīs**: *349.*

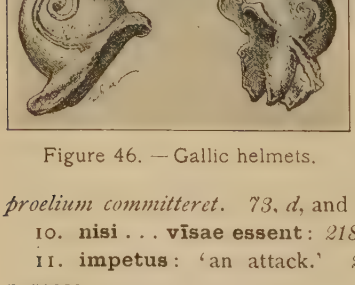


Figure 46. — Gallic helmets.

7. **īnsignibus**: 'decorations,' used especially of the crests of helmets. Two Gallic helmets are shown in Fig. 46.

8. **collem**: 'hill.' *14, b.* **subdūcit**: 'led up.' **aciem īnstruit**: 'drew up a line of battle.' *337, a.*

9. **erat eī praeceptum**: 'he had been ordered'; lit. 'it had been ordered to him'; the subject is *nē proelium committeret. 73, d,* and *199, b.* B. 295, 1; A. 566; H. 565.

10. **nisi . . . vīsae essent**: *218,* (1), b. **prope**: 'near.' *122, a.*

11. **impetus**: 'an attack.' *20, a, b.* **fieret**: subjunctive of purpose.

12. **nostrōs**: the troops with Caesar. *154, a.* **proeliō**: *127, a.* B. 214, 2; A. 401; H. 464.

13. **Multō diē**: 'Late in the day'; ablative of time. **per**: *123, a.*

15. **timōre**: 'fear,' used especially of a cowardly fear. *11, d.* **perterritum**: 'thoroughly frightened.' *79, b.* **quod**: as antecedent supply *id,* object of *renūntiāvisse. 160, c.* **prō vīsō**: 'as seen.' *154, a.*

17. **quō cōnsuērat intervāllō**: = *eō intervāllō, quō sequī cōn-*

Caesar turns to go to Bibracte for supplies; the Helvetians attack his marching column on the rear.

23. Postrīdiē eius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit.

Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē, superiōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn

---

suērat (*cōnsuēverat*), but trans. 'at the usual interval'; this was five or six miles (chap. 15, ll. 15–16). *138*, and *165*, *c*. **mīlia passuum**: *118*, *a*, and *243*, *a*.

23. 1. **Postrīdiē eius diēī**: 'the next day.' *94*, *c*. **bīduum supererat**: 'two days remained.' *79*, *b*.

2. **cum**: trans. freely, 'before.' *185*, *c*. **mētīrī**: *61*, *a*, (4). **oportēret**: *73*, *a*, *b*.

3. **Bibracte**: *16*, *c*, and Vocab.; also Fig. 41. **oppidō**: *91*, *a*, and *293*, *b*. **longē**: *153*, *b*. **cōpiōsissimō**: 'wealthiest.' *75*, *f*.

4. **mīlibus**: *129*, *a*, and *243*, *b*. How many English miles? **reī frūmentāriae**: 'the supply of grain,' or 'supplies.' *105*.

5. **prōspiciendum** [esse]: 'that he ought to provide for.' How lit.? *73*, *e*.

6. **Bibracte**: here accusative. *119*, *a*. B. 182, 1, *a*; A. 427, 2; H. 418.

7. **fugitīvōs**: 'runaway slaves'; deserters from an army were called *perfugae* (I. 28, l. 4). *74*, *g*. **L.**: *19*, *a*. Lucius Aemilius was a Roman officer in charge of a squad of Gallic horsemen. **decuriōnis**: 'decurion.' *309*, *c*.

9. **exīstimārent**: *183*, *a*. B. 286, 1; A. 592, 3; H. 588, II. **eō magis**: 'all the more on this account,' *eō* being explained by the following *quod*-clause. *135*, *a*. B. 219; A. 404; H. 475.

10. **prīdiē**: 'on the day before.' **superiōribus locīs occupātīs**: 'having seized a higher position,' referring to the exploit of Labienus with two legions (chap. 21, ll. 5–8). How lit.? *144*, *b*, (5).

commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō, nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

Romans and Helvetians prepare for battle, the Romans on sloping ground. The Helvetians advance.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit.

Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; atque suprā sē in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōn-

---

11. **rē**: *127, a.* **interclūdī**: 'be cut off from.' **posse**: sc. *Rōmānōs.*

12. **cōnfīderent**: 'were confident.' **commūtātō, conversō**: trans. 'having changed,' 'having reversed;' or, 'changing,' 'reversing.' How lit.? *144, a,* and *239, c.*

13. **ā**: *126, c.* **agmine**: derivation? *74, d,* and Vocab.

24. 1. **Postquam**: 'After.' *188.* **id**: why accusative? *113, c.*

2. **collem**: the hill of Armecy (ar'me-ci), about 16 English miles southeast of Mt. Beuvray, the site of ancient Bibracte, and not far from the village of Montmort. See Map 3, **A**. **sustinēret**: *193, a,* and *328.* B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; H. 590.

4. **interim**: 'meanwhile,' while the cavalry were holding back the enemy; it must have taken Caesar at least two hours to change over his marching column, which was five or six miles long, into battle lines. **in colle mediō**: *152, a.* B. 241, 1; A. 293; H. 497, 4. **triplicem aciem**: the four legions stood side by side, with the cohorts of each legion arranged in three lines (*337, a*). The triple line was not straight, but followed the contour of the hillside, and was about an English mile in length; see Map 3, **B–B**.

5. **legiōnum**: *98, a.* **veterānārum**: 'veteran.' What four legions are meant? *307, e.* **suprā sē**: Caesar was near the front. **summō**: *152, a.*

6. **legiōnēs . . . cōnscrīpserat**: the 11th and 12th legions; see chap. 10, ll. 10–11, and *284.* **proximē**: *35.*

scrīpserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī et eum ab eīs, quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant, mūnīrī iussit. 10

Figure 47. — Site of the battle with the Helvetians.

View from the hill where Caesar's army was posted, looking toward the right. The hill on which Caesar took up his position, and the height to which the Helvetians retreated, are similar to this hill in formation and appearance.

7. **auxilia**: *308*. **ac**: 'and (thus).' **tōtum montem**: 'the entire upper part' of the hill; see N. to chap. 2, l. 10, *monte Iūrā*.

8. **hominibus**: *131, b*. **complērī**: 'be completely filled.' By occupying the gently rounding crest of the hill (cf. Fig. 47) Caesar strengthened his position in case his battle lines, posted halfway up the slope, should be forced back. **intereā**: 'in the meantime,' while the troops were taking their positions. **sarcinās**: 'packs.' *330*.

9. **eīs**: the two raw legions mentioned in l. 6.

10. **mūnīrī**: 'be fortified,' by a trench and a rampart formed from the earth thrown out of the trench. The trench, which for a part of the distance was double, has been traced by excavations; the earthen rampart has disappeared. The line of defense thus hastily made on the highest part of the hill was semicircular in shape (Map 3, **A**).

Helvētiī, cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī, cōnfertissimā aciē reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

The Romans charge, forcing the Helvetians back.

25. Caesar, prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut, aequātō omnium perīculō, spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit.

---

11. **secūtī**: *226, c.* **impedīmenta**: 'baggage.' After the Helvetian fighting men turned back in order to attack Caesar, the long line of carts turned and came back also and formed a great corral, or laager, probably at the spot marked "Helvetian Corral" on Map 3. *74, d.*

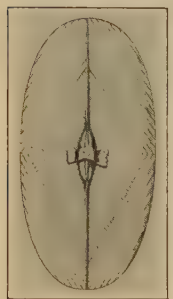


Figure 48. — Gallic shield.

Of wickerwork, with metallic boss; about four and a half English feet in height and twenty-five inches wide. Shown on a life-size statue of a Gallic warrior.

12. **ipsī**: the fighting men, as distinguished from the old men, women, and children with the baggage. **cōnfertissimā aciē**: 'by (their) very close formation.' *131, a.* **reiectō**: 'hurled back and.' How lit.? *144, b,* (2).

13. **phalange factā**: the Gauls, forming in 'a compact mass,' probably fifteen to twenty men deep, moved forward slowly but with almost irresistible momentum; those in the front rank held their large shields (Fig. 48) so that these would overlap, presenting a firm barrier to the enemy. *18, f.* **sub**: the Helvetians advanced uphill, and so 'up against' the first line. *124, a.*

14. **successērunt**: 'pressed forward'; see Map 3, **E–E**.

25. 1. **suō**: sc. *equō remōtō. 144, b,* (2). **deinde**: *237, b.* **omnium equīs**: 'the horses of all' the mounted officers and Caesar's staff, not of the cavalry. According to Plutarch Caesar said that after he had won the victory he should need the horse for the pursuit of the enemy.

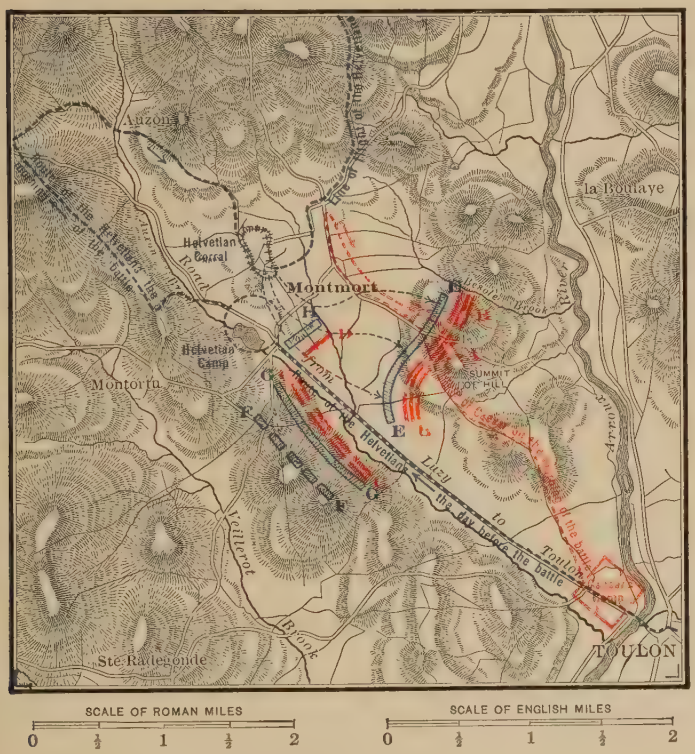
2. **aequātō**: 'by equalizing.' *144, b,* (6).

3. **tolleret**: *196, a.* **cohortātus**: 'having harangued,' or 'harangued and.' It was customary for Roman commanders to address their soldiers just before going into action. *228, a.*

MAP 3

THE BATTLE WITH THE HELVETIANS

Book I, 24–26 To face page 60



EXPLANATION

On the day before the battle the Helvetians probably crossed the Arroux at Toulon and encamped near Montmort; a part of the site of the camp is now covered by a pond. Caesar, following, encamped near the Arroux.

A. Semicircular trench hastily dug by the XIth and XIIth legions on the hill (chap. 24, ll. 5–10).

B–B. The four veteran legions in battle order, three lines, first position.

C–C. First and second Roman lines, second position (chap. 25, ll. 21–23).

D. Third Roman line, second position, facing the Boians and Tulingians.

E–E. First position of the Helvetians (chap. 24, ll. 12–14).

F–F. Second position of the Helvetians, on a height (chap. 25, ll. 12–15).

G–G. Third position of the Helvetians, resuming the attack (chap. 25, ll. 18–20).

H. Boians and Tulingians (chap. 25, ll. 15–18).

Mīlitēs, ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt.

Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō, quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere neque, sinistrā impedītā, satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut, diū iactātō brac-

4. **pīlīs missīs**: 'hurling their pikes,' with precision and terrible effect, 'from their higher position' on the slope. *322, d*, and *144, b*, (6).

5. **perfrēgērunt**: 'broke up.' **Eā . . . dēstrictīs**: 'Having thrown this (formation) into disorder they drew their swords and.' How lit.? *322, (e)*.

6. **impetum fēcērunt**: 'charged.' The first-line soldiers probably allowed the Helvetians to approach within 60 feet before hurling their pikes and charging.

7. **Gallīs . . . impedīmentō**: 'a great hindrance' (lit. 'for a great hindrance'), 'to the Gauls.' *112, b*. B. 191, 2, *a*; A. 382, 1; H. 433. **ad pugnam**: 'in fighting.' **erat**: the subject is the following *quod*-clause. *198, b*.

8. **scūtīs**: 'shields' (Fig. 48). **ūnō ictū pīlōrum**: 'by the blow of a single pike,' we should say. *92, a*. **trānsfīxīs et colligātīs**: 'pierced and pinned together.' *144, b*, (2).

9. **ferrum**: the 'iron' of the pike (*322, d*) was long enough to pierce two or more overlapping shields, and was of soft metal, so that it

Figure 49. — The "iron" of a pike.

The pike was carried by one of Caesar's soldiers, and the iron was bent in action; it was found at Alesia. The length is 22¾ inches, including the barbed point.

would bend easily; the hard barbed point also hindered withdrawal (Fig. 49). **sē īnflexisset**: 'had become bent.' *185, c*. **ēvellere**: 'to pull (it) out.' **sinistrā impedītā**: 'since the left hand,' which carried the shield, 'was hampered.' *144, b*, (3).

10. **satis commodē**: 'to advantage.' How lit.? **multī**: emphatic position; subject of *praeoptārent*. *353, d*. **ut**: 'so that.' **iactātō bracchiō**: 'having jerked their arms back and forth' in the effort to pull the bent pike iron out of their shields. How lit.? *144, b*, (2).

chiō, praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere, et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī, et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt.

Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Boiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab

---

11. **praeoptārent**: 'preferred.' **manū**: *127, a.* **ēmittere**: 'to drop.' **nūdō**: 'unprotected' by a shield. **corpore**: *13, f,* and *144, b,* (7).

12. **vulneribus**: *13, e,* and *135, a.* **dēfessī**: 'exhausted.' **pedem referre**: 'to fall back.' *69, b,* and *79, d.*

13. **mōns suberat**: 'there was a height near by,' southwest of the hill of Armecy; see Map 3. *66, a.* **mīlle**: *38, a.* **spatiō**: 'at a distance.' *147, c.* **eō**: adverb. **sē recipere**: 'to retreat.'

15. **Captō**: 'reached,' i.e. by the Helvetians; Map 3, **F–F**. *144, b,* (2). **Boiī et Tulingī**: see chap. 5, ll. 10–14.

16. **hominum**: *97, a.* **mīlibus**: *131, a.* **agmen hostium claudēbant**: 'were at the end of the enemy's marching column.'

17. **novissimīs** (= *novissimō agminī*), **praesidiō**: *112, b.* B. 191, 2, *a*; A. 382, 1; H. 433. **ex itinere**: 'directly after marching,' changing from marching order to fighting order as they came up. In the morning as the long column of emigrants started out, the 15,000 Boians and Tulingians formed the vanguard. When the order passed along the column to halt and turn back (chap. 23, l. 12), they became the rearguard, and were several miles away when the battle commenced. As the host of non-combatants were forming a corral with the carts, they marched by it and reached the field of battle just as the Romans were following the retreating Helvetians. **ab latere apertō**: 'on the exposed flank.' *126, c.* Since the shield was carried on the left arm, 'the exposed side' of the soldier was the right side, whence the expression was carried over to a body of soldiers in action. In the present instance, the three Roman lines, still retaining, in the confusion of battle, their distinct formation, were following the stubbornly resisting Helvetians toward the southwest from their original position, when the Boians and Tulingians came against them from the west, thus 'attacking' the Romans on the right flank. See Map 3, **H**.

latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre; et, id cōnspicātī, Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt.

Rōmānī conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt; prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac summōtīs resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

The Helvetians are totally defeated. Caesar pursues the fleeing.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent,

18. **circumvenīre**: 'to move around them,' so as to fall upon the Romans in the rear; sc. *coepērunt*. **cōnspicātī**: 'perceiving.' *226, c.*

19. **rūrsus**: 'again.' Derivation? See Vocab.

20. **redintegrāre**: 'to renew,' again assuming the offensive. Map 3, **G–G**.

21. **conversa . . . intulērunt**: 'changed front and advanced in two divisions,' one division facing straight ahead (*prīma et secunda aciēs*), the other (*tertia aciēs*) facing the Boians and Tulingians. Strictly speaking, only the third line changed front (Map 3, **D**); the first and second lines were already in position to meet the new attack of the Helvetians (Map 3, **C–C**). *228, a,* and *325.*

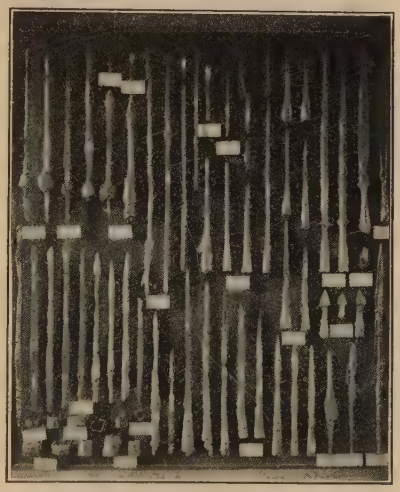


Figure 50. — Roman pike irons, found at Alesia.

22. **victīs ac summōtīs**: 'those who had been beaten and driven back.' *154, a,* and *227, a,* (4). **tertia**: sc. *aciēs*. *91, c.*

26. 1. **ancipitī proeliō**: 'in two battles,' we should say. How lit.? *131, a.* **ancipitī**: *26, b.* **diū**: *35.* **ācriter**: *34, a.* **pugnātum est**: *73, d.*

2. **possent**: sc. *hostēs*. *185, c.* B. 288, 1, B; A. 546; H. 600, II.

alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit.

Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs rotāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, im-

---

3. **alterī, alterī**: 'the combatants on one side' (i.e. *Helvētiī*), 'those on the other' (*Boiī et Tulingī*). How lit.? *91, c*, and *154, a*.

4. **carrōs**: arranged for defense around the corral (Map 3). Cf. chap. 3, l. 3 and N. **sē contulērunt**: 'retired,' still fighting; there was no disorderly rout. **Nam**: *237, a*.

5. **proeliō**: *147, b*. **cum**: 'although.' *187*. **hōrā**: *242, a*. **vesperum**: 'evening.' *7, b*.

6. **āversum**: 'turned to flight.' Caesar speaks with evident admiration of the bravery of the enemy. **nēmō**: *12, d*.

7. **Ad multam noctem**: 'Until late at night.' *17, b*, and *152, a*. **ad**: here 'at,' or 'by.'

8. **prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant**: 'had made a rampart of the carts' (Fig. 51). How lit.? **locō superiōre**: the top of the carts.

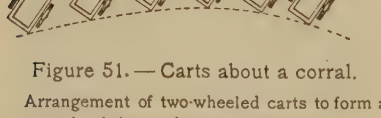


Figure 51. — Carts about a corral.

Arrangement of two-wheeled carts to form a rampart for defense about an encampment.

9. **coniciēbant**: 'kept hurling.' *175, a*.

10. **rotās**: 'wheels.' These in many cases were doubtless solid disks of wood, which Roman weapons would not pierce. **matarās ac trāgulās**: 'spears and darts.' *349*, and Fig. 40. **subiciēbant**: notice the force of *sub-*, 'kept throwing from below' as the Roman soldiers attacked the rampart of carts.

11. **vulnerābant**: 'were wounding.' There must have been moonlight, or at least clear starlight, else the Gauls could not have aimed their weapons so well.

pedimentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō, in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī, trīduum morātī, eōs sequī nōn potuissent.

Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, *nē eōs frū-*

12. **castrīs**: 'encampment,' i.e. the corral. *131, c.* B. 218, 1; A. 410; H. 477. Here were the old men, the women, and the children, of whom a large number were immediately slaughtered.

13. **ē fīliīs**: trans. as if *fīliōrum. 97, d.* **captus est**: *172, b.*

14. **cxxx**: *centum trīgintā. 36*, and *38, b.*

15. **nocte**: *147, c.* **iērunt**: *68, a.* **partem**: *118, a.*

16. **intermissō**: 'breaking.' How lit.? As the survivors seemingly traveled at night only during the first night, the thought in *nūllam . . . intermissō* is substantially the same as that in *eā . . . iērunt;* such repetitions are characteristic of dictated matter. *275.* **fīnēs Lingonum**: more than fifty miles north of the battlefield.

Figure 52. — Care of the wounded.

At the left a legionary, seriously wounded, sits on a rock and two comrades are helping him to get up. At the right another sits while his companion binds up a wound on his leg. Ancient relief.

17. **cum**: *184, a.* **vulnera mīlitum**: the victory must have cost the Romans dearly. Roman soldiers caring for wounded companions are shown in Fig. 52. **sepultūram**: 'burial.'

18. **occīsōrum**: 'the slain,' chiefly Gauls. *154, a.* The number of Gauls that perished in this battle has been estimated by some as high as 100,000, or even higher. Prompt burial was necessary for the health of the friendly Aeduans, in whose country Caesar was. **trīduum**: 'three days.' *118, a.*

20. **Lingonas**: *19, f.* **litterās**: 'letters.' **nūntiōs**: 'mes-

mentō nēve āliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

The Helvetians beg for terms; one division tries to escape.

27. Helvētii, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt.

Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, circiter hominum mīlia VI eius pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē, armīs

---

sages,' to be delivered orally. **nē**: '(saying) that they should not.' *213, b,* and *212, a,* **eōs**: trans. as if *Helvētiōs*.

21. **iuvārent**: 'supply,' lit. 'aid.' *216.* B. 316; A. 588; H. 642, 4. **quī**: *167.* **iūvissent**: sc. *eōs*, = *Helvētiōs. 218,* (1), b. **sē . . . habitūrum**: in full, *sē eōs* (= *Lingonas*) *eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs habēret, habitūrum esse*, but trans. 'he would consider them in the same light as the Helvetians.' *145, c.*

27. 1. **inopiā**: 'lack.' Why ablative? **lēgātōs**: 'envoys.'

2. **dēditiōne**: 'surrender.' **Quī**: *167.* **convēnissent**: *113, b.*

3. **sē prōiēcissent**: 'had prostrated themselves.' **suppliciter**: 'in suppliant fashion.'

4. **flentēs**: *227, b.* **eōs**: = *Helvētiōs*, not *lēgātōs*.

5. **essent**: See N. to *vellent*, chap. 28, l. 2. **iussisset**: *185, c,* and *200, b.* **pāruērunt**: 'they obeyed.'

6. **postquam**: *188, a.* **servōs**: 'slaves.' **quī perfūgissent**: 'who (as he said) had fled.' *214, b.*

7. **poposcit**: 'he demanded.' **ea**: comprising *obsidēs, arma,* (*fugitīvōs*) *servōs* of l. 6; neuter plural under the same rule of agreement as predicate adjectives. *150, b.* **conquīruntur**: 'were being sought for.' Why present? *190, a.*

8. **cōnferuntur**: *69, b.* **VI**: = *sex. 36.*

9. **perterritī**: with *mīlia. 150, c,* and *238, h.* **nē**: 'that.' *202.* **armīs trāditīs**: 'after giving up their arms.' *144, b,* (2).

trāditīs, suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

Caesar deals with the fugitive Verbigens, and sends the rest (excepting the Boians) back to the country whence they migrated.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs, utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et, quod, omnibus frūgibus āmissīs,

---

10. **salūtis**: 'of safety.' *10, f.*

11. **in tantā multitūdine**: i.e. *cum* ('since') *tanta multitūdō dēditīciōrum esset.* **dēditīciōrum**: 'of those who had surrendered.' **occultārī**: 'be kept hidden.'

12. **ignōrārī**: 'remain unnoticed.' How lit.? **exīstimārent**: *183, b.* **prīmā**: *152, a.*

28. 1. **Quod . . . resciit**: 'Now when Caesar found this out,' referring to the flight of the Verbigens. *167.* **ubi**: *188, a.* **quōrum**: precedes its antecedent *hīs*, which is in the dative after *imperāvit. 105.*

2. **redūcerent**: 'bring (them) back.' *199, a.* **sibi**: 'in his sight.' *109, a.* B. 188, 1, N.; A. 376; H. 425, 4. **pūrgātī**: 'free from guilt.' How lit.? *221, b.* B. 328, 2; H. 612, 1. **vellent**: in indirect discourse as a part of the order; in the direct form, *sī vultis. 71.*

3. **reductōs**: sc. *eōs*, 'after they had been brought back.' How lit.? *227, a,* (4). **in hostium numerō**: 'as enemies.' The 6000 Verbigens were probably massacred, as a terrible warning; but they may have been sold into slavery. **reliquōs**: *171, a.*

4. **perfugīs**: 'deserters.' **accēpit**: *57, a.*

5. **suōs**: *167, b.* **unde**: = *ē quibus.* **erant profectī**: *61, a,* (3).

6. **frūgibus āmissīs**: 'since all the produce of the fields was gone'; no crops had been planted this season. How lit.? *144, b,* (3).

domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit, eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

Boiōs, petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

---

7. **domī**: i.e. in their own country. *146.* **erat**: sc. *eīs.* **famem**: 'hunger.' *15, b.* **tolerārent**: 'satisfy.' *194, a.*

8. **facerent**: 'furnish.' Why subjunctive? **oppida, vīcōs**: how many? See chap. 5, ll. 3–4.

9. **quōs**: *163, c.* **incenderant**: when? See chap. 5.

10. **eā maximē ratiōne**: 'especially for this reason.' *161, a.* **nōluit**: *71*, and *223, a.* **unde**: = *ē quō.*

11. **vacāre**: 'remain unoccupied.' **bonitātem**: 'good quality.' *76, a.*

13. **trānsīrent**: *196, a.* As the Helvetians were now reduced to about one third of their former number, much of their land must have been left unoccupied, and was probably soon seized upon by German immigrants. **prōvinciae**: *290.* The northernmost part of the Province was held by the Allobroges; see Map 1.

15. **Boiōs**: emphatic position; *Aeduīs* (dative after *concessit*), *petentibus ut Boiōs in fīnibus suīs collocārent, quod* (*Boiī*) *ēgregiā virtūte cognitī erant,* (*Caesar*) *concessit.* The Aeduans, hard pressed in their strifes with the Sequanians, desired an accession of strength. *353, d.* **virtūte**: *143, a.*

16. **collocārent**: *199, a.* **concessit**: 'he granted' the request. **quibus**: trans. as if *et eīs. 167.*

17. **quōsque**: = *et eōs.* **posteā**: after the great uprising in Gaul, narrated in Book VII. **parem . . . atque**: 'the same' (lit. 'like') 'as.' *233, c.* B. 341, 1, *c*; A. 324, *c*; H. 657, 1, N.

The number of the Helvetians and their allies.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt, litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae, et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlia XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Boiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo.

---

29. 1. **castrīs**: the corral, indicated on Map 3. **tabulae**: 'tablets,' such as those generally used for business documents (Fig. 53). These were of light-colored wood, and made with a rim like that of a slate. The surface inside the rim was coated with a thin layer of wax, on which writing was done with a pointed stilus. The writing appeared on the wood, which showed through wherever the stilus penetrated the wax. **litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae**: 'written in Greek characters,' which were used also by the Druids (VI. 14). On account of the antiquity of Massilia (*293, a*), the Greek alphabet must have become familiar to the inhabitants of southern Gaul at an early date.

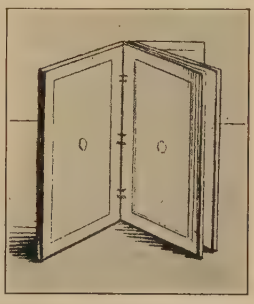


Figure 53.—Writing tablets. The four tablets contain six pages for writing, in addition to the two outside covers.

2. **relātae**: sc. *sunt*. *69, b*. **tabulīs**: *165, a*.

3. **nōminātim**: 'by name.' *77*. **ratiō**: 'statement.' **quī**: *48, b*. **domō**: *130, b*. **exīsset**: *68, b*, and *204*, (2).

4. **possent**: *194, a*. **puerī**: 'children.' *7, a*.

5. **senēs**: *18, b*. **mulierēs**: *11, c*. **Quārum**: *167*. **rērum**: 'items,' here used of persons; Caesar was thinking of the numbers rather than the personality. **summa**: 'the aggregate.'

6. **capitum Helvētiōrum**: trans. as if *Helvētiōrum*; we say "so many head" of stock, not of human beings. **CCLXIII**: *ducenta sexāgintā tria*. *37, b*, and *d*, and *38, b*. **XXXVI**, etc.: read in the Latin. *36*, and *37, b*.

8. **quī**, etc.: i.e. *eī, quī arma ferre possent* (*194, a*), *erant*, etc. **ad**: adverb, 'approximately.'

Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII.
Eōrum, quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

The Campaign against Ariovistus. 30–54

The Gallic leaders congratulate Caesar, request a conference.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: *Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō, flōrentissimīs rēbus, domōs*

---

9. **fuērunt**: plural on account of the influence of the predicate noun *mīlia*. *173, b.* **ad**: adverb modifying *ccclxviii* (*trecenta duodēseptuāgintā*).

10. **domum**: *119, b.* **rediērunt**: 'returned.' *68, b.* **cēnsū**: 'a census.' *80, b.* How many of the Helvetian host failed to return?

30. 1. **Galliae**: Celtic Gaul. *287, b.*

2. **prīncipēs**: *10, b.* **cīvitātum**: *10, f*, and *288, a*, and *b*. **grātulātum**: *231, a.*

3–11. **Direct form**: *Intellegimus*, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō *repetierīs*, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō, flōrentissimīs rēbus, domōs suās Helvētiī *relīquērunt*, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent, etc.

3. **Intellegere sēsē, tametsī**: '(Saying) that they understood that, although.' *212, a, b*, and *c*, (1); also *213, b.* **iniūriīs**: with two genitives, *Helvetiōrum* (*95*) and *populī* (*102*); trans. 'wrongs done to the Roman people by the Helvetians.'

4. **poenās**: 'punishment.' *92, a.* **repetīsset**: = *repetīvisset*, 'had exacted.' *64, a*, (3), and *214, a.* **rem**: 'achievement.'

5. **ex ūsū terrae**: 'to the advantage of the country.' How lit.? **accidisse**: 'had turned out.'

6. **eō cōnsiliō**: 'with this design,' explained by the following *utī*-clause. *138.* **flōrentissimīs rēbus**: 'though their circum-

1. Commander, *imperator*. 2. Lieutenant-general, *legatus*.
3. Centurion, *centurio*. 4. *Lictor*. 5. Standard-bearers, *signiferi*.
6. Eagle-bearer, *aquilifer*. 7. Trumpeter, *tubicen*. 8. Hornblower, *cornicen*.
9. Eagle, *aquila*. 10. Banner, *vexillum*.

suās Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur, locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent.

Petiērunt, utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret; *sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent.* Eā rē permissā, diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō, nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

---

stances were exceedingly prosperous' (Fig. 54). *144, b,* (5), and *153, a.* **domōs**: *20, c.*

7. **utī . . . habērent**: *196, a,* B. 282, 1; A. 531; H. 568.

8. **imperiō**: *74, b,* and *131, c.* **domiciliō**: 'for habitation.' *112, a.* B. 191, 1; A. 382; H. 425, 3. **cōpiā**: sc. *locōrum.*

Figure 54. — Helvetian coin.

Silver. Reverse, boar. Inscription, NINNO, probably a name.

9. **opportūnissimum**: 'the most suitable.' **frūctuōsissimum**: 'the most productive.' *75, f.*

10. **iūdicāssent**: *64, a,* (1). **stīpendiāriās**: predicative, 'tributary (to them).' *115, b.*

12. **Petiērunt, utī sibi . . . licēret**: 'they asked permission.' How lit.? **sibi**: plural; after *licēret. 105.* **in**: 'for.'

13. **indīcere**: 'to appoint.' *222, a.* **id**: *160, c.* **voluntāte**: *138.* **licēret**: *73, b.* **sēsē habēre**: *213, b.*

14. **ex commūnī cōnsēnsū**: 'in accordance with a general understanding.' **ab eō**: *116, b.*

15. **permissā**: 'granted.' **iūre iūrandō**: *13, h.*

16. **nē quis**: 'that no one. How lit.? *49, a,* and *168.* **ēnūntiāret**: 'should make known (its proceedings).' **nisi quibus**: i.e. *nisi ut eī ēnūntiārent, quibus . . . mandātum esset* (impersonal), 'except those to whom the task should have been assigned.' *73, d.*

17. **inter sē sānxērunt**: 'they mutually bound themselves.' *159.*

In secret session they beseech Caesar to defend Gaul against Ariovistus, Diviciacus stating their case.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō, īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum, qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque, ut sibi sēcrētō, in occultō, dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā, sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: *Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea, quae dīxissent, ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea, quae vellent, impetrārent, propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.*

Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Aeduus:

---

31. 1. **conciliō**: where the council of the leading men of Celtic Gaul was held we are not informed; perhaps at Bibracte. **īdem**: = *eīdem*. *45*.

2. **fuerant**: i.e. with Caesar. **petiērunt . . . licēret**: as in chap. 30, l. 12.

3. **sēcrētō**: 'privately,' as a protection against betrayal. **in occultō**: 'in a secret place,' as a precaution against spies. **cum eō**: *137, c*. **agere**: 'to confer.'

4. **flentēs**: *227, b*. **Caesarī**: trans. as if *Caesaris*. *109, a*. B. 188, 1, N.; A. 377; H. 425, 4, N.

5–8. **Direct form**: Non minus id *contendimus* et *labōrāmus*, nē ea, quae *dīxerīmus, ēnūntientur*, quam utī ea, quae *velīmus* (*220*), *impetrēmus*, propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum *erit*, summum in cruciātum *nōs ventūrōs* (*esse*) *vidēmus*.

5. **Nōn . . . vidērent**: *213, b*. **sē id contendere et labōrāre**: 'that they strove and toiled (for) this,' explained by the following *nē*-clause. *117, a*.

7. **ēnūntiātum esset**: impersonal; 'if disclosure should have been made.'

8. **cruciātum**: 'torture.' **ventūrōs**: *89, c*.

10–18. **Direct form**: Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs *sunt duae;* hārum alterius prīncipātum *tenent Aeduī*, alterius, *Arvernī*.

Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent (*185, c*), factum *est*, utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia XV Rhēnum *trānsiērunt;* posteā quam agrōs et

Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Aeduōs, alterius Arvernōs.

Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse, utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia XV Rhēnum trānsīsse; posteā quam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et XX mīlium numerum.

---

cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī *adamārunt* (=*adamāvērunt*), *trāductī sunt* plūrēs; nunc *sunt* in Galliā ad centum et XX mīlium numerum.

10. **Galliae**: Celtic Gaul. *287, b.* For the indirect discourse see *212, a* and *c*, (1); also *214, a.* **factiōnēs**: here 'leagues' rather than 'parties,' because made up of states. **alterius . . . alterius**: 23, *a*, *b*, and *171, b.* **prīncipātum**: 'headship.' *75, b.*

11. **Arvernōs**: a powerful state, southwest of the country of the Aeduans. See Map GALLIA.

12. **dē potentātū**: 'for supremacy.' **annōs**: *118, a.*

13. **factum esse**: the subject is *utī . . . arcesserentur*; trans. 'it had come about.' *203*, (1). **Sēquanīs**: these entered into alliance with the Arvernians because of their hatred of the Aeduans. The strife between the Sequanians and the Aeduans arose from the fact that the Arar for a part of its course formed the boundary between the two states, and each claimed the exclusive right to levy tolls on passing vessels. Among the exports was bacon, which was highly esteemed in Rome.

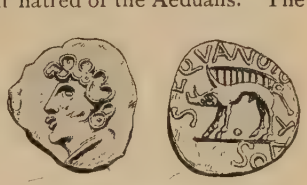


Figure 55. — Sequanian coin.

Silver. Reverse, fanciful boar; inscription, SEQUANOIOTUOS, meaning, perhaps, 'Iotuos, the Sequanian.'

14. **mercēde**: 'for pay.' *141.* **arcesserentur**: 'were brought over.' Finding themselves worsted by the Aeduans, the Sequanians hired Germans to fight for them (Fig. 55).

15. **trānsīsse**: *113, b.* **posteā quam**: *188, a*, and *214, a.*

16. **ferī ac barbarī**: 'savage and uncouth.' **adamāssent**: 'had formed an eager desire for.' *64, a*, (1). How lit.? **trāductōs**: *89, c.*

17. **plūrēs**: sc. *Germānōs.* **esse**: sc. *Germānōs.*

Cum hīs Aeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armī contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs, neque auxilium ā populō

19–28. **Direct form**: Cum hīs *Aeduī* eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs *contendērunt;* magnam calamitātem *pulsī accēpērunt*, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum *āmīsērunt*. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque *frāctī*, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā *potuerant*, *coāctī sunt* Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere, etc.

19. **clientēs**: 'dependents,' here referring to dependent states. **semel atque iterum**: in our idiom, 'time and again.' How lit.?

21. **omnem nōbilitātem**, etc.: the activity of Aeduan men of rank recorded in Book VII shows that this statement, if accurately reported, was greatly exaggerated. **senātum**: *289, b.* **equitātum**: collective, 'knights,' mentioned last as the broadest term in the enumeration; apparently the 'nobles' were a subdivision of the 'knights,' preëminent on account of aristocratic birth as well as the possession of large resources. *288, b.*

22. **frāctōs**: 'crushed'; in agreement with *eōs* understood as subject of *coāctōs esse* and antecedent of *quī*.

23. **hospitiō**: 'relation of hospitality,' less close than the relation implied in *amīcitia*. Both relations were established by treaties between states; when *hospitium* was established between two states, each was bound to entertain the other's representatives at public expense. **atque**: force? *233, a.* **plūrimum**, etc.: 'had previously possessed the greatest power.' *118, b.* See chap. 11, l. 6 and N.

24. **obsidēs**: accusative, 'as hostages.' *115, a.*

25. **nōbilissimōs**: as in chap. 7, l. 8. **iūre iūrandō**: *13, h.*

26. **sēsē neque repetītūrōs** [esse], etc.: 'that they would neither try to get back,' etc., the content of the oath; *sēsē . . . essent* would be in indirect discourse even if the context were in the direct form. *213, b.*

Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs, quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent.

Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Aeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn potuerit, ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam 30
rem sē ex cīvitāte profūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur.

Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs victīs acci-

---

27. **implōrātūrōs** [esse]: 'solicit.' **recūsātūrōs** [esse]: 'refuse.' **quō minus — essent**: 'to be'; how lit.? *201, a.* **perpetuō**: 'forever.' *34, b.*

28. **illōrum**: trans. as if *Sēquanōrum.* **diciōne**: 'sway.'

29–33. **Direct form**: *Ūnus ego sum,* ex omnī cīvitāte Aeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn *potuerim* (*194, a*), ut *iūrārem* ('to take the oath'; *199, a*) aut līberōs *meōs* obsidēs (*115, a*) *darem.* Ob eam rem ex cīvitāte *profūgī*, et Rōmam ad senātum *vēnī* auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus *tenēbar.*

29. **Ūnum sē esse**: 'That he (Diviciacus) was the only one.'

31. **profūgisse**: 'had fled.' **Rōmam**: *119, a.* At Rome Diviciacus met Cicero, who was much interested in him and in what he had to say about nature; for Diviciacus was a Druid, and the Druids professed knowledge of the Universe (VI. 14).

32. **postulātum**: 'to demand'; a strong word, justified by the urgency of the cause and the friendly relations between the Aeduan state and Rome. *231, a,* and *b.*

34–44. **Direct form**: Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs victīs *accidit,* propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germanōrum, in eōrum fīnibus *cōnsēdit* (*183, a*), tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī *est* optimus tōtīus Galliae, *occupavit;* et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere *iubet,* propterea quod, paucīs mēnsibus ante, Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIIII ad eum *vēnērunt,* quibus locus ac sēdēs *parentur.* Paucīs annīs omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus *pellentur,* atque omnēs Gērmānī Rhēnum *trānsībunt;* neque enim *cōnferendus est Gallicus* (*ager*) cum Germānōrum agrō, neque *haec cōnsuētūdō* victūs cum illā *comparanda* (*est*).

34. **peius**: 'a worse fate.' *154, a,* and *32.* **victōribus**: here an adjective, 'victorious.' **victōribus . . . victīs**: *239, c.*

disse, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, proptereā quod, paucīs mēnsibus ante, Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIIII ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse

Figure 56. — View across the Rhine valley, in Alsace.

' From the site of Ariovistus's camp, Zellenberg (Map 4), looking east toward Ostheim. In the distance the hills east of the Rhine are visible.

---

35. **rēx**: *91, a.* **Germānōrum**: apparently Swabians (chap. 37, l. 6). Ariovistus probably crossed the Rhine as early as 72 or 71 B.C.

37. **occupāvisset**: 'had seized,' in the rich level country west of the Rhine, in modern Alsace. **alterā parte tertiā**: 'a second third-part.'

38. **dēcēdere**: 'to withdraw.' *200, b.*

39. **mēnsibus**: *140.* B. 223; H. 488, 1. **Harūdum**: *19, e.*

40. **locus ac sēdēs**: 'places of habitation.' How lit.? *15, b.* **parārentur**: 'were to be provided.' *193, a.* **Futūrum esse**: 'it would come about'; the subject is the following *utī*-clause. *203,* (1).

paucīs annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque līberōs poscere, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua

41. **annīs**: *147, a.* **omnēs**: sc. *Gallī*.

43. **cōnferendum esse**: *229, c.* **Gallicum**: sc. *agrum*. Caesar means that the land in Gaul is incomparably better than that in Germany; we usually state such comparisons in the opposite way.

44. **cōnsuētūdinem victūs**: 'standard of living.' **illā**: 'that (of the Germans).' The civilization of the Gauls was at this time far superior. **comparandam**: *89, c.*

45–55. **Direct form**: *Ariovistus* autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō *vīcit*, quod proelium factum *est* Admagetobrigae, superbē et crūdēliter *imperat*, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque līberōs *poscit*, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque *ēdit*, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta *est*. *Homō est barbarus, īrācundus, temerārius;* non *possunt* eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in *tē* populōque Rōmānō *erit* auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs idem *est* faciendum, quod Helvētiī *fēcērunt*, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant, fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur.

45. **Gallōrum**: the Aeduans and their allies. **vīcerit, imperāre**, etc.: representing perfects and presents in the direct form, used for vividness; the pluperfect and perfect or imperfect in the direct form might have been expected, and in translation past tenses should be used.

46. **quod proelium**: 'a battle which.' *165, a.* **Admagetobrigae**: according to the probable meaning of the Gallic name, 'at the stronghold of Admagetos'; where the place was we do not know. The battle was perhaps fought in 61 or 60 B.C. *146.* **superbē et crūdēliter**: 'with arrogance and cruelty.'

47. **nōbilissimī cuiusque**: 'of every man of rank.' *170, a.* B. 252, 5, *c*; A. 313, *b*; H. 515, 2.

48. **in**: 'upon.' **exempla**: 'kinds of punishment,' as warning examples to others. **cruciātūs**: 'tortures,' as indicating one kind of punishment resorted to by Ariovistus. **ēdere**: 'inflicted.' **qua**: *49, a*, and *168*.

rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant, fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur.

Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem, vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs, vel recentī victōriā, vel nōmine populī Rōmānī, dēterrēre posse, nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

---

49. **ad nūtum**: 'at his beck,' at the slightest intimation of his desires.

50. **īrācundum**: 'quick-tempered.' **temerārium**: 'reckless.'

52. **quid — auxiliī**: 'some help.' *97, b.* **Gallīs**, etc.: 'all the Celts would have to do the same thing.' *110*, and *229, c.* B. 189, 1; A. 374; H. 431. **idem**: subject of *faciendum esse*, explained by the appositive clause *ut . . . experiantur. 203*, (4).

53. **domō**: *130, b.* **ēmigrent**: 'migrate.'

54. **quaecumque**: indefinite relative; trans. 'endure whatever fortune might befall them.' *50, a.*

56–61. **Direct form**: Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō *erunt*, nōn *dubitō*, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus, quī apud **eum** *sint*, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. *Tū*, vel auctōritāte *tuā* atque exercitūs, vel recentī victōriā, vel nōmine populī Rōmānī, dēterrēre *potes*, nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī īniūriā *potes* dēfendere.

56. **Haec**: the utterances at the conference, and appeal to Caesar. **nōn dubitāre**: sc. *sē*, 'he (Diviciacus) had no doubt.' **quīn . . . sūmat**: 'that he (Ariovistus) would inflict.' *201, c.* B. 298; A. 558, *a*; H. 595, 1. **dē**: 'upon.'

58. **exercitūs**: '(that) of his army.' *157, d.*

59. **dēterrēre nē**, etc.: 'prevent a larger host of Germans from being brought across the Rhine.' How lit.? *201, a.*

60. **Rhēnum**: why accusative? *114, b.* B. 179, 3; A. 395, N. 2; H. 413.

61. **Galliam**: as in l. 10. **Ariovistī**: *95.*

The lot of the Sequanians, showing what might happen to all.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs, quī aderant, magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar, ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstēs, capite dēmissō, terram intuērī. Eius reī quae causa esset, mīrātus, ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre.

Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret, neque üllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Aeduus respondit:

Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum

---

32. 2. **flētū**: 'weeping.' Shedding of tears by men was much more common among the Gauls and Romans than among us.

3. **ūnōs**: 'alone.' *23, a.* **nihil**: 'none.' How lit.?

4. **cēterī**: *171, a.* **facerent**: *214, a,* and *213, a.* **trīstēs**: 'disconsolately.' *151.* **capite dēmissō**: 'with bowed heads.' How lit.? *144, b,* (7).

5. **intuērī**: 'looked upon.' **quae**: *48, b.* **esset**: *204,* (2). **mīrātus**: *226, c.*

6. **quaesiit**: *116, c.* **respondēre, permanēre**: 'answered,' 'remained.' *182.*

7. **trīstitiā**: 'state of dejection.' **tacitī**: 'silent.' *148, c.*

8. **saepius**: 'again and again.' How lit.? *153, a.* **quaereret**: *185, c,* and *116, c.* **neque**: = *et nōn. 233, a.* **vōcem**: 'utterance.' *10, c.*

9. **exprimere**: 'to force out.' **Aeduus**: an Aeduan is now speaking for the Sequanians, who were formerly bitter enemies of the Aeduans.

10–16. **Direct form**: Hōc *est miserior* et *gravior fortūna* Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre *audent,* absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram *adsit, horrent,* propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās *datur,* Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum *recēpērunt,* quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius *sunt,* omnēs cruciātūs *sunt* perferendī.

10. **Hōc**: 'On this account,' explained by the following *quod*-clause. *135, a.* **miseriōrem**: 'more wretched.' *22, d.*

quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent, absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

Caesar, for reasons of state, promises his help against Ariovistus.

33. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfīrmāvit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; *magnam sē habēre spem, et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum.* Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, concilium dīmīsit.

Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur, quārē sibi

---

11. **nē . . . quidem**: *237, c.* B. 347; H. 656, 2.

12. **audērent**: *62.* **absentis**: 'in his absence.' How lit.? **crūdēlitātem**: 'cruelty.'

13. **velut**: 'just as.' **cōram**: 'in person.' **adesset**: subjunctive also in the direct form. *210.* B. 307, 1; A. 524; H. 584. **horrērent**: 'they shuddered at.'

14. **reliquīs**: 'to the rest' of the Celts. *171, a.* **tamen**: 'at any rate,' as a last resource. **Sēquanīs . . . essent perferendī**: 'the Sequanians . . . had to endure.' How lit.? *229, c,* and *110.* B. 189, 1; A. 374; H. 431.

15. **oppida omnia**: exaggeration; for the Sequanians still held Vesontio (*Besançon*), which was their strongest fortified place (chap. 38).

16. **omnēs**: as we say, 'all possible.'

33. 2. **sibi . . . futūram** [esse]: 'that this matter should have his attention.' How lit.? *112, b.*

3. **magnam**, etc.: *213, b.* **beneficiō suō**: Caesar's kindness when he was consul (59 B.C.), in helping secure a recognition of Ariovistus by the Roman senate (*255*); Caesar reminds Ariovistus of this later (chap. 35, ll. 3–8; chap. 43, ll. 9–15).

4. **iniūriīs**: *104, a.* **factūrum** [esse]: after *habēre spem*, used in place of *spērāre. 213, a.*

6. **secundum**: preposition; 'besides those considerations.' *122, a,* and *160, c.* **quārē**: trans. as if *propter quās.* **sibi**: *110.*

eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret; in prīmīs, quod Aeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepe numerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur.

Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre, et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in

---

7. **cōgitandam** [esse]: 'ought to be taken into consideration.' **putāret**: *194, a.* **in prīmīs**: 'first of all.' How lit.?

8. **quod . . . vidēbat**: *198, b.* **frātrēs**: predicate accusative after *appellātōs. 88, b.* **cōnsanguineōs**: 'kin,' implying blood-relationship, while *frātrēs*, like our "brethren," might be used as a title implying intimacy of relations without kinship. The use of the title here may imply that the Aeduans claimed descent from the Trojans, as did the Romans, and Caesar himself. *244*, and Fig. 153. **numerō**: with *saepe*, 'repeatedly.' *142, a*, and *85*.

11. **quod**: '(a state of affairs) which'; the antecedent of *quod* is the thought expressed by the infinitive clauses depending on *vidēbat* and *intellegēbat*. **in . . . Rōmānī**: 'in view of the greatness of the power of the Roman people.' How lit.?

12. **turpissimum**: 'exceedingly disgraceful.' *148, c*, and *153, a*. **sibi**: *108, a*.

13. **Paulātim**, etc.: 'for the Germans gradually to become accustomed'; *Germānōs cōnsuēscere* and *multitūdinem venīre* are the subject of *esse*, 'was,' understood after *vidēbat. 213, a*. **autem**: 'moreover.' *236, a*.

15. **perīculōsum**: 'full of danger.' *148, d*; *75, f*, and *84*. **sibi . . . temperātūrōs** [esse]: 'would hold back,' lit. 'restrain themselves.' *105*.

16. **quīn . . . exīrent**: 'from passing over.' *201, a*.

17. **ut**: 'as.' *188, b*, and *214, a*. **ut . . . fēcissent**: related in thought with *exīrent* and *contenderent*. **Cimbrī Teutonīque**: the terrible hordes of the Cimbrians and Teutons in the closing years of the second century B.C. swept over Celtic Gaul and passed into the

prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat.

Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Caesar invites Ariovistus to a conference; he is rebuffed.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem locum, medium utrīusque, colloquiō dēligeret: *Velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere.*

Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit:

Province, whence the Cimbrians made their way into Cisalpine Gaul. Finally the Teutons were annihilated in a fierce battle at Aquae Sextiae (now Aix), about 20 miles north of Massilia, by Gaius Marius in 102 B.C.; and a year later the Cimbrians met a similar fate at Vercellae, in Cisalpine Gaul, northeast of Turin. See Map GALLIA.

18. **Italiam**: here including Cisalpine Gaul. *283, b.* **praesertim cum**: *184, b.*

19. **Sēquanōs**: *282.* **Rhodanus**: '(only) the Rhone,' a slight protection against an invading host.

20. **quibus rēbus**: 'and these conditions.' *107, a.* **quam mātūrrimē**: 'at the earliest possible moment.' *34. a*, and *153, c.* **occurrendum** [esse]: sc. *sibi*, 'that he ought to meet.' How lit.?

21. **tantōs spīritūs**: 'such insolent airs.' *20, b.*

22. **arrogantiam**: 'arrogance.' **ferendus nōn**: 'unbearable.' How lit.?

34. 1. **placuit eī**: 'he (Caesar) resolved.' How lit.? **ut . . . mitteret**: with *placuit*; 'to send.' *199, a,* (7).

2. **postulārent**: *193, a.* **aliquem**: *49, a.* **medium utrīusque**: 'midway between them.' How lit.? *51*, and *102.*

3. **colloquiō**: 'for a conference.' *112, a.* **Velle sēsē**: '(stating) that he wished.' *213, b.*

4. **summīs utrīusque rēbus**: 'affairs of the utmost importance to both.' How lit.?

6–13. **Direct form**: Sī quid *mihi* ā Caesare opus esset, ad eum *vēnissem*; sī quid ille *mē vult*, illum ad *mē* venīre *oportet.*

. Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre.

Praetereā, sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse.

Figure 57. — Pottery found at Bibracte; Museum of St. Germain.

Praetereā, neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae, quās Caesar *possidet*, venīre *audeō*, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere *possum*.

Mihi autem mīrum *vidētur*, quid in *meā* Galliā, quam bellō *vīcī*, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtiī *sit*.

6. **Sī . . . fuisse**: *208, c.* **quid**, etc.: 'he himself had wanted anything.' How lit.? *132, b.* **ipsī**: *46.*

7. **quid sē**: 'anything of himself,' Ariovistus. *116, d.*

8. **Praetereā**: 'furthermore.' Ariovistus was seemingly over near the Rhine, a long distance from Caesar, who was probably in the vicinity of Bibracte.

9. **possidēret**: 'was occupying.'

10. **commeātū**: 'store of supplies.' **mōlīmentō**: 'trouble' in

Sibi autem mīrum vidērī, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtiī esset.

Caesar through envoys makes demands of Ariovistus, and threatens.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit:

Quoniam, tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus

---

accumulating supplies as well as in mobilizing his forces; for the army of Ariovistus, so long as it was scattered in small detachments, could live off the country. **contrahere**: 'bring together.'

12. **mīrum**: 'a cause for wonder.' *148, d.* **bellō**: *131, a.* **quid . . . esset**: subject of *vidērī*, 'what business either Caesar or,' etc. *204*, (2).

13. **aut . . . aut**: *235, a.* **Caesarī, populō**: *111.* **negōtiī**: *97, b.*

35. 2. **hīs mandātīs**: 'this message,' lit. 'these instructions' to the envoys, which were to be presented orally, and are here summarized. *212, c*, (4).

3–8. **Direct form**: Quoniam, tantō *meō* populīque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōnsulātū *meō* rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus *est*, (Ariovistus) hanc *mihi* populōque Rōmānō grātiam *refert*, ut, in colloquium venīre invītātus, *gravētur*, neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cognōscendum *putet*, haec *sunt*, quae ab eō *postulō*.

3. **Quoniam**: 'Since.' **tantō**, etc.: 'although treated with so great kindness by himself and the Roman people.' How lit.? *157, d.*

4. **cōnsulātū suō**: in the previous year; see N. to chap. 33, l. 3. **rēx . . . senātū**: cf. chap. 3, ll. 12–13, and Notes. The truth seems to be that in the strifes between the Aeduans and Ariovistus the Roman Senate thought it the best policy to stand in well with both sides. The Senate therefore continued to profess friendship for the Aeduans, but after they sustained a crushing defeat at Admagĕtos's stronghold (chap. 31, ll. 19–28 and 46) it courted Ariovistus. To what extent Caesar was responsible for the conferring of the titles on Ariovistus in 59 B.C., we do not know.

esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut, in colloquium venīre invītātus, gravārētur, neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse, quae ab eō postulāret:

Prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret;

Deinde, obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Aeduīs, redderet, Sēquanīsque permitteret, ut, quōs illī habērent, voluntāte eius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret.

Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grā-

---

5. **referret**: *183, a*, and *214, a*. **ut . . . gravārētur**: 'that he . . . raised objections'; explaining *grātiam*. *203*, (4). **in**: 'to.'

6. **invītātus**: 'when he had been invited.' *227, a*. **neque . . . putāret**: 'and did not consider himself under obligation to discuss, and take under advisement, a matter of mutual interest.' How lit.?

7. **dīcendum** [esse] **sibi**: *73, e*, and *110*. **haec**: *161, a*, and *160, c*.

9–14. **Direct form**: Prīmum, (*postulō*) nē (*Ariovistus*) quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam *trādūcat;*

Deinde, obsidēs, quōs *habet* ab Aeduīs, *reddat*, Sēquanīsque *permittat*, ut (obsidēs), quōs hī habent, voluntāte eius reddere illīs *liceat;* nēve Aeduōs iniūriā *lacessat*, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum *īnferat*.

9. **Prīmum**: *237, b*. **quam**: *49, a*, and *168*. **hominum**: *98, a*. **amplius**: 'in addition.' How lit.?

10. **trādūceret, lacesseret** (l. 13), **īnferret** (l. 14): *199, a*.

11. **redderet, permitteret**: sc. *ut*. *200, a*.

12. **ut . . . licēret**: 'to have his (Ariovistus's) approval in returning (to the Aeduans the hostages) which,' etc. How lit.? *199, a*, and *73, a, b*. **voluntāte**: *138*. **reddere**: *67, c*, and *222, a*.

15–21. **Direct form**: Sī id ita *fēcerit* (future perfect), *mihi* (*111*) populōque Rōmānō *perpetua grātia* atque *amīcitia* cum eō *erit;* sī nōn *impetrābō*, quoniam, M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, senātus *cēnsuit*, utī, quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn *neglegam*.

15. **fēcisset, futūram** [esse]: *218*, (1), b. **perpetuam**: 'lasting.'

tiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam, M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, senātus cēnsuisset, utī, quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.

Ariovistus replies, claiming prior rights in Gaul and defying Caesar.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit:

Iūs esse bellī, ut, quī vīcissent, eīs, quōs vīcissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperārent; item populum Rōmānum

---

17. **M. . . . cōnsulibus**: 61 B.C. *240, a*, and *238, a*.

18. **cēnsuisset**: 'decreed.' *183, a*, and *214, a*. **utī . . . dēfenderet**: *199, a*, and *177, b*. **quīcumque**: *50, a*. **prōvinciam**: 'as a province.' *115, a*.

Figure 58. — Aeduan coin.

Gold. Obverse, Apollo. Reverse, Victory driving a chariot. Copied from a Greek coin of Macedonia; the Greek name, 'Of Philip,' is retained on the reverse.

19. **quod**: 'so far as.' *194, f*. B. 283, 5; A. 535, *d*; H. 591, 3. **commodō reī pūblicae**: 'consistently with the public interest.' *138*, and *102*. **Aeduōs**: Fig. 58.

20. **sē**: repeated from *sēsē* in l. 17.

21. **neglēctūrum** [esse]: 'he would not leave unnoticed,' a threat sufficiently forceful, although veiled.

36. 2–7. **Direct form**: Iūs *est* bellī, ut, quī *vīcerint* (*220*), eīs, quōs *vīcerint* (*220*), quem ad modum *velint*, *imperent* (*203*, 4); item *populus Rōmānus* victīs nōn ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium, imperāre *cōnsuēvit*. Sī *ego* populō Rōmānō nōn *praescrībō*, quem ad modum suō iūre *ūtātur* (*204*, 3), nōn *oportet* (*73, a*) *mē* ā populō Rōmānō in *meō* iūre impedīrī.

2. **quī**: the antecedent is the implied subject of *imperārent*; 'that those who had conquered should rule over,' etc. **eīs**: after *imperārent*. *105*. **quem ad modum**: 'in whatever way,' lit. 'according to which manner'; in full, *ad* (*eum*) *modum ad quem*.

victīs nōn ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium, imperāre cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet, quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn opōrtēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī.

Aeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse; neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō manērent, quod convēnisset, stīpendiumque quotan-

---

4. **victīs**: *227, a,* (4). **ad alterius praescrīptum**: 'according to the dictates of another.' How lit.? *23, b.* **arbitrium**: 'judgment.'

5. **nōn praescrīberet**: 'should not dictate.'

6. **quem ad modum**: 'in what way'; *quem* is here interrogative. *48, b.* **suō**: 'its own.' **ūterētur**: 'should exercise.'

7. **suō**: 'his own.'

8–15. **Direct form**: *Aeduī mihi,* quoniam bellī fortūnam *temptāvērunt* et armīs congressī ac superātī *sunt, stīpendiāriī factī sunt.* Magnam *Caesar* iniūriam *facit,* quī suō adventū vectīgālia *mihi* dēteriōra *faciat.* Aeduīs obsidēs nōn *reddam;* neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum *īnferam,* sī in eō *manēbunt,* quod *convēnit,* stīpendiumque quotannīs *pendent;* sī id nōn *fēcerint* (future perfect), longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī *aberit.*

9. **congressī** [essent]: 'had contended.' *57, c.* **stīpendiāriōs**: 'subject to the payment of tribute.' *148, c.* **Magnam**: emphatic position. *353, d.*

10. **quī**: 'since he.' *194, c.* **suō**: refers to Caesar. **vectīgālia**: see N. to chap. 18, l. 10.

11. **sibi**: refers to Ariovistus. **dēteriōra**: 'less profitable'; with Caesar's backing the Aeduans would refuse to pay tribute to Ariovistus.

12. **iniūriā**: 'wrongfully.' *136, b.* B. 220, 2; A. 412, *b*; H. 474, 1.

13. **in . . . convēnisset**: 'they should abide by' (lit. 'in') 'that which had been agreed upon.' **stīpendium**: 'tribute.' **quotannīs**: *79, b.*

nīs penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum.

Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur; intellēctūrum, quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIIII tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.

Caesar hears further complaints, marches toward Ariovistus.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Aeduī questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī

---

14. **penderent**: 'should pay'; originally 'weigh out,' a meaning appropriate to the early time when payments were made in uncoined metal. There is a similar development of meaning in the English "pound sterling." **longē eīs . . . āfutūrum** [esse]: 'would be far from benefiting them.' **eīs**: dative. *109, b.* **frāternum . . . Rōmānī**: 'the title of "Brethren of the Roman people."'

16–20. **Direct form**: Quod *mihi* Caesar *dēnūntiat*, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, *nēmō mēcum* sine suā perniciē *contendit*. Cum *volet, congrediātur! Intelleget*, quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIIII tēctum nōn *subiērunt*, virtūte *possint*.

16. **Quod . . . dēnūntiāret**: 'As for Caesar's warning to him,' i.e. to Ariovistus. How lit.? *198, c.* **sē**: Caesar.

17. **suā**: 'his own,' referring to *nēminem*.

18. **congrederētur**: 'let him come on!' *216.* B. 316; A. 588; H. 642. **intellēctūrum**: *eum* (= *Caesarem*) *intellēctūrum esse. 215.* **quid Germānī — virtūte possent**: 'what valor the Germans had.' How lit.? *118, b.* **invictī**: 'unconquered.'

19. **exercitātissimī**: 'most thoroughly trained.' **inter**: 'during'; with *annōs*, stronger than the simple accusative of time. **XIIII**: *36*, and *38, b.* **tēctum**: 'roof.'

20. **subīssent**: *113, b.* **virtūte**: *142, a.*

37. 2. **Aeduī**: sc. *veniēbant*. **questum**: *231, a*, and *61, a*, (3).

3. **Harūdēs**: chap. 31, ll. 39–40. **trānsportātī essent**: 'had been brought over' by Ariovistus.

essent, fīnēs eōrum populārentur, *sēsē, nē obsidibus quidem datīs, pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse;* Trēverī autem, *pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs.*

Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus

Figure 59. — The Doubs (Dubis) below Besançon (Vesontio).

4. **populārentur**: 'were (as they said) laying waste.' *214, b.* **sēsē**: '(reporting) that they.' *213, b.* **nē obsidibus quidem datīs**: 'not even by the giving of hostages.' *144, b,* (6).

5. **Trēverī**: i.e. *Trēverī dīcēbant.*

6. **Suēbōrum**: an account of the ancient Swabians is given in Book IV, chap. 1.

7. **hīs**: *107, a.* **praeesse**: *66, a.* **Nasuam**: *19, d.*

9. **vehementer commōtus**: 'greatly disturbed,' a strong expression. Caesar does not often give us an insight into his feelings, but the situation now was critical. Why? **mātūrandum** [esse] **sibi**: 'that he ought to make haste.' *73, e.*

10. **nē**, etc.: 'that it might not be more difficult to cope with him.' How lit.? *73, c,* and *196, a.*

cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā, quam celerrimē potuit, comparātā, magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Hearing that Ariovistus has designs on Vesontio, Caesar hastens thither.

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī, Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat.

Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsuī erant,

---

11. **sēsē coniūnxisset**: 'should have united.' *218*, (1), b.

12. **quam celerrimē potuit**: 'as quickly as possible.' *153*, *c*. **comparātā**: *144*, *b*, (2).

13. **magnīs itineribus**: 'by forced marches.' *329*, and *18*, *c*. Where Caesar was when the negotiations with Ariovistus were begun, and whence he started to meet Ariovistus, cannot be determined. It seems probable that he overtook the survivors of the Helvetians near the site of Dijon (Map 1); that thence he came back to Bibracte for the Gallic Council; and that from some point near Bibracte 'the forced marches' eastward began, as indicated on Map 1.

38. 1. **trīduī**: trans. as if *trium diērum*. Cf. *100*, *a*. **viam**: *118*, *a*.

2. **occupandum**: gerundive; the gerund in the accusative would not have a direct object. *230*, (3).

3. **quod**: why not *quī*, to agree in gender with *Vesontiōnem*? *164*, *c*. B. 250, 3; A. 306; H. 396, 2.

4. **suīs fīnibus**: in the country taken from the Sequanians, in Upper Alsace. But the report was unfounded; for if Ariovistus had marched as the report indicated he must have reached Vesontio before Caesar. **Id**: the seizure of Vesontio by Ariovistus.

5. **sibi praecavendum** [esse]: 'that he ought to take every precaution.' *110*, and *73*, *e*.

6. **ad**: 'for.' **ūsuī**: 'useful.' How lit.? *112*, *a*.

summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā locī sīc mūniēbātur, ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dubis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita, ut rādīcēs montis ex

---

7. **facultās**: 'abundance.' **id**: *oppidum*. **nātūrā locī**: cf. chap. 2, l. 7, and N.

8. **ad dūcendum bellum**: 'for prolonging the war,' at any rate till Ariovistus could bring the new Swabian hordes (chap. 37, ll. 6–8) to his assistance.

9. **ut circinō circumductum**: 'as though drawn around by a pair of compasses.'

10. **paene cingit**: 'almost encircles.' The Dubis (modern *Doubs*, 'Black River') here bends into the form of a loop, leaving only one side of the town (*reliquum spatium*) not surrounded by it; and this space is taken up by a high hill, the top of which forms an irregular plateau (Fig. 60).

Figure 60. — The loop of the Dubis (Doubs) at Vesontio.
The high hill is at the neck.

11. **pedum sexcentōrum**: 'than six hundred feet' in breadth; a genitive of measure is here used instead of a comparative ablative, *quam* being omitted after *amplius*. *100, a*, and *129, b*. **sexcentōrum**: the distance across the neck of the loop from the river to the river again is about 1600 Roman feet; but the distance which needed to be fortified, measured across the top of the plateau, was only 600 feet. **intermittit**: 'leaves a neck' of land. How lit.?

12. **mōns**: N. to chap. 2, l. 10. **altitūdine**: about 400 feet above the river. *143, a*. B. 224; A. 415; H. 473, 2. **ita, ut**: *197, b*. **rādīcēs**: object of *contingant*; we should say 'base.'

utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit.
Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

Panic seizes Caesar's army on account of fear of the Germans.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepe numerō sēsē cum

---

13. **contingant**: 'touch.' **Hunc**: i.e. *hunc montem*; object of *efficit*. **circumdatus**: 'extended around (it),' at the edge of the small plateau. **mūrus**: indicated by a black line in Fig. 60.

14. **arcem efficit**: 'converts (into) a citadel.' *115, a.* Vesontio was an important city in Roman times, and afterwards; and Besançon is now a fortress of the first class.

15. **nocturnīs diurnīsque**: 'by night and by day.' *76, b.* Caesar probably arrived at Vesontio soon after the middle of August.

39. 1. **ad**: *120, a.* Only a 'garrison' (*praesidium*) was stationed in the citadel; the rest of the army were encamped 'near' the town. **reī . . . causā**: 'in order to secure grain and (other) supplies.' How lit.? *135, b.*

2. **morātur**: '(Caesar) was delaying.' *190, a.* **ex percontātiōne**: 'in consequence of the questioning.'

3. **vōcibus**: here 'stories.' *10, c.* **mercātōrum**: many traders accompanied the army, to trade with friendly natives as well as to purchase loot from the soldiers and supply them with extras not provided in the army rations. **ingentī magnitūdine**: 'of huge size.' *143, b.* B. 224, 1; A. 415; H. 473, 2.

4. **corporum**: *92, a*, and *13, f.* Caesar elsewhere (IV, 1) speaks of the 'huge size' of the Germans, who, by contrast in stature, seemed larger to the Romans than they would have seemed to us. **exercitātiōne**: 'practiced skill.'

5. **praedicābant**: 'were declaring.' *84.* **numerō**: *142, a.* **cum hīs congressōs**: 'meeting Germans.' *57, c.* How lit.?

hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret.

Hīc prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs, reliquīsque, quī, ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī, nōn magnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat, ut eius voluntāte discēdere licēret;

---

6. **vultum — ferre**: 'to endure the sight of their faces.' How lit.? Our corresponding phrase is, "to look them in the face." **aciem**: 'fierce look.'

7. **tantus . . . ut**: *197, b.* **subitō**: 'suddenly.' **timor**: 'panic'; used of a groundless, cowardly fear.

8. **nōn mediocriter**: 'in no slight degree'; litotes. *239, g.* **mentēs animōsque**: as we say, 'minds and hearts.'

9. **perturbāret**: 'disturbed.'

10. **ortus est ā**: 'started with.' *61, b.* **tribūnīs mīlitum**: 'military tribunes.' *314.* **praefectīs**: not the 'cavalry prefects' (*309, c*), but 'subsidiary officials' in various positions of slight responsibility, chiefly, we may assume, in connection with the light-armed troops. Caesar's financial and political relations (*251*) made it expedient for him to furnish military appointments for a number of aristocratic young mollycoddles, who had had no military experience, but wanted a taste of it because that was considered the proper thing. These were in a different class from Publius Crassus, for example, and other young Romans of high social position with Caesar, who attacked their work seriously and became excellent officers.

11. **urbe**: Rome. *17, b.* **amīcitiae causā**: *135, b.* Caesar is politic as well as polite in ascribing to personal attachment to himself the presence of these milksops in his army.

12. **nōn magnum**: *239, g.* **rē mīlitārī**: 'warfare.' **alius aliā causā illātā**: '(each) one offering a different excuse.' *171, c.*

13. **causā**: *144, b,* (2). **quam . . . dīceret**: 'which, as he said, made it imperative for him to leave.' How lit.? *214, b.*

14. **petēbat, ut . . . licēret**: 'begged permission.' *199, a.* **voluntāte**: *138.*

nōn nūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs, aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur.

Figure 61.—The Doubs River above Besançon (Vesontio).

15. **pudōre**: 'by a sense of shame.'

16. **remanēbant**: 'remained' in camp, after the exodus of the others. **vultum fingere**: 'to look unconcerned.' How lit.?

17. **abditī**: 'shutting themselves up.' *174*, and *67*, *c*. **tabernāculīs**: 'their tents.' *355*, *a*.

18. **fātum querēbantur**: 'they were bewailing their fate.' **familiāribus**: 'intimate friends.'

19. **miserābantur**: 'were despairingly discussing.' **Vulgō**: adverb, 'generally.' **tōtīs castrīs**: 'throughout the camp.' *145*, *c*. **testāmenta**: 'wills.'

20. **obsignābantur**: 'were being made,' as we say; lit. 'were being sealed,' referring to the process by which wax tablets (Fig. 53), on which wills were ordinarily written, were sealed up (Fig. 203).

Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam eī, quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque, quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et magnitūdinem silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs mīlitēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

Caesar deals with the situation in a persuasive address.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō, omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus,

---

22. **in castrīs**: 'in the army' is our corresponding phrase. **centuriōnēs**: 'the centurions.' *315, a.* **quīque**: *et (eī) quī*; cavalry prefects and decurions are meant. *309, c.*

23. **Quī ex hīs**: *(eī) ex hīs, quī. 97, d.* **sē . . . exīstimārī**: *223, a.*

24. **timidōs**: 'cowardly.' **nōn sē verērī**: 'that they were not afraid of.'

25. **angustiās**: the gorges in the valley of the Dubis (*Doubs*), through which the most direct route led northeast to the region where Ariovistus was (Fig. 61). **silvārum**: there are still extensive forests on both sides of the upper Doubs.

26. **rem**: object of *timēre*, where a nominative, subject of *posset*, might have been expected; prolepsis. *238, g.* B. 374, 5.

27. **ut**: 'that not.' *202.* **supportārī**: 'be brought up.'

29. **signa ferrī**: 'go forward.' How lit.? *324, 325.* **iussisset**: 'should give the order'; future perfect indicative in the direct form. *214, a.* **nōn fore dictō audientēs**: 'would not obey the command;' like the Scriptural, "Ye will not hearken unto me." How lit.? **dictō**: *105.*

40. 2. **ōrdinum**: 'companies.' *12, d.* How many in the six legions which Caesar now had? *307, c.* **centuriōnibus**: ordinarily only the centurions of first rank, the six centurions of the first cohort

vehementer eōs incūsāvit; prīmum, quod, aut quam in partem, aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent:

Ariovistum, sē cōnsule, cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīci-

---

of each legion, were invited to a war-council. On this occasion all the centurions of the six legions (360 in number) were brought together, doubtless with the lieutenants and other higher officers, not for deliberation, but for an address by the commander in chief (Fig. 62).

Figure 62. — Centurion.

With a staff, symbol of authority; unhelmeted, but with ornamented greaves and with military decorations attached to the cuirass.

3. **vehementer eōs incūsāvit**: 'he severely reprimanded them.' **quod . . . putārent**: 'because (as he told them) they thought.' *214, b.* **quam, quō**: *204*, (2), and *48, b.*

4. **cōnsiliō**: 'plan.' **quaerendum** [esse] **aut cōgitandum** [esse]: the subject is the preceding indirect question; 'that it was their business to inquire or consider.' How lit.? *73, e.*

6–10. **Direct form**: *Ariovistus, mē* cōnsule, cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam *appetiit;* cūr hunc tam temere quisquam ab officiō discessūrum (esse) *iūdicet? Mihi* quidem *persuādētur*, cognitīs *meīs* postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque *meam* neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum (esse).

6. **Ariovistum**, etc.: *280. 255*, and *144, b*, (2).

sē cōnsule: only a year previously.

tiam appetīsse; cūr hunc tam temere quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuāderī, cognitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum.

Quod sī, furōre atque āmentiā impulsus, bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum, Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā Gāiō Mariō pulsīs, nōn minōrem laudem exercitus, quam

---

7. **appetīsse**: 'strove to secure'; a rhetorical exaggeration. See chap. 33, l. 3, and chap. 35, l. 4, and Notes. **temere**: 'recklessly.' **quisquam**: *168*, and *49*, *a*. **ab officiō**: 'from his obligation' of allegiance.

8. **iūdicāret**: *179*, *b*, (2). **Sibi quidem persuādērī**: 'he at least was persuaded.' How lit.? *106*, *b*. **cognitīs . . . perspectā**: trans. by a clause commencing with 'after.' *239*, *c*. Why ablative?

9. **postulātīs**: 'demands.' **aequitāte**: 'fairness.' **perspectā**: 'should have been clearly understood.' How lit.? **eum**: trans. as if *Ariovistum*.

10. **suam**: *157*, *d*. **repudiātūrum** [esse]: 'would reject.'

11–21. **Direct form**: Quod sī (*Ariovistus*), furōre atque āmentiā impulsus, bellum *intulerit*, quid tandem *vereāminī* (*179*, *b*, *2*)? aut cūr dē *vestrā* virtūte aut dē *meā* dīligentiā *dēspērētis* (*179*, *b*, *2*)? Factum (*est*) eius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum, Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā Gāiō Mariō pulsis, nōn minōrem laudem exercitus, quam ipse imperātor, meritus vidēbātur; factum (*est perīculum*) etiam nūper in Italiā, servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna, quae ā nōbīs *accēperant*, *sublevābant*. Ex quō iūdicārī *potest*, quantum *habeat* (*204*, 3) in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sīne causā *timuistis*, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs *superāvistis*.

11. **Quod**: 'But.' *118*, *d*. **furōre . . . impulsus**: 'carried away by rage and madness.'

12. **quid tandem**: 'what, pray.' **verērentur**: *61*, *a*, (2).

13. **dīligentiā**; 'careful leadership.' **Factum** [esse] . . . **perīculum**: 'trial had been made of that enemy,' i.e. of the Germans.

14. **memoriā**: *147*, *b*. **Cimbrīs, Teutonīs**: N. to chap. 33, l. 17.

15. **laudem**: 'praise.' *17*, *c*.

ipse imperātor, meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā, servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna, quae ā nōbīs accēpissent, ublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse, quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse cōsdem Germānōs, quibuscum saepe

---

16. **meritus**: for *meritus esse*; with *vidēbātur*, 'clearly earned.' How lit.? *148, e.* **vidēbātur**: indicative retained from the direct form. *185, b.* **nūper**: fourteen years previously; among the centurions present there were probably a number who had served as soldiers in the war with Spartacus, the term of military service being twenty years. *307, a.*

17. **servīlī tumultū**: = *tumultū servōrum*, 'at the time of the uprising of the slaves,' 73–71 B.C.; referring to the insurrection led by Spartacus, the gladiator, who had a succession of victories for two years, but in 71 B.C. was completely crushed. Caesar implies that among the gladiators and other slaves serving under Spartacus there were many of Germanic origin. **tumultū**: used for *bellum* in case of a sudden war in Italy. Why ablative? *147, b.* **quōs**: *164, b.* B. 251, 2; A. 306, *b*; H. 399, 4. **quōs tamen**, etc.: 'notwithstanding the fact that the experience and training, which they had gained from us, to some extent aided them,' lit. 'whom nevertheless,' etc. **aliquid**: *118, b.*

18. **quae**: neuter. *163, c.* B. 250, 2; A. 305, *a*; H. 398, 1.

19. **quantum**, etc.: 'how great an advantage there is in steadfastness,' lit. 'how much of good steadfastness has in itself.' **bonī**: *97, b.*

20. **aliquamdiū**: 'for a long time.' **inermōs**: 'without arms,' referring to the slaves in the earlier stages of the insurrection, before they were able to supply themselves with weapons. **hōs**: antecedent of *quōs*.

21. **armātōs**: 'equipped with arms.'

22–25. **Direct form**: Dēnique *hī sunt īdem Germānī*, quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī, nōn sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, plērumque *superāvērunt*; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn *potuērunt*.

22. **Dēnique**: 'Finally,' closing the argument about the Germans. **quibuscum**, etc.: cf. chap. 1, ll. 12–15. *125, c.*

numerō Helvētiī congressī, nōn sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, plērumque superārint; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint.

Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

---

23. **congressī**: *228, a.*

24. **illōrum**: trans. as if *Germānōrum.* **plērumque superārint**: *superāverint*; 'generally defeated (them).' **quī tamen**: 'and they (the Helvetians) nevertheless.' *236, a.*

26–33. **Direct form**: Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum *commovet, hī, sī quaerent* (*206*), reperīre *poterunt,* diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs (*118, a*) castrīs (*131, a*) sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, (*eōs,* = *Gallōs*) dēspērantēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum (*226, c*), magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus *fuit,* hāc nē *ipse* quidem *spērat* nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

26. **quōs**: *168,* and *49, a.* **adversum proelium**: 'defeat' at Admagetos's stronghold; see chap. 31, ll. 45–46. **commovēret**: *172, b.*

27. **diūturnitāte**, etc.: 'when the Gauls had become exhausted by the length of the war.' *144, b,* (2).

29. **palūdibus**: 'marshes,' added to explain how the encampments were shut off from approach. *131, a.* **sē tenuisset**: 'had kept himself secluded.' **neque suī**, etc.: 'and had given (them) no chance to attack him,' lit. 'no power of himself.' **suī**: *102.* **dēspērantēs . . . vīcisse**: i.e. *Ariovistum . . . subitō adortum* (*eōs* = *Gallōs*) *dēspērantēs iam dē pugnā* ('giving up hope of battle') *et dispersōs* ('scattered'), *vīcisse* (*eōs*) *ratiōne et cōnsiliō* ('by cunning and strategy') *magis quam virtūte.*

31. **Cui ratiōnī — hāc**: i.e. *hāc ratiōne, cui,* 'by such cunning' — 'for which.' *165, c.*

32. **imperītōs**: 'unskilled.' **ipsum**: Ariovistus.

33. **capī**: 'be caught.' *56.*

Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs sumministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs.

Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque

---

34–39. **Direct form**: Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris *cōnferunt, faciunt* arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere *videantur* (*184, a*). Haec *mihi* sunt cūrae; frūmentum *Sēquanī, Leucī*, Lingonēs *sumministrant*, iamque *sunt* in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; de itinere *ipsī* brevī tempore *iūdicābitis*.

Figure 63. — Coin attributed to the Leuci.

Gold. Reverse, a winged genius riding on an arrow.

34. **Quī**: i.e. *eī, quī*; see chap. 39, ll. 23–27. **suum**, etc.: 'assigned their fear to a pretended anxiety about supplies.' How lit.?

35. **arroganter**: 'presumptuously.'

37. **sibi cūrae**: *112, b.* B. 191, 2, *a*; A. 382, 1; H. 433. **Leucōs**: Fig. 63.

38. **sumministrāre**: 'were supplying.' **frūmenta**: how different from *frūmentum*? Cf. chap. 16, l. 3 and N.

40–45. **Direct form**: Quod (mīlitēs) nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dīcuntur, nihil eā rē *commoveor; sciō* enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut, male rē gestā, fortūnam dēfuisse, aut, aliquō facinore compertō, avāritiam esse convictam: *mea innocentia* perpetuā vītā, *fēlīcitās* Helvētiōrum bellō *est perspecta*.

40. **Quod . . . dīcantur**: sc. *mīlitēs*; cf. chap. 39, l. 29. *198, c.* B. 299, 2. **signa**: *325.* **lātūrī** [esse] **dīcantur**: trans. 'it was said that the soldiers would,' etc. *148, e; 172, d*, and *224, a*.

41. **nihil**: 'not at all.' *118, c.* **scīre**: sc. *sē. 215.* **quibuscumque**: after *dictō audiēns*; these two words express a single concept, 'obedient,' and hence are followed by the dative. *50, a*, and *108, a*. For an antecedent supply *eīs* after *dēfuisse*; trans. 'that in the case of any (commanders) whatever who had found their armies mutinous, either their luck had failed them in consequence of the bad handling of some enterprise, or,' etc. How lit.?

exercitus dictō audiēnś nōn fuerit, aut, male rē gestā, fortūnam dēfuisse, aut, aliquō facinore compertō, avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.

Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset, utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium, an timor, plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram.

---

42. **rē gestā**: *144, b*, (3). **fortūnam**: the Romans were superstitious in avoiding anything that seemed unlucky.

43. **dēfuisse**: *66, a*. **aliquō**: from *aliquī*. *49, a*. **facinore**: 'crime.' *13, f*, and *144, b*, (3). **avāritiam**; 'greed,' the underlying cause of the crimes committed by generals, according to Caesar.

44. **esse convictam**: 'had been clearly proved' against them. **suam**: emphatic position. *157, b*. **innocentiam**: 'integrity,' freedom from the corruption implied in *avāritiam*. **perpetuā vītā**: 'during his entire life.' *147, c*. B. 231, 1; A. 424, *b*; H. 417, 2. **fēlīcitātem**; 'good fortune.'

45. **Helvētiōrum bellō**: we say 'war with the Helvetians,' or 'Helvetian campaign.' *147, b*.

46–52. **Direct form**: Itaque, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus *fuī*, *repraesentābō*; et *hāc* nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra *movēbō*, ut quam prīmum intellegere *possim* (*196, a*), utrum apud *mīlitēs* pudor atque officium, an timor, plūs *valeat* (*204*). Quod sī praetereā nēmō *sequētur* (*218*, 1, a), tamen *ego* cum sōlā decimā legiōne *ībō*, dē quā nōn *dubitō*, *mihique ea praetōria cohors erit*.

46. **longiōrem**: 'more distant.' **collātūrus fuisset**: 'he had intended to put off.' *63*, and *69, b*.

47. **repraesentātūrum** [esse]: sc. *id*, antecedent of *quod*; 'he would at once do (that).' **dē quārtā vigiliā**: *242, d*.

48. **quam prīmum**: *153, c*. **utrum . . . an**: *204*, (1). B. 300, 4; A. 335; H. 380.

49. **plūs valēret**: 'should have the stronger influence' with them. *118, b*. **Quod**: *118, d*.

51. **nōn dubitāret**: 'he entertained no doubts.' **praetōriam**

Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat maximē.

Fear and mutiny give place to enthusiasm. Caesar advances.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est; prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfīrmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satisfacerent; *Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse.*

---

cohortem: 'bodyguard.' to which a general (originally called *praetor*, see Vocab.) was entitled.

53. **legiōnī**: *105*, and *307*, *e*. **indulserat**: 'had favored.' **praecipuē**: 'especially'; emphatic position. *352*, *a*.

54. **cōnfīdēbat maximē**: 'had the fullest confidence.'

41. 1. **Hāc ōrātiōne habitā**: 'After this address.' How lit.? *144*, *b*, (2). **mīrum in modum**: 'in a wonderful way.'

2. **omnium**: including not only the officers but also the soldiers, to whom the speech was promptly reported by the centurions. **summa alacritās**: 'the utmost enthusiasm.'

3. **innāta est**: 'arose.' **prīnceps**: adj., 'taking the lead.' How lit.? *152*, *b*. **per**: *123*, *a*. **tribūnos mīlitum**: *314*.

4. **eī grātiās ēgit**: 'conveyed thanks to him.' **fēcisset**: 'had passed.' Why subjunctive? *183*, *a*.

7. **prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus**: 'the centurions of first rank,' apparently the six centurions of the first cohort in each legion. **ēgērunt**: 'arranged.' **utī — satisfacerent**: 'to apologize.' *199*, *a*.

8. **Sē**: '(declaring) that they.' *213*, *b*. **dubitāsse**: *64*, *a*, (1).

9. **neque**: trans. as if *et nōn*. **dē summā bellī iūdicium**: 'the determination of the general plan of campaign.' How lit.? **suum, imperātōris**: in predicate after *esse*; 'was not their (business), but the commander's.' *94*, *d*, and *157*, *d*.

Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā, et itinere exquīsītō per Diviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus 15

Figure 64. — Modern canal in the plain of Alsace near Strassburg.

11. **satisfactiōne**: 'apology.' **exquīsītō**: 'sought out.', **per**: 'with the help of.'

12. **eī**: 'in him.' *109, a.* **maximam fidem**: 'the fullest confidence.' **ut . . . dūceret**: 'so that he could lead'; explains *itinere. 203*, (4).

13. **mīlium . . . circuitū**: 'although with a detour of more than fifty miles', in order to avoid the dangerous defiles of the Doubs valley; see chap. 39, ll. 23–26 and N. (Fig. 61). **mīlium quīnquāgintā**: sc. *passuum*. Why genitive? *100, a*, and *129, b.* **locīs apertīs**: 'through open country,' marching first north, and then northeast, between the Jura and the Vosegus mountains; see Map 1. *145, c.*

15. **Septimō diē**: Caesar had probably covered about 120 miles since leaving Vesontio. He was now in the valley of the Rhine, never previously entered by a Roman general with an army. **explōrātōribus**: *327.*

certior factus est, Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlibus passuum quattuor et XX abesse.

Ariovistus suggests a conference, which is arranged.

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: *Quod anteā dē colloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāre.*

Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id, quod anteā petentī dēnegāsset, ultrō pollicērētur; magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cognitīs suīs postulātīs, fore, utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus.

Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, nē quem peditem ad collo-

---

16. **nostrīs**: sc. *cōpiīs*. **mīlibus**: *147, c.*

17. **XX**: read as *vīgintī*. *36*, and *38, b.*

42. 2. **Quod**: the antecedent is *id*. *212, e.* **postulāsset** (= *postulāvisset*), **accessisset**: in translating supply 'Caesar' in order to avoid using 'he' with reference to two persons. **per sē**: 'so far as he was concerned.'

5. **nōn respuit**: 'did not reject.' **ad sānitātem**: 'to his senses.' *157, a.*

6. **petentī**: sc. *sibi*. **dēnegāsset**: 'he (Ariovistus) had refused.'

7. **ultrō**: 'of his own initiative.' **magnam . . . veniēbat**: 'he was coming to have great hopes,' we should say.

8. **prō**: 'in return for.' **suīs populīque**: *157, d.* Cf. chap. 35, ll. 3–4, and Notes.

9. **fore**: after *spem*, as if Caesar had written *spērābat*; the subject is *utī . . . dēsisteret*. *225*, and *203*, (1). **pertināciā**: 'obstinate course.' *127, a.* **colloquiō**: *112, a.*

11. **ultrō citrōque**: 'back and forth' between the headquarters of the two commanders. **mitterentur**: *185, c.*

12. **quem peditem**: 'any foot soldier.' *49, a*, and *10, d.*

quium Caesar addūceret: *Verērī sē, nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.*

Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat, neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus dētrāctīs, eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōnfīdēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret.

Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: *Plūs, quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere; pollicitum, sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescrībere.*

---

13. **Verērī sē**: '(saying) that he was afraid.' *213, b.* **nē**: 'that.' *202.*

14. **venīret**: 'should come'; *veniat* in the direct form. *216.* **aliā ratiōne**: 'on any other condition.' *136, c.*

16. **colloquium . . . tollī**: *223, a.* **interpositā causā**: 'by putting forward a pretext.' *144, b,* (6).

17. **Gallōrum equitātuī**: see chap. 15, ll. 1–4.

18. **esse**: the subject is *impōnere*, with *commodissimum*, 'the most expedient (thing),' in predicate. *222, b,* and *148, d.* **Gallīs equitibus**: 'from the Gallic horsemen.' *109, b.*

19. **dētrāctīs**: *144, b,* (2). **eō**: = *in eōs*, 'on them.'

20. **cui**: 'in which.' *105.* **quam**: *153, c.* **impōnere**: 'to mount.'

21. **sī . . . esset**: 'if there should be any need of action.' **quid**: *118, b.* **factō**: *132, a.* B. 218, 2, *c*; A. 411, *a*; H. 477, III.

22. **Quod cum fieret**: 'While this was being done.' *185, c.* **nōn irrīdiculē**: 'not without wit.' *239, g.* **quīdam**: *168.*

23. **Plūs**: object of *facere*; 'was doing more' for the legion.

24. **pollicitum**: 'having promised'; sc. *eum*, referring to Caesar, subject of *rescrībere*. **in**, etc.: 'that he would consider . . . as a body guard.'

25 **ad equum rescrībere**: the phrase has a double meaning, 'enroll as cavalrymen,' "demotion" for a legionary, or 'enroll as knights,' a rank of nobility; in the contrast lies the point of the joke.

Caesar and Ariovistus meet. Caesar justifies his demands.

43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequō ferē spatiō ā castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs dēvexerat, passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus, ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ut ad colloquium addūcerent, postulāvit.

Figure 65. — Hill of Plettig.

Here the conference between Caesar and Ariovistus probably took place. In the distance are the Vosges mountains.

---

43. 1. **Plānitiēs**: 'plain' of Alsace, between the Vosges (*Vosegus*) mountains and the Rhine (Fig. 64). *21, a.* **erat**: *90, a.* **tumulus terrēnus**: 'an earthy mound,' whose sides, free from rocks and ledges, furnished an easy ascent for horsemen. This is identified by Colonel Stoffel with the hill of Plettig, an elevation of oval shape about 24 miles southwest of Strassburg, between the villages of Epfig and Dambach; it rises in isolation more than 160 feet above the surrounding plain (Fig. 65).

2. **aequō ferē spatiō aberat**: 'was about equally distant.' How lit.? *147, c.*

3. **ut erat dictum**: 'as agreed.' How lit.?

4. **equīs dēvexerat**: 'had brought on horseback,' lit. 'by means of horses.' *131, a.* **passibus**: *147, c.*

5. **ducentīs**: *36*, and *37, d.* How many feet in 200 paces? *243, b.*

6. **intervāllō**: *138.* **ex equīs**: 'on horseback.' *126, c.*

7. **dēnōs**: 'ten men each.' *36*, and *85.* **addūcerent**: *199, a.*

Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat: *illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac līberālitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum.*

Docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Aeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta, quotiēns quamque honōrifica, in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtius Galliae prīncipātum Aeduī tenuis-

---

9. **Ubi eō ventum est**: 'when they (had) come thither.' *73, d.* **initiō**: *147, b.* **sua senātūsque**: *157, d.*

10. **beneficia**: explained by the appositional *quod*-clauses following; see chap. 35, ll. 3–5 and Notes. **rēx**: *88, a.*

11. **amīcus**: *89, a.* **mūnera**: what these 'presents' were, we do not know. Gifts considered suitable for a 'king' were a golden crown, an ivory scepter, a chair of state, and embroidered robes. **amplissimē**: 'in richest measure.' *34, a.*

12. **missa** [essent]: *214, b.* **quam rem**: 'and that this recognition.' *167.* **et . . . et**: *233, a.* **paucīs**: *105, 154, a.* **prō magnīs officiīs**: 'in return for great services.'

13. **docēbat**: 'he stated.' **illum . . . cōnsecūtum** [esse]: *213, b.*

14. **aditum**: '(way of) approach' to the Senate.

15. **suā**: *157, b.* **praemia**: 'distinctions.' No special reason is known why Ariovistus, as implied by Caesar, should have sought the recognition of Rome.

16. **veterēs**: *26, a.* **necessitūdinis**: 'of close relationship.' *12, d.*

17. **ipsīs**: i.e. *Rōmānīs;* we should say 'existed between the Romans and the Aeduans.' **intercēderent**: *204,* (3). **quae**: *48, b.*

18. **cōnsulta**: 'decrees.' **quamque**: = *et quam.* **honōrifica**: 'complimentary.' *31.* **in eōs facta essent**: 'had been passed in their behalf.' *204,* (2).

19. **ut**: 'how.' *204,* (3). **omnī tempore**: see N. to chap. 11, l. 6.

sent, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam appetīssent: *Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs velit esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id eīs ēripī quis patī posset?*

Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: *nē aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.*

The attitude of Ariovistus is uncompromising and defiant.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit:

---

20. **prius etiam quam**: 'even before.' *189, a*, and *220*. **nostram**: *157, c*.

21. **hanc**: for *hōc*. *164, c*. **ut . . . velit**: 'to desire;' explaining *hanc*. *203*, (4).

22. **nōn modo — sed**: *236, d*. **suī nihil dēperdere**: 'should lose nothing of what they had,' lit. 'of their own.' *97, a*, and *154, a*. **dignitāte**: 'in prestige.' *142, a*.

23. **auctiōrēs**: 'the more abounding.' **quod . . . posset**: i.e. *quis posset patī id, quod . . . attulissent, eīs ēripī?* The reference is to the power and independence of the Aeduans in former times.

24. **attulissent**: 'had brought.' *69, b*. **eīs**: dative, 'from them.' *109, b*. B. 188, 2, *d*; A. 381; H. 427. **posset**: *possit* in the direct form. *179, b*, (2).

25. **Postulāvit eadem**: 'he made the same demands.' *117, a*. **dederat**: 'he had intrusted'; see chap. 35. *67, a*.

26. **Nē . . . īnferret, redderet, paterētur**: explaining *eadem*. *216*. B. 316; A. 588; H. 642.

28. **remittere**: 'send back.' **posset**: *218*, (1), a. **at**: 'at any rate.' *236, a*. **quōs**: *168*.

44. 1. **postulāta**: 'demands.' **pauca**: object of *respondit*. *154, a*.

2. **suīs**: emphatic. *157, b*. **virtūtibus**: 'merits.' **multa praedicāvit**: 'had much to say.' *84*. How lit.?

Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint.

Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint.

3–8. **Direct form**: *Trānsiī* Rhēnum non *meā* sponte, sed *rogātus* et *arcessītus* ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque *relīquī;* sēdēs *habeō* in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium *capiō* iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere *cōnsuērunt.*

3. **rogātum et arcessītum**: 'because he had been asked,' etc. *227, a,* (1). B. 337, 2, *f*; A. 496; H. 638, 1.

4. **nōn sine**: *239, g.*

6. **ipsīs**: the Gauls. **concessās**: 'which had been ceded.' *227, a,* (4). **obsidēs**: i.e. *sē habēre sēdēs et obsidēs. 238, a.* **voluntāte**: *138.*

7. **iūre**: 'in accordance with the rights' (lit. 'right') 'of war.' *13, g,* and *136, c.* **quod**: the antecedent is *stīpendium.* **victīs**: 'the vanquished.' *227, a,* (4).

9–14. **Direct form**: Nōn *ego* Gallīs, sed *Gallī mihi* bellum *intulērunt;* omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad *mē* oppugnandum *vēnērunt* ac contrā *mē* castra *habuērunt; eae* omnēs *cōpiae* ā *mē* ūnō proeliō *pulsae* ac *superātae sunt.* Sī (*Gallī*) iterum experīrī *volunt,* iterum *parātus sum* dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī *volunt,* inīquum *est* dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte adhūc *pependērunt.*

9. **sēsē Gallīs . . . Gallōs sibi**: *239, b.*

11. **castra habuisse**: 'had fought.' How lit.? **ūnō proeliō**: see chap. 31, l. 46, and N.

12. **parātum dēcertāre**: 'ready to fight it out.' *148, c,* and *221. c.*

13. **ūtī**: 'to enjoy'; followed by what case? *131, c.* **inīquum**:

Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō, esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditīciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam, quam appetierit.

Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā, facere; eius reī testimōnium esse, quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit.

'unfair.' Why neuter? *148, d.* **dē stīpendiō recūsāre**: 'to refuse to pay the tribute.' How lit.?

14. **suā**: i.e. of the Gauls; they, however, told a different story, as we learn from chap. 31, ll. 34–40.

15–19. **Direct form**: Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī *mihi* ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō, esse *oportet*, atque (*eam*) hāc spē *petiī*. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium *remittētur* et dēditīciī *subtrahentur*, non minus libenter *recūsābō* (*206*) populī Rōmānī amīcitiam, quam *appetiī*.

15. **sibi ōrnāmentō**: *112, b.* B. 191, 2, *a*; A. 382, 1; H. 433. **ōrnāmentō**, etc.: 'ought to be a source of prestige and a protection, not a loss.'

16. **oportēre**: the subject is *amīcitiam . . . esse*.

17. **per**: *123, a.*

18. **subtrahantur**: 'should be taken from under' his control. The *dēditīciī* were 'prisoners of war,' held as hostages to force the payment of tribute.

20–23. **Direct form**: Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam *trādūcō*, id *meī* (*39*) mūniendī (*causā*), nōn Galliae impugnandae causā, *faciō;* eius reī testimōnium *est*, quod nisi rogātus nōn *vēnī*, et quod bellum nōn *intulī*, sed *dēfendī*.

20. **Quod**, etc.: 'In regard to his bringing over,' etc. *198, c.* **multitūdinem**: 120,000, according to chap. 31, l. 17.

21. **suī mūniendī** [causā]: 'in order to protect himself.' *230,* (1).

22. **testimōnium**: 'proof'; in predicate with *esse*, to which the *quod*-clauses stand as subject. **quod**: 'the fact that.' *198, b.* **nisi rogātus**: 'without being asked.'

23. **dēfenderit**: 'had acted on the defensive,' lit. 'warded off (war).'

Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sīcut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs fīnēs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

Quod frātrēs ā senātū Aeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum, ut nōn scīret, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī sēcum

---

24–30. **Direct form**: *Ego* prius in Galliam *vēnī* quam *populus Rōmānus.* Numquam ante hōc tempus *exercitus* populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus *ēgressus est.* Quid *tibi vīs?* Cūr in *meās* possessiōnēs *venīs? Prōvincia mea est haec* Gallia, sīcut *illa* (*Gallia*) *vestra* (*prōvincia est*). Ut *mihi* concēdī nōn *oporteat*, sī in *vestrōs* fīnēs impetum *faciam* (*207*, 1), sīc item *vōs estis inīquī*, quod *mē* in *meō* iūre *interpellātis.*

24. **Galliam**: Celtic Gaul (*287*, *b*), as in l. 28; the Province, mentioned in l. 26, as stated elsewhere, had been under Roman control since 121 B.C. *290.*

26. **fīnibus**: *127*, *a*. **Quid sibi vellet**: 'what did Caesar mean?' How lit.? *217*, *a.*

27. **hanc Galliam**: 'this (part of) Gaul,' toward the Rhine.

28. **Ut**: 'As.' **ipsī**: *Ariovistō.* **concedī nōn oportēret**: 'no concession ought to be made.' How lit.?

30. **sē interpellārēmus**: 'we were interfering with him.'

31–36. **Direct form**: Quod frātrēs ā senātū Aeduōs appellātōs (*esse*) *dīcis*, nōn tam *barbarus* neque tam *imperītus* rērum *sum*, ut nōn *sciam*, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī *mēcum* et cum Sēquanīs *habuērunt*, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

31. **Quod — dīceret**: 'with reference to his saying.' **frātrēs**: *88*, *a*. Cf. chap. 33, l. 8.

32. **imperītum rērum**: 'unversed in affairs.' *102.* B. 204, 1; A. 349, *a*; H. 451, 1. **ut**: *197*, *b.*

33. **bellō**: only three years before, in 61 B.C. *147*, *b.*

34. **ipsōs, Aeduī**: trans. as if *Aeduōs, eī.* **contentiōnibus**: struggles.'

et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

Dēbēre sē suspicārī, simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quod exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat, atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste, habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab ipsīs, per eōrum nūntiōs, compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcessisset et līberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, magnō sē

37–47. **Direct form**: *Dēbeō* suspicārī, simulātā *tē* amīcitiā, quod exercitum in Galliā *habēs, meī* opprimendī habēre. Nisi *dēcēdēs*, atque exercitum *dēdūcēs* ex hīs regiōnibus, *tē* nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hostē, *habēbō*. Quod sī *te interfēcerō*, multīs nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum *faciam* (id ab ipsīs, per eōrum nūntiōs, compertum *habeō*), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam *tuā* morte redimere *possum*. Quod sī *dēcesseris* et līberam possessiōnem Galliae *mihi trādideris*, magnō *tē* praemiō *remūnerābor* et, quaecumque bella gerī *volēs*, sīne ūllō *tuō* labōre et perīculō *cōnficiam*.

37. **Dēbēre sē suspicārī**: 'that he had good reason to suspect.' How lit.? **simulātā amīcitiā**: 'under the guise of friendship.' *144, b*, (5).

38. **suī opprimendī causā**: 'in order to crush him.' *230*, (1). **habēre**: sc. *eum*, 'was keeping (it there).'

39. **Quī**: Caesar. *167*. **dēdūcat**: 'withdraw.' **regiōnibus**: 'regions.' *81*.

40. **habitūrum**: sc. *esse*. **Quod**: 'Moreover.' *118, d*.

42. **grātum**: 'a kindness.' **id**: 'that fact.' *160, c*.

43. **nūntiōs**: 'agents' rather than 'messengers.' **compertum habēre**: trans. as if *comperisse*. *229, a*. B. 337, 7; A. 497, *b*; H. 431, 3. **quōrum omnium**: 'of all of whom.' *97, c*.

44. **eius**: Caesar's. It is not impossible that Ariovistus had been in communication with Caesar's enemies; but whether he spoke the truth or not, he was evidently familiar with the party strifes and jealousies at this time in Roman politics. **Quod**: 'On the other hand.' *118, d*.

45. **līberam**: i.e. 'without interference.' **Galliae**: Celtic Gaul, as in l. 24.

illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et, quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō eius labōre et perīculō cōnfectūrum.

Caesar declines to make any concessions.

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset:

Figure 66. — The conference between Caesar and Ariovistus.

46. **illum**: trans. as if *Caesarem*. **remūnerātūrum** [esse]: 'he would compensate.' *61*, *a*, (1). **quaecumque**: *50*, *a*.

47. **eius**: 'on the part of Caesar.' How lit.? **cōnfectūrum** [esse]: if Caesar will withdraw, Ariovistus will fight his battles for him. The attitude of Ariovistus seems somewhat less defiant than in his former reply, sent by messengers and summarized in chap. 36. The conference between Caesar and Ariovistus, as conceived by a German designer, is shown in Fig. 66.

45. 1. **in eam sententiam**: lit. 'to this purport'; we should say 'to show.'

2. **negōtiō**: *127*, *a*. **posset**: *204* (3). B. 300, 1; A. 574; H. 649, II.

3–8. **Direct form**: Neque *mea* neque populī Rōmānī *cōnsuētūdō patitur*, utī optimē meritōs sociōs *dēseram*, neque *iūdicō*, Galliam potius esse *tuam*

Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī, utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre, Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Quīntō Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset.

Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam, bellō victam, suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

---

quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō *superātī sunt Arvernī* et *Rutēnī* ā Quīntō Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus *ignōvit*, neque (*eōs*) in prōvinciam *redēgit*, neque (*eīs*) stīpendium *imposuit*.

3. **Neque**, etc.: *213, b.* **suam, populī**: *157, d.*

4. **utī . . . dēsereret**: after *patī*. *199, a*, (6). **neque**: 'and not.'

5. **esse Ariovistī**: 'belonged to Ariovistus.' *94, d.* B. 198, 3; A. 343, *b*; H. 447. **Bellō**: *131, a.*

6. **Arvernōs, Rutēnōs**: conquered in 121 B.C., but not included in the Province excepting a small division of the Ruteni, called *Rutēnī prōvinciālēs* (VII. 7); see Map GALLIA.

7. **quibus**: *105.* **ignōvisset**: the Romans with good reason had 'pardoned' them — their country, lying beyond the Cévennes mountains, could have been held only with the greatest difficulty. **neque . . . redēgisset**: 'and (whom) it had not reduced.'

9–12. **Direct Form**: Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī *oportet*, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum *est* in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī *oportet*, *libera dēbet* esse *Gallia*, quam, bellō victam, suīs lēgibus ūtī *voluit*.

9. **antīquissimum quodque tempus**: 'priority of time,' lit. 'each earliest time.' *170, a*, and *49, a.* B. 252, 5, *c*; A. 313, *b*; H. 515, 2.

11. **observārī**: 'to be regarded.' *357, b.*

12. **victam**: 'although it had been conquered.' *227, a*, (3). **suīs**: 'its own,' referring to the subject of *ūtī*. **voluisset**: i.e. *senātus voluisset*.

The conference is abruptly ended by an attack of German cavalry.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est, equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem facit sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut, pulsīs hostibus, dīcī posset, eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs.

Posteā quam in vulgus mīlitum ēlātum est, quā arrogantiā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs colloquium ut dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandī maius exercituī iniectum est.

---

46. 1. **geruntur**: trans. by a past tense. *190, a.*

2. **tumulum**: referred to in chap. 43, l. 1. *123, b.* B. 141, 3; A. 432, *a*; H. 420, 5. The German cavalry were about a thousand Roman feet from the hill (chap. 43, l. 5), the tenth legion at an equal distance.

3. **adequitāre**: 'were riding up (to).'

5. **nē quod omnīnō tēlum**: 'any missile at all.' *168.*

6. **legiōnis dēlēctae**: mounted on horseback (chap. 42, ll. 16–25); 'to the legion,' we should say. *102.*

7. **committendum** [esse] . . . **eōs**: 'he thought that he ought not to allow it to be said that, if the enemy were routed, they.' How lit.?

8. **hostibus**: *144, b,* (6). **per fidem**: 'through a pledge of good faith,' used to entrap them.

10. **Posteā quam**: *188, a.* **vulgus**: 'rank and file.' *6, b.* **ēlātum est**: *69, b.* **quā arrogantiā ūsus**: 'with what arrogance.' How lit.? *131, c.*

11. **Galliā**: *127, a.* **Rōmānīs**: why dative? *109, c.* **interdīxisset**, etc.: 'had denied to the Romans all right to be in Gaul,' lit. 'from all Gaul.' *204,* (2).

12. **ut**: 'how.' **fēcissent, dirēmisset**: *204,* (3).

14. **pugnandī**: 'for fighting,' we should say. *230,* (1). **exercituī**: *107, a.* **iniectum est**: 'were' (lit. 'was') 'infused.' *172, b.*

Ariovistus reopens negotiations, but throws Caesar's envoys into chains.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: *Velle sē dē hīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō; utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōnstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.*

Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē eius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant, quīn in nostrōs tēla conicerent. Lēgātum ē suīs sēsē magnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est Gāium

---

47. 1. **Bīduō**: *140.* **post**: here an adverb.

2–5. **Direct form**: *Volō* dē hīs rēbus, quae inter *nōs* agī coeptae neque perfectae *sunt, tēcum* agere; (*rogō*) utī aut iterum colloquiō diem *cōnstituās*, aut, sī id minus *velīs*, ē *tuīs* lēgātīs aliquem ad *mē mittās*.

2. **Velle**, etc.: *212, c*, (4), and *213, b*. **coeptae** [essent]: *72, b, c*.

3. **utī**, etc.: i.e. *sē rogāre, utī* (*Caesar*) . . . *cōnstitueret*; the idea of asking is implied in *Velle*, etc. *199, a*.

4. **minus**: trans. as if *nōn*. **ē lēgātīs**: *97, d*. **suīs**: *Caesaris*. **aliquem**: *49, a*. Ariovistus wanted Caesar to send not a messenger but one of his highest officers, probably in order to hold him as a hostage.

6. **causa vīsa nōn est**: 'there did not seem (to be any) reason.' *90, b*. **et eō magis**: 'especially'; lit. 'and on this account the more,' *eō* being explained by the following *quod*-clause. *135, a*.

7. **diēī**: *94, c*. B. 201, 3, *a*; A. 359, *b*, N. 2; H. 446, 5. **quīn . . . conicerent**: 'from hurling.' *201, a*. B. 295, 3; A. 558; H. 595, 2.

8. **Lēgātum ē suīs**: 'an envoy from his staff'; one of his officers. **sēsē . . . missūrum** [esse]: 'that it would be exceedingly hazardous for him to send to Ariovistus'; how lit.? **magnō cum perīculō**: *136, a*.

10. **vīsum est**, etc.: *vīsum est mittere* (l. 16) *Gāium Valerium Procillum*, etc. *222, a*.

Valerium Procillum, C. Valeriī Cabūrī fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem, cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Metium, quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit, ut, quae dīceret Ariovistus, cognōscerent et ad sē referrent.

Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: *Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā?* Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

---

11. **C.** = *Gāī.* *19, a.* **Valeriī**: *8, a.* **virtūte**: *143, a.*

12. **hūmānitāte**: 'refinement.' **adulēscentem**: 'a young man.' **C. Valeriō Flaccō**: governor of the Province of Gaul in 83 B.C.

13. **cīvitāte**: Roman 'citizenship' was often conferred upon foreigners who had rendered some service. In this case the Gaul *Cabūrus* took the First Name and Clan Name of *C. Valerius Flaccus*, to whom he was indebted for the distinction, and was known as *C. Valerius Caburus.* *19, a,* and *b.* **dōnātus erat**: 'had been presented.'

14. **quā multā Ariovistus ūtēbātur**: 'which Ariovistus spoke fluently'; how lit.?

15. **cōnsuētūdine**: 'practice.' *135, a.* **in eō**: 'in his case.' **peccandī causa**: '(any) reason for offering violence,' lit. 'of doing wrong'; for Procillus was a Gaul.

16. **nōn esset**: 'because (as he thought) there was not.' *183, a.*

17. **ūtēbātur**: 'enjoyed.' Metius may have been received and entertained by Ariovistus in the course of the negotiations which in 59 B.C. culminated in the recognition of the German ruler by the Roman Senate (chap. 35, ll.3–4).

20. **conclāmāvit**: 'he called out loudly.' **Quid**: 'why.' *118, e.* **venīrent**: *217, a.*

21. **an speculandī causā**: '(was it) in order to act as spies.' *179, a,* (2). How lit.? **Cōnantēs** [eōs], etc.: 'when they tried to speak he stopped them,' preventing explanation because he wished his army to believe that they were spies. *227, a,* (5).

22. **catēnās**: 'chains.'

Ariovistus moves camp so as to cut off Caesar's supplies.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē eius diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Aeduīs supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet.

Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit.

---

48. 1. **prōmōvit**: '(Ariovistus) moved forward.' **mīlibus**: *147, c.* How far by our measurement? *243, a, b.*

2. **Caesaris castrīs**: Caesar's camp is located by Colonel Stoffel between Gemar and Ostheim, about 35 miles southwest of Strassburg. See Map 4, LARGE CAMP. **diēī**. *94, c.*

3. **praeter . . . trādūxit**: Ariovistus's line of march, as suggested on Map 4, probably skirted or traversed the foothills of the Vosges in such a way that Caesar could not attack him while executing this movement.

4. **castra**: the camp of Ariovistus, probably at the place so marked on Map 4, was favorably located for defense. **ūtī . . . interclūderet**: explains *cōnsiliō*. *196, a.* **frūmentō**: *127, a.* B. 214, 2; A. 401; H. 464. Ariovistus thought that by cutting off Caesar's supplies he could force Caesar to retire, or else to fight on ground of his own choosing.

5. **quī**: *163, c.* **supportārētur**: subjunctive by attraction. *220.* B. 324, 1; A. 593; H. 652.

8. **aciem īnstrūctam**: 'his army drawn up' in triple line, as indicated on Map 4, CAESAR'S FIRST POSITION. *337, a.* **ut**: 'so that.' **vellet**: *220.*

9. **eī . . . deesset**: 'he did not lack opportunity.' How lit.? *197, a*, and *239, g.*

10. **diēbus**: *147, c.* **exercitum**: the German infantry, as we see from the next line. **castrīs**: 'within the camp.' *131, a.* B. 218; A. 409; H. 476.

11. **equestrī proeliō**: 'with cavalry skirmishing.' **contendit**: *238, a.*

Genus hōc erat pugnae, quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant, sī quī, graviōre vulnere acceptō, equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubīs equōrum sublevātī cursum adaequārent.

Caesar fortifies a camp beyond Ariovistus, reopening the road.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum, quō in locō

---

12. **Genus pugnae**: 'The method of fighting.' **hōc**: *161, a.*

13. **erant**: *90, a.* **numerō**: *142, a,* and *85.* **peditēs**: sc. *erant. 10, d.* **vēlōcissimī**: 'the fastest.'

14. **quōs,** etc.: 'whom they' (the horsemen) 'had chosen from the entire force, each one (selecting) a foot-soldier.' How lit.? **singulōs**: agrees with *quōs. 36.*

15. **versābantur**: '(the horsemen) associated themselves.'

16. **eōs, hī**: the foot-soldiers. **si . . . erat, concurrēbant**: general condition of fact. *205,* (2). **quid dūrius**: 'unusually serious difficulty.' *153, a.* How lit.? **concurrēbant**: 'they would rush to the rescue.'

17. **quī**: 'any one.' *49, a* and *b.* **vulnere**: *13, e.* **equō**: *127, a.* **dēciderat**: 'had fallen.' *205,* (4).

18. **circumsistēbant**: 'they would gather round him.' **sī quō,** etc.: 'if it was necessary to advance in any direction unusually far, or to retreat with special swiftness.' *73, e,* and *153, a.*

19. **celeritās**: 'swiftness.'

20. **iubīs**: 'by the manes.' **sublevātī**: 'supporting themselves.' *174.* **cursum**: 'they kept up with the running' of the horses. Caesar afterwards employed German horsemen as mercenaries, and they rendered him very effective service, as at the siege of Alesia (VII. 80).

49. 1. **eum**: Ariovistus. **sē**: object of *tenēre.* **nē . . . prohibērētur**: see chap. 48, ll. 4–6, and Notes. *196, a.*

2. **eum locum**: Map 4, CAMP OF ARIOVISTUS. **locō**: *165, a.*

Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab hīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat.

Eō circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs, duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum; quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.

The Germans, Caesar hears, dare not fight before the new moon.

50. Proximō diē, īnstitūtō suō, Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā maiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibus pugnandī potestātem fēcit.

---

4. **castrīs**: *108, a.* **idōneum**: 'suitable.' **aciē triplicī**: *337, a.*

6. **castra**: *332.* This camp on Map 4 is called the 'Small Camp,' *castra minōra*, in order to distinguish it from the 'Large Camp,' *castra maiōra*. The two camps were not far from two miles apart; both were on somewhat higher ground. Caesar's object in establishing the smaller camp, which was a little more than half a mile from the Germans, was to keep open the road to Vesontio, and so maintain communication with his base of supplies. **mūnīre**: 'fortify.' *333.*

8. **hominum . . . expedīta**: trans. as if *sēdecim mīlia hominum expedītōrum.* **expedīta**: 'light-armed.'

9. **quae cōpiae**: 'in order that these forces.' *193, a.*

10. **Nihilō sētius**: 'Nevertheless,' lit. 'by nothing the less.' *140.*

11. **duās**: i.e. *prīmam et secundam.* **prōpulsāre**: 'to ward off.'

13. **reliquās**: sc. *legiōnēs.* How many men, probably, in the six legions? *307, b* and *e.*

50. 1. **īnstitūtō suō**: 'in accordance with his usual practice' (chap. 48, ll. 7–8). *136, c.* **utrīsque**: *51.*

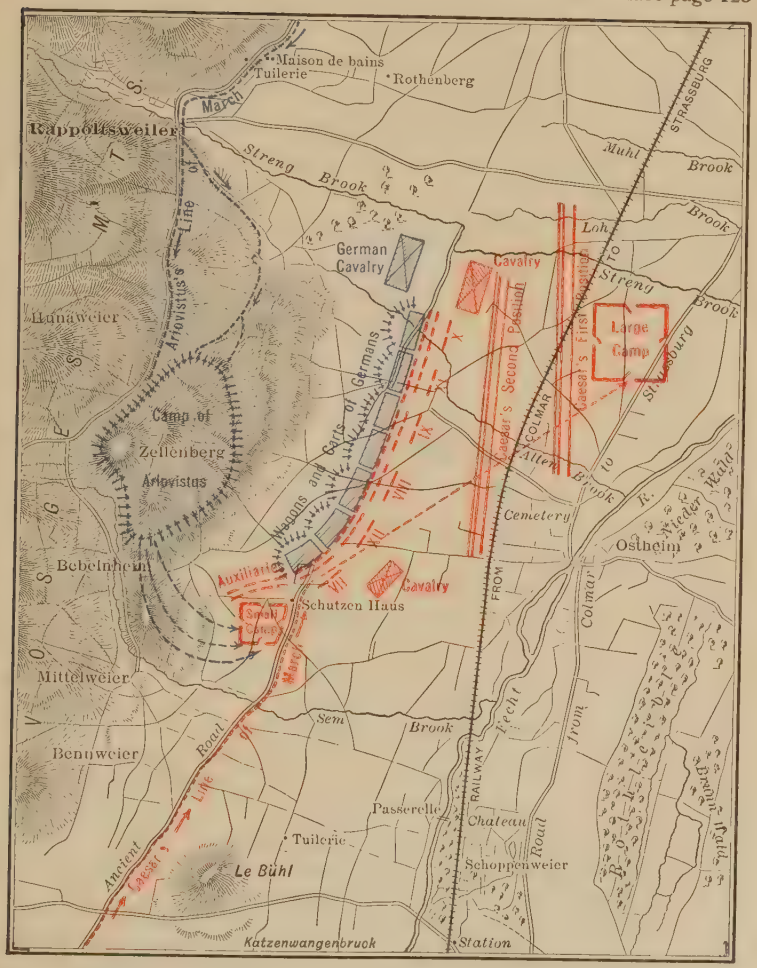
3. **aciem**: Map 4, CAESAR'S SECOND POSITION. **potestātem fēcit**: 'gave an opportunity.'

MAP 4

THE BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS

Book I, 49–53

To face page 120



EXPLANATION

Caesar, marching from the south, encamped north of Modern Ostheim (chap. 48, l. 2). Ariovistus, marching from the north, encamped on Zellenberg.

Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret, mīsit. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus, multīs et illātīs et acceptīs vulneribus, in castra redūxit.

Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent, utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; *eās ita dīcere,*

Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

---

5. **nē . . . quidem**: *237, c.* **prōdīre**: *68, b.* **merīdiem**: 'midday.'

7. **quae**: trans. as if *ut ea*. *193, a.*

8. **Ācriter — pugnātum est**: 'Fiercely the battle raged.' *73, d.* **utrimque**: 'on both sides.'

9. **Sōlis occāsū**: 'At sunset.' *147, a.*

11. **ex**: *116, c.* **quam ob rem**: 'for what reason.' *204*, (2). How lit.?

12. **proeliō nōn dēcertāret**: 'would not fight a decisive battle.' *131, a.* How lit.? Ariovistus had used only a part of his forces (l. 7). **causam**: explained by the following appositional *quod*-clause. *198, b.*

13. **esset**: *214, b.* **mātrēs familiae**: 'matrons,' married women who were believed to have prophetic powers.

14. **sortibus**: 'by means of lots,' consisting of bits of wood from a branch of a fruit-bearing tree, which were scattered at random over a white cloth and then picked up. *17, c.* **vāticinātiōnibus**: 'prophetic utterances,' inspired by "eddies of rivers and whirlings and noises of currents." **dēclārārent**: *203*, (2). **utrum . . . necne**: 'whether . . . or not.' *204*, (1). B. 300, 4, *a*; A. 335, N; H. 650, 1.

15. **ex ūsū**: 'expedient.' How lit.? **eās**, etc.: *213, b.*

16. **Nōn**, etc.: indirect discourse, depending on *dīcere*. **fās**: 'predestined.' **superāre**: 'should be victorious.' **novam lūnam**: 'the new moon' of September 18, 58 B.C., according to modern computations. The ancient German superstition about the influence of the

Taking advantage of their superstition, Caesar forces an engagement.

51. Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs, quod satis esse vīsum est, relīquit; omnēs ālāriōs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse, triplicī īnstrūctā aciē, ūsque ad castra hostium accessit.

Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomanōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō

---

moon still lingers in many places, particularly in respect to commencing certain farming operations "in the old of the moon."

51. 1. **diēī**: *94, c.* The date was about September 14. **praesidiō utrīsque castrīs**: a dative of purpose and a dative of indirect object; 'as a garrison for each camp,' we should say. How lit.? *112, a*, and *104, a.*

2. **quod**: as antecedent sc. *id*, object of *relīquit*. **ālāriōs**: 'auxiliaries'; the light-armed troops, called *ālāriī* because usually stationed on the wings (*ālae*) of an army. *308.*

4. **minus multitūdine valēbat**: 'was weaker in respect to his force.' How lit.? **prō**: 'in comparison with.'

5. **ad speciem**: 'for show,' in order to hide from the enemy his weakness in heavy infantry; Ariovistus would take the *ālāriōs* for *legiōnāriōs.*

6. **triplicī aciē**: the front formed by the legions must have been at least a mile long. The probable arrangement of the legions in order of battle is indicated in Map 4; in the rear line only two cohorts to each legion are shown, for the reason that one cohort was probably drawn off for the guard duty indicated in l. 1, *praesidiō castrīs. 337, a.*

7. **necessāriō**: 'of necessity.' **castrīs**: *127, a.*

8. **generātim**: 'by tribes,' the soldiers of each tribe being formed into a body by themselves. **intervāllīs**: *138.*

10. **raedīs**: 'with wagons,' probably covered, like gypsy wagons.

11. **circumdedērunt**: 'hemmed in,' on the rear and wings, as indi-

mulierēs imposuērunt, quae in proelium proficīscentēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

Desperate fighting, hand-to-hand; the Roman left, wavering, is reënforced.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit.

Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs, signō datō, impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt, ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Reiectīs pīlīs, comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī, celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum

---

cated in Map 4. **qua**: *168*. **Eō**: 'thereon,' upon the wagons and carts.

12. **mulierēs**: *11, c*. **proficīscentēs**: sc. *eōs*. *227, a*, (4).

13. **passīs manibus**: 'with outstretched hands.' *144, b*, (2). **flentēs**: *227, b*.

52. 1. **singulīs**, etc.: Caesar had six legions (*307, e*). Over each of five legions he put a lieutenant, and over the sixth he placed the quaestor. What were the quaestor's ordinary duties? *313, b*, and *251, b*.

2. **testēs**: 'as witnesses.' *115, a*. **quisque**: *170, b*.

3. **ā dextro cornū**: 'on the right wing.' *126, c*. **eam partem hostium**: the German left wing, opposite the Roman right. **minimē fīrmam**: 'the weakest.'

5. **Ita**: modifies *ācriter*. *34, a*. **signō**: given on the trumpet. *326, a*, (1).

6. **itaque**: = *et ita*. **repente**: 'suddenly.' **prōcurrērunt**: 'ran forward.' **spatium**: trans. as if *tempus*.

7. **pīla**: object of *coniciendī*. *322, d*, and *230*, (1). **Reiectīs pīlīs — pugnātum est**: 'they threw aside their pikes and fought.' How lit.? *144, b*, (2) and *73, d*. **comminus**: 'at close quarters.'

8. **gladiīs**: *322, e*. **ex**: 'in accordance with.'

9. **phalange**: 'a compact mass,' like the formation adopted by the Helvetians; see chap. 24, l. 13, and N.

excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī, quī in phalanga īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent.

Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedī-

---

10. **excēpērunt**: the Germans apparently did not hurl their javelins (*351*) but relied upon their shields and swords; the German sword was longer than the Roman, and single-edged (Fig. 67). **complūrēs nostrī**: 'many men on our side.' How lit.? *97, c.* B. 201, 1, *b*; A. *346, e*; H. 442, 2.

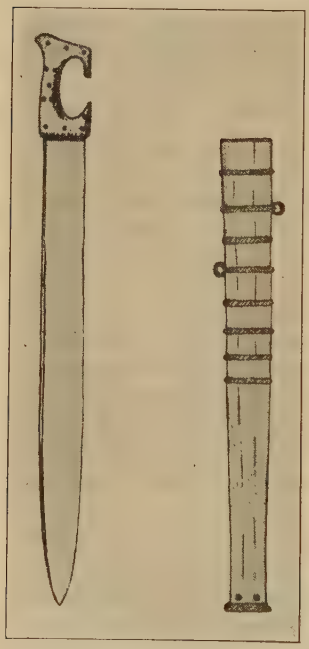


Figure 67. — Ancient German sword with its wooden scabbard.

11. **phalanga**: *18, f.* . **īnsilīrent**: 'leaped (upon).' *194, a.* **revellerent**: 'pulled back.' **dēsuper**: 'from above.' In hand-to-hand fighting the Roman soldier, parrying blows with his own shield, generally tried to strike with his sword under or around the shield of the enemy. In this case the shields of the Germans were interlocked in the close formation, and Caesar's men in their eagerness, as they rushed on the foe, sprang up, pulled back the enemy's shields from the top, and stabbed with their short swords from above.

13. **ā sinistrō cornū**: 'on their left wing,' facing the Roman right, where Caesar was. *126, c.*

14. **conversa esset**: why subjunctive? **ā dextrō cornū**: opposite the Roman left.

16. **P. Crassus**: See Vocab. under *Crassus*, (2). **adulēscēns**: 'young,' so called to distinguish him from his father and from his older brother, who was afterwards with Caesar in Gaul; see Vocab. under

tior erat quam eī, quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

Caesar is victorious. The captive envoys are rescued.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt, quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnquāgintā, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut, vīribus cōnfīsī, trānāre contendērunt aut, lintribus inventīs, sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī, nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus, eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

Crassus, (3). **equitātuī**: *107*. **expedītior**: 'more disengaged,' so that he had an opportunity to look about and see where help was most needed; the cavalry, which Crassus commanded, was not fighting.

17. **eī**, etc.: the officers of the legions. **inter aciem**: 'in action.' How lit.? **tertiam aciem**: the 'third line' was usually kept as a reserve force till needed. *337, b*.

18. **labōrantibus**: 'who were hard pressed.' *227, a*, (4). **nostrīs, subsidiō**: *112, b*.

53. 1. **restitūtum est**: the language implies that the Roman left wing was ceasing to fight when the reserves were sent to its aid.

2. **prius quam**: *189, a*. **ad flūmen Rhēnum**: possibly the fleeing Germans followed the valley of the river Ill and came to the Rhine about '50 miles' northeast of the scene of battle. On the other hand a flight and pursuit of 50 miles seem improbable, and it has been suggested that Caesar wrote *quīndecim*, 'fifteen,' instead of *quīnquāgintā*; for the Rhine is about 15 miles east of the supposed battlefield.

4. **vīribus**: *135, a*. B. 219, 1; A. 431; H. 476, 3. **cōnfīsī**: *62*.

5. **trānāre**: 'to swim across.' **lintribus**: *15, a*.

6. **nāviculam**: 'a small boat.' **dēligātam**: 'tied.'

7. **nactus**: 'coming upon.' *61, a*, (3), and *226, c*. **eā**: 'in it.' *131, a*. Ariovistus seems to have died not long afterwards (V. 29).

8. **equitēs**: what were the uses of the cavalry? *339*. **interfēcērunt**: the slain numbered 80,000, according to Plutarch.

Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum ēdūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraeque in eā fugā periērunt. Duae fīliae; hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est.

C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā, trīnīs catēnīs vinctus, traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū īnsequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium, sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is, sē praesente, dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat, utrum īgnī statim necā-

---

9. **Duae uxōrēs**: the Germans ordinarily had but one wife. **ūna** [uxor], **altera**: *91, c.* **nātiōne**: 'by birth.' How lit.? *142, a.*

11. **dūxerat**: i.e. *in mātrimōnium dūxerat*, 'had married.' **utraeque**: *51.*

12. **fīliae**: sc. *fuērunt. 89, a.* **altera, altera**: *171, b.* **occīsa**: sc. *est. 89, b.*

14. **Procillus**: see chap. 47, ll. 10–22, and Notes. **trīnīs**: distributive; 'with three chains.' *37, e.*

15. **vinctus**: 'bound.' Principal parts of *vinciō*, *vincō*, and *vīvō*? **traherētur**: 'was being dragged along.' **in . . . incidit**: 'fell in the way of.' **hostēs**: object of *īnsequentem.*

16. **Quae rēs**: 'And this circumstance.' *167.*

17. **voluptātem**: 'pleasure.' **attulit**: *69, b.*

18. **honestissimum**: 'very honorable'; *honestus*, from *honor*, is never our "honest."

19. **hospitem**: 'guest-friend.' *10, d.* **ēreptum** [esse], **restitūtum** [esse]: *213, a.*

20. **neque**: = *et nōn.* **eius calamitāte**: 'by his' (Procillus's) 'destruction.' **grātulātiōne**: '(reason for) thankfulness.'

21. **quicquam dēminuerat**: with the negative in *neque*, 'had not detracted,' lit. 'had not lessened anything at all.' *168*, and *117, a.* **sē praesente**: 'in his presence.' How lit.?

22. **ter**: considered among primitive peoples a sacred number; the

rētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur: *sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem.*

Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

His army in winter quarters, Caesar goes to North Italy.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs ubi, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sēnsērunt, īnsecūtī magnum ex hīs numerum occīdērunt.

Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō, quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum prae-

---

notion survives in our "three times and out." **sortibus cōnsultum** [esse]: 'the lots were consulted'; see chap. 50, l. 14 and N. How lit.? *73, d,* and *131, a.* **utrum . . . an**: *20, 1).* **īgnī**: *14, b.* **statim**: *77.* **necārētur**: 'should be killed.'

23. **reservārētur**: 'should be saved up.' **sē**, etc.: 'that he was unharmed.'

25. **M. Metius**: chap. 47, l. 16. **eum**: *Caesarem.*

54. 1. **Suēbī . . . vēnerant**: see chap. 37, ll. 5–8. .

2. **quōs . . . sēnsērunt**: trans. as if *et ubi eī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, eōs* (i.e. *Suēbōs*) *perterritōs* (*esse*) *sēnsērunt.*

3. **Rhēnum**: *123, b.* B. 141, 3; A. 432, *a*; H. 435, 2.

4. **īnsecūtī**: *226, c.* **ex hīs**: *97, d.*

5. **aestāte**: 'summer.' *147, a.* The defeat of the Helvetians took place near the end of June, that of Ariovistus the second week in September. With not more than 35,000 soldiers, including cavalry and light-armed troops, Caesar in two campaigns completed in a single season, had practically annihilated fighting forces several times as large as his own, and had destroyed, or rendered docile, two hostile populations aggregating several hundred thousand persons. History affords no more striking instance of a victory of military organization, discipline, and generalship over numbers, barbaric courage, and brute force.

6. **mātūrius**: *34, a.* **hīberna**: 'winter quarters.' *335, a,* and *b.*

7. **Sēquanōs**: *282.* The region in which the battle was fought had probably formed a part of the Sequanian territory but had been ceded to Ariovistus. **hībernīs**: probably at Vesontio, which possessed

posuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

---

great advantages as a military base, as explained in chap. 38. **praeposuit**: 'put in charge of.' *107, b.*

8. **citeriōrem Galliam**: *284.* **ad conventūs agendōs**: 'to hold court.' How lit.? The governor of a province from time to time visited the principal cities in order to preside over provincial courts for the administration of justice. In Cisalpine Gaul, moreover, Caesar would be nearer Rome and so enabled to keep in touch with political conditions there.

1. Slinger, *funditor.* 2–3. Legionaries, with different types of equipment.
4. Pack, *sarcinae.* 5. Cavalry.

COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS

Campaign against the Belgians. 1–28

The Belgians form a league against Caesar.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat, omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare: 5

Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum, quod verērentur,

---

1. 1. **esset**: *185, c.* B. 288, 1, B; A. 546; H. 600, II. **citeriōre Galliā**: *124, a,* and *284.* **ita utī**: 'just as.' **suprā**: 'above,' in the last chapter of Book I. We use the word "above" similarly in referring to the preceding part of a work.

2. **dēmōnstrāvimus**: *156.* B. 242, 3; A. 143, *a*; H. 500, 2. Caesar the *writer* sometimes speaks in the first person, but always presents Caesar the *doer* in the third. **crēbrī**: 'frequently'; agrees with *rūmōrēs*, 'reports,' but has the force of an adverb. *151.* B. 239; A. 290; H. 497. **afferēbantur**: force of the imperfect? *175, a.* B. 260, 2; A. 470; H. 534, 3. **litterīs**: *131, a.* B. 218; H. 476.

3. **certior fīēbat**: 'he was informed.' How lit.? **omnēs . . . dare**: *213, a,* and *214, a.* **Belgās**: *19, e,* and *287, a.* **quam**: subject accusative with *esse*, = *quōs*, 'who'; attracted to the feminine singular to agree with *partem* in the predicate. *164, c,* and *282.*

4. **Galliae**: here Transalpine Gaul, as in I, 1, l. 1, referred to in *dīxerāmus.* **dīxerāmus**: *214, c.*

5. **coniūrāre**: 'were conspiring,' according to the Roman point of view. **inter sē dare**: 'were exchanging.' *159.*

6–8. **Direct form**: Coniūrandī *hae sunt causae:* prīmum, quod *verentur*, nē, omnī pācātā Galliā, ad eōs exercitus noster *addūcātur;* deinde, quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs *sollicitantur.*

6. **Coniūrandī**, etc.: summary of a statement made in a dispatch from Labienus (l. 2, *litterīs*). *212, c,* (3), and *214, a.* **hās**: 'as fol-

nē, omnī pācātā Galliā, ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs, quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

---

lows.' *161, a.* **Coniūrandī causās**: explained by the appositional *quod*-clauses following. *230,* (1), and *198, b.* **prīmum, deinde**: *237, b.*

7. **nē**: 'that.' *202.* **omnī pācātā Galliā**: = *sī Gallia omnis pācāta esset. 144, b,* (4). **Galliā**: Celtic Gaul, bordering the Belgian country on the south; the Romans remained in possession of a considerable portion of Celtic Gaul after the defeat of the Helvetians and Ariovistus. *287, b.* **ad eōs**, etc.: the fear of a Roman invasion was justified, as the event proved. The "conspiracy" of the Belgians was the natural effort of a spirited people to defend their liberties against anticipated encroachment. *158, b.* **noster**: *157, c.*

8. **sollicitārentur**: 'were being stirred up.' **partim quī**: 'partly (by those) who.' Caesar here passes to the direct form of statement, presenting as facts, on his own authority, details reported by Labienus.

9. **ut**: 'as.' *188, b.* **diūtius**: *153, a.* **Germānōs versārī**: *223, a.*

10. **inveterāscere**: 'should become established.'

11. **molestē ferēbant**: 'were seriously objecting.' **mōbilitāte et levitāte animī**: 'by reason of temperamental instability and fickleness.' How lit.?

12. **novīs imperiīs**: 'a change of rulers.' *105.* How lit.? **nōn nūllīs**: i.e. powerful nobles; sc. *sollicitābantur.*

13. **ā potentiōribus**: 'by the more powerful.' *154, a.* **ad condūcendōs hominēs**: 'for hiring men,' i.e. mercenary soldiers. *230,* (3).

14. **rēgna occupābantur**: 'the supreme power was seized.' *92, a,* and *289, c.* **quī**: 'and they.'

15. **eam rem**: 'that object,' the obtaining of supreme power. **imperiō nostrō**: 'under our sovereignty.' *138.* B. 221; A. 412; H. 473, 3. **poterant**: 'would be able.'

He raises two new legions, marches to their territory.

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus, Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et initā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque

Figure 68. — Scene in Belgium: the Meuse, below Namur.

2. 1. **nūntiīs litterīsque**: cf. I, 26, l. 20, and N. **duās legiōnēs**: the thirteenth and fourteenth. Caesar now had eight legions, numbered VII to XIV. *307, a, e, f.*

2. **initā aestāte**: 'at the beginning of the warm season,' probably the latter part of May. How lit.? *68, b,* and *144, b,* (1).

3. **ulteriōrem Galliam**: *286.* **quī** [eās] **dēdūceret**: 'to lead them,' probably over the Great Saint Bernard pass. *193, a.* B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; H. 590. **lēgātum**: *313, a.* Pedius was a son of Caesar's sister Julia; see Vocab.

4. **pābulī cōpia**: forage was needed for the numerous draft animals used for the transportation of military stores, as well as for the horses of the cavalry and the officers. **inciperet**: *185, c.*

5. **exercitum**: probably stationed at or near Vesontio; see Map 1. **Dat negōtium**: 'He directed.' *175, b.* **reliquīs**: *171, a.*

Gallīs, quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt, manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit, quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi submit, and give information about the other Belgians.

3. Eō cum dē improvīsō celeriusque omnī opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum

---

6. **Belgīs**: *108, a.* **utī . . . faciant**: *199, a.*

7. **gerantur**: *220.* B. 324; A. 593; H. 652. **sē**: *158, a.*

8. **cōnstanter**: 'uniformly,' with perfect agreement between the reports. **manūs**: 'bodies of troops' among the Belgians.

9. **locum**: why not ablative? *124, a.* **dubitandum nōn** [esse]: sc. *sibi*, 'that he ought not to hesitate.' *73, e.*

10. **ad**: 'against.' **eōs**: *Belgās.* **proficīscerētur**: *201, c.* **Rē frūmentāriā comparātā**: 'Having provided for a supply of grain.' *144, b,* (2). How lit.?

11. **castra movet**: 'he broke camp.' *175, b.* **diēbus**: *147, a.* **circiter**: adverb with *quīndecim.* **ad fīnēs pervenit**: 'he reached the territories.' The probable route is indicated on Map 1.

Figure 69. — Coin of the Remi.

Bronze. The three heads of the obverse perhaps belong to a three-headed divinity; inscription, REMO. Reverse, horses and chariot, copied from a Greek coin.

3. 1. **Eō**: = *ad fīnēs Belgārum.* **improvīsō**: ablative singular neuter of the adjective used as a noun, forming with **dē** an adverbial phrase like the English colloquial phrase "of a sudden," "all of a sudden," i.e. 'unexpectedly.' **celerius omnī opīniōne**: 'more quickly than any one had expected,' lit., 'than every expectation.' *129, a.* B. 217, 4; A. 406; H. 471.

2. **vēnisset**: *185, c.* **Rēmī**: the name survives in Reims, modern name of the city occupying the site of the ancient capital of the Remi, Durocortorum. **Galliae**: Celtic Gaul. *287, b.* Why dative? *108, a.* **ex Belgīs**: trans. as if *inter Belgās.*

lēgātōs Iccium et Andecumborium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent:

Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre.

Reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs

---

3. **lēgātōs**: 'as envoys.' *115, a.* **prīmōs**: 'the leading men.' *154, a.* **cīvitātis**: of the Remi.

4. **quī dīcerent**: 'to say.' *193, a.* B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; H. 590.

5–9. **Direct form**: *Nōs nostraque* omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī *permittimus;* neque cum reliquīs Belgīs *cōnsēnsimus*, neque contrā populum Rōmānum *coniūrāvimus, parātī*que *sumus* et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et (*tē*) oppidīs recipere et (*tē*) frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre.

5. **Sē**, etc.: *212, c*, (3). **Sē suaque omnia**: 'themselves and all that they had.' How lit.? **in fidem**: 'to the protection.'

6. **permittere**: sc. *sē* as subject. *214, a.* **neque**: 'and not.'

7. **coniūrāsse**: = *coniūrāvisse. 64, a*, (1). **parātōs**: adjective, in predicate.

8. **et, et**: *234, a.* **dare, facere**, [eum] **recipere**, [eum] **iuvāre**: after *parātōs. 221, c.* B. 328, 1; A. 460, *b*; H. 608, 4. **imperāta facere**: 'to obey (his) orders.' *157, a.* **oppidīs**: 'in (their) towns.' How lit.? *131, a.* **frūmentō**: *131, a.*

10–15. **Direct form**: *Reliquī* omnēs *Belgae* in armīs *sunt, Germānī*que, quī cis Rhēnum *incolunt*, sēsē cum hīs *coniūnxērunt; tantus*que *est* eōrum omnium *furor*, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs consanguineōsque *nostrōs*, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus *ūtuntur*, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum *nōbīscum habent*, dēterrēre *potuerīmus*, quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.

11. **cis Rhēnum**: on the west side of the Rhine; Caesar writes from the point of view of the Province.

12. **eōrum omnium**: *Belgārum et Germānōrum.* **nē — quidem**: *237, c.* **Suessiōnēs**: object of *dēterrēre.* The name survives in Soissons.

cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint, quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.

Report of the Remi on the history and forces of the Belgians.

4. Cum ab eīs quaereret, quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat:

Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs, propter locī fertilitātem, ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse, sōlōsque esse, quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teu-

---

13. **suōs**: 'their own,' referring to the Remi. **iūre**: '(body of) rights.' *13, g,* and *131, c.* **īsdem**: *45.*

15. **potuerint**: *197, a, b.* B. 268, 6; A. 485, *c*; H. 550. **quīn — cōnsentīrent**: 'from uniting.' *201, a.* B. 295, 3, *a*; A. 558; H. 595, 2.

4. 1. **ab eīs**: *116, c.* **quaereret**: why subjunctive? **quae**: *48, b.*

2. **essent**: *204,* (2). B. 300; A. 574; H. 649, II. **quid — possent**: 'what strength they had,' lit. 'to what degree they were able.' *118, b.* B. 176, 3; A. 390, *c*; H. 409, 1. **sīc**: 'as follows.'

3–9. **Direct form**: *Plērīque Belgae sunt ortī* ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus *trāductī,* propter locī fertilitātem, *hīc cōnsēdērunt,* Gallōsque, quī *haec* loca *incolēbant, expulērunt; sōlīque sunt,* quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī prohibuerint (*194, a*); quā ex rē *fit,* utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī *sūmant.*

3. **Plērōsque Belgās**: 'That most of the Belgians.' *97, c.* **ā Germānīs**: *128, b.* The Belgians were of Celtic stock, but had formerly lived on the east side of the Rhine; hence probably arose the belief that they were of Germanic origin. **Rhēnum**: accusative after *trā(ns)* in *trāductōs. 114, a.*

4. **antīquitus**: 'in ancient times.' **fertilitātem**: 'productiveness.' **ibi**: in Gaul.

5. **sōlōs**: in predicate; 'were the only (people of Gaul) who.'

6. **memoriā**: *147, b.* **omnī Galliā vexātā**: 'when Gaul as a

tonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī, utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent.

Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcē- 10
bant, propterea quod, propinquitātibus affīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognōverint:

Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia 15

---

whole was ravaged' by the Cimbrians and Teutons; see N. to I, 33, l. 17. *144, b*, (2), and *286*.

7. **ingredī**: 'from entering'; Caesar uses the infinitive with subject-accusative after *prohibeō*. *223, a*, (3). **quā ex rē**: 'and in consequence of this achievement.' *167*.

8. **fierī, utī . . . sūmerent**: *203*, (1). **memoriā**: *135, a*.

9. **in rē mīlitārī**: 'in respect to the art of war.' **sūmerent**: why imperfect? *177, a*.

10. **eōrum**: *Belgārum*. **omnia sē habēre explōrāta**: 'that they possessed complete information.' How lit.? *229, a*. B. 337, 7; A. 497, *b*; H. 431, 3.

11. **propterea quod**: N. to I, chap. 1, l. 6. **propinquitātibus affīnitātibusque**: 'by blood relationships and intermarriages.' *76, a*.

12. **quisque**: 'each' representative, speaking for his state or tribe. **multitūdinem**: 'host.'

13. **pollicitus sit**: *204*, (3). **cognōverint**: *214, a*

14–17. **Direct form**: Plūrimum inter eōs *Bellovacī* et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō *valent; hī possunt* cōnficere armāta mīlia centum; *pollicitī* (*sunt*) ex eō numerō ēlēcta sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi *postulant*.

Figure 70. — Coin of the Bellovaci. Gold; fanciful designs.

14. **Plūrimum**, etc.: *212, c*, (3). **Plūrimum Bellovacōs valēre**: 'that the Bellovaci were the most powerful' (Fig. 70). *118, b*. **virtūte**: *135, a*.

15. **cōnficere**: 'muster.' *57, b*. **armāta mīlia**: trans. as if *mīlia hominum armātōrum*.

centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre.

Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae, imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numerō XII, pol-

16. **pollicitōs**: *89, b.* **ēlēcta sexāgintā**: sc. *mīlia*, 'sixty (thousand) picked men.' **tōtīus**: *23, a.*

18–31. **Direct form**: Suessiōnēs *nostrī sunt fīnitimī;* fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs *possident.* Apud eōs *fuit rēx* nostrā etiam memoriā *Dīviciācus*, tōtīus Galliae *potentissimus*, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae, imperium *obtinuit;* nunc est *rēx Galba;* ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque *summa* tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēfertur; oppida *habent* numerō XII, *pollicentur* mīlia armāta L; totidem *Nerviī*, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs *habentur* longissimēque *absunt;* XV mīlia Atrebātēs, *Ambiānī* X mīlia, *Morinī* XXV mīlia, *Menapiī* VII mīlia, *Caletī* X mīlia, Veliocassēs et *Viromanduī* totidem, Atuatucī XVIIII mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Paemānōs, qui ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, *arbitrāmur* posse armāre ad XL mīlia.

18. **suōs fīnitimōs**: 'their neighbors,' neighbors of the Remi. **ferācissimōs**: 'very productive.' *27, a,* and *153, a.*

19. **possidēre**: as subject-accusative supply *eōs*, i.e. *Suessiōnēs.* **fuisse** 'that there had been.' *90, a.*

20. **Dīviciācum**: not to be confused with Divicīācus the Aeduan druid, who is mentioned in the next chapter.

21. **cum . . . tum**: 'not only . . . but also,' *186, b.* **regiōnum**: dependent on *partis*, which limits *imperium.* **Britanniae**: not the whole of Britain — probably only a portion of the island along the southeast coast. *294.*

22. **esse**, etc.: trans. as if *Galbam esse rēgem. 19, d.* **ad hunc — dēferrī**: 'that upon him — was conferred.' *69, b.*

23. **prūdentiam**: 'good judgment.' **summam**: 'the supreme command.'

24. **voluntāte**: *138.* **habēre, pollicērī**: sc. *eōs* (*Suessiōnēs*). **numerō**: *142, a,* and *85.* **XII, L**, etc.: *38, b,* and *36.*

licērī mīlia armāta L; totidem Nerviōs, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; XV mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs X mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Atuatucōs XVIIII mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, *arbitrārī sē posse armāre ad XL mīlia.*

Caesar, taking hostages from the Remi, crosses the Aisne, and encamps.

5. Caesar, Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt.

---

25. **mīlia armāta**: N. to l. 15. **totidem**: sc. *mīlia armāta pollicērī*. **Nerviōs**: locate the Nervians, and the other peoples named, upon Map I. **maximē ferī**: in predicate. *30.*

26. **ipsōs**: the Belgians in general, not the Nervians. **habeantur, absint**: vivid use of the present tense where the imperfect, after *cognōverint*, in l. 13, might have been expected. **absint**: from the country of the Remi. **Atrebātēs**: sc. *pollicērī*.

27. **Ambiānōs**: in the region of modern *Amiens* (Fig. 71).

Figure 71. — Coin of the Ambiani.

Bronze. Obverse, figure with uplifted hands, wearing a necklace and bracelets; perhaps a divinity.

29. **XVIIII**: *ūndēvīgintī*. *36.*

30. **quī . . . appellantur**: *214, c.* **Germānī**: perhaps so called because, although of Celtic stock, they had been the last of the Belgians to remove from the east side of the Rhine to the Belgian country. **ūnō**: 'a common.'

31. **sē**: *158, a.* **ad**: adverb, 'about.'

5. 1. **Rēmōs . . . prōsecūtus**: 'encouraging the Remi and addressing (them) in gracious words.' How lit.? *226, c.*

2. **senātum**: *289, b*, and *75, b*. **prīncipum**: *10, b*.

3. **obsidēs**: 'as hostages.' *88, a*. **iussit**: 'gave orders (that).' **Quae . . . facta sunt**: 'these instructions . . . were carried out.'

4. **dīligenter**: 'carefully.' *34, a*. **ad diem**: 'promptly.'

Ipse, Dīviciācum Aeduum magnopere cohortātus, docet, quantō opere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit, manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit: *Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint.* Hīs mandātīs eum ab sē dīmittit.

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque iam longē abesse, ab eīs, quōs mīserat, explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcerē mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et

---

5. **Dīviciācum**: N. to chap. 4, l. 20, and Book I, chapters 18, 20, 31, etc.

6. **quantō opere**, etc.: 'how important it was for the State and for their mutual welfare.' How lit.? *103, e.* B. 211, 1; A. 355; H. 449. **reī pūblicae**: *Rōmānōrum.* **commūnis**: of Romans and Aeduans. **intersit**: *204,* (3).

7. **manūs distinērī**: subject of *intersit;* 'that the enemy's forces be kept apart.' *222, c,* and *79, d.* **nē . . . cōnflīgendum sit**: 'that it might not be necessary to fight.' *73, e.*

8. **Id**: refers to *manūs distinērī,* 'that (object).' *213, b,* and *160, c.*

9. **in — intrōdūxerint**: 'should have led — into'; future perfect indicative in the direct form. *218,* (1), b.

11. **coāctās . . . venīre**: 'had been brought together and were coming.' *228, a.*

12. **vīdit**: more vivid than *intellēxit;* so we use the word "see" of things understood but not perceived with the eyes. *188, a.* **neque**: trans. as if *et nōn.* **abesse**: sc. *eās* (= *cōpiās*); dependent on *cognōvit.* **eīs**: with *explōrātōribus.*

13. **explōrātōribus**: *327.* **flūmen, exercitum**: *114, a.* B. 179, 1; A. 395; H. 413. **Axonam**: now *Aisne.* See Map 1.

14. **quod**: the antecedent is *flūmen.* **extrēmīs fīnibus**: 'the most remote part of the country.' *152, a.*

15. **ibi castra posuit**: Caesar 'encamped' on the north side of the Axona, about a mile and a half northeast of the present village of Berry-au-Bac. See Map 5. **Quae rēs**: 'Now this movement.' *167.* **et . . . et**: *233, d.*

latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum quae erant, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat et, commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent, efficiēbat.

In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in

Figure 72. — View across the Aisne from the site of Caesar's camp.
The present course of the Aisne is marked by the nearer line of trees.

---

16. **rīpīs**: *131, a.* **post . . . reddēbat**: 'made the rear secure against the enemy.' *331, b.* How lit.?

17. **quae**: i.e. *ea* (*loca*) *quae*. **tūta**: *115, b.* **commeātūs . . . efficiēbat**: 'made it possible for supplies to be brought,' etc. *203*, (3). B. 297, 1; A. 568; H. 571, 3. **commeātūs**: plural because the supplies were furnished by more than one state.

20. **In**: 'across.' **pōns**: *17, c.* **erat**: *90, a.* **praesidium**: at **D** on Map 5. **in alterā parte**: on the south side of the Aisne, opposite Berry-au-Bac; see Map 5, **C**. Caesar now had both ends of the bridge well guarded. In consequence he was able to get provisions from his allies across the river; to set a watch on the Remi, the sincerity of whose professions of loyalty was not beyond question; and, finally, to keep open an avenue of retreat in case of disaster (Fig. 72).

alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

The Belgians attack Bibrax, a town of the Remi.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum, nōmine Bibrax, aberat mīlia passuum VIII. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est.

Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi, circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus, undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt, mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succendunt

---

22. **sex cohortibus**: about how many men? *307, c.* **castra**: Map 5, **A.** **pedum**: *100, a.* The measurement of twelve feet included both the height of the bank formed by the earth thrown out of the trench and that of the row of palisades along the outer edge. *333.*

23. **vāllō**: why ablative? **duodēvīgintī pedum**: eighteen Roman feet broad, measured across the top; the trench, with sloping sides, was probably about ten feet deep. Excavations, made in 1862, brought to light traces of this rampart and trench.

6. 1. **nōmine**: 'called.' How lit.? *142, a.* B. 226; A. 418; H. 480. **Bibrax**: the name in Celtic meant 'Beavertown.'

2. **mīlia passuum VIII**: *118, a; 100, a,* and *243, b.* **ex itinere**: 'from the line of march,' attacking the town as soon as they reached it; see Vocab. under **iter.**

3. **Aegrē sustentātum est**: 'With difficulty the defense was maintained.'

5. **eadem atque Belgārum**: 'the same as (that) of the Belgians.' *233, c.* **oppugnātiō**: 'the (method of) storming (fortified places).' **haec**: *161, a.*

6. **Ubi**, etc.: 'When a host of men has been thrown around the entire (circuit of) fortifications and.' How lit.? *144, b,* (2). **moenibus**: *104, a.*

7. **iacī**: *57, b.* **coeptī sunt**: *72, c.* **dēfēnsōribus**: 'of its defenders.' *127, a,* and *74, a.*

8. **nūdātus est**: 'has been cleared.' **testūdine factā**: 'having

mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī.

Cum fīnem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex eīs, quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit, *nisi subsidium sibi summittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.*

Caesar relieves the town; the Belgians march toward his camp.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, īsdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et

---

made a tortoise roof,' in the Roman fashion. *345.* **testūdine**: *12, d,* and *144, b,* (2). **succendunt**: 'they,' the attacking host, 'set on fire.' *175, c.*

9. **subruunt**: 'undermine.' **Quod tum**: 'Now this, in the present instance,' referring to the burning of the gates, and undermining of the walls, of Bibrax.

10. **conicerent**: *173, b,* and *184, a.* B. 254, 4; A. 317, *d*; H. 389, 1. **cōnsistendī**: *230,* (1).

11. **nūllī**: trans. as if *nēminī* (*12, d,* and *111*), 'no one was able to stand.' How lit.?

12. **fīnem oppugnandī fēcisset**: 'had checked the assault.' *185, c.* How lit.? **Iccius**: chap. 3, l. 3.

13. **summā nōbilitāte**: *143, a.* **inter suōs**: 'among his countrymen.' *154, a.* **oppidō**: *107, a.* **tum praefuerat**: i.e. *praepositus erat et tum praeerat.*

14. **ex eīs**: *97, d.* **lēgātī**: in predicate after *vēnerant*; 'as envoys.'

15. **nūntium**: here 'a message.' **nisi**: '(saying) that unless,' etc. *213, b.* **sibi**: 'to them,' the beleaguered inhabitants of Bibrax. **summittātur**: 'should be sent to their relief.' *218,* (1), a.

16. **sustinēre**: intransitive, 'hold out.'

7. 1. **Eō**: toward Bibrax. **dē**: *242, d.* **īsdem**: 'the same men.' *45,* and *131, c.* **ducibus**: 'as guides,' predicative. *131, f.* **ūsus**: *226, c.*

2. **nūntiī**: construed as *lēgātī* in chap. 6, l. 14. **Numidās**, etc.: *308.* **Crētas**: *19, f.* **sagittāriōs**: 'bowmen.'

funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus, eādem dē causā, spēs potiundī oppidī discessit.

Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque, quō adīre potuerant, incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posu-

3. **funditōrēs**: 'slingers.' *74, a.* Fig. 73 and Fig. 76. **subsidiō, oppidānīs**: *112, b.* B. 191, 2; A. 382, 1; H. 433. **oppidānīs**: 'the inhabitants of the town.' **mittit**: *175, b.*

4. **et . . . et**: *233, a.* **spē dēfēnsiōnis**: 'hope of repelling the assault.' How lit.? *74, b.* **studium prōpugnandī**: 'eager desire to take the offensive.' How lit.?

5. **hostibus**: dative, but trans. 'from the enemy.' *109, b.* **potiundī oppidī**: *64, b,* and *230,* (1).

7. **paulisper**: 'for a short time.' **morātī**, etc.: sc. *hostēs* as subject of *contendērunt. 61, a,* (1).

8. **vīcīs, aedificiīs**: cf. Book I, 5, ll. 4, 5 and Notes. *144, b,* (2). **quō**: adverb; trans. as if *ad quae.*

9. **omnibus cōpiīs**: *136, b.* B. 220, 1; A. 412; H. 473, 3.

10. **ā . . . duōbus**: 'less than two miles away,' i.e 'at' (lit. 'from') 'a distance of thousands of paces less than two (thousands).' The Roman point of view differs from ours in such phrases.

Figure 73. — Slinger, supplied with pebbles.

ērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus significābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum VIII in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar adds to the fortifications of his camp, awaits attack.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur.

Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitiē ēditus, tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat, quantum

---

11. **quae castra**: 'and this camp,' marked CAMP OF THE BELGIANS on Map 5, while Caesar's camp is at **A**. *167*. **fūmō**: 'by the smoke.' **significābātur**: 'was indicated.' *73, d*.

12. **mīlibus**: why ablative? *129, a*. B. 217, 1; A. 407, *e*; H. 471. **VIII**: *38, b*, and *36*.

8. 2. **eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis**: 'their extraordinary reputation for bravery.' *102*. **proeliō supersedēre**: 'to refrain from battle.' *127, a*.

3. **equestribus proeliīs**: 'cavalry skirmishes,' as distinguished from a regular engagement, with infantry. **quid . . . posset**: 'what mettle the enemy had.' How lit.? *118, b*. **virtūte**: *142, a*.

4. **perīclitābātur**: 'kept trying to find out.' *175, d*. B. 260, 2; A. 470; H. 534, 3.

5. **locō . . . idōneō**: trans. as if *cum locus* ('since the space') . . . *opportūnus atque idōneus esset*. *144, b*, (3).

6. **ad**, etc.: *230*, (3). **nātūrā**: 'naturally.' How lit.? **atque**: *233, a*.

7. **quod . . . redībat**: explains why the ground in front of the camp was well adapted for forming a line of battle. **ubi**: 'on which.' **castra**: Map 5, **A**. **paululum ēditus**: 'gradually rising.' How lit.?

8. **tantum**, etc.: 'on the side toward the enemy extended in width (far enough to provide) just the amount of space that a line of battle would require.' How lit.? **tantum**: *118, a*. **adversus**: adjective, agreeing with *collis*. **quantum**: correlative with *tantum*, and object of *occupāre*, having *locī* dependent on it.

locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat, et in frontem lēniter fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantēs, suōs circumvenīre possent.

9. **locī**: trans. as if dependent on *tantum*. *97, a*. The long, gently sloping hillside, broad enough to afford room for a Roman triple line, is shown on Map 5, between the Miette brook and the narrowing crest of the hill southwest of Caesar's camp; six legions are there shown in order of battle. **ex utrāque parte**: = 'on either side,' the side of the camp toward the river, and the opposite side.

10. **lateris dēiectūs**: 'steep slopes.' How lit.? *13, e*. **in frontem**: 'in' (lit. 'into') 'front' of the camp, on the southwest side. **lēniter fastīgātus**: 'with gentle slope.' How lit.?

11. **plānitiem**: the level ground between the hill and the river above and below Berry-au-Bac. **redībat**: here 'descended.'

12. **trānsversam fossam obdūxit**: 'he extended a trench crosswise,' that is, at right angles with the length of the hill. Starting from opposite corners of the camp, Caesar prolonged two lines of intrenchments at right angles to the sides, each about a third of a mile in length. One ran down the south slope of the hill, toward the Aisne, the bed of which in Caesar's time is indicated on the plan by the broken line. The other ran down the north slope, toward the Miette brook; both are indicated on Map 5 by red lines (**a, b**). At the ends of these intrenchments he constructed 'redoubts' (**B B**), where he stationed troops, with military engines. His purpose was to guard against a flank movement on the part of the enemy, by which they might reach the rear of the camp, and attack from behind while his forces were engaged in front. **passuum quadringentōrum**: 'four hundred paces' in length. How lit.? *100, a*. How far by our measurement? *243, b*.

13. **ad extrēmās fossās**: 'at the ends of the trenches.' *152, a*. B. 241, 1; A. 293; H. 497, 4. **castella**: Map 5, **B B**.

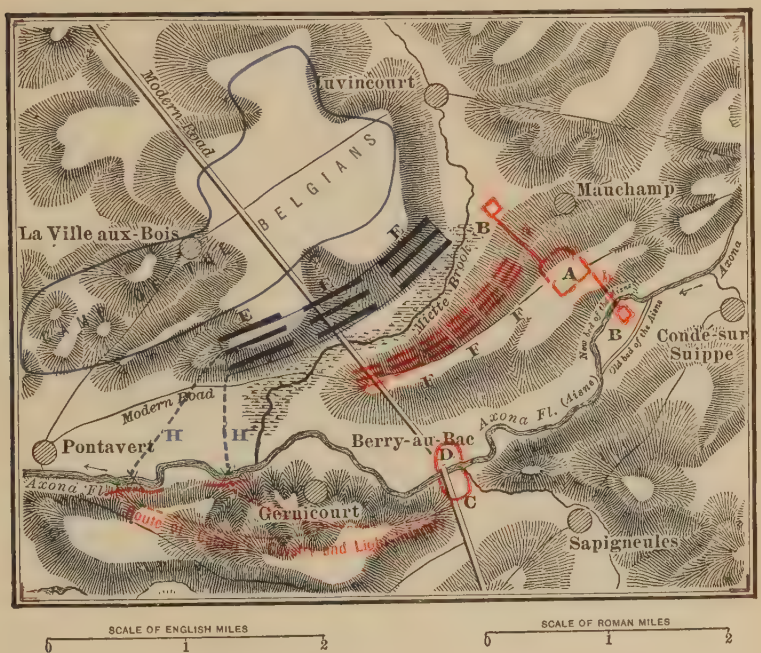
14. **tormenta**: 'torsioners,' such as were used in siege operations. *343*. **īnstrūxisset**: *220*. **quod . . . poterant**: 'because they were so strong in numbers.' Why indicative?

15. **tantum**: *118, b*. **ab lateribus**: 'on the flanks.' *126, c*.

MAP 5

THE BATTLE AT THE AISNE (AXONA)

Book II, 7–10 To face page 144



EXPLANATION

Caesar, marching from the South, encamped on the north or right bank of the Aisne, on a long hill. As the camp was well protected by the streams and the low ground on the west, in order to secure the east side, he ran intrenchments from the corners to both the Aisne and the Miette. The widely extended Belgian camp was on the opposite side of the Miette (chap. 7, ll. 11–12).

A. Caesar's camp (chap. 5, l. 15; chap. 7, l. 9; chap. 8, l. 7).

a, b. Trenches, *fossae* (chap. 8, ll. 11–13).

B, B. Redoubts, *castella* (chap. 8, l. 13).

C. Redoubt at the south end of the bridge, *castellum*, held by Q. Titurius Sabinus (chap. 5, ll. 20–22; chap. 9, l. 11).

D. Guard at the north end of the bridge, *praesidium* (chap. 5, l. 20).

E–E. The Belgians in battle order (chap. 8, l. 20).

F–F. The six legions in battle order (chap. 8, l. 19).

H–H. Probable routes taken by the Belgians to the fords at the Aisne, where they were met by Caesar's light-armed troops and cavalry (chap. 9, ll. 8–15).

Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōnscrīpserat, in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās VI legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxerant. 20

Figure 74. — View toward the Miette from the site of Caesar's camp. The course of the brook is marked by the trees. Notice the flat, marshy land (palus) near the brook.

---

pugnantēs: with *hostēs*. **suōs**: 'his men.' *154, a*. A glance at the Map shows how well designed the trenches were to protect against an attack upon the right end of the battle line, and block access to the rear, which was otherwise protected by the river.

17. **duābus legiōnibus**: the thirteenth and fourteenth, enrolled a few months before; see chap. 2, ll. 1–4. Generally, as in this instance, Caesar exposed his veterans to the brunt of the battle, leaving recruits, whose powers had not been fully tested, as a reserve force. *307, d,* and *f*.

18. **relictīs**: *144, b,* (2). **quō**: 'at any point.' **esset**: *220*. **subsidiō**: 'as a reserve force.' *112, a*.

19. **aciē**: undoubtedly a triple line. *337*.

20. **ēductās īnstrūxerant**: 'had led forth and drawn up.' *228, a*

The Belgians attempt to cross the Aisne and attack Titurius.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs aggrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit.

Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi, vadīs repertīs, partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī

B. 337, 5; A. 496, N. 2; H. 639. For the relative positions of the two armies, see Map 5.

9. 1. **Palūs**: the marshy ground along the Miette brook, indicated on Map 5. In the dry weather of the autumn of 1914 the German army ran first-line and communicating trenches through this marsh, but later these were flooded by the Miette brook. **erat**: *90, a.* **nostrum**, etc.: 'our army and that of the enemy.' *157, d.*

2. **Hanc**: *palūdem.* **sī**: '(to see) whether.' *204,* (4). B. 300, 3; A. 576, *a*; H. 649, II, 3.

3. **nostrī . . . erant**: *nostrī autem parātī in armīs erant, ut, sī ab illīs* (*hostibus*) *initium trānseundī* (*palūdem*) *fieret,* (*eōs*, the enemy engaged in crossing over, hence at a disadvantage) *impedītōs aggrederentur.* **fieret**: *220.* B. 324, 1; A. 593; H. 652.

4. **aggrederentur**: *57, c.* Why subjunctive? **proeliō**, etc.: 'a cavalry engagement continued.' How lit.? *73, d.*

5. **neutrī**: 'neither side'; each side was waiting for the other to assume the offensive. *23, a.*

6. **secundiōre proeliō**: *144, b,* (5). B. 227, 2, *c*; A. 420, 3; H. 489, 1. **nostrīs**: *108, a.*

8. **prōtinus**: 'at once.' **eō locō**: on the opposite side of the marsh from the Romans.

9. **dēmōnstrātum est**: 'it has been shown'; see chap. 5, ll. 11–19.

10. **vadīs**: shallow places, suitable for fording, are still found in the Aisne, between the mouth of the Miette brook and the village of

sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent. 15

Figure 75. — View across the Aisne toward Pontavert.

The water in the foreground is in a canal. The river lies in the gully beyond; there the fight at the ford took place.

Pontavert; for the route of the attacking forces see Map 5, **H H**.

11. **eō cōnsiliō**: 'with this design,' explained by the appositive *ut*-clauses following. *135*, *a*, and *203*, (4). **possent**: *220*. **castellum**: on the south bank of the Aisne; Map 5, **C**, and chap. 5, ll. 20–22. The Belgians planned to storm the redoubt from the rear. The attempt was justified, from the military point of view; for the destruction of the bridge would have made Caesar's position extremely difficult.

13. **minus**: trans. as if *nōn*. **potuissent**: change of tense from *possent*, 'if they could,' to *potuissent* 'if (having made the attempt) they should have been unsuccessful.' **populārentur, prohibērent**: sc. *ut*, the clauses being in apposition with *cōnsiliō*.

14. **nōbīs, ūsuī**: *112*, *b*. **commeātū**: *127*, *a*.

Caesar prevents their crossing; they decide to disperse.

10. Caesar, certior factus ab Titūriō, omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

---

10. 1. **certior factus**: 'on being informed' of the attempted movement. **equitātum, pontem**: *114, a.* B. 179, 1; A. 395; H. 413. As Caesar's camp was south of the Miette and east of the bridge over the Aisne, he could send his cavalry across the bridge without danger of interference, and from the south side of the Aisne could attack the enemy in the act of crossing.

Figure 76. — Leaden slingshot. Hurled by soldiers of Octavianus against L. Antonius at the siege of Perusia, 41-40 B.C. Inscription, CAESAR IMP[ERATOR], referring to Octavianus.

2. **levis armātūrae**: 'of light equipment'; trans. 'light-armed.' *308*, and *100, a.* **funditōrēs**: probably provided with leaden bullets, though such are not mentioned by Caesar; slingshots of lead were in use both before and after the Gallic Wars (Fig. 14 and Fig. 76).

3. **eōs**: *hostēs*. **eō locō**: where the enemy started to cross the river; marked on Map 5 by crossed swords.

4. **pugnātum est**: *73, d.* **aggressī**: *226, c.*

5. **per**: 'over.' The bravery of these Belgians, recorded by Caesar with evident admiration, justifies his characterization at the beginning of Book I (chap. 1, l. 6).

6. **cōnantēs**: with *reliquōs*. In 1914 this part of the Aisne again became the scene of terrible slaughter. Near Berry-au-Bac French and British troops constructed pontoon bridges in the face of artillery fire accurately directed from the high ground on the north side of the river; and again the Aisne was choked with corpses.

7. **equitātū**: *131, b.* **circumventōs interfēcērunt**: 'surrounded and killed.' *228, a.*

Hostēs, ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pugnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, cōnsiliō convocātō cōnstituērunt, optimum esse, domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur.

Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Aeduōs fīnibus

---

9. **Hostēs**: the main body of the enemy, which remained inactive while a detachment (*partem suārum copiārum*, chap. 9, l. 10) tried to cross the river. **oppidō**: Bibrax; see chaps. 6 and 7. *230*, (4).

10. **spem sē fefellisse**: 'that they had been disappointed in their expectations,' lit. 'that their expectation had cheated them.' **neque**: trans. as if *et . . . nōn*. **nostrōs**: the six legions that had been formed in order of battle and then led back to camp; chap. 8, l. 19, and chap. 9, ll. 5–7.

11. **locum inīquiōrem**: 'a less favorable position.' How lit.? **pugnandī causā**: *230*, (1), and *94*, *b*.

12. **ipsōs**: *hostēs*. **dēficere**: 'to fail.' *57*, *b*. As the Gauls for the most part engaged only in short campaigns, their arrangements for supplies were very defective. It is a maxim of modern warfare that "the way to victory lies through the soldier's stomach." Caesar, as all great generals, paid the most careful attention to the provisioning of his army. *317*. **cōnsiliō**: 'a conference' of the leaders.

13. **optimum esse**: 'that it was best.' The subject of *esse* is the infinitive clause *quemque revertī*, and *optimum* is in predicate. *148*, *d*. **domum suam**: 'to his own home.' *119*, *b*.

14. **intrōdūxissent**: *220*. B. 324; A. 593; H. 652.

15. **eōs**: antecedent of *quōrum*; 'to defend that people.' *230*, (3). **convenīrent**: sc. *ut*, 'that they should rally.' *199*, *a*, and *200*, *a*.

16. **aliēnīs**: = *aliōrum*, 'of others,' as opposed to **domesticīs**, 'their own.' **dēcertārent**: *196*, *a*. **cōpiīs**: 'supplies.' *131*, *c*.

19. **ratiō**: 'consideration,' explained by the appositive clause *quod* ('that') . . . *cognōverant*. *198*, *b*. **Dīviciācum**, etc.: cf. chap. 5, ll. 5–10. **fīnibus**: *105*.

Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs persuādērī, ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat.

The Belgians retreat in disorder; Caesar pursues them with great slaughter.

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī, nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt, ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur.

Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā, īnsidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce,

---

20. **appropinquāre**: 'were approaching.' **cognōverant**: 'they knew.' *176, b.* **Hīs**: the Bellovaci, whose actual fighting force probably did not reach the large estimate of 100,000 given by the Remi (chap. 4, ll. 14–17). *105.* **Hīs persuādērī**: 'These could not be persuaded.' How lit.? *106, b.*

21. **ut morārentur**: 'to stay' with the united Belgian host. Caesar's plan of dividing the forces of the Belgians, suggested in chap. 5, was thus successful. **neque**: 'and not.'

11. 1. **rē**: 'conclusion,' i.e. to disperse. **secundā vigiliā**: *242, c,* and *147, a.* **strepitū**: 'uproar.' *136, a.*

2. **castrīs**: shown on Map 5. *127, a.* **nūllō . . . imperiō**: ablative of attendant circumstance, explaining *magnō . . . tumultū*, and in turn explained by the causal clause *cum . . . properāret*; 'without a fixed order and without discipline.' *138.*

3. **sibi quisque**: *170, b.* **prīmum**: 'the foremost.' **peteret**: *184, a.* B. 286, 2; A. 549; H. 598.

4. **fēcērunt . . . vidērētur**: 'they made their departure look like a rout.' How lit.? *203,* (3). **fugae**: *108, a.*

6. **per**: *123, a.* **speculātōrēs**: 'spies.' *327.*

7. **veritus**: *226, c.* **discēderent**: *204,* (2).

8. **castrīs**: *131, a.* Trans. 'in camp.' **Prīmā lūce**: 'at daybreak.' *152, a.*

cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculeium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit.

Hī, novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī, magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur, neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent.

Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī

---

9. **rē**: 'the fact' that the Belgian host had actually dispersed. **explōrātōribus**: *327*.

10. **novissimum agmen**: 'the rear guard' of the retreating Belgians. *27, b.* **morārētur**: *193, a.* B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; H. 590. **Hīs**: plural from the idea of *equitēs* in *equitātum*. *107, b.* **Pedium**: N. to chap. 2, l. 3.

12. **lēgātum**: *313, a.* **subsequī**: 'to follow closely.'

13. **Hī**: 'These men,' the legionaries under Labienus; the cavalry had gone ahead to retard the Belgian rear till the Roman infantry could catch up with it. **mīlia**: *118, a.*

14. **eōrum fugientium**: 'of them as they fled.' **cum**, etc.: sc. *eī*; 'since those (Belgians) at the rear, to whom (the Roman soldiers) had come, were making a stand.' How lit.? **cum**: *184, a.*

15. **extrēmō**: *152, a.* **agmine**: here used not of an orderly marching column but of a mass of soldiers in flight. **ventum erat**: *73, d.*

16. **priōrēs**: 'those in advance,' the bulk of the retreating host. *154, a,* and *33.*

17. **vidērentur**: *220.* B. 324; A. 593; H. 652. **neque**: 'and . . . not.' **necessitāte**: 'compulsion.'

18. **exaudītō clāmōre**: 'when they heard the shouting' behind them.

19. **ōrdinibus**: 'ranks.' **sibi**: *109, a.* **praesidium pōnerent**: 'sought safety.' How lit.? **pōnerent**: with *cum* in l. 14.

interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēī spatium; sub occāsum sōlis dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Noviodunum, besieged by Caesar, surrenders.

12. Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar, prius quam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem, paucīs dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs, vīneās

---

21. **quantum,** etc.: 'as daylight permitted'; how lit.? **sub**: 'toward.'

22. **ut erat imperātum**: 'in accordance with their orders.' *73, d.*

12. 1. **diēī**: *94, c.* **sē reciperent**: 'could rally.' Why subjunctive? *189, b.*

2. **in fīnēs Suessiōnum**: see Map 1. Having scattered the great host of united Belgians, Caesar proceeds to the reduction of the different states one by one (Fig. 77).

Figure 77. — Coin of the Suessiones.

Bronze. Obverse: a Gallic neck-ring, torque, is seen on the neck.

3. **Rēmīs**: *108, a.* **magnō itinere**: 'by a forced march.' *329.*

4. **Noviodūnum**: = "Newtown"; thought to have been on the hill of Pommiers, near the modern city of Soissons. **ex itinere**: see Vocab. under *iter.* **oppugnāre**: *340.*

5. **vacuum ab**: 'destitute of.' **esse**: i.e. *id* (*oppidum*) *esse vacuum.* **lātitūdinem fossae**: the wider the 'moat,' the more difficult the filling of it so as to gain access to the wall. **lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem**: *239, c.*

6. **paucīs dēfendentibus**: 'though there were but few defending it.' *144, b,* (5).

7. **Castrīs**: probably on high ground east of Pommiers, where traces of a Roman camp, thought to date from Caesar's time, have been discovered. **vīneās agere**: 'to move forward the arbor sheds.' *342, a.*

agere, quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant, comparāre coepit.

Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, magnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeri-

Figure 78. — Hill town in France, having a situation similar to that of Noviodunum.

---

8. **quae**: as antecedent supply *ea*, object of *comparāre*. **ūsuī**: 'of use.' Why dative? *112, a.*

11. **proximā nocte**: the night following the day on which Caesar reached Noviodunum, encamped, and commenced preparations for besieging the town. **vīneīs**, etc.: 'arbor sheds,' open at the ends, were rapidly constructed, and placed in parallel rows which began outside the range of the enemy's weapons and were extended to the edge of the moat. *144, b,* (2).

12. **aggere iactō**: 'filling,' carried under the lines of arbor sheds, was 'cast' into the moat so as to level it up and make it possible to roll the towers close to the city wall. **turribus**: 'towers.' *342, b.* **magnitūdine, celeritāte**: *135, a.* **operum**: 'siege-works.'

tāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs, ut cōnservārentur, impetrant.

The Suessiones submit; Caesar marches against the Bellovaci, gathered in Bratuspantium.

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit.

Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum v abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū, ex oppidō ēgressī, manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

---

15. **petentibus Rēmīs**: 'at the urgent request of the Remi.' How lit.? **ut cōnservārentur**: after *petentibus*, 'that they should be spared.' *199, a.*

13. 1. **obsidibus**: 'as hostages'; predicative, after *acceptīs*. *88, b.* **prīmīs**: 'the foremost men.' *154, a*, and *144, b*, (2).

2. **Galbae**: chap. 4, ll. 22–24.

4. **Bellovacōs**: trans. as if *in fīnēs Bellovacōrum*. *282.*

5. **Quī cum**: 'when they.' *167.* **suaque omnia**: 'with everything they had.' How lit.? *154, a.* **oppidum**: 'stronghold'; not a city but a fortified place of refuge, occupied only in time of danger.

7. **maiōrēs nātū**: 'the old men.' How lit.? *142, a.* B. 226, 1; A. 418; H. 480.

8. **ēgressī**: 'came out and.' *228, a.* **tendere**: 'to stretch out.'

9. **in eius fidem**: 'under his protection.' *124, a.* **venīre**: *213, b.*

10. **neque**: trans. as if *et . . . nōn*. **contendere**: 'struggle' any longer.

11. **accessisset**: *185, c.* **puerī**: 'children,' not 'boys' merely.

12. **passīs manibus**: 'with hands outstretched.' *144, b*, (2). Principal parts of *pandō* and *patior?* **mōre**: with *passīs*. *136, c.*

Diviciacus presents the case of the Bellovaci.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum, dīmissīs Aeduōrum cōpiīs, ad eum reverterat) facit verba: *Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Aeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent, Aeduōs, ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs, omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōnsiliī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent, quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse.*

Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs, ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī

---

14. 1. **hīs**: *Bellovacīs.* **discessum**: 'retreat'; chap. 11, ll. 1–5.

2. **Aeduōrum cōpiīs**: chap. 5, ll. 5–10, and chap. 10, ll. 19–20. **eum**: Caesar. **facit verba**: 'made a plea.' How lit.?

3–9. **Direct form**: *Bellovacī* omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Aeduae *fuērunt; impulsī* ab suīs prīncipibus, quī *dīcēbant*, Aeduōs, ā *tē* in servitūtem redāctōs, omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs *dēfēcērunt* et populō Rōmānō bellum *intulērunt.* Quī eius cōnsiliī prīncipēs *fuerant*, quod *intellegēbant*, quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent (*204*, 3), in Britanniam *profūgērunt.*

3. **Bellovacōs**, etc.: *213*, *b*, and *212*, *c*, (1). **omnī tempore**: N. to I, 11, l. 6.

4. **dīcerent**: 'kept saying.' *175*, *a*.

5. **in**: 'to.' **servitūtem**: *10*, *f*. **omnēs**, etc.: 'every kind of ill-treatment and insult.' *92*, *c*.

6. **et . . . et**: *234*, *a*. **dēfēcisse**: 'had revolted.' *57*, *b*.

7. **Quī**: as antecedent supply *eōs* with *profūgisse*. **prīncipēs**: here = *auctōrēs*, 'advisers.'

10–14. **Direct form**: *Petunt* nōn sōlum *Bellovacī*, sed etiam prō hīs *Aeduī*, ut *tuā* clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs *ūtāris.* Quod sī *fēceris* (future perfect), Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās *amplificābis;* quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella *incidērunt*, sustentāre *cōnsuērunt* (*176*, *b*).

10. **petere, ūtātur**: vivid use of present tenses where past tenses might have been expected.

11. **suā**: 'his well-known.' *157*, *e*. **clēmentiā**: 'mercifulness,'

fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.

Caesar makes terms with the Bellovaci and Ambiani, learns about the Nervians.

15. Caesar, honōris Dīviciācī atque Aeduōrum causā, sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit; et quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, DC obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit; quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

---

the quality which leads a man to treat with kindness those against whom he has grounds of offense. Near the close of his life a temple was ordered built to 'Caesar's Mercifulness.' *268*, and Fig. 163. **mānsuētūdine**: 'compassionateness,' the quality that makes one able to realize the sufferings of others. **in**: 'toward.' **Quod**: *118, d.* **sī**, etc.: *218*, (1), *b*.

13. **sī . . . sustentāre**: 'to carry through any wars that had arisen.' How lit.? *168*, and *49, a*.

15. 1. **honōris**: dependent on *causā*; 'out of regard for Diviciacus,' etc. *94, b*. **Dīviciācī**: dependent on *honōris*. *102*.

2. **in fidem**: as in chap. 13, l, 9.

Figure 79. — A Nervian coin. Gold, with crude designs.

3. **cīvitās**: *Bellovacōrum*. **auctōritāte**: 'prestige.' *143, a*.

4. **multitūdine**: *142, a*. B. 226; A. 418; H. 480. **DC**: *sescentōs*. *36*. The fact that for the sake of his Aeduan supporters Caesar had spared the Bellovaci did not prevent him from exacting a large number of hostages to bind them in their pledge of submission.

5. **collātīs**: *69, b*. **eō locō**: Bratuspantium. For Caesar's route, see Map 1.

7. **morā**: 'delay.' **dēdidērunt**: 'surrendered.'

Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat:

Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī 10 *reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs eōrum et remittī vir-*

Figure 80. — A characteristic bit of the country through which Caesar made his three-day march.

8. **Eōrum**: the Ambiani. **Nerviī attingēbant**: 'the country of the Nervians adjoined' (Fig. 79). *282.* **dē nātūrā**: *116, c.*

10–17. **Direct form**: *Nūllus aditus est* ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil *patiuntur* vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs eōrum et remittī virtūtem *exīstimant. Sunt* hominēs *ferī* magnaeque virtūtis; *increpitant* atque *incūsant* reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō *dēdiderint* patriamque virtūtem *prōiēcerint; cōnfīrmant*, sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs [esse] neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs [esse].

10. **Nūllum**, etc.: *212, c*, (3). **mercātōribus**: *111.* **nihil vīnī**: 'no wine.' *97, a.* The Nervii were ancient prohibitionists. **patī**: sc. *eōs* as subject. *60.*

11. **ad lūxuriam pertinentium**: 'which contribute to luxurious living.' How lit.?

12. **rēbus**: *135, a.* **relanguēscere**: 'becomes weak.' **ani-**

tūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre, sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

The Nervians, Atrebatians, and Viromanduans await Caesar at the Sambre.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs:

Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant,

---

mōs: *92, a.* **virtūtem**: 'valor,' the manifestation of courage in brave deeds.

13. **exīstimārent**: *177, a.* **magnae virtūtis**: genitive of quality taking the place of an adjective, hence connected by *-que* with *ferōs*. *100, a.*

14. **increpitāre atque incūsāre**: sc. *eōs*, 'that they upbraided and condemned.' **reliquōs**: *171, a.* **quī**: 'because they.' *194, c.*

16. **sēsē**, etc.: indirect discourse after *cōnfīrmāre*. **sēsē**: refers to *eōs* understood as subject of *cōnfīrmāre*.

16. 1. **eōrum**: *Nerviōrum*. **trīduum**: = *trēs diēs*. *118, a.* **iter fēcisset**: 'had advanced'; for the route see Map 1, and Fig. 80. **inveniēbat**: = *quaerendō cognōscēbat*.

3. **Sabim**, etc.: *212, c*, (3). **Sabim**: accusative like *turrim*. *14, c.* **mīlia**: why not ablative? *129, b*, and *118, a.*

Figure 81. — Viromanduan coin.

Bronze, of crude workmanship. Inscription, SOLLOS (SOLOS).

4. **trāns id flūmen**: they crossed over to the south side of the Sambre, which flows in an easterly direction into the Meuse. *292.*

6. **hīs utrīsque**: 'both these peoples.' *51*, and *23, a.* The combined forces of the Nervians, Atrebatians, and Viromanduans (Fig. 81) were estimated at 75,000 (chap. 4, ll. 21–28). **nam**, etc.: *214, c.*

utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); *exspectārī etiam ab hīs Atuatucōrum cōpiās, atque esse in itinere; mulierēs, quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum coniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.*

They plan to surprise him on the march.

17. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit, quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs coṃplūrēs, Caesarem secūtī, ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt, *Inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtiī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque*

---

8. **in itinere**: 'on the way.' **mulierēs**: object of *coniēcisse*.

9. **quīque**: i.e. *et eōs, quī*. **per aetātem**: 'by reason of age.' **inūtilēs**: predicative, 'useless.' **eum locum**: 'a place,' perhaps in the vicinity of the modern city of Mons. *160, d.*

10. **quō**: adverb, = *ad quem*. **esset**: subjunctive also in the direct form. *194, a.* B. 283; A. 535; H. 591, 1.

17. 2. **quī . . . dēligant**: 'in order to choose.' *193, a*, and *331, a*, and *b*. **ex . . . Gallīs**: after *coṃplūrēs*. *97, d.* B. 201, 1, *a*; A. 346, *c*; H. 444. **dēditīciīs**: the Suessiōnēs (chap. 13, l. 3), the Bellovaci (chap. 15, l. 2), and the Ambiani (chap. 15, ll. 5–7).

4. **facerent**: *185, c.* **quīdam**: *168.* **ut**: *188, b.*

5. **eōrum . . . exercitūs**: 'the marching order of our army in those days,' the three days when Caesar was advancing into the country of the Nervians (chap. 16, l. 1). How lit.?

7. **dēmōnstrārunt**: *64, a*, (1). **impedīmentōrum**, etc.: *311*, and *74, d*.

8. **numerum**: 'quantity.' **esse**: the subject is *adorīrī*; 'and that there was no difficulty — in attacking.' How lit.? *222, b.* **quicquam**: *168*, and *49, a*.

9. **negōtiī**: *97, b.* **castra**: the place selected for a camp; the camp would not be fortified till the legions arrived. *332, 333.* **vēnisset, abessent**: indicative future perfect, and future, in direct discourse.

legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs, futūrum, ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent.

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium, quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student, sed, quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īnflexīs, crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effēcerant, ut

---

10. **spatium**: *118, a.* **sarcinīs**: 'packs.' The plan was to attack the first legion to come up, just as it reached the place chosen for encampment, before the soldiers could deposit their packs and get themselves into fighting trim. *330.*

11. **quā**: 'when this' legion. **dīreptīs**: 'had been plundered.' How lit.? **futūrum** [esse]: the subject is *ut . . . audērent*; 'it would come about that.' *203,* (1).

12. **reliquae**: sc. *legiōnēs.* **contrā**: adverb. **contrā cōnsistere**: 'to withstand the attack.'

13. **Adiuvābat**: the subject is *quod . . . effēcerant* (l. 19); 'the plan of those who furnished the information was favored by the fact that the Nervii,' etc. How lit.? *198, b.*

14. **antīquitus**: 'long ago.' **cum . . . possent**: 'not being strong in cavalry.' How lit.? *184, a.* **nihil**: *118, c.* **neque enim**: 'and in fact . . . not.'

15. **eī reī student**: 'they give attention to that arm' of the service. *105.* **quicquid . . . cōpiīs**: 'all the strength they have is in infantry.' How lit.? **quicquid**: *118, b.*

16. **cōpiīs**: *142, a.* **quō . . . impedīrent**: *193, b.* B. 282, 1, *a*; A. 531, *a*; H. 568, 7.

17. **praedandī causā**: 'in order to plunder.' *230,* (1). **vēnissent**: *220.*

18. **tenerīs . . . īnflexīs**: 'cutting into young trees and bending them over.' How lit.? *144, b,* (2). **in lātitūdinem**: 'at the sides,' we should say.

19. **rāmīs ēnātīs**: with *crēbrīs*, 'letting the branches grow thickly.' *151,* and *61, a,* (3). How lit.? **rubīs**, etc.: 'planting briars and thorn-bushes in the intervening spaces.' How lit.? **effēcerant, ut**

īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmentum praebērent, quō nōn 20
modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem posset.

Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

The Romans make camp on a height sloping to the river.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant.

Figure 82. — Hedges, near the river Sambre.

. . . **praebērent**: *203*, (3). By cutting into young trees near the root they were able to bend these down to a horizontal position without killing them. The stem of the tree would then increase in size very slowly, but along the trunk branches would grow out, above and on the sides (*in lātitūdinem*). In the spaces along the line of defense not filled by trees thus trained, briars and thorn-bushes were planted. The whole formed a living and impenetrable hedge. Similar hedges are still found in this region (Figures 82, 83, 87).

20. **īnstar mūrī**: 'like a wall,' lit. 'the likeness of a wall'; *īnstar*, indeclinable, is in apposition to *mūnīmentum*. *94, b*. **saepēs**: 'hedges.' *15, b*. **mūnīmentum**: 'line of defense.' *74, d*. **praebērent**: 'made.' **quō**: adverb = *in quod* (*mūnīmentum*); but trans. with the impersonal *intrārī*, etc., 'which could not only not be penetrated but not even seen through.' How lit.? *73, d*, and *237, c*.

21. **perspicī**: *79, b*. **posset**: *220*.

23. **omittendum**: *89, c*, and *73, e*. **sibi**: *110*. **cōnsilium**: 'the plan' of attack proposed in ll. 9–12.

18. 1. **haec**: 'as follows.' *161, a*. **locum**: *165, a*. **castrīs**:

Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōminávimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter cc īnfimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset.

Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

A furious attack is made on the Romans while fortifying the camp.

19. Caesar, equitātū praemissō, subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat, ac

---

112, a. The site has been identified, on the left or north bank of the Sambre (*Sabis*), in France, near the Belgian frontier, opposite the city of Hautmont. Map 6, **A**.

3. **Collis**: on which the camp was laid out. **ab**, etc.: 'sloping evenly from the top, descended.' How lit.?

4. **suprā**: chap. 16, l. 3. **nōminávimus**: 'we have mentioned by name.' *156.* **Ab eō**: 'From the.' *160, d.* **parī acclīvitāte**: 'with similar upward slope.' *143, a.*

5. **nāscēbātur**: 'arose.' **adversus huic et contrārius**: 'facing this (hill) and opposite (to it),' on the south side of the Sambre; the highest part of the second hill is at **B** on Map 6. **huic**: *108, a.*

6. **passūs**: *118, a.* **cc**: *ducentōs. 36.* How far? *243, b.* **īnfimus**: 'at the lower edge' of the hill, along the river. **apertus**: free from woods. **ab**, etc.: 'wooded along the upper portion.' *126, c.*

7. **ut**: 'so that.' **intrōrsus**: 'within.'

9. **apertō locō**: indicated on Map 6, between the river and the broken line marking the northern limit of the woods. **secundum**: preposition, 'along.' **statiōnēs**: 'pickets.'

10. **vidēbantur**: trans. as passive. **pedum**: *100, b.* **trium**: *37, b.*

19. 1. **equitātū praemissō**: *328.* **omnibus cōpiīs**: *137, b.*

2. **ratiō ōrdōque**: 'principle of arrangement,' lit. 'principle and arrangement.' **aliter**, etc.: 'were different from what the Belgians.' How lit.? **habēbat**: *173, a.* B. 255, 3; A. 317, *b*; H. 392, 4. **ac**: *233, c.*

Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar VI legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedīmenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant.

Equitēs nostrī, cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī, cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs VI, quae prīmae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.

---

4. **cōnsuētūdine suā**: 'in accordance with his usual practice,' when in the enemy's country. *136, c.* **VI**: *38, b.* The legions were those numbered 7–12. **expedītās**: predicative, 'in light order'; without the packs (*sarcinae*), which in such cases were doubtless carried with the heavy baggage. *115, b.*

5. **impedīmenta**: *311.* **collocārat**: full form? *64, a,* (1).

6. **duae legiōnēs**: numbered 13 and 14; chap. 2, ll. 1–4. **proximē**: *35.*

7. **praesidiō, impedīmentīs**: *112, b,* and *328.* B. 191, 2, *a*; A. 382, 1; H. 433.

9. **trānsgressī**: to the south side of the Sambre. **cum**: *137, c.* **equitātū**: the cavalry (chap. 18, l. 9) must have been furnished by the Atrebatians and Viromanduans, not by the Nervians (chap. 17, l. 14).

10. **identidem**: 'repeatedly.' **suōs**: the enemy's infantry, concealed in the woods (chap. 18, l. 8). **reciperent**: *175, d.*

11. **neque**: trans. as if *et . . . nōn.* **longius**: 'further.'

12. **quem ad fīnem**: = *ad eum fīnem ad quem*, 'to the limit to which.' **porrēcta**, etc.: 'the stretch of open ground extended.' How lit.?

13. **cēdentēs**: sc. *eōs* (*hostēs*), object of *īnsequī*; 'as they retreated.' **prīmae vēnerant**: 'had been the first to come up.' *152, b.*

14. **opere**: 'the trench-work,' the first work on the fortifications of the camp. *333.* **dīmēnsō**: 'having measured off.' How lit.? *144, b,* (2), and *59, b.*

Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs, quī in silvīs abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeliī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī

Figure 83. — View across the fields in the direction from which Caesar's baggage was coming.

---

15. **prīma impedīmenta**: 'the first part of the baggage train.' Map 6. *152, a.*

16. **vīsa sunt**: passive in meaning. **quod tempus**: i.e. *tempus* (in thought an appositive of the clause *Ubi . . . vīsa sunt*, but attracted into the relative clause) . . . *quod convēnerat*, 'which had been agreed on.' *165, b.*

17. **committendī proeliī**: dependent on *tempus*, 'for beginning the battle.' How lit.? *230*, (1). **ut**: 'just as.'

18. **ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant**: 'had encouraged one another.'

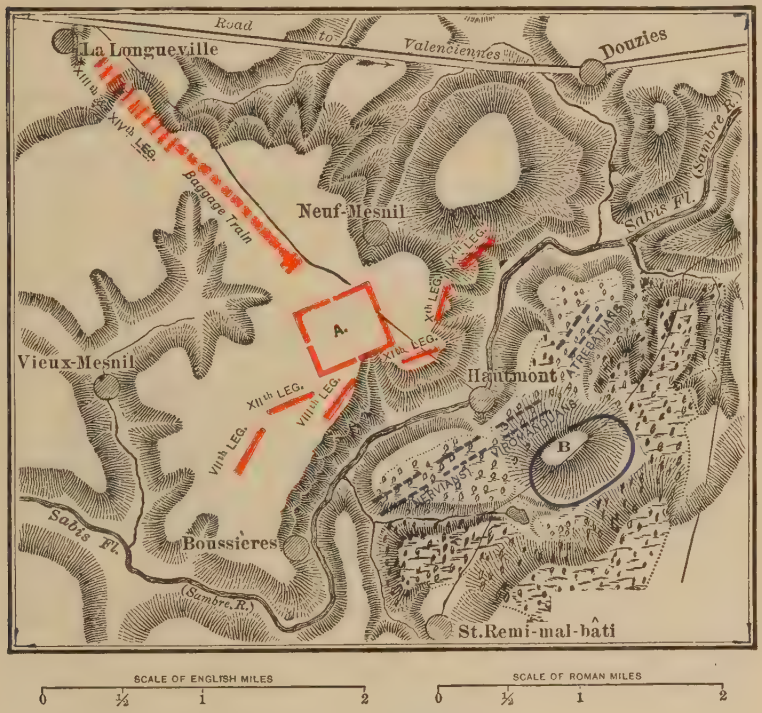
19. **cōpiīs**: *136, b.* **prōvolāvērunt**: 'they rushed forward.' **nostrōs equitēs**: who had crossed the river (ll. 8, 9).

20. **prōturbātīs**: 'scattered in a panic.' **incrēdibilī**: *74, f.*

MAP 6

THE BATTLE AT THE SAMBRE (SABIS): FIRST PHASE

Book II, 18–22 To face page 164



EXPLANATION

Caesar's army, approaching the Sambre from the north, started to make a camp on a hill overlooking the river. The Belgian forces, comprising Nervians, Viromanduans, and Atrebatians, were lying in wait on the south side.

Supposing that each legion would be followed by its baggage train, the Belgians had planned to attack the first legion and destroy it before the others could come to the rescue, and in like manner to destroy the others one by one. Caesar, however, had placed six legions in light marching order first, then all the baggage, and two legions last, the XIIIth and XIVth; he sent cavalry, bowmen, and slingers in advance of the main column.

When the baggage train came into view, the Belgians hurled back the cavalry, bowmen, and slingers, rushed across the river and charged up the hill.

A. The Roman camp (chap. 18, ll. 1–7), with six legions forming in front.

B. The camp of the Belgians (chap. 26, ll. 10–12).

celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

Discipline and training enable the soldiers to meet the emergency.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum, quod erat īnsigne, cum ad arma concurrī oportēret; signum tubā dandum; ab opere revocandī mīlitēs; quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōces-

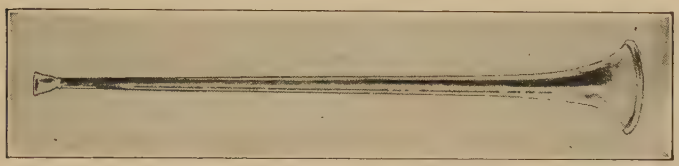


Figure 84. — Roman trumpet, tuba.

21. **dēcucurrērunt**: 'they ran down' the sloping ground between the edge of the forest and the river. **ut**: 'so that.' **tempore**: 'instant.'

22. **ad silvās**: 'near the woods,' whence they had just emerged. **in manibus nostrīs**: in our idiom, 'upon us'; how lit.?

23. **adversō colle . . . contendērunt**: 'dashed up the hill' on the north side of the Sambre. The Belgians may have covered the distance between the woods on the south side of the Sambre and the site of the Roman camp in ten minutes; the distance is about two-thirds of an English mile.

24. **occupātī**: 'engaged.' *148, c.*

20. 1. **Caesarī**: emphatic, hence placed at the beginning. *110*, and *229, c.* **vēxillum**: 'the flag.' *324, b*, 3, and Fig. 149.

2. **prōpōnendum, dandum, revocandī**, etc.: sc. *erat*, *erant*. *229, c.* **ad arma concurrī**: 'to arm.' How lit.? *73, d.*

3. **tubā**: 'with the trumpet'; the signal was to "fall in." *326, a*, (1). Fig. 84. **opere** chap. 19, l. 14 and N. **revocandī** [erant]: 'had to be recalled.'

4. **quī**: as antecedent sc. *eī* (*mīlitēs*), subject of *arcessendī* [*erant*].

serant, arcessendī; aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat.

Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere, quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere, nisi mūnītīs castrīs, vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē, quae vidēbantur, administrābant.

---

paulō longius: 'a little further' than usual. *140.* **aggeris**: 'material' for the rampart, in this case probably wood. *230*, (1).

5. **arcessendī** [erant]: 'had to be sent for.' **cohortandī** [erant]: N to I, 25, l. 3.

6. **signum dandum** [erat]: 'the signal' for battle 'had to be given.' *326, c.* **Quārum**: *167.*

7. **brevitās**: 'the shortness.' **incursus**: 'the onrush.' **impediēbat**: *173, a.*

8. **Hīs . . . subsidiō**: 'Two things served to offset these disadvantages,' explained by *scientia . . . poterant* and *quod ab opere . . . vetuerat.* How lit.? *112, b.*

10. **oportēret**: *204*, (2). **nōn minus**, etc.: 'they were able (themselves) to determine for themselves . . . just as fitly as others could instruct them.' How lit.? **ipsī**: agrees with the subject of *poterant*, but need not be translated.

11. **quod**, etc: 'the fact that Caesar had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their respective legions.' How lit.? *198, b.*

12. **discēdere**: *200, b.* **nisi mūnītīs castrīs**: 'only after the fortifying of the camp had been completed.'

14. **nihil**: adverbial accusative. *118, c.*

15. **per sē**: 'on their own responsibility.' **quae vidēbantur**: i.e. *quae vidēbantur administranda*, 'were taking (the measures) which the situation seemed to require.' How lit.? These veterans knew what to do, when they saw the enemy coming, and did not lose their heads.

They form hurriedly; under Caesar's encouragement they fight desperately, against great odds.

21. Caesar, necessāriis rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mīlitēs, quam in partem fors obtulit, dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proeliī committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus occurrit.

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus

---

21. 1. **necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs**: 'having given (only) the indispensable orders.'

2. **quam in partem** : = *in eam partem, in quam;* with *fors obtulit*, 'where chance led,' a statement introduced to explain why Caesar came first to the tenth legion, which, as the most experienced, had least need of the general's presence. *69, b.* **dēcucurrit**: Caesar was perhaps near the northeast corner of the camp (Map 6, **A**) when he started to rush down the slope to where the troops were forming.

4. **utī . . . sustinērent**: substantive clauses giving the gist of the words of exhortation. *199, a.*

5. **neu perturbārentur animō**: we should say 'and keep cool.' How lit.? *142, a*, and *199, d.*

6. **quod . . . aberant**: gives the reason for *signum dedit.* **quam quō**: 'than (the distance) to which.' *194, b.* B. 283, 2, *a*; A. 571, *a*; H. 570, 1.

7. **adigī**: 'be thrown.' **signum**: N. to chap. 20, l. 6.

8. **alteram partem**: 'another part' of the hastily formed line; apparently Caesar went across to the right wing, where the seventh and twelfth legions were. See Map 6. **profectus**: principal parts of *proficīscor* and *prōficiō?*

9. **pugnantibus occurrit**: 'he found (the men already) fighting.' *107, a*, and *175, b.*

10. **Temporis . . . exiguitās**: 'So short was the time.' How lit.? **hostium**: dependent on *animus*. *233, b*, and *353, d.*

ad dīmicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnīt quaeque prīma signa cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante

---

11. **ad īnsignia accommodanda**: 'for fitting on their decorations,' particularly the crests, which were taken off from the helmets on the march. In battle it was important that the crests be in place, for by differences of these in form and color the different legions and cohorts could be distinguished (Fig. 85).

Figure 85. — Roman helmet, with crest.

12. **ad galeās induendās**: 'for putting on their helmets' (Fig. 12). *322, a.* **scūtīs**, etc.: 'for drawing the coverings off the shields,' which were protected by coverings against moisture. *127, a.* B. 214; A. 401; H. 462.

13. **Quam**, etc.: 'Whatever part (of the line) each (soldier) chanced (to reach as) he came down from the trench-work, (in that part he stayed) and.' How lit.?

14. **quaeque**: = *et quae*; trans. as if *ad* ('by') *haec signa, quae prīma cōnspexit, cōnstitit* ('he took his stand'). Under ordinary circumstances it was a serious offense for a soldier to be found in a maniple in which he did not belong. *324, b,* (2).

15. **in quaerendīs suīs**: sc. *signīs*.

22. 1. **ut**: 'as.' **locī**: 'of the ground.'

2. **reī . . . ōrdō**: 'the arrangement approved by military science.' How lit.?

3. **dīversae**: 'separated.' **aliae aliā in parte**: fuller expression of the thought in *dīversae*; 'one at one point, another at another.' *171, c.*

4. **dēnsissimīs**: 'very thick.' *153, a.* **ante**: chap. 17, ll. 13–21.

dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque, quid in quāque parte opus esset, prōvidērī, neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

Two legions drive the Atrebatians across the river, two force back the Viromanduans, but two are outflanked by the Nervians.

23. Legiōnis VIIII et X mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciēī cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt et, trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī, gladiīs magnam partem eōrum

---

5. **prōspectus**: 'the view' over the field of battle (Fig. 82).

6. **certa subsidia collocārī** [poterant]: 'could reserves be posted at fixed points'; the movements of the enemy were so obscured by the thickets that Caesar could not tell where reserve forces could be posted to advantage. **certa**: *151*. B. 239; A. 290; H. 497. **quāque**: from *quisque*. **opus esset**: *132, b*.

7. **prōvidērī**: sc. *poterat*. **ūnō**: 'one person.' **omnia imperia . . . administrārī**: 'all orders . . . be given.'

8. **in tantā rērum inīquitāte**: 'under so disadvantageous conditions.' How lit.? **fortūnae**: dependent on *ēventūs*.

9. **ēventūs variī**: 'various issues.'

23. 1. **VIIII, X**: *nonae, decimae*. *38, b*. **aciēī**: *21, b*. For the position of the legions see Map 6.

2. **pīlīs ēmissīs**: 'having hurled their pikes.' *322, d*. **lassitūdine**: 'fatigue,' resulting from the three-quarter mile dash first downhill to the river, then across the river, and uphill again to the Roman line. **exanimātōs**: 'who were out of breath.' *227, a*, (1).

3. **vulneribus cōnfectōs**: 'disabled by wounds,' referring to those struck by the pikes. **ea pars**: the Roman left wing, which was in command of Labienus. **obvēnerat**: 'had encountered.'

4. **locō superiōre**: the Romans, being nearer the top of the hill, were on higher ground. **compulērunt**: 'forced.'

5. **cōnantēs**: sc. *eōs* (*Atrebātēs*), object of *īnsecūtī*.

impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et, in locum inīquum prōgressī, rūrsus resistentēs hostēs, redintegrātō proeliō, in fugam coniēcērunt.

Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, XI et VIII, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre, in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur.

At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō XII et, nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō, VII cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperiī tenēbat, ad eum

---

6. **impedītam**: by the crossing of the river. **Ipsī**: the soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions. **trānsīre**: *201, b.*

7. **locum inīquum**: the 'ground' south of the Sambre, sloping back from the river and in part covered with woods; Map 7.

8. **hostēs**: object of *cōniēcērunt*. **redintegrātō proeliō**: 'they (the Romans) renewed the battle and.' *144, b,* (2).

9. **aliā in parte**: the Roman center, in front of the camp. See Map 7. **dīversae**: 'in different places'; not, as ordinarily, forming a continuous line.

10. **prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs**: 'having driven the Viromanduans.' **quibuscum**: *125, c.* **erant congressae**: *57, c.*

11. **proeliābantur**: 'were continuing the battle.' *175, a.*

12. **ā**: *126, b.* **nūdātīs**: not only the 8th and 11th legions in front, but the 9th and 10th legions on the left of the camp, had abandoned their positions to pursue the enemy, leaving the camp 'unprotected' except on the right, where the 12th and 7th legions stood.

13. **cum**: 'since.' *184, a.* **XII**: *duodecima*. **nōn**: with *magnō*. *239, g.* **intervāllō**: *138.*

14. **VII**: (*legiō*) *septima*. **cōnstitisset**: why singular? **omnēs Nerviī**: their fighting force was estimated by the Remi at 50,000 (chap. 4, l. 25), but was later reported as 60,000 (chap. 28, l. 8). **cōnfertissimō agmine**: a mass formation, like that of the Helvetians (I, 24, l. 12); called 'column,' *agmen*, rather than 'battle-line,' *aciēs*, because it was still advancing, not yet having divided in order to deliver the attack at two points.

15. **duce Boduognātō**: 'led by Boduognatus.' How lit.? *144, b,* (2). **summam imperiī**: 'the supreme command.'

locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

The Roman camp is taken; seemingly all is lost.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs

Figure 86. — Open ground along the Sambre, over which the Nervians advanced; looking toward the site of Caesar's Camp, now in part covered by woods.

16. **ab apertō latere**: 'on the exposed flank,' the right flank. **legiōnēs**: the 7th and 12th.

17. **summum castrōrum locum**: 'the height on which the camp was.' How lit.?

24. 1. **levis armātūrae peditēs**: slingers and bowmen (chap. 19, l. 8).

2. **cum eīs ūnā**: 'along with them,' the cavalry.

3. **dīxeram**: chap. 19, ll. 15–23. **reciperent, respexissent** (l. 7): force of *re-? 79, d.* **adversīs**, etc.: 'were meeting the enemy face to face.' *107, a.* The Nervians came up so rapidly that they were already entering the Roman camp at the time when Caesar's cavalry and light-armed troops, which had been routed on the other side

hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petē-
5 bant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant, clāmor
10 fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī, equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ā cīvitāte ad Caesarem missī vēnerant, cum multitūdine
15 hostium castra nostra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene

---

of the Sambre, were just coming back to it again. The descriptive force of the imperfects in this chapter adds to the vividness of the picture.

5. **cālōnēs**: 'camp-servants,' chiefly, we may assume, servants of officers. **ab decumānā portā**: 'at the rear gate' of the camp, which, since the hill sloped toward the river, was on the highest part of the hill. Map 7, **C, C**. *334, a.*

6. **nostrōs**: the 9th and 10th legions. **praedandī**, etc.: they were leaving the camp by the rear gate to hunt for plunder.

7. **hostēs . . . versārī**: 'that the enemy were moving about.'

8. **praecipitēs**: 'precipitately.' *151.* B. 239; A. 290; H. 497.

9. **eōrum, quī**: the drivers of the baggage-train, just coming up; behind it were the 13th and 14th legions bringing up the rear. See Map 7. **clāmor**: 'shouting.'

10. **fremitus**: 'hubbub.' **oriēbātur**: *61, b*, and *173, a.* **aliīque**, etc.: 'some in one direction, others in another.' *171, c.*

11. **ferēbantur**: 'were rushing.' *174.* B. 256, 1; H. 517.

13. **virtūtis opīniō**: 'reputation for courage'; meant of the Treveri as a whole, not merely of the cavalry. **singulāris**: 'extraordinary.' The implication is that the Treveran horsemen went away not by reason of cowardice but because they thought the day hopelessly lost. **auxiliī**, etc.: Caesar must have made an agreement with the Treveri before starting on this campaign.

14. **cīvitāte**: personified, hence with *ā. 126, a.* **cum . . . vīdissent**: *185, c.*

15. **legiōnēs**: the 7th and 12th; see Map 7.

MAP 7

THE BATTLE AT THE SAMBRE (SABIS): SECOND PHASE

Book II, 23–27 To face page 172

EXPLANATION

The Atrebatians, having crossed the river, were thrown back by the IXth and Xth legions, and fled through the woods east of the Belgian camp. The IXth and Xth legions entered the Belgian camp (**B**), which was on a hill.

In like manner the XIth and VIIIth legions routed the Viromanduans and crossed to the south side of the river in pursuit.

Of the Nervians, one division (**D**) made for the Roman camp (**A**) and entered it; the cavalry, bowmen, and slingers that had taken refuge there fled precipitately (**C**). Other divisions (**E**, **F**) started to surround the VIIth and XIIth legions, which by Caesar's order took up a position rear to rear.

Hearing the noise of battle the baggage train halted, and the XIIIth and XIVth legions hastened to the scene.

Caesar rushed into the front rank, and saved the day.

circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dīversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus, domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs, cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Caesar rushes into the fight, calls centurions by name, directs the formation of a double front.

25. Caesar ab X legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signīsque in ūnum locum collātīs XII legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse

---

17. **dīversōs dissipātōsque**: 'separated,' one body of troops from another, 'and scattered.'

18. **dēspērātīs**, etc.: 'despairing of our victory.' *144, b,* (3).

19. **pulsōs, superātōs**: sc. *esse.* **castrīs, impedīmentīs**: after *potītōs* [*esse*]. *131, c.*

25. 1. **Caesar**, etc.: subject of a complex sentence which ends with *possent* in l. 18.

1–18. **Analysis**: The paragraph forms a single complex sentence. The principal clause has for its subject *Caesar*, with which the participles *profectus* (l. 2) and *cohortātus* (l. 16) agree; for its predicate it has the verbs *prōcessit* (l. 15), *iussit* (l. 17). The leading subordinate clause is *ubi . . . vīdit*, which is so expanded by the introduction of details that *vīdit* is repeated (l. 12) for clearness. These details are expressed in part by infinitives with subject-accusatives dependent on *vīdit*, in part by ablatives absolute, and in part by the minor clauses *ut . . . posset* (l. 8) and *quod . . . posset* (l. 13).

In translating, the sentence may be broken up into three or four English sentences; most of the ablatives absolute are best rendered by clauses.

1. **ab . . . cohortātiōne**: = *ab decimā legiōne, quam cohortātus erat.* Caesar's account of his personal part in this battle, which was interrupted by his description of the progress of the fighting (chaps. 22–24) is here resumed from chap. 21, ll. 1–9. **X**: *38, b,* and *36.*

2. **suōs urgērī**: 'that his men were hard pressed.' **signīs**: 'the standards' of the maniples. *324, b,* (2).

3. **XII**: *duodecimae.* The crowding together of the soldiers of the 12th legion, which exposed them all the more to the missiles of the enemy, and their consequent losses, were no doubt in part due to their

impedīmentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs signiferōque interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimīs, dēsertō locō, proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre et rem esse in angustō vīdit,

---

lack of experience in fighting; for this legion, raised in 58 B.C. (I, chap. 10, l. 10 and N.), had been in service only a year. During the battle with the Helvetians it guarded the baggage, having no part in the fray. **sibi . . . impedīmentō**: 'were hindering one another in fighting.' How lit.? *178*, and *112*, *b*.

4. **quārtae cohortis**: at the front, perhaps at the end of the first line. *337*, *a*, and Fig. 186.

5. **signiferō**: 'the standard-bearer.' Each cohort had three standards, of which there were thirty in the legion. Here the reference probably is to the standard-bearer who carried the standard of the first maniple of the cohort, which was looked upon as the standard of the cohort. *324*, *b*, (2).

7. **prīmipīlō**: 'the first centurion' of the first cohort, hence regarded as the first centurion of the legion. *315*, *b*.

8. **multīs gravibusque**: 'many severe wounds.' *152*, *c*. **cōnfectō**: 'exhausted'; with *prīmipīlō*. Baculus did not die, but lived to establish the reputation of being one of the bravest, if not the most brave, among Caesar's men. **ut**: 'so that.'

9. **tardiōrēs**: 'less active,' having lost their initiative. **ab novissimīs**: 'in the rear ranks.' *126*, *c*.

10. **dēsertō locō . . . excēdere**: 'had abandoned their position and were withdrawing.' How lit.? **proeliō**: *127*, *a*. **hostēs**, etc.: 'that both in front the enemy did not cease coming up — and on both flanks,' etc.; see Map 7. The Nervians outnumbered the men of the 12th and 7th legions five or six to one.

11. **neque . . . et**: *233*, *d*. **ex īnferiōre locō**: 'from the lower ground' along the river.

12. **rem**, etc.: 'that matters had reached a crisis.' How lit.? *154*, *a*.

neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod summittī posset; scūtō ab novissimīs ūnī mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs, reliquōs cohortātus, mīlitēs signa īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent.

Figure 87. — Typical hedges near the site of the battle at the Sambre.

13. **subsidium**: 'reserve force'; the 13th and 14th legions were not yet available, because too far off. **posset**: *194, a*. B. 283, 2; A. 535, *a*; H. 591, 1. **scūtō**, etc.: 'snatching a shield from a soldier in the rear rank.' How lit.? 144, *b*, (2).

14. **ūnī**: here 'a,' weaker than 'one'; in English "an" and "one" were originally the same word. *23, a*. **mīlitī**: *109, b*. B. 188, 2, *d*; A. 381; H. 427. **eō**: adverb. **sine scūtō**: in battle even commanders may have carried shields, for protection in an emergency.

16. **nōminātim**: Caesar's personal knowledge of his men was always an important factor in his success. **signa īnferre**: 'to advance.' *325*.

17. **manipulōs laxāre**: 'to open up the ranks,' we say; lit. 'to spread out the companies.' **quō**: *193, b*. Longfellow in "The

Cuius adventū spē illātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar, cum VII legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō, cum aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent, neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt.

The Romans gain a complete victory, though the enemy fight with the courage of despair.

Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō,

---

Courtship of Miles Standish" has portrayed the course of the battle in verse:

He seized a shield from a soldier,
Put himself straight at the head of his troops, and commanded the captains,
Calling on each by his name, to order forward the ensigns;
Then to widen the ranks, and make more room for their weapons;
So he won the day.

19. **Cuius**: *167.* **illātā**: *69, b.* **mīlitibus**: why dative?

20. **prō sē quisque**: *170, b.* **in extrēmīs suīs rēbus**: 'under conditions of the utmost peril to himself.' How lit.?

21. **operam nāvāre**: 'to do his best.'

22. **tardātus est**: 'was checked.'

26. 1. **iūxtā**: the 7th legion was 'near by' the 12th, on the right wing; see Map 6.

2. **vīdisset**: *185, c.* **ut . . . īnferrent**: 'that the (two) legions gradually draw together, face about, and advance against the enemy.' Probably one legion simply took up a position behind the other, facing in the opposite direction, so that the rear of both was secure. *199, a.*

3. **conversa signa**: *325*, and *228, a.* B. 337, 2; A. 496, N. 2; H. 639.

5. **ferrent**: *184, a.* **neque**: trans. as if *et . . . nōn.* **nē**: *202.* **āversī** 'in the rear'; the new formation is shown on Map 7.

7. **legiōnum duārum**: the 13th and 14th; see Map 7.

cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur, cōnspicātus, X legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur, cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs, perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī, etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent, equi-

---

9. **cursū incitātō**: 'having quickened their pace'; relation of this ablative absolute to the preceding? **summō colle**: 'the top of the hill' back of the Roman camp. *152, a.*

10. **castrīs**: *131, c.* **locō superiōre**: the height on which the Belgian camp was; Map 7, **B**. Hither Labienus with the 9th and 10th legions had pursued the Atrebates; chap. 23, ll. 1–8. The probable lines of flight and pursuit are indicated on Map 7.

11. **quae**: *48, b.* **gererentur**: *204,* (2). **cōnspicātus**: as spy-glasses were not yet invented, Labienus saw with the unaided eye; the distance from camp to camp across the valley was over a mile. **X**: *decimam.*

12. **subsidiō, nostrīs**: *112, b.* **Quī cum**: 'And when they.' *167.* **Quī**: plural from the idea of *mīlitēs* in *legiōnem.*

13. **quō in locō rēs esset**: 'how matters stood.' How lit.? *204,* (2). B. 300, 1; A. 574; H. 649, II.

14. **versārētur**: agrees with the nearest subject; trans. 'were.' *172, b,* and *204,* (3).

15. **nihil . . . fēcērunt**: 'they made the utmost possible speed,' more lit. 'left nothing undone in regard to speed.' **sibi**: *109, a.* **reliquī**: predicate genitive.

27. 2. **quī**: *(eī) quī.* **prōcubuissent**: 'had sunk down.' *220.* B. 324, 1; A. 593; H. 652.

3. **scūtīs**: *131, c.* **innīxī**: 'supporting themselves.' **redintegrārent**: *197, b.* **perterritōs**: predicative.

4. **inermēs**: with *cālōnēs*; placed, for the sake of contrast, next to *armātīs*; 'unarmed, rushed against armed (men).'

tēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnandō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferrent.

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumulō, tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum, quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

---

5. **vērō**: *236, a.* **turpitūdinem**: 'disgrace.' **dēlērent**: 'they might wipe out.' **omnibus**, etc.: 'strove to outdo the legionaries at all points in fighting.' As an arm of the service cavalry was rated by the Romans of secondary importance. *309.*

6. **pugnandō**: *230,* (4). **mīlitibus**: *107, b.*

7. **etiam**, etc.: 'even in utter despair of safety.'

8. **prīmī eōrum**: 'their foremost ranks.' How lit.? *154, a.*

9. **iacentibus īnsisterent**: 'mounted upon the fallen.' *227, a,* (4). **ex**: *126, c.*

10. **coacervātīs cadāveribus**: 'when their bodies had been heaped' on those of the Nervians that had first fallen. **quī**: as antecedent supply *eī*, subject of *conicerent*. **superessent**: *220.*

11. **ut ex tumulō**: 'as from a mound.' **conicerent**: 'continued to hurl.' **pīla intercepta remitterent**: 'picked up and threw back the pikes,' though these could be of little value as weapons; cf. N. to I, 25, l. 9. **conicerent, remitterent**: in the same construction as *īnsisterent, pugnārent. 197, b.*

12. **ut**, etc.: a result clause, presenting Caesar's conclusion; 'so that it ought not to be thought that men of so great valor in vain dared,' etc.; they fought in a manner worthy of their heroic advance.

13. **ausōs esse**: *62.* **lātissimum**: Fig. 88. *153, a.*

14. **altissimās**: the banks are steep where the Nervians crossed.

15. **quae**: 'things (referring to the actions expressed in the preceding infinitives) which, in themselves most difficult, their heroic courage had made easy.' How lit.? **facilia**: *115, b.*

Caesar spares the remnant of the Nervians.

28. Hōc proeliō factō, et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt; et in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte, ex

Figure 88. — View on the Sambre, near the site of the battle.

28. 1. **Hōc proeliō factō**: 'Now that this battle was over.' How lit.? **interneciōnem**: 'utter destruction.' Six years later, however, the Nervians were expected to send a force of 6000 warriors to Alesia (VII, 75, l. 14). **gente**: 'stock.'

2. **maiōrēs nātū, puerīs**: Notes to chap. 13, l. 7 and l. 11.

3. **aestuāria**: here 'tidal marshes,' surrounded by salt water at high tide. **palūdēs**: 'swamps.' **coniectōs**: *89, c.*

4. **dīxerāmus**: chap. 16, ll. 8–10. **cum**: *184, a.* **nihil impedītum**: 'that there was nothing to oppose.' How lit.?

5. **victīs**: *227, a,* (4). **nihil tūtum**: 'no safety,' we should say. **omnium**: masculine, dependent on *cōnsēnsū*.

DC ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad D, quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt.

Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

Capture of the Stronghold of the Atuatuci. 29–33

The Atuatuci gather in one stronghold.

29. Atuatucī, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs, sua omnia in ūnum oppidum, ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum, con-

---

8. **DC**: *sescentīs* (*senātōribus*). Reckoning the Nervian army at 60,000 (10,000 more than the Remi reported, chap. 4, l. 25), 600 *senātōrēs* would average one to every 100 men. It is possible, therefore, that the Latin word *senātor* is here applied to a leader of a hundred; and this suggestion seems to be confirmed by the losses of the *senātōrēs* in battle. **D**: *quīngentōs*, modified by *vix*, 'barely.' Exaggeration on the part of the suppliants was to be expected. **quī . . . possent**: subjunctive in the direct form. *194, a.*

10. **in**: 'toward.' **ūsus**: sc. *esse*. *221, b.* B. 328, 2; A. 582; H. 612, 1. **misericordiā**: 'compassion'; cf. chap. 14, l. 11. *131, c.*

12. **ut**, etc.: *199, a.* **iniūriā et maleficiō**: 'wrong-doing and ill-treatment' of the weak remnant of the Nervians.

29. 1. **suprā**: chap. 16, ll. 7–8. **cum**: *185, c.* **omnibus cōpiīs**: 19,000 men, if they reached the estimate of the Remi (chap. 4, l. 29). *136, b.* B. 220, 1; A. 412; H. 473, 3.

2. **auxiliō Nerviīs**: *112, b.* **ex itinere**: see Vocab., under *iter*.

3. **castellīs**: 'fortresses'; small fortified places, perhaps occupied only in time of danger.

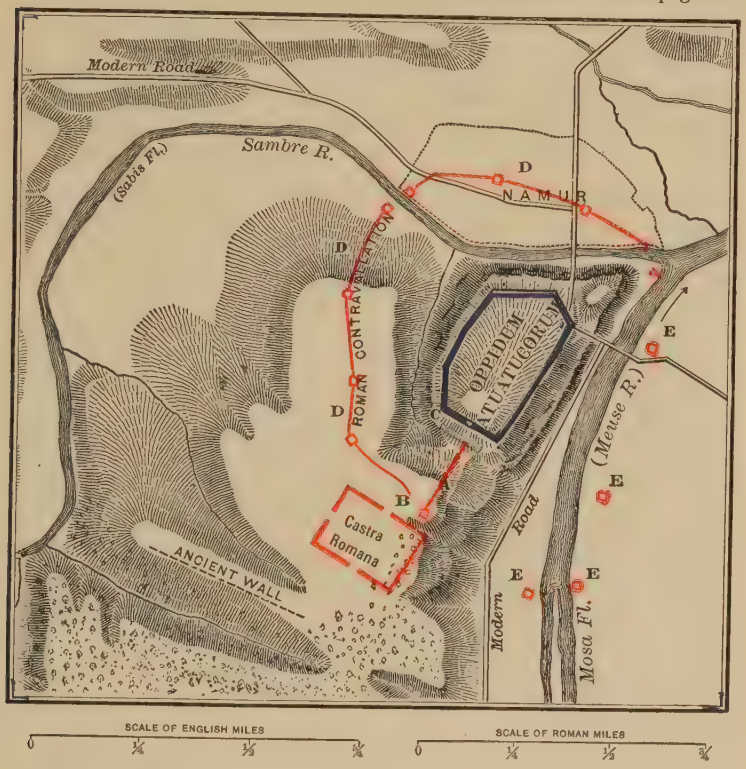
4. **oppidum**: 'stronghold,' like that of the Bellovaci; see N. to chap. 13, l. 5. This stronghold is by some located on the hill where now the citadel of Namur is, at the junction of the Meuse and the Sambre and across the Sambre from the city of Namur; see Map 8. Others, considering the hill at Namur too small, prefer, as the site of the stronghold, the hill of Falhize, which lies on the north bank of the

MAP 8

OPERATIONS AGAINST THE STRONGHOLD OF THE ATUATUCI

Book II, 29–33

To face page 180



EXPLANATION

The Atuatuci abandoned their towns and gathered in a stronghold protected by steep cliffs except on one side, where there was an easy approach not more than 200 Roman feet wide.

Caesar blockaded the stronghold with a rampart and redoubts. Afterwards he ran an embankment up the inclined approach, and made ready to attack.

A. Incline along which Caesar-constructed his siege embankment, *agger*.

B. General's gate, *porta praetōria*, of Caesar's camp.

C. Upper end of the inclined approach, fortified with a double wall (chap. 29, ll. 8–10) and moat (chap. 32, ll. 9, 10).

D–D. Rampart, *vallum* (chap. 30, l. 3).

E–E. Redoubts, *castella* (chap. 30, l. 4).

tulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant.

Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eīs impedīmentīs, quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs, cūstōdiam ex suīs ac praesidium VI mīlia hominum ūnā relīquērunt. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bel-

---

Meuse, opposite the town of Huy, 19 miles below Namur. **ēgregiē**: 'admirably.'

5. **Quod cum**: 'And although this.' *187*, and *167*. **ex**, etc.: 'on all sides round about.' How lit.?

6. **rūpēs**: 'cliffs.' *15, b*. **lēniter acclīvis**: 'gently rising.' If the stronghold was on the hill across from Namur, this narrow 'approach' was on the southwest side.

8. **pedum**: the case is not influenced by *amplius*. *100, a*, and *129, b*. **duplicī**: 'double.' *26, a*.

9. **ponderis**: *100, a*. **praeacūtās trabēs**: 'beams sharpened at the ends.' *17, c*.

10. **in**: 'on.' **collocābant**: 'they were placing,' at the time (*tum*) when Caesar came up; the change of tense from the pluperfect (*mūnierant*) is to be noted.

11. **Cimbrīs Teutonīsque**, etc.: see N. to I, chap. 33, l. 17. **prōgnātī**: 'descended.' *128, b*.

12. **prōvinciam**: *290*. **impedīmentīs**: 'cattle and goods'; the use in l. 13 of *agere*, 'drive,' with *portāre*, shows that cattle as well as portable possessions are here included.

14. **citrā**: on the west side. **dēpositīs**: with *impedīmentīs*. **cūstōdiam**: 'as a guard' of the *impedīmenta*. *115, a*. **ex suīs**: i.e. *sex mīlia hominum ex suīs*. *97, d*. **praesidium**: 'as a garrison.'

15. **Hī**: the 6000 Atuatuci. **eōrum**: the great host of the Cimbrians and Teutons.

16. **obitum**: 'destruction,' at Aquae Sextiae in 102 B.C. and at

lum īnferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā, hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt.

Caesar besieges it; the Atuatuci ridicule the siege-works.

30. Ac prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū XV mīlium crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant.

Ubi, vīneīs āctīs, aggere exstrūctō, turrim procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōci-

---

Vercellae in 101 B.C. **exagitātī**: 'harassed.' **aliās . . . aliās**: 'sometimes . . . sometimes.'

17. **illātum**: sc. *bellum*; 'were repelling attack.' **eōrum omnium**: 'of them all,' including the Atuatuci and their neighbors.

Figure 89. — Coin of the Atuatuci.

Bronze. Obverse, a design suggesting the heads of snakes. Reverse, horse; inscription, AVACIA.

18. **domiciliō**: *112, a.* **locum**: 'district' (Fig. 89).

30. 1. **prīmō adventū**: i.e. *prīmō post adventum tempore*, 'Immediately after the arrival.' *147, b.*

2. **excursiōnēs**: 'sallies.' **parvulīs proeliīs**: 'skirmishes.' How lit.? *76, c.*

3. **vāllō, castellīs**: these formed the line of contravallation; see Map 8. It has been thought strange that, if the site of the stronghold was opposite Namur, or at Falhize, no mention in this description is made of the Sambre or the Meuse. The brow of the hill on which the stronghold stood was so steep and high that perhaps the rivers hardly entered into Caesar's calculations in planning the contravallation. **pedum XII**: in height. *38, b,* and *100, a.* **XV mīlium**: sc. *pedum*, though Caesar in such cases elsewhere has *passuum.* A circuit of three Roman miles seems to satisfy the conditions. *243, b.*

4. **circummūnītī**: 'closed in.' How lit.? **oppidō**: *131, a.*

6. **vīneīs āctīs**: *342, a.* **aggere exstrūctō**: '(and) after an embankment had been built up.' *341.* **turrim**: *14, b,* and *342, b.*

7. **irrīdēre**: 'they (the Atuatuci) scoffed.' *182.* **increpitāre vōcibus**: 'made taunting remarks.' How lit.? *182,* and *131, a.*

bus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō īnstituerētur: *Quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus, praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae* (nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est) *tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē collocāre posse cōnfīderent?*

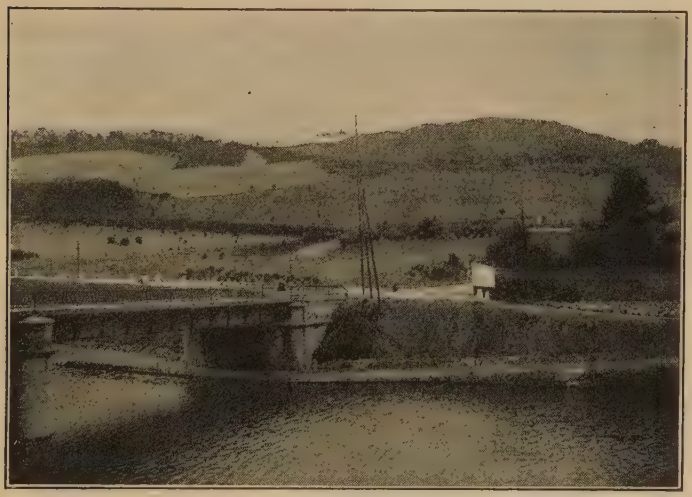


Figure 90. — Site of the stronghold at Namur.
Caesar's camp was probably on the hill at the left.

---

8. **quod**, etc.: 'because (as they said) so big an engine,' etc. *214, b.* B. 286, 1; A. 592, 3; H. 588, II. **ā tantō spatiō**: 'so far off'; i.e., 'at' (lit. 'from') 'so great a distance.' Cf. N. to chap. 7, l. 10.

9. **Quibusnam . . . cōnfīderent**: *213, b,* and *212, c,* (6). **Quibusnam**: *48, c.* **vīribus**: *18, a.* **hominēs**, etc.: contemptuous, '(being) men of so small size,' 'such little chaps.' *91, b,* and *100, a.*

10. **nam . . . est**: *214, c.* **Gallīs, contemptuī**: both datives, but trans. 'held in contempt by the Gauls.' How lit.?

12. **oneris**: 'weight.' *13, e.* The Atuatuci seem to have thought that the Romans would have to pick up the tower in order to move it. **cōnfīderent**: *217, a.* B. 315, 1; A. 586; H. 642, 3.

Frightened by the approach of the moveable tower, they sue for peace; they secretly keep back arms.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vīdērunt, novā atqua inūsitātā speciē commōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī, ad hunc modum locūtī,

Nōn sē exīstimāre, Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt;

Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset, Atuatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere, trāditīs armīs, nōn possent.

Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvīs

---

31. 1. **movērī**, etc.: sc. *turrim*. **moenibus**: *105*. **vīdērunt**: *Atuatucī*.

2. **inūsitātā**: 'unwonted.' **speciē**: 'sight.' *21, b*.

3. **quī**: subject of *dīxērunt*, l. 7. **hunc**: 'the following.' *161, a*.

4. **ope**: 'help.' **deōrum**: *8, d*.

5. **quī**: 'since they.' *194, c*. B. 283, 3, *a*; A. 535, *e*; H. 592.

6. **sē suaque omnia**: 'themselves and all they had.' How lit.? **eōrum**: of the Romans.

8. **Ūnum**: 'one thing (only),' explained by *nē . . . dēspoliāret*. **dēprecārī**: 'begged to escape.' **clēmentiā**, etc.: cf. chap. 14, l. 11, and N.

9. **audīrent**: 'they kept hearing about'; *audīvissent*, implying a single instance, would have been less complimentary. **statuisset**, etc.: in the direct form, *sī statueris* (future perfect) . . . *nōlī nōs armīs dēspoliāre*. *218*, (1), b, and *216*.

10. **armīs**: *127, a*. **Sibi**: after *inimīcōs*, l. 11.

11. **virtūtī**: *105*. **invidēre**: 'envied.' **ā**: we say 'against.'

12. **trāditīs armīs**: i.e. *sī arma trādita essent*. *144, b*, (4). B. 227, 2, *b*; A. 420, 4; H. 575, 9.

13. **praestāre**: 'it was better.' **eum cāsum**: 'such a condition,'

fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit:

Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī, prius quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id, quod in Nerviīs fēcisset, factūrum fīnitimīsque imperātūrum, nē quam dēditīciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īnferrent.

Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, īllī sē, quae imperārentur, facere dīxērunt. Armōrum magnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī

---

involving a choice between the mercy of the Romans and the treatment of their neighbors. **quamvīs fortūnam**: 'any lot whatever.' *49, a.*

14. **ā**: 'at the hands of.' **patī**: subject of *praestāre*. *222, b.*

15. **dominārī**: 'to exercise dominion.' *61, a,* (1). **cōnsuēssent**: *64, a,* (2).

32. 2. **cōnsuētūdine suā**: 'in accordance with his practice' of mercifully treating a prostrate foe. *136, c.* **meritō**: *135, a.*

3. **sī**, etc.: in the direct form, *cīvitātem cōnservābō, sī, prius quam . . . attigerit* (future perfect), *vōs dēdideritis* (future perfect). **ariēs**: 'battering-ram.' It was a rule of war that besieged cities which did not capitulate before the battering-ram touched the walls, should when captured be given over to destruction. *10, e,* and *342, c.*

5. **armīs trāditīs**: *144, b,* (2). **id, quod**: *160, c.* **in**: 'in the case of.' **factūrum**: *89, c.*

6. **nē**, etc.: *199, a.* **quam**: *168,* and *49, a.* **dēditīciīs**: *107, b.*

8. **imperārentur**: *214, a.* **sē facere**: 'that they carried out'; vivid use of the present tense where the future might have been expected.

9. **multitūdine**: 'quantity'; with *iactā*. **fossam**: Map 8, **C**.

10. **sīc ut**, etc.: *197, b.* **summam . . . altitūdinem**: 'the full height.' *152, a.* The 'embankment' had been prolonged to the edge of the moat; the deep space between the end of the 'embankment' and the 'wall,' from the bottom of the moat up, was nearly filled with weapons.

aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs, eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

They make a treacherous attack; are defeated, and sold into slavery.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī, ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod, dēditiōne factā, nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum eīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs

---

11. **acervī**: 'heaps.'

12. **cēlātā**: 'concealed.'

13. **patefactīs**: 'thrown open.' **pāce sunt ūsī**: 'they kept quiet'; lit. 'they enjoyed peace.'

33. 1. **Sub**: 'Towards.' **vesperum**: *7, b.*

2. **nē**, etc.: *196, a.* **quam**: as in chap. 32, l. 6. **ā**: as in chap. 31, l. 14.

3. **ante initō — cōnsiliō**: 'having previously formed a plot.' How lit.?

4. **praesidia dēductūrōs** [esse]: 'would withdraw the outposts' from the redoubts and the line of circumvallation, where the Roman sentries kept watch.

5. **dēnique**: 'at any rate.' **indīligentius**: 'less carefully.' *153, a.* **servātūrōs** [esse]: 'would maintain (them)' the outposts.

6. **cum**: with *armīs*, and understood with *scūtīs*, l. 7.

7. **cortice**: 'bark.' *98, b.* **vīminibus intextīs**: '(of) wicker-work,' lit. 'withes interwoven.' Cf. Fig. 48, p. 60.

8. **pellibus**: 'with skins.' The Atuatuci had driven cattle into the enclosure; cf. chap. 29, l. 4.

9. **tertiā vigiliā**: *242, c.* **arduus**: 'steep.' *30.*

ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, īgnibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis inīquō locō, contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus IIII, reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt.

Postrīdiē eius diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius

10. **ascēnsus**, etc.: implies that at the point attacked the Roman line of contravallation was on ground somewhat above the level of the plain, so that the enemy, after rushing down from the town, must advance up a height in order to storm the Roman fortifications. **cōpiīs**: *137, b.*

11. **ēruptiōnem**: 'sortie.'

12. **īgnibus**: 'by fire-signals.' See Plate IV, 2. **significātiōne**: 'warning.'

13. **eō**: to the point attacked. **concursum est**: 'the soldiers rushed.' *73, d.*

14. **ut**, etc.: 'as brave men were bound to fight.' **in . . . salūtis**: cf. chap. 27, l. 7, and N.

15. **inīquō locō**: *145, c.* **vāllō**: the Roman line of contravallation.

16. **turribus**: stationed at intervals along the line of contravallation, as on the rampart around a camp; cf. Plate IX, 6. **iacerent**: *194, a.* B. 283, 2; A. 535; H. 591, 1. **ūnā**: 'alone.'

17. **ad**: adverb, 'about,' modifying *quattuor* (IIII).

19. **diēī**: *94, c.* **refrāctīs**: 'had been burst in.' How lit.? **cum**: *184, a.* **iam**: 'any longer.'

20. **intrōmissīs**: 'had been sent in,' lit. 'into,' the stronghold. **sectiōnem ūniversam**: 'the booty in one sale,' at auction; in such cases the buyers who joined in the bid afterwards divided up the purchase among themselves for resale in smaller lots. Such wholesale buyers accompanied Roman armies. In this instance the booty included not only everything that the captured Atuatuci had, but the people themselves, who were sold into slavery.

oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs, quī ēmerant, capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium LIII.

Successful Closing of the Year. 34, 35

Maritime states in northwestern Gaul submit to Publius Crassus.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

German tribes offer submission; the army goes into winter quarters; a thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab eīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem

---

21. **vēndidit**: 'sold.'

22. **capitum**: 'of persons'; cf. I, chap. 29, l. 6, and N. LIII: *quīnquāgintā trium*. *38, b*, and *36*. Some of the Atuatuci, however, were still left in the country; cf. V, 38, ll. 1–2, and 39, ll. 9–11.

34. 1. **P.**: *19, a*. **Crassō**: see Vocab. under *Crassus*, (2). **legiōne ūnā**: the 7th, which must have started for western Gaul soon after the battle of the Sambre.

Figure 91. — Coin of the Coriosolites. Reverse, human-headed horse. Obverse, a fanciful head.

2. **Venetōs**: N. to III, 8, l. 3. **Venellōs**: for the location of the Venelli and other peoples mentioned, see Map at the end of this volume. **Coriosolitas**: (Fig. 91). *19, f*.

3. **quae**: *164, c*. **maritimae**: 'maritime.'

4. **Ōceanum**: the Atlantic; see Vocab.

35. 3. **incolerent**: *220*. B. 324, 1; A. 593; H. 652.

mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit.

Ipse, in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae hīs locīs erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xv supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

---

4. **sē**: feminine, taking the gender of *nātiōnibus*; hence *datūrās* and *factūrās* (sc. *esse*) are feminine.

5. **pollicērentur**: *193, a.* **Quās**: *167.* **Italiam**: here including Cisalpine Gaul. *283, b.*

6. **Īllyricum**: *298.*

8. **Carnutēs**, etc.: *282.* See Map. **quaeque cīvitātēs**: *et in eās cīvitātēs quae. 165, c.*

10. **hīberna**: *335, b.* **eāsque**: *233, b.*

11. **ex**: 'after receipt of.' **litterīs**: 'dispatches' to the Roman Senate, reporting his victories. **supplicātiō**: 'solemn thanksgiving,' services of prayer to avert misfortune as well as giving of thanks to the gods for victory. Usually such services lasted only three or four days; the longest previous 'thanksgiving' was of twelve days, decreed after Pompey had brought to a close the war with Mithridates. **quod**: sc. *id*, referring to the fact stated in the preceding clause.

12. **nūllī**: = *nēminī. 12, d.*

COMMENTARIUS TERTIUS

Operations in the Alps. 1–6

Caesar stations Galba with a small force in the Alps.

1. Cum in Italiam proficīscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam, cum legiōne XII et parte equitātūs, in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit, quod iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum perīculō magnīsque cum portōriīs mercātōrēs īre cōnsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocāret.

---

1. 1. **proficīscerētur**: Caesar 'was starting' on the trip referred to in II, chap. 35, l. 10. *185, c.* The events of Book III, as a whole, belong to the year 56 B.C.; but the uprising of the Alpine tribes, narrated in chapters 1–6, took place in the latter part of the autumn and early winter of B.C. 57. **Italiam**: Cisalpine Gaul. *283, b.* **Ser.** = *Servium*. *19, a.* **Galbam**: see Vocab. under Galba, (1).

2. XII: *duodecimā*. *38, b.* Caesar had eight legions, numbered 7 to 14 inclusive. **Nantuātēs**: *282.* Locate the states mentioned on Map 1.

4. **summās Alpēs**: 'the highest part of the Alps.' *152, a.*

5. **mittendī**: *230,* (1). **iter**: 'route' to Italy, over the pass now known as the Great St. Bernard, where the famous hospice is. By this route Napoleon I in May, 1800, made his venturesome "crossing of the Alps," with an army of 36,000 men. (Fig. 92.)

6. **perīculō**: the danger arose not so much from the precipitous way over the mountains as from the hostility of the natives. These lived in part by plundering and by levying tolls on the goods of traders going over the pass. **portōriīs**: N. to I, 18, l. 9.

7. **patefierī**: 'be kept open'; the subject is *iter*. *70, c,* and *223, a.* **Huic**: Galba. **opus esse**: 'that it was necessary.' **arbitrārētur**: *arbitrāberis* in the unattracted form. *220.*

8. **legiōnem**, etc.: the 12th legion had suffered so severely in the

Galba locates his winter quarters in Octodurus.

Galba, secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūribus eōrum expugnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs [10] obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortēs duās in

Figure 92. — The Great St. Bernard Pass and the famous hospice.

battle of the Sambre (II, chap. 25), that Caesar would hardly have stationed it at so difficult a post if he had anticipated serious opposition. **collocāret**: *199, a.*

9. **proeliīs**, etc.: the ablatives absolute indicate successive events, and should be rendered by clauses. First come the engagements, then the taking of strongholds; later, the sending of envoys, then the giving of hostages; finally, the ratification of peace.

11. **cohortēs duās**: how many men? *307, c.* **in Nantuātibus**: perhaps where St. Maurice now is, on the upper Rhone. *282.*

Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse, cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus, in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus, positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā plānitiē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem eius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram, vacuam ab hīs relictam, cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

There is a sudden uprising of the mountaineers.

2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsissent, frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est, ex eā parte vīcī, quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse, montēsque, quī impendērent, ā maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī.

---

12. **reliquīs cohortibus**: doubtless the two strongest cohorts were detailed for the separate post; how many men the remaining eight contained it is difficult to estimate.

13. **vīcō**: how different from *oppidum?* **Octodūrus**: near Martigny; see Map 1, and Fig. 93.

14. **quī**: *167*. **valle**: 'valley.' **nōn magnā**: *239, g*. **adiectā**: 'adjoining.' How lit.?

16. **flūmine**: the Dranse, which flows into the Rhone, from the south, at the point where the Rhone turns northwest toward Lake Geneva. **alteram . . . alteram**: *171, b*.

17. **vacuam**: predicative, after *relictam;* Galba expelled the inhabitants from the part of Octodurus which was on the west bank of the Dranse, and turned the dwellings into winter quarters. *88, b*.

2. 1. **hībernōrum**: 'of the (life in) winter quarters.' **trānsīssent**: *68, b*, and *185, c*.

2. **eō**: to the part of the town used for winter quarters. **iussisset**: sc. *Galba*. **explōrātōrēs**: *327*.

3. **concesserat**: *214, c*. The Gauls occupied the part of the town on the east bank.

4. **impendērent**: *214, a*. **ā**: with the ablative of agent because of the idea of *hominēs* in *multitūdō*. *126, b*.

Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: prīmum, quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam, dētrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī exīstimābant.

Accēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē līberōs abstrāctōs obsidum

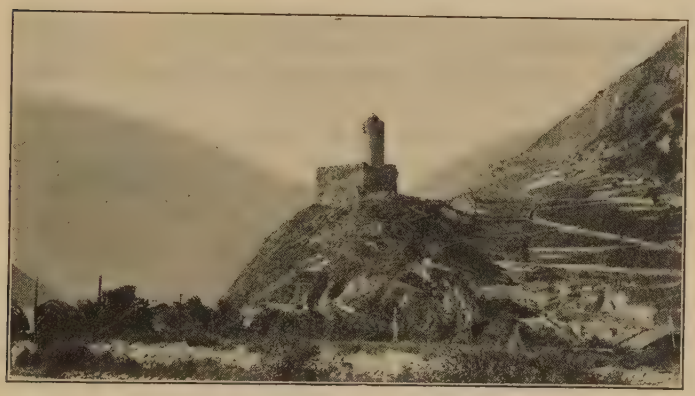


Figure 93.—Valley of the Dranse.
View near Martigny. The tower belongs to the ruined castle of Batiaz.

6. **Id**: explained by the clause *ut . . . caperent*. *203*, (4). **renovandī**: 'of renewing.' *230*, (1).

8. **neque eam plēnissimam**: 'and that lacking its full strength'; the reason is explained by the following ablatives absolute. How lit. ? *161*, *c*.

9. **complūribus**: sc. *mīlitibus*. **singillātim**: 'as individuals,' not sent out as cohorts or maniples. **commeātūs**, etc.: *230*, (1).

11. **tum etiam**: *deinde* is more common as correlative with *prīmum*. *237*, *b*.

12. **ipsī**: *Gallī*. **dēcurrerent**: 'should rush down.'

15. **quod . . . dolēbant**: subject of *Accēdēbat*; 'There was the

nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

Galba, calling a council, decides not to retreat.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs, Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae, neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod, dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs, nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō, sententiās exquīrere coepit.

Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī perīculī praeter

---

further consideration that,' etc. *198, b.* B. 299, 1; A. 572; H. 588, 3. **abstrāctōs**: 'had been taken away.' *89, c,* and *223, a,* (2).

16. **nōmine**: 'under the name.' *136, b.* **itinerum causā**: cf. chap. 1, ll. 5–7.

17. **culmina**: 'summits,' commanding the passes. *12, e.*

18. **prōvinciae**: *107, b,* and *290.* **adiungere**: 'annex.' **sibi persuāsum habēbant**, etc.: 'were convinced that the Romans were trying,' lit. 'had persuaded themselves', etc. *229, a.* B. 337, 7; A. 497, *b.* **persuāsum**: predicative, in agreement with the infinitive clause *Rōmānōs . . . cōnārī*, object of *habēbant. 148, d.*

3. 1. **neque . . . neque**: 'not . . . and not.' **opus hībernōrum, mūnītiōnēs**: 'the work on the winter quarters,' in general, including as the most important item, 'the fortifications' (chap. 1, l. 18). Cf. I, 31, l. 48, *exempla cruciātūsque,* and N.

2. **plēnē**: 'quite.' **perfectae**: agreement? *172, b.* **dē**: 'for.'

3. **satis esset prōvīsum**: 'sufficient provision had been made.'

4. **nihil . . . timendum** [esse]: 'that he had no occasion to fear hostilities.' How lit.? *73, e.*

5. **cōnsiliō**: doubtless of the centurions; cf. I, 40, ll. 1–2. **sententiās exquīrere**: 'to ask for opinions' regarding the best course to pursue.

7. **Quō**: *167.* **tantum repentīnī perīculī**: 'so great danger suddenly;' lit. 'so much of sudden danger.' *97, b.* **praeter opīniōnem**; 'contrary to expectation.'

opīniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī, interclūsīs itineribus, possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae eius modī sententiae dīcēbantur, ut, impedīmentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā, īsdem itineribus, quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

The mountaineers, superior in numbers, make a furious attack.

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut eīs rēbus, quās cōnstituissent, collocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus, signō datō, dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere.

Nostrī prīmō integrīs vīribus fortiter repugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quae-

---

9. **complēta** [esse]: participle here used as a predicate adjective. *221, b.* **neque subsidiō venīrī**: sc. *posset* 'and help could not come.' How lit.? *73, d,* and *112, a.*

10. **interclūsīs itineribus**: *144, b,* (3).

12. **eius modī**: 'of the following purport.' *100, a.* **ut,** etc.: *203,* (4).

13. **īsdem**: *45.* **itineribus**: *134, a.* **pervēnissent**: *220.*

14. **ad salūtem**: 'to (a place of) safety.' **Maiōrī partī placuit**: 'the majority decided.' *73, c.*

15. **ad extrēmum**: 'to the last.' *154, a.* **ēventum experīrī**: 'to await the outcome.'

4. 1. **Brevī spatiō interiectō**: 'After a brief interval.' How lit.? **ut**: 'so that.' **rēbus — collocandīs**: *230,* (2). **cōnstituissent**: *220.*

3. **dēcurrere, conicere**: *182.* B. 335; A. 463; H. 610.

4. **gaesa**: Gallic 'javelins.' *349,* and Fig. 40.

5. **integrīs**: 'unimpaired.' *22, f,* and *80, b*; also, *135, a.* **neque ūllum tēlum**: 'and no missile.'

6. **frūstrā**: 'in vain.' **ex locō superiōre**: the rampart of the camp; chap. 1, l. 18. **quaecumque**: *50, a,* and *192.*

cumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant. Quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pugnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī, ubi cōnstiterat, relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

The Romans, forced to extremities, resolve upon a sally.

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pugnārētur ac nōn sōlum vīrēs, sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī

---

7. **dēfēnsōribus**: *127, a*, and *74, a*.

8. **eō**: = *in eam partem*; 'to that part they rushed.' **ferre**: *182*. **hōc superārī**: 'on this account they were at a disadvantage.' How lit.? *135, a*.

9. **dēfessī**: '(when) exhausted.' **proeliō**: *127, a*. **aliī**: '(and) others.' *238, a*.

10. **vīribus**: *143, a*. **succēdēbant**: 'were taking their places.' **rērum**: dependent on *nihil*. *97, a*.

11. **nōn modo**: trans. as if *nōn modo nōn*; 'not only not to one (who was) exhausted,' i.e. one on the Roman side. *236, d*, and *154, a*. B. 343, 2, *a*; A. 288; H. 495.

12. **excēdendī**: dependent on *facultās*. **sauciō**: 'to one (who was) wounded.' *154, a*, and *237, c*. **locī — relinquendī**: *230*, (1).

13. **suī recipiendī**: 'of looking after himself.'

5. 1. **Cum iam — pugnārētur**: 'When fighting had been going on.' *175, f*, and *73, d*. **hōrīs**: *129, a*.

3. **ācrius**: *34, a*. **languidiōribus nostrīs**: 'as our men became weaker.' How lit.? *144, b*, (3). **vāllum scindere**: 'to destroy the rampart' by pulling up the palisades along the outer edge.'

4. **fossās**: plural because the parts of the moat on the four sides are thought of as separate trenches.

5. **ad extrēmum cāsum**: 'to the last crisis.' **P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīlī centuriō**: II, 25, l. 8, and Note. *315, b*.

pīlī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsiliī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī, ēruptiōne factā, extrēmum auxilium experīrentur.

Itaque, convocātīs centuriōnibus, celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantum modo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent; post, datō signō, ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

The Romans win; but Galba withdraws to the Province.

6. Quod iussī sunt, faciunt, ac subitō, omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā, neque cognōscendī, quid fieret, neque suī

---

6. **proeliō**: *147, b.* **Nervicō**: 'with the Nervians,' we should say. The battle had taken place not long before this time; see II, chapters 19–28.

7. **Volusēnus**: the suggestion was evidently made first by Baculus to his ranking officer, Volusēnus, who hurried with him to Galba. **tribūnus**: *314.*

8. **cōnsiliī magnī**: 'of excellent judgment.' *100, a.*

9. **ūnam spem**: 'that the only hope.' **factā**: 'by making,' etc. *144, b,* (6). **extrēmum auxilium**: 'the last resource.'

11. **centuriōnibus**: how many ordinarily in 8 cohorts? *315, b.* **mīlitēs certiōrēs facit**: 'he directed the soldiers,' through the centurions.

12. **intermitterent proelium**: 'to stop fighting.' *216.* B. 316; A. 588: H. 642. **tantum modo**, etc.: 'only to parry,' with their shields, 'the missiles hurled' by the enemy, in order to save their strength for the sortie.

14. **ērumperent**: 'to burst forth,' suddenly assuming the offensive. *216.*

6. 1. **Quod**, etc.: *id, quod facere iussī sunt, faciunt. 160, c.* **portīs**: *134, a,* and *334, a.* B. 218, 9; A. 429, *a*; H. 476.

2. **suī colligendī**: 'of collecting their forces,' scattered on all sides of the camp, in order to resist the four mass attacks launched from the four gates. *164, b.* B. 339, 5; A. 504, *c*; H. 626, 3.

colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita, commūtātā fortūnā, eōs, quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant, undique circumventōs intercipiunt; et ex hominum mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā, reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sīc, omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armīsque exūtīs, sē in castra mūnītiōnēsque suās recipiunt.

Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse memineRAT, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vīderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē, omnibus eius vīcī

---

4. **eōs — circumventōs intercipiunt**: 'they surrounded and slew those.' *228, a.* **potiundōrum**: *64, b.*

5. **ex**, etc.; i.e. *plūs tertiā parte, ex amplius trīgintā hominum mīlibus, numerō barbarōrum* ('of natives') *quem ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, interfectā.* **ex**: *97, d.*

6. **amplius, plūs**: *129, b.* **numerum**: *165, b.* It seems hardly credible that a force of more than 30,000 men, attacking under conditions very favorable to themselves, could have been beaten off even by a Roman force less than one tenth as large; perhaps the estimate of the number of the enemy was exaggerated.

7. **plūs tertiā parte interfectā**: on this basis the Roman soldiers on the average accounted for three to five Gauls apiece.

8. **locīs superiōribus**: the heights round about; see chap. 1, l. 15.

9. **fūsīs**: 'routed.' **armīsque exūtīs**: 'and bereft of their arms,' which they dropped in their hasty flight. **armīs**: *127, a.*

11. **Quō proeliō factō**: 'After this battle.' How lit.? **saepius**: 'too often.' *153, a.*

12. **aliō — cōnsiliō**: 'with one design,' stated in chap. 1, ll. 5–8. *138*, and *171, c.*

13. **aliīs occurrisse rēbus**: '(but) that he had found conditions different,' implying the impossibility of carrying out the original design with the force at his disposal.

14. **eius vīcī**: Octodurus, of which the part assigned to the natives, as well as that occupied by the Romans (chap. 1, ll. 15–18), was now burned.

MAP 9.

OPERATIONS OF THE YEAR 56 B.C.

Book III, 7–27 To face page 198

EXPLANATION

1. Base whence Caesar sent Sabinus north and Crassus south. 2. Sea-fight with the Venetans (chap. 13–15). 3. Battle of Sabinus (17–19). 4. Battle of Crassus with the Sotiates (20–22). 5. Final victory of Crassus (23–26).

aedificiīs incēnsīs, in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac, nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante, incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs, perdūxit, ibique hiemāvit.

Campaign against the Venetans. 7–16

Crassus, wintering near the Ocean, sends to the nearest states for grain.

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coörtum est.

Eius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne VII proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in fīnitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī commeātūsque petendī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō

---

16. **iter dēmorante**: 'delaying his march.' *61, a,* (1). **incolumem**: predicative, 'in safety.'

7. 1. **cum**: 'although.' *187.* **omnibus dē causīs**: with *exīstimāret*, 'had every reason to think.' How lit.?

2. **pācātam**: sc. *esse.* **Galliam**: *287, b.* **superātīs Belgīs**: II, chapters 1–33. **expulsīs Germanīs**: I, chapters 30–54.

3. **Sedūnīs**: of the Alpine tribes the Seduni, as the most important, are alone mentioned. **initā hieme**: 'at the beginning of winter.' How lit.? *68, b,* and *144, b,* (1).

4. **Īllyricum**: *298,* and *255.* See II, 35, l. 6.

6. **coörtum est**: 'broke out.' How lit.? *61, b.*

7. **haec**: 'as follows.' *161, a.* **adulēscēns**: cf. I, 52, l. 16, and N., and Vocab. under *Crassus*, (2).

8. **VII**: *septimā. 38, b.* **proximus**, etc.: 'very near the Ocean'; lit. 'very near the sea,' more specifically designated as 'the Ocean' to distinguish it from the Mediterranean sea. *123, b.*

9. **praefectōs**: 'subsidiary officers'; cf. I, 39, l. 10, and N.

10. **tribūnōs mīlitum**: *314.* **complūrēs**: with *cīvitātēs.*

est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Sīliō in Venetōs.

The Venetans detain his representatives and lead a revolt.

8. Huius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum reliquōs antecēdunt, et in magnō impetū maris atque apertō, paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē, quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt, habent vectīgālēs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Silii atque Vēlāniī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs existimābant.

---

13. **Coriosolitas**: *19, f.*, and *282*. Locate, on Map 9, the peoples mentioned.

8. 1. **Huius cīvitātis**: of the Venetans. **omnis ōrae**, etc.: trans. as if *omnium cīvitātum ōrae maritimae eārum regiōnum*.

2. **et . . . et** (l. 4) . . . **et** (l. 5): *233, d.*

3. **in — nāvigāre**: 'to make the voyage to.' The Venetans had developed an extensive carrying business between Gaul and Britain; Britain was less advanced than Gaul in most respects but was regarded as the center of Druidism (VI, 13, ll. 34–37). **Britanniam**: *294*. **cōnsuērunt**: *64, a*, (2), and *176, b*.

4. **scientiā**: *142, a*. **rērum nauticārum**, 'nautical matters.' **antecēdunt**: 'excel.'

5. **in**, etc.: 'since the violence of the open sea is great, with harbors few and far between.' How lit.?

6. **omnēs**: object of *habent*. **eō marī**: the modern Bay of Biscay. *16, b*, and *131, c*.

7. **vectīgālēs**: 'subject to tribute'; predicative. *115, a, b*. On account of the violence of the sea, and the fewness of the harbors, navigators were obliged to take refuge in the harbors of the Venetans, who mulcted them in tolls. **Ab hīs**, etc.: 'These took the first step by detaining,' etc. How lit.?

8. **per eōs**: as an exchange. *123, a*. **suōs**, etc.: *sē recuperātūrōs* [*esse*] *suōs obsidēs*.

9. **dedissent**: *214, a*. **recuperātūrōs** [esse]: 'would get back.'

Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimī adductī — ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōnsilia — eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter, missīs lēgātīs, per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant, nihil, nisi commūnī cōnsiliō, āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs; reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant, ut in eā lībertāte, quam ā maiōribus accēperint, permanēre, quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā, commūnem lēgātiōnem ad

Figure 94. — View of the Loire river, with the town of Decize and its medieval castle.

10. **Hōrum auctōritāte**: 'by their example.' **ut**, etc.: 'consistently with the practice of the Gauls, to form plans suddenly and without reflection.' How lit.? The fickleness of the Gauls is more than once alluded to by Caesar; see N. to chap. 19, l. 20.

13. **inter sē**: *159*. **nihil**, etc.: *sē nihil āctūrōs esse . . . lātūrōs esse*. *213, b*.

14. **eundem**: *45*. **exitum**: 'issue.'

15. **reliquās**: *171, a*. **ut . . . mālint**: *199, a*, and *71*.

16. **accēperint**: *220*. **quam**: '(rather) than.'

P. Crassum mittunt: *sī velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.*

Caesar orders ships built — the coast states prepare for war.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īnstituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs, ipse, cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs, cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod, quantum in sē facinus admīsissent, intellegēbant, lēgātōs — quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine perīculī bellum parāre et maximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent,

---

19. **sī**, etc.: in the direct form, *sī vīs tuōs recuperāre, obsidēs nōbīs remitte. 218*, (1), a, and *216*.

9. 2. **longius**: 'too far away.' Caesar was probably in Cisalpine Gaul; for the revolt of the Venetans came to a head in the early spring, and in April of 56 B.C. Caesar met Pompey and Crassus at Luca. *256*, and *153, a*. **nāvēs longās**: 'galleys.' *346, a*. **interim**: 'meanwhile,' pending his return to the army. **aedificārī**: 'be built.'

3. **Ligerī**: *18, e*. See Maps 9 and 10. **quod**, etc.: explains why, although the Venetans were strong on the ocean, the ships were ordered built on the Loire (Fig. 94). **rēmigēs**: 'rowers.'

4. **nautās**: 'sailors.' **gubernātōrēs**: 'steersmen,' who managed the rudders. *346, b*, and *84*. The fighting on these ships was to be done by legionaries (chap. 14, l. 9).

5. **cum**, etc.: 'as soon as the season of the year permitted.' How lit.? *185, b*. Caesar probably rejoined the army in May.

8. **in sē . . . admīsissent**: 'they had committed'; *sē* refers to the subject of *admīsissent*. How lit.? *204*, (3).

9. **lēgātōs . . . coniectōs** [esse]: explains *quantum . . . admīsissent*; 'in that envoys had been,' etc. **quod nōmen**: 'a title which,' the title of envoy or ambassador. *165, b*. **ad**: 'among.'

10. **sānctum inviolātumque**: 'sacred and inviolable.'

prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc maiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant.

Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter inopiam frūmentī diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant; *ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse;* ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vastissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant.

Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs, oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum esse bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās

---

13. **īnstituunt**: *175, b.* **hōc**: 'on this account.' **spē**: *138.* **multum cōnfīdēbant**: 'had much confidence.' *118, b.* **nātūrā**: *135, a.*

15. **Pedestria**, etc.: 'that the land routes were cut by inlets of the sea,' making progress of an army difficult; see Map 10. **nāvigātiōnem**: 'navigation,' by the Romans; sc. *esse.* *81.*

16. **īnscientiam locōrum**: 'lack of knowledge of the country.'

17. **neque**: trans. as if *et . . . nōn.*

18. **ac . . . nōvisse**: a brief summary in indirect discourse; 'and (they believed) that,' etc. *212, c,* (6).

19. **ut**: with *iam,* 'even granting that.' **acciderent**: subjunctive also in direct discourse. *191, b.* B. 308; A. 527, *a*; H. 586, II. **plūrimum posse**: cf. I, 3, l. 21 and N.

21. **ubi**: = *in quibus.* **gestūrī essent**: *63.*

22. **īnsulās**: 'islands.' **longē aliam . . . atque**: 'far different . . . from what it was.' *233, c.*

23. **in conclūsō marī**: 'on a land-locked sea,' referring to the Mediterranean. **vastissimō, apertissimō**: 'illimitable, unconfined.' How lit. ?

25. **frūmenta**: unthreshed 'grain,' just ripening in the fields, hurriedly cut and transported into the towns; N. to I, 16, l. 3. The time was near the beginning of July.

possunt, cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs asciscunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

Caesar considers it equally important to check this uprising and to distribute his forces so as to prevent revolts elsewhere.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās suprā ostendimus, sed multa tamen Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in prīmīs nē, hāc parte neglēctā, reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur.

Itaque cum intellegeret, omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem ser-

---

28. **Sociōs**: 'as allies.' *115, a.* **Osismōs**, etc.: locate these states on the Map at the end of this volume.

30. **auxilia**, etc.: help furnished to his enemies by the Britons gave Caesar a pretext later for invading the island (IV, chap. 20).

10. 1. **Erant**: *90, a.* **suprā**: chap. 9.

3. **iniūria**, etc.: 'the wrong done by the detention of Roman knights,' referring to the envoys (chap. 8, ll. 7–12), who, as the other tribunes in Caesar's army, had the rank of *equitēs*. *228, b.* B. 337, 6; A. 497; H. 636, 4. **equitum**: *96.* **rebelliō**: 'renewal of war.'

4. **dēfectiō**: 'revolting.' **datīs obsidibus**: *144, b,* (5).

5. **nē . . . arbitrārentur**: the clause is in the same construction as *iniūria, rebelliō*, etc., in apposition with *multa*; '(the fear) that,' etc. *202.* **hāc parte neglēctā**: 'if this part (of Gaul),' etc. *144, b,* (4).

6. **idem**: subject accusative with *licēre*; 'the same course.' **licēre**: *73, b.*

7. **cum**: *184, a.* **novīs rēbus studēre**: 'were eager for a change of rule.' *105.*

8. **mōbiliter**: 'easily.' **excitārī**: 'were stirred.'

9. **nātūrā lībertātī studēre**: 'have a natural desire for liberty.' How lit.?

vitūtis ōdisse, prius quam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat, Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessītī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat.

P. Crassum, cum cohortibus legiōnāriis XII et magnō numerō equitātūs, in Aquītāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur.

Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret.

D. Brūtum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās

---

10. **ōdisse**: *72, b,* and *176, b.* **prius quam**: with the subjunctive also in direct discourse. *189, b.* **cōnspīrārent**: 'should league together.'

11. **partiendum** [esse], etc.: 'that he ought to divide up his army and distribute (it) more widely,' in order to hold all parts of the country in check. *73, e.*

11. 1. **Trēverōs**: see Map at the end of the volume. *282.* **proximī**: here followed by the dative. *108, a.*

3. **adeat**: sc. *ut.* *200, a,* and *199, a.* **in officiō**: 'in allegiance.'

4. **auxiliō**: *112, a.* **arcessītī** [esse]: *148, e.*

5. **cōnentur**: *220.* B. 324; A. 593; H. 652.

6. **XII**: *duodecim*; Crassus had a legion and two cohorts of infantry.

7. **Aquītāniam**: *287, c.*

8. **Galliam**: Celtic Gaul. *287, b.* As the Aquitanians were of different stock, their relations with their Celtic neighbors seem ordinarily not to have been intimate.

11. **quī . . . cūret**: 'in order to keep their forces at a distance.' How lit.? *193, a.*

12. **distinendam**: *79, d,* and *229, b.* B. 337, 8, *b,* 2; H. 622.

13. **D.**: *19, a.* **classī**: 'fleet,' built on the Loire (chap. 9, ll. 2–5). **Gallicīs nāvibus**: used as supply ships.

ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus con-
15 venīre iusserat, praeficit et, cum prīmum possit, in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

The capture of strongholds of the Venetans proves fruitless.

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut, posita in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiisque, neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset (quod bis

Figure 95. — A tongue of land, on the Venetan coast.

This tongue of land, projecting westward, is seen across the inlet as one looks northward from Le Croisic (Map 10).

---

15. **possit**: Indicative in the direct form.

16. **eō**: *in Venetōs.* **cōpiīs**: *137, b.*

12. 1. **eius modī . . . ut**: 'of such a character that.' *100, b,* and *197, b.* **sitūs**: 'locations.'

2. **extrēmīs**, etc.: 'at the ends of tongues of land,' relatively low, 'and promontories,' high points of land, projecting into the sea. (Fig. 95). *152, a.* **pedibus**: 'by land.' How lit.? *131, a.* **aditum**: i.e. for an attacking army.

3. **cum**, etc.: 'when the tide had rushed in from the deep.' How lit.? **quod**: 'which,' referring to the preceding clause; hence neuter. **bis**, etc.: On July 1 in Quiberon Bay the sun rises at 4.12 and sets at 7.48, while the tide reaches high-water mark at 5 A.M. and 5.25 P.M.; there are thus two tides in the one day. The interval between the forenoon and afternoon tides, in general, is less than the length of the summer days when Caesar was in this region; hence

accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod, rūrsus minuente aestū, nāvēs in vadīs afflictārentur.

Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō, magnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, suīs fortūnīs dēspērāre coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cuius reī summam facultātem habēbant, omnia sua

---

Caesar's form of statement, as Professor Oliphant has shown (American Journal of Philology, 1916, p. 297).

4. **accidit**: 'happened.' **hōrārum**: the long 'hours,' of the summer days. *242, a.* **spatiō**: 'within the period.' *147, c.* **rūrsus minuente aestū**: 'at ebb tide.' How lit.?

5. **afflictārentur**: ' would be stranded,' in case they should be over the shallow places when the tide went out.

6. **utrāque rē**: 'by both conditions,' both the rising and the ebbing of the tide. How lit.?

7–11. **Explanation**: Starting from the nearest point of land which at high tide remained above water, the Romans prolonged toward the town two massive parallel embankments, or dikes, working whenever the tide would allow, since at high tide the inclosed space would be under water. Having prolonged their dikes almost to the city, quickly, when the tide was low, they filled in the last stretch and shut out the water from both sides, thus giving a dry avenue of approach between the dikes from the adjacent country to the town. But by the time they were ready to attack, using each embankment as an *agger* (*341*), the townspeople had already taken ship and departed "bag and baggage." See Map 10, **A**.

7. **quandō**: 'at any time.' **operis**: = *mūnītiōnum*, explained by what follows. **superātī**: agrees with *oppidānī*, understood as subject of *coeperant*. **extrūsō marī**: 'when the sea had been shut out.' *144, b*, (2).

8. **aggere ac mōlibus**: 'by massive dikes'; hendiadys. How lit.? *238, d.* B. 374, 4; A. 640; H. 751, 3, N. 1. **hīs**, etc.: 'when these had been built up to a level with the walls.' **moenibus**: *107, a.*

9. **fortūnīs**: dative. *109, a.*

10. **appulsō**: 'having brought up' to the threatened town. How lit.? **cuius reī**: instead of *quārum*; we should say, 'of which they had the greatest abundance.' How lit.?

dēportābant sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus īsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant.

Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur, summaque erat vastō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

Advantages of the sea-going Venetan ships over Roman galleys.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae, atque item puppēs, ad magnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvīs vim et contumēliam

---

11. **dēportābant**: repeated action, 'they would carry off.' *175, d.*

12. **īsdem**: *45.* **opportūnitātibus**: 'advantages.' **dēfendēbant**: *175, d.*

14. **tempestātibus dētinēbantur**: 'were held back,' in the Loire (chap. 9, ll. 1–4), 'by storms.' **summa . . . difficultās**: *353, d.*

15. **vastō**, etc.: *144, b*, (3). There is an implied contrast with the more sheltered and almost tideless waters of the Mediterranean. **rārīs ac prope nūllīs**: 'infrequent, in fact, almost entirely lacking.' How lit.?

13. 1. **Namque ipsōrum**: closely connected with the preceding; 'And (the Venetans have not the same difficulty in navigating these waters) for their.' **hunc**: 'the following.'

2. **armātae**: 'equipped.' **carīnae**: 'keels'; sc. *erant*. **aliquantō plāniōrēs**: 'considerably flatter,' so that the ships were more flat-bottomed than the Roman galleys. **quam**: 'than (those).'

3. **quō**: *193, b.* **dēcessum**: 'the ebbing.'

4. **prōrae**, etc.: 'the prows were very high'; sc. *erant* in this and the following clauses. **puppēs**: 'sterns.'

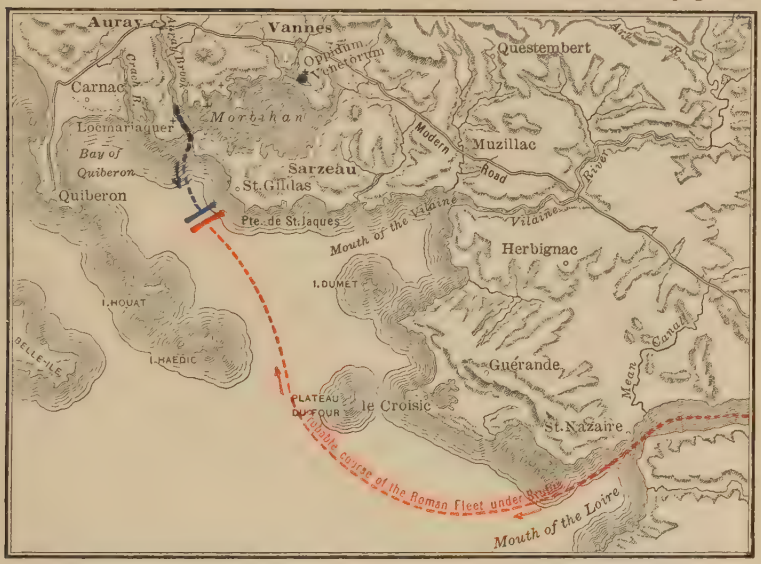
5. **fluctuum**: 'of sea-waves.' **accommodātae**: 'adapted.'

6. **tōtae**: 'wholly.' *151.* **rōbore**: 'oak.' *13, f.* **quamvīs**: 'no matter how great,' lit. 'any you please.' *49, a.* **vim et contumēliam**: 'violence and buffeting.' *230*, (3).

MAP 10

Sea-fight with the Venetans

Book III, 7–16 To face page 208



EXPLANATION

Caesar's fleet was built on the Loire (Liger, chap. 9, ll. 2–4), and placed in command of Brutus. From the mouth of the Loire it followed a northerly course till it met the Venetan fleet (chap. 14).

MAP 10, A

Operations against a Venetan Town (III, 12)

a. Mainland.

b. Stronghold, *oppidum*, surrounded by water at high tide.

c. Parallel dikes over land submerged except at low tide. The dikes, or embankments, were high enough to keep out the water at high tide.

MAP 10, A

perferendam; trānstra, ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus, cōnfīxa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revinctae; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sīve propter līnī inopiam atque eius ūsūs īnscientiam, sīve eō, quod est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.

Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī eius modī congressus erat, ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret; reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illīs essent aptiōra et

---

7. **trānstra**, etc.: 'the cross-timbers, (made) of beams a foot thick' (lit. 'in height'), were 'fastened (to the sides) with iron bolts of the thickness of a thumb.' **trabibus**: *17, c.*

8. **crassitūdine**: *143, a.* **ancorae**: 'anchors,' like those in use to-day.

9. **prō**: 'instead of.' **fūnibus**: 'ropes.' As the Romans used only cables of rope, the chain cables of the Venetans seemed noteworthy. **revinctae**: were 'held.' **pellēs**: 'hides.' **vēlīs**: 'sails' of canvas.

10. **alūtae tenuiter cōnfectae**: 'leather dressed thin.' **sīve . . . sīve**: *235, a, b.* **līnī**: 'flax.'

11. **eius**: *līnī.* **eō**: 'on this account,' explained by *quod* (l. 12) . . . *arbitrābantur. 135, a.* **quod**: relative, refers to the thought of the following *quod*-clause. **vērī**: *108, b.*

12. **impetūs**: 'gusts.'

13. **tanta onera nāvium**: trans. 'so heavy vessels.' How lit.? **onera**: *13, e.* **regī**: 'be managed.' **vēlīs**: 'with (canvas) sails.'

15. **nostrae classī congressus**: 'the encounter of our fleet.' How lit.? *111.* **eius modī**: 'such.' How lit.? *100, b.*

16. **erat**: 'would be.' **ūnā**: 'only.' **pulsū rēmōrum**: 'propulsion by oars,' which gave to the galley a rapidity and freedom of movement comparable with that of a modern steamship. **reliqua**: 'other conditions.' *154, a.*

17. **prō**: 'in regard to.' **illīs**: the Venetan ships. **aptiōra**: 'better suited.'

accommodātiōra. Neque enim hīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in eīs erat fīrmitūdō), neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur.

Accēdēbat, ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius et, ab aestū relictae, nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

Caesar's fleet, commanded by Brutus, arrives; desperate sea-fight.

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs, Caesar, ubi intellēxit, frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam, captīs oppidīs, reprimī neque eīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem.

---

18. **hīs**: *105*. **nostrae**: sc. *nāvēs*. **rōstrō**: 'by ramming,' lit. 'with the beak.' *346, c*, and *347*. **nocēre**: 'do injury.'

19. **fīrmitūdō**: 'solidity.'

20. **tēlum adigēbātur**: 'could a missile be thrown up' on to them. The galleys were built relatively low, and light.

21. **cōpulīs continēbantur**: 'could they be held with grappling hooks,' thrown out from a galley to catch and hold a hostile ship so that the Romans could board it. *347*.

22. **Accēdēbat, ut**: 'There was the further advantage, that.' *203*, (1). **saevīre**: 'to blow a gale.' How lit.? **sē ventō dedissent**: 'they ran before the wind.' *220*. How lit.?

23. **ferrent**: 'they would weather.' **cōnsisterent**: 'would ride.'

24. **tūtius**: *34, b*. **aestū**: personified, hence with *ab*. *126, b*. **relictae**: the Venetan ships, being flat-bottomed, when left by the tide settled easily and safely on the ground. **nihil**: = emphatic *nōn*. *118, c*. B. 176, 2, *b*; A. 390, *d*, and N. 2; H. 416, 2.

25. **nāvibus**: *110*, and *239, h*. B. 189, 1; A. 374; H. 431. **cāsus**, etc.: 'the occurrence was greatly to be feared.' *229, c*.

14. 3. **captīs**, etc.: 'could be checked by taking the towns.' *144, b*, (6). **eīs nocērī posse**: 'harm could be done them.' *106, b*, and *105*. **exspectandam**: in full, *sibi exspectandam esse*.

Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum, parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae, profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat, quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex īnferiōre

---

5. **Quae**: *167*. **convēnit**: 'arrived.'

6. **CCXX**: *ducentae et vigintī*. *38, b*, and *36*. **parātissimae**: 'fully ready.' *153, a*. **genere**: *133*.

7. **armōrum**: 'of equipment,' including everything needed to make a ship ready for action. **ōrnātissimae**: 'completely fitted out.' **ex portū**, etc.: the sea-fight probably took place in the bay of Quiberon, Caesar's army being drawn up in sight on the heights of St. Gildas. The courses of the fleets may be traced on Map 10.

8. **neque . . . cōnstābat**: 'and it was not quite clear to Brutus,' etc. After the Gallic war Brutus, as an official of the Roman mint, struck a coin commemorating Gallic victories (Fig. 96). *73, c*.

9. **tribūnīs**, etc.: the legionaries on the Roman galleys were under their regular officers. How many galleys participated in the battle we do not know.

10. **quid agerent**: 'what they were to do.' *217, b*. B. 315, 3; A. 587; H. 642, 3.

11. **Rōstrō**: as in chap. 13, l. 18. **nocērī**: sc. *eīs*, the enemy's ships.

12. **turribus excitātīs**: 'even though the towers had been erected' on the Roman ships. *144, b*, (5), and *346, d*.

13. **ex**: 'on.' *126, c*. **īnferiōre locō**: the decks and towers of the Roman vessels.

Figure 96. — Coin of Decimus Brutus.

Silver, denarius; struck in 49 or 48 B.C. Oval Gallic shield and round shield between two Gallic war trumpets; inscription, ALBINUS BRUTI F[ILIUS], 'Albinus, son of Brutus.'

Decimus Brutus was named Albinus after A. Postumius Albinus, who adopted him.

locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent.

Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae affīxaeque longuriīs, nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs, quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō, praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs, antemnae necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs, omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur.

Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum

---

14. **adigī possent**: cf. chap. 13, l. 20, and N. **missa**: sc. *tēla*.

15. **gravius**: 'with greater force,' because thrown from a considerable height down upon the decks of the galleys.

16. **magnō ūsuī**: 'very useful.' How lit.? *112, a.* **praeparāta**: 'made ready beforehand.' **falcēs**, etc.: 'hooks sharpened at the ends, let into (the ends of) long poles and fastened to (them).' **falcēs**: *17, c*, and *91, a.*

17. **nōn**, etc.: = *fōrmā nōn absimilī fōrmae mūrālium falcium*, 'of a shape not unlike that of wall hooks.' *143, a*, and *238, b.*

18. **mūrālium falcium**: used on long poles to pull stones out of walls. *342, c.* **Hīs**: *131, a.* **cum**: 'whenever.' *186, a.* B. 288, B, 3; H. 601, 4. **antemnās**: 'sail-yards.' **mālōs**: 'masts.'

19. **dēstinābant**: 'fastened.' **adductī erant**: 'had been pulled taut.' **nāvigiō incitātō**: 'when the ship,' that had caught its hook in the enemy's rigging, 'was driven forward,' etc. *144, b,* (2).

20. **praerumpēbantur**: 'they were severed.' **abscīsīs**: 'cut off.'

21. **concidēbant**: 'fell down.' **cum**: *184, a.* **Gallicīs nāvibus**: 'in the case of the Gallic ships'; dative. *109, a.* B. 188, 1, N.; A. 376; H. 425, 4, N.

22. **armāmentīs**: 'rigging'; they had no oars. **ūsus**: 'control.'

23. **ūnō**: trans. as if *eōdem.*

24. **Reliquum**: emphatic position. *353, d.* **certāmen**: 'contest.' **erat positum in**: 'depended on.' How lit.?

26. **rēs**: 'the struggle.' **gerēbātur**: force of the imperfect?

paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

Roman courage, ingenuity, and good luck win the day.

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt.

Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus, quō ventus

---

27. **paulō fortius**: 'unusually brave,' lit. 'a little braver (than usual).' **factum**: 'deed.' **latēre**: 'be unobserved.' **collēs**, etc.: heights of St. Gildas; see Map 10.

28. **dēspectus in mare**: 'view over the sea,' *dē* implying a view from an elevation.

15. 1. **cum**: *186, a.* **singulās**, etc.: 'two or' (lit. 'and') 'three galleys had surrounded a single ship' of the enemy. We are not to suppose that Caesar's fleet outnumbered that of the Venetans; the Romans simply concentrated their forces on one vessel at a time, instead of engaging the whole line of the enemy at once. **singulās**: sc. *nāvēs*. **bīnae**: *36.*

3. **trānscendere in**: 'to board,' in the nautical sense. **contendēbant**: 'would hasten.' *175, d.* B. 260, 2; A. 470; H. 534, 3. **Quod**: trans. as if *et hoc*.

5. **eī auxilium**: 'no remedy,' i.e. counter-tactic, 'was discovered against this,' the boarding of their vessels by the legionaries.

5–6. **Historical Significance**: "Thus was this naval battle," says Mommsen (History of Rome, Vol. V, p. 57) — "so far as historical knowledge reaches, the earliest fought on the Atlantic Ocean — just like the engagement at Mylae two hundred years before, notwithstanding the most unfavorable circumstances, decided in favor of the Romans by a lucky invention suggested by necessity."

7. **quō**: trans. as if *in quam*. **ventus ferēbat**: 'the wind was blowing,' we should say.

ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium conficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē IIII ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

The captive Venetans are sold into slavery as a warning.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsiliī aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum, nāvium quod ubīque fuerat, in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs, reliquī neque quō sē reciperent, neque quem ad modum oppida dē-

---

8. **malacia ac tranquillitās**: 'calm and stillness.' **exstitit**: 'ensued'; in the latter part of summer a morning wind in these regions is usually followed by a calm in the afternoon. *176, a*, and *173, a*.

9. **nōn possent**: relying entirely on sails, the Venetans were helpless when the wind failed them. **rēs**: 'circumstance.'

10. **singulās**: 'one by one'; sc. *nāvēs*.

11. **cōnsectātī**: 'pursuing.' *226, c*. **numerō**: *97, d*.

12. **interventū**: 'because of the coming.' *135, a*. **cum**: 'although.' *187*. **hōrā quārtā**: a little before ten o'clock by our reckoning; the battle took place toward the end of summer, before the autumnal equinox. *242, a*, and *b*.

16. 2. **cum . . . tum**: *186, b*. B. 290, 2; H. 657, 4, N. 1.

3. **graviōris**: 'more advanced.' **aliquid . . . dignitātis**: 'any weight of judgment or influence.' *97, b*.

4. **fuit**: *90, a*. **eō**: to the country of the Venetans. **nāvium quod**: i.e. *id nāvium, quod eīs ubīque fuerat*, 'all the ships that they had had anywhere.' *97, b*.

5. **quibus**: including men as well as ships. **reliquī**: 'those who survived.' How lit.? **neque**, etc.: 'had (in mind) neither a place to which they might make their escape, nor any means by which they might defend,' etc. How lit.?

6. **reciperent**, etc.: indirect question; it would have the subjunctive also as a direct question. *217, b*.

fenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt.

In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque, omnī senātū necātō, reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

Expedition of Sabinus against the Venellans. 17–19

Sabinus encamps in the country of the Venelli and pretends fear.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum eīs cōpiīs, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in fīnēs Venellōrum pervēnit.

Hīs praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperiī tenēbat

---

7. **suaque omnia**: 'and all they had.' How lit. ?

9. **eō . . . quō**: 'on this account . . . in order that.' *193, b.* **gravius vindicandum** [esse]: 'that a severer punishment ought to be inflicted.' How lit. ?

10. **in reliquum tempus**: 'for the future.' **iūs lēgātōrum**: 'the rights of ambassadors,' whose persons, from the beginning of civilized life, have been considered inviolable.

11. **omnī**, etc.: 'killed all the senate and.' How lit. ? *144, b,* (2), and *289, b.* **sub corōnā**: 'into slavery'; lit. 'under the wreath,' referring to the wreath placed on the heads of captives sold at auction. We can hardly suppose that the entire population was sold into slavery; yet these maritime states were so reduced in strength that they afterwards gave Caesar no trouble.

Figure 97. — Venellan coin. Gold; reverse, fanciful lion turning its head toward a wheel.

17. 1. **Venetīs**: *282.* **geruntur**: trans. by a past tense. *190, a.*

2. **eīs cōpiīs**: three legions, as related in chap. 11, ll. 10–12. **in fīnēs Venellōrum**: the probable route of Sabinus is shown on Map 9.

4. **Viridovīx**: *19, d.* **summam imperiī**: 'the chief command.' How lit. ? Viridovix not only commanded the forces of the Venellans (Fig. 97) but was commander in chief of all the forces raised by the revolting states.

eārum omnium cīvitātum, quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovicēs Lexoviique, senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovice coniūnxērunt; magnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī cultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre sēvocābat.

Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque, prōductīs cōpiīs, pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit, ut iam

---

5. **exercitum**: 'an army,' trained and equipped, as distinguished from **cōpiās**, 'forces' hastily levied and organized.

6. **hīs paucīs diēbus**: 'within the few days' after the arrival of Sabinus. *147, a,* and *160, d.*

7. **Aulercī Eburovīcēs**: one name; see Map 9.

8. **auctōrēs**: 'favorers'; why nominative? *221, b.* **nōlēbant**: plural because *senātū* is thought of as *senātōribus*. *173, b.* **portās clausērunt**: the shutting of city gates on the approach of an army was a virtual declaration of war.

10. **perditōrum**: 'desperate.' **latrōnum**: 'bandits.'

12. **agrī cultūrā**: 'farming.' **sēvocābat**: lured away. How lit.? *79, d.*

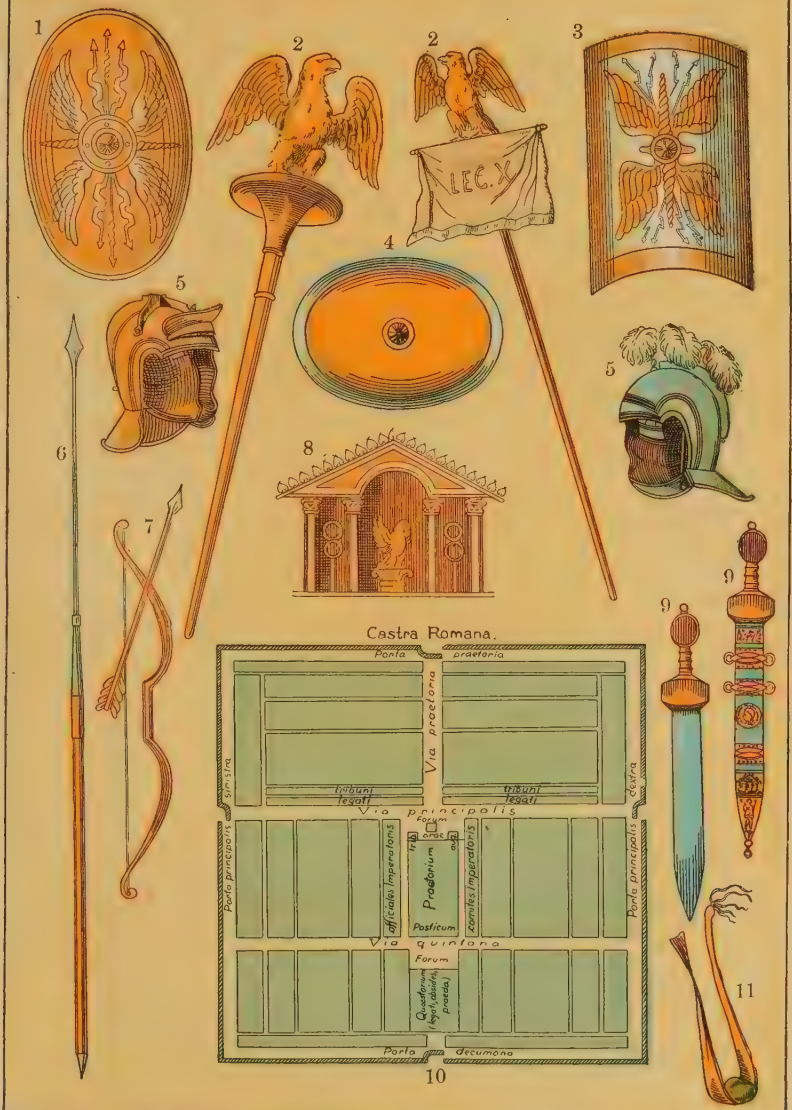
13. **omnibus rēbus**: 'in all respects.' *142, a.* **locō**: *145, c.* **castrīs**: *131, a.* The camp of Sabinus was probably near the small river Sée, in the southern part of the Venellan territory (Map 9).

14. **cum**: *187.* **duōrum**, etc.: '(only) two miles away.' **spatiō**: *147, c.*

16. **ut**: 'so that.' **hostibus**: 'in the eyes of the enemy.' *109, a.* B. 188, 1, N.; A. 377; H. 425, 4, N. **contemptiōnem**: 'contempt.'

17. **nōn nihil**: 'rather sharply.' How lit.? *118, c.*

18. **carperētur**: 'was criticized.' **opīniōnem**: 'impression.' *81.* **praebuit**: 'produced.'



1. Oval Shield, *clipeus*. 2, 2. Eagle of the Legion. 3. Oblong Shield, *scutum*.
4. Light Shield, *parma*. 5, 5. Cavalry Helmet, *cassis*. 6. Pike, *pilum*.
7. Bow, *arcus*; Arrow, *sagitta*. 8. Shrine for the Eagle, *sacellum*.
9, 9. Sword, *gladius*; Scabbard, *vagina*. 10. Roman Camp.
11. Sling, *funda*.

ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente, quī summam imperiī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīstimābat.

By a ruse he leads the enemy to attack him.

18. Hāc cōnfīrmātā opīniōne timōris, idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eīs, quōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet, utī ad hostēs trānseat, et, quid fierī velit, ēdocet.

Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur, docet, neque longius abesse, quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficīscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs, occāsiōnem negōtiī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse; ad castra īrī oportēre.

---

19. **Id**: the holding of the Roman soldiers in camp.

21. **eō absente, quī**: 'in the absence of him (Caesar) who.' *144, b,* (3). **tenēret**: *214, a.* **nisi**: i.e. *nisi dīmicāret.* **aequō locō**: 'advantageous position'; sc. *datō. 144, b,* (2).

22. **dīmicandum** [esse], etc.: 'a lieutenant ought not,' etc. *110.*

18. 2. **callidum**: 'tactful.' **ex eīs**: *97, d.*

5. **velit, premātur** (l. 7): *204,* (2). **ēdocet**: 'explained.' *175, b.*

6. **Quī, Quod** (l. 10): *167.* **prō perfugā**: 'as if a deserter.' **vēnit**: *188, a.*

8. **neque**, etc.: *neque longius abesse proximā nocte, quīn . . . proficīscātur*, 'and that no later than the following night Sabinus would stealthily lead,' etc. *201, b.* B. 298; A. 558; H. 595, 1.

11. **occāsiōnem**, etc.: 'the chance to score a notable success.' How lit.?

12. **īrī**, etc.: 'that they ought to attack the camp.' How lit.? *68, d,* and *73, d.* B. 138, IV; A. 208, *d*; H. 302, 6.

Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfīrmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī parum dīligenter ab eīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt.

Hīs rēbus adductī, nōn prius Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt, quam ab hīs sit concessum, arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā, laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultīsque collēctīs, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

He surprises them, and wins a decisive victory.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatiī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque pervēnērunt.

---

14. **superiōrum**: 'preceding.' **cunctātiō**: 'inaction.' *91, a*, and *74, b*. **cōnfīrmātiō**: 'the assurance.'

16. **quod . . . crēdunt**: appositive of *rēs*. *198, b*, and *175, c*. **ferē**: 'as a rule.' Caesar's keen insight into human nature was an important factor in his success.

18. **prius —— quam —— sit concessum**: 'until permission had been granted.' *189, b*. B. 292; H. 605, 1.

21. **laetī**: 'joyfully.' *151*. **ut explōrātā victōriā**: 'as if victory were (already) assured.' **sarmentīs**: 'brushwood,' cut from trees. **virgultīs**: 'fascines,' bundles of shoots and bushes tied together for convenience in handling. **collēctīs**: 'they gathered and.' How lit.?

22. **quibus . . . compleant**: trans. as if *ut eīs . . . compleant*. *193, a*, and *131, a*.

19. 1. **Locus**: 'site.' **ab īmō**: 'from the bottom' of the hill. *154, a*.

2. **passūs**: *118, a*. **Hūc**: up the slope to the camp. **magnō cursū**: 'at full speed.'

3. **quam minimum spatiī**: 'as little time as possible.' *97, b*, and *153, c*.

Sabīnus, suōs hortātus, cupientibus signum dat. Impedītīs hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā ac dēfatīgātiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs impedītōs integrīs vīribus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūtī, magnum numerum eōrum occīdērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectātī, paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, relīquērunt.

Sīc, ūnō tempore, et dē nāvālī pugnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar certior factus est, cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sīc mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

---

5. **hortātus**: N. to I, 25, l. 3. *226, c.* **cupientibus**: sc. *eīs*.

7. **duābus portīs**: sc. *castrōrum*; probably the gates on the right and left sides of the camp. *334, a*, and *134, a.* **Factum est**: 'the result was.' How lit.? **opportūnitāte**: *135, a.*

8. **īnscientia**: 'lack of skill.' **dēfatīgātiōne**: 'exhaustion.'

10. **ferrent**: sc. *hostēs.* *203*, (1). **ac**: 'but.' *234, b.*

11. **vīribus**: *135, a*, and *18, a.* **cōnsecūtī**: *226, c.*

12. **reliquōs**: 'the rest' of the Gauls not slain by the legionaries.

13. **equitēs**: = *equitēs nostrī.* **paucōs**: '(only) a few.' *154, a.*

17. **Titūriō**: for the full name see chap. 11, l. 10. *19, b.* **ut**: 'just as.' The subjugation of these states was now complete; the submission reported the previous year (II. 34) had been only nominal.

18. **alacer**: 'impetuous.' *24.* **prōmptus**: 'ready.' **animus**: 'temperament.'

19. **mollis**: 'yielding.' **resistēns**: adjective; with *minimē*, 'not at all capable of resistance.' Caesar again comments on the fickleness of the Gauls (cf. III. 8, ll. 10–11, and 10, ll. 7–8; IV, 5, ll. 5–13). 'At the beginning of a battle,' says Livy, 'the fighting of the Gauls is more than that of men; at the end, less than that of women.'

20. **mēns**: 'character.'

Conquest of Aquitania by Crassus. 20–27

Crassus, entering Aquitania, meets a force of the Sotiates.

20. ·Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquītāniam pervēnisset, quae, ut ante dictum est, tertiā pars Galliae est, cum intellegeret, in eīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus, exercitū pulsō, interfectus esset, atque unde L. Mānlius prōcōnsul, impedīmentīs āmissīs, profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat.

Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliīs equitātūque com-

---

20. 1. **P. Crassus**: with twelve cohorts and a large body of cavalry (chap. 11, ll. 6–9). The cavalry would have been of no use to Caesar in the campaign against the Venetans, but could be employed by Crassus to advantage in the mountainous regions of Aquitania (Fig. 98).

3. **cum**: *184, a.* **gerendum**: sc. *esse.* **ubi**: = *in quibus.*

4. **paucīs ante annīs**: twenty-two years before, in 78 B.C. In that year Praeconinus, mentioned only here, and Lucius Manlius, proconsul of the Province, were routed by Hirtuleius, the quaestor of Sertorius. Cf. chap. 23, l. 11, and N. *140.*

5. **unde**: = *ē quibus.* **L.**: *19, a.*

6. **nōn mediocrem**: 'no ordinary.' *239, g.* **sibi**: *110.*

Figure 98. — Cavalryman.

This cavalryman has helmet and spear; his sword is not shown.

parātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt cīvitātēs Galliae prōvinciae fīnitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminātim ēvocātīs, in Sōtiātium fīnēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cognitō Sōtiātēs, magnīs cōpiīs coāctīs, equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī, prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt; deinde, equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs, subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in īnsidiīs collocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī, nostrōs disiectōs adortī, proelium renovārunt.

In a fierce fight he defeats them and captures their city.

21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs, superiōribus victōriīs frētī, in suā virtūte tōtius Aquītāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus, adulēscentulō duce, efficere possent, perspicī cuperent; tandem cōnfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō,

---

9. **virīs fortibus**: soldiers who, having served their time (20 years), were living in the Province. *307, a.* **Tolōsā**: *127, a,* and *293, a.*

11. **nōminātim**: requests to reënter the service were sent to the veterans individually. **ēvocātīs**: 'called out.' **Sōtiātium**: see Map 9. *19, e.*

13. **equitātū**: with *adortī*. *131, a.* **quō**: *142, a.* **plūrimum**: *118, b.*

15. **equitātū**, etc.: apparently the flight of the cavalry was a ruse, to draw the pursuing Romans into the valley (*convalle*) where the infantry of the Sotiates was in ambush.

17. **Hī**: referring to *pedestrēs cōpiās* of l. 16. Why masculine?

21. 2. **victōriīs**: *131, e.* B. 218, 3; A. 431, *a*; H. 476, 1. **frētī**: 'relying on.'

3. **putārent**: *184, a.* **quid . . . possent**: subject of *perspicī*. *204,* (2).

4. **adulēscentulō duce**: 'with a youth as leader,' referring to Crassus. *144, b,* (2).

Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus, vīneās turrēsque ēgit.

Illī, aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cunīculīs ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cuius reī sunt longē perītissimī Aquītānī, propterea quod multīs locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōficī posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat, petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere iussī faciunt.

Adiatunnus with a devoted band makes a sortie, is captured.

22. Atque in eā rē omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperiī tenē-

---

7. **ex itinere**: Vocab. under *iter*. **oppidum**: identified with Sos, the name of which is derived from *Sotiātes*. **oppugnāre**: Crassus tried to take the town by sudden storming. *340*.

8. **Quibus**: *167*. **vīneās, turrēs**: appliances for besieging. *342*, *a* and *b*.

9. **aliās . . . aliās**: 'at one time . . . at another.' **cunīculīs**: 'tunnels,' underground passageways from which the Roman works could be undermined, so that they would fall in, or could be set on fire.

10. **cuius reī**: 'an operation,' the driving of tunnels, 'in which.' *102*, and *165*, *b*.

11. **locīs**: *145*, *c*. **aerāriae**: 'copper mines.' **sectūrae**: 'excavations,' probably open cuts from which iron ore was taken, as distinguished from the more elaborate tunnels of the copper mines. Remains of ancient copper and iron mines have been found in the region of the Sotiates, and mining operations are still carried on there.

Figure 99. — Coin of the Sotiates.

Bronze, struck by Adiatunnus. Obverse, REX ADIETUANUS EF; reverse, wolf with the word, SOTIOTA.

12. **sunt**: *90*, *a*. **dīligentiā**: *135*, *a*. **hīs rēbus**: 'by these devices.' *131*, *a*.

22. 1. **in**: 'upon.' **intentīs animīs**: 'while the attention was fixed.' How lit.? *144*, *b*, (2).

2. **Adiatunnus**: a coin has been found bearing his name (Fig. 99) in Roman letters; the spelling of the name is not the same as that

bat, cum DC dēvōtīs, quōs illī 'solduriōs' appellant — quōrum haec est condiciō, utī omnibus in vītā commodīs ūnā cum eīs fruantur, quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint; sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnscīscant (neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, quī, eō interfectō, cuius sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret) — cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnītiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma mīlitēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur, ā Crassō impetrāvit.

Proceeding further, Crassus finds a formidable army.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs, Crassus in fīnēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī, commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus, quibus eō ventum erat, expugnātum cognō-

---

given by Caesar, and E F at the end may be for E— F[ilius], in imitation of Roman usage. **summam imperiī**: chap. 17, l. 4, and N.

3. **DC**: *sescentīs. 38, b.* **dēvōtīs**: 'faithful followers.' **solduriōs**: 'the vow-beholden.' **quōrum**, etc.: 'the terms of whose association are these.' How lit.?

4. **utī . . . fruantur**: *203*, (4). **commodīs**: *131, c.* B. 218, 1; A. 410; H. 477, 1.

5. **amīcitiae**: dative. **dēdiderint**: *220.* **sī quid**, etc.: cf. I, 18, l. 24, and N.

6. **vim**: 'violence.' **eundem cāsum ūnā**: 'the same fate at the same time.' **ferant**: sc. *ut.* **sibi**, etc.: cf. I, 4, l. 12, and N.

7. **adhūc**: 'up to this time.' **memoriā**: *147, b.*

9. **recūsāret**: *194, a.* B. 283, 2; A. 535, a; H. 591, 1. **hīs**: = *dēvōtīs* in l. 3, resuming the narrative interrupted by the long explanation.

12. **utī**, etc.: *199, a.* **eādem**: 'the same' as the rest.

23. 3. **oppidum**: *oppidum Sōtiātium*, chap. 21, l. 7. **manū**: the natural defenses of the town had been strengthened by fortifications.

4. **quibus**: 'after,' lit. 'within which.' *147, a.* **ventum erat**: *73, d.* **expugnātum**: sc. *esse.*

verant, lēgātōs quōque versus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitātēs lēgātī, quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae fīnitimae Aquītāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur.

Quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā hominum multitūdine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō eī dēliguntur, quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam reī mīlitāris habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īnstituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidiī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi suppor-

---

5. **quōque versus**: 'in all directions.'

7. **citeriōris Hispāniae**: *94 d*, and *296*. **fīnitimae**: agrees with *quae*.

9. **adventū**: *147, b*. **magnā**, etc.: to be taken closely with *adventū*. **auctōritāte**: 'prestige.'

10. **hominum**: *98, a*. **Ducēs**: In predicate. *88, a*.

11. **Q. Sertōriō**: a military leader of the popular party in the first Civil War at Rome, the war between Marius and Sulla. After the death of Marius, and Sulla's return to Rome, Sertorius organized an army in Spain, and held his own against the government for ten years, till at length he was treacherously assassinated, in 72 B.C. **omnēs annōs**: 'during all (those) years,' 82–72 B.C., when Sertorius had an army in the field.

13. **loca capere**: 'to choose locations' for encampment. The Aquitanians were in this respect in advance of the Gauls, who did not begin to fortify their camps till four years later (VII, 29, ll. 16–18).

15. **Quod**: 'Now — this (fact),' explained by the following infinitive clauses.

16. **dīdūcī**: 'spread out,' so as to cope at all points with the numerically superior enemy. **hostem**, etc.: '(but) that the enemy both roamed,' at will 'and.'

17. **et**: 'and (still).' **castrīs**: of the enemy. **praesidiī**: *97, b*.

tārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cunctandum exīstimāvit, quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōnstituit.

Forming battle order, he waits, then attacks the enemy's camp.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē īnstitūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsiliī caperent, exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur, obsessīs viīs, commeātū interclūsō, sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potīrī, et, sī propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impedītōs in agmine et

---

19. **in diēs**: 'day by day.' **nōn cunctandum** [esse]: sc. *sibi*, 'that he ought not to delay.'

20. **quīn**, etc.: 'to fight a decisive battle.' How lit.? *201, b.*

21. **omnēs idem sentīre**: 'that all held the same opinion.' *117, a.*

24. 1. **duplicī aciē**: not so strong as the customary triple line, but necessary here because the Roman force was so greatly outnumbered by the enemy. *337.* **duplicī**: *26, a.*

2. **auxiliīs**: the auxiliary troops were usually stationed upon the wings; in this instance they were placed at the middle of the line because Crassus did not have confidence in them (chap. 25, ll. 3–4). **quid cōnsiliī**: 'what plan.' *97, b.*

3. **caperent**: 'would adopt.' *204,* (2). **exspectābat**: 'was waiting (to see).' **multitūdinem**: estimated at 50,000 (chap. 26, l. 16).

4. **paucitātem**: the whole force under the command of Crassus (chap. 11, ll. 6–7; chap. 20, ll. 8–12) can hardly have amounted to 10,000 men.

5. **tūtō**: *34, b.* **tūtius**: predicative with *esse*, of which the subject is *potīrī* (l. 7). *222, b,* and *148, d.*

6. **obsessīs viīs**: 'having blocked the roads (and).' How lit.? *238, a.*

8. **sēsē recipere**: 'to retreat.' **impedītōs**: sc. *eōs* [*Rōmānōs*].

sub sarcinīs īnfīrmiōrēs animō adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs, sēsē castrīs tenēbant.

Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur, *exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre, quīn ad castra īrētur*, cohortātus suōs, omnibus cupientibus, ad hostium castra contendit.

He learns that the enemy's rear gate is not well guarded.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī, multīs tēlīs coniectīs, dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnītiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfīdēbat, lapidibus tēlīsque sumministrandīs et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem

---

9. **sarcinīs**: *330*. **īnfīrmiōrēs animō**: 'less courageous.' How lit.? *142, a*. **cōgitābant**: 'they were proposing.'

13. **opīniōne**: 'impression.' **hostēs**: nominative.

14. **omnium**: i.e. *omnium mīlitum*. **vōcēs**: 'remarks.'

15. **exspectārī**, etc.: '(to the effect) that they ought not to delay further to attack the camp.' How lit.? *213, b*. **īrētur**: *68, d*, *73, d*, and *201, b*.

16. **omnibus cupientibus**: *144, b*, (3). **ad hostium castra**: this is the only attack of the Romans on a fortified camp recorded in the Gallic War.

25. 1. **aliī . . . aliī**: *mīlitēs Rōmānī*. *171, b*. **fossās**: as in chap. 5, l. 4.

2. **vāllō**: constructed in the Roman fashion (chap. 23, ll. 13–14). *127, a*, and *333*.

3. **auxiliārēs**: chap. 24, l. 2 and N. **quibus**: dative. *105*.

4. **lapidibus . . . comportandīs**: 'by bringing,' etc., ablatives of means. *230*, (4). **ad aggerem**: sc. *faciundum*. The rampart of the enemy's camp was so high that the Romans began to make a sloping mound up to it, like the *agger* used in besieging a town.

5. **caespitibus**: 'sods.' *10, d*. **speciem . . . pugnantium**: 'the appearance and impression of combatants.'

pugnantium praebērent; cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs, circumitīs hostium castrīs, Crassō renūntiāvērunt, nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

Surprising the enemy by a rear attack, he routs them.

26. Crassus, equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī velit, ostendit.

Illī, ut erat imperātum, ēductīs eīs cohortibus, quae, praesidiō castrīs relictae, intrītae ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pugnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās, quās dīximus, mūnītiōnēs pervēnērunt, atque, hīs prōrutīs, prius in hostium castrīs cōnstitērunt, quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut, quid reī gererētur, cognōscī posset.

---

7. **locō superiōre**: the top of the rampart of the camp; the camp lay in a plain (chap. 26, l. 16).

8. **circumitīs hostium castrīs**: 'having ridden about the enemy's camp.' *334, a.*

9. **ab decumānā portā**: 'on the side of the rear gate.' *126, c.*

26. 1. **equitum praefectōs**: *309, c.* **ut**, etc.: *199, a.*

2. **suōs**: the cavalrymen, on whom the success of the surprise depended.

4. **Illī**: the cavalry prefects, who guided cohorts of infantry to the rear of the enemy's camp. It is possible that the cavalrymen took the legionaries with them on their horses in order to transport them quickly thither by a roundabout way. **praesidiō castrīs**: *112, b.*

5. **intrītae**: 'unfatigued.' **longiōre**: *153, a.*

7. **omnium**: *hostium.* **oculīs**, etc.: *144, b,* (2).

8. **eās — mūnītiōnēs**: at the rear of the enemy's camp; chap. 25, ll. 9–10.

9. **prōrutīs**: 'demolished.' **prius — quam**: *189, b.* **plānē**: 'clearly.'

10. **vidērī**: sc. *possent*, 'they could be seen.' **quid**, etc.: 'what was going on.' How lit.?

Tum vērō, clāmōre ab eā parte audītō, nostrī, redintegrātīs vīribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātus, ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquītāniā Cantabrīsque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quārtā parte relīctā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Crassus receives the submission of other Aquitanian states.

27. Hāc audītā pugnā, maxima pars Aquītāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptiāniī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs, annī tempore cōnfīsae, quod hiems suberat, hōc facere neglēxērunt.

---

11. **clāmōre**, etc.: from the shouting at the rear of the camp the Romans fighting in front knew that the attack there was in progress, and were inspired to greater efforts.

12. **quod**: relative, refers to the thought in *redintegrātīs vīribus*; trans., with *plērumque*, 'as generally.'

14. **dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus**: 'in utter despair.' How lit.? **per**: 'over.'

16. **apertissimīs**: 'wide and open.' Cf. *153, a.* **campīs**: *145, c.* **cōnsectātus**: *226, c.*

17. **quae**: subject accusative of *convēnisse*; the antecedent is *mīlium*.

18. **multā nocte**: 'late at night.' *152, a.*

27. 2. **quō in numerō**: we should say 'in the number of whom,' 'among whom.'

3. **Tarbellī**, etc.: see Map 9. The Tarbelli have left a trace of their name in modern Tarbes; the Bigerriones, in Bagnères de Bigorre, a watering-place in the Pyrenees; the Elusates, in Eauze; the Ausci, in Auch; the Sibusates, in Saubusse.

5. **paucae ultimae nātiōnēs**: i.e. *paucae nātiōnēs, quae ultimae erant*; 'a few remote peoples.' **tempore**: *135, a.* B. 219, 1; A. 431; H. 476, 3.

Expedition of Caesar against the Morini and the Menapii. 28, 29

Caesar proceeds against the Morini and the Menapii.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod, omnī Galliā pācātā, Morinī Menapiīque supererant, quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant, maximās nātiōnēs, quae proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt.

---

28. 1. **Eōdem ferē tempore**: 'About the same time' that Crassus completed the reduction of Aquitania, perhaps in the latter part of August. The narrative of Caesar's own military operations, interrupted at chap. 16, is here resumed. **prope exācta**: 'almost over.'

2. **omnī Galliā**: 'Gaul as a whole.'

3. **supererant**, etc.: 'were the only remaining (peoples) that were.' The Morini and Menapii were more backward than most of the Gauls, but were good fighters (Fig. 100). **essent**: *194, a.* **neque**: trans. as if *et nōn*.

Figure 100. — Coin of the Morini.

Gold, but of rude workmanship, particularly in the fanciful representation of a horse appearing disjointed.

4. **arbitrātus**: *226, c.*

5. **exercitum dūxit**: the distance traversed in the march from the sea-coast of the country of the Venetans could hardly have been less than 400 English miles. **quī**: 'but they.' *167.* **longē**, etc.: 'in a way far different from that of the rest of the Gauls.' How lit.? *233, c.*

8. **continentēs**: 'continuous.'

9. **habēbant**: coördinate with *intellegēbant*; sc. *quod*. **eō**: *in eās* [*silvās ac palūdēs*].

Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et, complūribus interfectīs, longius impedītiōribus locīs secūtī, paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

Hiding in forests, favored by rains, they elude him.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īnstituit et, nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque mīlitibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedīmenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae, utī

---

13. **ēvolāvērunt**: 'rushed forth.' How lit.?

15. **longius**: 'too far.' *153, a.* **impedītiōribus locīs**: 'in places (that were) much obstructed' by trees and marshes.

29. 1. **deinceps**: 'without interruption.' **caedere**: 'to cut down.'

2. **quis**: *49, a.* **imprūdentibus**: 'off their guard.' *144, b,* (2).

3. **māteriam**: 'timber,' here used of untrimmed trees.

4. **conversam**, etc.: 'turned toward the enemy and laid in order and built up as a rampart.' How lit.? As the Romans advanced they felled trees, and placed them, with the tops outwards, at either side of the space which they cleared, thus forming an effective defense against the lurking foe.

6. **cōnfectō**: 'cleared.' **iam . . . tenērentur**: 'were already in our hands.' **pecus**: 'cattle.' *13, f.* **extrēma impedīmenta**: 'the rear of their baggage-train.' *152, a.*

7. **ipsī**: the people themselves, as distinguished from their possessions; as Caesar cut his way through the woods, they retreated further and further into the forest fastnesses. *238, a.*

opus necessāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī nōn possent.

Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsis, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus, quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs collocāvit.

---

9. **continuātiōne**: 'continuation.' *135*, *a*, and *81*. **imbrium**: 'rainstorms.' *15*, *c*.

10. **sub pellibus**: 'in tents.' How lit.? *335*, *a*.

12. **Aulercīs**, etc.: see Map 9. **Lexoviīs**: chap. 11, ll. 10–12.

13. **reliquīs cīvitātibus**: Venetans (chapters 12–16), Venellans (17–19), and Sotiates (20–27).

COMMENTARIUS QUARTUS

Destruction of the Usipetes and Tencteri. 1–15

Pressed by the Suebi, the Usipetes and Tencteri enter Gaul.

1. EĀ, quae secūta est, hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī magnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī, quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit, quod, ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī, bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Customs, hardihood, and prowess of the Suebi.

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex

---

1. 1. **hieme**: *12, a*, and *147, a*. **quī**: in agreement not with the antecedent *hieme*, but with the predicate noun *annus*. *164, c*. B. 250, 3; A. 306; H. 396, 2. **annus**: 55 B.C.; Pompey and Crassus entered upon their consulship January 1 of that year. The winter of 56–55 B.C., according to the calendar in use, fell wholly in 55 B.C.; for the old Roman calendar, which was still used, had fallen so far behind, that January 1 of the official year came on November 30 of the solar year. A corrected calendar was introduced later by Julius Caesar.

2. **cōnsulibus**: *240, a*. **Germānī**: appositive of both *Usipetēs* and *Tencterī*.

4. **quo**: = *in quod*. The horde of Usipetes and Tencteri is thought to have crossed the Rhine near Xanten or Emmerich, below Cologne, in the region where the Rhine receives the Lippe as tributary. (Map II, and Fig. 101.)

5. **trānseundī**: *68, b*. **Suēbīs**: ancestors of the modern Swabians; see Map at the end of this volume. **annōs**: *118, a*.

6. **premēbantur**: force of Imperfect? *175, a*. **cultūrā**: *127, a*.

MAP II

OPERATIONS OF 55 AND 54 B.C.

Books IV, V. To face page 232

EXPLANATION

MAP II

1, 2. Winter quarters, 56–55 B.C. (III. 29).

3. Expedition into Germany, 55 B.C. (IV. 19).

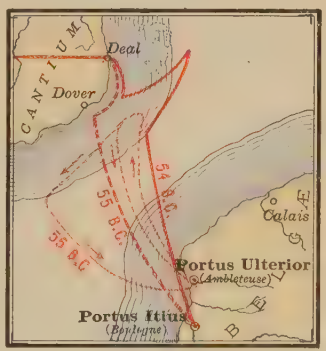
4. March into Britain, 54 B.C. (V. 21).

MAP II, A

Heavy broken red line, route of main fleet in 55 B.C. (IV. 23).

Light broken red lines, route of transports with cavalry, part driven back, part driven down the channel (IV. 28).

Unbroken red line, route of fleet in 54 B.C. (V. 8).



MAP II, A

Detail of Caesar's crossings to Britain.

quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, qui domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet.

Figure 101. — A typical landscape on the Lower Rhine.

9. **singula mīlia**: 'a thousand each'; if each clan furnished a thousand warriors, the armed force of the Swabians must have reached a total of 100,000 men. **bellandī**: *230*, (1).

10. **ex fīnibus ēdūcunt**: invasion of neighboring territory is implied. **quī domī mānsērunt**: 'who (each year) have remained at home.'

11. **illōs**: 'the others,' those in the field. **hī, illī**: 'the latter,' 'the former.' *161, b.* **in vicem**: 'in turn.' **annō**: *140.*

12. **ratiō . . . bellī**: 'the pursuit of war in theory and practice.' How lit.?

13. **intermittitur**: *173, a.* **prīvātī ac sēparātī**: 'assigned to an individual and marked off' by boundaries; the land was held in common. **agrī nihil**: 'no land.' *97, a.*

14. **annō**: *129, a.* **remanēre**: *222, a.*

15. **colendī causā**: 'in order to till the soil.' How lit.? Changes

Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs, et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vītae, quod, ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā assuēfactī, nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut, locīs frīgidissimīs, neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habeant quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et laventur in flūminibus.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae bellō cēperint, quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad

---

of location were doubtless made each year in order to obtain the best results from the primitive farming.

16. **frūmentō**: ablative of means; trans. with *vīvunt*, 'they live on grain.' How lit.? **partem**: *118, c.* **lacte**: 'milk.' *10, g.*

17. **pecore**: *13, f.* **multum sunt in**: 'devote much time to.' How lit.? **vēnātiōnibus**: 'hunting,' we should say. *92, a.*

18. **quae rēs**: 'this circumstance,' their devotion to hunting. *167.* **et cibī genere**: 'both by reason of the kind of food' obtained by hunting. *135, a.*

19. **ā puerīs**: 'from childhood.' How lit.? **officiō**: ablative; 'habituated to no obligation or training.' How lit.? *139.*

20. **et . . . et**: *233, a.* **vīrēs**: *18, a.*

21. **immānī**: 'huge.' **hominēs**: predicate accusative, with *eōs* understood as object of *efficit*. Cf. I, 39, l. 4 and N.

22. **in**, etc.: 'they have trained themselves to.' How lit.? **locīs frīgidissimīs**: '(even) in the coldest places.' *145, c.*

23. **neque vestītūs — quicquam**: 'no clothing.' How lit.? **neque . . . et**: *233, d.* **habeant**: *203*, (4). **quicquam**: *49, a.*

25. **laventur**: 'to bathe.' How lit.? *174.*

2. 1. **Mercātōribus**, etc.: *Mercātōribus est aditus* (*ad Suēbōs*) *magis eō* ('on this account'), *ut* (*eōs*) *habeant quibus vēndant* (*ea*), *quae bellō cēperint*, *quam*, etc.

2. **cēperint**: *220.* [eōs] **quibus vēndant**: 'those to whom they may sell'; purchasers for their booty are meant. *194, a.* **quam quō**: = *quam eō quod*, 'than for the reason that.' *183, c.*

sē importārī dēsīderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt.

Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstīgiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur, quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent.

---

3. **dēsīderent**: 'desire.' **iūmentīs**: with *ūtuntur* (*131, c*); emphatic by position. Horses alone are meant. *353, d.*

4. **maximē dēlectantur**: 'have very great pleasure.' How lit.? **impēnsō pretiō**: 'at an extravagant price.' *141.* **parant**: 'obtain.' So great was the interest of the Gauls in horses that they developed choice breeds, and Gallic horses were in demand in Rome. The horse figures prominently on Gallic coins (Fig. 102).

Figure 102. — Coin of the Treverans.

Gold. Fanciful design on the obverse. Reverse: horse galloping, wheel, star; above, the letter V.

6. **dēfōrmia**: 'unsightly.'

7. **summī labōris**: '(capable) of the greatest endurance.' *100, b.* B. 203, 5; A. 345; H. 447. **sint**: *203,* (3).

8. **dēsiliunt**: 'leap down.' **pedibus**: 'on foot.' Why ablative?

9. **eōdem vēstīgiō**: 'on the same spot' where they have been left. *145, c.*

10. **cum ūsus est**: 'when it is necessary.' *186, a.* **neque — quicquam**: *168.*

11. **eōrum mōribus**: 'according to their view.' How lit.? *136, c.* **inertius**: 'more unmanly.' **habētur**: 'is regarded.'

12. **ephippiīs**: 'saddle-cloths,' padded, spread over the horse's back, and taking the place of our saddles. **quemvīs**: *49, a.* **ephippiātōrum**: 'riding with saddle-cloths.'

13. **quamvīs paucī**: 'however few' in number.

Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem, quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs; hāc rē significārī, magnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia passuum c agrī vacāre dīcuntur.

Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; eī paulō sunt eiusdem generis cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus assuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī, multīs saepe bellīs expertī, propter

---

14. **Vīnum**, etc.: cf. II, 15, ll. 10–13. **rē**: *135, a.*

15. **remollēscere**: 'lose their vigor.'

3. 1. **Pūblicē**: 'for a people.' How lit.? **laudem**: *88, a.* **quam**: *153, c.*

2. **vacāre agrōs**: subject of *esse.* **significārī**: the subject is the infinitive clause following.

4. **ūnā ex parte**: 'on one side.' The east side is meant, and the country left vacant was probably Bohemia, from which the Boii had withdrawn; cf. I, 5, ll. 12–14. The name *Boii* survives in "Bohemia." **Suēbīs**: *282.* **mīlia**: *118, a.* **c**: *38, b,* and *36.* **agrī**: nominative plural. *172, d.*

6. **Ad alteram partem**: 'On the opposite side,' toward the Rhine. How lit.? **fuit**: the past tense implies that the condition described no longer exists.

7. **ut est captus Germānōrum**: 'according to the German standard.' How lit.?

8. **eiusdem generis cēterīs**: i.e. than the rest of the Germans. *129, a.* **hūmāniōrēs**: 'more civilized.'

9. **multum ventitant**: 'freely come and go.' *78, a.*

10. **sunt**, etc.: 'have become familiar with,' etc. Caesar gives an interesting comparison between Gallic and German customs later (VI, chapters 11–24). *139.*

11. **expertī**: 'although they had tried.' How lit.? *227, a,* (3).

amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs īnfīrmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

By strategy the Usipetes and Tencteri overcome the Menapii.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen, agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī, ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vīcōsque habēbant; sed, tantae multitūdinis aditū perterritī, ex eīs aedificiīs, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāvērunt et cis Rhēnum, dispositīs praesidiīs, Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant.

Illī, omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter cūstōdiās

---

12. **gravitātem**: here 'power of resistance.' **cīvitātis**: of the Ubii. **fīnibus**: *127, a.*

13. **vectīgālēs**: predicate accusative; 'made (them) tributary.' *115, b.* **multō**, etc.: 'caused them to become much less prominent and powerful.' How lit.?

4. 1. **eādem causā**: 'the same condition' of subjection to the Swabians.

2. **suprā**: chap. I, ll. 1–6. **annōs**: *118, a.*

3. **ad extrēmum**: 'finally.' **multīs locīs**: 'over many parts.' *145, c.*

4. **triēnnium**: used instead of *trēs annōs*. **quās regiōnēs**: '(to) the districts which'; in full, *ad eās regiōnēs quās. 165, c.*

6. **aedificia, vīcōs**: cf. Notes to I, 5, ll. 4, 5. **tantae multitūdinis**: reported as 430,000 (chap. 15, l. 8).

7. **trāns flūmen**: on the east side of the Rhine; Caesar writes from the point of view of one in Gaul.

8. **dēmigrāvērunt**: 'they moved away.'

9. **Germānōs trānsīre**: 'the Germans from crossing.' *223, a, (3).*

10. **Illī**: *Germānī.* **omnia expertī**: 'having tried every expedient.' How lit.? **vī contendere**: 'to force a passage.'

Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt et, trīduī viam prōgressī, rūrsus revertērunt atque, omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō, īnsciōs inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī, dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī, sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, prius quam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque, omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs, reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

Caesar fears the effect of this victory upon the fickle Gauls.

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfīrmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit.

Est enim hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs, etiam invītōs, cōnsistere cōgant et, quid quisque eōrum dē

---

13. **trīduī**: trans. as if *trium diērum*. *100, a.* **viam**: *117, b.*

14. **omnī hōc itinere cōnfectō**: 'covered the entire distance — and.' How lit.? *144, b,* (2). **equitātū**: *131, a.* **īnsciōs**: 'being in ignorance' of what the Germans were doing.

17. **trāns**: to the east side. **remigrāverant**: 'had moved back.'

19. **fieret**: *189, b.* B. 292, 1, *b*; A. 551, *b*; H. 605, II.

21. **partem**: *118, a.* **eōrum**: the Menapii on the west side of the Rhine. **eōrum cōpiīs**: 'with their supplies.'

5. 1. **īnfīrmitātem**: 'fickleness.' Cf. III, 19, ll. 17–20, and Notes.

3. **nihil hīs committendum** [esse]: 'that no reliance whatever ought to be placed on them.' *73, e.* **nihil**: = emphatic *nōn*. *118, c.* B. 176, 2, *b*; A. 390, *d*, N. 2; H. 416, 2.

5. **Est . . . cōgant**: 'For it is a custom of the Gauls to compel,' etc. How lit.? **cōnsuētūdinis**: *100, b.* **utī cōgant, quaerant, circumsistat, cōgat**: explain *hōc. 203,* (4). **viātōrēs**: 'travelers,' on country roads.

6. **invītōs**: *151.* **cōgant**: the subject is supplied in thought from *Gallicae*, as if it were *Gallōrum*. **quid**: *204,* (2). **eōrum**: *97, a.*

quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit, quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint, prōnūntiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus permōtī, dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vēstīgiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum fícta respondeant.

Figure 103. — Falls of the Rhine at Schaffhausen.

7. **quāque**: *49, a.* **audierit**: *64, a,* (3).

8. **vulgus**: *6, b.* **quibusque**: = *quibus* (*48, b*) + *-que.*

9. **quāsque**: = *quās* + *-que.* *204,* (2). **prōnūntiāre**: '(them) to declare.'

10. **rēbus atque audītiōnibus**: 'reports and mere hearsay.' How lit.? **summīs**: 'of the utmost importance.'

11. **quōrum**: 'of which they must immediately repent.' How lit.? *103, c.* B. 209, 1; A. 354, *b*; H. 457. **paenitēre**: subject of *est. 73, a.*

12. **incertīs**: 'indefinite.' **serviant**: 'they subject themselves.' *184, a.* **plērīque**: 'most men,' when questioned. **ad**, etc.: 'make up answers to gratify them.' How lit.?

He resolves to fight the Usipetes and Tencteri.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cognitā, Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius, quam cōnsuērat, ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore suspicātus erat, facta cognōvit; missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invītātōsque eōs, utī ab Rhēnō discēderent; *omniaque, quae postulāssent, ab se fore parāta.* Quā spē adductī, Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in fīnēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant.

Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātīs, Caesar ea, quae cognōverat, dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvīt eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōnfīrmātīs, equitātūque imperātō, bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

---

6. 1. **graviōrī**: 'quite serious,' in case the fickle Gauls and the Germans should unite against him. *153, a.* **bellō**: *107, a.*

2. **mātūrius**: 'earlier' in the spring, perhaps in the first part of April. *34, a.* **exercitum**: divided up for winter quarters, among the Lexovii and other states, in the autumn of 56 B.C. (III, 29, ll. 12–14); now probably brought together again, near the lower Seine, in advance of Caesar's arrival.

3. **Eō**: *ad exercitum.* **fore**: 'would take place.'

4. **facta, missās, invītātōs**: sc. *esse.*

5. **utī**, etc.: i.e. to proceed toward the interior of Gaul in order to help drive the Romans out.

6. **omniaque**: 'and (with the promise) that everything.' *213, b.* **postulāssent**: future perfect indicative in the direct form. *64, a,* (1). **fore parāta**: a substitute for the future infinitive passive. **Quā spē**: 'by this prospect.' *167.*

8. **Eburōnum, Condrūsōrum**, etc.: see Map at the end of the volume.

11. **dissimulanda** [esse]: 'ought to be kept secret.' **permulsīs**: 'having soothed.' How lit.?

13. **cōnstituit**: here not 'determined,' but 'announced his intention'; he had previously made up his mind.

He marches near; the Germans parley, assert their rights in Gaul, and request lands.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab hīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō:

Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre, 5 *neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dēprecārī.*

Haec tamen dīcere, vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse eīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs; vel 10 *sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē dī quidem*

---

7. 2. **iter facere**: 'to march.' **locīs**: *165, a.*

3. **quibus**: 'these (places).' *167.* **diērum**: *100, a.* **iter**: *118, a,* and *243, c.*

4. **quōrum,** etc.: 'whose plea was as follows.' *161, a.*

5. **Germānōs,** etc.: 'that the Germans did not take the lead in making war . . . and that, nevertheless, they would not refuse to fight.' How lit.? **priōrēs**: *152, b.*

6. **lacessantur**: present, used for greater vividness, where a past tense might have been expected. *218,* (1), a. **contendant**: subjunctive also in the direct form. *201, a.*

8. **quīcumque**: *50, a.* **resistere**: sc. *eīs* (*105*), as antecedent of *quīcumque. 79, d.* **neque dēprecārī**: 'and not to beg for mercy.'

9–14. **Direct form**: Haec tamen *dīcimus,* (*nōs*) vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī (*vōs Rōmānī*) *nostram* grātiam *vultis, possumus vōbīs* ūtiles esse amīcōs; vel *nōbīs* agrōs *attribuite* (*216*) vel *patiminī* (*nōs*) eōs (*agrōs*) tenēre, quōs armīs *possēdimus;* ūnīs Suēbīs *concēdimus,* quibus nē dī quidem immortālēs parēs esse *possint* (*194, a*); *reliquus* quidem in terrīs est *nēmō,* quem nōn superāre *possīmus.*

9. **dīcere, vēnisse, posse, tenēre** (l. 11): sc. *sē. 215.* **ēiectōs**: 'because they had been driven forth.' *227, a,* (1). **domō**: *127, a.*

12. **possēderint**: from *possīdō.* **ūnīs**: 'alone.' *23, a.* **dī**: *8, d,* and *237, c.* **concēdere**: 'admitted inferiority.'

immortālēs parēs esse possent; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem nōn superāre possint.

Caesar insists that they go back to Germany; parleying continues.

8. Ad haec Caesar, quae vīsum est, respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis:

Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse, quī suōs fīnēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī, tantae praesertim multitūdinī, sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et, rē dēliberātā, post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem

---

13. **reliquum nēminem**: 'no one else.' *12, d.* **in terrīs**: 'on earth'; why is *terrīs* plural?

8. 1. **vīsum est**: sc. *respondēre*. Caesar does not give the whole of his answer, which perhaps followed the same line of argument as his statement to Ariovistus (I, chap. 45).

3. **Sibi**, etc.: in the direct form, *Mihi nūlla cum vōbīs amīcitia esse potest*, 'I can have no friendly relations with you.' *111*, and *212, c*, (1).

4. **vērum**: consistent with what is true, 'a fair thing.' **quī**: for antecedent supply *eōs* as subject-accusative with *occupāre*.

5. **aliēnōs**: sc. *fīnēs*; 'of others.'

7. **possint**, etc.: the present tense is used for the sake of vividness. **licēre**: sc. *eīs*. *73, a, b*.

8. **apud sē**: 'with him.' **Suēbōrum iniūriīs**: chap. 3, ll. 6–14.

9. **hōc**, etc.: 'that he would order the Ubii (to allow them to do) this,' lit. 'he would command this to the Ubii.' Caesar could 'order' the Ubii because he held hostages from that people (chap. 16, ll. 19–20).

9. 2. **post diem tertium**: 'in three days,' i.e. 'the next day but one'; in such expressions the Romans included the days with which a period began and ended.

3. **propius sē**: *123, b*. **movēret**: *199, a*.

Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cognōverat enim, magnam partem equitātūs ab eīs, aliquot diēbus ante, praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque eius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrātur.

Figure 104. — Along the Meuse, below Namur.
Women are unloading clay from a canal boat.

4. **ab**: 'from.'

5. **diēbus**: *140*. B. 223; A. 424, *f*; H. 488, 1.

6. **frūmentandī causā**: 'to forage.' How lit.? **trāns**: 'across' to the west side of the Meuse (Fig. 104); the main body, and Caesar, were on the east side, between the Meuse and the Rhine.

7. **hōs exspectārī**, etc.: in order that an attack with all their forces might be made upon the Romans. **reī**: the return of the cavalry.

Description of the Rhine region.

[**10.** Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque longius ab eō mīlibus passuum LXXX in Oceanum īnfluit.

Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricōrum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur et, ubi Oceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffluit partēs, multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars magna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur (ex quibus sunt, quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere exīstimantur), multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.]

---

10. 1–12. On account of certain difficulties and inconsistencies in this chapter many think that it was not written by Caesar, but added later by some one who wished to supply a geographical background for this part of the narrative; the Meuse, for example, does not rise in the Vosges mountains, and the Rhine could hardly have flowed through the country of the Nantuates. Nevertheless the rapid current of the Rhine is referred to, which is particularly noticeable in the upper part of its course, as at Schaffhausen (Fig. 103); and we cannot assume that Caesar had accurate knowledge of regions so far from those which he himself had visited.

If the chapter is omitted, there is an easy transition from chap. 9 to chap. 11. Translation: —

'The Meuse rises in the Vosges mountains, which are in the country of the Lingones; receiving from the Rhine an affluent, which is called the Waal, it forms (with this) the island of the Batavians, and not further from this than eighty miles it flows into the Ocean.

'The Rhine, moreover, rises in the country of the Lepontii, who dwell in the Alps, and in a long course flows rapidly through the territories of the Nantuates, the Helvetians, the Sequanians, the Mediomatrici, the Triboci, and the Treverans; where it approaches the Ocean it divides up into several branches, forming many large islands. Of these (islands) a considerable portion are inhabited by wild and savage tribes, some of whom are believed to live on fish and birds' eggs. (The Rhine) flows into the Ocean through many mouths.'

The parleying, Caesar concludes, is continued merely to gain time.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī reverterentur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere, nē longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī agmen antecessissent, praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; *quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne, quae ā Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs* ostendēbant; *ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret.*

Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut, trīduī morā interpositā, equitēs eōrum, quī abessent, reverterentur; tamen *sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum IIII, aquātiōnis causā, prōcessūrum cō diē* dīxit; *hūc posterō diē*

---

11. 1. **cum ab hoste**, etc.: after denying the request of the Germans (chap. 9, l. 3), Caesar evidently had marched toward them. **XII**: *38, b*, and *36*. **mīlibus**: *129, a*.

2. **ut erat cōnstitūtum**: the agreement was that the envoys should return in three days (chap. 9, l. 2). *73, d*.

3. **congressī**: sc. *cum eō*, 'meeting him.' *57, c*, and *226, c*. **prōgrederētur**: *199, a*.

5. **antecessissent**: *220*, and *328*. **praemitteret**: here without an object; with *ad eōs equitēs*, 'that he send forward to,' etc.

6. **pugnā**: *127, a*. **sibi**, etc.: 'that he would give them permission to send.' How lit.?

8. **iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset**: 'should have bound themselves by an oath.' *13, h*. How lit.? **fēcisset**: agrees with the nearer subject. *172, b*. **eā**, etc.: 'that they would accept the terms proposed by Caesar.' *131, c*. How lit.?

10. **daret**: *dā* in the direct form. *216*.

11. **eōdem illō pertinēre**: 'had the same end in view.' How lit.? **ut**, etc.: explaining *eōdem illō*. *199, a*.

12. **abessent**: *220*. Cf. chap. 9, ll. 4–8.

14. **aquātiōnis causā**: 'in order to get water.' *94, b*. **hūc**: to the place where he was at the time of the conference.

quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cognōsceret.

Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit, quī nūntiārent, nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent, quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

The German cavalry surprises and routs the cavalry of Caesar.

12. At hostēs, ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt, quōrum erat V mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent, quod eī, quī frūmentandī causā erant trāns Mosam profectī, nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossīsque equīs

15. **quam frequentissimī**: 'in as great numbers as possible.' *153, c.* **convenīrent**: *convenīte* in the direct form. *216.*

17. **praefectōs**: *309, c.* **equitātū**: *137, a.*

18. **quī nūntiārent**: '(men) to convey the order.' *193, a.*

19. **sustinērent**: sc. *ut. 200, a.* The Roman cavalry were ordered to act on the defensive.

20. **accessisset**: subjunctive also in the direct form. *190, c.* B. 293, III, 2; A. 553; H. 603, II, 2.

12. 1. **ubi prīmum**: *188, c.* **nostrōs equitēs**: the Roman cavalry had apparently advanced in the direction of the German camp.

2. **V mīlium**: *309, b,* and *100, a.* **cum**: *187.* **DCCC**: *octingentōs. 38, b,* and *36.*

3. **equitēs**: *129, b.* **eī . . . profectī**: chap. 9, ll. 4–8.

6. **indūtiīs**: 'for a truce.' *112, a.* Caesar explains why his cavalry were caught off their guard. **impetū factō**: 'charged and.' How lit.? *144, b,* (2).

7. **hīs**: the Roman cavalry.

8. **cōnsuētūdine**: *136, c.* **suā**: *157, b.* **ad pedēs**: 'to the ground,' we should say. *10, b.* **dēsiluērunt**: from their horses. **subfossīs . . . dēiectīs**: 'stabbed the horses (of our cavalry) underneath and dismounted quite a number of our men and.' How lit.?

complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent, quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

Bravery of the Aquitanian, Piso, in the skirmish.

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et LXX, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat, amīcus

Figure 105. — The slopes of the Rhine Valley.

9. **reliquōs**: sc. *nostrōs*. **fugam**: the flight of the Gallic cavalry, as in a previous instance (I, 18, ll. 27–31), may have been stimulated by treachery among the native leaders.

11. **agminis**: the main force. **vēnissent**: subjunctive by attraction. *189, a*, and *220*.

12. **ex equitibus**: *97, d.* **IIII et LXX**: *quattuor et septuāgintā. 38, b.* The result of the skirmish showed the superiority of the German over the Gallic cavalry. Caesar afterwards hired German horsemen, and made much use of them (VII, 80, l. 20 and N.).

13. **Pīsō**: a Roman name, probably conferred on some Aquitanian with the Roman citizenship; cf. I, chap. 47, l. 13 and N. **genere**: *128, a*. B. 215; A. 403, 2, *a*; H. 469, 2.

14. **amīcus**: cf. I, 3, l. 13 and N. *88, a.*

ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī, interclūsō ab hostibus, auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, ipse, equō vulnerātō, dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus, multīs vulneribus acceptīs, cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

The German leaders come to offer apology; Caesar detains them.

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab eīs, quī per dolum atque īnsidiās, petītā pāce, ultrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augēren-tur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdi-cābat; et, cognitā Gallōrum īnfīrmitāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatiī dandum exīstimābat.

---

17. **dēiectus**: 'although thrown' from his horse, he continued to fight on foot. *227, a,* (3). **potuit**: *190, c.*

19. **id**: 'that (mishap).' **proeliō**: *127, a.*

20. **incitātō equō**: 'urging his horse forward.' How lit.? **sē hostibus obtulit**: 'he hurled himself upon the enemy.' Many instances of individual bravery and devotion are recorded by Caesar.

13. 1. **Hōc factō proeliō**: 'After this battle.' How lit.?

2. **audiendōs**: *89, c.* **ab**: 'from'; Caesar had arranged to take up their proposals (chap. 11, ll. 14-15) on the following day.

3. **per dolum atque īnsidiās**: 'craftily and treacherously.' How lit.? **ultrō**: 'without provocation.' How lit.? **bellum intulissent**: 'had made an attack.'

4. **exspectāre**: subject of *esse. 222, b.* **dum**: 'until,' with the subjunctive also in the direct form. *190, b.* B. 293, III, 2; A. 553; H. 603, II, 2.

5. **summae dēmentiae esse**: 'that it was the height of folly.' How lit.? *100, b.*

6. **īnfīrmitāte**: cf. chap. 5, ll. 1–3. **quantum — auctōritātis**: 'how great prestige.' *97, b,* and *204,* (3).

8. **quibus**: trans. as if *et eīs.* **ad**, etc.: *230,* (3). **nihil spatiī**: 'no time.' *97, a.*

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē eius diēī māne, eādem et simulātiōne et perfidiā ūsī, Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus maiōribusque nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dīcēbātur, suī pūrgandī causā, quod contrā, atque esset dictum et ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent, sīmul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus, illōs retinērī iussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

9. **cōnsiliō**: 'determination,' explained by the appositive clause *nē . . . praetermittet*, 'not to let slip any chance to fight,' lit. 'any day of battle.' **cum — commūnicātō**: 'after he had imparted to.' How lit.? *137, c.* **quaestōre**: *313, b.*

11. **diēī**: *94, c.* **māne**: 'early in the morning.'

12. **eādem**: 'the same' as before. **perfidiā**: 'treachery.' To justify his own course Caesar accuses the Germans of bad faith. But if they did not mean what they said, why did so many of them trust themselves in Caesar's power? The collision on the previous day may have been precipitated by hotheads, without the approval of the leaders of the German host.

14. **simul — simul**: 'both — and.' **suī pūrgandī causā**: 'in order to clear themselves.' *154, b*, and *230*, (1). B. 339, 5; A. 504, *c*; H. 626, 3.

15. **quod**, etc.: 'because, contrary to what had been said.' **contrā**: adverb. **atque**: *233, c.*

16. **commīsissent**: '(as they admitted) they had started the battle.' *183, a.* **sī quid possent**: 'if in any degree possible.' How lit.? *118, b.* **dē**: 'in the matter of.'

17. **fallendō**: 'by playing false.' **Quōs**: *167.* **oblātōs** [esse]: *69, b.* **gāvīsus**: 'rejoicing.' *62*, and *226, e.*

20. **agmen subsequī**: 'to follow the main force,' i.e. to bring up the rear, instead of leading the van, as the cavalry usually did. *328.*

Surprising the leaderless German host, he utterly destroys it.

14. Aciē triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter VIII mīlium itinere cōnfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit, quam, quid agerētur, Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī, et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsiliī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret.

Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, mīlitēs nostrī, prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī, in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō, quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant

---

14. 1. **Aciē triplicī**: *337, a.* **VIII**: *38, b.* **itinere**: the army probably marched in three parallel columns, which deployed as they neared the camp of the enemy. The country must have been open and fairly level to admit of the rapid execution of the movement.

2. **prius . . . quam . . . possent**: *189, b.* B. 292, 1, *b*; A. 551, *b*; H. 605, II. **hostium castra**: a corral protected by carts, like that of the Helvetians (I, 26, l. 8).

4. **et — et**: 'both — and.' *233, a.*

5. **suōrum**: the German leaders who had gone to Caesar and were held by him under guard. **cōnsiliī . . . capiendī**: gerundive and gerund in coördinate construction; trans. 'for,' etc. *230*, (1). **spatiō**: *tempore*.

6. **perturbantur**: 'were (too) confused (to decide).' **ne . . . an . . . an**: 'whether . . . or . . . or.' *204*, (1). **dūcere**: *222, a.*

8. **Quōrum**: *167.* **cum**: *185, c.*

9. **prīstinī diēī**: 'of the previous day.' **irrūpērunt**: 'burst into.'

10. **Quō locō**: *castrīs Germānōrum.*

11. **restitērunt**: sc. *eī*, antecedent of *quī*. **inter carrōs**, etc.: cf. I, 26, ll. 7–11.

12. **at**: *236, a.* **reliqua**, etc.: 'the rest of the host (consisting) of women and children.' *98, a.*

13. **cum**: N. to l, 1, l. 13. **excesserant**: i.e. *Usipetēs et Tencterī.*

Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum misit. 15

15. Germānī, post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs signīsque mīlitāribus relictīs, sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et

Figure 106. — The Moselle at Beilstein; ruins of the castle at the right.

14. **quōs**: the antecedent is *multitūdō*. *164, d.* Caesar's conduct in detaining the German leaders, who had come to him under a flag of truce, and then attacking and pursuing the leaderless host without mercy, seems treacherous and unlike his ordinary procedure. When afterwards his friends proposed, in the Roman senate, a thanksgiving for the victory, Cato urged that Caesar be delivered up to those whom he had treacherously entrapped, as an atonement for the wrong. Not much weight should be attached to this as a judgment on Caesar's course, however, for debates in the Roman senate, as in our own, were colored by political and personal antagonisms.

15. 1. **Germānī**: the warriors who armed for defense when the camp was attacked (chap. 14, l. 10). **clāmōre**: 'the shrieking' of the women and children, part of whom were cut down by the legionaries entering the camp, part by the cavalry after they had fled from the camp.

3. **cōnfluentem**: 'confluence.' **Mosae**: probably the Moselle (Fig. 106) is here meant, not the Meuse; *Mosellae* may have been

Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō, reliquī se in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs vulnerātīs, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum ccccxxx mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt.

Caesar eīs, quōs in castrīs retinuerat, discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī, supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. Hīs Caesar lībertātem concessit.

First Expedition into Germany. 16–19

Caesar resolves to cross the Rhine and enter Germany.

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit

---

written and changed to *Mosae* in copying. It seems probable that the German camp was south of the Moselle and that the fleeing warriors came to the region of Coblenz, which lies in the angle formed by the Moselle as it enters the Rhine.

4. **reliquā**, etc.: 'abandoning hope of further flight.' How lit.? *144, b,* (2).

5. **flūmen**: the Rhine, at Coblenz.

6. **lassitūdine**: in consequence of the fighting and running.

7. **ad ūnum**: 'to a man.' **incolumēs**: 'in safety.' **ex . . . cum**: 'notwithstanding (their) apprehension of a hard campaign, since.' *184, a.* How lit.?

8. **capitum . . . fuisset**: 'had amounted to 430,000'; cf. N. to I, 29, l. 6. *100, b.* **ccccxxx**: = *quadringentōrum trīgintā. 38, b,* and *36.* If, as among the Helvetians, one fourth were fighting-men, the Usipetes and Tencteri mustered an army of more than 130,000. The number seems greatly exaggerated.

11. **veritī**: *61, a,* (2), and *226, c.*

13. **lībertātem**: 'leave' to stay. They probably entered his service as mercenaries.

16. 2. **quārum**: *97, a.* **illa**: *161, a.*

iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī, ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent, et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre.

Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum eīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset, quī postulārent, eōs, quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dēderent, respondērunt:

Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum fīnīre; sī, sē invītō, Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?

---

3. **iūstissima**: 'the most weighty.' **quod . . . voluit**: explains *illa* [*causa*].

4. **ut . . . venīrent**: 'to come.' *199, a.* **suīs quoque rēbus**: 'for their own interests also.'

5. **cum**: *cum* temporal has here a conditional force also; 'in case.'

7. **Accessit etiam quod**: 'There was the further reason that.' *198, a*, and *b*.

8. **suprā**: chap. 9, ll. 4–8. **commemorāvī**: cf. *dēmōnstrāvimus*, II, 1, l. 2, and N.

12. **quōs**: *Sugambrōs*. **postulārent**: *193, a.*

13. **dēderent**: *200, a.* B. 295, 8; A. 565, *a*; H. 562, 1, N.

15. **imperium Rhēnum fīnīre**: i.e. *Rhēnum* (subject accusative) *esse fīnem* ('limit') *imperiī*. **sē invītō**: N. to I, 8, l. 7.

16. **aequum**: 'right'; in predicate, neuter, accusative, in agreement with the infinitive clause *Germānōs trānsīre*, which stands as object of *exīstimāret*.

17. **suī**, etc.: 'that anything beyond the Rhine was under his authority or power.' *94, d.*

18. **postulāret**: with *cur*, 'why should he claim.' *217, a.*

Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur:

Vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possint.

Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

He builds a bridge across the Rhine.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvī, Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī

---

19. **ūnī**: 'alone.' *23, a.* **ex Trānsrhēnānīs**: 'of the peoples across the Rhine.' *97, d.*

20. **mīserant, fēcerant, dederant**: *234, a,* and *238, a.*

21. **quod . . . premerentur**: *183, a.*

23. **Vel**: *213, b,* and *235, a.* **id facere**: 'from doing that.' *223, a,* (3). **occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae**: 'by the requirements of public business.'

24. **exercitum, Rhēnum**: *114, a.* **trānsportāret**: *216.* **id**: 'that (movement).' **ad . . . temporis**: 'for (present) help and (for) hope in respect to the future.' How lit.?

26. **opīniōnem**: 'reputation.' **eius**: 'his,' i.e. *Caesaris.* **Ariovistō pulsō**: 'in consequence of the defeat of Ariovistus,' related in Book I. How lit.? *144, b,* (3).

17. 2. **trānsīre**: *222, b.* **tūtum**: predicative. *148, d.* Caesar was always careful to have the country in the rear of his army well secured, not only for the transportation of supplies but also to make a retreat safe in case of necessity.

3. **suae, populī**: *157, d.*

dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum, aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum, exīstimābat.

Ratiōnem pontis hanc īnstituit:

Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia, paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum, māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen, dēfīxerat fistūcīsque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modō

---

4. **dignitātis**, etc.: 'would be inconsistent with the prestige.' *94, d.* How lit.? **etsī**: *191, a.*

5. **lātitūdinem**: between 1300 and 1600 feet in the region where Caesar built the bridge, that is, near Neuwied, between Coblenz and Andernach (Map II, facing p. 232). **rapiditātem**: 'swiftness.' *76, a.*

6. **id**, etc.: sc. *esse*, 'that he ought to make every effort (to accomplish) this.'

7. **aut**: *235, a.*

8. **Ratiōnem**, etc.: 'the plan of the bridge (which) he devised (was) as follows.' *161, a.* How lit.?

9. **Tigna bīna**: 'a pair of logs,' to be driven into the river bed and used as posts to support the bridge; see Plates V and VI, a a. *36.* **sēsquipedālia**: 'a foot and a half thick.' *79, b.* **ab īmō**: 'at the lower end.' *154, a,* and *126, c.*

10. **dīmēnsa**: passive; with *ad*, etc., 'measured off to correspond with the depth of the river,' the longer piles for use near the middle, the shorter for driving nearer the banks. How lit.? *59, b.* **intervāllō**, etc.: 'two feet apart.' How lit.? *138.*

11. **inter sē**: 'together.' *159.* **iungēbat**: sc. *Caesar*; the object is *Tigna*. The two logs of each pair were apparently fastened together on the bank, before they were driven into the river bed. **māchinātiōnibus immissa**: 'had let down by mechanical appliances,' rafts equipped with suitable tackle. How lit.? *228, a.*

12. **dēfīxerat**, etc.: 'had planted these firmly and driven [them] home with pile-drivers,' in the case of each pair; the pluperfect with *cum* implies repeated action. *186, a.* B. 288, 3; H. 539, 2. **nōn sublicae modō**: 'not like an (ordinary) pile,' because ordinarily piles are driven in perpendicularly, while these pairs were driven with a slant. How lit.?

dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, hīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta, intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte, contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa, statuēbat.

Haec utraque, īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fībulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs

---

13. **dērēctē**: 'straight up and down.' **ad perpendiculum**: 'according to a plumb-line.' **prōnē ac fastīgātē**: 'leaning forward with a decided slant.' How lit.? **secundum**: 'in conformity with.' *122, a.*

14. **nātūram flūminis**: 'the direction of the current.' *74, d.* **hīs contrāria**: 'opposite these.' *108, a.* Plates V, VI, **a′ a′**.

15. **duo**: sc. *tigna*; *bīna* might have been used. **ad eundem modum**: 'in the same manner.' *45.* **quadrāgēnum**: 'forty' Roman feet in each case. *22, c.* The distance must have been measured on the surface of the water. Plate V, **A**.

16. **ab īnferiōre parte**: 'on the lower side,' i.e. downstream from the first pair. **contrā**, etc.: 'against the violent rushing of the current.' How lit.? As the first pair of posts slanted downstream, so the second pair slanted upstream. Plate V, **A, a a′**.

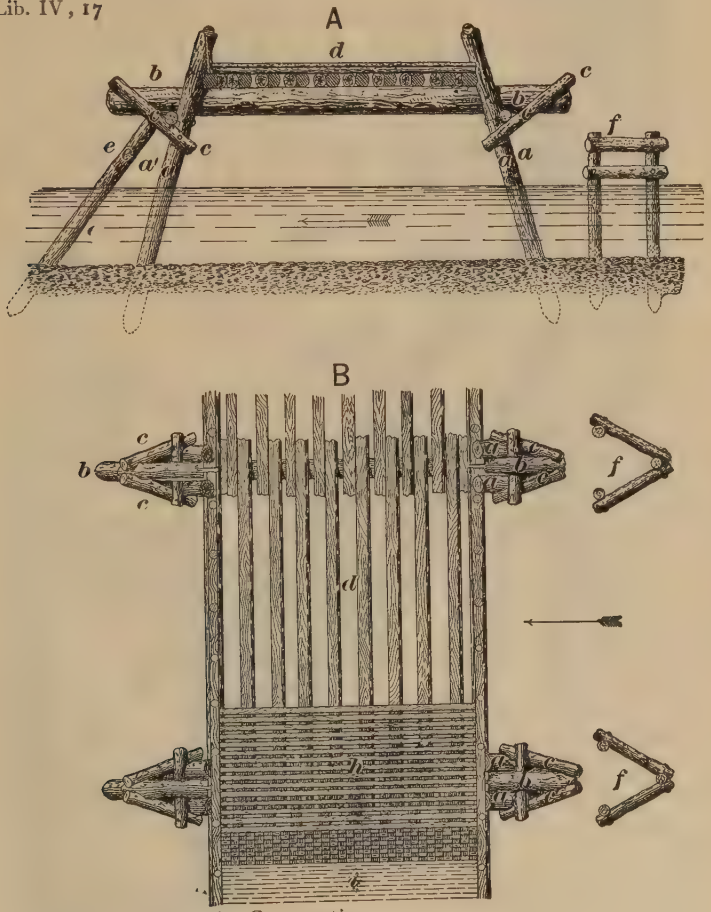
18. **Haec utraque . . . distinēbantur**: 'the two pairs' of posts 'were held apart.' *51.* **īnsuper**: 'above.' **bipedālibus**, etc.: 'after a beam having the thickness of two feet, corresponding with the space between the posts' (of each pair), 'had been let in.' How lit.? The heavy crossbeam, or sill, is marked, **b b** on Plates V, VI.

19. **quantum**: representing the idea of measure in *bipedālibus*; accusative. *118, a.* **bīnīs . . . parte**: 'by a pair of braces on each side' (i.e. with each pair of posts), 'at the very end' of the sill. What these 'pairs of braces' were it is not easy to understand. If of wood, they may have been like those represented in the Plates V and VI, **c c**; for with such braces the greater the pressure the more closely the structure would have been bound together. If the braces were of iron —a less probable supposition because of the amount of iron required, —the arrangement must have been altogether different.

20. **quibus . . . revinctīs**: i.e. *tignīs*; 'now that these' (the two pairs of posts, one pair above and one below) 'were kept' (at the proper

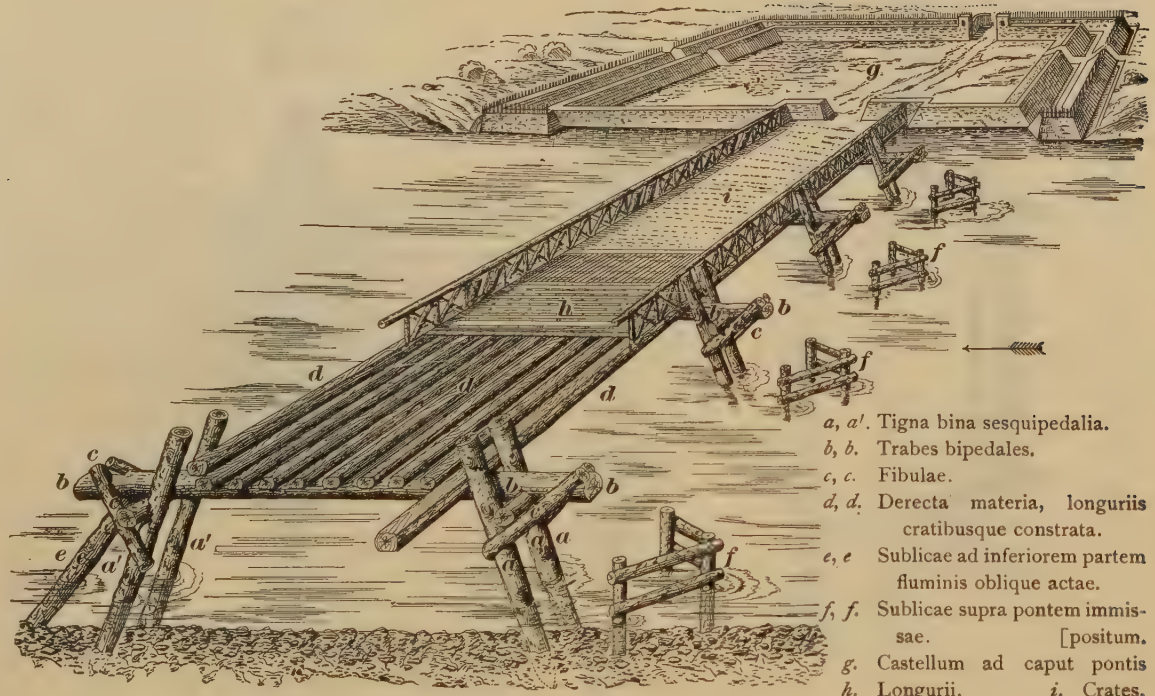
PLATE V CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE, SECTIONS

Lib. IV, 17



A. Cross-section.

B. The Bridge seen from above.



a, *a'*. Tigna bina sesquipedalia.
b, *b*. Trabes bipedales.
c, *c*. Fibulae.
d, *d*. Derecta materia, longuriis cratibusque constrata.
e, *e* Sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique actae.
f, *f*. Sublicae supra pontem immissae.
g. Castellum ad caput pontis [positum.
h. Longurii. *i*. Crates.

atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs, tanta erat operis fīrmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra, ut, quō maior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius illigāta tenērentur.

Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae, prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae, vim flūminis

---

distance) 'apart, and were braced in opposite directions,' the lower posts slanting upstream, the upper posts slanting downstream. How lit.? *144, b,* (3).

22. **ea rērum nātūra**: 'such the character of the structure' as a whole. How lit.? **quō**, etc.: 'the greater the force of the water rushing against it.' *220.* How lit.? **quō . . . hōc**: *140.* B. 223; A. 414, *a*; H. 471, 10.

23. **hōc**, etc.: 'the more closely they' (the opposite pairs of posts, *tigna*) 'were tied and held together.' **illigāta**: *228, a.*

24. **Haec**: 'These piers,' each pier formed by fastening the sill, two feet thick, securely to the pair of posts at either end. **dērēctā**: 'in the direction of the bridge.' How lit.? **māteriā iniectā**: 'by laying timber,' i.e. girders, **d** on the Plates; these were, of course, at right angles with the direction of the current. *92, b,* and *144, b,* (6). **contexēbantur**: 'were joined.' As the bridge was designed to carry a moving load of cavalry and draft animals as well as infantry, and was obviously built hastily of rough timbers, with a wide margin of safety, we may suppose that the length of the girders between the sills was not more than 25 English feet, possibly not more than 20 feet; the number of piers was probably between sixty and seventy. **longuriīs**: 'joists,' laid on the girders, in the direction of the current; marked **h** on the Plates.

25. **crātibus**: 'wickerwork,' woven of supple branches, laid over the joists and taking the place of the planks on a modern bridge; marked **i** on the Plates. **cōnsternēbantur**: 'were covered.' **nihilō sētius**: 'nevertheless,' in order still further to assure the safety of the bridge. *140.* **et**: 'also.'

26. **ad**, etc.: 'on the down-stream side.' How lit.? **oblīquē agēbantur**: 'were driven with a slant'; these piles, slanting upstream, braced the piers against the force of the current; marked **e** on the Plates. **quae**: 'in order that they.' *193, a.*

27. **prō ariete subiectae**: 'set below as props.' *10, e.* How lit.?

exciperent; et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs missae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent.

Entering Germany, he finds some tribes submissive; but the Sugambrians flee.

18. Diēbus x, quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, omnī opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar, ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō, in fīnēs Sugambrōrum contendit.

Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus, pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus, līberāliter respondit obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex

---

28. **aliae**: *aliae sublicae agēbantur*, marked **f f** on the Plates. These vertical piles protected the bridge against floating logs or other objects in the current liable to damage it. **mediocrī spatiō**: 'a short distance.' *140.*

29. **truncī**: 'tree-trunks.' *81.* **nāvēs**: barges loaded with stones or earth are probably meant. **operis**: 'the structure.' *230*, (1). **essent missae**: *220.*

30. **hīs dēfēnsōribus**: ablative absolute, = *hīs dēfendentibus, hīs* being personified; trans. 'by these defenses.' **eārum rērum**: tree-trunks and weighted barges.

31. **neu**: 'and not'; lit. 'or not.' *196, b.*

18. 1. **Diēbus x, quibus**: 'Within ten days after.' *147, a.* **comportārī**: *72, c.* The rapidity and skill with which the bridge was built bear witness to Caesar's genius in practical affairs as well as to the efficiency of his engineers and mechanics. *310, b.*

3. **partem**: we should say 'end.' **praesidiō relictō**: 'having left,' etc. *144, b*, (2). Plate VI, **g**. **Sugambrōrum**: the German end of the bridge led into the country of the Ubians; north of the Ubians were the Sugambrians. See Map at the end of the volume.

6. **quibus**: dative. **līberāliter respondit**: 'be returned a gracious answer.' How lit.? *175, b.*

7. **At**: *236, a.* **ex**: 'immediately after.'

eō tempore, quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est, fugā comparātā, hortantibus eīs, quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

He ravages the country of the Sugambrians, encourages the Ubians, and returns to Gaul.

19. Caesar, paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs, sē in fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit; atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ab Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab eīs cognōvit:

Suēbōs, posteā quam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ūnum in locum convenīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum

---

8. **eō**: 'the.' *160, d.* **fugā comparātā**: 'taking to flight.' How lit.?

9. **hortantibus eīs**: 'at the instigation of those.' From chap. 15, ll. 1–6, it might be inferred that few of the Tencteri and the Usipetes escaped besides cavalry (chap. 16, ll. 7–11).

11. **exportāverant**: 'had carried away.' **in**: cf. N. to I, 12, l. 11; 'into the recesses of the forests.'

19. 1. **eōrum**: *Sugambrōrum.* **morātus**: *226, c.*

2. **vīcīs**, etc.: cf. I, 5, ll. 4–5 and Notes. **frūmentīs succīsīs**: 'cut down the standing grain and.' How lit.? *144, b,* (2).

4. **sī . . . premerentur**: indirect, from the idea of "saying" in *pollicitus;* future indicative in the direct form. *213, b.*

5. **posteā quam**: with the indicative in the direct form. *188, a.*

6. **mōre**: *136, c.* **nūntiōs**: 'messengers.'

7. **utī**, etc.: '(directing the people) to move away from the strongholds,' etc.; the substantive clauses give the gist of the instructions conveyed by the messengers. *199, a.*

9. **hunc**: predicative after *dēlēctum esse*, with which *locum* is to be supplied as subject; 'that there had been chosen, as this (mustering point), a place.'

medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse.

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōnfectīs, quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

First Expedition to Britain. 20–38

Caesar resolves to invade Britain; he lacks information.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod,

---

10. **medium ferē**: 'nearly (at) the center.' **regiōnum**: *102*.

11. **exspectāre**: sc. *eōs* (*Suēbōs*). **ibi**: 'at that point.'

13. **Quod**: 'this fact.' *167*. **eīs rēbus cōnfectīs**: 'having accomplished the objects,' explained by the appositive *ut*-clauses following. *144, b,* (3). In reality Caesar accomplished very little by the march into Germany. The formal enumeration which follows seems intended to justify an expedition barren of tangible results.

14. **rērum**: *165, a*. **ut**, etc.: *199, a*.

16. **obsidiōne**: 'from oppression'; the Ubii had been forced to pay tribute to the Swabians (chap. 3, ll. 11–14). *127, a*. **ut . . . līberāret**: 'to free.' **XVIII**: *38, b,* and *36*.

17. **prōfectum** [esse]: the subject is *satis*. *57, b*.

20. 1. **Exiguā . . . reliquā**: ablative absolute; 'As a small part,' etc.; it was now near the end of July.

2. **omnis Gallia**: cf. I, 1, l. 1, and N. **ad . . . vergit**: 'lies toward the north,' in relation to the latitude of Italy; cf. Map 12.

3. **Britanniam**: *294*. **quod . . . intellegēbat**: the aid given by the Britains to the Venetans (III, 9, ll. 30–31) and to the other Gauls, as for example to refugees from the Bellovaci (II, 14, ll. 3–9), seems to have been of slight account; it furnished, however, a plausible pretext for the invasion of Britain.

omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs, hostibus nostrīs inde summinis-
trāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus annī ad bellum ge- 5
rendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur,
sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca,
portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant
incognita. Neque enim temere, praeter mercātōrēs, illō

Figure 107. — Foot of chalk cliffs north of Dover, at low tide.

---

4. **bellīs**: *147, b.* **inde**: *ē Britanniā.* **sumministrāta**: sc. *esse.*

6. **dēficeret**: 'was insufficient.' **sibi ūsuī fore**: *112, b.* **arbitrābātur**: *183, a.*

7. **adīsset**: *adīret* might have been expected; Caesar conceives of the expedition as an accomplished fact. *218,* (1), b.

8. **aditūs**: 'approaches'; points, outside the regular harbors, where a landing could be made. **quae omnia ferē**: 'for nearly all of these things.' *167,* and *97, c.*

9. **incognita**: the Venetans at least must have been informed about Britain (III, 8, ll. 1–3), but they had been well-nigh exterminated; and it was not to be expected that Gauls having the knowledge desired by Caesar would be free in imparting it to him. **Neque enim — quisquam**: 'for no one.' *168.* **temere**: 'without good reason'; only traders and students of Druidic theology (VI, 13, ll. 34–37) had occasion to go to Britain. **illō**: adverb.

adit quisquam, neque eīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est.

Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

He sends Volusenus to Britain and makes preparations; he receives British envoys, and sends Commius also to Britain.

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, prius quam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut, explōrātīs omnibus rēbus, ad sē quam prīmum revertātur.

Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs

---

10. **neque . . . quicquam**: 'and nothing.' **eīs**: *108, a.*

11. **Galliās**: plural because referring to the different divisions; we should say, 'the (several) parts of Gaul.'

15. **incolerent**: sc. *eam.* *204,* (2) and (3). **quem**: *48, b.* **ūsum bellī**: 'methods of warfare.' How lit.?

16. **ad . . . multitūdinem**: i.e. for a fleet, whose requirements were very different from those of trading vessels coming to port singly or in small numbers.

21. 1. **prius . . . faceret**: 'before making the attempt.' *189, b.*

2. **idōneum**: adj. in predicate; trans. 'a suitable person.' **nāvī longā**: *346, a.*

3. **praemittit**: sc. *eum.* **ut**, etc.: *199, a.*

4. **quam prīmum**: *153, c.*

6. **inde**: 'from their country.' How lit.? See Map 11. **in Britanniam**: after *trāiectus. 150, d.* **trāiectus**: 'passage.' **Hūc**: to the vicinity of modern Boulogne.

7. **quam — classem**: = *eam classem, quam. 165, c.* B. 251, 4, *a*; A. 307, *b*; H. 399, 3.

undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et, quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum effēcerat classem, iubet convenīre.

Interim, cōnsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus auditīs, līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse, Atrebātibus superātīs, rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cuiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātes hortēturque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet.

Volusēnus, perspectīs regiōnibus omnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset, renūntiat.

---

8. **ad Veneticum bellum**: III, 11, ll. 13–16, and chaps. 14, 15.

11. **polliceantur**: *193, a.* **dare**: i.e. *sē datūrōs esse. 178.* **imperiō obtemperāre**: 'submit to the authority.' *105.*

15. **Atrebātibus**: conquered in the battle at the Sambre, two years previously (II, 23, ll. 1–8). **rēgem**: *115, a.* **ibi**: among the Atrebatians. **virtūtem et cōnsilium**: 'energy and discretion.'

16. **probābat**: 'he appreciated.' **fidēlem**: 'loyal.' Afterwards Commius was disloyal to Caesar; cf. VII, chap. 75, ll. 22–26.

17. **magnī habēbātur**: 'was considered great,' lit. 'of great (value).' *101.* B. 203, 3; A. 417; H. 448, 1.

18. **possit**: sc. *adīre.* Why subjunctive? *220.* **adeat**: *200, a.* B. 295, 8; A. 565, *a*; H. 565, 4.

19. **populī . . . sequantur**: 'fix their confidence in the Roman people.' How lit.? *199, a.* **sē**: Caesar.

21. **quantum facultātis**: 'so far as opportunity.' *97, b.*

22. **quī**: 'since he.' *194, c.* **nāvī**: *14, b*, and *127, a.*

Opportunely he receives the submission of the Morini. He assembles a fleet.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod, hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī, bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperārasset, factūrōs pollicērentur.

Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs, eōs in fidem recēpit.

Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs contrāctīsque,

---

22. 1. **hīs locīs**: in the country of the Morini, probably in the vicinity of modern Boulogne.

2. **morātur**: *190, a.* B. 293, 1; A. 556; H. 533, 4.

3. **quī sē . . . excūsārent, pollicērentur**: 'to offer excuse,' lit. 'excuse themselves,' etc. *193, a.* **dē . . . cōnsiliō**: 'for their conduct the previous season,' 56 B.C. (III, chap. 28).

4. **quod . . . fēcissent**: 'because (as they said) they had made.' *183, a.* **hominēs barbarī**: '(being) uncivilized people.' *91, b.* **cōnsuētūdinis**: sing., but trans. 'usages'; the reference is particularly to the Roman practice of treating with consideration peoples that submitted to Roman rule. *102.*

5. **imperārasset**: *64, a,* (1), and *214, a.*

9. **annī tempus**: it was already August, too late in the season to enter upon an extended campaign. **neque**, etc.: 'and he judged that the exactions of so trivial affairs ought not to have precedence over (the invasion of) Britain.' How lit.?

10. **hās**: *160, d.* **tantulārum**: *76, c.* **Britanniae**: *107, a.*

13. **Nāvibus onerāriīs**: 'transports'; these were sailing vessels, while the galleys were propelled by oars. *346, a.* **LXXX**: *octōgintā. 38, b.* **coāctīs contrāctīsque**: 'pressed into service and brought together' in a single harbor.

quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgā- 15
tīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit.

Reliquum exercitum Q. Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Auruncu- 20
leiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iussit.

---

14. **quot**: 'as many as.' **duās legiōnēs**: the 7th and the 10th. The smallness of the force is consistent with Caesar's statement that the purpose of the expedition was not conquest but the obtaining of information. If the two legions, after three years of hard fighting, contained each about 3600 men (*307, b*) fit for service, the total of 7200 men divided up among the 80 transports would have averaged 90 men to a ship. The vessels were not large; and the supplies, not merely provisions but tents and other equipment, must have taken up much room.

15. **quod nāvium longārum**: 'the galleys which'; lit. 'what of long ships.' *97, b.* **quaestōrī**: *313, b.*

16. **praefectīs**: 'subsidiary officers.' The galleys seem also to have carried slingers, bowmen, and artillery (chap. 25). **Hūc accēdēbant**: 'In addition to this number there were.' How lit.? *90, b.*

17. **eō locō**: portus Itius, now Boulogne; see Map 11. **ā**: 'off.' The small harbor eight Roman miles up the coast, where the 18 transports were detained, is now called Ambleteuse. Map 11 **A**.

18. **quō minus**: 'so that . . . not.' *201, a.* **eundem portum**: portus Itius.

19. **equitibus**: the cavalry contingents of the two legions, 500 or 600 horsemen in all. *309, a.* **equitibus distribuit**: the horsemen could more easily go across the country to the smaller harbor (chap. 23, ll. 2–3).

20. **Reliquum exercitum**: five legions, if we assume that one legion was assigned to duty at the harbor; for Caesar had eight legions in all, and only two were required for the expedition.

21. **in — dūcendum**: 'for operations against.' How lit.? *229, b.*

23. **eō praesidiō, quod**: = *tantō praesidiō, quantum.*

Caesar sails to Britain, and makes preparation to land.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem, tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit.

Cuius locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustīs mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum

---

23. 1. **nactus**: *61, a,* (3), and *226, c.*

2. **tempestātem**: 'weather.' As might be inferred from its derivation from *tempus*, 'time,' *tempestās* may imply good or bad weather according to the connection. We use "time" similarly in "a good time," "a bad time." **tertiā ferē vigiliā**: 'about the third watch'; indefinite because the embarkation must have taken two or three hours. *242, c.* **solvit**: sc. *nāvēs*, 'got under way,' from Boulogne. The date was probably August 26.

3. **ulteriōrem portum**: Ambleteuse, northeast of Boulogne (chap. 22, l. 17). **prōgredī**: i.e. by land. **nāvēs cōnscendere**: 'to embark.'

4. **quibus**: 'them,' the cavalry. *167.* **paulō tardius**: 'with a little too much delay,' probably due to the difficulty of getting the horses aboard. *153, a.* **esset administrātum**: 'the orders were carried out.' How lit.? *73, d.*

5. **hōrā quārtā**: the beginning of 'the fourth hour' on August 26 in the latitude of Dover by Roman reckoning was about 8.30 A.M. by our time. *242, b.*

6. **Britanniam attigit**: 'reached Britain,' near Dover; see Map II. **expositās**: 'arrayed.'

8. **haec**: 'such.' **ita**, etc.: 'the sea was so closely bordered by abrupt cliffs'; *angustīs*, lit. 'narrow,' implies sharp outlines, as seen from the sea, and an abrupt descent. The chalk cliffs near Dover run almost straight up from the water's edge. (See Figures 107, 108, 110, and Plate VIII.)

9. **locīs superiōribus**: the top of the cliffs. **lītus**: 'shore.' *13, f.*

locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit.

Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset, et quae fierī vellet, ostendit, monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut, cum celerem atque īnstabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs admi-

Figure 108. — St. Margaret's Bay, passed by Caesar in his search for a landing place.

11. **convenīrent**: *190, b.* B. 293, III, 2; A. 553; H. 603, II, 2.

12. **hōram nōnam**: the beginning of the ninth hour was about 2.20 P.M. by our time. *242, b.* **in ancorīs**: 'at anchor.' The ancient anchors were like those of to-day.

13. **tribūnīs mīlitum**: *314.* **et . . . et**: *233, a.* **quae**: *204,* (2). The information derived from Volusenus was probably to the effect that there was a good landing place further up the coast.

15. **ut . . . postulārent**: 'as military practice, above all, as marine service required.' *220.* How lit.?

16. **ut . . . omnēs**, etc.: after *monuit*; 'that all orders be executed.' *199, a.* **cum**, etc.: 'since (these conditions) involved quick and unsteady movement.'

17. **ad nūtum**: 'on the instant.' How lit.? **ad tempus**: 'at the (right) time.'

nistrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs, et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

The legionaries attempt to land; the Britons resist fiercely.

24. At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī, nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant.

Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitūdinem, nisi in altō, cōnstituī nōn poterant; mīlitibus autem, ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illī, aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī,

---

19. **secundum**: 'favorable,' both wind and tide bearing toward the northeast.

20. **eō locō**: Dover. **prōgressus**: *226, c.* **apertō ac plānō lītore**: between Walmer and Deal, about seven miles northeast of Dover. *145, c.*

21. **nāvēs cōnstituit**: 'he ran the ships aground.' How lit.?

24. 2. **essedāriīs**: 'chariot-fighters,' described in chap. 33. **quō genere**: 'a type (of warrior) which.' *165, b.*

3. **cōpiīs**: the Britons followed by land, as near the shore as possible. *137, b.* **nāvibus ēgredī**: 'from disembarking.' *223, a*, and *127, a.*

5. **Erat**: *90, a.* **hās**: refers to what follows. *161, a.*

6. **in altō**: 'in deep (water).' *154, a.* **cōnstituī**: 'be grounded,' so as to remain firm. **mīlitibus . . . dēsiliendum** [erat]: 'the soldiers . . . had to jump down.' How lit.? *73, e*, and *110.*

7. **ignōtīs locīs**: '(being) on unfamiliar ground.' How lit.? *145, c.*

8. **oppressīs**: agrees with *mīlitibus*; 'weighed down.' **et . . . et . . . et**: *238, f.*

10. **cum**: 'while.' *187.* **illī**: *Britannī.* **ex āridō**: 'from dry land.'

omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī, atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī, nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant, ūtēbantur. 15

The standard-bearer of the Tenth leaps overboard, bidding the others follow.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum ex-

---

11. **nōtissimīs locīs**: 'thoroughly acquainted with the ground. How lit.? *153, a,* and *144, b,* (2). **audācter**, etc.: the British were provided with weapons much like those of the Gauls (Fig. 109).

12. **īnsuēfactōs**: 'trained' to go into the water.

13. **generis**: with *imperītī*. *102.* B. 204, 1; A. 349, *a*; H. 451, 1.

14. **eādem**: *150, a.* **quō**: *163, c.* **pedestribus**: i.e. *terrestribus*, 'on land.'

15. **ūtēbantur**: 'were displaying.'

25. 1. **Quod**: 'Now . . . this.' *167.* **animadvertit**: *188, a.*

2. **speciēs**: 'appearance.' *80, b.* **inūsitātior**: 'less familiar.' Oar-driven galleys were not so well adapted to withstand the buffetings of northern waters as solidly built sailing vessels, such as those of the Venetans (III, chap. 13–14). **ad ūsum**: i.e. *ad nāvigandum*; 'the movement was more easily controlled.' How lit.? 'The galleys could be driven faster, and in any direction.

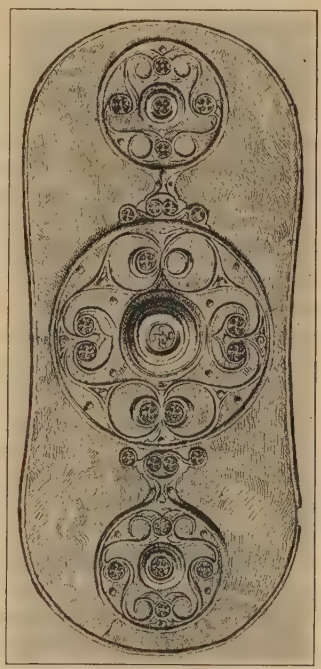


Figure 109. — British shield. Of bronze, enamelled; found in the Thames, near London.

pedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī, atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac summovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam, et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī, barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulērunt.

Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, 'Dēsilīte,' inquit, 'commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.'

---

4. **ad latus apertum**: 'over against the exposed flank,' the right flank of the enemy. The galleys were to be placed parallel with the shore. **inde**: = *ē nāvibus longīs*.

5. **fundīs**: 'with slings,' which hurled slingshots of lead when this material was available; such slingshots were sometimes inscribed (N. to II, 10, l. 2.). **sagittīs**: 'arrows.' *308*. **tormentīs**: 'artillery'; our word "artillery" was applied to engines of war, whose propelling force was derived from tension, before it came to be restricted to cannon, which derive their propelling force from explosives. The '*torsioners*' used on the galleys were probably small catapults, which Caesar elsewhere calls 'scorpions' (*343, a*).

6. **quae rēs**: 'and this manoeuver.' **ūsuī**: *112, b*.

7. **figūrā**: the galleys were relatively long, narrow, and low.

8. **paulum modo**: 'just a little,' from the water's edge.

10. **altitūdinem**: the sailing vessels which had been run aground on the sandy bottom formed a line, irregular because of the variation in depth, at least two thirds of a mile long; the water where the bows were driven into the sand was probably up to the soldiers' necks.

11. **quī**: as antecedent sc. *is*, subject of *inquit*. **aquilam**: 'eagle.' *324, b*, (1). **obtestātus**, etc.: 'praying the gods that his effort might turn out fortunately for the legion.' *199, a*.

13. **commīlitōnēs**: 'fellow-soldiers.' *93*. **vultis**: *71*.

14. **ego**: *87, b*. **certē**: 'at any rate.'

15. **praestiterō**: *176, c*.

Hōc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī, cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs prīmī nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquārunt.

Finally the Romans force the enemy back, and land.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque signīs occurrerat, sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla conciēbant.

---

16. **cum**: *185, c.* **vōce**: *136, b.* **magnā**: 'loud.'

17. **cohortātī inter sē**: *159* and *226, c.*

18. **dēdecus**: 'disgrace,' the loss of the eagle of the legion. *13, f.* **ūniversī**: 'all together.'

20. **subsecūtī**: 'they followed and.' How lit.? *228, a.* **appropinquārunt**: *64, a,* (1).

26. 1. **Pugnātum**, etc.: 'sharp fighting was kept up by both sides.' How lit.? **utrīsque**: *51.*

2. **ōrdinēs servāre**: 'to keep the ranks.' **fīrmiter īnsistere**: 'to get a firm footing.'

3. **signa**: *324, b,* (2). **alius**, etc.: 'one from this ship, another from that.' *171, c.* **quibuscumque . . . aggregābat**: 'they were joining any standards that they had fallen in with.' How lit.? *50, a.*

6. **singulārēs**: 'one by one.' **cōnspexerant**: *188, d.*

7. **incitātīs equīs**: 'urging their horses forward.' *144, b,* (2). **adoriēbantur**: 'they would attack.' *175, d.* **plūrēs paucōs**: *plūrēs hostēs paucōs Romānōs.*

8. **ab latere apertō**: 'on the exposed flank,' the right side, unprotected by a shield. **ūniversōs**: 'groups of soldiers,' contrasted with the individuals referred to in l. 6.

Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia, mīlitibus complērī iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia summittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

The Britons offer to submit, and return Commius to Caesar.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs sēsē datūrōs, quaeque imperāsset, factūrōs pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum, proeliō factō,

---

10. **scaphās**: 'small boats,' carried on the galleys.

11. **speculātōria nāvigia**: 'scouting vessels,' smaller and lighter than the galleys, without a beak, and designed for rapid movement.

13. **in āridō**: 'on dry ground.' *154, a.* **cōnstitērunt**: *188, a.*

15. **neque**: 'but . . . not.' **equitēs**: still at Ambleteuse (chap. 23, l. 4).

16. **īnsulam capere**: 'to make the island.' **Hōc**, etc.: 'in this respect only was Caesar's usual good fortune incomplete.' How lit.?

27. 2. **recēpērunt**: *188, a.* **statim**: *77.* **lēgātōs**: 'envoys.'

3. **datūrōs**: *89, c.* **quaeque**, etc.: i.e. *et ea, quae imperāvisset, factūrōs esse. 214, a.*

5. **suprā**: chap. 21, ll. 14–20. **dēmōnstrāveram**: cf. II, 1, l. 2, and N.

7. **ōrātōris modō**: 'in the character of an envoy,' lit. 'of a pleader.' *80, b.*

8. **proeliō factō**: i.e. *post hōc proelium. 144, b,* (2).

remīsērunt. In petendā pāce eius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt et, propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerē- 10
tur, petīvērunt.

Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō, in continentem lēgātīs missīs, pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere sē imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit;

Figure 110. — Cliffs on the English coast, north of Dover.

9. **remīsērunt**: sc. *eum*. **eius reī**: i.e. *quod Commius, ōrātor Caesaris, comprehēnsus atque in vincula coniectus erat*.

10. **imprūdentiam**: 'lack of knowledge.' **ignōscerētur**: sc. *sibi*, 'that pardon be granted them.' *199, a*, and *106, b*.

12. **questus**: *226, c*. **quod . . . intulissent**: 'because (as he said) they had,' etc. *183, a*. B. 286, 1; A. 540; H. 588, II. **continentem**: 'the continent,' Gaul.

13. **petīssent**: *187*. **sine causā**: from the Roman point of view; but the Romans would have considered the defence of the shores of Italy against an armed force a most noble action. Thus conditions alter opinions. In 1916 many Mexicans considered the presence of the American punitive expedition in Mexico as a hostile invasion.

14. **ignōscere sē**: 'that he would pardon.' **imprūdentiae**: *105*.

quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem, ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam, paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

The ships with the cavalry are prevented from landing by a storm.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diem quārtum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt.

Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae

---

16. **arcessītam**: i.e. *cum ea* (*pars*) *arcessīta esset*. *227, a*, (1).

17. **suōs**: 'their people'; the demobilization of the British host was ordered. **iussērunt**: sc. *eī*, the British envoys.

18. **convenīre**: *ad Caesarem*. **Caesarī commendāre**: 'to put under Caesar's protection.'

28. 1. **Hīs rēbus**: the giving of hostages, the demobilization of the British host, and the presence of British leaders in Caesar's camp. **post — quam**: = *quārtō diē postquam*, 'three days after' by our reckoning; cf. chap. 9, l. 2, and N.

2. **est ventum**: *73, d*.

3. **suprā**: chap. 22, ll. 16–19. **sustulerant**: 'had taken on board.'

4. **superiōre portū**: Ambleteuse. **lēnī ventō**: 'with a light breeze,' blowing north or northeast. *138*. **solvērunt**: 'sailed.'

5. **ex castrīs**: Caesar's camp was on rising ground, not far from the shore, so that it commanded a wide view of the sea. **vidērentur**: trans. as passive.

6. **tempestās**: 'storm,' a northeaster. Cf. N. to chap. 23, l. 2.

7. **aliae . . . aliae**: *171, b*. **eōdem**, etc.: Ambleteuse.

8. **referrentur**: sc. *ut*. **ad . . . occāsum**: southwest from Caesar's landing-place. See Map II, **A**.

est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae, tamen ancorīs iactīs, cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

The fleet on the British shore is wrecked by a high tide.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat, quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflictābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur.

Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent — fūni-

---

9. **propius**: *123, b.* B. 141, 3; A. 432, *a*; H. 420, 5. **suō**: 'to themselves.' How lit.? **dēicerentur**: 'were driven.' *57, b.*

10. **quae . . . cum**: 'nevertheless they anchored and when they.' How lit.? *167*, and *144, b*, (2).

11. **adversā nocte**: 'in the face of the night,' a form of expression transferred from space (as *adversō colle, 134, a*) to time. **in altum prōvectae**: 'they put out to sea and.' How lit.? *226, c*, and *228, a.*

29. 1. **eādem nocte**: the night of August 30, as determined by astronomical calculations. **accidit . . . plēna**: 'it happened to be full moon.' How lit.? **quī diēs**: 'and this date.'

2. **aestūs . . . incognitum**: the rise and fall of the tide in the Mediterranean, as in our Great Lakes, is hardly perceptible. Caesar's men had learned of the existence of tides in the Ocean the previous year (III, chap. 12); what they had failed to notice was the coincidence of the highest tides with the time of the full moon. At Dover the highest tide rises about 19 feet; at Boulogne, 25 feet.

4. **exercitum**, etc.: 'had had the army brought over.' *229, b.*

7. **administrandī**: 'of managing' the vessels, the crews being on shore.

8. **auxiliandī**: by getting men on to the ships.

9. **fūnibus . . . āmissīs**: 'on account of the loss of,' etc. *144, b*, (3).

bus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et quod omnibus cōnstābat, hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The Britons, learning of the disaster, secretly plan a revolt.

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent, et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere; quod, hīs

---

11. **magna**: with *perturbātiō*; emphatic. *353, d.* **id**, etc.: 'as was bound to happen.' How lit.? *160, c.*

12. **perturbātiō**: 'commotion.' **Neque**, etc.: 'for there were no other ships.' *90, a.* How lit.?

13. **reportārī**: 'be carried back.' **possent**: *194, a.*

14. **ūsuī**: trans. as if *ūtilia*. *112, a.* **cōnstābat**, etc.: 'it was clear that they would have to winter.' How lit.?

15. **hīs locīs**: in Britain. **in hiemem**: 'for the winter.' *12, a.* Rations had been taken for only a limited stay in Britain.

30. 2. **inter sē collocūtī**: *159.* B. 245, 1; A. 301, *f*; H. 502, 1.

5. **quae erant**: 'which was.' **hōc etiam angustiōra**: 'even smaller (than usual for two legions) for this reason,' explained by the *quod*-clause. **impedīmentīs**: left in Gaul. *311.*

6. **optimum factū esse**: 'that the best thing to do was.' How lit.? **optimum**: in predicate, after *esse*. *148, d.* **factū**: *232.*

7. **dūxērunt**: 'decided'; the subject is *prīncipēs* in l. 1. **rebelliōne factā**: 'renewing hostilities.' How lit? *144, b,* (2). **frūmentō**: *127, a.*

8. **rem**: 'their operations.' **hīs**, etc.: 'if these (invaders) should be,' etc. *144, b,* (4).

superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs, nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant.

Itaque, rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā, paulātim ex castrīs discēdere ac suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

Caesar, anticipating trouble, gathers supplies and hastens repairs on the ships.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex eventū nāvium suārum, et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur.

Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et, quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et, quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī, ex continentī comportārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum

---

9. **reditū**: 'return.' *127, a.* **posteā**: 'in the future.'

11. **paulātim**: one or two at a time. That the British leaders were assembled in the Roman camp is clear from ll. 1–2.

31. 1. **cognōverat**: 'was familiar with.' *176, b.*

2. **ex . . . suārum**: 'from what had happened to his ships.' How lit.? **ex eō, quod**: 'from the fact that.' *198, b.*

4. **ad . . . comparābat**: 'he was providing for every emergency.'

5. **frūmentum**: from the new harvest. Later a head of wheat on British coins became an appropriate symbol of the island's staple crop (Fig. 111). **quae . . . nāvēs, eārum**: = *eārum nāvium, quae. 165, c.*

7. **quae**: as antecedent sc. *ea*, subject-accusative with *comportārī.* **ad eās rēs**: 'for that purpose.'

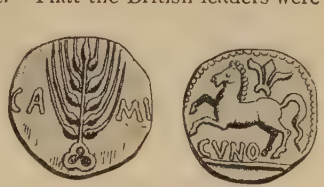


Figure 111. — British coin.

Gold, struck within a century after Caesar's invasions. Inscription, CAMU-[LODUNI], CUNO[BELINI], 'of Cunobelinus, at Camulodunum,' modern Colchester.

Cunobelinus was a British ruler, better known under the name Cymbeline.

summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset, effēcit.

The Britons make a treacherous attack, using war-chariots.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur VII, neque ūllā ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, eī, quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt, pulverem maiōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsiliī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem

---

9. **summō studiō**: 'with the utmost enthusiasm.' **administrārētur**: 'the work was carried on.' *184, a.*

10. **reliquīs**, etc.: sc. *nāvibus* (*131, a*); 'he made it possible to utilize the others fairly well for navigation.' How lit.? *203*, (3).

32. 1. **geruntur**: *190, a.* **legiōne**: with *missā*.

2. **frūmentātum**: 'to get grain,' from the fields. *231, a.* **VII**: *septima. 38, a*, and *36.* **neque**, etc.: 'without any suspicion of hostilities up to that time.' How lit.?

3. **hominum**: *Britannōrum. 98, a.*

4. **ventitāret**: 'came frequently,' a frequentative from *veniō. 78, a.* **eī**: *mīlitēs.*

5. **portīs castrōrum**: *334, a.* **in statiōne**: 'on guard.' *81.*

6. **pulverem**: '(a cloud of) dust.' *13, g.* **quam**, etc.: 'than usual.' *197, c.* **parte**: 'direction.'

7. **quam in partem**: 'in which.' *165, a.* **quod erat**: 'which was actually the case.'

8. **suspicātus**: *226, c.* **aliquid**, etc.: 'some new scheme had been worked up.' How lit.? **aliquid**: *168*, and *49, a.* **initum**: sc. *esse. 68, b* and *c.* **cōnsiliī**: *97, b.*

9. **cohortēs**: probably four in number, one at each of the four gates of the camp. How many men? *307, c.* **in statiōnibus**: 'on guard'; plural because each gate was thought of as a separate post.

proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem cohortēs succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit.

Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et, cōnfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs, hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs, noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs, dēpositīs armīs, in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs, incertīs ōrdinibus, perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

---

10. **reliquīs**: six cohorts, of the 10th legion. The four cohorts on guard went with Caesar; two stood guard in their place, and the last four cohorts of the legion were ordered to arm and follow Caesar as soon as they could. *307, c.* **in statiōnem succēdere**: 'to relieve guard.'

11. **armārī**: 'to arm,' lit. 'to arm themselves.' *174.* **cōnfestim**: 'with all haste.'

12. **paulō longius**: 'some little distance.' *153, a.* **suōs**: the men of the 7th legion.

13. **aegrē sustinēre**: 'were holding their own with difficulty.' **cōnfertā legiōne**: 'since the legion was crowded together.' *144, b,* (3). The more closely the men stood the more effective were the missiles of the enemy surrounding them.

14. **conicī**: sc. *in eam. 57, b.*

15. **dēmessō**: 'cut.' *144, b.* (3). **ūna**: 'only one.'

17. **dēlituerant**: 'had hidden.' **dispersōs, occupātōs**: sc. *eōs* (= *nostrōs* of l. 16), object of *adortī.* **dēpositīs armīs**: 'having laid aside their weapons.'

18. **in metendō**: 'in reaping.' *230,* (4). **adortī**: *226, c.*

19. **incertīs ōrdinibus**: 'since their ranks were in disorder,' a proper formation being impossible under the circumstances.

20. **essedīs**: 'with war chariots.' Scythed war chariots, with a long sharp blade projecting from each end of the axle, were in use in Oriental countries, but the British chariots to which Caesar refers were apparently without scythes. Remains of chariot wheels have been found in the graves of warriors.

The way the Britons use war-chariots in battle.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pugnae:

Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt, atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur.

Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt, atque ita currūs collocant, ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant.

---

33. 1. **ex essedīs**: with *pugnae*. *150, d.* B. 353, 5, N.

2. **per . . . perequitant**: sc. *essedāriī*; 'they' (the chariot-fighters) 'ride everywhere.' Each chariot (Fig. 112) carried a driver and one fighter. As the drivers dashed against the enemy, the men in the chariots sprang out and fought on foot. The chariots meanwhile withdrew a little from the thick of the fight, so that the drivers could see how the battle was going. If they saw their warriors defeated in any part of the line they swiftly drove thither, took on board those hard pressed, and quickly passed beyond the reach of danger.

Figure 112. — British war chariot.

3. **terrōre equōrum**: 'fright caused by the horses'; subjective genitive. *95.* **ōrdinēs**: 'the ranks' of the enemy.

4. **sē . . . īnsinuāvērunt**: 'they have penetrated'; the British cavalry were so deployed as to leave spaces through which the chariots could be driven against the enemy.

5. **pedibus**: 'on foot.' *131, a.*

6. **Aurīgae**: 'the drivers.' **ita . . . ut**: *197, b.*

7. **illī**: the chariot-fighters. **premantur**: *220.*

8. **ad suōs**: 'to their own lines,' we should say. **receptum**: 'a retreat.'

Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere, et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

Caesar brings aid; the Britons prepare to attack the camp.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs, novitāte pugnae, tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō, ad lacessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et, brevī tempore intermissō, in castra legiōnēs redūxit.

Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī, discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs com-

---

9. **stabilitātem**: 'steadiness.' **peditum**: *10, d.*

10. **praestant**: 'exhibit'; sc. *essedāriī.* **tantum . . . efficiunt**: 'they become so expert.' How lit.?

11. **incitātōs equōs sustinēre**: 'to keep control of their horses at full gallop.' How lit.?

12. **brevī**: for *brevī tempore*, 'in an instant.' **moderārī**: 'to check.' **flectere**: 'to turn.' **per**, etc.: 'to run along the pole.'

13. **iugō**: yokes were used with horses as well as cattle; see Fig. 29, p. 8. **citissimē**: 'with the utmost quickness.' *34, b.*

34. 1. **rēbus**: ablative of means. **nostrīs**: dative after *tulit*. *154, a.* **novitāte**: 'strangeness.' *135, a.*

4. **Quō factō**: 'Though this had been accomplished,' referring to the effects of Caesar's arrival. *144, b,* (5).

5. **aliēnum**: 'unfavorable.' **suō**: 'favorable,' to himself. How lit.?

7. **nostrīs**, etc.: while the Romans were busy repairing ships and strengthening their defenses, the Britons 'withdrew' from the open country, gathering for attack. **quī**: as antecedent, sc. *eī* as subject of *discessērunt*.

plūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent.

Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

Caesar repels the attack on the camp and pursues the Britons.

35. Caesar, etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eīs

---

9. **quae . . . continērent**: *194, a.* B. 283; H. 591, 2.

13. **praedae faciendae**: 'of securing booty.' **in perpetuum**: 'forever.' **suī**: *154, b.* B. 339, 5; A. 504, *c*; H. 626, 3.

14. **darētur**: *204*, (3). **expulissent**: *218*, (1), *b.*

15. **Hīs rēbus**: 'by means of these statements.' How lit.? **equitātūs**: apparently including also the *essedārīī*, the close connection of whom with the cavalry has already been noted.

35. 1. **idem**: subject of *fore*, explained by the appositive clause *ut . . . effugerent. 203*, (4).

3. **effugerent**: 'they would escape from.' **nactus**: *61, a*, (3), and *226, c.* **xxx**: a squad (*turma*). *38, b*, and *309, c.*

4. **ante**: chap. 21, 14–20. The 30 horsemen were too few to be of service except in scouting or in following up a fleeing enemy.

6. **diūtius**: 'very long.' *153, a.*

7. **ac**: 'but.' *234, b.* **tantō spatiō**, etc.: 'so far as their speed and strength allowed.' How lit.? *147, c.* **secūtī**, etc.: sc *nostrī.*

8. **complūrēs**: accusative. **ex eīs**: *97, d.*

occīdērunt; deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs, sē in castra recēpērunt.

The Britons sue for peace. Caesar sails back to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī, ab hostibus missī, ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperāverat, duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod, propinquā diē aequinoctiī, īnfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat.

Ipse, idōneam tempestātem nactus, paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt, sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs, quōs reliquae, capere nōn potuērunt, et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

Legionaries from two transports are attacked by the Morini.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar, in

---

36. 2. **Hīs**: with *duplicāvit;* kind of dative? *109, a.* **quem**, etc.: see chap. 27, ll. 12–19.

3. **duplicāvit**: 'doubled.'

4. **propinquā diē aequinoctiī**: 'since the season of the equinox was near at hand,' a period when storms are unusually prevalent. *144, b,* (3). The equinox fell on September 26, and Caesar probably left Britain at least a week before that date. He had been on the island about three weeks, and had hardly been able to go out of sight of the seashore.

5. **hiemī**, etc.: 'that the voyage ought to run the risk of stormy weather.' How lit.?

8. **eōsdem portūs**: probably Boulogne and Ambleteuse.

9. **reliquae**: 'as the rest'; sc. *nāvēs cēpērunt.* **capere**: 'make.' **paulō īnfrā**: i.e. southwest. Whether the two transports made some harbor, or were stranded on the beach, Caesar does not say.

37. 1. **Quibus nāvibus**: 'these vessels,' the two transports mentioned in l. 8 of the preceding chapter. **essent expositī**: 'had been landed.'

2. **ccc**: *trecentī*, averaging about 150 men to a ship. **castra**: probably constructed by Publius Sulpicius Rufus for the protection of

Britanniam proficīscēns, pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī, orbe factō, sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia VI convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit.

Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs quattuor fortissimē pūgnāvērunt; et, paucīs vulneribus acceptīs, complūrēs ex hīs occīdērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs, abiectīs armīs, terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

---

the harbor at *portūs Itius*, Boulogne; cf. chap. 22, ll. 23–24. **Morinī**, etc.: belonging to the part of the Morini who had given hostages to Caesar just before he sailed for Britain; cf. chap. 22, ll. 1–12.

4. **nōn ita magnō**: 'not very large.' **circumstetērunt**: sc. *eōs*, 'the three hundred.'

5. **sī . . . nōllent, pōnere**: in the direct form, *sī . . . nōn vultis, pōnite.* **pōnere**: here = *dēpōnere*, 'lay down.'

6. **orbe factō**: 'formed a circle and'; how lit.? *144, b,* (2). The 'circle' formed by soldiers for defense was hollow and corresponded with our "hollow square." *338.* **ad clamōrem**: 'on (hearing) the shouting' of the attacking Morini. In Gaul news was transmitted quickly by shouting across the country (VII, 3, ll. 8–13).

7. **hominum**: i.e. *Morinōrum;* dependent on *mīlia. 98, a.* **vi**: *sex.* The number is probably exaggerated; in any case it evidences a much denser population in this region than is implied for the regions penetrated in the expedition against the Morini and Menapii the previous year; cf. III, chap. 28–29.

8. **omnem equitātum**: including probably the cavalry that had embarked in the 18 transports but had failed to reach Britain (chap. 22, ll. 16–19), as well as the contingent left with Sulpicius (chap. 22, ll. 23–24); the rest must have gone with Titurius Sabinus and Cotta (chap. 22, ll. 20-22).

12. **Posteā quam**: *188, a.* **vērō**: *236, a.*

Caesar inflicts punishment upon the Morini and Menapii.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs legiōnibus, quās ex Britanniā redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent (quō perfugiō superiōre annō fuerant ūsī), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt.

At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vastātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

Winter quarters in Belgium. Thanksgiving decreed at Rome.

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt.

---

38. 1. **T. Labiēnum**: he had probably accompanied Caesar to Britain.

3. **Quī cum**: 'And since they.' *184, a.* **siccitātēs**: plural because there was dryness in a number of marshes; trans. 'dryness.' *92, c.*

4. **quō**, etc.: '(a place) to which they might escape.' *194, a.* **quō perfugiō**: i.e. *perfugium, quō*, 'the refuge which.' *165, b.*

5. **superiōre annō**: 56 B.C.; cf. III, chap. 28–29.

7. **Menapiōrum**: N. to III, 28, l. 3, and Fig. 113.

10. **in**, etc.: cf. I, 12, l. 11 and N.

13. **reliquae neglēxērunt**: *obsidēs mittere.* The expedition to Britain, as that into Germany, was followed by no tangible results; but great fame was thereby won by the daring general for having opened up to his fellow-countrymen new and extensive regions. Hence the thanksgiving

Figure 113.—Coin of the Menapii.

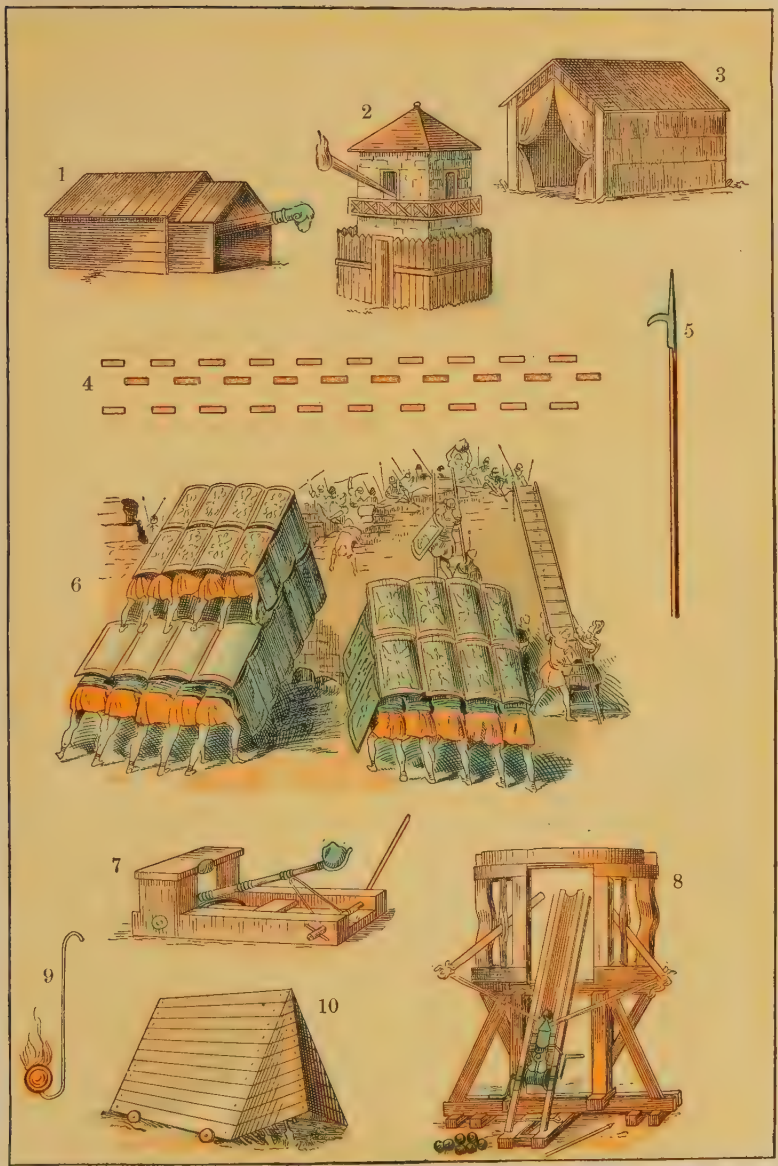
Gold, of very crude workmanship. The attribution to the Menapii is not certain.

Hīs rēbus gestīs, ex litterīs Caesaris diērum XX sup-
15 plicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

---

decreed at Rome, obtained by his friends for Caesar in the face of all the opposition that his enemies could stir up (N. to chap. 14, l. 14).

14. **supplicātiō**: cf. II, 35, ll. 10-12. This 'thanksgiving' was to be 5 days longer than the one decreed at the end of 57 B.C., though that was the longest known up to that time.



1. Timbered Shed, *testudo*, with Battering Ram. 2. Fire-signal Tower.
3. Tent, *tabernaculum*. 4. Order of Battle. 5. Wall Hook, *falx muralis*.
6. Turtle-shell roof, *testudo*. 7. *Onager*. 8. *Ballista*.
9. *Glans fusili ex argilla* (V. 43). 10. Turtle-shell shed, *testudo*.

COMMENTARIUS QUINTUS

Second Expedition to Britain. 1–23

Caesar orders ships built, and quiets disturbances in Illyricum.

1. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus, discēdēns ab hībernīs Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannīs facere cōnsuērat, lēgātīs imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī, quam plūrimās possent, hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrārent.

Figure 114. — View across Belgium's fertile fields.

Caesar usually chose the site of his winter quarters with reference to the grain supply.

---

1. 1. **L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus**: 54 B.C. *240, a*, and *234, a*.

2. **hībernīs**: in Belgium (IV, chap. 38). **Italiam**: *283, b*.

Eārum mōdum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnēsque paulō facit humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus magnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cognōverat; ad onera ac multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs, quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem humilitās multum adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs, ex Hispāniā apportārī iubet.

Ipse, conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctīs, in Īllyricum proficīscitur, quod ā Pīrustīs fīnitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus mīlitēs imperat certumque in locum convenīre iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā, Pīrustae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī doceant, nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriīs satisfacere. Perceptā ōrātiōne eōrum, Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Eīs ad diem adductīs, ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter cīvitātēs dat, quī lītem aestiment poenamque cōnstituant.

---

7. **onerandī**: 'of loading.' **subductiōnēs**: 'beaching.' *92, a.* **humiliōrēs**: 'shallower.' **quam quibus**: i.e. *quam eae* [*nāvēs*] *sunt, quibus.*

9. **commūtātiōnēs aestuum**: cf. IV, 29, l. 2, and N.

11. **lātiōrēs**: predicative; sc. *eās facit.*

12. **āctuāriās**: predicative, 'for rapid movement,' with the use of oars as well as sails.

13. **humilitās**: 'lowness' of the deck above the water.

14. **Hispāniā**: *296.* **apportārī**: 'be brought.'

16. **perāctīs**: 'finished.' **Īllyricum**: *298.*

18. **incursiōnibus**: 'raids.'

26. **arbitrōs**: 'referees.' *7, c,* and *80, b.*

27. **lītem**: 'the (matter of) damages.'

Proceeding to Gaul he finds ships ready, visits the Treverans.

2. Hīs cōnfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitīs omnibus hībernīs, singulārī mīlitum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter DC eius generis, cuius suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nāvēs, et longās XXVIII, invenit īnstrūctās, neque multum abesse ab eō, quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint. Collaudātīs mīlitibus atque eīs, quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit, ostendit, atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenīre iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cognōverat, circiter mīlium passuum XXX ā continentī; huic reī, quod satis esse vīsum est mīlitum, relīquit.

Ipse cum legiōnibus expeditīs IIII et equitibus DCCC in fīnēs Trēverōrum proficīscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō pārēbant, Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dīcēbantur.

By means of hostages he binds Indutiomarus to keep the peace.

3. Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtīus Galliae equitātū valet magnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit.

In eā cīvitāte duo dē prīncipātū inter sē contendēbant, Indutiomārus et Cingetorīx; ē quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cognitum est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque omnēs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amīcitiā

---

2. 5. **DC**: *sescentās.* **cuius**: *cuius generis nāvēs*; trans. *cuius* as if *quod.* **suprā**: in chap. 1.

6. **longās**: i.e. *nāvēs duodētrīgintā. 346, a.* **neque**, etc.: 'and that in a few days they would be about ready to launch.' How lit.?

7. **Collaudātīs**: 'warmly commending.' How lit.?

12. **huic reī**: 'for this purpose.' **quod mīlitum**: 'so many soldiers as.' *97, b.*

3. 3. **suprā**: III, 11, ll. 1–2. **tangit**: 'extends to'; lit. 'touches.'

populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōnfīrmāvit, quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur, ostendit.

At Indutiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, eīsque, quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditīs, quae, ingentī magnitūdine, per mediōs fīnēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre īnstituit. Sed posteā quam nōn nūllī prīncipēs ex eā cīvitāte, et familiāritāte Cingetorīgis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī, ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suīs prīvātim rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitātī cōnsulere nōn possent, veritus, nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, Indutiomārus lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit:

Sēsē idcircō ab suīs discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprūdentiam lāberētur; itaque cīvitātem in suā potestāte esse, sēque, sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, et suās cīvitātisque fortūnās eius fidēī permissūrum.

4. Caesar, etsī intellegēbat, quā dē causā ea dīcerentur, quaeque eum rēs ab īnstitūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmere cōgerētur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rēbus comparātīs, Indutiomārum ad sē cum cc obsidibus venīre iussit. Hīs adductīs, in eīs fīliō propinquīsque eius omnibus, quōs nōmināTim ēvocāverat, cōnsōlātus Indutiomārum hortātusque est, utī in officiō

---

11. **per aetātem**: 'by reason of age.' **in armīs esse**: i.e. *arma ferre.*

21. **Sēsē**, etc.: '(saying) that he.' **idcircō**: 'on this account.'

23. **imprūdentiam**: 'lack of foresight.' **lāberētur**: 'fall away,' becoming disloyal.

4. 2. **ab īnstitūtō cōnsiliō**: 'from (carrying out) the plan (which he had) formed.'

6. **ēvocāverat**: sc. *Caesar.*

manēret; nihilō tamen sētius, prīncipibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātīs, hōs singillātim Cingetorīgī conciliāvit; quod cum meritō eius ab sē fierī intellegēbat, tum magnī interesse arbitrābātur, eius auctōritātem inter suōs quam plūrimum valēre, cuius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem perspexisset.

Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomārus, suam grātiam inter suōs minuī, et, quī iam ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.

Caesar gathers his forces at portus Itius.

5. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit.

Ibi cognōscit, LX nāvēs, quae in Meldīs factae erant, tempestāte reiectās cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūctās invenit.

Eōdem equitātus tōtius Galliae convenit, numerō mīlium quattuor, prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

---

9. **quod cum**, etc.: 'and not only did he understand that he was doing this in accordance with what Cingetorix deserved.' How lit.? *186, b.*

10. **eius**: *Cingetorīgis. 19, d.* **magnī**: *103, d.*

14. **quī**: 'although he.' *187.* B. 283, 3, *b*; H. 593, 2.

15. **gravius . . . exārsit**: 'on account of this grievance he became much more indignant.' How lit.?

5. 3. **nāvēs**, etc.: these vessels had to be taken down the Marne and the Seine to the Channel, then north to Boulogne (portus Itius); see Map 11.

7. **numerō**: *142, a*, and *85.* **mīlium**: dependent on *equitātus. 100, a*, and *309, b.*

11. **abesset**: *185, c.*

Dumnorix attempts to elude Caesar's vigilance, and is slain.

6. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Aeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperiī, magnī animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cognōverat. Accēdēbat hūc, quod in conciliō Aeduōrum Dumnorīx dixerat, sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferrī; quod dictum Aeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cognōverat.

Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim quod, īnsuētus nāvigandī, mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impedīrī sēsē dīceret. Posteā quam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī adēmptā, prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit, utī in continentī remanērent; metū territāre:

Nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent.

---

6. 2. **ante**: I, chap. 16–20. Dumnorix had always opposed Caesar.

3. **eum**: sc. *esse*. *289, c.*

6. **sibi . . . dēferrī**: contrary to the constitution of the Aeduans, who elected a Vergobret annually; see I, 16, ll. 12–14.

11. **īnsuētus nāvigandī**: 'unused to sailing.' *230, (1).*

12. **religiōnibus**: 'by religious scruples.' **dīceret**: *183, b.*

13. **obstinātē**: 'persistently.'

14. **sēvocāre**: 'to call aside,' for secret conference. *79, d.*

16. **tērritāre**: sc. *eōs*; 'he worked upon their fears (saying).' *182*, and *213, b.* How lit.?

17. **spoliārētur**: 'was being stripped,' by taking the leading men to Britain.

Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

7. Quā rē cognitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Aeduae dignitātis tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum, quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius eius āmentiam prōgredī vidēbat, prōspiciendum, nē quid sibi ac reī pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī magnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam, ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō tamen sētius omnia eius cōnsilia cognōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem mīlitēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet.

At, omnium impeditīs animīs, Dumnorīx cum equitibus Aeduōrum ā castrīs, īnsciente Caesare, domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs, magnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit retrahīque imperat; sī vim faciat neque pāreat, interficī iubet, nihil hunc, sē absente, prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns, līberum sē līberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

---

7. 3. **posset**: sc. *eum coercēre et dēterrēre.*

4. **prōspiciendum**: sc. *esse statuēbat.*

6. **eō locō**: portus Itius, Boulogne. **commorātus**: 'while waiting.' **Cōrus**: 'from the northwest.'

8. **dabat operam**: 'was taking pains.'

10. **tempestātem**: cf. IV, 23, l. 2, and N.

16. **retrahī**: sc. *eum*, 'that he be brought back.'

18. **prō sānō**: 'like a man in his senses.' How lit.? **praesentis**: sc. *suī*, i.e. *Caesaris.*

20. **clāmitāns**: 'crying out.' *78, a.*

Caesar sails to Britain, lands, and captures a stronghold.

8. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum III legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur, cognōsceret, cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum V legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī relīquerat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit.

Et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus, mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit et, longius dēlātus aestū, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōnspexit. Tum, rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus, rēmīs contendit, ut eam partem īnsulae caperet, quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs, nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre, longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt.

Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cognōvit, cum magnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque commodī causā

---

8. 4. **prō . . . rē**: 'as conditions at the time might require.' How lit.?

5. **parī**: trans. as if *eōdem*.

8. **Āfricō**: 'southwest wind.' Caesar probably sailed about July 6.

11. **aestūs**, etc.: the change of course is shown on Map 11, **A**.

12. **caperet**: 'reach.'

14. **laudanda**: 'praiseworthy.' **vectōriīs**, etc.: 'heavy transports.'

15. **rēmigandī**: 'of rowing'; the transports were provided with oars, in addition to the usual sails (Fig. 202, in Vocab.).

17. **merīdiānō tempore**: 'midday.'

21. **annōtinīs**: sc. *nāvibus*, 'ships of the previous year.'

PLATE VIII CHALK CLIFFS NEAR DOVER

Between Dover and Deal. The cliff is here about 400 feet high. At the top is the lighthouse of South Foreland.

fēcerat, amplius DCCC ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā lītore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

9. Caesar, expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cognōvit, quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus X ad mare relictīs et equitibus CCC, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat; eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse, noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter XII, hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est.

Illī, equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī, ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbrīs arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpugnābant, nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legiōnis septimae, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adiectō, locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt, paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram ignōrābat, et quod, magnā

---

22. **DCCC**: *octingentae*; with *quae*, 'of which more than 800.' *97, c*, and *129, b*.

9. 3. **quī . . . essent**: 'to guard the ships.' How lit.? *193, a*, and *112, b*.

5. **nāvibus**: dative. **mollī**: affording good anchorage.

9. **essedīs**: see IV, chap. 33 and Notes. **flūmen**: the Great Stour; see Map II.

14. **omnēs**, etc.: 'all the entrances were obstructed.'

15. **rārī prōpugnābant**: 'in small bodies were hurling missiles.' How lit.? The British stronghold was perhaps near Canterbury.

16. **prohibēbant**: 'were trying to prevent.' *175, e*, and *223, a*.

17. **testūdine**: *345*. **aggere**: probably made of tree trunks. *341*.

parte diēī cōnsūmptā, mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

A storm shatters the fleet; Caesar orders repairs, returns inland.

10. Postrīdiē eius diēī māne tripertītō mīlitēs equitēsque in expedītiōnem mīsit, ut eōs, quī fūgerant, persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Atriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī nūntiārent, superiōre nocte maximā coortā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs afflictās atque in lītus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

11. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs litterīsque cognōverat, cōram perspicit, sīc ut, āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus, reliquae tamen reficī posse magnō negōtiō vidērentur.

Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scrībit, ut, quam plūrimās posset, eīs legiōnibus, quae sint apud eum, nāvēs īnstituat. Ipse,

---

10. 1. **tripertītō**: 'in three columns.'

2. **in expedītiōnem**: 'for a rapid march,' with light equipment.

3. **aliquantum itineris**: 'some distance.' How lit.? **extrēmī**: 'the rear' of the Roman force was just visible to those in camp.

11. 2. **in itinere resistere**: to beat off the enemy, without halting for a pitched battle.

3. **nūntiīs**: 'messengers,' mounted (chap. 10, l. 4). **litterīs**: 'dispatch,' from Quintus Atrius.

5. **negōtiō**: 'trouble.'

6. **fabrōs**: 'mechanics.' *7, c*, and *310, b*.

8. **eīs legionibus**: 'with (the help of) the legions,' at portus Itius. *160, d*.

etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit, nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs.

Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs, eāsdem cōpiās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem, unde redierat, proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperiī bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cuius fīnēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed, nostrō adventū permōtī, Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

The Britons and their island.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eīs incolitur, quōs nātōs in īnsulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dīcunt; maritima pars ab eīs, quī praedae ac bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiē-

9. **rēs**, etc.: 'it was a wearisome and laborious undertaking.' How lit.? *100, b.*

10. **subdūcī**: the ships were built so that they could be beached; chap. 1, ll. 6–10.

15. **eōdem**, etc.: the British stronghold, near modern Canterbury (chap. 9, ll. 11–19).

20. **Tamesis**: only the upper Thames formed the boundary of the territories ruled by Cassivellaunus. *14, c.* **marī**: at the point where Caesar landed, near Deal.

12. 1. **quōs**, etc.: *quōs nātōs* [*esse*] is subject of *prōditum* [*esse*]; 'who, they say, according to tradition, originated in the island itself.' How lit.? *294.*

2. **dīcunt**: *172, c.* Several ancient peoples considered themselves "autochthones," sprung from the soil in the region in which they dwelt.

runt (quī omnēs ferē eīs nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur, quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt), et, bellō illātō, ibi permānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecorum magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut aere aut nummō aureō, aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus examinātīs, prō nummō.

Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus,

---

4. **quī**, etc.: there was, for example, a British tribe called *Atrebātēs*.

6. **Hominum**, etc.: 'The population is beyond number.' How lit.?

Figure 115. — British gold coin.

Probably in circulation in Caesar's time. Obverse, curious patterns; reverse, conventional horse, star, chariot wheel.

7. **aedificia**: sc. *sunt*. **Gallicīs** [aedificiīs]: large round huts of timbers and wickerwork, with conical thatched roofs.

8. **aere**: 'bronze,' bronze coins. The earliest British bronze coins yet discovered date from a few years after Caesar's time.

9. **nummō aureō**: 'gold coins,' we should say. Gold coins began to be struck in Britain at least a hundred years before Caesar's invasions (Fig. 115). **tāleīs ferreīs**: 'iron bars.' **ad**, etc.: 'weighed to a certain standard,' lit. 'weight.' The iron currency bars that have been found represent several different weights, the heaviest being twice as heavy as the second, and so on.

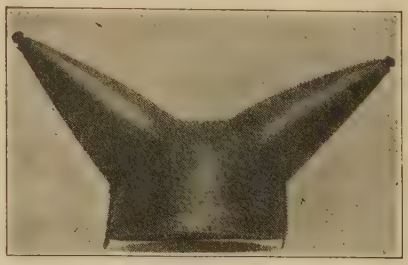


Figure 116. — British helmet.

Of bronze; found in the Thames at London.

11. **Nāscitur**: 'is found.' **plumbum album**: 'tin,' which began to be exported from Cornwall as early as the ninth century, B.C. **mediterrāneīs**: 'inland.' The Cornish tin mines were in reality near the sea, but they were a long distance from Caesar's landing-place.

in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est, praeter fāgum atque abietem.

Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc latus pertinet circiter mīlia passuum D.

12. **ferrum**: iron mines were worked in Sussex from the prehistoric period to the nineteenth century. **aere**: some bronze seems to have been imported into Britain (Fig. 125), but most of the bronze objects found in Britain were made there, from native mixtures of the component metals (Fig. 116).

14. **fāgum**: 'beech.' *5, b.* Caesar seems to have been mistaken in saying that the beech was not found in Britain; but his opportunities for direct observation were limited. **abietem**: 'fir.' *10, e.*

15. **Leporem**, etc.: 'hare, chicken, and goose.' The origin of the superstition it is difficult to understand; for the hare, cf. Levit. XI. 6. *13, g*, and *234, a*. **ānserem**: *11, c.* **gustāre**: 'to taste.'

16. **haec alunt**: 'they raise these.' **animī**, etc.: 'for pastime and amusement.' **Loca**: 'the region.' *6, c.* **sunt temperātiōra**: 'has a milder climate.' How lit.?

17. **remissiōribus frīgoribus**: 'the cold being less severe.' How lit.? *92, c*, and *13, f*.

13. 1. **nātūrā**: 'in shape'; lit. 'by nature.' **triquetra**: 'triangular.' **contrā**: 'opposite.'

2. **alter angulus**: 'one corner.' **ad Cantium**: 'by Kent' (Map 12, **A**); the boundaries of Kent in Caesar's time are not known with exactness.

3. **quō**: refers to *angulus*. **appelluntur**: 'come to land.' How lit.? **ad orientem sōlem**: 'toward the east.' How lit.?

4. **īnferior** [angulus]: see Map 12, **B**. **ad merīdiem**: 'toward the south.'

5. **D**: *quīngentōrum*; how many English miles in 500 Roman miles? *243, a, b*.

Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dīmidiō minor, ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmissūs, atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs subiectae īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt, diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmā esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs

---

6. **Alterum** [latus], etc.: 'The second side has a westerly trend, toward Spain.' How lit.? Caesar's erroneous belief that Spain extended north nearly to Britain was shared by his contemporaries, and even by some writers after his time. See Map 12.

7. **quā ex parte**: 'and on this side.' **dīmidiō minor**: 'a half smaller.' How lit.? *140.*

8. **Britannia**: sc. *est*. **parī**, etc.: '(reached by) a passage just as long as that from Gaul to Britain.' How lit.? **parī spatiō**: descriptive ablative, taking the place of an adjective, and coördinated with *minor* by *sed*. **trānsmissūs**: genitive, depending on *spatiō*. **atque**: *233, c.*

9. **In . . . cursū**: 'half way across,' between Britain and Ireland. How lit.? *152, a.*

10. **Mona**: see Map 12. **subiectae** [esse], etc.: 'are thought to lie off (the coast on this side).'

11. **īnsulae**: probably the Hebrides are referred to. **nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt**: perhaps Greek writers, whose works have perished, are meant.

12. **sub brūmā**: 'about the winter solstice.' The statement regarding a period of thirty days without the sun is not true of the Hebrides or of the other islands near Scotland.

13. **Nōs**: *156.* **percontātiōnibus**: 'through inquiries.' **certīs**, etc.: 'by exact measurements (made) with a water-clock.' How lit.? A water-clock, *clepsydra*, was used in a Roman camp, especially to mark the watches. *242, e.*

14. **ex aquā**: with *mēnsūrīs*. *150, d.* **breviōrēs**: Caesar's observations were made in summer; in winter the nights would of course be longer.

MAP 12

MAP OF BRITAIN AS CONCEIVED BY CAESAR

Book V, 13 To face page 300

EXPLANATION

In view of the meagerness of Caesar's information, his statement about the geography of Britain is surprisingly near the truth in essential particulars. In this respect it compares favorably with the statements of modern travelers and explorers in regard to regions of which they have seen only a small part.

He knew that the Island was triangular in shape, and in his two expeditions he had himself seen a portion of the coast facing Gaul (chap. 13, l. 1). He could easily believe that one corner (**A**) faced east, another (**B**) toward the south. His language implies that he had a vague idea of a projection eastward (**C**) at the northern extremity (l. 18). He knew the location, and approximately the size, of Ireland (l. 7).

Caesar, as other ancients, found it more difficult to estimate distances north and south than east and west. He fell easily into the error of supposing that the northern end of Spain extended so far that it lay west of the southern part of Britain (l. 6); and his conception of the relative positions of the two Gauls, Italy and Illyricum, was probably very nearly as represented.

The strait between Italy and Sicily, now Strait of Messina, is called by Caesar *Fretum* (C. II, l. 3).

vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, DCC mīlium.

Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīlia passuum DCCC in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur.

Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī.

Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeru-

---

15. **ut**, etc.: 'according to their idea,' i.e. of the Britons. How lit.?

16. **DCC**: *septingentōrum*. **mīlium**: *100, b*.

17. **Tertium** [latus]: cf. *ūnum* (l. 1), and *alterum* (l. 6).

19. **Hōc**: *hōc latus*. **DCCC**: *octingenta*.

21. **vīciēs centum**: 'two thousand.' How lit.? Caesar's estimate is nearer the truth than might have been expected; no Roman is known to have sailed around the island until more than a century after Caesar's time, in 84 A.D.

14. 1. **hīs omnibus**: the Britons. *97, d*. **hūmānissimī**: 'most civilized.'

2. **omnis**: 'wholly.' *151*. **neque**: 'and . . . not.'

3. **Interiōrēs plērīque**: 'Those living in the interior, for the most part.'

4. **serunt**: 'sow.' **lacte**: cf. IV, 1, l. 16. *131, a*. **carne**: 'meat.' *18, a*.

5. **sunt vestītī**: 'clothe themselves.' *174*. Caesar was misinformed about the life of the inland tribes of Britain. It has been proved by discoveries that, long before his time, at least the more progressive raised crops and had woolen and linen clothes.

6. **sē vitrō īnficiunt**: 'stain themselves with woad,' a plant from the leaves of which is made a dye resembling indigo in color. **caeruleum colōrem**: 'a bluish color.' *80, b*.

leum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō.

The Britons fight fiercely, but Caesar defeats them.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen, ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed, complūribus interfectīs, cupidius īnsecūtī nōn nūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt.

At illī, intermissō spatiō, imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnītiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō, quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs collocātī, ācriter pugnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum hae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pugnae perterritīs nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur. Illī, plūribus summissīs cohortibus, repelluntur.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculīs omnium

---

7. **hōc**: 'on this account.' **horridiōrēs aspectū**: 'rather wild-looking'; similar was the use of war-paint by the American Indians. How lit.? *142, a.*

8. **capillō**, etc.: 'they let their hair grow long.' How lit.?

15. 1. **Equitēs**, etc.: cf. IV, 33, and Notes. The narrative, interrupted by the description of Britain, is here resumed from chap. 11.

10. **atque**, etc.: 'and those the first.' *161, c.*

11. **perexiguō**: 'very small.' *79, b.* **inter sē**: 'apart.'

12. **novō**, etc.: the two cohorts had evidently not been on the first expedition. **per mediōs**: between the cohorts.

16. 1. **genere**, etc.: 'throughout the engagement, with fighting of this sort.' How lit.? **sub oculīs omnium**: i.e. *in cōnspectū omnium.*

ac prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est, nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs possent neque ab signīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad huius generis hostem; equitēs autem magnō cum perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, propterea quod illī etiam cōnsultō plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent et pedibus disparī proeliō contenderent. Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed

Figure 117. — Scene in a Roman camp.

Left to right: background, captives, foreground, legionary in marching order; cavalry officer; legionaries, one with head bandaged in consequence of a wound; Roman standards; three captured standards, one in the left hand of a military tribune, the other two lying on the ground; commander-in-chief, lictors, second in command, and horn blowers.

2. **intellēctum est**: 'it was evident.' How lit.?

6. **illī**, etc.: 'they,' the Britons, 'would fall back purposely.'

8. **disparī proeliō**: 'in battle with the advantage on their side,' because Caesar's Gallic cavalry were no match for warriors fighting on foot. How lit.?

9. **Accēdēbat hūc**: 'There was the further fact that.' **cōnfertī**: 'in close formation.'

rārī magnīsque intervāllīs proeliārentur statiōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatīgātīs succēderent.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōnstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius, quam prīdiē, nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē, cum Caesar, pābulandī causā, III legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt sīc, utī ab signīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent.

Nostrī, ācriter in eōs impetū factō, reppulērunt neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad, subsidiō cōnfīsī, equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt; magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō, neque suī colligendī neque cōnsistendī, aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī, facultātem dedērunt.

Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique convēnerant, auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

---

10. **rārī**: 'in small bodies.' **statiōnēs**: here 'reserves.'

11. **aliōs**, etc.: 'were relieving one another in turn.' *171, b.*

12. **dēfatīgātīs**: *227, a,* (4).

17. 4. **pābulandī causā**: 'to forage.' Three legions and the cavalry made a foraging party of extraordinary size.

6. **pābulātōrēs**: 'foragers.' **advolāvērunt**: 'rushed upon.' How lit.? **ab . . . absisterent**: 'they did not hold back from the standards of the legions,' lit. 'and the legions'; the Britons even charged upon the legionaries, formed in order of battle. *238, d,* and *324, b,* (2).

9. **quoad**: *190, c.* **subsidiō**: 'on the support (of the legions).' *135, a.*

10. **cum**: *184, a.* **praecipitēs**: accusative, 'head over heels.' *151.*

11. **suī colligendī**: *154, b.* B. 339, 5; A. 504, *c*; H. 626, 3.

14. **Ex**: 'after.' **auxilia**: *auxilia Britannōrum.*

With great dash Caesar's men force the passage of the Thames.

18. Caesar, cognitō cōnsiliō eōrum, ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit, ad alteram flūminis rīpam magnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefīxīs mūnīta, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur.

Hīs rēbus cognitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque, Caesar, praemissō equitātū, cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs ierunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

Cassivellaunus harasses Caesar's army on the march.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs ampliōribus cōpiīs, mīlibus circiter IIII essedāriōrum relictīs, itinera nostra servābat; paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impedītīs ac silvestri-

---

18. 1. **cōnsīliō**: the 'plan' of the Britons, revealed in chap. 19.

3. **locō**: *145, c.* **hōc**: sc. *locō*.

6. **acūtīs sudibus**: 'with sharp stakes.' **praefīxīs**: 'driven in front,' at the water's edge.

10. **cum**, etc.: 'though they were in water up to the chin.' How lit.? Caesar crossed the Thames from the south to the north side; precisely where he crossed, is not known. See Map 11.

19. 2. **contentiōnis**: 'of a general engagement.' **ampliōribus cōpiīs**: 'the greater part of his forces.'

3. IIII: *quattuor*. It is not possible to determine whether Caesar means that Cassivellaunus kept in the field 4000 chariot-drivers, each having a chariot and accompanied by a warrior (N. to IV, 33, l. 2), making a force of 8000 men, or whether in *essedāriōrum* both drivers and warriors are included; in the latter case there would be 2000 chariots, each with two men, making a total of 4000 men.

bus sēsē occultābat, atque eīs regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cognōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat; et, cum equitātus noster, līberius praedandī vāstandīque causā, sē in agrōs effūderat, omnibus viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat, et magnō cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum cum eīs cōnflīgēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat.

Relinquēbātur, ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur, quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

The Trinovantes and other peoples submit. Caesar takes Cassivellaunus' stronghold.

20. Interim Trinovantēs, prope fīrmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns, Caesaris fidem secūtus, ad eum in continentem vēnerat (cuius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vītāverat), lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque, sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in cīvitātem mittat, quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs XL frūmentumque exercituī Mandubraciumque ad eōs

8. **sē effūderat**: 'had dashed forth.' **omnibus**, etc.: 'by all the roads and passage-ways,' well known to the Britons. *134, a.*

10. **equitum**: *102.* **hōc metū**: 'from fear of this' danger.

11. **vagārī**: sc. *nostrōs.*

13. **discēdī**: i.e. *equitibus*, 'that (the cavalry) should leave,' etc. **tantum — nocērētur**: 'that so great harm be done.' How lit.?

14. **labōre atque itinere**: 'by toilsome marching.' *238, d.*

20. 2. **Caesaris fidem secūtus**: 'attaching himself to Caesar.' How lit.?

8. **Cassivellaunī**: 'at the hands of Cassivellaunus.' *95.* **quī**: *193, a.*

mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum iniūriā prohibitīs, Cēnimagnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī, lēgātiōnibus missīs, sēsē Caesarī dēdunt.

Ab hīs cognōscit, nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse, silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impedītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō, incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā, convenīre cōnsuērunt.

Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus. Locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs, paulisper morātī, mīlitum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ēiēcērunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

An attack on the naval camp is repulsed. Cassivellaunus yields.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus IIII rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, utī,

---

21. 2. **Cēnimagnī**, etc.: some of these small states are located on the Map at the end of this volume.

4. **eō locō**: where Caesar met the envoys. **oppidum**: 'the stronghold of Cassivellaunus' is thought to have been in the vicinity of St. Albans.

6. **Oppidum vocant**: 'call (it) a stronghold.' Several fortified enclosures of extreme antiquity, intended not for permanent habitation but only for refuge and defense in time of danger, have been found in England.

22. 1. **in hīs locīs**: in the region of St. Albans.

2. **suprā**: chap. 14, ll. 1–3.

coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs, castra nāvālia dē improvīsō adoriantur atque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī, ēruptiōne factā, multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt.

Cassivellaunus, hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat et, quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet, cōnstituit; interdīcit atque imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.

Caesar returns to the coast, finds ships ready, sails to Gaul.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs, exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum magnum numerum habēbat et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Ac sīc accidit, utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis, quae mīlitēs portāret, dēsīderārētur, at ex eīs,

---

5. **castra nāvālia**: see chap. 11, ll. 8–13.

8. **Lugotorīge**: *10, c.* **incolumēs**: predicative.

14. **id**, etc.: 'and that this could easily be wasted,' lit. 'drawn out,' in profitless negotiations.

15. **quid — vectīgālis**: *97, b.* **in annōs singulōs**: 'each year.'

17. **interdīcit**, etc.: 'laid the strictest injunctions on Cassivellaunus.' How lit.? *175, b.*

23. 2. **refectās**: 'repaired'; cf. chapters 10, 11. **dēductīs**: 'launched,' lit. 'drawn down' to the water, from the fortified enclosure (*castra nāvālia*, chap. 22, l. 5) in which they had been guarded and repaired.

4. **duōbus commeātibus**: 'in two trips.' *136, b.*

quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, et priōris commeātūs, expositīs mīlitibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat, numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae ferē omnēs reicerentur.

Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius mīlitēs collocāvit ac, summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

Division of the Army for the Winter. 24, 25

Grain being scarce, Caesar for the winter divides his army.

24. Subductīs nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae perāctō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā, propter siccitātēs, angustius prōvēnerat, coāctus est aliter ac superiōribus annīs exercitum in hībernīs collocāre legiōnēsque in plūrēs cīvitātēs distribuere. Ex quibus ūnam, in Morinōs dūcendam, C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōsciō; quārtam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in cōnfīniō Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit;

---

8. **et**, etc.: 'both (the ships used) in the first trip, (sent back) after the soldiers had been landed, and (other ships) which.'

10. **locum caperent**: 'reached their destination,' Britain.

12. **Quās**: 'these' ships, sent from the continent. *167.*

13. **aequinoctium**: Caesar must have left Britain shortly after the middle of September, having been two months or more on the island.

14. **necessāriō angustius**: 'of necessity rather closely.' *153, a.*

24. 1. **Subductīs**: cf. chap. 1, ll. 6–7. **Samarobrīvae**: *4, a.*

3. **siccitātēs**: cf. IV, 38, l. 3, and N. **aliter ac**: *233, c.*

6. **dūcendam**, etc.: 'to be led into the country of the Morini.' *229, b.*

8. **in cōnfīniō Trēverōrum**: 'on the Treveran frontier.' The site of Labienus's camp is indicated on Map 11.

trēs in Bellovacīs collocāvit: hīs M. Crassum et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praefēcit.

Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōnscrīpserat, et cohortēs v in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambiorīgis et Catuvolcī erant, mīsit. Hīs mīlitibus Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculeium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit.

Ad hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus, facillimē inopiae reī frūmentāriae sēsē medērī posse exīstimāvit. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hīberna praeter eam, quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem dūcendam dederat, mīlibus passuum c continēbantur. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs collocātās mūnītaque hīberna cognōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōnstituit.

Tasgetius murdered, Caesar transfers Plancus to the country of the Carnutes.

25. Erat in Carnutibus, summō locō nātus, Tasgetius, cuius maiōrēs in suā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē benevolentiā, quod in omnibus bellīs singulārī eius operā fuerat ūsus, maiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem, inimīcī palam, multīs ex cīvitāte auctōribus, interfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad

---

9. **M. Crassum**: quaestor; see Vocab. under *Crassus*, (3).

11. **trāns Padum**: north of the Po, in Cisalpine Gaul; Caesar writes from the point of view of one in Rome.

16. **inopiae—medērī**: 'to remedy the shortage' (Fig. 114). *106, b.*

20. **c**: *centum.* Caesar perhaps means that no two camps were more than 100 Roman miles apart; if so, his estimate is somewhat under the truth. *81.*

25. 1. **summō locō nātus**: 'of the highest rank by birth.' *128, a.*

3. **virtūte**: 'efficiency.' **in sē benevolentiā**: 'loyalty to himself.' *150, d.*

7. **quod**, etc.: 'because a large number were implicated.' How lit.?

plūrēs pertinēbat, nē cīvitās eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnutēs proficīscī iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque operā cognōverat Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere.

Interim ab omnibus lēgātīs quaestōreque, quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est, in hīberna perventum locumque esse mūnītum.

Attacks of the Gauls upon Caesar's Winter Camps

1. Destruction of the force under Sabinus and Cotta by Ambiorix, 26–37

Ambiorix attacks the camp of Sabinus and Cotta, parleys.

26. Diēbus circiter xv, quibus in hīberna ventum est, initium repentīnī tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; quī cum ad fīnēs rēgnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hīberna comportāvissent, Indutiomārī Trēverī nūntiīs impulsī, suōs concitāvērunt, subitōque oppressīs lignātōribus, magnā manū ad castra oppugnātum vēnērunt.

Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque ascendissent, atque ūnā ex parte, Hispānīs equitibus ēmissīs, equestrī proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē, hostēs

---

11. **comprehēnsōs**, etc.: 'to take into custody and send to him.' *228, a.*

26. 1. **Diēbus . . . quibus**: 'About fifteen days after.'

3. **Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō**: chap. 24, ll. 13–14. *19, d*, and *10, c*. **Sabīnō**, etc.: 'had met Sabinus and Cotta,' whom they came to meet at the Eburonian frontier (*ad fīnēs rēgnī suī*). How lit.?

5. **Trēverī**: genitive. **suōs**: the Eburones.

6. **lignātōribus**: 'wood foragers,' soldiers detailed to get wood (Fig. 136, p. 402). **manū**: *137, b*.

8. **vāllum**: the camp of Sabinus and Cotta was perhaps on the site of modern Limburg; see Map 11.

suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt, utī aliquī ex nostrīs ad colloquium prōdīret: *Habēre sēsē, quae dē rē commūnī dīcere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minuī posse spērārent.*

27. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā C. Arpineius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūriī, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante, missū Caesaris, ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre cōnsuērat; apud quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum locūtus est:

Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiīs plūrimum eī cōnfitērī dēbēre, quod, eius operā, stīpendiō līberātus esset, quod Atuatucīs, fīnitimīs suīs, pendere cōnsuēsset, quodque eī et fīlius et frātris fīlius ā Caesare remissī essent, quos Atuatucī, obsidum numerō missōs, apud sē in servitūte et catēnīs tenuissent; neque id, quod fēcerit dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum, aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū cīvitātis, suaque esse eius modī imperia, ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitūdō, quam ipse in multitūdinem.

Cīvitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentīnae Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperītus rērum, ut suīs cōpiīs populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfīdat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium; omnibus hībernīs Caesaris oppugnandīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē

---

12. **aliquī**: *49, a.*

14. **contrōversiās**: 'the questions at issue.'

27. 2. **Q. Titūriī**: Q. Titūrius Sabinus, called *Sabinus* in l. 3 of chap. 26, and elsewhere. Cf. chap. 24, l. 14. *19, a–c.*

3. **missū Caesaris**: 'sent by Caesar.' How lit.?

6. **Sēsē**, etc.: *Sēsē cōnfitērī, prō Caesaris beneficiīs in sē, (sē) eī plūrimum dēbēre. 213, b.*

8. **eī**: for *sibi*, referring to Ambiorix.

12. **iūdiciō**: *138.* **coāctū cīvitātis**: 'forced by his state.' How lit.? **suaque**, etc.: 'and that the conditions of his authority were such.'

qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūnī lībertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur.

Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē 25
ratiōnem officiī prō beneficiīs Caesaris; monēre, ōrāre Titū-
rium prō hospitiō, ut suae ac mīlitum salūtī cōnsulat. Mag-
nam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsīsse;
hanc affore bīduō. Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium, velintne prius
quam fīnitimī sentiant, ēductōs ex hībernīs mīlitēs aut ad
Cicerōnem, aut ad Labiēnum, dēdūcere, quōrum alter mīlia 30
passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab eīs absit. Illud
sē pollicērī et iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmāre, tūtum sē iter per suōs
fīnēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōnsulere,
quod hībernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritīs grātiam
referre. 35

Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, discēdit Ambiorīx.

Cotta refuses to receive advice from Ambiorix, an enemy; Sabinus trusts him.

28. Arpineius et Iūnius, quae audiērunt, ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī, repentīnā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea

---

23. **initum**: sc. *esse*.

24. **Quibus**, etc.: 'Since he had done his duty by them and by his country,' in attacking the Roman camp. Duty to one's country is here expressed by *pietāte*; cf. Fig. 25. How lit.? **habēre**, etc.: 'he recognized (his) obligation.' How lit.?

27. **conductam**: i.e. *conductam mercēde;* 'mercenaries.'

28. **Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium**: 'They (the Roman officers) were to decide.' How lit.? *94, d.* **velintne**: *204*, (1).

33. **Quod cum faciat**: 'in doing this.' **cīvitātī**: *105*.

34. **hībernīs levētur**: 'it would be relieved of the winter encampment.' *127, a*, and *335, b.* **grātiam referre**: 'and would show his gratitude.' This wily and lying speech lured the Roman force to its destruction.

28. 2. **etsī . . . dīcēbantur**: implies Caesar's disapproval of the consideration afforded to Ambiorix's statement.

dīcēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda exīstimābant, maximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum.

Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt, magnaque inter eōs exsistit contrōversia. L. Aurunculeius complūrēsque tribūnī mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temere agendum, neque ex hībernīs iniussū Caesaris discēdendum exīstimābant; quantāsvīs Gallōrum, magnās etiam cōpiās Germānōrum sustinērī posse, mūnītīs hībernīs, docēbant:

Rem esse testimōniō, quod prīmum hostium impetum, multīs ultrō vulneribus illātīs, fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximīs hībernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō, quid esse levius aut turpius, quam, auctōre hoste, dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

29. Contrā ea Titūrius *sērō factūrōs* clāmitābat, *cum maiōrēs manūs hostium, adiūnctīs Germānīs, convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hībernīs esset acceptum.*

---

4. **ignōbilem**: 'obscure' (Fig. 118.)

6. **ausam** [esse]: *62.* **vix erat crēdendum**: 'was hardly credible.' How lit.?

9. **prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs**: cf. I, 41, l. 7 and N.

11. **quantāsvīs**: *copiās*; 'any force of Gauls,' no matter how great.

15. **rē**, etc.: 'that there was no difficulty about supplies.' How lit.?

17. **quid esse**: *217, c.*

18. **auctōre hoste**: 'on the advice of an enemy.' *144, b, (2).*

29. 1. **sērō**: 'too late.' **factūrōs**: *sē factūrōs esse.* **clāmitābat**: 'kept protesting loudly.' *78, a.*

Figure 118. — Coin of the Eburones.

Gold. The curved designs on the obverse perhaps represent boar's tusks.

Brevem cōnsulendī esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem, sē arbitrārī, profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutēs interficiendī Tasgetiī cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs esse.

Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre: subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānīs dolōrī Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdēre Galliam, tot contumēliīs acceptīs, sub populī Rōmānī imperium redāctam, superiōre glōriā reī mīlitāris exstinctā. Postrēmō, quis hōc sibi persuādēret, sine certā spē Ambiorīgem ad eius modī cōnsilium dēscendisse?

Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtam: sī nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum perīculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōnsentīret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum, quī dissentīrent, cōnsilium quem habēre exitum? in quō sī nōn praesēns perīculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.

---

6. **Italiam**: *283, b.* **interficiendī**, etc.: chap. 25.

7. **sī adesset . . . ventūrōs esse**: *218*, (3).

8. **nostrī**: *155.* **ad**, etc.: i.e. *castra oppugnātūrōs esse.*

10. **Sēsē**, etc.: 'that he had regard not for the enemy as adviser, but for (the facts of) the situation.'

11. **Germānīs, dolōrī**: *112, b.* **Ariovistī mortem**: nothing is known about the death of Ariovistus, who was last mentioned in Book I, chap. 53.

12. **victōriās**: over Ariovistus (I, 30–54), the Usipetes and Tencteri (IV, 1–15), and the expedition into Germany in the previous year (IV, 16–19). **ārdēre**: 'was ablaze.'

14. **exstinctā**: 'obscured.' **quis**, etc.: *217, a.*

15. **ad . . . dēscendisse**: 'had resorted to.'

17. **in utramque partem**: 'for either alternative.' **sī . . . dūrius**: 'if nothing serious should happen.' How lit.?

20. **ūnam — salūtem**: 'their only safety.' *353, d.*

21. **dissentīrent**: 'disagreed with him.' **habēre**: *217, c.*

After heated argument Sabinus persuades Cotta to accept Ambiorix's guarantees of safety and leave the camp.

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā prīmīsque ōrdinibus ācriter resisterētur,

'Vincite,' inquit, 'sī ita vultis,' Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars mīlitum exaudīret; 'neque is sum,' inquit, 'quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis perīculō terrear. Hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent; quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē, cum proximīs hībernīs coniūnctī, commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn, reiectī et relēgātī longē ā cēterīs, aut ferrō aut fame intereant.'

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant, nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant; *facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficīscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere.*

Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta, permōtus, manūs; superat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūntiātur, prīmā lūce itūrōs.

---

30. 1. **in utramque partem**: 'on both sides.' **disputātiōne**: 'discussion.'

2. **ōrdinibus**: = *centuriōnibus*. **ācriter resisterētur**: 'vigorous opposition was still offered.'

3. **Vincite**: 'Have your own way.' **et id**: *161, c.* **clāriōre vōce**: 'raising his voice.' How lit.?

5. **ex vōbīs**: *97, d.* **terrear**: *194, a.*

6. **Hī sapient**: 'These,' the soldiers, spoken with a gesture, 'will understand.' **sī**, etc.: *206*, (4).

7. **sī . . . liceat**: 'if you would consent.' **perendinō diē**: 'day after tomorrow.'

9. **relēgātī**: 'treated as outlaws.'

31. 1. **Cōnsurgitur**: 'all stood up.' How lit.? **comprehendunt**: by the hand. **utrumque**: Sabinus and Cotta.

2. **dissēnsiōne**: 'disagreement.'

7. **dat — manūs**: 'yielded'; Sabinus was the senior officer.

Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex īnstrūmentō hībernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. Omnia excōgitantur, quārē nec sine perīculō maneātur et languōre mīlitum et vigiliīs perīculum augeātur.

Prīmā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficīscuntur, ut quibus esset persuāsum, nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimō cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine maximīsque impedīmentīs.

Figure 119. — Looking down into a depression thought by some to be the valley where the ambuscade took place.

10. **quid**: '(to see) what.'

11. **īnstrūmentō**: 'outfit.' **Omnia**, etc.: 'Every reason was thought of (to prove to themselves) both why they could not remain without danger and (why) the danger would be increased by the exhaustion of the soldiers resulting from (unrelieved) watches.' How lit.?

14. **ut . . . persuāsum**: 'like men convinced,' i.e. *ut* ('as') *eī, quibus persuāsum esset* (subjunctive of characteristic).

16. **longissimō**, etc.: with disregard of every precaution.

The Roman force, enticed into a defile, is treacherously attacked.

32. At hostēs, posteā quam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliīsque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātīs īnsidiīs bipertītō in silvīs opportūnō atque occultō locō ā mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus, Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant; et cum sē maior pars agminis in magnam convallem dēmīsisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et prīmōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque, inīquissimō nostrīs locō, proelium committere coepērunt.

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvīdisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eīs accidere cōnsuēvit, quī in ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur.

At Cotta, quī cōgitāsset, haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat; et in appellandīs cohortandīsque mīlitibus imperātōris, et in pugnā mīlitis, officia praestābat. Cum propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obīre et, quid quōque locō faciendum esset,

---

32. 3. **bipertītō**: 'at two points,' on opposite sides of a depression through which the road ran (Fig. 119). **ā**: 'off'; N. to II, 8, l. 10.

5. **sē . . . dēmīsisset**: 'had passed down.' **convallem**: 'defile.'

7. **novissimōs**, etc.: the enemy crowded toward those in the rear and checked the advance of those in front.

33. 1. **quī**: 'since he.' *194, c.* B. 283, 3, *a*; A. 535, *e*; H. 592.

2. **trepidāre**: 'was greatly agitated.' *182.* **concursāre**: 'rushed from place to place.'

3. **ut**, etc.: '(in such a way) that all (his resources) seemed to fail him.' **quod**: *id, quod.*

4. **in ipsō negōtiō**: 'in the emergency.'

7. **auctor**: 'in favor of.' How lit.?

11. **omnia obīre**: 'to look after everything.'

prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī, ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent.

Quod cōnsilium, etsī in eius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē accidit; nam et nostrīs mīlitibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō mīlitēs ab signīs discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret, ab impedīmentīs petere atque arripere properāret, clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt, nē quis ab locō discēderet: *illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī, quaecumque Rōmānī relīquissent; proinde omnia in victōriā posita exīstimārent.*

Nostrī, tametsī ab duce et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet, ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant et, quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant (levitāte

---

12. **iussērunt prōnūntiārī**: 'they,' Cotta and Sabinus, 'gave orders that the word be passed.'

13. **relinquerent**: 'that (the men) should abandon.' **orbem**: 'circle,' corresponding with our hollow square. *338.*

14. **reprehendendum nōn est**: 'it is not to be criticized.'

15. **incommodē accidit**: 'turned out unfortunately.' **mīlitibus**: *109, a.*

17. **nōn sine**: *239, g.* **dēspērātiōne**: 'despair.'

20. **cārissima**: 'most dear,' predicative; *petere ab impedīmentīs* (*ea*) *quae quisque cārissima habēret.* **habēret**: *220.* **arripere**: 'carry off,' before the enemy should loot the abandoned baggage.

34. 1. **cōnsilium**: 'presence of mind,' contrasted with the confusion and panic on the Roman side.

10. **coniciant**: 'that (his men) hurl.'

armōrum et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne nihil eīs nocērī posse), rūrsus sē ad signa recipientēs īnsequantur.

35. Quō praeceptō ab eīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum, unde erant ēgressī, revertī coeperant, et ab eīs, quī cesserant, et ab eīs, quī proximī steterant, circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbātur, neque ab tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla cōnfertī vītāre poterant. Tamen, tot incommodīs cōnflictātī, multīs vulneribus acceptīs, resistēbant, et magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil, quod ipsīs esset indignum, committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō, quī superiōre annō prīmum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et magnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur; Q.

---

12. **nihil**, etc.: '(saying that) no harm could be done to them.'

13. **sē**: object of *recipientēs*; '(the Romans) returning to their standards,' to the place in the circle whence they had made a charge.

35. 1. **praeceptō**: 'order.' **eīs**: *barbarīs*.

2. **quaepiam**: 'any.' *49, a.*

3. **refugiēbant**: 'would rush back in flight.' *175, d.* **eam partem**: the charging cohort.

4. **ab latere apertō**: 'on the exposed side,' the right side, unprotected by a shield. *126, c.*

5. **eum locum**: in the circle. **ēgressī**, etc.: sc. *mīlitēs*.

7. **locum tenēre**: in the circle, without charging.

10. **cōnflictātī**: 'although harassed.'

12. **hōram octāvam**: *242, a.* **pugnārētur**: *184, a.* **ipsīs indignum**: 'unworthy of them.' *142, b.*

13. **T. Balventiō**: *109, a.*

14. **superiōre**, etc.: Balventius had been the first centurion of the legion the year before; he was now serving probably as a veteran volunteer (*ēvocātus*). *316.*

15. **auctōritātis**: 'influence.' *100, a.* **femur**: 'thigh' *18, d.*

Lūcānius, eiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō fīliō subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātūs, omnēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque adhortāns, in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātur.

Sabinus and others surrender to Ambiorix, and are cut down.

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus, Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōnspexisset, interpretem suum, Cn. Pompeium, ad eum mittit rogātum, ut sibi mīlitibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondit:

Sī velit sēcum colloquī, licēre; spērāre, ā multitūdine impetrārī posse, quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum īrī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere.

Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā colloquantur; *spērāre, ab eō dē suā ac mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse.* Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat, atque in eō persevērat.

37. Sabīnus, quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs mīlitum circum sē habēbat, et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs, sē sequī

---

16. **eiusdem ōrdinis**: 'of the same rank,' a first centurion. **circumventō**: 'who had been surrounded.' *227, a,* (4).

17. **fīliō subvenit**: 'came to the rescue of his son.' *175, b.*

18. **ōrdinēs**: here 'centuries.' **in adversum ōs**: 'full in the face.' **fundā**: by a sling-shot.

36. 2. **cohortantem**: *228, c.* **interpretem**: *10, e.*

4. **parcat**: 'to spare.' *199, a.*

5. **impetrārī**, etc.: 'that the request might be granted, so far as the safety of the soldiers was concerned.'

6. **quod**: the antecedent is implied in *impetrārī. 194, f.* **ipsī**: Titurius Sabinus. **vērō**: *236, a.*

7. **nocitum īrī**: future infinitive passive; 'that no harm should be done.' *54,* and *73, d.*

8. **Ille**: Titurius Sabinus. **videātur**: *204,* (4).

10. **dē**, etc.: 'for their own safety and that of the soldiers.' *157, d.*

37. 1. **quōs tribūnōs**: *eōs tribūnōs, quōs.* **in praesentiā**: 'at the time.'

iubet et, cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iussus arma abicere, imperātum facit suīsque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōnsultō ab Ambiorīge īnstituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interficitur.

Cotta dies heroically fighting. The soldiers spared by the day's slaughter at night end their own lives.

Tum vērō suō mōre 'Victōriam' conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum maximā parte mīlitum.

Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt, unde erant ēgressī. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitūdine hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōiēcit; ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pugnāns occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; noctū ad ūnum omnēs, dēspērātā salūte, sē ipsī interficiunt.

---

3. **Ambiorīgem**: *123, b.*

Figure 120. — Statue of Ambiorix.

6. **sermō**: 'talk.' *12, b.*

8. **mōre**: *136, c.* **ululātum**: 'yell,' a kind of war whoop.

13. **aquilifer**: 'eagle bearer.' *324, b,* (1). **cum**: 'although.'

16. **ad ūnum**: 'to a man.' They probably killed one another.

17. **sē ipsī**: *162, c.* The number of Roman soldiers that perished was probably above 5000. We are told that when Caesar heard of this disaster he vowed that he would cut neither hair nor beard till he had wreaked vengeance on Ambiorix and the Eburones. Ambiorix is now regarded by some as a national hero, as a

Paucī, ex proeliō ēlāpsī, incertīs itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hīberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

2. *Heroic defence of Cicero's camp against the Nervians.* 38-45

A fierce attack, inspired by Ambiorix, is made on Cicero's camp.

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus, Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in Atuatucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō fīnitimī, proficīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditātumque sēsē subsequī iūbet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Atuatucīsque concitātīs, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit hortāturque, nē suī in perpetuum līberandī atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs prō eīs, quās accēperint, iniūriīs occāsiōnem dīmittant; *interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs magnamque partem exercitūs interīsse* dēmōnstrat; *nihil esse negōtiī, subitō oppressam legiōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interficī;* sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

39. Itaque cōnfestim dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās possunt manūs, cōgunt, et dē improvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūriī morte perlātā.

---

defender of his people's liberties against Roman aggression; a statue has been erected in his honor at Tongres (Fig. 120).

38. 4. **Rē**: 'what had been done.' **concitātīs**: 'stirred up.' *144, b,* (2).

5. **nē**, etc.: 'not to lose the chance.' **suī**: *154, b.*

8. **lēgātōs duōs**: Sabinus and Cotta. **magnam partem**: in reality about one fifth of Caesar's legionaries.

9. **nihil**, etc.: 'that it would be no trouble suddenly to crush the legion . . . and destroy it.' How lit.? *97, a,* and *228, a.*

10. **sē**, etc.: 'he promised his coöperation.' How lit.? *115, a.*

39. 1. **Ceutronēs**, etc.: small Belgic peoples, clients of the Nervii.

3. **eōrum**: *Nerviōrem.* **quam maximās**: *153, c.*

Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nūllī mīlitēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnītiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentīnō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circumventīs, magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nerviī, Atuatucī atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque, hanc adeptī victōriam, in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfidēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne litterae, magnīs prōpositīs praemiīs, sī pertulissent; obsessīs omnibus viīs, missī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex eā māteriā, quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs admodum cxx excitantur; incrēdibilī celeritāte, quae deesse operī vidēbantur, perficiuntur.

Hostēs posterō diē, multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs, castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, ā nostrīs resistitur.

---

6. **Huic**: Cicero; the probable location of his camp is indicated on Map II. **quod**: for *id, quod*.

7. **lignātiōnis**, etc.: 'to get timber for the fortification' of the camp (Fig. 136). How lit.? **discessissent**: *220*.

12. **vāllum cōnscendunt**: they stood on the rampart, behind the palisades (*vāllī*). *333*.

13. **hanc adeptī victōriam**: = *sī hanc victōriam adeptī essent. 227, a,* (2).

40. 1. **Mittuntur**: emphatic position. *353, a.* **ad Caesarem**: at Samarobriva.

2. **sī pertulissent**: *sī nūntiī eās litterās pertulissent.*

3. **missī**: 'those who had been sent.' *227, a,* (4).

4. **turrēs**: *333.* **admodum**: 'fully.' **cxx**: *centum vīgintī.* Unless the camp were larger than would seem to have been required for a single legion, the 120 towers must have been about 40 feet apart; if so, men on the towers could defend the short spaces between with any kind of missile. Ordinarily such towers were about 80 feet apart.

5. **excitantur**: 'were erected.'

Hōc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars noc- 10
turnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppugnātiōnem opus sunt, noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, magnus mūrālium pīlōrum numerus īnstituitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae lōrīcaeque ex crātibus 15
attexuntur.

Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō mīlitum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

The crafty parleying, which was Sabinus's undoing, has no effect on Cicero.

41. Tunc ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem, quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat, commemorant: *Omnem Galliam esse in armīs; Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppugnārī.* 5

Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant

---

12. **vulnerātīs**: *227, a,* (4). **facultās quiētis**: 'chance to rest.' How lit.? *10, e.* **Quaecumque**: *50, a.*

14. **praeūstae sudēs**: 'stakes hardened at the ends by burning'; the stock of ordinary weapons had given out. **mūrālium pīlōrum**: 'of wall-pikes'; heavy pikes, to be hurled from the towers.

15. **contabulantur**: 'were provided with floors.' **pinnae**: 'battlements.' **lōrīcae ex crātibus**: 'breastworks of wattle,' made by interweaving branches, and put up as screens to protect the soldiers in the towers. *98, b,* and *150, d.*

16. **attexuntur**: 'were attached,' lit. 'woven,' 'to the towers.'

17. **cum**: *187.* **tenuissimā valetūdine**: 'in very delicate health.' *143, a.*

41. 1. **sermōnis aditum**: 'pretext for an interview.'

7. **ostentant,** etc.: 'they pointed to Ambiorix in order to inspire credence.'

fideī faciundae causā. *Errāre eōs* dīcunt, *sī quicquam ab hīs praesidiī spērent, quī suīs rēbus diffīdant;*

Sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent, atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs per sē incolumibus ex hībernīs discēdere et, quāscumque in partēs velint, sine metū proficīscī.

Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit:

Nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī, accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre, prō eius iūstitiā, quae petierint, impetrātūrōs.

The Nervians besiege the camp. Fire rages among the huts.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī, Nerviī vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum xv hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cognōverant et, quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs, ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā, quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs

---

8. **faciundae**: *64, b.* **Errāre**: 'were deluding themselves.' **eōs**: Cicero and his men. **quicquam praesidiī**: 'any help at all.' *49, a.*

9. **hīs**: the Romans in the other camps. **quī**, etc.: 'who were in desperate straits.' How lit.? *62*, and *135, a.*

10. **hōc esse — animō**: 'had this feeling.' How lit.? *143, b.*

12. **cōnsuētūdinem**: 'custom' of imposing winter camps upon them. **per sē**: 'so far as they,' the Nervii, 'were concerned.'

17. **armātō**: 'in arms.' **ab armīs discēdere**: in our idiom, 'to lay down their arms.' **sē**, etc.: 'they might utilize him as mediator.' *131, f.*

18. **spērāre**: sc. *sē*, Cicero.

42. 1. **spē**: 'hope' of cozening Cicero. **pedem x**: in height.

2. **pedum xv**: in width, at the top. *100, a.*

4. **nūllā**, etc.: 'having no stock of iron tools.' *144, b*, (3).

5. **esset**: *194, a.* **caespitēs**: *10, d.*

circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur.

Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cognōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum III in circuitū mūnītiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīs diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās īdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coortō ventō, ferventēs fūsilī ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter īgnem comprehendērunt et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sīcutī partā iam atque explōrātā victōriā, turrēs testūdinēsque agere et scālīs vāllum ascendere coepērunt.

At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit

---

6. **circumcīdere**: 'cut'; lit. 'cut around.' **sagulīs**: 'in their cloaks.' *348*, and *131*, *a*. **exhaurīre**: 'to take out.'

10. **turrēs**: movable 'towers.' **ad**: 'proportioned to.'

11. **falcēs**: large 'hooks' for pulling down the palisade. **testūdinēs**: 'turtle-shell sheds,' probably less solid than those built by the Romans. *342*, *a*.

43. 2. **ferventēs**, etc.: 'red-hot balls of kneaded clay,' which would not crack to pieces when heated. Experiments have shown that red-hot balls of clay the size of one's fist when thrown will retain their heat long enough to ignite straw. *98*, *b*. **fervefacta iacula**: 'burning javelins.'

3. **casās**: 'huts.' *335*, *b*. **strāmentīs**: 'with thatch.'

5. **ventī magnitūdine**: 'by reason of the force of the wind.' **distulērunt**: *hae casae ignem distulērunt*, the huts being looked upon as agents. Probably the high wind carried bits of burning thatch all over the camp. *239*, *h*.

6. **sīcutī**: 'just as if.'

7. **agere**: 'to move up.' The Gauls were using Roman methods of attack. *342*, *a* and *b*. **scālīs**: 'with scaling-ladders.' *342*, *d*.

9. **At**: *236*, *a*. **ea praesentia animī**: 'such their presence of mind.'

ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur, suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent.

Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstīpāverant recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant.

Paulum quidem intermissā flammā, et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō, quō stābant, locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remōvērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est.

---

10. **cum**: *187*. **flammā torrērentur**: 'they were being scorched by the flames.' *92, b*.

12. **cōnflagrāre**: 'were on fire.'

13. **dēmigrandī causā**: 'in order to withdraw' temporarily to rescue his valuables or get a brief respite. **paene**, etc.: 'but hardly any one even looked around.'

14. **tum**: emphatic, 'then,' above all other times.

18. **ut**: 'since.' **sub**, etc.: 'had crowded together close up to the rampart.'

19. **recessum . . . dabant**: 'those behind would not give those in front a chance to draw back.'

20. **intermissā flammā**: the Gauls dared not risk moving forward the wooden towers while the flames were at their height. **locō**: *145, c*.

22. **recessērunt**: 'drew back.'

23. **sī**: *204*, (4). **introīre**: 'to come inside.'

25. **lapidibus**: the supply of ordinary weapons had given out. Practice in hurling the pike enabled Roman soldiers to throw stones effectively. Both pike-hurling and stone-throwing find a parallel in the throwing of hand grenades in the Great War. **dēturbātī**: sc. *sunt*; 'they were forced back in disorder.'

Brave deeds of two rival centurions, Pullo and Vorenus.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī prīmīs ōrdinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant, uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant.

Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pugnārētur, 'Quid dubitās,' inquit, 'Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit.'

Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs, quaeque pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa, in eam irrumpit.

Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed, omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem, subsequitur.

Mediocrī spatiō relictō, Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō, hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfīgitur.

---

44. 1. **Erant**: *90, a.* **quī**, etc.: 'who were nearing the first rank,' the position of centurion of first rank. *194, a*, and *315, a.*

4. **anteferrētur**, etc.: 'should have the preference over the other,' as the better man. *69, b*, and *204*, (3). **omnibus annīs**: 'year in year out.' **dē locō**: 'for advancement.' **summīs simultātibus**: 'with the utmost bitterness.'

6. **ācerrimē — pugnārētur**: 'the fighting was the very hottest.'

7. **Quid**: 'Why.' *118, e.* **locum**: 'opportunity.'

11. **eam**: *eam partem. 165, c.* **irrumpit**: 'he rushed.'

14. **Mediocrī spatiō relictō**: 'At a moderate distance,' perhaps four or five rods from the enemy.

15. **quo**: refers to the wounded Gaul, who, as *prōtegunt* implies, was not killed; trans. as if *et hōc*, 'and since he was made breathless by the blow.' How lit.?

16. **prōtegunt**: 'protected.' **illum**: Pullo.

18. **Pullōnī**: *109, a.* **verūtum**: the same 'dart' that pierced Pullo's shield. **balteō**: 'sword-belt.' *322, e.*

Āvertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit.

Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfīxum arbitrantur. Vorēnus gladiō rem comminus gerit atque, ūnō interfectō, reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, complūribus interfectīs, summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt.

Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit, ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque dīiūdicārī posset, uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

Word of Cicero's desperate plight finally reaches Caesar.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō, et maximē quod, magnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā

---

19. **vāgīnam**: 'scabbard.' **cōnantī**: sc. *eī*, 'as he' (lit. 'to him') 'was attempting.'

20. **impēdītum**: sc. *eum*.

21. **Succurrit illī**: 'ran to his rescue.' How lit.? **inimīcus**: 'adversary.'

25. **rem comminus gerit**: 'engaged in close fighting.' *175, b.*

26. **in**, etc.: 'stumbling' (lit. 'thrown down') 'into a hollow.'

28. **ambō**: 'both.' *37, c.*

30. **contentiōne et certāmine**: 'in contest and combat.' **utrumque versāvit**: 'shifted (the positions of) both.'

31. **alter alterī**: *171, b.* **alterī, auxiliō**: *112, b.*

32. **dīiūdicārī**: 'be determined.' **utrī**: 'to the other.' *23, a*, and *107, a.* **virtūte**, etc.: 'should seem worthy to be considered superior in point of valor.' *142, a.*

45. 1. **Quantō**, etc.: 'The harder and more violent — the more frequently dispatches.' How lit.? *140.* B. 223; A. 414, *a*; H. 471, 10. **in diēs**: 'day by day.'

2. **maximē quod**: 'chiefly because.' **cōnfectā**: 'enfeebled.'

vulneribus, rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars, dēprehēnsa, in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur.

Erat ūnus intus Nervius, nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā prīmā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hīc servō spē lībertātis magnīsque persuādet praemiīs, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō illigātās effert et, Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne versātus, ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur.

3. Crushing defeat of the beleaguering Gauls by Caesar. 46-52

Caesar makes hurried preparations, and proceeds by forced marches to relieve Cicero.

46. Caesar, acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter ūndecimā diēī, statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum quaestōrem mittit, cuius hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum XXV; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium

---

5. **dēprehēnsa**: 'caught.'

7. **ūnus**: 'one,' the only Nervian. **intus**: in the camp. **locō**, etc.: 'of good family.' *128, a.*

8. **ā prīmā obsidiōne**: 'soon after the beginning of the siege.' *152, a.*

11. **in iaculō illigātās**: 'tied in a javelin.' The javelin may have been split; the dispatch, written on papyrus, may have been put between the parts, the javelin then being tied with cords as if accidentally split and repaired. **inter Gallōs versātus**: 'mingling with Gauls.'

13. **Ab eō — cognoscitur**: *Caesar ab eō cognōscit.*

46. 1. **Caesar**: at Samarobriva. **hōrā ūndecimā**: about 5 P.M.; it was now early autumn. *242, a* and *b.*

5. **Alterum**: sc. *nūntium.* **C. Fabium**: chap. 24, ll. 5-6.

lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium fīnēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scrībit Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere posset, cum legiōne ad fīnēs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter cccc ex proximīs hībernīs cōgit.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum xx prōcēdit. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās pūblicās frūmentumque omne, quod eō, tolerandae hiemis causā, dēvexerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit.

Labiēnus, interitū Sabīnī et caede cohortium cognitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs

---

6. **ut**: '(directing him) to.' *199, a.* Caesar would have to march through the country of the Atrebatians (Fig. 121) in order to reach Cicero's camp, in the country of the Nervians. See Map 11.

Figure 121. — Coin of the Atrebatians.

Gold. Obverse, crude head, with mark on right cheek. Reverse, fanciful horse, and crescent.

7. **reī pūblicae commodō**: 'consistently with the public interest.' *138.*

9. **veniat**: *216.* **Reliquam partem exercitūs**: chap. 24, ll. 7, 10.

47. 1. **antecursōribus**: 'advance guard' of Crassus.

3. **Crassum**, etc.: Caesar left Samarobriva before Crassus arrived.

4. **impedīmenta**: *311.* **litterās pūblicās**: 'state documents,' such as dispatches and accounts.

7. **nōn ita**, etc.: 'with very little delay.' How lit.? **occurrit**: sc. *Caesarī.*

11. **praesertim quōs**, etc.: 'especially since he knew that they.' *184, b.*

recentī victōriā efferrī scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit, quantō cum perīculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscrībit; docet, omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum III mīlia passuum longē ab suīs castrīs cōnsēdisse.

48. Caesar, cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās redierat, tamen ūnum commūnis salūtis auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs.

Ibi ex captīvīs cognōscit, quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur, quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet, utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat.

Hanc Graecīs cōnscrīptam litterīs mittit, nē, interceptā epistulā, nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. Sī adīre nōn possit, monet, ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmmentum dēligātā intrā mūnītiōnem castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scrībit, sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter affore; hortātur, ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat.

Gallus, perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostrīs bīduō

---

13. **quantō**, etc.: '(explaining) how dangerous it would be for him to withdraw the legion.' How lit.? *204*, (3).

14. **rem gestam**: 'what had taken place,' referring to the destruction of the force under Sabinus and Cotta.

48. 1. **opīniōne**, etc.: 'disappointed in his expectation of (having) three legions he had been reduced to two,' the legion which he had had at Samarobriva, and the one under Fabius that had joined him.

3. **magnīs itineribus**: *329*.

7. **epistulam**: 'letter.'

9. **Graecīs litterīs**: in Greek characters, not Greek words; some of the Nervians apparently could read Latin.

11. **adīre**: 'to reach' the camp. **ammentum**: 'thong' attached to a javelin and used in throwing.

16. **turrim**: *14, b*. **adhaesit**: 'stuck.' **neque**: 'and not.'

animadversa, tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur, dēmpta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū mīlitum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

Caesar approaching, the Gauls turn from Cicero's camp to attack him.

49. Gallī, rē cognitā per explōrātōrēs, obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX.

Cicerō, datā facultāte, Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, repetit, quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet, iter cautē dīligerenterque faciat; perscrībit in litterīs, hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātīs suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfīrmat.

Posterō diē, lūce prīmā, movet castra; et circiter mīlia passuum IIII prōgressus, trāns vallem magnam et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat magnī perīculī rēs,

---

17. **dēmpta**: 'was taken down and.' *228, a.*

18. **perlēctam — recitat**: sc. *eam*; 'after he had read it through he read it aloud.' *227, a.*

19. **afficit**: 'filled.' **fūmī incendiōrum**: of burning villages, set on fire as Caesar's relieving force passed through; the plural implies more than one fire.

49. 1. **rē**: 'the fact' of Caesar's approach. **per**: *123, a.*

4. **Gallum**, etc.: 'asked the same Vertico . . . for another Gaul.' *116, b.*

5. **suprā**: chap. 45, ll. 7–12. **quī**, etc.: *193, a.*

6. **hunc**, etc.: 'warned him' (Caesar) 'to proceed with caution.' *200, a.*

12. **rīvum**: 'brook,' flowing in a 'wide valley.'

13. **Erat**, etc.: 'It was extremely hazardous.' How lit.?

tantulīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne līberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat. Cōnsēdit et, quam aequissimō potest locō, castra commūnit, atque haec, etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium VII, praesertim nūllīs cum impedimentīs, tamen angustiīs viārum, quam maximē potest, contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim, speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dīmissīs, explōrat, quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsīre possit.

Caesar, encamped, pretends fear, lures the Gauls on, routs them.

50. Eō diē, parvulīs equestribus proeliīs ad aquam factīs, utrīque sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant; Caesar, sī forte timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs proeliō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut, explōrātīs itineribus, minōre cum perīculō vallem rīvumque trānsīret.

Prīmā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex

---

15. **aequō**, etc.: 'that without anxiety he could slacken his pace.' How lit.?

17. **haec**: object of *contrahit*; 'this' camp, 'although it was,' etc.

18. **vix**, etc.: '(containing) barely 7000 men'; the two legions with Caesar averaged hardly 3500 men each. *100, b*, and *307, b*.

19. **angustiīs**, etc.: 'by making the passages as narrow as possible.' *334, b*, and Fig. 185.

20. **cōnsiliō**: *138*. **hostibus**: trans. as if *hostium*. *109, a*.

50. 1. **ad aquam**: 'by the water,' the brook mentioned chap. 49, l. 12.

3. **Caesar**, etc.: *Caesar [sē continet suō locō] ut, sī . . . posset, citrā vallem . . . contenderent*.

4. **suum locum**: 'a position favorable to himself.' *157, e*. **ēlicere**: 'to entice.'

omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī atque in hīs administrandīs rēbus quam maximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituunt; nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductīs, propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnītiōnem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praecōnibusque circummissīs prōnūntiārī iubent:

Seu quis, Gallus seu Rōmānus, velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine perīculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem.

Ac sīc nostrōs contempsērunt, ut, obstrūctīs in speciem portīs singulīs ōrdinibus caespitum, quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent.

Tum Caesar, omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō, celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sīc utī omnīnō pugnandī causā resisteret nēmō, magnumque ex eīs numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs exuit.

Caesar, joining Cicero, praises him and his men.

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant neque etiam parvulō dētrīmentō illōrum

---

12. **obstruī**: 'be blocked up.'

13. **concursārī**: 'that the men rush about.' *73, d.* **agī**: 'go through their motions.' How lit.?

51. 1. **cōpiās trādūcunt**: *cōpiās rīvum trādūcunt. 114, a.*

4. **praecōnibus**, etc.: 'they sent criers around' the camp, 'directing that the announcement be made.' How lit.?

9. **in speciem**: 'for show.' The barriers in the gates, of turf and only the breadth of a sod in thickness, seemed solid but were easily pushed over from the inside.

10. **eā — intrōrumpere**: 'to break in that way,' through the gates.

14. **omnīnō — nēmō**: 'no one at all.'

52. 2. **neque . . . relinquī**: 'and that no opportunity was left for (inflicting) even a trifling loss upon them.' How lit.?

locum relinquī vidēbat, omnibus suīs incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit.

Īnstitūtās turrēs, testūdinēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā legiōne, cognōscit, nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus, quantō cum perīculō et quantā cum virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat.

Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cognōscit. Posterō diē, cōntiōne habitā, rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfirmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferundum docet, quod, beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō, neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

---

5. **turrēs**, etc.: chap. 42, ll. 10–11, and Notes.

6. **prōductā**: 'drawn up' for review. **nōn**, etc.: 'that not one soldier in ten had escaped unwounded.' How lit.? *170, a.*

9. **rēs**, etc.: 'the operations' for defence 'were handled.' **eius meritō**: Cicero's heroic defence is famous in military annals.

11. **appellat**: 'he addressed' in complimentary terms.

13. **certius**: an earlier report had come from Labienus (chap. 37).

14. **cōntiōne**: 'an assembly.' **rem**, etc.: 'set forth what had happened.'

15. **quod dētrīmentum**: *id dētrīmentum, quod.* **culpā et temeritāte**: 'through the culpable rashness.' *238, d.*

16. **hōc**: 'on this account.' **aequiōre animō**: 'with the greater tranquillity.'

18. **expiātō**: 'atoned for.'

53–58. Summary. A report of the relief of Cicero's camp was quickly conveyed to Labienus, encamped on the Treveran border (Map 11); but notwithstanding this victory Cæsar found it increasingly difficult to prevent revolts. Finally Indutiomarus and the Treverans made an attack on Labienus, who first feigned fear, then surprised and routed them. Indutiomarus was slain.

COMMENTARIUS SEXTUS

Second Expedition into Germany. 9–29

Caesar bridges the Rhine, crosses, makes terms with the Ubii.

9. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiīs in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit; quārum ūna erat, quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs mīserant, altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorīx receptum habēret. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, paulum suprā eum locum, quō ante exercitum trādūxerat, facere pontem īnstituit. Nōtā atque īnstitūtā ratiōne, magnō mīlitum studiō, paucīs diēbus opus efficitur. Firmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit.

Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditiōnem vēnerant, pūrgandī suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt, quī doceant, neque auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam; petunt atque ōrant, ut sibi

---

1–8. Summary. Early in 53 B.C. Caesar heard that the Nervians and several other peoples were preparing for war. By sudden movements he forced the Nervians, Senones, and Menapians to sue for peace, and marched into the country of the Treverans, who had meanwhile been defeated by Labienus.

9. 4. **Ambiorīx**: cf. N. to V, 37, l. 17.

5. **ante**: in 55 B.C.; see IV, 17–19, and Notes.

6. **Nōtā . . . studiō**: 'Since the plan (of such a bridge) was familiar and had been tried, (and) the soldiers worked with much enthusiasm.' How lit.?

9. **orerētur**: *61, b.*

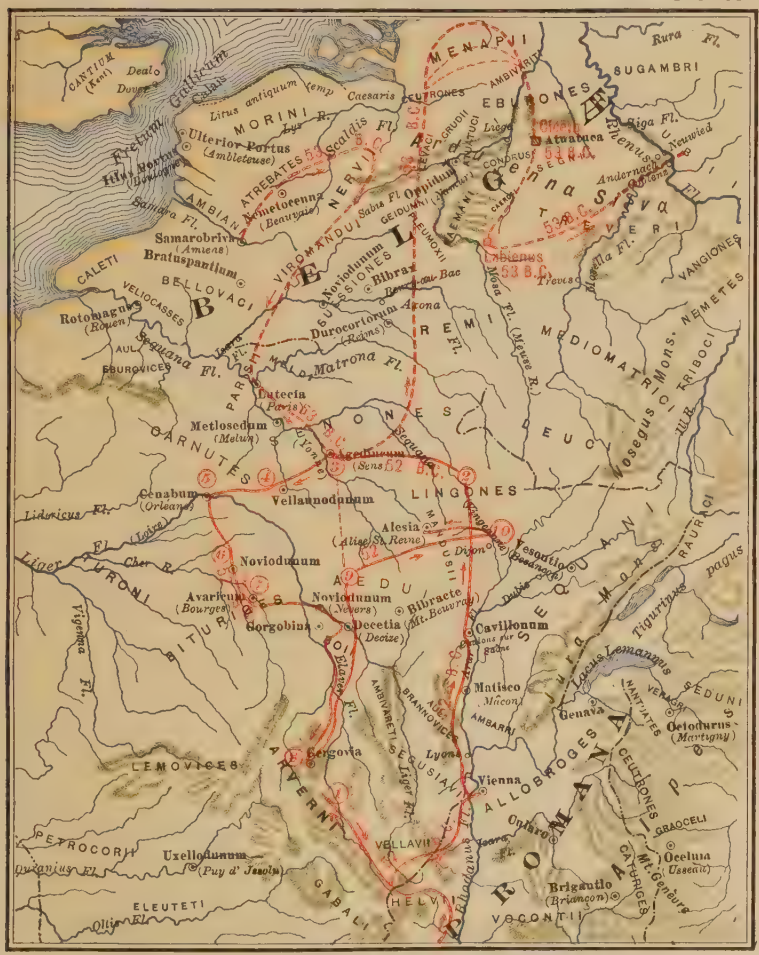
12. **suī**: *154, b*, and *230*, (1). **quī doceant**: *193, a.*

14. **fidem laesam** [esse]: '(their) pledge had been violated.'

MAP 13

OPERATIONS OF 53 AND 52 B.C.

Books VI, VII. To face page 338



EXPLANATION

1. March into the Arvernian country, 52 B.C. (VII. 8). 2. Winter quarters (VII. 9). 3. Base, 52 B.C. (VII. 10). 4. Vellaunodunum captured (VII. 11). 5. Cenabum destroyed (VII. 11). 6. Noviodunum captured (VII. 12). 7. Avaricum destroyed (VII. 14–28). 8. Gergovia blockaded (VII. 36 ff.). 9. Junction with Labienus (VII. 62). 10. Defeat of Vercingetorix (VII. 67).

parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit darī, pollicentur. Cognitā Caesar causā reperit, ab Suēbīs auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit, aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs perquīrit.

He finds it impossible to reach the Suebi.

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior, Suēbōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere atque eīs nātiōnibus, quae sub eōrum sint imperiō, dēnūntiāre, ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cognitīs rēbus, rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit; Ubiīs imperat, ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōnferant, spērāns, barbarōs atque imperītōs hominēs, inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs, ad inīquam pugnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī; mandat, ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant, quaeque apud eōs gerantur, cognōscant.

Illī imperāta faciunt et, paucīs diēbus intermissīs, referunt: *Suēbōs omnēs, pōsteā quam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrūm vēnerint, cum omnibus suīs sociōrumque cōpiīs, quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs fīnēs sē recēpisse; silvam esse ibi īnfīnītā magnitūdine, quae appellātur Bacēnis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre et, prō nātīvō mūrō*

---

15. **commūnī odiō**: 'indiscriminate hatred.' **innocentēs**, etc.: 'the innocent for the guilty.' *81.*

16. **amplius obsidum**: 'more hostages.' *97, b.* B. 201, 2; A. 346, *a*, 3; H. 442.

19. **Suēbōs**: *282.* **perquīrit**: 'made careful inquiry about.'

10. 2. **in ūnum locum**, etc.: cf. IV, 19, ll. 5–12.

9. **crēbrōs**: 'a great many.' The scouts were of course Ubians; cf. chap. 29, l. 1.

15. **extrēmōs fīnēs**: 'the most remote part of their country.' *152, a.*

17. **prō nātīvō mūrō**: 'as a natural barrier.'

obiectam, Cheruscōs ab Suēbīs Suēbōsque ab Cheruscīs iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad eius silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituisse.

The customs of the Gauls and Germans contrasted. 11-28.

Political conditions in Gaul; motives for leadership.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur, dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et, quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē, prōpōnere.

In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt, quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre exīstimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat.

---

18. **ab**: 'on the part of.'

19. **iniūriīs**, etc.: 'protected . . . from destructive raids.' *238, d*, and *127, a*.

11. 1. **Quoniam**, etc.: 'Since we have reached this point' in the narrative. *73, d.* **aliēnum**: 'out of place.' The digression which follows was introduced to gratify Roman readers, who were eager to have information about the new countries; it is regarded by historians as a source of information of prime importance regarding political institutions and conditions of life in Northern Europe in antiquity. Cf. N. at end of chap. 23.

2. **dē — prōpōnere**: 'to give an account of.' **quō**: 'in what respect,' introduces an indirect question.

5. **partibus**: 'districts.' *289, c.*

6. **domibus**: *20, c.* **factiōnēs**: 'party divisions.'

7. **eōrum**: *Gallōrum.* **iūdiciō**: *138.*

8. **quōrum**: refers to (*eī*) *quī . . . exīstimantur*; 'so that the final decision in respect to all affairs and projects is referred to their arbitrament and judgment.' How lit.? *194, a.*

Idque eius reī causā antīquitus īnstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxiliī egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habet auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtīus Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs dīvīsae sunt in duās partēs.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Aeduīs magnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant.

Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs, atque omnī nōbilitāte Aeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs ad sē trādū-

---

10. **Id — īnstitūtum** [esse] **vidētur**: 'that practice seems to have become established.' **eius reī causā**: 'with this object in view,' referring to the clause *nē . . . egēret*. How lit.? *161, a*.

11. **auxiliī**: *127, d*. **egēret**: 'lack.'

12. **quisque**: 'each (leader).' **neque . . . faciat, habet**: *207*, (2).

14. **ratiō**, etc.: 'This same condition holds true of the whole of Gaul.' How lit.?

15. **dīvīsae**: *148, c*. **partēs**: 'groups,' explained in chap. 12.

12. 1. **Cum**: '(At the time) when.' *185, b*. **alterius**: *23, b*, and *171, b*.

2. **Hī**: 'The latter.' Previously the Arvernians had held a position of leadership; cf. I, 31, ll. 10–28.

4. **clientēlae**: 'dependencies,' states acknowledging the sovereignty of the Aeduans.

5. **eōs ad sē . . . perdūxerant**: 'had won them over.' **iactūrīs**: 'pecuniary sacrifices.'

7. **omnī nōbilitāte**: cf. I, 31, l. 21 and N.

8. **tantum — antecesserant**: 'they had so far outstripped (the Aeduans).'

9. **clientium**: dependent states are here meant.

cerent obsidēsque ab eīs prīncipum fīliōs acciperent, et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent, nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsiliī initūrōs, et partem fīnitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus, Dīviciācus, auxiliī petendī causā, Rōmam ad senātum profectus, īnfectā rē redierat.

Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Aeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod ei, quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam aggregāverant, meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmīserant.

In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, eī, quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās nūllō modō cum Aeduīs coniungī poterant, sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī dīligenter

---

11. **pūblicē**: 'for the state.' **iūrāre**: as subject sc. *eōs*, i.e. *Aeduōrum prīncipēs*. **nihil — cōnsiliī**: 'no scheme.' *97, a.*

12. **occupātam possidērent**: 'seized . . . and retained in their possession.' *228, a.*

14. **Dīviciācus**, etc.: the statement of Diviciacus himself on this point is summarized by Caesar, I, 31, ll. 29–33.

15. **īnfectā rē**: 'without accomplishing his purpose.' How lit.?

16. **Adventū**: *147, b.* **factā**, etc.: the ablatives absolute are best translated by clauses. *144, b,* (2) and (3). **commūtātiōne rērum**: 'a complete change of relations.'

17. **Aeduīs**: dative. **novīs**: sc. *clientēlīs*.

18. **comparātīs**: for the Aeduans. **sē**, etc.: 'had joined themselves to them as allies.' How lit.?

20. **sē ūtī**: 'that they enjoyed.' **reliquīs rēbus**: 'in all other respects' also.

22. **quōs . . . intellegēbātur**: 'and since it was understood that they (the Remi) stood equally high in Caesar's favor.' How lit.?

24. **inimīcitiās**: 'enmities.' **coniungī**: *174.*

25. **Rēmīs**, etc.: 'attached themselves as dependents to the Remi.' How lit.?

tuēbantur ; ita et novam et repente collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tum statū rēs erat, ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Aeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

The two ruling classes, and the common people, in Gaul.

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum, quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre, genera sunt duo ; nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus ; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra, quae dominīs in servōs.

Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum.

The Druids : their power as priests and judges, their organization, their teachings about the soul.

Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur ; ad hōs magnus adu-

26. **repente collēctam** : 'suddenly acquired,' in the brief period since the defeat of Ariovistus, five years before.

13. 1. **aliquō**, etc. : 'are of any account and (receive) recognition.' How lit.? *143, b.*

3. **servōrum locō** : 'as slaves.' *288, b.* **nullī cōnsiliō** : 'to no consultation.' *23, a.*

4. **aere aliēnō** : 'by debt.' How lit.?

5. **tribūtōrum** : 'of the taxes.' **sēsē**, etc. : 'attach themselves as bondmen.' How lit.?

6. **quibus**, etc. : 'and these have over them.' *167*, and *111*.

7. **quae**, etc. : sc. *sunt* ; 'as masters (have) over slaves.'

8. **alterum** [genus] : *171, b.* **druidum** : '(that of) the Druids,' a priesthood possessing great power in Gaul and Britain. Very little is known of the Druids in Caesar's time beyond what he tells us in this book.

10. **Illī**, etc. : 'the former have charge of the services of worship.' **sacrificia — prōcūrant** : 'regulate the sacrifices.'

11. **religiōnēs interpretantur** : 'settle religious questions.' *238, a.*

lēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt et, sī quod est facinus admissum, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrōversia est, īdem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī, aut prīvātus aut populus, eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdīcunt.

Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque hīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur.

Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō aut, sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs

12. **disciplīnae causā**: 'in order to receive instruction.' How lit.? *81*.

13. **hī**: the Druids. **eōs**: *Gallōs*.

14. **quod**: adjective form. *49, a*, and *168*.

15. **facta**: sc. *est*. **hērēditāte**: 'an inheritance.'

16. **fīnibus**: here 'boundaries.' **īdem dēcernunt**: 'they likewise render judgment.'

17. **quī**: substantive form; 'any (party)' to a controversy, 'whether . . . or,' etc. *49, a*.

18. **dēcrētō**: 'decision.' *138*. **sacrificiīs interdīcunt**: 'they exclude (the offender) from the sacrifices.' *127, a*.

19. **Quibus**: dative; 'on whom such an interdict has been laid.'

20. **numerō**, etc.: 'as wicked and crime-polluted men.' How lit.?

21. **hīs**: dative; 'these all men avoid.' *109, b*. **dēfugiunt**: 'shun.'

22. **contāgiōne**: 'contact' with the excommunicated.

23. **petentibus**: 'though they may seek (justice).' **honōs**: *13, a*, and *b*.

26. **Hōc mortuō**: 'When he' (the arch-Druid) 'dies.' *160, b*.

27. **excellit**: 'is preëminent.' *205*, (1). **dignitāte**: 'in standing.' *142, a*.

parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs, dē prīncipātū contendunt.

Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent.

Disciplīna in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta esse exīstimātur, et nunc, quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt, plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt, mīlitiae vacātiōnem omniumque rērum habent immūnitātem. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs, et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur.

Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent.

---

28. **parēs**: i.e., *parēs dignitāte*. **suffrāgiō**: 'by vote.'

30. **quae regiō**: 'a region which.' *165, b*. **Carnutum**: Fig. 122.

31. **cōnsīdunt**: 'hold a meeting.' **locō cōnsecrātō**: the 'hallowed spot' was probably a sacred grove. *145, a*.

34. **Disciplīna**: 'The system' of the Druids. **reperta, trānslāta**: *221, b*. It is not now possible to determine the truth of the tradition recorded by Caesar, that Druidism originated in Britain.

35. **dīligentius**: 'with special thoroughness.' **eam rem**: 'the system.' *160, d*.

14. 2. **ūnā cum reliquīs**: 'at the same rate as the rest'; the Druids paid taxes at a lower rate than ordinary citizens, or were not legally bound to pay taxes at all. **pendunt**: N. to I, 36, l. 14. **mīlitiae**: *80, b*. **vacātiōnem**, etc.: 'exemption from' (lit. 'of') 'military service and freedom from all (public) burdens.' *81*.

4. **in disciplīnam**: 'to receive instruction,' from the Druids. How lit.? **parentibus**: *81*.

5. **mittuntur**: sc. *multī*; so to-day many "are sent" to school.

6. **versuum**: 'lines'; the metrical form was probably adopted to facilitate memorizing. **ēdiscere**: 'to learn by heart.'

7. **vīcēnōs**: *36*. **in disciplīnā**: 'under instruction.'

Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam efferrī velint, neque eōs, quī discunt, litterīs cōnfīsōs, minus memoriae studēre; quod ferē plērīsque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant.

In prīmīs hōc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant, metū mortis neglēctō.

---

8. **ea**: the teachings set forth in verse. **litterīs**: 'to writing,' we should say. **cum**: 'although.' *187*.

9. **ratiōnibus**: 'accounts,' included under *rēbus* but added as a concrete example; trans. 'as in,' etc. **Graecīs litterīs**: 'Greek characters,' used in writing the Gallic languages (cf. I, 29, l. 1). Gallic coins occasionally had inscriptions in the Latin alphabet, in imitation of Roman coins (Fig. 122).

Figure 122. — Coin of the Carnutes.

Bronze. Obverse, head, Venus; inscription, PIXTILOS, a name. Reverse, lion-headed griffin holding down a man; inscription, PIIX or PILX.

11. **quod . . . velint**: 'because (as it has been suggested) they do not wish to have their body of teachings spread abroad among the common people,' who would remain in subjection to the druidical priesthood only so long as they should be kept in ignorance. *183, a*.

12. **discunt**: vivid use of the indicative; cf. *220*. **litterīs**: *135, a*. **minus — studēre**: 'pay too little heed.'

13. **quod**: 'and this.' *167*. **praesidiō litterārum**: 'through reliance upon written records.' How lit.?

14. **perdiscendō**: 'learning by heart.' *230*, (4). The truth of this statement is unquestioned.

15. **animās**: 'the soul,' as life-principle; the doctrine of transmigration of souls, or metempsychosis, was widely accepted in antiquity, and is held to-day by the Buddhists. *92, a*.

16. **aliīs, aliōs**: *171, b*, and *154, a*. **hōc**: 'by this (belief).'

17. **excitārī**: impersonal; 'men are spurred on.' **metū**, etc.: *144, b*, (3).

Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The knights : their warlike occupation, and their retainers.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās īnferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiīsque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

Superstitions of the Gauls ; their human sacrifices.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam, quī sunt affectī graviōribus morbīs quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur, aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrīsque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum

---

18. **Multa — disputant**: 'They treat many subjects.' **sīderibus**: 'heavenly bodies.' **mundī**: 'the universe.'

19. **terrārum**: for *orbis terrārum*, 'the earth.'

15. 1. **Alterum**: cf. chap. 13, l. 8. **cum**: 'whenever.' *186, a.*

2. **aliquod**: *49, a.* **incidit**: 'breaks out.' **quod**: 'and this.'

5. **eōrum**, etc.: 'each knight has about him the greatest number of vassals and retainers that his social position and resources will warrant.' How lit.? A notable example is Orgetorix (I, 4, ll. 4–7).

6. **Hanc**, etc.: 'This (numerousness of retinue) is the only sign of influence and power that they recognize.' How lit.? *176, b.*

16. 1. **omnis**: 'as a whole.' **dēdita**: 'devoted.' *148, c.* **religiōnibus**: 'religious observances.'

3. **morbīs**: 'diseases.' **prō victimīs**: 'as victims.'

4. **immolant**: 'offer up.' **sē immolātūrōs**: i.e. *sē immolātūrōs esse hominēs prō victimīs.* **vovent**: 'vow.' **administrīs**: 'as officiating priests.' *7, c*, and *131, f.*

immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia.

Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs, circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs.

Supplicia eōrum, quī in fūrtō aut latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī, grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum eius generis cōpia dēfēcit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

The gods worshipped by the Gauls.

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium fe-

7. **nūmen**: 'majesty;' lit. 'nod.' **plācārī**: 'be appeased.'

8. **habent īnstitūta**: *229, a.* B. 337, 7; A. 497, *b*; H. 431, 3. **sacrificia**: human sacrifices were offered at times in Eastern lands (cf., for example, 2 Kings, iii. 27), and in ancient Mexico; and even at Rome an instance of human sacrifice is reported as late as 216 B. C.

9. **simulācra**: 'images' of wickerwork, having some resemblance to the human form.

10. **vīvīs**: 'living.' **quibus**: *et eīs* (*simulācrīs*).

12. **Supplicia**: *92, a.* **fūrtō**: 'theft.' **latrōciniō**: 'highway robbery.'

13. **noxiā**: 'crime.' **grātiōra**: 'more acceptable.'

15. **dēscendunt**: 'resort.'

17. 1. **Deōrum**: dependent on *maximē. 97, e.* **Mercurium**: in the case of Mercury and the other gods mentioned, Caesar gives the name of the Roman divinity whose attributes and functions seemed to him to correspond most nearly with those of the Gallic divinity; the Gallic names were of course not known to Roman readers.

2. **simulācra**: since the Gauls began making statues only after the Roman conquest, it has been suggested that the 'images' of Mercury referred to here were the huge upright stones (menhirs) of which several groups must have been seen by Caesar in Gaul (Fig. 123), and that these were associated in some way with the worship of the Gallic divinity identified by him with this god. Pillars of a certain type were sacred to Hermes, the Greek god corresponding with Mercury. **inventōrem**: *80, b.* **artium**: 'arts.' *81.* **ferunt**: *172, c.*

runt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur; post hunc, Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam.

Dē hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere.

Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea, quae bellō cēperint, plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt.

Figure 123. — Sacred stones called Menhirs.

Probably thought by Caesar to be images of Mercury. These Menhirs are near that part of the west coast where Caesar and his army witnessed the sea-fight with the Venetans (III, 14, l. 25). In the background is a modern windmill.

---

3. **viārum**: Mercury is 'guide for roads' in that he points out the road, and 'for journeys' because he accompanies the traveler on the way. **quaestūs**: 'acquisition.' *92, a.*

4. **mercātūrās**: 'commercial transactions.'

7. **Apollinem**, etc.: the infinitive clauses are appositional. *12, d.* **operum**, etc.: 'imparts the elements of the trades and crafts.'

8. **caelestium**: 'the gods' as dwellers in the sky (*caelum*).

11. **cēperint**: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse, for the future perfect indicative. **cum superāvērunt**: *post victōriam.* **animālia**: *16, b,* and *80, b.*

Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs tumulōs locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit, ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant, ut noctem diēs subsequātur.

Strange customs of the Gauls.

In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt, ut mūnus mīlitiae

13. **tumulōs**: such piles of booty would after a time rot down and be covered with vegetation, presenting the appearance of a mound.

15. **quispiam**: *49, a.* **capta**: neuter plural, accusative. *227, a,* (4). **apud sē**: 'in his possession.'

16. **posita tollere**: 'to take away what had been deposited' as an offering to the gods, as Achan did (Joshua, chap. 7, verses 20–22). **supplicium**, etc.: like the terrible doom of Achan (Josh. 7, 23–26).

18. 1. **Dīte patre**: Caesar identifies the Gallic divinity with a Roman god of the Underworld known in earlier times as 'Father Dis' (*Dīs pater*), later generally called Pluto. *128, b.*

2. **Ob eam causam**: because sprung from the god of the Underworld, the realm of darkness and night.

4. **fīniunt**: 'measure.' The ancient Germans also reckoned time by the number of nights; traces of this reckoning remain in our words "fortnight" (= fourteen nights) and "sennight" (= seven nights, i.e. a week). **diēs nātālēs**: 'birthdays.'

5. **ut**, etc.: instead of saying "the first day of the month," as we do, the Gauls said 'the first night of the month,' 'the first night of the year,' 'birthnight,' etc. Primitive peoples find it more difficult to keep track of time by days than by nights because it is easier to note the changes of the moon than of the sun. So Indians reckoned time by "moons."

6. **hōc**: *142, a.* **ab reliquīs**: 'from all other people.' *171, a.*

7. **adolēvērunt**: 'have grown up.' **mūnus mīlitiae**: 'military service.'

sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur, fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris assistere turpe dūcunt.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs, aestimātiōne factā, cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit.

Virī in uxōrēs, sīcutī in līberōs, vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae, illūstriōre locō nātus,

8. **sē**: only the fathers are referred to, as shown by l. 9.

9. **puerīlī aetāte**: 'while in the age of childhood.' How lit.? *143, a.*

10. **turpe**: predicative, 'consider it disgraceful for a son . . . to appear.' On public occasions the Gauls would appear armed; it was thought in bad form for an armed man to have with him, in a public place, a son who was not also armed.

19. 1. **Virī**: 'husbands'; German *Mann* is similarly used. **pecūniās**: 'property' in general; trans. as if *tantās pecūniās, quantās*. **dōtis nōmine**: 'as dowry.' *17, c.*

2. **bonīs**: 'possessions.' **aestimātiōne factā**: 'making an estimate of value.' *144, b,* (2).

3. **commūnicant**: 'set aside.' From his own property the husband set aside an amount equal to the dower received with the wife. The income from this common fund, or estate, was saved up and added to the principal; when the husband or wife died the whole went to the survivor. **coniūnctim**, etc.: 'a joint account is kept.' How lit.?

4. **frūctūs**: 'income.' *92, a.* **uter**: 'whichever,' husband or wife. **vītā**: *142, a.*

5. **utrīusque**: 'of both.' *51.* The custom could have prevailed only among the higher classes, on account of the abject poverty of the common folk (chap. 13, ll. 2–4).

7. **in**: 'over.' **vītae**, etc.: among the early Romans also the father had 'the power of life and death' over his household.

8. **pater familiae**: 'the head of a family.' **illūstriōre locō nātus**: 'of higher rank.' *128, a.*

dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servīlem modum quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est, īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās interficiunt.

Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque, quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur, in īgnem īnferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī

---

9. **dē**, etc.: 'if suspicion has arisen regarding (the cause of) death.' How lit.?

10. **uxōribus**: the plural implies the existence of polygamy among the higher classes in Gaul. **in**, etc.: 'an examination like that of slaves,' under torture. How lit.? Roman law and custom sanctioned the torture of slaves on the death of a master under suspicious circumstances.

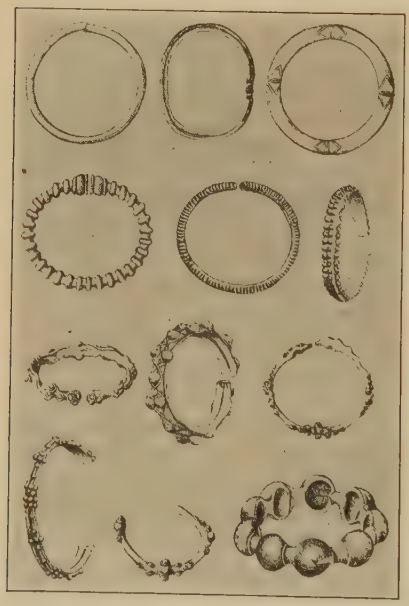


Figure 124. — Gallic bronze bracelets.

Bronze bracelets and neck rings were popular ornaments in ancient Gaul.

11. **compertum est**: impersonal, '(their guilt) has been proved.' **īgnī**, etc.: 'agonize and kill them with fire and every instrument of torture.' *228, a*, and *205* (3).

13. **Fūnera**: 'funerals.' *13, e.* **prō cultū**: 'considering the civilization,' which in art as in life seemed to the Roman crude (Fig. 124). **magnifica**: 'splendid.' *31.* **sūmptuōsa**: 'costly.' *75, f.*

14. **cordī fuisse**: 'were dear.' How lit.? *10, g*, and *112, b.* **īgnem**: of the funeral pyre. The ashes were sometimes buried in wooden buckets adorned with bronze ornaments (Fig. 125; wood restored).

15. **suprā hanc memoriam**: 'before our time.' How lit.?

et clientēs, quōs ab eīs dīlēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstīs fūnebribus cōnfectīs, ūnā cremābantur.

Their precautions in dealing with rumors affecting public safety.

20. Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur, habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum est.

Magistrātūs, quae vīsa sunt, occultant, quaeque esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt, multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

16. **dīlēctōs esse**: 'were loved.' **iūstīs**, etc.: 'on the completion of the regular funeral rites.'

17. **ūnā**: 'at the same time,' with the body of the master. The burning of favorite dependents on their master's funeral pyre was probably intended to continue their service for him in the other world. Interment without burning was also in vogue in Gaul.

Figure 125.— Bucket in which burnt human bones were found; imported from Gaul into Britain in Caesar's time.

20. 1. **Quae cīvitātēs**: i.e. *eae cīvitātēs, quae.* **rem pūblicam**: 'public affairs.'

2. **habent**, etc.: 'have it ordained by law that if anybody has heard anything.' *49, a.*

3. **dē rē pūblicā**: 'touching the public interest.' How lit.?

4. **nēve**: 'and not.' **quō**: *49, a.*

5. **falsīs**: 'baseless.' *83, a.* Cf. IV, 5, ll. 5–13.

8. **vīsa sunt**: i.e. *vīsa sunt occultanda*, 'which they have thought best to conceal.' **quaeque**: *et (ea) quae.*

10. **per concilium**: 'at an assembly' duly convoked, lit. 'through (the medium of) an assembly.' Very few states could have enforced this regulation for any length of time.

Altogether different are the beliefs and customs of the Germans.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent, quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt, quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnaṃ; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnsistit; ā parvīs labōrī ac dūritiae student.

The Germans do not take to farming, and have no private land.

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut fīnēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō

---

21. 1. **Germānī**, etc.: 'The German mode of life and government differs greatly from that described.' How lit.? *238, b.*

2. **druidēs**: there were priests among the Germans, but they did not form a dominant class, as the Druids did in Gaul. **rēbus dīvīnīs**: chap. 13, l. 10, and N. **praesint**: *193, a.* B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2.

3. **Deōrum**, etc.: the religion of the Germans in Caesar's time was a primitive nature-worship.

5. **Vulcānum**: god of fire. **Lūnam**: the host of Ariovistus dared not fight before the new moon (I, 50, ll. 11–17). **reliquōs**: sc. *deōs.*

6. **vēnātiōnibus**: 'hunting.' *92, a.* **in**, etc.: 'in warlike pursuits.'

7. **ā parvīs**: 'from childhood.' **dūritiae**: 'hardship.'

22. 2. **lacte**: *10, g.* **cāseō**: 'cheese.' **carne**: *18, a.*

3. **fīnēs propriōs**: 'lands of his own'; there was no private ownership of land. Cf. IV, 1, ll. 13–15.

4. **in annōs singulōs**: 'each year.' **gentibus**: 'clans.' **cognātiōnibus**: 'those connected by blood,' groups of families.

5. **quīque**, etc.: 'and (to those) who have joined together,' associating themselves for the purpose. **quantum — agrī**, etc.: 'as much land as they deem proper, and in whatever place (they think best).'

vīsum est agrī, attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsīre cōgunt.

Eius reī multās afferunt causās: nē, assiduā cōnsuētūdine captī, studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs fīnēs parāre studeant, potentiōrēsque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

Their ambitions are military; but they protect a guest.

23. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est, quam lātissimē circum sē, vāstātīs fīnibus, sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hōc proprium virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope audēre cōnsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō.

Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magis-

---

6. **vīsum est**: sc. *eīs* (*magistrātibus ac prīncipibus*). **annō**: *140*. Cf. IV, 1, ll. 9–13. **aliō**: adverb, 'to another place.'

8. **Eius reī causās**: 'explanations of this practice,' defined by the *nē*-clauses and *ut*-clause following. **assiduā**, etc.: 'captivated by the attractiveness of permanent residence.' How lit.?

9. **cultūrā**: *139*. A. 417, b; H. 478, 4.

11. **accūrātius**: 'with too great pains.' **frīgora**: *92, c*.

13. **dissēnsiōnēs**: 'dissensions.' *81*. **nāscuntur**: indicative as expressing the view of the writer; cf. *220*.

14. **animī aequitāte**: 'in a state of contentment.' How lit.? **cum**, etc.: 'each one seeing.'

15. **cum potentissimīs**: *cum opibus potentissimōrum*. *238, b*.

23. 1. **maxima laus**: 'the highest distinction.' **quam**: *153, c*.

2. **proprium virtūtis**: 'a proof of valor.' How lit.? *102*. Cf. IV, 3, ll. 1–5.

3. **neque quemquam**: 'and that no one.' *168*, and *49, a*.

5. **incursiōnis**: 'raid.' **timōre**: *144, b*, (3).

6. **bellum illātum dēfendit**: 'repels an attack that has been made.'

trātūs, quī eī bellō praesint et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

Latrōcinia nūllam habent īnfāmiam, quae extrā fīnēs cuiusque cīvitātis fīunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiae minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit, *sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint, profiteantur*, cōnsurgunt eī, quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ā multitūdine collaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt, in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum posteā fidēs dērogātur.

---

7. **praesint**: *193, a.* B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; H. 590.

8. **commūnis**: 'common' to a whole people or tribe.

9. **prīncipēs**, etc.: 'the head men of divisions and districts.' Nothing is known about the details of the German civil administration in Caesar's time; these probably varied somewhat among the different peoples.

10. **iūs dīcunt**: 'administer justice.'

11. **Latrōcinia**: 'marauding expeditions' outside their own borders have generally been considered by barbarous peoples as not merely permissible but even praiseworthy. **habent**: 'involve.' **īnfāmiam**: 'disgrace.'

13. **dēsidiae**: 'indolence.' **praedicant**: 'they (the Germans) declare.' **quis**: *49, a.*

14. **ducem**: 'leader' of an expedition or raid. **quī**: as antecedent supply *eī*, subject of *profiteantur*.

15. **profiteantur**: 'that they . . . are to volunteer.' *216.*

17. **ex hīs**: 'of those' who have offered to follow. In this voluntary relation between the chieftain as leader and his followers lies the origin of the peculiar relation between lord and vassal in the Middle Ages.

18. **dēsertōrum**, etc.: 'as deserters and traitors.' *81.* **omnium rērum fīdēs**: 'confidence in all matters,' not merely in respect to warlike prowess.

19. **hīs**: dative. *109, b.* **dērogātur**: 'is withdrawn.'

Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt, ab iniūriā prohibent, sānctōs habent, hīsque ōmnium domūs patent vīctusque commūnicātur.

The Gauls, once superior to the Germans, are now inferior.

24. Ac fuit anteā tempus, cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō bella īnferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt, loca, circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs

20. **Hospitem violāre**: 'to maltreat a guest.' **quī**: as antecedent supply *eōs*, object of *prohibent*. **quācumque**: *50, a.*

References. The statements in chapters 22 and 23 about the institutions of the early Germans are of particular interest; for they reveal the application, in a crude way, of principles of government the fuller outworking of which in the feudal system and in the English Constitution have had much to do with shaping the political history of Europe, and even of America. References are: Stubbs, Constitutional History of England, vol. I., chaps. 1 and 2; Taylor, Origin and Growth of the English Constitution, book I., chaps. 1, 2; Adams, Civilization during the Middle Ages, chap. 5; Hallam, View of the State of Europe during the Middle Ages, chap. 2.

24. 2. **īnferrent, mitterent**: *238, a.*

3. **trāns Rhēnum**; the Gauls in earlier times had not only held extensive regions east of the Rhine, but had pressed far down into Italy, giving to Cisalpine Gaul its name. The Boii (as noted elsewhere) gave their name to "Bohemia," and coins struck by different branches of the Boii, east of the Rhine and in northern Italy, have been found (Fig. 126 and Vocab. under **Boiī**). **colōniās**: *81.*

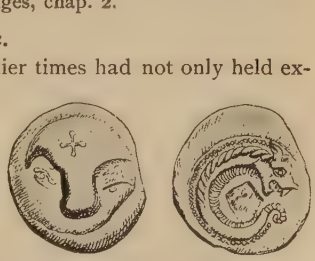


Figure 126. — Coin of the Boii.

Silver; probably struck east of the Rhine, while the Boii still dwelt there. Reverse, serpent with a lion's head.

4. **fertilissima**: 'most productive.' *81.* **loca**: accusative.

5. **Hercyniam silvam**: see Vocab. **Eratosthenī**: see Vocab. **quibusdam**: *168.* **Graecīs**: it is not now possible to determine to what Greek writers Caesar refers.

fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem.

Nunc, quod in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiā, quā ante, Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur, Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarīnārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largītur, paulātim assuēfactī superārī multīsque victī proeliīs, nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs virtūte comparant.

The Hercynian forest, and the wonderful animals found in it.

25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō VIIII diērum iter expedītō patet; nōn enim

---

6. **videō**: Caesar evidently had before him the works of the Greek writers referred to. He probably kept at his headquarters copies of writings that he thought might be in any way useful in his campaigns.

7. **Volcae Tectosagēs**: see Vocab. under *Tectosagēs*.

8. **quae gens**: 'and that people.' **ad . . . continet**: 'to this day continues to maintain itself,' a Gallic outpost, as it were, on German soil. **summam**: *353, d.*

9. **bellicae**, etc.: 'reputation for . . . prowess in war.'

10. **in**, etc.: 'in the (same condition of) poverty, privation, (and) endurance as before.' *234, a.*

12. **prōvinciārum**: the two provinces, Cisalpine Gaul and "the Province" in Transalpine Gaul. **trānsmarīnārum**, etc.: 'familiarity with products brought across the sea,' which entered Gaul chiefly through the port of Massilia. How lit.? *293, a.*

13. **multa**: 'many articles,' not contributing to the "simple life." **ad . . . largītur**: 'supply in abundance for common use.' How lit.?

15. **ipsī**: *Gallī*. **illīs**: trans. as if *Germānīs*.

25. 1. **suprā**: chap. 24, l. 5.

2. **lātitūdō**: 'breadth,' from north to south. **VIIII**, etc.: *243, c.* **expedītō**: 'for an unencumbered (traveler),' who might average 20 miles a day; if so, the 'nine days' journey' would be a rough equivalent of 180 miles.

aliter fīnīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum fīnibus, rēctāque flūminis Dānuviī regiōne pertinet ad fīnēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus, dīversīs ā flūmine regiōnibus, multārumque gentium fīnēs propter magnitūdinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germāniae, quī sē aut adīsse ad initium eius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut, quō ex locō oriātur, accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī cōnstat, quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur, haec sunt.

26. Est bōs cervī figūrā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum cornū exsistit, excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs, quae

---

3. **neque**, etc.: 'and (the people) have no system of measuring distances,' by paces and miles (*243, a*) such as the Romans had. How lit.? **Oritur**: sc. *ea* (*Hercynia silva*).

4. **fīnibus**: 'frontiers.' **rēctā**, etc.: 'following the line of the Danube it extends.' How lit.?

5. **regiōne**: *136, b.*

6. **sinistrōrsus**: 'to the left' of the Danube, spreading out northward, toward the Carpathian Mountains. **dīversīs**, etc.: 'in a direction away from the river.' *92, a.*

8. **huius Germāniae**: 'of this (part of) Germany,' the western part.

9. **initium**: the eastern limit. **dīcat**: *194, a.* **cum**: *187.*

11. **ferārum**: 'wild animals.' **quae**: 'such as.' *194, a.* **reliquīs locīs**: 'any other places.'

12. **ex quibus quae**: *et ex eīs* (*ea*) *quae.*

13. **memoriae**: dative; trans., 'seem worthy of mention.' How lit.? **haec**: *161, a.*

26. 1. **Est**: *90, a.* **bōs**, etc.: 'an ox having the form of a stag.' Caesar is describing the reindeer, with which the American caribou is closely related. As a descriptive term *bōs* was applied also to the elephant, one name of which was *Lūca bōs*, 'Lucanian cow.' *18, a.* **figūrā**: *143, a.* **mediā**: *152, a.* **aurēs**: 'ears.' *82, c.*

2. **ūnum cornū**: reindeer and caribou shed their antlers each year, and Caesar's informant may have seen a reindeer which had lost one antler, but had not yet shed the other. In the Provincial Museum at

nōbīs nōta sunt, cornibus; ab eius summō sīcut palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitūdōque cornuum.

Figure 127. — Caribou with one horn.
In the Provincial Museum at Victoria, British Columbia.

Victoria, British Columbia, there is a degenerate caribou which, when shot, had only one antler (Fig. 127). **excelsius**, etc.: 'higher and straighter.' *30*, and *129*, *a*.

3. **ab eius summō**: 'at the end of the antler.' How lit.? **sīcut**, etc.: 'hands' (i.e. with fingers extended) 'and branches, as it were, are widely spread out.' The aptness of the description, and the comparison with the deer-horns familiar to the Romans (*nōbīs nōta sunt*), suggest that Caesar had probably obtained an antler of a reindeer. The error of placing a single antler at the middle of the forehead of the reindeer may be due to an interpreter's misunderstanding; if so, the error is certainly no more remarkable than that mistranslation of Exodus (chapter 34, verse 29), which led Michael Angelo to put horns on his famous statue of Moses.

4. **fēminae**, etc.: 'the natural characteristics of the male and the female.' **maris**: *13*, *g*.

5. **eadem**, etc.: here again Caesar was misinformed; the antlers of the female reindeer are somewhat smaller than those of the male.

27. Sunt item, quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium, sed magnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdīs articulīsque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt, neque, sī quō afflictae cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē aut sublevāre possunt.

Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubīlibus; ad eās sē applicant, atque ita, paulum modo reclīnātae, quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vēstigiīs cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus, quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subru-

---

27. 1. **alcēs**: 'moose.' The American moose closely resembles the European elk, to which Caesar refers; the American elk belongs to a different genus.

2. **caprīs**: i.e. *figūrae* (dative) *caprārum*, '(like) that of goats'; brachylogy. *238, b.* **varietās**: 'mottled appearance.'

Figure 128.—Horns of a Moose.

3. **antecēdunt**: 'they surpass (the reindeer).' **mutilae**, etc.: 'their horns present a broken appearance' (Fig. 128). How lit.? **cornibus**: *142, a.* **crūra**: 'legs.' *13, g.*

4. **nōdīs articulīsque**: 'nodes and joints.' In this statement Caesar reflects the condition of scientific knowledge in his time. The even more marvelous unicorn found a place in a textbook of Natural History as late as the fourteenth century. In England down to the nineteenth century the belief was still current that elephants have no joints in their legs. **quiētis**: *10, e.*

5. **afflictae**: 'thrown down.' **ērigere**, etc.: 'to assume a standing position, or raise themselves up.'

7. **sunt prō cubīlibus**: 'serve as resting-places.' **ad**, etc.: 'they lean up against these.'

8. **reclīnātae**: 'leaning to one side'; lit. 'leaned back.'

9. **cum**: *185, b.* **vēnātōribus**: 'hunters.' *74, a.*

10. **omnēs**: with *arborēs*. *353, d.* **ab**: 'at.' *126, c.*

unt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum, ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclīnāvērunt, īnfirmās arborēs pondere afflīgunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum, quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt magnitūdine paulō īnfrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. Magna vīs eōrum est et magna vēlōcitās, neque hominī neque ferae, quam cōnspexērunt, parcunt. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus, quae sint testimōniō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt.

Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrō-

---

11. **accīdunt**: 'cut into.' **tantum**, etc.: '(only) so much that the trees retain perfectly the appearance of standing firmly.' How lit.?

12. **Hūc**: *in hās arborēs*. **cōnsuētūdine**: *136, c.* This wonderful story may have originated in a distorted account of a kind of pitfall, made by covering a deep hole with timber so weakened by notches that a heavy animal passing above would break through.

28. 1. **ūrī**: 'wild cattle,' now extinct; sometimes confused with the aurochs, or European buffalo, of which a few herds still exist in game preserves. The 'wild cattle' had spreading horns, like those of our Texas cattle, and it is thought that they represented the primitive stock from which our domestic cattle are descended. The last specimen died in 1627.

2. **elephantōs**: 'the elephant.' *92, a.* **speciē**: *143, a.* **colōre**: *80, b.*

3. **taurī**: i.e. of a domestic 'bull.'

4. **parcunt**: 'spare'; they attack indiscriminately. *105.*

5. **studiōsē**: 'diligently.' **foveīs**: 'by means of pitfalls.' **captōs**: *228, a.* **sē dūrant**: 'they develop hardihood.' How lit.?

7. **relātīs**, etc.: 'publicly exhibiting the horns as a trophy.'

8. **sint**: *193, a.* **testimōniō**: *112, a.*

9. **assuēscere**, etc.: 'become domesticated.' **mānsuēfierī**: 'be tamed.' **nē**, etc.: 'not even if very young when caught.'

rum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsīta ab labrīs argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

Caesar returns to Gaul, cuts down the farther end of the bridge.

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit, Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus, quod, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, minimē omnēs Germānī agrī cultūrae student, cōnstituit nōn prōgredī longius; sed, nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleret atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū, partem ultimam pontis, quae rīpās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum CC rescindit, atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum IV cōnstituit praesidiumque cohortium XII, pontis tuendī causā, pōnit magnīsque eum locum mūnītiōnibus fīrmat.

Eī locō praesidiōque C. Volcācium Tullum adulēscentem praefēcit.

---

12. **conquīsīta**: 'collect and.' *228, a.* **āb labrīs**, etc.: 'mount them with silver at the rim.' How lit.?

13. **in amplissimīs epulīs**: 'at their more elaborate feasts.' The principal beverage was beer.

14. **ūtuntur**: sc. *hīs*; 'use them as drinking cups.' Such drinking horns continued in use in the Middle Ages; in later times horns of cattle were made into "powderhorns," the use of which in this country continued till after the Revolutionary War. Drinking horns were used also by the early Greeks.

29. 1. **Caesar**, etc.: the narrative, broken off at chapter 10, is here resumed.

3. **suprā**: chap. 22, ll. 1–2; cf. IV, 1, ll. 12–15.

8. **in extrēmō ponte**: 'on the end of the bridge,' in the river, 200 Roman feet from the east bank. The bridge here probably crossed a small island, which furnished a secure foundation for the tower. **tabulātōrum iv**: 'four stories high.' How lit.? *100, a.*

10. **mūnītiōnibus**: of a fortified enclosure at the end of the bridge, on the west bank.

COMMENTARIUS SEPTIMUS

Beginning of a General Uprising; First Movements. 1–10

The Gauls secretly plan a general uprising.

1. QUIĒTĀ Galliā, Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs proficīscitur. Ibi cognōscit dē P. Clōdiī caede; dē senātūsque cōnsultō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs Italiae coniūrārent, dīlēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre īnstituit.

Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et affingunt rūmōribus Gallī, quod rēs poscere

---

1–10. The Circumstances. During the sixth year of the Gallic War (53 B.C.) the restlessness of the conquered states became increasingly manifest, but all attempts to revolt were sternly repressed by Caesar. After his return from the second expedition into Germany (VI, 29), Caesar devoted himself particularly to the chastisement of the Eburones, but narrowly escaped the loss of a legion, which was stationed at Atuatuca in command of Quintus Cicero and was attacked by a force of marauding Sugambrians (VI, 30–44).

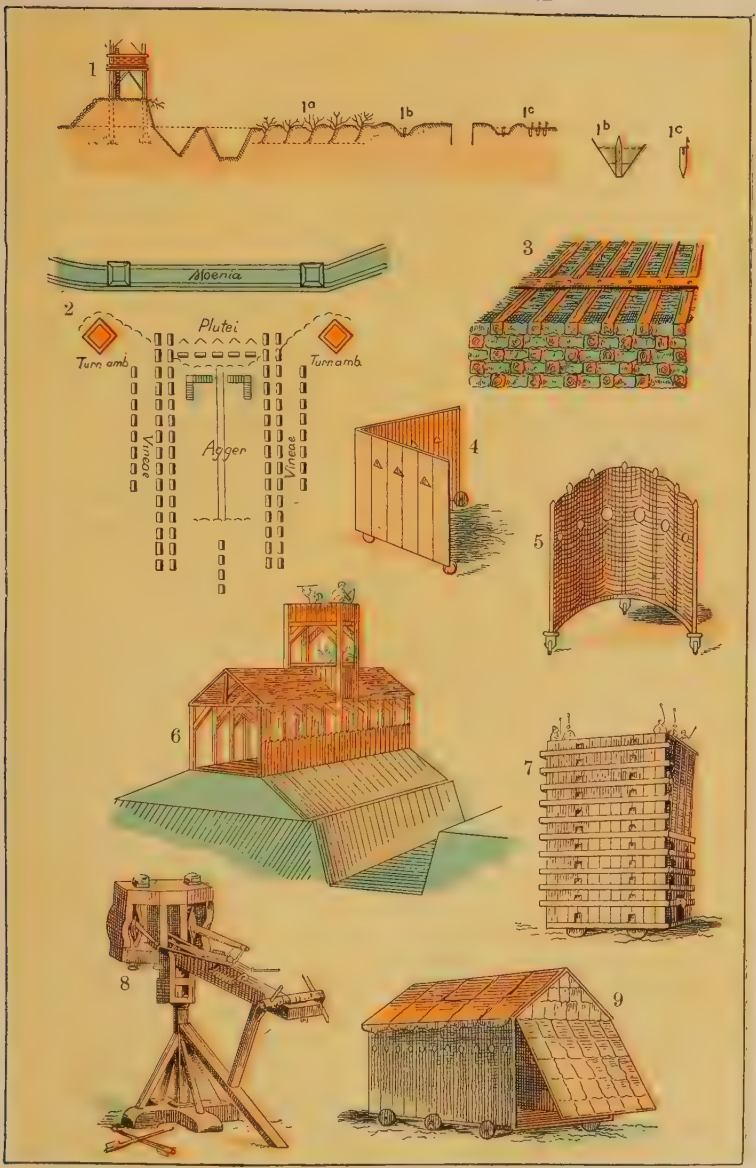
Before the close of the winter 53–52 B.C. the Gauls began to organize a general rebellion. The earlier part of the Seventh Book, which is devoted to the events of 52 B.C., deals with the first movements of the Gauls and with Caesar's counter-movements, which were characterized by amazing quickness of decision, energy, and despatch.

1. 1. **Quiētā Galliā**: the "calm before the storm." *144, b,* (3). **Italiam**: Cisalpine Gaul. *283, b.* **ad**, etc.: N. to I, 54, l. 8.

2. **P. Clōdiī**: killed in January, 52 B.C., in an encounter with his personal enemy, T. Annius Milo. Riots ensued at Rome, and the Senate ordered out all men throughout Italy capable of bearing arms.

4. **iūniōrēs**: men between the ages of 17 and 46. **coniūrārent**: 'should together take the oath' that they would obey the consuls. **dīlēctum**: 'levy.' *307, a.* **prōvinciā**: = *citeriōre prōvinciā*. *284.*

7. **Addunt et affingunt**: 'added to (the facts) and embellished (them) with rumors.' *175, b.* **quod**: = *id quod*, explained by *retinēri . . . posse*; "the wish" was "father to the thought." **rēs**: 'the condition of affairs.'



1. Caesar's Works before Alesia (VII. 72, 73): 1*a*, *Cippi*; 1*b*, *Lilia*; 1*c*, *Stimuli*.
2. *Agger*, etc. (VII. 24). 3. Gallic City Wall (VII. 23).
4, 5. Movable Breastworks, *plutei*.
6. Rampart of Camp, with Passageway and Towers.
7. Movable Tower, *turris ambulatoria*. 8. Catapult, *catapulta*.
9. Sapper's Hut, *vinea*.

vidēbātur, retinērī urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse.

Hāc impulsī occāsiōne, quī iam ante sē populī Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent, līberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs inter sē prīncipēs Galliae conciliīs silvestribus ac remōtīs locīs querunter dē Accōnis morte; hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere posse dēmōnstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiīs dēposcunt, quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitis perīculō Galliam in lībertātem vindicent. In prīmīs ratiōnem esse habendam dīcunt, prius quam eōrum clandestīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur:

Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant, absente imperātōre, ex hībernīs ēgredī, neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenīre possit; postrēmō in aciē praestāre interficī, quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam lībertātemque, quam ā maiōribus accēperint, recuperāre.

The Carnutes lead in revolt, massacre the Romans in Cenabum.

2. Hīs rēbus agitātīs, profitentur Carnutēs, sē nūllum perīculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, prīncipēsque

---

8. **urbānō mōtū**: 'the disturbances in the city,' in Rome.

9. **dissēnsiōnibus**: 'strifes.'

10. **quī**: 'since they.' *194, c.* **ante**: adverb.

13. **Accōnis**: a leader in uprisings the previous year (VI, 4, 44).

14. **ad ipsōs recidere**: 'might fall upon themselves.'

15. **omnibus pollicitātiōnibus**: 'by every sort of promise.'

17. **suī**, etc.: 'at the risk of their lives would assert the freedom of Gaul.' How lit.?

18. **ratiōnem esse habendam**: 'that a plan should be devised.'

22. **hībernīs**: 6 legions at Agedincum (3, Map 13), 2 among the Lingones (2, Map 13), and 2 near the Treveran frontier.

2. 1. **profitentur**: at a meeting of representatives of Gallic states.

2. **prīncipēs**, etc.: 'that they will be the first of all to make war.'

ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur et, quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, at iūre iūrandō ac fidē sanciātur, petunt, collātīs mīlitāribus signīs, quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur, nē, factō initiō bellī, ab reliquīs dēserantur. Tum, collaudātīs Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus, quī aderant, tempore eius reī cōnstitūtō, ā conciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs, Cotuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt cīvēsque Rōmānōs, quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōnstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī reī frūmentāriae iussū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum dīripiunt.

Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae maior atque illūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque significant; hunc alī deinceps ex-

---

3. **quoniam**, etc.: 'since at the time they could not bind one another for mutual protection by an exchange of hostages.'

5. **fidē**: 'a pledge of honor.' **sanciātur**: sc. *ut*; 'that (the compact) be ratified.' *199, a.* **collātīs signīs**: 'by placing their standards close together,' signifying inviolable alliance for war.

6. **mōre eōrum**: 'in accordance with their custom.' *136, c.* **gravissima**: 'most solemn.'

9. **eius reī**: the commencing of hostilities.

10. **discēditur**: 'they went away.' *73, d*, and *175, b.*

3. 1. **diēs**: the 'day' appointed for commencing hostilities. *21, a.*

2. **dēspērātīs**: here an adjective. **Cēnabum**: Map 13. *119, a.*

3. **negōtiandī**: the Roman citizens engaged in business in Gallic cities were chiefly money-lenders who furnished capital for various enterprises, and dealers in supplies, particularly of grain; cf. p. xxviii.

6. **interficiunt**: the massacre of the Roman citizens, well organized in advance, took place at daybreak (l. 11).

8. **quae**: 'any.' *168.* **clāmōre**: 'by shouting.'

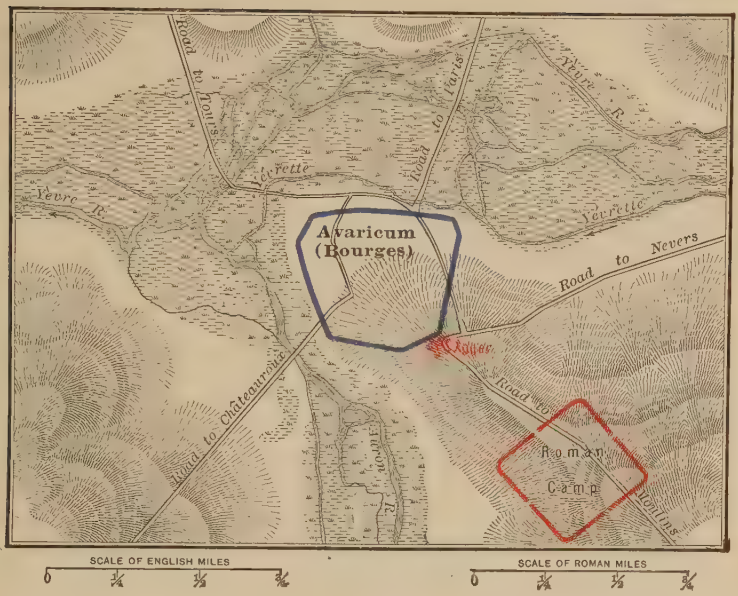
9. **per agrōs regiōnēsque**: 'across the country.' How lit.? **hunc** [clāmōrem], etc.: 'others in turn take up the shouting.'

MAP 14

THE SIEGE OF AVARICUM

Book VII, 15–28

To face page 374



EXPLANATION

The city of Avaricum, on the site of modern Bourges, was situated at the confluence of two streams, now called Yèvre and Auron, and was protected by marshes on three sides. It was surrounded by a strong wall (outlined in blue), and was reckoned by its inhabitants the most beautiful city in Gaul.

Caesar encamped on the higher ground on the side of the city free from marshes. Selecting a favorable point of approach he commenced the construction of a huge embankment, agger, consisting of two parallel dikes, or viaducts, terminating in a long embankment near the wall and parallel with it.

The siege embankment, composed largely of timber, was in part destroyed by fire, and the city was finally taken by assault.

cipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta essent, ante prīmam cōnfectam vigiliam in fīnibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est mīlium passuum circiter CLX.

The Arverni revolt, under the leadership of Vercingetorix.

4. Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorīx, Celtillī fīlius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cuius pater prīncipātum tōtīus Galliae obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum appetēbat, ā cīvitāte erat interfectus, convocātīs suīs clientibus facile incendit. Cognitō eius cōnsiliō, ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquīsque prīncipibus, quī hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn exīstimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen, atque in agrīs habet dīlēctum egentium ac perditōrum.

Hāc coāctā manū, quōscumque adit ex cīvitāte, ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur, ut commūnis lībertātis causā

---

11. **Cēnabī**: *146.* **gesta essent**: adversative, 'although these things had been done.' *194, d.* **ante . . . vigiliam**: *228, b*, and *242, c.*

12. **quod spatium**: 'a distance which.' Perhaps men had been posted in advance along the roads leading from Cenabum, in readiness to transmit the news; otherwise the population must have been so dense over the country that neighbors were within hailing distance. *165, b.*

4. 1. **ibi**: in the country of the Arvernians; Map 13.

2. **prīncipātum tōtīus Galliae**: 'a position of leadership throughout the Celtic country,' on account of his influence. *287, b.*

3. **eam**: *161, a.* **causam**: explained by the *quod*-clause.

5. **clientibus**: a feudal following, like that of Orgetorix (I, 4).

6. **ad arma concurritur**: 'they rushed to arms.' How lit.? *73, d.* **patruō**: 'uncle,' on his father's side.

7. **hanc**, etc.: 'that fortune ought not to be tempted in this way'; cf. Fig. 198. How lit.?

11. **quōscumque**, etc.: 'all the men of his state whom he approached.' *50, a.*

arma capiant, magnīsque coāctīs cōpiīs adversāriōs suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex cīvitāte. Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit quōque versus lēgātiōnēs; obtestātur, ut in fidē maneant.

Vercingetorix wins over many states, including the Bituriges.

Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parīsiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovīcēs, Andōs reliquōsque omnēs, quī Ōceanum attingunt, adiungit; omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte, omnibus hīs cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat, certum numerum mīlitum ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet, armōrum quantum quaeque cīvitās domī quodque ante tempus efficiat, cōnstituit; in prīmīs equitātuī studet.

Summae dīligentiae summam imperiī sevēritātem addit; magnitūdine supplicī dubitantēs cōgit. Nam, maiōre commissō dēlīctō, īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs necat, leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectīs, aut singulīs effossīs oculīs, domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō et magnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.

5. Hīs supplicīīs celeriter coāctō exercitū, Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficīscitur.

---

13. **adversāriōs**: 'opponents,' such as Gobannitio.

16. **obtestātur**: 'he adjured (his allies),' through his envoys.

22. **ārmōrum quantum**, etc.: 'how great a supply of arms each state should furnish.' *97, b.*

23. **domī**: 'of its own manufacture,' lit. 'at home.' *146.* **quod**, etc.: 'and before what time'; Vercingetorix fixed the date for delivery.

26. **dubitantēs**: 'those who hesitated' to join him. *227, a,* (4).

27. **dēlīctō**: 'offence.' **necat**: sc. *eum quī id commīserat.*

28. **leviōre dē causā**: i.e. *sī quī levius peccāvērunt.* **auribus**, etc.: 'he cut off their ears, or gouged out one eye, and.' *144, b,* (2).

29. **documentō**: 'a warning.' *112, b.*

5. 3. **Rutēnōs**, etc: Vercingetorix (Figures 18, 145) proceeds with great energy against the states friendly to Caesar.

Eius adventū Biturīgēs ad Aeduōs, quōrum erant in fidē, lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint.

Aeduī dē cōnsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum relīquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Aeduīs dīvidit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsīre ausī, domum revertuntur lēgātīsque nostrīs renūntiant, *sē Biturīgum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōnsiliī fuisse cognōverint, ut, sī flūmen trānsīssent, ūnā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent.* Id eāne dē causā, quam lēgātīs prōnūntiārunt, an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod nihil nōbīs cōnstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum.

Biturīgēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs coniungunt.

Caesar leaves Cisalpine Gaul, proceeds to Narbo, in the Province.

6. Hīs rēbus in Italiam Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompeī commodiōrem in statum

4. **quōrum**, etc.: 'in whose allegiance they were.' The Aeduans were at the head of one league of Gallic states, the Arvernians of the other (I, 31, ll. 10–28).

5. **rogātum**: *231, a.* **hostium**: the Arvernian army.

7. **lēgātōrum**: these had been left 'with the army' when it was placed in winter quarters at the end of 53 B.C. *313, a.*

9. **Biturīgibus**: *19, e*, and *112, b.* **Quī**: *167.* **Ligerim**: *18, e.*

11. **ausī**: *62.* **domum**: *20, c*, and *119, b.*

12. **veritōs**: *61, a*, (2), and *227, a*, (1). **quibus**, etc.: 'having found out that the Bituriges had the design.' *97, b*, and *214, a.*

15. **-ne . . . an**: *204*, (1). B. 162, 4; A. 335; H. 380.

16. **fēcerint**: the object is *Id.* **nihil**: adverbial accusative. *118, c.* **nōbīs**: *156.* **prō certō**: 'as certain.' *154, a.*

6. 1. **Italiam**: Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul. *283, b*, and *256.*

2. **urbānās rēs**: 'affairs in the city,' Rome; see chap. 1, ll. 2–9, and Notes. **virtūte**: 'through the energetic action.' The break between Caesar and Pompey did not come till two years later. *258.*

pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus est.

Eō cum vēnisset, magnā difficultāte afficiēbātur, quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenīre posset. Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dīmicātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eīs quidem eō tempore, quī quiētī vidērentur, suam salūtem rēctē committī vidēbat.

7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrogēs et Gabalōs, ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit et, magnā coāctā manū, in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus irruptiōnem facere contendit.

Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar omnibus cōnsiliīs antevertendum exīstimāvit, ut Narbōnem proficīscerētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentēs cōnfīrmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prōvinciālibus, Volcīs Arecomicīs, Tolōsātibus circumque Narbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant fīnitima, cōnstituit, partem cōpiārum ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque, quod ex Italiā addūxerat, in Helviōs, quī fīnēs Arvernōrum contingunt, convenīre iubet.

---

5. **magnā**, etc.: 'he experienced great difficulty in devising a plan for reaching his army.' How lit. ?

6. **posset**: *204*, (2). **legiōnēs**: see chap. 1, l. 22, and N.

8. **ipse**: alone, or with only a small military escort.

9. **eō tempore**: 'at so critical a time.' How lit.?

7. 1. **Rutēnōs**: *282*. **missus**: chap. 5, ll. 1–3.

2. **Nitiobrogēs, Gabalōs**: west, and east, of the Ruteni; see Map GALLIA.

4. **versus**: 'in the direction of.' *123, c.* **irruptiōnem**: 'raid.'

6. **omnibus**, etc.: 'that setting out for Narbo should precede all (forming of) plans.' How lit. ?

8. **prōvinciālibus**: a part of the Ruteni were in the Province.

9. **quae loca**: (*in*) *locīs quae*. *165, c.*

11. **supplēmentum**: 'raw contingent'; cf. chap. 1, ll. 3–5.

Caesar crosses the Cévennes through deep snow, surprising the Arverni.

8. His rēbus comparātīs, repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia perīculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficīscitur. Etsī mōns Cebenna, quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen, discussā nive in altitūdinem pedum sex atque ita viīs patefactīs summō mīlitum sūdōre, ad fīnēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressīs inopīnantibus, quod sē Cebennā ut mūrō mūnītōs exīstimābant, ac nē singulārī quidem umquam hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat, ut, quam lātissimē possint, vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrōrem īnferant.

Celeriter haec fāmā ac nūntiīs ad Vercingetorīgem perferuntur; quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant, ut suis fortūnīs cōnsulat neu sē ab hostibus dīripī patiātur, praesertim cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus, castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

---

8. 1. **Hīs**, etc.: 'Having completed these preparations.'

2. **intra praesidia**: 'within the (chain of) garrisons' by which Caesar had secured the western frontier of the Province. **perīculōsum**: *75, f*; *84*, and *148, d*. **putābat**: sc. *Lucterius*.

3. **proficīscitur**: sc. *Caesar*.

4. **dūrissimō tempore**: 'the most inclement season.'

5. **discussā nive**: 'the snow was cleared away' in the pass by which he crossed the Cévennes. Cf. Map 13, (1). *144, b*, (2).

6. **summō sūdōre**: 'with the utmost effort.' *136, b*. How lit.?

9. **nē**, etc.: 'not even for one man alone,' not to speak of an army.

10. **sēmitae**: mountain 'trails.' **patuerant**: 'were passable.'

13. **fāmā**: 'by report;' less definite than **nūntiīs**, 'by messages.'

15. **suīs**: 'their own.' **neu**: *199, d*.

16. **cum**: *184, b*. **omne**: *353, d*.

18. **in . . . versus**: *123, c*. **Arvernōs**: *282*.

Caesar assembles his legions; he leaves two at Agedincum and starts for Gorgobina, besieged by Vercingetorix.

9. At Caesar, bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorīge ūsū ventūra opīniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendī ab exercitū discēdit, Brūtum adulēscentem hīs cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet, ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur: *Datūrum sē operam, nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit.*

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, suīs inopīnantibus, quam maximīs potest itineribus, Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per fīnēs Aeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant, ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Aeduīs inīrētur cōnsiliī, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit priusque omnēs in ūnum locum cōgit, quam dē eius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset.

Hāc rē cognitā, Vercingetorīx rūrsus in Biturīgēs exercitum redūcit, atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Boiōrum

---

9. 1. **haec dē Vercingetorīge**: 'these movements on the part of Vercingetorix.'

2. **ūsū ventūra** [esse]: 'would take place;' lit., 'would come in experience.' *142, a.* **opīniōne praecēperat**: 'had conjectured.'

3. **per causam**, etc.: 'making a pretext of bringing together his new force,' etc. How lit.?

6. **Datūrum** [esse] . . . **absit**: said as a blind, to prevent information regarding his plans from reaching the enemy.

9. **nactus**, etc.: 'finding his cavalry refreshed.'

12. **duae legiōnēs**: see (2) on Map 13.

13. **quid**, etc.: 'any design involving his personal safety.' *97, b*; *353, d.*

14. **celeritāte**: 'by quickness of movement.' **praecurreret**: that he might forestall (it).'

16. **nūntiārī posset**: 'any report could reach.' *73, d*; *189, b.*

18. **Boiōrum**, etc.: I, 28, ll. 15–18; also, N. to VI, 24, l. 3.

oppidum, quōs ibi, Helvēticō proeliō victōs, Caesar collocāverat Aeduīsque attribuerat, oppugnāre īnstituit.

10. Magnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum afferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē, stīpendiāriīs Aeduōrum expugnātīs, cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcīs in eō praesidium vidērēt positum esse; sī mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūrīs subvectiōnibus labōrāret.

---

10. 1. **haec rēs**: 'This movement' of Vercingetorix.

3. **nē**, etc.: if Caesar failed to protect the Gauls pledged to his interest, he would soon find them enemies.

Figure 129. — Low ground northeast of Bourges, ancient Avaricum.

4. **cūncta Gallia**: 'the whole of Gaul.' **amīcīs**: 'for those (who were) friendly (to him).' **eō**: Caesar.

6. **ēdūceret**: sc. *legiōnēs*. **ab**: 'in respect to.' **dūrīs subvectiōnibus**: 'on account of difficulties of transportation,' caused by the bad state of the roads toward the end of winter.

Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpetī, quam, tantā contumēliā acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Aeduōs dē supportandō commeātū, praemittit ad Boiōs, quī dē suō adventū doceant, hortenturque, ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum magnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agedincī legiōnibus atque impedīmentīs tōtīus exercitūs relictīs, ad Boiōs proficīscitur.

The Siege and Destruction of Avaricum. 23–31

The ingenious construction of Gallic city walls.

23. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē fōrmā sunt.

Trabēs dērēctae, perpetuae in longitūdinem paribus intervāllīs, distantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs, in solō collocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur; ea

---

9. **tantā contumēliā acceptā**: 'by acquiescing in so great an indignity' as the capture of Gorgobina by Vercingetorix would be. **suōrum**: 'who were loyal to him.' **voluntātēs**: 'the good will.

11. **quī**, etc.: '(messengers) to explain.' *193, a.*

14. **tōtīus exercitūs**: ten legions, besides auxiliary troops. *308.*

11–22. Summary. Caesar in rapid succession captures Vellaunodunum, Cenabum, and Noviodunum (4, 5, and 6 on Map 13), and marches toward Avaricum (7 on Map 13). This city the Gauls, contrary to the advice of Vercingetorix, resolve to defend. Caesar besieges it, and Vercingetorix is unable to gain any advantage over him.

23. 2. **Trabēs**, etc.: beams at right angles to the course of the wall were laid in a row two feet apart along the entire length of the wall.

4. **revinciuntur intrōrsus**: 'are made fast inside' the wall, probably by means of crossbeams parallel with the line of the wall, as indicated in Plate IX, 3. **vestiuntur**: 'are covered.'

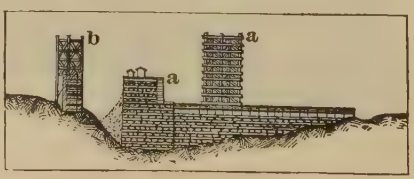


Figure 130. Section of works at Avaricum.

a, a. Roman agger, with a tower on the raised front facing the Gallic wall, and a higher movable tower further back.

b. Section of Gallic wall surmounted by a tower.

autem, quae dīximus, intervālla grandibus in fronte saxīs efferciuntur.

Hīs collocātīs et coagmentātīs, alius īnsuper ōrdō additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur nēque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed, paribus intermissīs spatiīs, singulae singulīs saxīs interiectīs artē contineantur. Sīc deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum iūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur.

The Gauls set the agger on fire and make a fierce attack.

24. Hīs tot rēbus impedītā oppugnātiōne, mīlitēs, cum tōtō tempore frīgore et assiduīs imbribus tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt et diēbus XXV aggerem lātum pedēs CCCXXX, altum pedēs LXXX exstrūxērunt.

Cum is mūrum hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus cōnsuētūdine excubāret mīlitēsque hortārētur, nē quod omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum, fūmāre aggerem, quem cunīculō hostēs succenderant, eōdemque tempore,

5. **fronte**: the outside of the wall; the large stones tightly fitted the spaces between the ends of the beams.

6. **efferciuntur**: 'are closely packed.'

7. **coagmentātīs**: 'fastened together.'

8. **idem illud intervāllum**: two feet. **inter**, etc.: 'touch one another.' *159.*

9. **singulae**, etc.: 'the individual (beams) are held in position by tightly fitting a stone between' each two. How lit.?

11. **iūsta**: 'proper.' **expleātur**: 'is reached.' *190, b.*

24. 1. **oppugnātiōne**: *340.* **cum**: 'although.'

2. **tempore**: *147, c.* **frīgore**: it was still winter, probably in March (chap. 32, l. 4). **assiduīs**: 'continual.' *81.*

4. **CCCXXX**: *trecentōs et trīgintā*, measured where the siege bank faced the wall (Map 14, and Fig. 130). **LXXX**: *octōgintā*. The unusual height is explained by the existence of a gully in front of the wall.

7. **excubāret**: 'was watching.'

9. **fūmāre aggerem**: 'that the siege embankment was smoking.'

10. **cunīculō**: 'by means of a countermine,' run out underneath.

tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portīs ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fīēbat; aliī facēs atque āridam māteriem dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant, picem reliquāsque rēs, quibus īgnis excitārī potest, fundēbant, ut, quō prīmum occurrerētur aut cui reī ferrētur auxilium, vix ratiō inīrī posset.

Tamen, quod īnstitūtō Caesaris duae semper legiōnēs prō castrīs excubābant plūrēsque, partītīs temporibus, erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut aliī ēruptiōnibus resisterent, aliī turrēs redūcerent aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castrīs multitūdō ad restinguendum concurreret.

An instance of extraordinary bravery.

25. Cum in omnibus locīs, cōnsūmptā iam reliquā parte noctis, pugnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriae redintegrārētur, eō magis, quod deūstōs pluteōs turrium vidēbant nec facile adīre apertōs ad auxiliandum animad-

---

11. **portīs**: *134, a.* **ab utrōque latere**: 'on both sides' of the siege embankment, designated by the movable towers now at the corners (Plate IX, 2).

12. **facēs**: 'firebrands.' *17, c.* **āridam**: *81.*

15. **ut**, etc.: 'so that it was hardly possible to decide at what point a counter-attack should first be made, or to what part reinforcements should be sent.' How lit.?

17. **īnstitūtō**, etc.: *136, c.* The legionaries on duty worked in shifts.

20. **turrēs**, etc.: they first drew back the towers, so as to remove these beyond the reach of the flames, then cut the siege embankment in two in order to confine the fire to the part already burning.

21. **ad restinguendum**: 'to put out (the fire).' *230*, (3).

25. 2. **hostibus**: *109, a.* B. 188, 1, N.; A. 377; H. 425, 4, N.

3. **deūstōs**, etc.: sc. *esse*, 'that the breastworks of the towers were burned'; these were wooden screens, probably protected by hides, on the front of the towers.

4. **nec**, etc.: sc. *mīlitēs*; 'and that it was not easy for the men exposed' to the enemy's missiles 'to come forward to help' in putting out the fire. The artillery was placed in the towers, which were there-

vertēbant, semperque ipsī recentēs dēfessīs succēderent omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vēstīgiō temporis positam arbitrārentur, accidit, īnspectantibus nōbīs, quod, dignum memoriā vīsum, praetereundum nōn exīstimāvimus.

Quīdam ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs sēbī ac picis trāditās glēbās in īgnem ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat; scorpiōne ab latere dextrō trāiectus exanimātusque, concidit. Hunc ex proximīs ūnus iacentem trānsgressus, eōdem illō mūnere fungēbātur; eādem ratiōne, ictū scorpiōnis, exanimātō alterō, successit tertius, et tertiō quārtus, nec prius ille est ā prōpugnātōribus vacuus relīctus locus, quam, restīnctō aggere atque omnī ex parte summōtīs hostibus, fīnis est pugnandī factus.

The defenders, despairing, plan to flee, but are thwarted.

26. Omnia expertī Gallī, quod rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē cōnsilium cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere, hortante et iubente Vercingetorīge. Id silentiō noctis cōnātī,

---

fore special objects of attack; the towers were finally saved, perhaps by throwing earth against the parts that caught fire.

5. **ipsī**: 'on their side.' **recentēs, dēfessīs**: *227, a*, (4).

7. **accidit**: sc. *id*; 'there happened, under my own observation, (something) which.' How lit.? *156*. **dignum**: predicative, after *vīsum*. *142, b*.

9. **per**, etc.: 'lumps of tallow and pitch passed from hand to hand,' till they reached the Gaul who threw them. The siege embankment, built of green timber and earth and stones, did not burn readily.

10. **ē regiōne turris**: 'directly in a line with one of the towers' on the siege embankment, hence within range. How lit.?

11. **scorpiōne**, etc.: 'his right side pierced with a (bolt from a) scorpion.' How lit.? *343, a*.

12. **Hunc**, etc.: 'stepping over him as he lay.'

14. **tertiō**: *ictū scorpiōnis exanimātō tertiō* (*Gallō*), *successit quārtus* (*Gallus*). **prius . . . quam**: *189, a*.

15. **prōpugnātōribus**: 'defenders.' **vacuus**: predicative.

nōn magnā iactūrā suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant, propter eā quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorīgis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad īnsequendum tardābat.

Iamque hōc facere noctū apparābant, cum mātrēs familiae repente in pūblicum prōcurrērunt flentēsque prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum omnibus precibus petiērunt, nē sē et commūnēs līberōs hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam nātūrae et vīrium īnfīrmitās impedīret. Ubi eōs in sententiā perstāre vīdērunt, quod plērumque in summō perīculō timor misericordiam nōn recipit, conclāmāre et significāre dē fugā Rōmānīs coepērunt.

Quō timōre perterritī Gallī, nē ab equitātū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur, cōnsiliō dēstitērunt.

In a final assault the Romans capture Avaricum, sparing none.

27. Posterō diē Caesar, prōmōtā turrī perfectīsque operibus, quae facere īnstituerat, magnō coörtō imbrī, nōn inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōnsilium tempestātem arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius cūstōdiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs quoque languidius in opere versārī iussit et,

---

26. 4. **nōn māgnā**: 'no great.' *239, g.*

6. **et**: correlative with *neque*. *233, a.* **palūs**: cf. chap. 19, ll. 1–10.

7. **tardābat**: 'would delay.'

8. **apparābant**: 'they were preparing.'

10. **prōiectae**: 'casting themselves.' **suōrum**: 'of their (husbands).'

14. **nōn**, etc.: 'knows no pity.' *177, c*, and *175, c*.

16. **Quō**, etc.: 'frightened by this' (giving of notice to the Romans) 'and fearing that.' How lit.?

17. **praeoccupārentur**: 'be seized in advance.' *202.*

27. 2. **imbrī**: *15, c.* **nōn inūtilem**: *239, g.*

4. **incautius**: 'rather carelessly.' *153, a.*

5. **languidius**: 'quite lazily' according to appearances, in order to deceive the enemy.

quid fierī vellet, ostendit. Legiōnēs intrā vīneās in occultō expedītās cohortātus, ut aliquandō prō tantīs labōribus frūctum victōriae perciperent, eīs, quī prīmī mūrum ascendissent, praemia prōposuit mīlitibusque signum dedit.

Illī subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mūrumque celeriter complēvērunt.

28. Hostēs, rē novā perterritī, mūrō turribusque dēiectī, in forō ac locīs patentiōribus cuneātim cōnstitērunt, hōc animō, ut, sī quā ex parte obviam venīrētur, aciē īnstrūctā dēpugnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vīdērunt, veritī, nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectīs armīs ultimās oppidī partēs continentī impetū petīvērunt, parsque ibi, cum angustō exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā mīlitibus, pars iam ēgressa portīs ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit quisquam, quī praedae studēret. Sīc, et Cēnabī caede et labōre operis incitātī, nōn aetāte cōnfectīs, nōn mulieribus, nōn īnfantibus pepercērunt.

Dēnique ex omnī numerō, quī fuit circiter mīlium XL, vix DCCC, quī, prīmō clāmōre auditō, sē ex oppidō ēiēcerant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorīgem pervēnērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit, et veritus, nē qua

---

9. **praemia**: *318*. **signum**: *326, b*.

28. 1. **turribus**: on the walls of Avaricum (chap. 22, l. 9). *127, a*.

2. **cuneātim**: 'in wedge-shaped masses.' *77*.

3. **sī**, etc.: 'if an attack should be made from any quarter.' How lit.?

4. **dēpugnārent**: 'they would fight it out.'

5. **circumfundī**: impersonal, 'that they' (the Romans) 'distributed themselves thickly.' How lit.? *174*.

8. **ā mīlitibus**: sc. *interfecta est*.

10. **quisquam**: *168*. **studēret**: *194, a*. **Cēnabī**: *146*.

11. **nōn**, etc.: *239, a*. **aetāte cōnfectīs**: 'the aged.' How lit.?

15. **Vercingetorīgem**: In Fig. 131 a modern designer represents

in castrīs ex eōrum concursū et misericordiā vulgī sēditiō orerētur, procul in viā dispositīs familiāribus suīs prīncipibusque cīvitātum, disparandōs dēdūcendōsque ad suōs cūrāvit, quae cuique cīvitātī pars castrōrum ab initiō obvēnerat.

Figure 131. — Vercingetorix viewing the burning of Avaricum.

Vercingetorix with a group of Gallic soldiers as viewing from a distance the burning of Avaricum after the slaughter of the inhabitants.

17. **sēditiō**: 'mutiny.'

18. **orerētur**: *61, b.* **procul**, etc.: 'he stationed personal representatives and leading men of the (different) states along the road at a distance' from the camp, in order to intercept the fugitives, '(and).'

19. **disparandōs**, etc.: 'he had them' (the fugitives) 'divided up and conducted in each case to the men of their own state, (who were) in the part of the camp that had from the first been assigned to that state.' How lit.? The 10,000 defenders of Avaricum had been drawn from different states (chap. 21, l. 6). *229, b.*

"It is probable," says Desjardins, "that if the orders of the Gallic

The Siege of Gergovia. 36–51

Caesar arrives at Gergovia and fortifies two camps.

36. Caesar ex eō locō quīntīs castrīs Gergoviam pervēnit equestrīque eō diē proeliō levī factō, perspectō urbis sitū, quae, posita in altissimō monte, omnēs aditūs difficilēs habēbat, dē oppugnātiōne dēspērāvit, dē obsessiōne nōn prius agendum cōnstituit, quam rem frūmentāriam expedīsset.

At Vercingetorīx, castrīs prope oppidum positīs, mediocribus circum sē intervāllīs sēparātim singulārum cīvitātum

---

chief had been obeyed, and Avaricum had been burned, as he wished to have it, Caesar and his army would have had the lot of Napoleon after the burning of Moscow."

29–35. Summary. Vercingetorix, calling together the Gallic leaders, reminded them that at the outset he had opposed the defense of Avaricum, and encouraged them with the hope of ultimate victory. He undertook to win over the remaining states that had not yet joined in the revolt, and levied more troops.

Representative Aeduans appealed to Caesar to settle a dispute between two claimants for the office of Vergobret; he proceeded to Decetia (*Decize*), ascertained the facts, and gave the office to Convictolitavis. He sent four legions north under Labienus, and himself led six legions southward into the Arvernian country. He marched first along the east bank of the Elaver (*Allier*), Vercingetorix marching on the opposite side; by a clever ruse (p. xv) he crossed the river behind Vercingetorix, who proceeded rapidly toward Gergovia, Caesar following (Map 13).

36. 1. **eō locō**: the place where Caesar encamped after crossing the Elaver (*Allier*). **quīntīs castrīs**: 'in five marches,' encampments being counted as marches because at the close of each day's march a camp was fortified. *147, c*, and *331, a*. **Gergoviam**: *119, a*.

2. **equestrī**, etc.: Vercingetorix had reached Gergovia first.

3. **monte**, etc.: Gergovia lay on a high, narrow plateau, accessible only from the south and southeast. See Map 15.

4. **oppugnātiōne, obsessiōne**: *340*.

5. **expedīsset**: 'had arranged for.' *189, b*.

6. **castrīs . . . positīs**: on an elevated terrace, adjoining the town on the south; marked GALLIC ENCAMPMENT on Map 15.

7. **sēparātim**: the soldiers of each state had a separate camp.

cōpiās collocāverat, atque omnibus eius iugī collibus occupātīs, quā dēspicī poterat, horribilem speciem praebēbat: principēsque eārum cīvitātum, quōs sibi ad cōnsilium capiendum dēlēgerat, prīmā lūce cotīdiē ad sē convenīre iubēbat, seu quid commūnicandum, seu quid administrandum vidērētur; neque ūllum ferē diem intermittēbat, quīn equestrī proeliō, interiectīs sagittāriīs, quid in quōque esset animī ac virtūtis suōrum, perīclitārētur.

Erat ē regiōne oppidī collis sub ipsīs rādīcibus montis, ēgregiē mūnītus atque ex omnī parte circumcīsus; quem sī tenērent nostrī, et aquae magnā parte et pābulātiōne līberā prohibitūrī hostēs vidēbantur. Sed is locus praesidiō ab hīs nōn nīmis fīrmō tenēbātur. Tamen silentiō noctis Caesar, ex castrīs ēgressus, prius quam subsidiō ex oppidō venīrī posset, dēiectō praesidiō, potītus locō, duās ibi legiōnēs collocāvit fossamque duplicem duodēnum pedum

---

8. **eius iugī collibus**: 'the minor elevations of the height,' the points of vantage on the mountain, about and below the town. *160, d.*

9. **quā**, etc.: 'where a view over the plain could be had.' How lit.? *73, d.* **horribilem**: 'formidable.' *81.*

13. **neque**, etc.: 'and he allowed hardly a day to pass without trying.' *201, a.*

14. **interiectīs sagittāriīs**: 'placing archers among (the cavalry).' How lit.? **quid**, etc.: i.e. *quid animī ac virtūtis (97, b) in quōque suōrum (97, a) esset (204, 2).*

16. **ē regiōne oppidī**: 'directly opposite the town,' on the south. **collis**: White Rock (*La Roche Blanche*), near the village of the same name (Map 15).

17. **mūnītus**: principally by nature. **circumcīsus**: 'precipitous.'

18. **aquae**, etc.: the Gauls probably obtained water from the Auzon.

19. **hostēs**: accusative. **ab hīs**: *ab hostibus.*

21. **castrīs**: marked LARGE CAMP on Map 15. **subsidiō**, etc.: 'before relief could come.' How lit.? *73, d*, and *112, a.*

22. **locō**: *131, c.* **ibi**: on White Rock.

23. **fossam**, etc.: 'two (parallel) trenches, each 12 feet wide.' How lit.? According to the excavations, which have brought to light many

ā maiōribus castrīs ad minōra perdūxit, ut tūtō ab repentīnō hostium incursū etiam singulī commeāre possent. 25

Figure 132. — Gergovia.

East end of the plateau of Gergovia and upper half of slope down toward White Rock, as seen from an elevation just above the village of Jussat.

traces of Caesar's works near Gergovia, the hastily dug trenches were hardly more than six feet wide. **duodēnum**: *22, c.*

24. **minōra** [castra]: on White Rock, marked SMALL CAMP on Map 15. As this contained two legions, in the large camp there must have been stationed four legions besides the cavalry and auxiliaries.

37–45. Summary. Leading Aeduans, including Convictolitavis, turned against Caesar, and a body of 10,000 Aeduan soldiers, sent to serve under him, was moved to defection. Caesar by prompt action won back the allegiance of the soldiers, but in his absence from Gergovia the Gauls fiercely attacked both camps. The Aeduan revolt was temporarily checked.

Anticipating more serious trouble, however, Caesar began to plan how he could withdraw from Gergovia, and reunite his forces, without giving the impression that he was fleeing from the enemy. In order to frighten the Gauls he resolved to make a feint assault. He sent part of his forces around, as if to threaten an exposed point west of the town (**D** on Map 15), thus drawing off the Gauls from their encampment, which he prepared to attack in force.

46. Mūrus oppidī ā plānitiē atque initiō ascēnsus rēctā regiōne, sī nūllus ānfrāctus intercēderet, MCC passūs aberat; quicquid hūc circuitūs ad molliendum clīvum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. Ā mediō ferē colle in longitūdinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex grandibus saxīs VI pedum mūrum, quī nostrōrum impetum tardāret, praedūxerant Gallī atque, īnferiōre omnī spatiō vacuō relictō, superiōrem partem collis, ūsque ad mūrum oppidī, dēnsissimīs castrīs complēverant.

Mīlitēs, datō signō, celeriter ad mūnītiōnem perveniunt eamque trānsgressi trīnīs castrīs potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castrīs capiendīs celeritās, ut Teutomatus, rēx Nitiobrogum, subitō in tabernāculō oppressus, ut merīdiē con-

---

46. 1. **plānitiē**, etc.: the lower ground at the right of the Small Camp and just above the Parallel Trenches; **E** on Map 15. **rēctā regiōne**: 'in a straight line.'

2. **sī**, etc.: 'if there should be no deviation.' How lit.? **ānfrāctus**: *79, d.* **MCC**: *mīlle ducentōs*, somewhat more than an English mile. *38, a, b,* and *243, b.*

3. **quicquid . . . augēbat**: 'the distance to be traversed was increased by every detour (made) in order to render (the ascent of) the slope easy.' How lit.? The wall of Gergovia lay almost 1000 feet above the point where the legions started.

4. **Ā**, etc.: 'about halfway up the height.' *126, c,* and *152, a.*

5. **in**, etc.: 'following the long side of the mountain as the contour permitted.' How lit.?

6. **mūrum**: marked WALL 6 FEET HIGH on Map 15. **tardāret**: *193, a.*

7. **īnferiōre spatiō**: the sloping mountain side below the wall. **vacuō**: predicative. *148, c.*

8. **superiōrem partem collis**: GALLIC ENCAMPMENT on Map 15.

9. **dēnsissimīs castrīs**: 'with camps (standing) close together'; each camp contained the troops of a single state, in accordance with the arrangement described in chap. 36, ll. 6–8. *153, a.*

11. **trīnīs castrīs**: 'three camps.' *37, e,* and *131, c.*

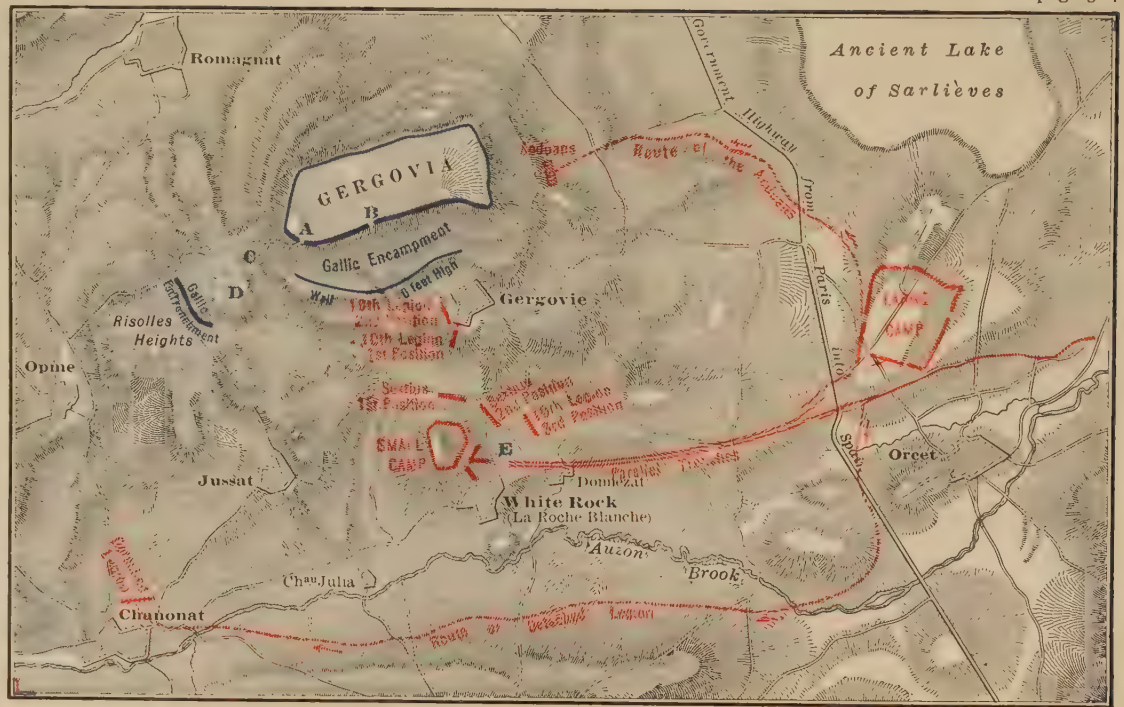
13. **conquiēverat**: 'he was having a nap'; lit. 'had taken complete rest.'

MAP 15

The Siege of Gergovia

Book VII, 36–51

To face page 384



quiēverat, superiōre corporis parte nūdā, vulnerātō equō, vix sē ex manibus praedantium mīlitum ēriperet.

Flushed with victory, the soldiers do not retreat as ordered.

47. Cōnsecūtus id, quod animō prōposuerat, Caesar receptuī canī iussit, legiōnisque X, quācum erat, continuō signa cōnstituit. At reliquārum legiōnum mīlitēs, nōn exaudītō sonō tubae, quod satis magna vallēs intercēdēbat, tamen ā trībūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur; sed, ēlātī spē celeris victōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundīs proeliīs, nihil adeō arduum sibi esse exīstimāvērunt, quod nōn virtute cōnsequī possent, neque fīnem prius sequendī fēcērunt quām mūrō oppidī portīsque appropinquārunt.

Tūm vērō, ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, quī longius aberant, repentīnō tumultū perterritī, cum hostem intrā portās esse exīstimārent, sēsē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt. Mātrēs familiae dē mūrō vestem argentumque iactābant et, pectore nūdō prōminentēs, passīs manibus obtestābantur

47. 1. **id**, etc.: 'what he had in mind,' that is, to give the enemy a good scare by a bold dash, so as to be able to retire from Gergovia without discredit.

2. **receptuī**, etc.: 'gave orders that the recall be sounded.' *326, c.* How lit.? *112, a*, and *73, d.*

3. **signa cōnstituit**: 'brought to a halt the standards.' *324, b*, (2). **nōn exaudītō**: 'though they did not hear.' How lit.? *144, b*, (5).

4. **tubae**: *326, a*, (1). **vallēs**: a depression in the slope, just west of the village of Gergovie; Caesar with the tenth legion was east of this depression (Map 15, 10th LEGION, 1st POSITION).

6. **retinēbantur**: 'an attempt was being made . . . to hold the soldiers . . . back.' How lit.? *175, e.*

10. **portīs**: probably at the points marked **A** and **B** on Map 15.

12. **longius**, etc.: the Gauls who were some distance inside the wall. **hostem**: the Romans.

14. **vestem**: 'clothing.' **argentum**: 'silver.'

15. **pectore**: 'breast.' **prōminentēs**: 'leaning forward.' **passīs manibus**: N. to II, 13, l. 12.

Rōmānōs, ut sibi parcerent neu, sīcut Avaricī fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque īnfantibus abstinērent; nōn nūllae dē mūrō per manūs dēmissae sēsē mīlitibus trādēbant.

L. Fabius, centuriō legiōnis VIII, quem inter suōs eō diē dīxisse cōnstābat, excitārī sē Avaricēnsibus praemiīs neque commissūrum, ut prius quisquam mūrum ascenderet, trēs suōs nactus manipulārēs atque ab eīs sublevātus, mūrum ascendit; hōs ipse rūrsus singulōs exceptāns in mūrum extulit.

The Gauls rally and attack the Romans.

48. Interim eī, quī ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnītiōnis causā convēnerant, prīmō exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam crēbrīs nūntiīs incitātī, oppidum ā Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissīs equitibus magnō cursū eō contendērunt.

Eōrum ut quisque prīmus vēnerat, sub mūrō cōnsistēbat suōrumque pugnantium numerum augēbat. Quōrum cum magna multitūdō convēnisset, matrēs familiae, quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs tendēbant, suōs obtestārī et more Gallicō passum capillum ostentāre līberōsque in cōnspectum prōferre coepērunt.

---

16. **neu**, etc.: 'and not refuse to spare even women.' How lit.? *199, d.* **Avaricī**: *146.* **fēcissent**: *220.*

18. **dēmissae**: 'being let down' outside the wall.

20. **Avaricēnsibus praemiīs**: 'the prizes (offered) at Avaricum'; see chap. 27, ll. 6–9. **neque**, etc.: 'and that he was not going to let any one scale the wall ahead of him.' How lit.?

22. **suōs manipulārēs**: 'men of his maniple.'

23. **hōs singulōs exceptāns**: 'taking hold of them, one at a time.'

48. 1. **eī**: *Gallī.* **alteram partem**: see chap. 44, l. 11. **suprā**: chap. 44, ll. 10–16, and chap. 45, ll. 13–14.

6. **Eōrum**, etc.: 'In succession as each came up.' **sub mūrō**: 'at the foot of the wall,' on the outside.

10. **passum capillum**: 'their hair disheveled.'

11. **prōferre**: 'to bring out.' *69, b.*

Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa contentiō; simul et cursū et spatiō pugnae dēfatīgātī, nōn facile recentēs atque integrōs sustinēbant.

49. Caesar cum inīquō locō pugnārī hostiumque cōpiās augērī vidēret, praemetuēns suīs, ad T. Sextium lēgātum, quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō relīquerat, mīsit, ut cohortēs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub īnfimō colle ab dextrō latere hostium cōnstitueret, ut, sī nostrōs locō dēpulsōs vīdisset, quō minus līberē hostēs īnsequerentur, terrēret.

Ipse, paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prōgressus, ubi cōnstiterat, ēventum pugnae exspectābat.

The Romans fight stubbornly, though against overwhelming odds.

50. Cum ācerrimē comminus pugnārētur, hostēs locō et numerō, nostrī virtūte cōnfīderent, subitō sunt Aeduī vīsī ab latere nostrīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū, manūs distinendae causā, mīserat.

Hī similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt, ac tametsī dextrīs umerīs exsertīs animadvertēbantur,

---

13. **spatiō**: 'duration.' **nōn**, etc.: 'they could not easily hold out against.'

49. 2. **praemetuēns suīs**: 'becoming anxious about his men.'

4. **sub īnfimō colle**: 'at the foot of the hill' on which the small camp was; see Map 15, SEXTIUS, 1st POSITION.

5. **locō dēpulsōs**: 'forced from their position.'

6. **quō**, etc.: 'deter the enemy from pursuing them further.' How lit.? *201, a.*

7. **prōgressus**, etc.: see Map 15, 10th LEGION, 2d POSITION.

50. 1. **hostēs**: sc. *cōnfīderent.* **locō**: *135, a.*

2. **Aeduī**, etc.: see chap. 45, ll. 24–25; Map 15, AEDUANS.

4. **manūs**, etc.: 'to separate the (enemy's) forces' by a diversion.

5. **similitūdine armōrum**: 'from the likeness of their arms' to those of the hostile Gauls.

6. **dextrīs**, etc.: 'it was noticed that they had their right shoulders bare.' How lit.? *172, d*; also *191, a.*

quod īnsigne pācātōrum esse cōnsuērat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendī causā mīlitēs ab hostibus factum exīstimābant.

Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō, quīque ūnā mūrum ascenderant, circumventī atque interfectī, mūrō praecipitābantur.

The heroic self-sacrifice of Marcus Petronius.

M. Petrōnius, eiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās excīdere cōnātus esset, ā multitūdine oppressus ac sibi dēspērāns, multīs iam vulneribus acceptīs, manipulāribus suīs, quī illum secūtī erant,

'Quoniam,' inquit, 'mē ūnā vōbīscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vītae prōspiciam, quōs, cupiditāte glōriae adductus, in perīculum dēdūxī. Vōs, datā facultāte, vōbīs cōnsulite.'

Simul in mediōs hostēs irrūpit duōbusque interfectīs reliquōs ā portā paulum summōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī suīs,

'Frūstrā,' inquit, 'meae vītae subvenīre cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis vīrēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abīte, dum est facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite.'

Ita pugnāns, post paulum concidit ac suīs salūtī fuit.

---

7. **quod**, etc.: 'the customary sign indicating those at peace.' How lit.?

8. **suī**: *154, b.* B. 339, 5; A. 504, *c*; H. 626, 3.

12. **eiusdem legiōnis**: the 8th; see chap. 47, l. 19. **excīdere**: 'to hew down.'

14. **manipulāribus**: dative after *inquit.*

16. **Quoniam**, etc.: *211, b*, (2). **mē**: *158, b.* **vōbīscum**: *125, c.*

17. **vestrae vītae, quōs**: 'for the lives of you, whom.' How lit.? *92, b*, and *164, b.*

23. **meae vītae, quem**: i. e. *vītae meī* (genitive), *quem.*

25. **vōs**: object of *recipite. 158, b.*

26. **ac**, etc.: 'and saved his men.' How lit.? *112, b.*

The Romans retire, with severe losses.

51. Nostrī, cum undique premerentur, XLVI centuriōnibus āmissīs, dēiectī sunt locō. Sed intolerantius Gallōs īnsequentēs legiō X tardāvit, quae prō subsidiō paulō aequiōre locō cōnstiterat. Hanc rūrsus XIII legiōnis cohortēs excēpērunt, quae, ex castrīs minōribus ēductae, cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs, ubi prīmum plānitiem attigērunt, īnfestīs contrā hostēs signīs cōnstitērunt. Vercingetorīx ab rādīcibus collis suōs intrā mūnītiōnēs redūxit.

Eō diē mīlitēs sunt paulō minus DCC dēsīderātī.

---

51. 1. **XLVI**: *quadrāgintā sex.* As the centurions led their men, the percentage of casualties was proportionately much higher than among the common soldiers (l. 10).

2. **dēiectī sunt locō**: 'were forced down from their position.' **intolerantius**: 'with considerable violence.'

3. **paulō aequiōre locō**: see Map 15, 10th LEGION, 3d POSITION.

6. **locum superiōrem**: see Map 15, SEXTIUS, 2d POSITION.

7. **īnfestīs**, etc.: 'they halted and faced the enemy.' How lit.? *325*, and *144*, *b*, (2). That the soldiers, swept down the slope by an overwhelming force, rallied even when supported by the 10th and 13th legions, is all the more remarkable in view of the severe losses among their officers.

10. **DCC**: *septingentī*. *129*, *b*. If the losses among the common soldiers had been in proportion to those among the centurions, the number would have been considerably above two thousand.

52–56. Summary. Caesar addressed his soldiers, rebuking them for not obeying the order to halt, but nevertheless paying a tribute to their bravery. Afterwards he drew up in battle order, but Vercingetorix did not come down to fight. Caesar retired from Gergovia, and recrossed the Elaver (*Allier*), to the east side.

Two prominent Aeduans, who had heretofore been loyal to Caesar, now left him, and joined their countrymen in declaring for Vercingetorix; they destroyed Caesar's supplies at Noviodunum (*Nevers*), burning the town. Caesar pushed rapidly northward, and forded the Liger (*Loire*) in the face of the enemy.

General Uprising, with Vercingetorix in Command. 63–68

The Aeduans lead; Vercingetorix assumes command.

63. Dēfectiōne Aeduōrum cognitā, bellum augētur. Lēgātiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, auctōritāte, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās cīvitātēs nītuntur; nactī obsidēs, quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō dubitantēs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Aeduī, ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerendi commūnicet. Rē impetrātā contendunt, ut ipsīs summa imperiī trādātur, et, rē in contrōversiam dēductā, tōtīus Galliae concilium Bibracte indīcitur.

Eōdem conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitūdinis suffrāgiīs rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorīgem probant imperātōrem.

Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī,

57–62. Summary. While Caesar was engaged in the operations about Gergovia and in checking the first attempts of the revolting Aeduans, Labienus with four legions advanced from Agedincum (modern *Sens*) toward the northwest and captured Metlosedum (*Melun*; Map 13). Thence he proceeded to the neighborhood of Lutecia, a town of the Parisii on an island in the Seine, which forms the heart of modern Paris (Fig. 133). He defeated the Parisii and their allies in battle, and marching south rejoined Caesar (at 9 on Map 13).

Figure 133. — Coin of the Parisii.
Gold. Fanciful designs.

63. 1. **Dēfectiōne Aeduōrum**: the Aeduans, after much dissension, had finally cast in their lot with Vercingetorix.

2. **circummittuntur**: 'were sent in all directions' by the Aeduans. **quantum**, etc.: 'to the limit of their influence.'

5. **dubitantēs territant**: cf. chap. 4, ll. 25–30 and NN.

6. **ratiōnēs**, etc.: 'work out the plan of campaign with (them).'

9. **Bibracte**; *145, b*, and *16, c*. See Fig. 41, p. 42.

11. **ad ūnum**: 'to a man'; the vote was unanimous.

13. **illī**; 'the former,' including both the Remi and the Lingones.

quod amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa, quārē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent.

Magnō dolōre Aeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs prīncipātū, queruntur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesaris in sē indulgentiam requīrunt, neque tamen, susceptō bellō, suum cōnsilium ab reliquīs sēpārāre audent. Invītī summae speī adulēscentēs, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, Vercingetorīgī pārent.

64. Ille imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs itemque eī reī cōnstituit diem; omnēs equitēs, XV mīlia numerō, celeriter convenīre iubet. Peditātū, quem anteā habuerit, sē fore contentum dīcit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut in aciē dīmicātūrum;

Sed, quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, quā reī familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium lībertātemque sē cōnsequī videant.

---

16. **tōtō bellō**: *147, c.* **abessent**: 'they held aloof.'

17. **sē dēiectōs** [esse] **prīncipātū**: 'that they had been forced out of their position of leadership'; cf. VI, 12, ll. 27–28.

19. **indulgentiam**: 'favor.' **requīrunt**: 'they greatly missed.'

20. **Invītī**: 'Unwillingly.' *151.* **summae speī**: 'of the greatest promise.' *100, a.*

64. 1. **Ille**: Vercingetorix. **eī reī**: the delivery of the hostages to him.

3. **Peditātū**: *135, a.* B. 219, 1.

4. **neque . . . videant**: the policy of Vercingetorix was to avoid a decisive battle with infantry.

6. **frūmentātiōnibus**: 'from getting grain.'

9. **qua . . . iactūrā**: 'since by this sacrifice of property.'

Figure 134. — Coin of the Senones.

Bronze. Fanciful designs taken from animals; reverse, wolf and boar. On the obverse, four Greek letters, ΑΓΗΔ, abbreviation of Agedillus or some similar name.

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, Aeduīs Segusiāvīsque, quī sunt fīnitimī prōvinciae, x mīlia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs DCCC. His praeficit frātrem Eporēdorīgis bellumque īnferrī Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad fīnēs Volcārum Arecomicōrum dēpopulandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clandestīnīs nūntiīs lēgātiōnibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem imperium tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur.

Caesar takes account of his forces, sends for German cavalry.

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et vīgintī, quae, ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō, ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helvii suā sponte cum fīnitimīs proeliō congressī pelluntur et, C. Valeriō Donnotaurō, Cabūrī fīliō, prīncipe cīvitātis, complūribusque aliīs interfectīs, intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs, crēbrīs ad Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiīs, magnā cūrā et dīligentiā suōs fīnēs tuentur.

Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat et, interclūsīs omnibus itineribus, nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Italiā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās cīvitātēs, quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat, equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs,

12. **prōvinciae**: *290.* **hūc**: for *hīs*, 'to these.'

15. **Helviōs**: west of the Rhone; see Map GALLIA.

19. **superiōre bellō**: the uprising of the Allobroges in 61 B.C.

65. 1. **Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs**: 'To meet all these conditions.'

3. **ad . . . oppōnēbantur**: 'were posted to secure every point.'

5. **Cabūrī fīliō**: see I, 47, ll. 10–13. **prīncipe**: 'first magistrate.'

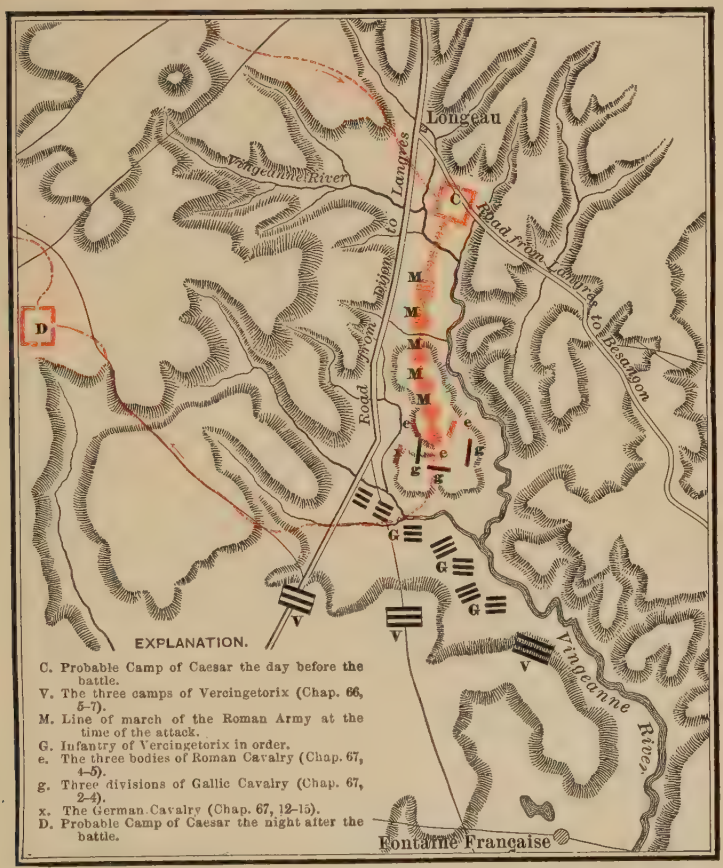
6. **intrā**, etc.: 'into their fortified towns and behind walls.'

10. **interclūsīs**, etc.: 'since all the roads were blocked.'

12. **eās cīvitātēs**: the Ubii were friendly to Caesar (IV, 16, ll. 19–20); what other German states are here referred to we do not know. **superiōribus annīs**: 55 and 53 B. C. (IV, 16–19, and VI, 9–28).

VICTORY OF CAESAR OVER VERCINGETORIX

Book VII, 66–68 To face page 392



Scale of English Miles.

0 1 2 3 4

Scale of Roman Miles.

0 1 2 3 4

EXPLANATION

Vercingetorix drew up his infantry in front of his three camps, on the bank of a river, and ordered his cavalry to attack Caesar's army marching toward the river on the opposite side.

Caesar's legionaries, though surprised, held their own until finally the German cavalry in Caesar's employ hurled back the Gallic cavalry, which suffered complete defeat.

quī inter eōs proeliārī cōnsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs ūtēbantur, ā tribūnīs mīlitum reliquīs- 15
que equitibus Rōmānīs atque ēvocātīs equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

Vercingetorix encamps near Caesar, addresses his troops.

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēsque, quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī, conveniunt. Magnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnēs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferrī posset, circiter mīlia 5
passuum x ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercingetorix cōnsēdit, convocātīsque ad concilium praefectīs equitum, vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat:

Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam lībertātem satis esse; ad 10
reliquī temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōficī; maiōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque fīnem bellandī factūrōs.

Proinde in agmine impedītōs adoriantur. Sī peditēs suīs

---

14. **quī . . cōnsuērant**: in the manner previously described (I, 48, ll. 12–20). Caesar had previously had a division of German cavalry.

15. **minus idōneīs equīs**: cf. IV, 2, ll. 3–7, and p. xxviii.

66. 1. **dum**, etc.: while Caesar was collecting forces from the Province and from Germany. *190, a.*

4. **extrēmōs Lingonum fīnēs**: 'the most distant (part of the) country of the Lingones'; i.e. the southeastern part, 'most distant' from Agedincum, chief city of the Senones (Fig. 134), which was Caesar's principal base for the operations of 52 B.C. See Map 13.

6. **trīnīs castrīs**: marked **V, V, V**, on Map 16, which represents the location as fixed by Napoleon, about 40 miles northeast of Dijon. The battle was probably fought north of Dijon, and much nearer; but Napoleon's plan indicates the relative positions clearly. **trīnīs**: *37, e.*

9. **Fugere**, etc.: *213, b.* **Id**: the retreat to the Province.

12. **reversūrōs** [esse]: sc. *Rōmānōs.*

14. **impedītōs**: sc. *eōs* (= *Rōmānōs*). If the legionaries, thus caught at a disadvantage, should attempt to defend the baggage-train, their

auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futūrum cōnfīdat, relīctīs impedīmentīs suae salūtī cōnsulant, et ūsū rērum necessāriārum et dignitāte spoliātum īrī. Nam dē equitibus hostium, quīn nēmō eōrum prōgredī modo extrā agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbēre dubitāre.

Id quō maiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōrī hostibus futūrum.

Conclāmant equitēs, sānctissimō iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmārī oportēre, nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad līberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.

The cavalry of Vercingetorix is defeated by Caesar's cavalry.

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus iūre iūrandō adāctīs, posterō diē, in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū, duae sē aciēs ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā prīmō agmine iter impedīre coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar suum quoque equitātum, tripertītō dīvīsum, contrā hostem īre iubet.

Pugnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōnsistit agmen; impedīmenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte

---

retreat would be stopped; if they should abandon the baggage-train and try to defend only themselves, they would be cut off from their supplies.

18. **dignitāte spoliātum īrī**: 'would be despoiled of their prestige.' **hostium**: the Romans.

21. **Id faciant**: 'That they might make the attack.' How lit.?

23. **īūre iūrandō**: explained by the *nē*-clauses following. Cf. p. 446, ll. 16–19, and N. *13, h.*

24. **recipiātur**: cf. *quī* in l. 25, '(the man) who.'

67. 1. **iūre iūrandō**: the oath given in ll. 23–26 above.

2. **duae aciēs, ūna** [aciēs]: the three divisions of Gallic cavalry, marked **g, g, g,** on Map 16.

3. **lateribus, prīmō agmine**: 'flanks,' 'van,' of the Romans.

5. **equitātum, tripertītō dīvīsum**: marked **e, e, e,** on Map 16.

7. **impedīmenta**, etc.: each legion formed a hollow square (*orbis, 338*) about its baggage (*328*). Caesar was surprised.

nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō signa īnferrī Caesar aciemque cōnstituī iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad īnsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxiliī cōnfīrmābat.

Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostēs locō dēpellunt; fugientēs ūsque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorīx cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōnsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā, reliquī, nē circumīrentur, veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs.

Trēs nobilissimī Aeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam cum Convictolitāvī proximīs comitiīs habuerat, et Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiōnem Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat, et Eporēdorīx, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Aeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

Vercingetorix and his army take refuge at Alesia.

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū, Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedīmenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit.

Caesar, impedīmentīs in proximum collem dēductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs, secūtus hostēs, quantum diēī tempus est passum, circiter III mīlibus ex novissimō agmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit.

Perspectō urbis sitū perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā maximē parte exercitūs cōnfīdēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlitēs circumvāllāre īnstituit.

---

12. **Germānī**: from the favorable position which they had reached on the height (**x** on Map 16) the German cavalry charged the Gallic cavalry with irresistible momentum. Cf. chap. 70, ll. 5–10; 80, ll. 19–22.

14. **pedestribus copiīs**: Map 16, **G**, **G**, **G**.

68. 6. **legiōnibus**: abl. abs. with *relictīs*. **praesidiō**: *112, a.*

8. **alterō diē**: = *posterō diē*, 'the next day.' Cf. Map 13.

The Siege and Fall of Alesia. 69–90

Caesar commences to surround Alesia with a line of works.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum Alesia in colle summō, admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur. Cuius collis rādicēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant.

Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum III in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectō spatiō, parī altitūdinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant.

Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam in altitūdinem VI pedum praedūxerant.

Eius mūnītiōnis, quae ab Rōmānīs īnstituēbātur, circuitus

---

69. 1. **Alesia**, etc.: Alesia was situated on the top of an oval hill now called *Mont Auxois*, a part of which is occupied by the village of *Alise-Ste-Reine* (see Map 17). The highest point is more than 500 feet above the beds of the small streams on either side (Fig. 135). The accuracy of Caesar's description has been attested by discoveries made in the course of excavations in 1862–65, and since 1900.

Various objects found at Alesia are reproduced in this book; see Figures 44, 49, 50, 138, 144, 190; cf. also Fig. 1.

2. **obsidiōne**: *340*.

4. **flūmina**: the *Ose* and the *Oserain*. **subluēbant**: 'washed.'

5. **plānitiēs**: 'the plain' of *Les Laumes* (pronounced lā lōm).

7. **spatiō**: the average distance between the height of Alesia and the tops of the surrounding hills is about a mile. **parī**, etc.: 'having a like elevation.' How lit.?

9. **Sub mūrō**, etc.: 'Below the wall,' on the side facing the east.

10. **hunc omnem locum**: 'all the space.' *160, d*.

11. **māceriam**: 'wall of loose stones,' without mortar; Map 17.

13. **Eius mūnītiōnis**: 'of the line of investment,' a series of fortified camps, between which at intervals were the 'redoubts,' *castella*.

XI mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita ibique castella XXIII facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac fīrmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

The Gauls attempt to stop the work, and are driven back.

70. Opere īnstitūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē, quam, intermissam collibus, tria mīlia passuum in lon-

Figure 135. — The hill of Alesia, as seen from the southeast.

14. **tenēbat**: 'extended.' **Castra**: plural. The infantry camps are those marked **A**, **B**, **C**, **D** on Map 17; the camps marked **G**, **H**, **I**, **K** were probably occupied by cavalry.

16. **statiōnēs**: 'outposts.'

17. **excubitōribus ac fīrmīs praesidiīs**: 'by strong garrisons of men in bivouac,' sleeping under arms in the open; the redoubts were fortified enclosures without tents. *238 d.*

70. 2. **intermissam collibus**: 'free from hills,' lit. 'left off by hills.'

gitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur.

Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs summittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fīat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō, nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs, in fugam coniectī, sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustiōribus portīs relīctis coartantur. Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnītiōnēs persequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōn nūllī, relīctīs equīs, fossam trānsīre et māceriam trānscendere cōnantur.

Paulum legiōnēs Caesar, quās prō vāllō cōnstituerat, prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus, quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant, Gallī perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōnfestim exīstimantēs, ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī, perterritī, in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

---

3. **suprā**: chap. 69, ll. 5–8. **Summā**, etc.: 'Both sides fought with their utmost strength.' How lit.?

5. **Labōrantibus**: 'hard pressed.' How lit.? **Germānōs**: mercenaries, consisting of cavalry, and light-armed troops, trained to fight with them, brought from Germany to offset the superiority of Vercingetorix in cavalry (chap. 65, ll. 9–17).

6. **castrīs**: plural, as in chap. 69, l. 14. **irruptiō**: 'attack.'

7. **Praesidiō**: 'support.' **nostrīs**: *109, a.*

9. **portīs**, etc.: 'gate-openings' in the wall of loose stones (chap. 69, ll. 10–11; a, b, c, on Map 17), '(which had been) left rather narrow'; it is not probable that gates had been placed in the openings. **coartantur**: 'were jammed together.' *352, a.*

13. **prō vāllō**: probably the rampart of the infantry camps alone (**A**, **B**, **C**, **D**, on Map 17) is meant.

15. **venīrī**: trans. 'that the Romans were coming.' *73, d.*

17. **portās**: here 'gates' of the town, through which panic-stricken Gauls rushed, in the effort to escape from their threatened camp into the city. **castra**: on the east side of Alesia, between the city wall and the wall of loose stones.

Vercingetorix summons all Gaul to the rescue, and apportions the available provisions.

71. Vercingetorīx, prius quam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit, omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat, ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnēsque, quī per aetātem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque, ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē, optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum, hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat; *ratiōne initā, sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre frūmentum, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī posse parcendō.*

Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam eīs, quī nōn pāruerint, cōnstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et

---

71. 2. **perficiantur**: *189, b.* B. 292; A. 551, *b*, N. 2; H. 605, 1.

3. **Discēdentibus**: sc. *eīs* (*equitibus*), implied in the preceding *equitātum.*

4. **omnēs**: object of *cōgant.* **per aetātem**: 'by reason of age.'

7. **meritum**: participle; 'who had rendered most excellent service in behalf of their common liberty.' How lit.?

8. **Quod**: *118, d.* **indīligentiōrēs**: 'too remiss.'

9. **ratiōne initā**: '(he said that), having made calculation.' *213, b.*

10. **diērum XXX**: '(to last) 30 days.' How lit.? *100, a.*

11. **parcendō**: 'by reducing the rations,' we should say. How lit.? *230,* (4).

12. **erat**, etc.: 'there was a break in our line of works,' the contravallation, which there had not been time to complete.

13. **secundā vigiliā**: *242, c.* **Frūmentum omne**: in the city; Vercingetorix put the inhabitants under martial law.

14. **capitis poenam**: 'the penalty of death.' **pāruerint**: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse, as part of the notice given to the Alesians.

paulātim mētīrī īnstituit. Cōpiās omnēs, quās prō oppidō collocāverat, in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

Description of the inner line of Caesar's siege works.

72. Quibus rēbus cognitīs ex perfugīs et captīvīs, Caesar haec genera mūnītiōnis īnstituit.

Fossam pedum XX dērēctīs lateribus dūxit, ut eius fossae solum tantundem patēret, quantum summae fossae labra distārent. Reliquās omnēs mūnītiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs CCCC redūxit, hōc cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā mīlitum cingerētur, nē dē improvīsō aut noctū ad mūnītiōnēs multitūdō hostium advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs, operī dēstinātōs, conicere possent.

Hōc intermissō spatiō, duās fossās XV pedēs lātās, eādem

---

17. **prō oppidō**: in the encampment on the east side.

72. 2. **haec**: 'the following.' *161, a.* **mūnītiōnis**: 'works,' together forming the contravallation, the purpose of which was to hem in Vercingetorix and protect Caesar's forces against attack from within (Map 17, CONTRAVALLATION). *92, b.*

3. **Fossam**, etc.: 'a trench twenty feet (in width), with vertical sides,' much harder for an enemy to fill and cross than the ordinary triangular trench (*333*); it ran across the plain west of the town, between the Ose and the Oserain (Map 17, TRENCH 20 FEET WIDE).

4. **solum**, etc.: 'the bottom was as broad as the distance between the edges at the top.' How lit.?

6. **CCCC**: *quadringentōs*. The distance, as shown by excavation, averages so much more than 400 Roman feet, that it has been suggested that Caesar intended to write *passūs* or *passibus*. **hōc**, etc.: i.e. *hōc cōnsiliō, nē, quoniam . . . cingerētur, dē improvīsō . . . possent.* **esset — complexus, cingerētur**: *220.*

7. **nec**, etc.: 'and the whole line of works could not easily be manned with a continuous cordon of soldiers.' How lit.?

11. **spatiō**: refers to *pedēs CCCC* above. **duās fossās**: Map 17, where it will be observed that the outer trench ran only to the edges of the plain, while the inner trench was continued around the town,

MAP 17

The Siege of Alesia

Book VII, 69–90 — To face page 400

EXPLANATION

Caesar's lines of works about Alesia encompassed a circuit of 11 Roman miles on the inside, 14 miles on the outside.

In the plain west of the city, and at other points where required, there were two systems of defenses, one to protect Caesar's men against the attacks of Vercingetorix in the city, the other as a defense against the relieving army.

Camps of infantry were probably located at **A, B, C, D**; of cavalry, at **G, H, I, K**. The redoubts, castella (chap. 69), are numbered 1 to 23.

On the west, along the edge of the plain, a trench, or moat, 20 feet wide, with vertical sides, was constructed (chap. 72, ll. 3–5). Further west, in this order, 'goads,' stimulī; 'wolf-holes,' līlia; 'boundary posts,' cippī; two V-shaped 'trenches,' fossae; 'rampart,' agger, and 'palisade,' vallus, with a 'breastwork,' lōrica, and 'battlements,' pinnae; also 'towers,' turrēs, at intervals of 80 feet. These defenses formed the LINE OF CONTRAVALLATION (chap. 72–73).

The same defenses, in a reverse series, the 'goads' being furthest outside, the rampart inside, formed the LINE OF CIRCUMVALLATION (chap. 74).

altitūdine, perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus ac dēmissīs locīs aquā, ex flūmine dērīvātā, complēvit.

Post eās aggerem ac vāllum XII pedum exstrūxit. Huic lōrīcam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēnsum hostium tardārent, et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit, quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

---

forming a part of the contravallation. **eādem altitūdine**: of the same depth, 8 or 9 feet; these trenches were **V**-shaped.

12. **īnteriōrem**: sc. *fossam*. **campestribus**: 'in the plain.'

13. **dēmissīs**: 'low.' **flūmine**: the Oserain. **dērīvātā**: 'drawn.' Silt, evidencing the action of running water, was found in the inner trench.

14. **Post eās**: 'Behind these,' on the side away from the town. **aggerem**: 'bank,' made of the earth thrown out of the nearer trench. **vāllum**: masculine, 'palisade,' like the palisade of a camp (*333*). **XII pedum**: measured from the surface of the ground beside the 'bank' to the top of the 'palisade.' **Huic**: singular because the 'bank' and the 'palisade' are thought of as forming one fortification; 'to this rampart.'

15. **lōrīcam**: a 'breastwork,' made by weaving supple branches closely together on the exposed side of the palisade. **pinnās**: 'battlements,' covered with wickerwork and projecting above the palisade, behind which the soldiers could find shelter after hurling their weapons over the palisade. **cervīs**: 'stags,' large limbs of trees and tops of young trees, from which the foliage and twigs had been removed, the branches being stripped of their bark and sharpened; these were planted along the bank at the foot of the palisade, projecting outwards over the trench and towards the town (Plate IX, 1, the projecting branches at the foot of the tower). **ēminentibus**: 'projecting.'

16. **ad commissūrās**, etc.: 'along the line where the wood construction was fitted to the bank,' *pluteōrum* here including the 'palisade' (*vāllus*), the 'breastwork' (*lōrīca*), and the 'battlements' (*pinnās*). How lit.?

17. **tardārent**: *193, a.* **opere**: 'the line of works.' **quae**, etc.: *194, a.*

18. **pedēs LXXX**: artillery was mounted in the towers (chap. 81, ll. 14–15; chap. 82, ll. 1–5); the spaces between the towers could be

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnītiōnēs fierī necesse, dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō mīlitum mūnītiōnēs dēfendī possent.

Itaque, truncīs arborum aut admodum fīrmīs rāmīs abscīsīs, atque hōrum dēlibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacūminibus, perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stīpitēs dēmissī, et ab īnfimō revinctī, nē revellī possent,

---

covered also by hand-thrown missiles, in case the enemy should burst through the palisade.

73. 1. **Erat — necesse**: as subject *māteriārī* (Fig. 136) and *frūmentārī* are coördinated with *mūnītiōnēs fierī*; 'it was necessary both to get timber and to secure grain and to carry on the construction of these extensive fortifications.' How lit.?

Figure 136. — A Roman soldier cutting timber.

2. **dēminūtīs**, etc.: 'with (consequent) weakening of our forces.' How lit.?

3. **longius**: the supplies of timber and grain near the camp were soon exhausted.

6. **addendum** [esse]: 'that an addition ought to be made.' *73, e.*

8. **admodum fīrmīs rāmīs**: 'very large limbs,' probably not less than four or five inches in diameter.

9. **hōrum**, etc.: 'the ends (of their branches) barked and sharpened to a point.'

10. **perpetuae**: 'continuous,' running parallel with the rampart, at the points where needed, on the side toward the town. **quīnōs**: distributive; 'each five feet deep.' *36.* **Hūc**: 'Into these,' the parallel trenches. **illī stīpitēs**: 'the stocks' of trees, prepared as described. *160, d.*

11. **revinctī**: 'fastened down'; how the stocks were fastened at the bottom we do not know. **ab īnfimō**: *126, c*, and *154, a.*

ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ōrdinēs, coniūnctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant, sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant.

Ante hōs, oblīquīs ōrdinibus in quīncuncem dispositīs, scrobēs in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur, paulātim angustiōre ad īnfimum fastīgiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitūdine, ab summō praeacūtī et praeūstī, dēmittēbantur ita, ut nōn amplius digitīs IIII ex terrā ēminērent; simul, cōnfīrmandī et stabiliendī causā, singulī ab īnfimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur; reliqua pars scrobis ad

---

12. **ab**, etc.: 'had their branches' (these having been barked and sharpened) 'projecting' above the ground. How lit.? *126, c.* **Quīnī ōrdinēs**: 'five rows,' one in 'each (trench)'; cf. Plate IX, 1.

13. **implicātī**: 'interwoven,' the parallel trenches being near together. **quŏ**, etc.: 'and any who tried to enter these' rows of branches, corresponding with the barbed wire entanglements of modern fortifications. How lit.?

14. **vāllīs**: 'points.' **sē induēbant**: 'would pierce themselves.' **cippōs**: 'boundary posts,' jestingly named from their resemblance to the firmly set stocks of trees and posts used by surveyors to mark boundaries, especially in regions where boundary posts of stone were hard to procure. **appellābant**: 'the soldiers called.' *172, c.*

15. **Ante**: 'In front of,' on the side toward the town. **oblīquīs**, etc.: 'in slanting rows having a quincuncial arrangement.' How lit.?

16. **scrobēs**: 'holes.' **fodiēbantur**: 'were dug.' *57, b.*

17. **angustiōre**, etc.: 'the side gradually narrowing toward the bottom,' like a funnel. How lit.? **Hūc**: 'Into these.' **teretēs**: 'smooth.' **feminis crassitūdine**: 'of the thickness of a thigh.' *18, d*, and *143, a.*

18. **ab**, etc.: 'sharpened at the top and hardened (at the point) by burning.'

19. **amplius**, etc.: 'more than four finger-breadths,' about equivalent to three inches. *243, a.*

20. **stabiliendī**, etc.: 'to give them a solid setting.' How lit.? **singulī**, etc.: 'earth was packed about them by treading, to the depth of a foot from the bottom,' lit. 'feet in each case from the bottom were trodden with earth.' Cf. Figures 1 and 2.

occultandās īnsidiās vīminibus ac virgultīs integēbātur. Huius generis octōnī ōrdinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id, ex similitūdine flōris, līlium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae, pedem longae, ferreīs hāmīs īnfīxīs, tōtae in terram īnfodiēbantur, mediocribusque intermissīs spatiīs, omnibus locīs disserēbantur, quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

Caesar completes a similar outer line of works.

74. Hīs rēbus perfectīs, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās prō locī nātūrā, XIIII mīlia passuum complexus

22. **īnsidiās**: 'the pitfall.' **integēbātur**: 'was covered up.'

23. **octōnī ōrdinēs**: 'eight rows in each case,' wherever the wolf-holes were used; they were not needed at all points of the contravallation.

Figure 137. — A "goad," stimulus.

a. Wooden block, talea, in which the barbed hook was set.

b. Barbed hook, of iron.

24. **flōris**: *13, c.* **līlium**: 'lily,' the name being suggested by the appearance of the stalk of the lily rising from its funnel-shaped circlet of leaves; now "wolf-pit" or "wolf-hole.".

25. **tāleae**: 'blocks' (Fig. 137). **ferreīs**, etc.: 'with barbed hooks, of iron, set in.'

26. **infodiēbantur**, etc.: 'were buried in the earth,' only the barbed iron projecting. How lit.?

27. **disserēbantur**: 'were planted here and there.' Several of the irons have been found (Fig. 138). **stimulōs**: 'goads,' so called from the likeness of the projecting points to the sharp end of a goad.

Figure 138. — Barbed hooks.

Barbed iron hooks, found at Alesia. The wooden blocks had rotted away.

74. 1. **regiōnēs**, etc.: 'following a course over the most nearly level stretches that the configuration of the country afforded.' How lit.?

2. **complexus**: participle; 'he embraced (a circuit of) fourteen miles and.' *228, a.*

parēs eiusdem generis mūnītiōnēs, dīversās ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitūdine, sī ita accidat, mūnītiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent; ac nē cum perīculō ex castrīs ēgredī cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

The Gauls gather a great army for the relief of Alesia.

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī, conciliō prīncipum indictō, nōn omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorīx, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique cīvitātī imperandum, nē, tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā, nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habēre possent.

Imperant Aeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs Brannovīcibus, mīlia xxxv; parem

---

3. **parēs**: 'corresponding.' **dīversās**: 'facing in the opposite direction' from the inner line of works; see Map 17, CIRCUMVALLATION.

4. **exteriōrem hostem**: a relieving force. A view of a section of the outer works is shown in Fig. 1. **multitūdine**: sc. *hostium*.

5. **sī**, etc.: *sī magna multitūdō veniat*. **circumfundī**: 'be completely surrounded.'

6. **ex castrīs ēgredī**: in order to secure forage and grain.

7. **xxx**: cf. chap. 71, l. 10, and N. **omnēs**: 'all' his forces. **convectum**: 'collected.' *229, a*.

75. 1. **ad**: *120, a*. **Gallī**, etc.: in response to the appeal of Vercingetorix (chap. 71).

4. **nē**, etc.: '(fearing) that . . . they would not be able either to manage (it) or . . . or.' **tantā**, etc.: 'if so enormous a host should be massed together.' *144, b*, (4).

Figure 139. — Coin of the Aulerci Cenomani.

Gold. Reverse, human headed horse galloping over a prostrate man. The driver above holds a branch, perhaps of mistletoe.

5. **frūmentandī**, etc.: 'to make systematic provision for supplying grain.'

7. **clientibus**: 'dependent states.'

numerum Arvernīs, adiūnctīs Eleutetīs, Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellaviīs, qui sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovīcibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parīsiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna Andibus, Ambiānīs, Mediomatricīs, Petrocoriīs, Neviīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus; quīnque mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs; totidem Atrebātibus; IIII Veliocassīs; Aulercīs Eburovīcibus III; Rauracīs et Boiīs bīna: XXX ūniversīs cīvitātibus, quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Osismī, Venetī, Lexoviī, Venellī.

Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn complēvērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent neque cuiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ā Commiō, prō eius hospitiō duō mīlia ūnā mīsērunt.

---

12. **duodēna mīlia**: 'twelve thousand each,' or 72,000 for these six states. The total levy, amounting to 287,000 men, shows that after six years of war the population of Gaul must have been considerably larger than is ordinarily supposed. The population, in Caesar's time, of the territory west of the Rhine has been estimated as high as "20 to 30 millions."

15. **Aulercīs Cēnomanīs**: Fig. 139.

21. **Venellī**: in the list of revolting states we do not find the Remi and the Lingones, who remained friendly, nor the Treverans, who were pressed by the Germans (chap. 63, ll. 13–17), nor the Aquitanian states.

22. **numerum**: 'contingent.' **quod . . . dīcerent**: *183, b.*

23. **suō**, etc.: 'on their own responsibility and in their own way.' How lit.?

25. **prō eius hospitiō**: 'in consideration of their relations of hospitality with him'; N. to I, 31, l. 23. **ūnā**: 'at the same time' with the other states.

Commius, Viridomarus, Eporedorix, and Vercassivellaunus are placed in command of the Gallic army of relief.

76. Huius operā Commiī, ut anteā dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēlī atque ūtilī superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; quibus ille prō meritīs cīvitātem eius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit 5 lībertātis vindicandae, et prīstinae bellī laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiīs neque amīcitiae memoriā movērentur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent.

Coāctīs equitum mīlibus VIII et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Aeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque 10 inībātur, praefectī cōnstituēbantur; Commiō Atrebātī,

---

76. 1. **Commiī**: after the final defeat of the Gauls Commius seems to have established himself as a ruler in Britain, and to have left sons who were rulers, who issued coins in imitation of Roman coins struck near the beginning of the Empire. Three sons of Commius are named on coins, Verica or Virica, Tincommius, and Eppillus (*294*, and Fig. 140).

Figure 140. British coin, struck by a son of Commius.

Gold; dated about the beginning of the Christian era. Inscription: VIR [ICA] REX COM[MI] F[ILIUS], 'Virica, king, son of Commius.'

3. **quibus**, etc.: trans. as if *et prō hīs meritīs*. **cīvitātem**: the Atrebates. **immūnem**: 'free from tribute.' Apparently, as implied also by *iūra lēgēsque reddiderat*, the Atrebates had become a dependency of some other state.

4. **ipsī**: to Commius; the Morini had been hard to manage.

5. **Tanta**, etc.: 'So strong was the common purpose of entire Gaul to recover its liberty.'

7. **movērentur**: the subject is implied in *Galliae;* 'men were influenced.'

8. **-que**: 'but.' *234, b.* **incumberent**: 'were devoting themselves.'

10. **recēnsēbantur**: 'were reviewed'; we say 'mobilized.'

Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsobrīnō Vercingetorīgis, summa imperiī trāditur. Hīs dēlēctī ex cīvitātibus attribuuntur, quōrum cōnsiliō bellum administrārētur.

Omnēs alacrēs et fīdūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficīscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam, quī aspectum modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, forīs tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

The Gallic force in Alesia faces starvation; Critognatus proposes to sustain life by eating the non-combatants.

77. At eī, quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē, quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō, īnscii, quid in Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Ac variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōrātiō Critognātī vidētur propter eius singulārem et nefāriam crūdēlitātem.

Hīc, summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus auctōritātis,

---

13. **cōnsobrīnō**: 'cousin.' **summa imperiī**: the commander-in-chief, Vercingetorix, was shut up in Alesia.

14. **dēlēctī**: 'men chosen'; delegates, forming a kind of general staff. **quōrum cōnsiliō**: 'in accordance with whose counsel.' *193, a.*

16. **fīdūciae**: 'confidence.' **ad**: 'for.' *120, a.*

18. **ancipitī proeliō**: 'with fighting on two sides.'

19. **forīs**: 'on the outer side.'

77. 1. **Alesiae**: *146.* **praeteritā diē**: the limit of 30 days had passed (chap. 71, l. 10). *21, a.*

6. **suppeterent**: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse. *214, b.*

7. **vidētur**, etc.: sc. *mihi*; 'the speech of Critognatus should not, I think, be passed over.' **nefāriam**: 'atrocious.'

9. **locō**: *128, a.* **magnae auctōritātis**: *100, b.*

'Nihil,' inquit, 'dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum, quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant; neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs sit, quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō, omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū, prīstinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant.

Figure 141. — Alise-Ste-Reine, the modern city on the site of Alesia. The point against the sky-line at the left is the statue of Vercingetorix (Fig. 142).

11. **Nihil**, etc.: *211, b*, (3), and *280*.

14. **Cum**, etc.: 'Let me deal (only) with those.' *180, b*.

15. **omnium**, etc.: 'according to the common feeling of you all.' *97, c*, and *138*.

16. **residēre — vidētur**: 'is seen to linger.' **ista**: for *istud*, addressed to those who would risk all by an immediate sortie, explained by the appositional infinitive clause *paulisper . . . posse*; 'that is lack of resolution on your part.' *160, a*, and *e*.

18. **offerant**: *194, a*. **reperiuntur**: sc. *eī*. **quam**: *quam eī*.

'Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid, hominum mīlibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectīs, propinquīs cōnsanguineīsque nostrīs animī fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritāte vestrā aut animī imbēcillitāte omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere.

'An, quod ad diem nōn vēnērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ulteriōribus mūnītiōnibus animīne causā cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum nūntiīs cōnfīrmārī nōn potestis, omnī aditū praesaeptō, hīs ūtiminī testibus, appropinquāre eōrum

---

20. **ego**: *87, b.* **hanc sententiam**: in favor of a sortie. **tantum**, etc.: 'so great weight does the standing (of its advocates) carry with me.'

21. **iactūram**: 'loss'; *nūllam iactūram praeterquam vītae nostrae* (*iactūram*).

23. **respiciāmus**: *180, a.* **concitāvimus**: 'we have summoned.'

24. **Quid — animī**: 'what feelings.' **mīlibus LXXX**: the number of the army of Vercingetorix, not counting the inhabitants of Alesia (chap. 71, l. 9).

27. **Nōlīte — exspoliāre**: 'do not rob.' *181, b.* **auxiliō**: *127, a.* **quī**, etc.: the relieving force.

28. **stultitiā**, etc.: 'by your folly and rashness or weakness of resolution, utterly cast down.'

31. **An**: *179, a,* (2). B. 162, 4, *a*; A. 335, *b*; H. 380, 3. **vēnērunt**: *176, a.*

33. **animī causā**: 'for the sake of amusement.' **-ne**: *179, a,* (1). **exercērī**: 'are exerting themselves.' *174.*

34. **illōrum**: the Gallic forces on the way.

35. **praesaeptō**: 'shut off.' **hīs**: the Romans.

adventum; cuius reī timōre exterritī, diem noctemque in opere versantur.

'Quid ergō meī cōnsiliī est? Facere, quod nostrī maiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī ac similī inopiā subāctī, eōrum corporibus, quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur, vītam tolerāvērunt neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cuius reī sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen lībertātis causā īnstituī et posterīs prōdī pulcherrimum iūdicārem.

'Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā, Cimbrī, magnāque illātā calamitāte, fīnibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, lībertātem nōbīs relīquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi, invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea, quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur, ignōrātis, respicite fīnitimam Galliam, quae, in

---

38. **Quid**, etc.: 'What, then, is my proposal?' **Facere**: i.e. *meum cōnsilium est facere.*

39. **Cimbrōrum**: 'with the Cimbrians' and Teutons; N. to I, 33, l. 17.

40. **subāctī**: 'reduced to straits.'

42. **Cuius**, etc.: 'And if we had no precedent for such a course.' How lit.?

44. **īnstituī**: sc. *exemplum*, 'that a precedent be established.' **pulcherrimum**: 'a most noble thing.' *28, a.*

45. **quid**, etc.: 'what resemblance had that war to the present one?' How lit.? **Dēpopulātā**: *59, b.*

49. **invidiā**: 'envy.'

50. **fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō**: *239, c.*

51. **iniungere**: 'to fasten upon,' as a yoke is fastened upon oxen.

52. **aliā condiciōne**: 'on (any) other principle.'

54. **fīnitimam Galliam**: 'the neighboring (part of Gaul).' *152, a.*

prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, secūribus subiecta, perpetuā premitur servitūte.'

The residents of Alesia with wives and children are driven outside the walls; Caesar refuses to receive them.

78. Sententiīs dictīs, cōnstituunt, ut eī, quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō, oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur, quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant; *Illō tamen potius ūtendum cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem.*

Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum līberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī, cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant, ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar, dispositīs in vāllō cūstōdiīs, recipī prohibēbat.

The cavalry of the Gallic army of relief attacks fiercely, is repulsed.

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs, quibus summa imperiī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt et, colle exteriōre occupātō, nōn longius mīlle passibus ab nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt.

---

55. **secūribus**: 'the axes' of the lictors, symbols of authority; see Plate II, 4.

78. 1. **valētūdine**: 'by reason of health.'

5. **subeundam** [esse] **condiciōnem**: 'submit to terms.'

7. **Mandubiī**: the inhabitants of Alesia and those who had fled into the city from the surrounding country.

10. **sē — receptōs**: 'receive them — and.' *228, a.*

11. **recipī**: sc. *eōs*. Cast out by Vercingetorix and rejected by Caesar, the women and children and men unfit for war perished miserably in the spaces between the town walls and the Roman contravallation. Caesar's army at the time was suffering from lack of supplies (C. III, 47, ll. 16–21). *223, a.*

79. 1. **Commius**: chap. 76, l. 1. **ducēs**: chap. 76, ll. 11–13.

3. **colle exteriōre**: southwest of Alesia; see Map 17, ENCAMPMENT OF GALLIC RELIEVING ARMY.

Posterō diē, equitātū ex castrīs ēductō, omnem eam plānitiem, quam in longitūdinem tria mīlia passuum patēre dēmōnstrāvimus, complent, pedestrēsque cōpiās, paulum ab eō locō abditās, in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt.

Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt, hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque, prōductīs cōpiīs, ante oppidum cōnsīdunt et proximam fossam crātibus atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

80. Caesar, omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs mīlitēs intentī pugnae prōventum exspectābant.

Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expedītōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs, dē improvīsō vulnerātī, proeliō excēdēbant.

---

6. **plānitiem**, etc.; see chap. 69, ll. 5–8.

8. **abditās**: 'drew back and.' *228, a.*

9. **Concurrunt**: 'They' (the Gauls in the town) 'rushed together.'

12. **proximam fossam**: the trench nearest the city; "TRENCH 20 FEET WIDE" on Map 17.

80. 1. **utramque**, etc.: both the inner and the outer lines of works.

3. **castrīs**: the cavalry camps were probably those marked **G**, **H**, **I**, **K** on Map 17.

4. **castrīs**, etc.: the infantry camps (**A**, **B**, **C**, **D**), in which were the *mīlitēs*.

6. **prōventum**: 'issue.'

7. **inter equitēs**, etc.: N. to chap. 18, l. 4.

8. **quī**, etc.: 'in order that these might furnish support.' *193, a*, and *112, a.*

10. **complūrēs**: of Caesar's cavalry.

Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnfīderent et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et eī, quī mūnītiōnibus continēbantur, et hī, quī ad auxilium convēnerant, clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfīrmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē aut turpiter factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat.

Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs, sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī, cēdentēs ūsque ad castra īnsecūtī, suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt.

At eī, quī ab Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī, prope victōriā dēspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

---

13. **nostrōs**: *equitēs;* the infantry did not go into action.

14. **mūnītiōnibus**: of the town.

15. **ululātū**: N. to V, 37, l. 8. If upwards of 200,000 men were shouting and shrieking at once, the noise in the Roman lines across the plain, where the sounds from both sides met, must have been terrific; even the noise at one of the great football games would furnish no standard of comparison. The Romans under arms in the camps were probably silent, awaiting a signal for action.

16. **rēs gerēbātur**: 'the engagement was going on.'

17. **rēctē**, etc.: 'and no brave or cowardly action.' How lit.?

18. **ignōminiae**: 'disgrace.' *81.*

19. **Cum**, etc.: 'After the battle had been raging . . . with victory in doubt.' How lit.?

20. **Germānī**: the German cavalry rendered effective service on several critical occasions (chap. 67, ll. 12–15, and 70, ll. 5–12).

22. **sagittāriī**, etc.: among the cavalry; they had not yet learned to keep up with the horsemen by taking hold of the horses' manes, as the Germans did (I, 48, ll. 18–20).

23. **cēdentēs**: 'the enemy in retreat.' How lit.? *227, a,* (4).

24. **suī**: *154, b.* B. 339, 5; A. 504, *c*; H. 626, 3.

25. **maestī**: 'in sadness.' *151.*

A second attack, by night, is equally unsuccessful.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō, Gallī, atque hōc spatiō magnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī, ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōne, quī in oppidō obsidēbantur, dē suō adventū cognōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre reliquaque, quae ad oppugnātiōnem pertinent, parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore, clāmōre exaudītō, dat tubā signum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit.

Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnītiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs lībrīlibus sudi-

81. 1. **hōc spatiō**: 'during this interval.' *147, c.*

2. **scālārum**: 'ladders.' **harpagōnum**: 'grappling-hooks,' for pulling down the Roman breastworks and palisades. *12, c.*

3. **campestrēs**: west of the town, and nearest the Gallic encampment.

4. **quā significātiōne**: *ut eā significātiōne*, 'that by this sign.' *193, a.*

5. **obsidēbantur**: vivid use of the indicative. Cf. *220.*

7. **vāllō**: of the circumvallation, running from the Ose to Flavigny Heights. **prōturbāre**: 'dislodge.'

9. **dat tubā signum**: Vercingetorix had adopted the Roman system of signals. *326, a,* (1), and II, 20, l. 3.

Figure 142. — Statue of Vercingetorix at Alesia.

12. **fundīs lībrīlibus**: 'pound-weight slings'; whether these were

busque, quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs adēmptō, multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentīs tēla cōniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellīs dēductōs summittēbant.

82. Dum longius ā mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteā quam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobēs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pīlīs mūrālibus interībant. Multīs undique vulneribus acceptīs, nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veritī, nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad ṣuōs recēpērunt.

At interiōrēs, dum ea, quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant, prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent,

slingshots of stone weighing about a Roman pound, or stones of a pound weight hurled with the help of a cord attached to them, we do not know; Balearic slingers were trained to hurl stones weighing a pound. *85.* **sudibus**; 'stakes,' with pointed ends hardened by fire, for use as javelins (*praeūstae sudēs*; cf. V, 40, l. 14 and N.).

13. **disposuerant**: 'had piled at intervals,' as reserve ammunition. *79, d.* **glandibus**: probably leaden 'bullets'; N. to II, 10, l. 2.

14. **prōterrent**: 'drove back.' **tenebrīs**: 'by the darkness'; the attack began at midnight (l. 2). **multa**, etc.: the soldiers could not parry the blows with their shields because they could not see the missiles coming.

16. **M. Antōnius**: the first mention of Mark Antony by Caesar. **hae partēs**: 'this portion' of the fortifications, in the plain.

82. 3. **stimulīs**, etc.: chap. 73, ll. 25–28, and Notes.

4. **scrobēs**: chap. 73, ll. 15–24. **dēlātī**: 'stumbling.' How lit.? **trānsfodiēbantur**: 'were impaled.' *57, b.*

5. **trāiectī**, etc.: 'transfixed by wall pikes'; N. to V, 40, l. 14.

7. **superiōribus castrīs**: on Flavigny Heights; marked **A**, **B**.

9. **interiōrēs**: the Gallic army in Alesia.

10. **priōrēs fossās**: precisely what trenches are meant we do

diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī, prius suōs discessisse cognōvērunt, quam mūnītiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē īnfectā in oppidum revertērunt.

The Gauls plan a surprise, and make a last desperate assault.

83. Bis magnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī, Gallī, quid agant, cōnsulunt; locōrum perītōs adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnītiōnēsque cognōscunt.

Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter magnitūdinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī; 5

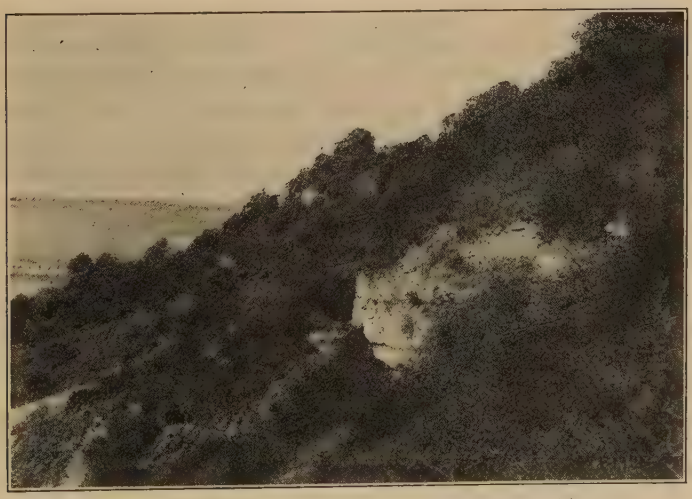


Figure 143. — A characteristic bit of the slope at Alesia.
On the south side, near the top, facing Flavigny Heights.

not know; evidently not the same as *proximam fossam*, chap. 79, l. 12.

13. **rē īnfectā**: 'without accomplishing their purpose.'

83. 1. **Bis . . . repulsī**: first in an attack with cavalry (chap. 80), then in an attack with infantry (chap. 81–82).

2. **locōrum**, etc.: 'they brought in men who knew the ground.' How lit.? *102.*

4. **ā septentriōnibus**: 'on the north.' **collis**: Mont Réa.

necessāriō paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant.

Cognitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus, ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt eārum cīvitātum, quae maximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō agī placeat, occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt, cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex IIII ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt.

Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit, mīlitēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra, quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

Vercingetorix attacks the Roman works on the inner side.

84. Vercingetorīx, ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus, ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūsculōs, falcēs reliquaque, quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat, prōfert.

---

6. **lēniter dēclīvī**: 'gently sloping' toward the city; hence offering an advantage to a force attacking from the north. **castra**: **D** on Map 17.

11. **virtūtis opīniōnem**: 'reputation for courage.' **quid**, etc.: 'what plan they would deem it best to carry out, and in what way.'

12. **adeundī**, etc.: 'they fixed as the hour of attack.'

14. **IIII ducibus**: 'the four commanders' named in chap. 76, ll. 11–13.

16. **sub lūcem**: 'toward daybreak.'

17. **itinere**: shown on Map 17, ROUTE OF ATTACKING FORCE UNDER VERCASSIVELLAUNUS. **post montem**: behind Mont Réa.

19. **castra**: marked **D**; described in lines 4–8.

20. **campestrēs**: chap. 72, l. 12, and N.

84. 2. **longuriōs**: 'poles,' sharpened at the end, for thrusting;

Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs, atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnītiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pugnantibus exsistit, quod suum perīculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

Caesar surveys the field, meets crises wherever they arise.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur, cognōscit; labōrantibus subsidium summittit.

Utrīsque ad animum occurrit, ūnum esse illud tempus, quō maximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant.

Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnītiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad

---

much longer than the ordinary javelin. **mūsculōs**: 'mousies'; Vercingetorix had adopted the Roman siege appliances (*342, a*). **falcēs**: *falcēs mūrālēs*; N. to chap. 22, l. 4. *342, c*, and Figure 188.

6. **nec**, etc.: 'could not easily meet (the enemy) at several points (at the same time).'

8. **post tergum pugnantibus**: 'at the rear of the men in action'; the shouting of those fighting on the outer line of works was heard by those defending the inner line, and *vice versa*. *109, a.*

10. **absunt, perturbant**: *175, c.*

85. 1. **locum**, etc.: Caesar's post of observation was probably on the Flavigny Heights, at the point marked with a cross on Map 17.

3. **Utrīsque**, etc.: 'To both sides came the conviction, that now was the time for a supreme final effort.' How lit.?

5. **sī**, etc.: 'if they could (only) maintain their position, looked forward to.'

8. **dēmōnstrāvimus**: chap. 83, ll. 9–20. **Inīquum**, etc.: 'The unfavorable ground' (above the camp marked **D**), 'sloping downwards' (cf. chap. 83, l. 6), 'proved a serious factor.' How lit.?

dēclīvitātem fastīgium magnum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī, testūdine factā, subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger, ab ūniversīs in mūnītiōnem coniectus, et ascēnsum dat Gallīs et ea, quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī, contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

86. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus VI subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pugnet; id, nisi necessāriō, nē faciat.

Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur, nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmicātiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere.

10. **testūdine factā**: 'formed a turtle-shell roof' (in the Roman fashion) 'and.' *144, b*, (2), and *338, 345*.

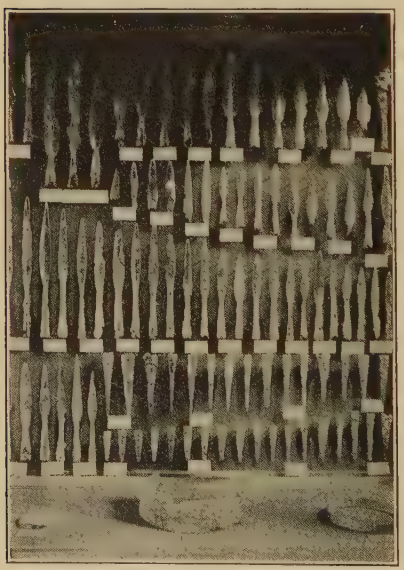


Figure 144. — Heads and butts of lances found at Alesia.

11. **Agger**: 'earth'; no regular siege embankment was made.

12. **ea, quae**, etc.: chap. 73, ll. 8–28.

13. **contegit**: 'covered up.'

86. 2. **labōrantibus**: the troops under Antistius Reginus and Caninius Rebilus, in the fiercely assaulted camp at **D**.

3. **dēductīs**, etc.: 'to draw off the cohorts (from the engagement) and make a sortie.' A similar tactic had saved the day for Galba at Octodurus (III, 5, ll. 8–15).

5. **Ipse**: 'in person.' **reliquōs**: the other divisions besides that to which Labienus had been sent.

6. **dīmicātiōnum**: 'combats.'

The attack of Vercingetorix is repulsed.

Interiōrēs, dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter magnitūdinem mūnītiōnum, loca praerupta ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea, quae parāverant, cōnferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpugnantēs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōrīcam rescindunt.

87. Mittit prīmō Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit.

A charge and a flank movement on the north rout the enemy.

Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsīs hostibus, eō, quō Labiēnum mīserat, contendit; cohortēs IIII ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adorīrī iubet.

Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs ūnā XI cohortibus, quās

---

8. **Interiōrēs**: as in chap. 82, l. 9.

9. **loca**, etc.: 'places with a steep ascent' (lit. 'steep in respect to ascent'), along the side of Flavigny Heights, which it had not been thought necessary to provide with defenses as elaborate as those in the plain of Les Laumes.

10. **ea, quae**, etc.: see chap. 84, ll. 2–3.

11. **prōpugnantēs**, etc.: 'forced back (our) men (who were) fighting from the towers.'

12. **falcibus**: chap. 84, l. 2. **vāllum, lōrīcam**: chap. 72, ll. 14–15.

87. 1. **Mittit**: to the point attacked by Vercingetorix. **cohortibus**: the number is not given.

4. **Restitūtō**, etc.: reënforced, the men defending the ramparts attacked by Vercingetorix rallied and beat him off.

6. **partem circumīre**: sc. *equitum*. The division of cavalry ordered to execute the flank movement probably started from the camp at **G**; Map 17, Route of Caesar's Cavalry.

8. **aggerēs**: here 'ramparts,' at camp **D**.

ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem, quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proeliō intersit.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cognitō, quō īnsignī in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērat, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs, quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt.

Utrimque clāmōre sublātō, excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnītiōnibus clāmor.

Nostrī, omissīs pīlīs, gladiīs rem gerunt.

Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant.

Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs.

Sedulius, dux et prīnceps Lemovīcum, occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur;

10. **praesidiīs**: detachments under arms at the redoubts; cf. chap. 69, l. 17, and N.

11. **Accelerat**: 'hastened.'

88. 1. **colōre**: scarlet. **vestītūs**: cloak (*palūdāmentum*). *321*. **cognitō**: by the enemy. **īnsignī**: 'as a distinguishing mark.'

3. **locīs superiōribus**: Mont Réa. **haec dēclīvia et dēvexa**: 'these descending slopes,' on the northwest side of Flavigny Heights, down which Caesar passed, on horseback, in full view of the enemy.

4. **committunt**: with the division under Labienus just coming into action.

6. **Utrimque**, etc.: the extraordinary vividness of the following description is due in part to the brevity of the sentences, some of which a writer of less restraint would have expanded into paragraphs; to the omission of connectives (*238, a*), and to the sparing use of adjectives. **excipit — clāmor**: 'the cheering was taken up' by those not in the action. How lit.? *353, a*.

8. **omissīs pīlīs**: the legionaries were charging up hill, so that pikes could not be hurled to advantage.

9. **tergum**: sc. *hostium*. **equitātus**: from camp G. **cohortēs aliae**: the fresh cohorts with Caesar (l. 2).

signa mīlitāria LXXIIII ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt.

Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūnītiōnibus redūcunt.

Fit prōtinus, hāc rē audītā, ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs ac tōtīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōnsequitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt.

Vercingetorix surrenders.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx, conciliō convocātō, id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed commūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint.

Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs cōnsēdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dēditur, arma prōiciuntur.

---

15. **signa mīlitāria**: see Figures 30 and 42.

16. **numerō**: 60,000 (chap. 83, l. 9).

17. **Cōnspicātī ex oppidō**: brief for *eī, quī in oppidō sunt, cōnspicātī*, etc.

20. **Quod**: *118, d.* **nisi**, etc.: *208, a,* (2). **crēbrīs subsidiīs**: 'with frequent (service in) supporting forces.'

22. **Dē mediā nocte**: *242, d.*

89. 4. **ad utramque rem**: 'for either alternative' (Fig. 145).

7. **Ipse**: Caesar.

8. **Vercingetorīx**, etc.: Vercingetorix, as we learn from Plutarch, having arrayed himself in splendid armor, mounted a horse adorned with trappings, passed slowly out from Alesia, and rode around Caesar sitting to receive the prisoners; then, halting before Caesar, he sprang from his horse, laid off his armor, and without a word seated himself at the feet of his conqueror, "every inch a king!"

10 Reservātīs Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

For six years after this Vercingetorix was confined in a Roman prison.* At length, in 46 B.C., he was led along the streets of Rome to grace Caesar's great triumph; then, in accordance with Roman custom, "while his conqueror was offering solemn thanks to the gods on the summit of the Capitol, Vercingetorix was beheaded at its foot as guilty of high treason against the Roman nation" (Fig. 145).

Figure 145. — Vercingetorix.

Denarius, struck while Vercingetorix was in prison, in Rome. He is represented with pointed beard and flowing hair, and with a chain about his neck. Behind the head is a shield.

Thus ended the career of the greatest of the Gauls, the first national hero of France.

10. **Reservātīs**, etc.: afterwards 20,000 prisoners were returned to the Aeduans and Arvernians (chap. 90, l. 5). **sī**: '(to see) whether.' *204*, (4). B. 300, 3; A. 576, *a*; H. 649, 3.

11. **capita singula**, etc.: each soldier in Caesar's army received a prisoner as his share of the booty (*318*); the number was probably not far from 50,000. On receipt of Caesar's dispatches announcing the victory, a thanksgiving of 20 days was declared at Rome (chap. 90, ll. 17–18).

Historical Significance of the Siege of Alesia. Caesar's devices for rendering impassable his lines of defense at Alesia, in ingenuity and adaptation to the purpose for which they were intended, have never been excelled in the annals of military engineering.

Caesar's success, again, well illustrates the superiority of generalship, discipline, persistency, and hard work over vastly greater numbers, even in the face of every disadvantage of position and surroundings.

For the Gauls the fall of Alesia was the crowning disaster of a hopeless struggle. They staked all on the relief of the city, and lost. But if Caesar had here suffered complete defeat, probably Gaul would long have remained unconquered, and the course of European history would have been changed.

The siege of Alesia may well rank among the decisive military operations of the world.

* Doubtless the Mamertine Prison; for which see the editor's Select Orations and Letters of Cicero, p. 115 and N. to p. 115, 15.

Truly a wonderful man was Caius Julius Caesar.
Better be first, he said, in a little Iberian village
Than be second in Rome; and I think he was right when he said it.

LONGFELLOW, *Courtship of Miles Standish.*

SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR'S CIVIL WAR

The Second Sea-fight off Massilia. II. 3–7

The Massilian fleet is reënforced by ships sent by Pompey.

3. Interim L. Nāsidius, ab Cn. Pompeiō cum classe nāvium XVI, in quibus paucae erant aerātae, L. Domitiō Massiliēnsibusque subsidiō missus, fretō Siciliae, imprūdente atque inopīnante Cūriōne, pervehitur, appulsīsque Messānam nāvibus atque, inde propter repentīnum terrōrem 5

3–7. **The circumstances.** On his way to Spain in April, 49 B.C. (*259*) Caesar sought the allegiance of Massilia (*293, a*), but the Massilians decided to cast in their lot with Pompey. Caesar directed Trebonius to besiege the city and Decimus Brutus, who had won the sea-fight with the Venetans, to destroy their formidable fleet. In June, when his ships were ready, Brutus took up a position at the island opposite Massilia (Map 18); the much larger Massilian fleet came out to fight, but proved to be no match for Brutus, who sank some ships, captured others, and drove the rest back into the harbor.

The second sea-fight, even more disastrous to the Massilians, took place in July; it is described in the following chapters.

3. 1. **L. Nāsidius**: apparently the same as Q. Nasidius named on coins (Figures 146 and 160). **Pompeiō**: Pompey, having fled from Italy (*259*), was on the east side of the Adriatic, in Macedonia (*299*).

2. **aerātae**: 'sheathed with copper,' particularly the beaks (*346, c*). **L. Domitiō**: at Massilia. The enemies of Caesar had arranged the appointment of Domitius to succeed Caesar in Gaul in 49 B.C., and he had helped the Massilians in the first sea-fight. *112, b.*

3. **fretō**: 'strait,' between Italy and Sicily; Map 12. *134, a.*

4. **Cūriōne**: Curio was engaged in crushing the Pompeian party in Sicily, whence, in August of 49, he crossed over to Africa. *12, c.* **pervehitur**: 'sailed along.' How lit.? **appulsīs**, etc.: he landed at Messana, now Messina.

prīncipum ac senātūs fugā factā, nāvem ex nāvālibus eōrum dēdūcit.

Hāc adiūnctā ad reliquās nāvēs, cursum Massiliam versus perficit, praemissāque clam nāviculā, Domitium Massilēnsēsque dē suō adventū certiōrēs facit, eōsque magnopere hortātur, ut rūrsus cum Brūtī classe, additīs suīs auxiliīs, cōnflīgant.

4. Massiliēnsēs, post superius incommodum, veterēs ad eundem numerum ex nāvālibus prōductās nāvēs refēcerant summāque industriā armāverant (rēmigum, gubernātōrum magna cōpia suppetēbat) piscātōriāsque adiēcerant atque contēxerant, ut essent ab ictū tēlōrum rēmigēs tūtī; hās sagittāriīs tormentīsque complēvērunt.

Tālī modō īnstrūctā classe, omnium seniōrum, mātrum familiae, virginum precibus et flētū excitātī, extrēmō tempore cīvitātī subvenīrent, nōn minōre animō ac fīdūciā, quam ante dīmicāverant, nāvēs cōnscendunt. Commūnī enim fit vitiō nātūrae, ut invīsitātīs atque incognitīs rēbus magis cōnfīdāmus vehementiusque exterreāmur; ut tum

---

6. **nāvālibus**: 'shipyards.' **eōrum**: of the Messanians.

9. **nāviculā**: a small sailing vessel, faster than the fleet.

4. 1. **superius incommodum**: the first sea-fight, described C. I. 56–58.

2. **eundem numerum**: 'the same number,' 17, as in the first sea-fight; Nasidius, counting the ship seized at Messana, also had 17 ships.

4. **piscātōriās** [nāvēs]: 'fishing-smacks.'

5. **contēxerant**: 'had covered (them)' with decks, to protect the rowers underneath; the fishing-smacks, like those of the Mediterranean to-day, were open.

7. **seniōrum**: 'older men,' unfit for military or naval service.

8. **virginum**: *12, d.* **extrēmō tempore**: 'in utmost peril.'

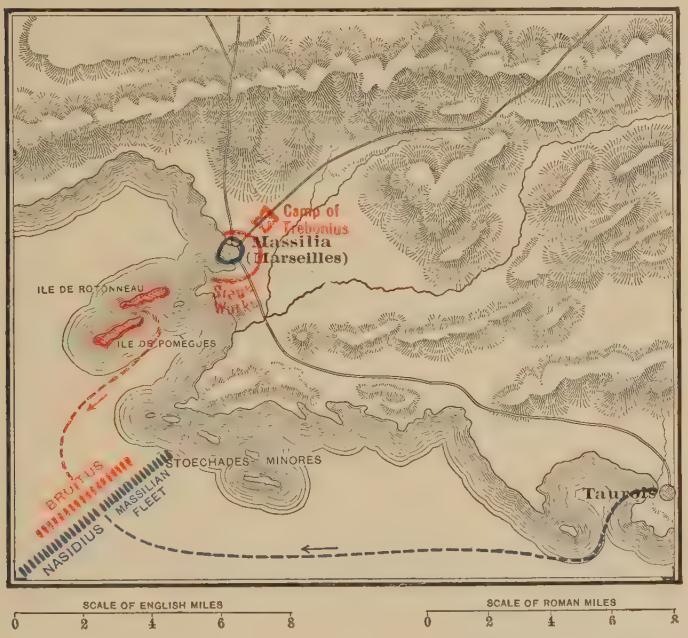
9. **subvenīrent**, etc.: '(begging) them to help the state'; the idea of asking is implied in *precibus*. *200, a.*

10. **Commūnī**, etc.: 'For it is a common failing of human nature that we are swayed by unseen and unknown factors to overconfidence and to too great fear.' How lit.? *135, a*, and *203*, (1).

MAP 18

The Second Sea-Fight off Massilia

C. II, 3–7 To face page 426



EXPLANATION

Nasidius, admiral of Pompey, had come to Taurois with 17 galleys. Here he was joined by the Massilian fleet, consisting of an equal number of galleys and some protected fishing-smacks.

To oppose this formidable squadron Brutus had only 18 galleys, some of which, newly built, could be less easily maneuvered than the ships of the enemy. His rowers, too, were inferior to those of the enemy, lacking experience.

Nevertheless Brutus left his anchorage, near an island opposite the harbor of Massilia, and led his fleet in the direction of Taurois.

In the battle an attempt to ram Brutus's flagship from opposite sides disabled two of the enemy's ships by collision. Brutus's men showed themselves specially skillful in the seizing of hostile ships by grappling-hooks and boarding, with hand-to-hand fighting. The fleet of Nasidius fled.

On the land side Massilia was shut in by the siege works of Trebonius, whose camp was on high ground on the northwest side of the city (chap. 5, l. 8).

accidit. Adventus enim L. Nāsidiī summā spē et voluntāte cīvitātem complēverat.

Nactī idōneum ventum, ex portū exeunt et Tauroënta, 15
quod est castellum Massiliēnsium, ad Nāsidium perveniunt; ibique nāvēs expediunt rūrsusque sē ad cōnflīgendum animō cōnfirmant et cōnsilia commūnicant. Dextra pars attribuitur Massiliēnsibus, sinistra Nāsidiō.

Brutus, in command of Caesar's fleet, comes out to join battle.

5. Eōdem Brūtus contendit, auctō nāvium numerō. Nam ad eās, quae factae erant Arelāte per Caesarem, captīvae Massiliēnsium accesserant VI. Hās superiōribus diēbus refēcerat atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūxerat. Itaque

---

13. **voluntāte**: 'eagerness' to fight.

15. **idōneum ventum**: from the north; see Map 18. **Tauroënta**: *18, g*, and *119, a*.

16. **castellum**: Tauroïs was a fortified port. Nasidius had stopped there, instead of proceeding to Massilia, in order not to expose his fleet, in passing the islands, to the risk of an attack by Brutus; Map 18.

17. **expediunt**: 'made ready for action.' *175, b*.

18. **animō**: *142, a*. **cōnsilia commūnicant**: 'worked out together their plan' of battle. **pars**: 'formation.'

5. 1. **contendit**: from his naval base, at the island opposite Massilia.

2. **Arelāte**: *145, b*. **per Caesarem**: 'on Caesar's order'; 12 galleys were built at Arelas (C. I. 36), and in the first sea-fight these alone formed the fleet of Brutus.

3. **captīvae**; sc. *nāvēs*; 'captured' in the first sea-fight. In all, Brutus now had 18 galleys as against 34 galleys and the protected fishing-smacks in the combined fleet of the Massilians and Nasidius.

Figure 146. — Coin of Quintus Nasidius.

Silver, denarius, struck 38–36 B.C. Galley with beak, oars, and sail. The pilot stands on the prow; at the stern sits the helmsman, controlling a large steering-paddle thrust down into the sea. For obverse see Fig. 160.

suōs cohortātus, quōs integrōs superāvissent, ut victōs contemnerent, plēnus speī bonae atque animī, adversus eōs proficīscitur.

The inhabitants of Massilia offer prayers for victory.

Facile erat, ex castrīs C. Trebōniī atque omnibus superiōribus locīs, prōspicere in urbem, ut omnis iuventūs, quae in oppidō remānserat, omnēsque superiōris aetātis cum līberīs atque uxōribus ex pūblicīs locīs cūstōdiīsque aut mūrō ad caelum manūs tenderent aut templa deōrum immortālium adīrent et, ante simulācra prōiectī, victōriam ab dīs exposcerent.

Neque erat quisquam omnium, quīn in eius diēī cāsū suārum omnium fortūnārum ēventum cōnsistere exīstimāret. Nam et honestī ex iuventūte, et cuiusque aetātis amplissimī, nōmināti ēvocātī atque obsecrātī, nāvēs cōnscenderant, ut, sī quid adversī accidisset, nē ad cōnandum quidem sibi quicquam reliquī fore vidērent; sī superāvis-

5. **suōs**, etc.; *suōs cohortātus ut* (*eōs*), *quōs integrōs* ('at their full strength') *superāvissent*, *victōs* ('as beaten') *contemnerent*. *199, a.*

8. **castrīs**: on the northwest side of the city; Map. 18.

9. **ut**: 'how.' *204*, (3). **quae**, etc.: cf. *220*.

10. **superiōris aetātis**: 'of more advanced age.'

11. **cūstōdiīs**: 'watch stations,' where watchmen were on duty.

12. **ad . . . tenderent**: in the attitude of prayer.

13. **simulācra**: 'images' of the gods. *74, d.* **prōiectī**: 'casting themselves down.' *174*.

14. **exposcerent**: 'were imploring.' *204*, (3).

15. **quīn**: = *quī nōn*. *195*. **in . . . cāsū**: 'upon the issue.'

16. **ēventum cōnsistere**: 'that the destiny . . . rested.'

17. **honestī ex iuventūte**: 'the youth of good family.' How lit.? *97, d.*

18. **amplissimī**: 'the most prominent men,' the leading men of the city.

19. **adversī, reliquī**: *97, b.* **nē . . . fore**: 'that even the possibility of making another attempt would be cut off.' How lit.?

sent, vel domesticīs opibus vel externīs auxiliīs dē salūte urbis cōnfīderent.

The Massilians and their allies, the Albici, fight desperately.

6. Commissō proeliō, Massiliēnsibus rēs nūlla ad virtūtem dēfuit; sed memorēs eōrum praeceptōrum, quae paulō ante ab suīs accēperant, hōc animō dēcertābant, ut nūllum aliud tempus ad cōnandum habitūrī vidērentur et, quibus in pugnā vītae perīculum accideret, nōn ita multō sē reliquōrum cīvium fātum antecēdere exīstimārent, quibus, urbe captā, eadem esset bellī fortūna patienda.

Dīductīsque nostrīs paulātim nāvibus, et artificiō gubernātōrum et mōbilitātī nāvium locus dabātur; et sī quandō nostrī, facultātem nactī, ferreīs manibus iniectīs, nāvem religāverant, undique suīs labōrantibus succurrēbant. Neque vērō coniūnctī Albicī comminus pugnandō dēficiēbant neque multum cēdēbant virtūte nostrīs.

---

21. **externīs**: 'foreign.' **dē**, etc.: 'they confidently expected to assure the safety of the city' against Trebonius.

6. 1. **Commissō proeliō**: 'After the engagement had begun.' The probable formation in battle order is indicated on Map 18.

4. **habitūrī vidērentur**: sc. *sibi*, 'it seemed to them that they were going to have.' **quibus . . . accideret**: 'if they should risk their lives.' How lit.?

6. **exīstimārent**: *203*, (4). **urbe captā**: *144*, *b*, (4).

7. **eadem fortūna**: they expected an indiscriminate slaughter, like that at Avaricum (VII. 28), if the city should be taken.

8. **Dīductīs**, etc.: the gradual drawing apart of Brutus's fleet in the course of the engagement gave to the Massilian steersmen, who were very skillful, a favorable opportunity to manœuver their ships, which were seasoned and more easily handled than the new battleships of Brutus. **gubernātōrum**: *84*.

10. **ferreīs**, etc.: 'had thrown grappling-hooks upon a ship and held it fast.' *144*, *b*, (2), and *346*, *d*.

12. **coniūnctī Albicī**: 'the Albici serving with (them),' as marines. **pugnandō**: dative after *dēficiēbant*; trans. 'fail in hand-to-hand fighting,' when Brutus's men boarded a Massilian ship.

Simul ex minōribus nāvibus magna vīs ēminus missa tēlōrum multa nostrīs dē imprōvīsō, imprūdentibus atque impedītīs, vulnera īnferēbant. Cōnspicātaeque nāvēs trirēmēs duae nāvem D. Brūtī, quae ex īnsignī facile agnōscī poterat, duābus ex partibus sēsē īn eam incitāvērunt. Sed tantum, rē prōvīsā, Brūtus celeritāte nāvis ēnīsus est, ut parvō mōmentō antecēderet. Illae adeō graviter inter sē incitātae cōnflixērunt, ut vehementissimē utraque ex concursū labōrārent, altera vērō, praefrāctō rōstrō, tōta collabefieret. Quā rē animadversā, quae proximae eī locō ex Brūtī classe nāvēs erant, in eās impedītās impetum faciunt celeriterque ambās dēprimunt.

Brutus wins the victory; grief fills the city.

7. Sed Nāsidiānae nāvēs nūllī ūsuī fuērunt celeriterque pugnā excessērunt; nōn enim hās aut cōnspectus patriae aut propinquōrum praecepta ad extrēmum vītae perīculum adīre cōgēbant; itaque ex eō numerō nāvium nūlla dēsiderāta est. Ex Massiliēnsium classe v sunt dēpressae, IIII

---

14. **minōribus nāvibus**: the protected fishing-smacks (chap. 4, ll. 4–6).

16. **īnferēbant**: *173, b.* **Cōnspicātae**: 'sighting'; the ships are personified. *226, c*, and *239, h.* **nāvēs trirēmēs**: 'triremes.' *346, a.*

17. **īnsignī**: a red banner. *346, d.* **agnōscī**: 'be recognized.'

18. **duābus ex partibus**: 'from opposite sides.' *347.*

19. **tantum**, etc.: 'Brutus, seeing what would happen, by a quick movement of his ship just managed, by a narrow margin, to drive ahead,' so that the two attacking ships rammed each other. How lit.?

22. **praefrāctō**, etc.: 'had had its beak broken off and was quite shattered.' *346, c*, and Fig. 146.

25. **dēprimunt**: 'sunk.'

7. 1. **Nāsidiānae**: 'of Nasidius.' **-que**: 'but.' *234, b.*

2. **hās** [nāvēs]: personification, as in chap. 6, l. 16.

4. **eō numerō nāvium**: i.e. *numerō eārum nāvium*, 17 (chap. 3, ll. 1–7).

PLATE XI AN ANCIENT SEA-FIGHT BETWEEN GALLEYS

A bireme, with two banks of oars, is ramming a quinquereme, with five banks. Fighting-tops were used in the later Roman days, but not in Caesar's time.

The boat in the foreground, with one bank of oars on each side and deck along the middle, would pass very well for one of the protected fishing-smacks used by the Massilians, enlarged (C. III. 4).

captae, ūna cum Nāsidiānīs profūgit; quae omnēs citeriōrem Hispāniam petīvērunt.

At ex reliquīs ūna, praemissa Massiliam huius nūntiī perferendī grātiā, cum iam appropinquāret urbī, omnis sēsē multitūdō ad cognōscendum effūdit; et, rē cognitā, tantus lūctus excēpit, ut urbs ab hostibus capta eōdem vēstīgiō vidērētur.

Massiliēnsēs tamen nihilō sētius ad dēfēnsiōnem urbis reliqua apparāre coepērunt.

Heroic Endurance of Caesar's Soldiers before Dyrrachium. III. 47–49, 53

Caesar with a smaller army shuts Pompey up at Dyrrachium.

47. Erat nova et inūsitāta bellī ratiō, cum tot castellōrum numerō tantōque spatiō et tantīs mūnītiōnibus et tōtō obsidiōnis genere, tum etiam reliquīs rēbus.

---

6. **captae**: sc. *sunt nāvēs*. The losses of Brutus are not reported. **quae omnēs**: *97, c.* **citeriōrem Hispāniam**: *296*.

10. **multitūdō**: 'population.' **ad cognōscendum**: 'to learn the news.'

11. **lūctus excēpit**: 'lamentation followed.' **capta**: *148, e*. **eōdem vēstīgiō**: 'at that moment.' How lit.?

47–53. Caesar before Dyrrachium. When, early in 49 B.C., Pompey fled with his army from Italy (*259*), he established his base in the region of Dyrrachium, now *Durazzo* (Map 19). Here he had easy communication by sea with coastal regions, and by land also with Greece and the wealthy provinces of the Orient (*261*). Before the end of 49 Caesar had vanquished Pompey's forces in Spain and had received the capitulation of Massilia; in January, 48 B.C. (Unreformed Calendar; *241, c*), he landed an army at Palaeste (Map 19), and took possession of Apollonia. By the middle of April, 48, military operations were concentrated at Dyrrachium, where Caesar, though he had a smaller army, shut Pompey in by an extended line of works on the land side.

After a long and bitter struggle Caesar was obliged to retire from before Dyrrachium; but the difficulties of the undertaking served only to bring out in clearer light the loyalty and endurance of his soldiers.

47. 1. **inūsitāta**: 'unprecedented.' **cum**, etc.: 'considering not only the great number of redoubts.' How lit.? **castellōrum**:

Nam quīcumque alterum obsidēre cōnātī sunt, perculsōs atque īnfīrmōs hostēs adortī, aut proeliō superātōs aut aliquā offēnsiōne permōtōs, continuērunt, cum ipsī numerō equitum mīlitumque praestārent; causa autem obsidiōnis haec ferē esse cōnsuēvit, ut frūmentō hostēs prohibērent. At tum integrās atque incolumēs cōpiās Caesar īnferiōre mīlitum numerō continēbat, cum illī omnium rērum cōpiā abundārent; cotīdiē enim magnus undique nāvium numerus conveniēbat, quae commeātum supportārent, neque ūllus flāre ventus poterat, quīn aliquā ex parte secundum cursum habērent. Ipse autem, cōnsūmptīs omnibus longē lātēque frūmentīs, summīs erat in angustiīs.

His men, half-starved, say they will live on bark rather than let Pompey escape.

Sed tamen haec singulārī patientiā mīlitēs ferēbant. Recordābantur enim eadem sē superiōre annō in Hispāniā perpessōs labōre et patientiā maximum bellum cōnfēcisse, meminerant ad Alesiam magnam sē inopiam perpessōs,

---

the number of redoubts in Caesar's lines we do not know; Pompey, hemmed in by Caesar, built 24 for defense.

2. **spatiō**: the area included between Caesar's lines and the sea exceeded 20 square miles. **mūnītiōnibus**: Caesar's lines extended 17 Roman miles. For about two thirds of the distance they ran along higher ground; for the rest, on lower ground, where parallel trenches and ramparts were constructed, 600 feet apart.

3. **reliquīs rēbus**: 'other conditions.'

4. **quīcumque**, etc.: 'commanders who heretofore have attempted to blockade an opponent.' How lit.? **perculsōs**: 'demoralized'; the reason is given in *aut . . . permōtōs*.

5. **aliquā offēnsiōne**: 'by some other reverse.'

10. **illī**: the soldiers of Pompey, whose fleets controlled the sea.

15. **frūmentīs**: here 'stores of grain.'

17. **Recordābantur**: 'They recalled the fact.' *259*. **eadem**: object of *perpessōs*; 'having experienced the same hardships.'

multō etiam maiōrem ad Avaricum, maximārum gentium victōrēs discessisse. Nōn illī hordeum, cum darētur, nōn legūmina recūsābant; pecus vērō, cuius reī summa erat ex Ēpīrō cōpia, magnō in honōre habēbant.

48. Est etiam genus rādīcis inventum ab eīs, qui fuerant in vallibus, quod appellātur chara, quod admixtum lacte multum inopiam levābat.

Id ad similitūdinem pānis efficiēbant. Eius erat magna cōpia. Ex hōc effectōs pānēs, cum in colloquiīs Pompeiānī famem nostrīs obiectārent, vulgō in eōs iaciēbant, ut spem eōrum minuerent.

49. Iamque frūmenta mātūrēscere incipiēbant, atque ipsa spēs inopiam sustentābat, quod celeriter sē habitūrōs cōpiam cōnfīdēbant; crēbraeque vōcēs mīlitum in vigiliis colloquiīsque audiēbantur, prius sē cortice ex arboribus victūrōs, quam Pompeium ē manibus dīmissūrōs . . .

20. **maiōrem**: sc. *inopiam perpessōs* (VII. 17).

21. **hordeum**: 'barley,' not considered a fair substitute for wheat in the soldier's rations. *317*.

22. **legūmina**: 'pulse,' including beans, lentils, etc. **pecus**, etc.: Caesar's soldiers counted it a hardship to have fresh meat as the staple of diet.

23. **Ēpīrō**: mountainous, well adapted for raising cattle.

48. 2. **vallibus**: numerous ravines cut the surface of the higher ground on which Caesar extended his lines. **chara**: probably a species of arum, the tubers of which contained starch but were bitter to the taste and had to be mixed with milk, or cooked with milk, to make them edible. **admixtum**: 'mixed.' *139*.

4. **Id**, etc.: 'This they made into a kind of bread.' How lit.?

5. **pānēs**: 'loaves.' **colloquiīs**: the opposing lines were within calling distance. **Pompeiānī**: 'the soldiers of Pompey.'

6. **famem**, etc.: 'would taunt our men with hunger.'

49. 1. **frūmenta**: 'fields of grain.' The blockade of Pompey dragged on from April to July.

3. **crēbrae**: *151*. **vigiliīs**: when on guard duty at night.

4. **cortice**, etc.: 'that they would live on bark off the trees.' Cf. IV, 1, l. 16, and N. **ex**: *150, d*.

One day's fighting before Dyrrachium.

53. Ita ūnō diē VI proeliīs factīs, tribus ad Dyrrachium, tribus ad mūnītiōnēs, cum hōrum omnium ratiō habērētur, ad duo mīlia numerō ex Pompeiānīs cecidisse reperiēbāmus, ēvocātōs centuriōnēsque complūrēs (in eō fuit numerō Valerius Flaccus, L. fīlius, eius, quī praetor Asiam obtinuerat); signaque sunt mīlitāria sex relāta.

Nostrī nōn amplius XX omnibus sunt proeliīs dēsīderātī.

The extraordinary bravery of Scaeva, centurion, and his men.

Sed in castellō illō nēmō fuit omnīno mīlitum, quīn vulnerārētur, quattuorque ex ūnā cohorte centuriōnēs oculōs āmīsērunt.

Et cum labōris suī perīculīque testimōnium afferre vellent, mīlia sagittārum circiter XXX, in castellum coniecta,

---

49–53. Summary. Pompey's water supply was cut off by Caesar, so that his troops were obliged to dig wells, which proved to be inadequate; the baggage-animals died, and there was much sickness among the soldiers. Pompey finally ordered an attack upon several of Caesar's redoubts at the same time, in order that reënforcements might not be sent from one to the other.

53. 1. **ūnō diē**: the day on which Pompey attacked several redoubts at the same time; the offensive cost him heavily. **Dyrrachium**: near the upper end of the area hemmed in by Caesar, on a peninsula projecting into the Adriatic sea.

4. **ēvocātōs**: *316.*

5. **L.**: *Lūcii. 8, a.* **eius**: sc. *Valeriī Flaccī.* This Lucius Valerius Flaccus was praetor in the year of Cicero's Consulship, 63 B.C. **Asiam**: the province Asia. *302, c.* **obtinuerat**: ex-praetors, as well as ex-consuls, went out as governors of provinces.

6. **signa mīlitāria**: of Pompey, 'brought back' by Caesar's men. *324, b,* (2).

7. **XX**: *vigintī. 129, b.* **omnibus proeliīs**: *147, b.*

8. **castellō illō**: apparently a redoubt held by the eighth cohort of the sixth legion.

12. **in castellum coniecta**: 'that had been shot against the redoubt.'

Caesarī numerāvērunt, scūtōque ad eum relātō Scaevae, centuriōnis, inventa sunt in eō forāmina cxx. Quem Caesar, ut erat dē sē meritus et dē rē pūblicā, dōnātum mīlibus cc . . . atque ab octāvīs ōrdinibus ad prīmipīlum sē trādūcere prōnūntiāvit (eius enim operā castellum magnā ex parte cōnservātum esse cōnstābat) cohortemque posteā duplicī stīpendiō, frūmentō, veste, cibāriīs mīlitāribusque dōnīs amplissimē dōnāvit.

Caesar's Treatment of Two "Grafters." III. 59–61

Two "grafters," Gauls, are found in Caesar's cavalry.

59. Erant apud Caesarem in equitum numerō Allobrogēs duo, frātrēs, Roucillus et Egus, Adbucillī fīliī, quī prīncipātum in cīvitāte multīs annīs obtinuerat, singulārī virtūte hominēs, quōrum operā Caesar omnibus Gallicīs

---

13. **numerāvērunt**: 'they counted out.' **scūtō**, etc.: Scaeva, we are elsewhere told, held his post, at the gate of the redoubt, to the end of the engagement, though one eye was put out and he was wounded in shoulder and thigh (Suetonius, *Caesar*, 68).

14. **forāmina**: 'holes,' made by arrows. Scaeva must have parried with marvelous steadiness and quickness. **Quem**: trans. as if *et eum*.

15. **dōnātum**, etc.: filling the gap in the text as Meusel suggests we may read, *dōnātum* (*228, a*) *mīlibus ducentīs sēstertium* (see Vocab.) *prō cōntiōne laudāvit*, 'presented him with 200,000 sesterces and praised him before the assembly of the soldiers.' The value of the gift exceeded $8000 in our money.

16. **ab**, etc.: 'announced his promotion from the rank of centurion in the eighth cohort to the position of first centurion.' How lit.?

18. **cohortem**: all the men of the cohort had their pay doubled, besides receiving other gifts and decorations. *318*.

59. 1. **Erant**, etc.: the incidents related in chapters 59–61 took place while Caesar was still before Dyrrachium. *90, a*. **in equitum numerō**: 'among the cavalry,' apparently a contingent raised among the Allobroges.

3. **annīs**: *147, c*. **singulārī virtūte**: *143, a*.

bellīs optimā fortissimāque erat ūsus. Hīs domī ob hās causās amplissimōs magistrātūs mandāverat atque eōs extrā ōrdinem in senātum legendōs cūrāverat, agrōsque in Galliā, ex hostibus captōs, praemiaque reī pecūniāriae magna tribuerat, locuplētēsque ex egentibus fēcerat.

Hī propter virtūtem nōn sōlum apud Caesarem in honōre erant, sed etiam apud exercitum cārī habēbantur; sed, frētī amīcitiā Caesaris, et stultā ac barbarā arrogantiā ēlātī, dēspiciēbant suōs, stīpendiumque equitum fraudābant et praedam omnem domum āvertēbant. Quibus illī rēbus permōtī, ūniversī Caesarem adiērunt palamque dē eōrum iniūriīs sunt questī, et ad cētera addidērunt, falsum ab eīs equitum numerum dēferrī, quōrum stīpendium āverterent.

Caesar disciplines them privately.

60. Caesar, neque tempus illud animadversiōnis esse exīstimāns, et multa virtūtī eōrum concēdēns, rem tōtam distulit; illōs sēcrētō castīgāvit, quod quaestuī equitēs

---

5. **bellīs**: 'campaigns.' **domī**: in their own country. *146.*

6. **amplissimōs**: 'highest.' **extrā ōrdinem**: 'out of due course.'

7. **senātum**: sc. *Allobrogum. 289, b.* **legendōs**: *229, b.*

8. **praemia reī pecūniāriae**: 'rewards in money.'

12. **amīcitiā**: *131, e.* **stultā**: 'stupid.'

13. **dēspiciēbant**: 'looked down upon their fellow-countrymen.' **fraudābant**: 'were appropriating.'

14. **domum āvertēbant**: they turned aside to private use what should have been divided up among all. **illī**: the aggrieved cavalrymen.

17. **equitum**, etc.: by turning in a 'fictitious number of cavalrymen' they drew pay for soldiers who did not exist. **āverterent**: *193, a.*

60. 1. **neque**, etc.: 'that that (time) was not the (proper) time for punishment.' *94, d.*

3. **quaestuī**, etc.: 'they made booty of the cavalrymen.' *112, a.*

habērent, monuitque, ut ex suā amīcitiā omnia exspectārent et ex praeteritīs suīs officiīs reliqua spērārent.

Resentful, they borrow money, buy horses, go over to Pompey.

Magnam tamen haec rēs illīs offēnsiōnem et contemptiōnem ad omnēs attulit, idque ita esse cum ex aliōrum obiectātiōnibus, tum etiam ex domesticō iūdiciō atque animī cōnscientiā intellegēbant. Quo pudōre adductī, et fortasse nōn sē līberārī, sed in aliud tempus reservārī, arbitrātī, discēdere ab nōbīs et novam temptāre fortūnam novāsque amīcitiās experīrī cōnstituērunt.

Et cum paucīs collocūtī clientibus suīs, quibus tantum facinus committere audēbant, prīmum cōnātī sunt praefectum equitum, C. Volusēnum, interficere, ut posteā, bellō cōnfectō, cognitum est, ut cum mūnere aliquō perfūgisse ad Pompeium vidērentur; postquam id facinus difficilius vīsum est, neque facultās perficiendī dabātur, quam maximās potuērunt pecūniās mūtuātī, proinde ac sī suīs satisfacere et fraudāta restituere vellent, multīs coēmptīs equīs ad

---

5. **praeteritīs suīs officiīs**: 'his good offices in the past.'

7. **ad omnēs**: 'before all.' **id**, etc.: 'and that this was so.'

8. **obiectātiōnibus**: 'reproaches.' **domesticō iūdiciō**: 'the judgment (of those) of their own household.' **animī cōnscientiā**: '(their own) conscience.'

10. **līberārī**: sc. *poenā*.

13. **cum**, etc.: 'after conferring with a few of their clients.' How lit.?

14. **committere**: 'to entrust (the knowledge of).' **praefectum equitum**: *309, c*.

15. **C. Volusēnum**: he had distinguished himself in the Gallic war; cf. III, 5, ll. 7–10.

16. **mūnere aliquō**: 'some service' rendered, to commend them to Pompey.

18. **quam**, etc.: 'having borrowed the largest sums of money that they could.'

20. **fraudāta**: 'the embezzled funds.' **vellent**: *210*.

Pompeium trānsiērunt cum eīs, quōs suī cōnsiliī participēs habēbant.

61. Quōs Pompeius, quod erant honestō locō nātī et īnstrūctī līberāliter, magnōque comitātū et multīs iūmentīs vēnerant, virīque fortēs habēbantur et in honōre apud Caesarem fuerant, quodque novum id, et praeter cōnsuētūdinem, accīderat, omnia sua praesidia circumdūxit atque ostentāvit. Nam ante id tempus nēmō, aut mīles aut eques, ā Caesare ad Pompeium trānsierat, cum paene cotīdiē ā Pompeiō ad Caesarem perfugerent, vulgō vērō in Ēpīrō atque Aetōliā cōnscrīptī mīlitēs, eārumque regiōnum omnium, quae ā Caesare tenēbantur.

Last Operations about Dyrrachium. III. 64

Bravery of a dying standard-bearer in a panic of Caesar's troops.

64. Hōc tumultū nūntiātō, Mārcellīnus cohortēs . . . subsidiō nostrīs labōrantibus summittit ex castrīs; quae,

---

21. **suī cōnsiliī participēs**: 'as associates in the plot.' How lit.? *26, b*, and *115, b*.

61. 1. **Quōs**: object of *circumdūxit*. *167*. **locō**: *128, a*.

2. **īnstrūctī līberāliter**: 'generously supplied,' as explained in the next clause. **comitātū**: 'retinue.' Cf. chap. 84, ll. 20–23.

4. **novum**, etc.: 'as something new and without precedent.'

5. **circumdūxit**: with two accusatives. *114, a*.

8. **perfugerent**: 'men were deserting.' *187*. **vulgō**: 'in large numbers.'

9. **mīlitēs**: sc. *perfugerent*. **eārum regiōnum**: sc. *mīlitēs*.

64. 1. **tumultū**: 'sudden attack' at one end of Caesar's line of works, near the sea; two cohorts of the ninth legion, on guard duty, were driven back. **cohortēs**: a word, giving the number of the cohorts sent as reënforcement, has been lost.

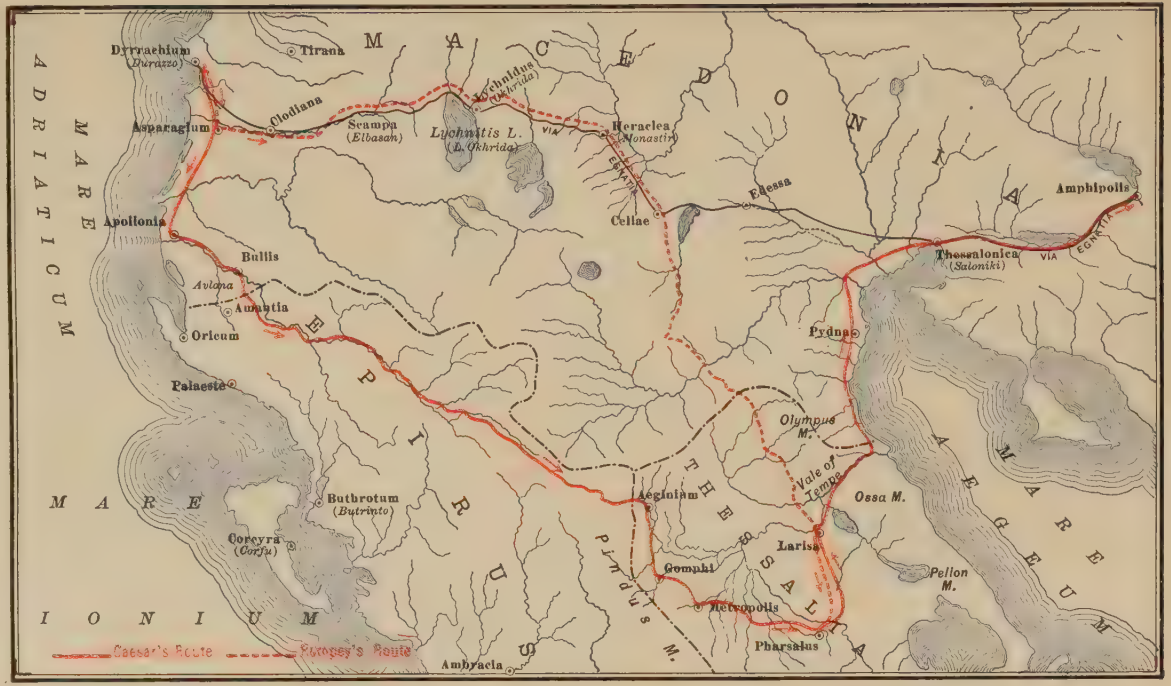
2. **subsidiō nostrīs**: *112, b*. **castrīs**: one of Caesar's camps, in charge of the quaestor Marcellinus and near the point of attack. **quae**, etc.: 'but these (cohorts), when they saw our men fleeing.' How lit.?

MAP 19

OPERATIONS OF THE YEAR 48 B.C.

C. III, 41–100

To face page 438



fugientēs cōnspicātae, neque illōs suō adventū cōnfirmāre potuērunt, neque ipsae hostium impetum tulērunt. Itaque quodcumque addēbātur subsidiō, id, correptum timōre fugientium, terrōrem et perīculum augēbat; hominum enim multitūdine receptus impediēbātur.

In eō proeliō cum gravī vulnere esset affectus aquilifer et ā vīribus dēficerētur, cōnspicātus equitēs nostrōs,

'Hanc ego,' inquit, 'et vīvus multōs per annōs magnā dīligentiā dēfendī et nunc, moriēns, eādem fidē Caesarī restituō. Nōlīte, obsecrō, committere, quod ante in exercitū Caesaris nōn accidit, ut reī mīlitāris dēdecus admittātur, incolumemque ad eum dēferte.'

Hōc cāsū aquila cōnservātur, omnibus prīmae cohortis centuriōnibus interfectīs praeter prīncipem priōrem.

---

5. **quodcumque**, etc.: 'every additional detachment sent as reënforcement, seized by the panic of those in flight, (only) increased.' How lit.?

8. **aquilifer**: 'eagle-bearer,' always accompanying the first cohort of a legion. *324, b*, (1).

9. **ā vīribus dēficerētur**: 'his strength began to fail.' How lit.? **equitēs**: perhaps belonging to the cavalry detachment of the ninth legion. *309, a*.

10. **Hanc**: *hanc aquilam*. *211, a, b*, (3).

12. **Nōlīte**, etc.: 'Do not permit the incurring of a military disgrace.' How lit.? *181, b*.

14. **incolumen**: sc. *hanc aquilam*. The cavalrymen heeded his plea, and took the eagle. **-que**: *234, b*. **dēferte**: *69, b*.

15. **Hōc cāsū**: the appearance of the cavalrymen at the opportune moment.

16. **prīncipem priōrem**: 'the first centurion of the second maniple.' *315, b*.

65–83. Dyrrachium to Pharsalus. While at Dyrrachium (*261*) Caesar sent Domitius Calvinus with two legions eastward into Macedonia in order to check the advance of Scipio (father of Pompey's fifth and last wife, Cornelia), who was bringing an army westward to Pompey.

Forced finally to withdraw from Dyrrachium, Caesar fell back on Apollonia (Map 19); thence he marched southeast, effected a junction with Domitius at

The Battle of Pharsalus. III. 82–99

Caesar draws up his army near Pompey's camp, tests his cavalry.

84. Rē frūmentāriā praeparātā cōnfirmātīsque mīlitibus, et satis longō spatiō temporis ā Dyrrachīnīs proeliīs intermissō, quō satis perspectum habēre mīlitum animum vidērētur, temptandum Caesar exīstimāvit, quidnam Pompeius prōpositī aut voluntātis ad dīmicandum habēret. Itaque exercitum ex castrīs ēdūxit aciemque īnstrūxit, prīmō suīs locīs paulōque ā castrīs Pompeī longius, continentibus vērō diēbus, ut prōgrederētur ā castrīs suīs collibusque Pompeiānīs aciem subiceret. Quae rēs in diēs cōnfirmātiōrem eius exercitum efficiēbat.

Aeginium in Thessaly (*301*, and Map 19), and led the united army to Gomphi, which, because its gates were closed, he stormed and gave over to looting. From Gomphi Caesar marched by way of Metropolis to the vicinity of Pharsalus, where he encamped, in a plain rich with ripening harvests, resolved there to await the coming of Pompey (Map 20).

Pompey, taking a northerly route (Map 19) by way of Heraclea (modern *Monastir*), joined the army of Scipio with his own, entered Thessaly from the north, and encamped not far from Caesar (Map 20).

84. 1. **Rē**, etc.: trans. by clauses commencing with 'when.' **cōnfīrmātīs**: 'encouraged.'

2. **satis**, etc.: 'a sufficiently long period had elapsed since the engagements at Dyrrachium to enable him to assure himself of the spirit of his soldiers.' How lit.?

3. **perspectum**: *229, a.* **vidērētur**: sc. *sibi. 194, a.*

4. **temptandum** [esse]: sc. *sibi*; 'that he ought to find out.' **quidnam**: etc.: 'what intention or desire.' *48, c*, and 97, *b.*]

7. **suīs locīs**: 'in a position favorable to himself,' in front of his own camp. **castrīs Pompeī**: on an elevation, east of Caesar's camp (Map 20). *8, b.* **continentibus**: 'successive.'

8. **ut**: *ita instrūxit ut*; trans. 'in such a way that he moved forward.' **collibus**, etc.: 'pushed his line up to the hills occupied by Pompey.'

9. **rēs**: the fact that Pompey did not offer battle when Caesar's line moved up near him. **cōnfīrmātiōrem**: 'more confident.'

Superius tamen īnstitūtum in equitibus, quod dēmōnstrāvimus, servābat, ut, quoniam numerō multīs partibus esset īnferior, adulēscentēs atque expedītōs ex antesignānīs, ēlēctīs ad pernīcitātem armīs, inter equitēs proeliārī iubēret, quī cotīdiānā cōnsuētūdine ūsum quoque eius generis proeliōrum perciperent.

Hīs erat rēbus effectum, ut equitēs mīlle, etiam apertiōribus locīs, VII mīlium Pompeiānōrum impetum, cum adesset ūsus, sustinēre audērent, neque magnopere eōrum multitūdine terrērentur. Namque etiam per eōs diēs proelium secundum equestre fēcit, atque ūnum Allobrogem ex duōbus, quōs perfūgisse ad Pompeium suprā docuimus, cum quibusdam interfēcit.

---

11. **Superius īnstitūtum**: 'the former arrangement.' **dēmōnstrāvimus**: in chapter 75; there Caesar relates how he interspersed 400 light-armed footmen among his cavalry which, thus strengthened, defeated Pompey's cavalry with much slaughter.

12. **numerō**: sc. *equitum*. *142, a.* **multīs partibus**: 'much.' How lit.? *140.*

13. **expedītōs**: 'with light equipment,' in place of the heavy weapons ordinarily carried by the legionary. **antesignānīs**: in each legion the 'men before the standards' formed a select contingent of the best fighters who were charged to protect the standards and in battle were posted in the parts of the line that were in front of the standards.

14. **ēlēctīs**, etc.: 'with arms selected for quickness of movement.'

15. **quī**: 'in order that they.' *193, a.* **quoque**, etc.: 'in that kind of fighting also,' as well as in the methods in which they were trained as legionaries. The interspersing of agile footmen among cavalry Caesar had learned from the Germans (I, 48, ll. 12–20); in the latter part of the Gallic War Caesar had employed German horsemen (N. to VII, 70, l. 5).

17. **apertiōribus locīs**: 'on more open ground,' where Pompey's much larger force of cavalry could be deployed to the best advantage. *145, c.*

18. **cum adesset ūsus**: 'when the necessity presented itself.' *220.*

22. **duōbus**: Roucillus and Egus. **suprā**: chapters 59–61.

Pompey remains stationary; finally, as Caesar breaks camp, he advances.

85. Pompeius, quī castra in colle habēbat, ad īnfimās rādīcēs montis aciem īnstruēbat, semper, ut vidēbātur, exspectāns, sī inīquīs locīs Caesar sē subiceret.

Caesar, nūllā ratiōne ad pugnam ēlicī posse Pompeium exīstimāns, hanc sibi commodissimam bellī ratiōnem iūdicāvit, utī castra ex eō locō movēret semperque esset in itineribus, haec spectāns, ut movendīs castrīs plūribusque adeundīs locīs commodiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur; simulque in itinere ut aliquam occāsiōnem dīmicandī nancīscerētur, et īnsolitum ad labōrem Pompeī exercitum cotīdiānīs itineribus dēfatīgāret.

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, signō iam profectiōnis datō, tabernāculīsque dētēnsīs, animadversum est, paulō ante, extrā cotīdiānam cōnsuētūdinem longius ā vāllō esse aciem Pompeī prōgressam, ut nōn inīquō locō posse dīmicārī vidērētur. Tum Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portīs,

---

85. 2. **montis**: 'elevation.' **aciem**: Map 20, POMPEY'S FIRST POSITION. **īnstruēbat**: on successive days. *175, d.*

3. **exspectāns**: 'waiting (to see) whether Caesar would move close up to the unfavorable ground.' *204,* (4).

4. **ēlicī**: 'be lured forth.' *57, b.*

5. **bellī ratiōnem**: 'plan of campaign.'

7. **in itineribus**: 'on the march.' **haec spectāns**: 'having this in view.' **movendīs castrīs**: 'by constantly moving his camp.' *230,* (4).

10. **īnsolitum ad labōrem**: 'not used to hard work.'

12. **Hīs,** etc.: Caesar probably reached his decision on August 8, and gave orders to break camp early the next morning.

13. **dētēnsīs**: 'struck.' **paulō,** etc.: the movement of Pompey's line, 'contrary to his daily practice,' was noticed 'a little before' the packing and loading of the tents was completed.

15. **ut,** etc.: 'so that it seemed possible to fight in a not disadvantageous position,' the advantages being more nearly equalized by Pom-

'Differendum est,' inquit, 'iter in praesentiā nōbīs, et dē proeliō cōgitandum, sīcut semper dēpoposcimus. Animō sīmus ad dīmicandum parātī; nōn facile occāsiōnem posteā reperiēmus;'

cōnfestimque expedītās cōpiās ēdūcit.

Pompey believed that his cavalry alone would win the battle.

86. Pompeius quoque, ut posteā cognitum est, suōrum omnium hortātū, statuerat proeliō dēcertāre. Namque etiam in cōnsiliō superiōribus diēbus dīxerat, *Prius quam concurrerent aciēs, fore, utī exercitus Caesaris pellerētur.* Id cum essent plērīque admīrātī,

'Sciō mē,' inquit, 'paenē incrēdibilem rem pollicērī; sed ratiōnem cōnsiliī meī accipite, quō fīrmiōre animō in proelium prōdeātis. Persuāsī equitibus nostrīs (idque mihi factūrōs cōnfirmāvērunt), ut, cum propius sit accessum,

---

pey's advance further into the plain from his camp on higher ground. *73, d,* and *239, g.*

18. **dēpoposcimus**: 'we have earnestly desired.' How lit.? **Animō**: 'in spirit.'

21. **expedītās**: 'in fighting trim'; lit. 'unencumbered,' having laid aside the burdens which they had started to carry on the march.

86. 2. **hortātū**: 'in consequence of the urging.' *135, a.*

3. **cōnsiliō**: a meeting of officers. **superiōribus diēbus**: from *in posterum diem* (l. 16) we are led to infer that the meeting of officers took place on August 8, the day before the battle.

4. **concurrerent**: present subjunctive in the direct form. *189, b.* **aciēs**: the two opposing lines, Caesar's and Pompey's. **fore**, etc.: *203,* (1).

6. **Sciō**, etc.: Fig. 147. *211, b,* (3).

7. **ratiōnem cōnsiliī meī**: 'the explanation of my plan.' **quō**, etc.: *193, b.*

8. **Persuāsī**: as if Pompey had only to 'persuade' the cavalry to carry out the movement — and the battle would be won!

9. **cum**, etc.: 'when the lines have drawn nearer.' How lit.? *73, d.*

dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere apertō aggrederentur, et, circumventā ā tergō aciē, prius perturbātum exercitum pellerent, quam ā nobīs tēlum in hostem iacerētur.

'Ita sine perīculō legiōnum, et paenē sine vulnere, bellum cōnficiēmus. Id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus.'

Simul dēnūntiāvit, ut essent animō parātī in posterum diem et, quoniam fieret dīmicandī potestās, ut saepe rogitāvissent, nē suam neu reliquōrum opīniōnem fallerent.

Figure 147. — Pompey.

Marble bust in the Jacobsen Museum, Copenhagen; from a photograph courteously furnished by the Director of the Museum.

10. **ab latere apertō**: N. to I, 25, l. 17. Pompey's huge force of cavalry was to outflank Caesar's line of infantry and attack it from the rear. The outflanking was planned for Caesar's right wing because his left would be protected by the river Enipeus (cf. Map 20).

11. **perturbātum**: 'throw his army into confusion and.' *228, a.*

14. **cum**, etc.: 'since we are so much stronger in cavalry.' Pompey's horsemen numbered 7000, Caesar's 1000. *184, a.*

16. **dēnūntiāvit**: 'he enjoined (them).'

18. **nē**, etc.: 'and not disappoint his own expectation or that of the others.' *157, d.* **reliquōrum**: senators and other civilians of standing who were with Pompey. **fallerent**: *199, a.*

Even Labienus, over-confident, had expressed his contempt for Caesar's troops.

87 Hunc Labiēnus excēpit et, cum Caesaris cōpiās dēspiceret, Pompeī cōnsilium summīs laudibus efferret,

'Nōlī,' inquit, 'exīstimāre, Pompeī, hunc esse exercitum, quī Galliam Germāniamque dēvīcerit. Omnibus interfuī proeliīs neque temere incognitam rem prōnūntiō.

'Perexigua pars illīus exercitūs superest; magna pars dēperiit (quod accidere tot proeliīs fuit necesse), multōs autumnī pestilentia in Italiā cōnsūmpsit, multī domum discessērunt, multī sunt relictī in continentī.

'An nōn audīstis, ex eīs, quī per causam valētūdinis re-

---

87. 1. **Labienus**: Labienus had gone over to the side of Pompey and had already shown himself an implacable enemy of Caesar. So long as he was under the direction of Caesar he was an efficient officer, displaying military talents of a high order. When, however, he came to act more independently he showed lack of insight, as in the present instance; and he failed to realize the expectations of his new friends. **excēpit**: 'followed,' in speaking. **cum . . . dēspiceret**: 'disparaging.' *185, c.*

3. **Nōlī**: *181, b.* **Pompeī**: *8, c.* B. 25, 1; A. 49, *c*; H. 83, 5.

4. **dēvīcerit**: 'subdued.' The statement is an exaggeration, to heighten the effect; Germany was far from being subdued. There is similar exaggeration in the following statement, that Labienus took part in all the battles in Gaul and Germany.

5. **neque**, etc.: 'and I am not recklessly asserting something that I do not know.' How lit.?

6. **Perexigua pars**: 'An exceedingly small remnant.'

7. **dēperiit**: 'has been destroyed.' **quod**: = *id quod. 160, c.*

8. **autumnī pestilentia**: 'the autumn sickness,' fevers, from which, in the autumn of 49 B.C., Caesar's army had suffered in Apulia and the region of Brundisium (C. III, 2).

9. **in continentī**: in Italy.

10. **An**: *179, a,* (2). B. 162, 4, *a*; A. 335, *b*; H. 380, 3. **audīstis**: *64, a,* (3).

mānsērunt, cohortēs esse Brundisiī factās? Hae cōpiae, quās vidētis, ex dīlēctibus hōrum annōrum in citeriōre Galliā sunt refectae, et plērīque sunt ex colōniīs Trānspadānīs. Ac tamen, quod fuit rōboris, duōbus proeliīs Dyrrachīnīs interiit.'

Haec cum dīxisset, iūrāvit, sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum, reliquōsque, ut idem facerent, hortātus est.

Hōc laudāns, Pompeius idem iūrāvit; nec vērō ex reliquīs fuit quisquam, quī iūrāre dubitāret.

Haec tum facta sunt in cōnsiliō, magnāque spē et laetitiā omnium discessum est; ac iam animō victōriam praecipiēbant, quod dē rē tantā et ā tam perītō imperātōre nihil frūstrā cōnfīrmārī vidēbātur.

---

11. **cohortēs**, etc.: 'that (whole) cohorts at Brundisium have been made up of those who were left behind on account of sickness.' *146*.

12. **hōrum annōrum**: i.e. of the last two years, since the outbreak of the Civil War. **citeriōre Galliā**: *284*.

13. **sunt refectae**: 'have been recruited.'

14. **quod fuit rōboris**: 'all the (real) strength there was' in Caesar's army; the small nucleus of veterans which, after the reductions mentioned, Labienus thought that Caesar had been able to bring across the Adriatic. *97, b*.

15. **interiit**: how badly mistaken Labienus was, he afterwards learned to his sorrow; the brunt of the fighting at Pharsalus was borne by Caesar's veterans.

16. **iūrāvit**, etc.: the oath was not unlike that taken by the Gauls under Vercingetorix (VII, 66, ll. 23–26; 67, l. 1); the result was in both cases the same. Similar, too, was the proclamation of General Ducrot, addressed to his soldiers in beleaguered Paris November 28, 1870, when he was trying to break through the Prussian "ring of iron" about the city. "For myself," the proclamation says, "I am fully resolved, I make my oath before you and before the entire nation, that I will re-enter Paris either dead or victorious; you may see me fall, but you will not see me retreat." Vercingetorix and his officers, Pompey, Labienus, Ducrot — all alike survived overwhelming defeat.

21. **omnium**: including, besides the officers, prominent civilians.

22. **tam perītō imperātōre**: Labienus. **nihil**, etc.: sc. *sibi*; 'they

Caesar notes the arrangement of Pompey's line of battle.

88. Caesar, cum Pompeī castrīs appropinquāsset, ad hunc modum aciem eius īnstrūctam animum advertit:

Erant in sinistrō cornū legiōnēs duae, trāditae ā Caesare initiō dissēnsiōnis ex senātūs cōnsultō; quārum ūna prīma, altera tertia appellābātur. In eō locō ipse erat Pompeius. Mediam aciem Scīpiō cum legiōnibus Syriacīs tenēbat. Ciliciēnsis legiō coniūncta cum cohortibus Hispānīs, quās

thought that confident assurances were not given without good grounds.' How lit.?

88. 2. **hunc**: *161, a.* **animum advertit**: *113, c.*

3. **trāditae**: 'which had been handed over (to him).' *227, a,* (4).

4. **initiō dissēnsiōnis**: 'at the beginning of the strife,' in 50 B.C. *147, b.* **ex senātūs cōnsultō**: 'in accordance with a decree of the Senate.' *258.* **prīma, tertia**: predicative. A legion transferred to another commander received a new number. Pompey's 'First Legion' had been *legio VI* in Caesar's army, and his 'Third Legion' had been Caesar's *legio XV*; both legions entered the service of Caesar in 53 B.C. *307, g.*

5. **eō locō**: Pompey's left wing, facing Caesar's right.

6. **legiōnibus Syriacīs**: two legions that had been serving in Syria, that Scipio had conducted to Pompey in Macedonia.

7. **Ciliciēnsis**: 'from Cilicia'; this was a veteran legion. **quās . . . docuimus**: the passage here referred to has

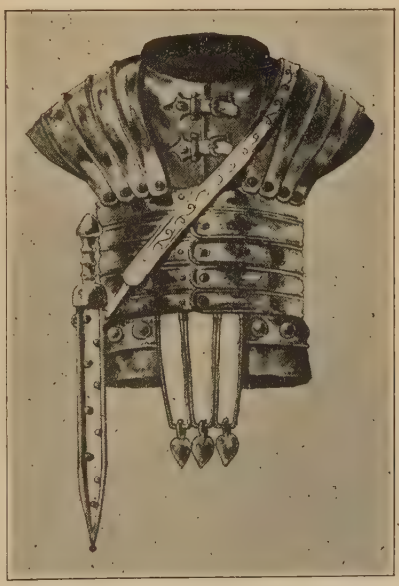


Figure 148. — Legionary's cuirass.

Pompey's soldiers had the same armor and weapons as Caesar's; there was no such disparity in equipment as there had been between Caesar's soldiers and the Gauls.

trāductās ab Āfrāniō docuimus, in dextrō cornū erant collocātae. Hās fīrmissimās sē habēre Pompeius exīstimābat. Reliquās inter aciem mediam cornuaque interiēcerat numerōque cohortēs CX explēverat. Haec erant numerō mīlia XLV; ēvocātōrum circiter duo, quae ex beneficiāriīs superiōrum exercituum ad eum convēnerant, quae tōtā aciē disperserat.

Reliquās cohortēs VII castrīs propinquīsque castellīs praesidiō disposuerat. Dextrum cornū eius rīvus quīdam impedītīs rīpīs mūniēbat; quam ob causam cūnctum equitātum, sagittāriōs funditōrēsque omnēs sinistrō cornū adiēcerat.

Caesar arranges his troops in order of battle.

89. Caesar, superius īnstitūtum servāns, X legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō collocāverat, tametsī erat

---

been lost. Afranius and Petreius commanded forces of Pompey in Spain, but were conquered by Caesar in 49 B.C.

8. **erant collocātae**: the subject grammatically is *legiō*, but in thought the 'Spanish cohorts' also are included, as if *legiō et Hispānae cohortēs* had been written. *173, b.*

9. **Hās**: the five legions mentioned, and the Spanish cohorts; 'that these were the strongest legions which he had.' How lit.?

10. **Reliquās**: sc. *legiōnēs* (Fig. 148).

11. **numerō**, etc.: Pompey had 110 cohorts, the equivalent of 11 legions, in his battle line (Map 20); these comprised 47,000 regular soldiers, besides cavalry and light-armed troops.

12. **ēvocātōrum**: 'veteran volunteers.' *316.* **duo**: sc. *mīlia erant.* **beneficiāriīs**: 'privileged soldiers'; see Vocab.

13. **superiōrum exercituum**: 'of (his) former armies,' as in the war with Mithridates.

15. **castellīs**: marked **A A A** on Map 20.

16. **rīvus quīdam**: probably the Enipeus; see Map 20. **impedītīs rīpīs**: 'with banks hard to cross.'

89. 1. **superius īnstitūtum**: 'his earlier arrangement' of having the tenth legion in the place of honor on the right wing, as in the battle with Ariovistus, eleven years before (Map 4). **X**: *decimam. 38, b.*

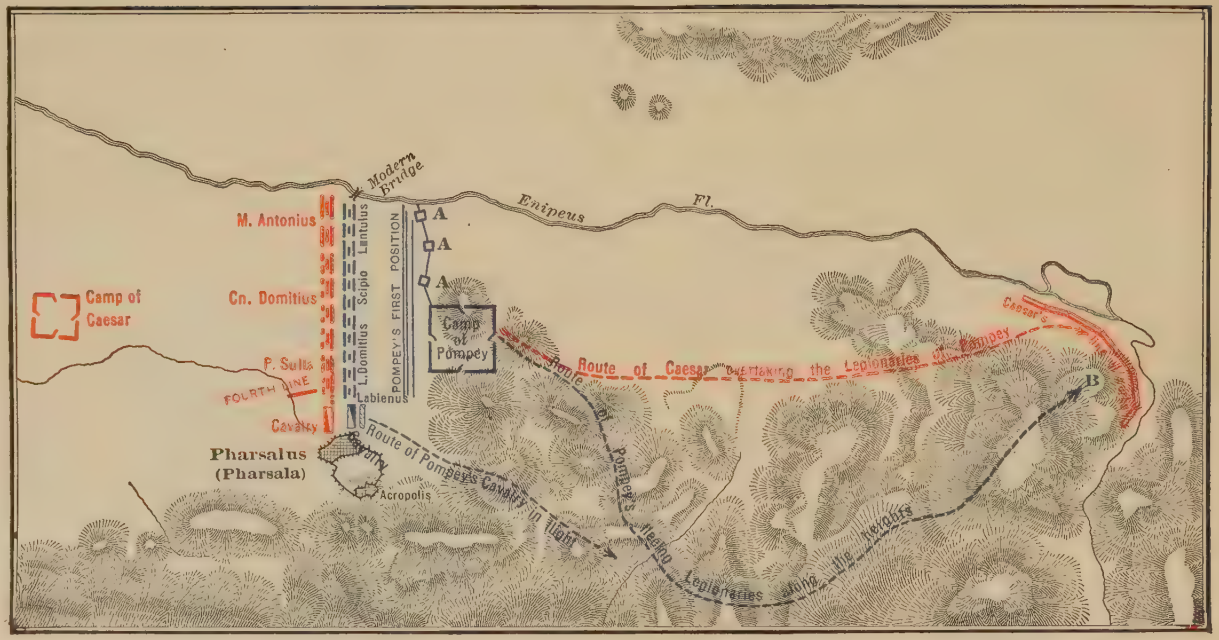
2. **erat**, etc.: 'it had been greatly reduced in strength.' *191, a.*

MAP 20

THE BATTLE OF PHARSALUS

C. III, 82–99

To face page 448



A. Redoubts, built by Pompey (chap. 88, l. 15). **B.** Height on which Pompey's soldiers halted (chap. 97, l. 12).

Dyrrachīnīs proeliīs vehementer attenuāta, et huic sīc adiūnxerat octāvam, ut paenē ūnam ex duābus efficeret, atque alteram alterī praesidiō esse iusserat.

Cohortēs in aciē LXXX cōnstitūtās habēbat, quae summa erat mīlium XXII; cohortēs VII castrīs praesidiō relīquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō P. Sullam, mediae aciēī Cn. Domitium praeposuerat. Ipse contrā Pompeium cōnstitit.

Simul hīs rēbus animadversīs, quās dēmōnstrāvimus, timēns, nē ā multitūdine equitum dextrum cornū circumvenīrētur, celeriter ex tertiā aciē singulās cohortēs dētrāxit

5. **alterī**: sc. *legiōnī*; 'that the one (legion) should support the other.' *23, a,* and *112, b.*

6. **LXXX**: *36.* **quae summa**: trans. as if *quārum summa* (cf. I, 29, l. 5).

7. **mīlium XXII**: Caesar's 80 cohorts, 8 legions (Map 20), containing a total of only 22,000 men, averaged less than 300 men to a cohort; Pompey's 110 cohorts averaged above 400 men each. *100, b,* and *307, b, c.*

8. **cornū**: dative. *20, b.* **Antōnium**: Mark Antony.

9. **contrā Pompeium**: Caesar was with the tenth legion on the right wing, facing Pompey's left wing, where Pompey was (chap. 88, l. 5).

11. **hīs rēbus**: Pompey's disposition of forces, especially the massing of cavalry and light infantry over against Caesar's right wing (chap. 88, ll. 17–18); Caesar saw at a glance that a flanking movement was intended, and with amazing quickness of decision devised a means to resist it.

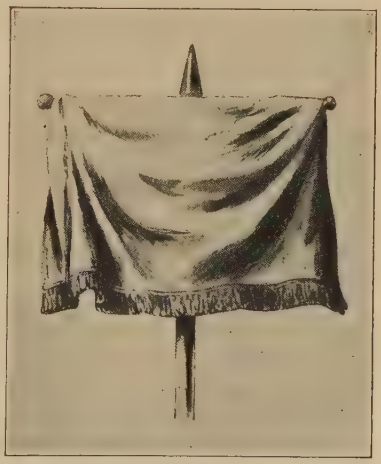


Figure 149. — Banner, vēxillum.

13. **tertiā aciē**: *337.*

atque ex hīs quārtam īnstituit equitātuīque opposuit, et, quid fierī vellet, ostendit, monuitque eius diēī victōriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōnstāre.

Simul tertiae aciēī imperāvit, nē iniussū suō concurreret; sē, cum id fierī vellet, vēxillō signum datūrum.

Caesar briefly addresses his soldiers and gives the signal to attack.

90. Exercitum cum mīlitārī mōre ad pugnam cohortārētur suaque in eum perpetuī temporis officia praedicāret, in prīmīs commemorāvit:

Testibus sē mīlitibus ūtī posse, quantō studiō pācem petīsset; quae per Vatīnium in colloquiīs, quae per A. Clōdium cum Scīpiōne ēgisset, quibus modīs ad Ōricum cum Libōne dē mittendīs lēgātīs contendisset. Neque sē umquam abūtī mīlitum sanguine neque rem pūblicam alterutrō exercitū prīvāre voluisse.

---

14. **quārtam** [aciem]: this line was made up of eight cohorts, less than 3000 men; see Map 20, FOURTH LINE.

18. **vēxillō**: used generally to give the signal 'to arms' (II, 20, l. 2, and Fig. 149); in this instance, to order a division into action. *324, b,* (3).

90. 1. **mīlitārī mōre**: 'in accordance with military custom'; N. to I, 25, l. 3. *136, c.*

2. **sua**, etc.: 'was setting forth his kindnesses to it, an unbroken series' (lit. 'of unbroken time'). *100, a.*

4. **Testibus**, etc.: 'that he could call upon his soldiers to bear witness.' How lit.? *131, f,* and *212, c,* (2).

5. **per Vatīnium**, etc.: the efforts made by Caesar to arrange terms of peace through the agency of Publius Vatininus and Aulus Clodius are narrated in chapters 19 and 57 of Book III.

7. **dē**, etc.: 'had endeavored to arrange the sending of envoys' for a peace conference; cf. C. III, 16–17. *204,* (3).

8. **abūtī**: 'waste.' *131, c.* **alterutrō**: *51.*

9. **exercitū**: *127, a.* B. 214; H. 462. **prīvāre**: 'deprive.'

Hāc habitā ōrātiōne, exposcentibus mīlitibus et studiō pugnae ārdentibus, tubā signum dedit.

With heroic words, Crastinus leads the charge.

91. Erat Crāstinus, ēvocātus, in exercitū Caesaris, quī superiōre annō apud eum prīmum pīlum in legiōne X dūxerat, vir singulārī virtūte. Hīc, signō datō,

'Sequiminī mē,' inquit, 'manipulārēs meī quī fuistis, et vestrō imperātōrī, quam cōnsuēvistis, operam date. Ūnum hōc proelium superest; quō cōnfectō, et ille suam dignitātem, et nōs nostram lībertātem recuperābimus.'

Simul respiciēns Caesarem,

'Faciam,' inquit, 'hodiē, imperātor, ut aut vīvō mihi aut mortuō grātiās agās.'

Haec cum dīxisset, prīmus ex dextrō cornū prōcucurrit, atque eum ēlēctī mīlitēs circiter CXX voluntāriī sunt prōsecūtī.

---

10. **ōrātiōne**: the words must have been repeated several times, probably by Caesar himself, riding along the line; no single utterance could have been heard over so extended a front. **exposcentibus**: sc. *signum*. Caesar's watchword in this battle was VENUS VICTRIX, 'Venus Bringer of Victory.' He vowed a temple to this goddess if he should be victorious, and afterwards fulfilled his vow by erecting a temple to Venus in Rome. *244*.

11. **ārdentibus**: a strong word; 'burning.' **tubā**, etc.: *326*, *a*, (1), and *b*. The date was August 9, unreformed calendar. *261*, and *241*, *c*.

91. 1. **Crāstinus**: *76*, *b*. **ēvocātus**: *316*.

2. **pīlum**: from *pīlus*; see Vocab., and *315*, *b*. **X**: *38*, *b*.

4. **manipulārēs**, etc.: 'who were the men of my maniple' (when I was first centurion).

6. **quō cōnfectō**: 'when this is over.' How lit.? **dignitātem**: 'his position' in the state; sc. *recuperābit*.

7. **nostram lībertātem**: jeopardized by Pompey.

9. **Faciam**, etc.: 'General, you will to-day have occasion to thank me, living or dead.' How lit.? *203*, (3).

12. **voluntāriī**: 'who were serving as volunteers'; like Crastinus, they were 'veterans,' *ēvocātī*.

Caesar's veterans halt to take breath, hurl themselves on the foe.

92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spatiī, ut satis esset ad concursum utrīusque exercitūs. Sed Pompeius suīs praedīxerat, ut Caesaris impetum exciperent, nēve sē locō movērent aciemque eius distrahī paterentur; idque admonitū C. Triāriī fēcisse dīcēbātur, ut prīmus excursus vīsque mīlitum īnfringerētur aciēsque distenderētur, atque in suīs ōrdinibus dispositī dispersōs adorīrentur; leviusque cāsūra pīla spērābat, in locō retentīs mīlitibus, quam sī ipsī immissīs tēlīs occurrissent; simul fore, ut, duplicātō cursū, Caesaris mīlitēs exanimārentur et lassitūdine cōnficerentur.

Quod nōbīs quidem nūllā ratiōne factum ā Pompeiō vidētur, propterea quod est quaedam animī incitātiō atque

---

92. 1. **tantum spatiī**: '(only) so much space'; probably about 100 *passūs*, somewhat less than 500 English feet. *97, b*, and *243, b*. **ut**, etc.: 'as to enable each army to charge.' How lit.? *197, b*.

3. **praedīxerat**, etc.: 'had given orders in advance' (i.e. not to countercharge when they saw the enemy advancing but) 'to await Caesar's attack and not to move from their position.' *199, d*.

4. **aciem**, etc.: 'his line to become disordered,' as his soldiers should rush forward in the charge.

5. **prīmus**, etc.: 'that the initial vigor of attack of (Caesar's) soldiers might be lessened.' How lit.?

7. **dispositī dispersōs**: sc. *suī* (i.e. *Pompeiānī mīlitēs*) *eōs* (*Caesaris mīlitēs*); 'that his own men with ranks in perfect order might fall upon them when in confusion.' How lit.? **levius cāsūra** [esse]: 'would fall with less effect,' than if his soldiers should charge against them as they were hurled.

8. **in**, etc.: 'if his soldiers should be held in position.' *144, b*, (4).

9. **duplicātō cursū**: 'having twice as far to run' in the charge, covering the whole distance between the two armies instead of half the distance.

10. **exanimārentur**, etc.: 'would get out of breath and be weakened by fatigue.'

11. **Quod**: 'Now this.' *167*. **nūllā ratiōne**: 'quite without reason.' How lit.? *135, a*. **factum**: sc. *esse*.

12. **est**, etc.: 'all men have by nature a kind of latent capacity for being spurred to action, and this is kindled by the heat of battle.' How lit.?

alacritās nātūrāliter innāta omnibus, quae studiō pugnae incenditur. Hanc nōn reprimere, sed augēre imperātōrēs dēbent; neque frūstrā antīquitus īnstitūtum est, ut signa undique concinerent clāmōremque ūniversī tollerent; quibus rēbus et hostēs terrērī et suōs incitārī exīstimāvērunt.

93. Sed nostrī mīlitēs, signō datō, cum īnfestīs pīlīs prōcucurrissent atque animum advertissent nōn concurrī ā Pompeiānīs, ūsū perītī ac superiōribus pugnīs exercitātī, suā sponte cursum repressērunt et ad medium ferē spatium cōnstitērunt, nē cōnsūmptīs vīribus appropinquārent; parvōque intermissō temporis spatiō, ac rūrsus renovātō cursū, pīla mīsērunt celeriterque, ut erat praeceptum ā Caesare, gladiōs strīnxērunt.

Neque vērō Pompeiānī huic reī dēfuērunt. Nam et tēla missa excēpērunt et impetum legiōnum tulērunt et ōrdinēs cōnservārunt, pīlīsque missīs, ad gladiōs rediērunt.

---

15. **signa**: 'signals' with the trumpet. *326, a, b.*

16. **undique concinerent**: 'should in all parts (of the line) sound at the same time.' **ūniversī**: '(the soldiers) in a body.'

17. **quibus rēbus**: 'and by these means.' **exīstimāvērunt**: as subject supply *antīquī*, 'men of the olden time.'

93. 1. **cum**: *185, c.* **īnfestīs pīlīs**: 'with pikes raised,' ready for hurling. How lit.?

2. **nōn concurrī**, etc.: 'that no advance was made by the soldiers of Pompey,' who had been ordered to stand still and let Caesar's soldiers come on.

4. **ad medium ferē spatium**: 'about half-way between' the two armies. These experienced soldiers covered nearly the distance of our 100-yard dash, stopped of their own accord to take breath, ran again a like distance and hurled their pikes, then 'drew their swords.' Pompey had again miscalculated, in assuming that Caesar's men would allow themselves to be exhausted by a charge of twice the ordinary length.

9. **Neque**, etc.: 'And in truth the soldiers of Pompey did not fail to meet this movement.' How lit.? **tēla**: the pikes hurled by Caesar's men.

10. **excēpērunt**: with their shields. **ōrdinēs**: 'ranks.'

Caesar's cavalry is defeated; his fourth line routs Pompey's cavalry and attacks Pompey's left wing in the rear.

Eōdem tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompeī cornū, ut erat imperātum, ūniversī prōcucurrērunt, omnisque multitūdō sagittāriōrum sē prōfūdit. Quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn tulit, sed paulātim locō mōtus cessit; equitēsque Pompeī hōc ācrius īnstāre et sē turmātim explicāre aciemque nostram ab latere apertō circumīre coepērunt.

Quod ubi Caesar animum advertit, quārtae aciēī, quam īnstituerat, cohortibus dedit signum.

Illae celeriter prōcucurrērunt īnfestīsque signīs tantā vī in Pompeī equitēs impetum fēcērunt, ut eōrum nēmō cōnsisteret, omnēsque conversī nōn sōlum locō excēderent, sed prōtinus incitātī fugā montēs altissimōs peterent. Quibus summōtīs, omnēs sagittāriī funditōrēsque dēstitūtī, inermēs, sine praesidiō, interfectī sunt.

---

12. **Equitēs**, etc.: see chap. 86, ll. 8–15; chap. 88, ll. 17–18. Pompey's cavalry was commanded by Labienus, who soon forgot his oath (chap. 87, ll. 16–17). See Map 20.

14. **sē prōfūdit**: 'rushed forward.'

16. **hōc**: *135, a.* **sē turmātim explicāre**: 'to deploy by squadrons.' The cavalry had charged in close formation; it now deployed by squadrons in order the more easily to execute the flanking movement ordered by Pompey. *309, c.*

18. **aciēī**: dependent on *cohortibus*; see chap. 89, ll. 14–16, and Map 20, FOURTH LINE.

20. **īnfestīs signīs**: *325.* Cavalry are at a disadvantage in withstanding a charge of infantry.

22. **-que**: 'but.' *234, b.* **conversī**: 'wheeling about.' How lit.?

23. **incitātī fugā**: 'scurrying in flight.' How lit.? Their probable course is shown on Map 20, ROUTE OF POMPEY'S CAVALRY IN FLIGHT.

24. **dēstitūtī**: by the flight of the cavalry. **inermēs**: without defensive weapons.

25. **sine praesidiō**: in the open plain, without a rampart to shield them.

Eōdem impetū cohortēs sinistrum cornū, pugnantibus etiam tum ac resistentibus in aciē Pompeiānīs, circumiērunt eōsque ā tergō sunt adortae.

Caesar's third line enters the action; Pompey's infantry gives way, and Pompey flees to his camp.

94. Eōdem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae quiēta fuerat et sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prōcurrere iussit. Ita cum recentēs atque integrī dēfessīs successissent, aliī autem ā tergō adorīrentur, sustinēre Pompeiānī nōn potuērunt atque ūniversī terga vertērunt.

Sed Pompeius, ut equitātum suum pulsum vīdit atque eam partem, cui maximē cōnfīdēbat, perterritam animum advertit, aliīs diffīsus aciē excessit prōtinusque sē in castra equō contulit et eīs centuriōnibus, quōs in statiōne ad praetōriam portam posuerat, clārē, ut mīlitēs exaudīrent,

---

26. **Eōdem impetū**: 'Continuing their movement.' How lit.? **cohortēs**: of the fourth line. **sinistrum cornū**: of Pompey.

27. **Pompeiānīs**: Pompey's legionaries; his cavalry and light-armed troops were already disposed of.

28. **ā tergō**: by forming a fourth line, notwithstanding his inferior numbers, Caesar was enabled not only to defeat Pompey's plan to outflank him but to turn the tables and outflank Pompey.

94. 1. **tertiam aciem**: the third line had been ordered to await Caesar's signal with the red banner (chap. 89, ll. 17–18).

3. **recentēs atque integrī**: the soldiers of Caesar's third line. **dēfessīs**: the soldiers of the first and second lines, fighting against superior numbers, until now without reënforcements. *337, b.* **aliī**: Caesar's fourth line.

6. **ut**: *188, a.* **atque**: 'and (thus).' **eam partem**: the cavalry.

8. **aliīs diffīsus**: 'losing confidence in his other troops.' *62*, and *105.* **aciē**: *127, a.* **sē equō contulit**: 'rode on horseback.' How lit.? *131, a.*

10. **praetōriam portam**: here the west gate of the camp (Map 20). *334, a.* **clārē**: 'in a loud voice.'

'Tuēminī,' inquit, 'castra et dēfendite dīligenter, sī quid dūrius acciderit. Ego reliquās portās circumeō et castrōrum praesidia cōnfīrmō.'

Haec cum dīxisset, sē in praetōrium contulit, summae reī diffīdēns et tamen ēventum exspectāns.

Caesar takes Pompey's camp, finding many evidences of luxury.

95. Caesar, Pompeiānīs ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsīs, nūllum spatium perterritīs darī oportēre exīstimāns, mīlitēs cohortātus est, ut beneficiō fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsī magnō aestū fatīgātī — nam ad merīdiem rēs erat perducta — tamen, ad omnem labōrem animō parātī, imperiō pāruērunt.

Castra ā cohortibus, quae ibi praesidiō erant relīctae, industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thrācibus barbarīsque auxiliīs. Nam quī ex aciē refūgerant mīlitēs, et animō perterritī et lassitūdine cōnfectī, dīmissīs plērīque

---

11. **Tuēminī**: *61, a,* (2). **sī**, etc.: 'if any unusual difficulty presents itself.' How lit.? *206.*

13. **cōnfīrmō**: 'encourage'; vivid use of the present tense.

14. **praetōrium**: 'general's quarters.' *334, b.* **summae**: dative, with *reī*, genitive, depending on it; 'distrustful of the final issue.' How lit.?

95. 1. **vāllum**: of Pompey's camp; his men had been forced back to the elevation on which the camp was, and up the slope (Map 20).

3. **ut**, etc.: 'to take advantage of fortune's favor.'

4. **magnō aestū**: in the plain of Pharsalus the heat in summer is intense.

5. **rēs**: 'the struggle.' **tamen**, etc.: notwithstanding the physical exhaustion of Caesar's soldiers, their grit did not fail them.

7. **cohortibus**: 7 in number, for the camp and redoubts (chap. 88, ll. 15–16).

9. **barbarīsque auxiliīs**: 'and (other) barbarian auxiliary troops.' **Nam**: '(The defense was left to these) for.'

10. **dīmissīs**, etc.: 'in most cases throwing away.' How lit.?

armīs signīsque mīlitāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant.

Neque vērō diūtius, quī in vāllō cōnstiterant, multitūdinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed, cōnfectī vulneribus, locum relīquērunt, prōtinusque omnēs, ducibus ūsī centurionibus tribūnīsque mīlitum, in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfūgērunt.

96. In castrīs Pompeī vidēre licuit trichilās strūctās, magnum argentī pondus expositum, recentibus caespitibus tabernācula cōnstrāta, L. etiam Lentulī et nōn nūllōrum tabernācula prōtēcta hederā, multaque praetereā, quae nimiam lūxuriam et victōriae fīdūciam dēsignārent; ut facile exīstimārī posset, nihil eōs dē ēventū eius diēī timuisse, quī nōn necessāriās conquīrerent voluptātēs. At hī

---

13. **quī**: as antecedent sc. *eī*, subject of *potuērunt*.

15. **ducibus**, etc.: 'having as their leaders' (in flight) 'the centurions and military tribunes,' who ought to have rallied the demoralized troops and continued the battle; bitter sarcasm, veiled under a form of expression that on the surface is complimentary. *131, f.*

16. **montēs**, etc.: see Map 20, ROUTE OF POMPEY'S FLEEING LEGIONARIES.

96. 1. **licuit**: *73, b.* **trichilās strūctās**: 'arbors that had been built,' covered with branches having their leaves on, as a protection against the sun. These did not take the place of the tents, but were used for dining; in summer well-to-do Romans made much use of arbors shaded with branches or vines.

2. **argentī**: 'silver plate.' **expositum**: 'set out' on tables, in readiness for dinner. **recentibus**, etc.: 'tents carpeted with fresh turf.'

3. **L. Lentulī**: mentioned by name because of his prominence; he had been consul the previous year.

4. **prōtēcta hederā**: 'decked with ivy,' trailed along the sides, to keep out the heat.

5. **dēsignārent**: 'evidenced.' The unsoldierly camp life of Pompey's aristocratic civilian contingent is known from other sources. *194, a.*

7. **nōn necessāriās voluptātēs**: 'needless indulgences.' *239, g.* **At**: *236, a.*

miserrimō ac patientissimō exercituī Caesaris lūxuriam obiciēbant, cui semper omnia ad necessārium ūsum dēfuissent!

Pompey flees from the camp, reaches the sea, takes ship.

Pompeius, cum iam intrā vāllum nostrī versārentur, equum nactus, dētrāctīs īnsignibus imperātōriīs, decumānā portā sē ex castrīs ēiēcit prōtinusque equō citātō Lārīsam contendit.

Neque ibi cōnstitit, sed eādem celeritāte, paucōs suōs ex fugā nactus, nocturnō itinere nōn intermissō, comitātū equitum xxx ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmentāriam cōnscendit, saepe, ut dīcēbātur, querēns tantum sē opīniōnem fefellisse, ut, ā quō genere hominum victōriam spērāsset, ab eō initiō fugae factō, paenē prōditus vidērētur.

---

8. **miserrimō**: *28, a.* **patientissimō**: 'most long-suffering.' *27, a.*

9. **cui**, etc.: 'although it had lacked everything.' *194, d.*

12. **equum nactus**: the language implies that Pompey did not wait to get his own mount but jumped on the first horse he could find. *61, a,* (3), and *226, c.* **īnsignibus imperātōriīs**: the distinguishing marks of his rank as commander, particularly his scarlet mantle (*palūdāmentum*), which he replaced by a traveler's cloak. *321.* **decumānā portā**: in this case the east gate (Map 20). *334, a,* and *134, a.*

13. **equō citātō**: 'urging his horse forward.' *144, b,* (7). **Lārīsam**: see Map 19. The distance from Pharsalus to Larisa is about 25 English miles.

15. **paucōs suōs**: among Pompey's companions in flight was Lucius Lentulus (l. 3) who likewise met death in Egypt (C. III. 104).

17. **mare**: at the mouth of the Peneus, about 25 miles northeast of Larisa; in the latter part of his flight Pompey passed through the famous Vale of Tempe, which runs back from the sea between Mt. Olympus and Mt. Ossa (Map 19); see Fig. 209, in Vocab.

18. **sē**, etc.: 'that he had been so grievously disappointed in his expectations'; *sē* is object of *fefellisse*. How lit.?

19. **ā quō**, etc.: 'that it almost seemed as if he had been betrayed,

Caesar completes the victory, taking many captives.

97. Caesar, castrīs potītus, ā mīlitibus contendit, nē, in praedā occupātī, reliquī negōtiī gerendī facultātem dīmitterent. Quā rē impetrātā, montem opere circummūnīre īnstituit.

Pompeiānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffīsī eī locō, relictō monte, ūniversī iugīs eīs Lārīsam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā, Caesar cōpiās suās dīvīsit partemque legiōnum in castrīs Pompeī remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remīsit, IIII sēcum legiōnēs dūxit commodiōreque itinere Pompeiānīs occurrere coepit, et, prōgressus mīlia passuum VI, aciem īnstrūxit.

Quā rē animadversā, Pompeiānī in quōdam monte cōnstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat.

---

since the rout was started by that division of men (the cavalry), from whom.' How lit.? *148, e*; *172, d*, and *165, c*.

97. 1. **castrīs**: *131, c.* **mīlitibus**: the soldiers immediately on capturing the camp began to plunder it. **contendit**: 'urged and demanded,' not *imperat*; see N. to chap. 98, l. 7. *199, a.*

2. **reliquī**, etc.: 'the opportunity to finish up the business in hand.' How lit.?

3. **Quā rē impetrātā**: 'Having carried his point.' That under the circumstances Caesar's soldiers left off looting in order to resume fighting, is evidence not only of his power to maintain discipline but also of their loyalty to him. **montem**: 'elevation'; see chap. 95, l. 16. **opere**: the usual trench and rampart.

6. **iugīs eīs**: 'along the ridges,' connecting the heights. *134, b*, and *160, d*. **Lārīsam versus**: 'in the direction of Larisa.' Their course was first toward the northeast, to find a place where they could cross the Enipeus; Map 20, ROUTE OF POMPEY'S FLEEING LEGIONARIES.

10. **commodiōre itinere**: Caesar passed over the height on which was Pompey's camp and followed the more level ground along the river, being thus enabled to head off the fleeing legionaries who were traversing the high ground; Map 20, ROUTE OF CAESAR OVERTAKING THE LEGIONARIES OF POMPEY.

12. **quōdam monte**: marked **B** on Map 20.

13. **flūmen**: Enipeus.

Caesar, mīlitēs cohortātus, etsī tōtius diēī continentī labōre erant cōnfectī noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnītiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū aquārī Pompeiānī possent. Quō perfectō opere, illī dē dēditiōne, missīs lēgātīs, agere coepērunt. Paucī ōrdinis senātōriī, quī sē cum hīs coniūnxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petīvērunt.

98. Caesar prīmā lūce omnēs eōs, quī in monte cōnsēderant, ex superiōribus locīs in plānitiem dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne fēcērunt, passīsque palmīs, prōiectī ad terram, flentēs, ab eō salūtem petīvērunt, cōnsōlātus cōnsurgere iussit, et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōnservāvit; mīlitibusque suīs commendāvit, nē quī eōrum violārētur, neu quid suī dēsīderārent. Hāc adhibitā dīligentiā, ex castrīs sibi legiōnēs aliās occurrere et eās,

---

15. **mūnītiōne**: Map 20, CAESAR'S LINE OF WORKS.

16. **sēclūsit**: 'shut off.' *79, d.* **aquārī**: 'to obtain water.'

18. **ōrdinis senātōriī**: 'of senatorial rank.' These men, having bitterly opposed Caesar, feared his vengeance even more than the soldiers did.

98. 3. **Quod**: trans. as if *et id.* **recūsātiōne**: 'protest.'

4. **passīs palmīs**: 'with their palms outstretched,' in supplication. **prōiectī ad terram**: 'casting themselves upon the ground.' *174.* **ab eō**: *116, b.*

5. **cōnsurgere iussit**: sc. *eōs*, 'he bade them rise.'

6. **quō**, etc.: 'in order to allay their fears.' How lit.? *143, b.*

7. **nē**: '(urging) that.' **quī**: *49, a*, and *168.* **commendāvit** [eōs]: not *imperāvit*; in a time of so great excitement and strain Caesar could more easily control his men through a request than by a command.

8. **violārētur**: 'be harmed.' **neu**: *199, d.* **suī**: genitive, singular, neuter; 'anything that belonged to them,' lit. 'anything of their own.' *97, b*, and *154, a.* **Hāc adhibitā dīligentiā**: 'Having given this matter careful attention.' How lit.?

9. **sibi occurrere**: with *iussit*, 'he ordered other legions to join him.'

quās sēcum dūxerat, in vicem requiēscere atque in castra reverti iussit, eōdemque diē Lārīsam pervēnit.

The losses, on both sides. Death of the brave Crastinus.

99. In eō proeliō nōn amplius CC mīlitēs dēsīderāvit, sed centuriōnēs, fortēs virōs, circiter XXX āmīsit.

Interfectus est etiam, fortissimē pugnāns, Crāstinus, cuius mentiōnem suprā fēcimus, gladiō in ōs adversum coniectō. Neque id fuit falsum, quod ille, in pugnam proficīscēns, dīxerat. Sīc enim Caesar exīstimābat, eō proeliō excellentissimam virtūtem Crāstinī fuisse, optimēque eum dē sē meritum iūdicābat.

---

10. **quās**, etc.: these legions had been fighting, marching, fortifying, or on guard duty, continuously for twenty-four hours. **requiēscere**: 'to take rest.'

11. **Lārīsam pervēnit**: a march of 25 English miles, on the day after the battle, in very hot weather — no mean accomplishment. *329.*

99. 1. **CC**: *ducentōs. 129, b.* B. 217, 3; A. 407, *c*; H. 471, 4.

2. **centuriōnēs**, etc.: cf. N. to VII, 51, l. 1.

3. **suprā**: chap. 91. **gladiō**, etc.: 'having received a sword-thrust directly in the face.'

Figure 150. — Symbols of Victory.

Cuirass, two spears, and a banner, suggesting victory over a civilized nation. From a relief.

6. **excellentissimam**, etc.: 'that the valor of Crastinus was the most extraordinary' of all. "The army bore witness," says Appian, "how, like one inspired, running to each rank he performed prodigies of valor. And when, after search, he was found among the dead, Caesar put military decorations upon him, and buried them with him, and built for him a separate tomb near the common burial-place where many were interred."

Ex Pompeiānō exercitū circiter mīlia XV cecidisse vidē-
bantur, sed in dēditiōnem vēnērunt amplius mīlia XXIIII (namque etiam cohortēs, quae praesidiō in castellīs fuerant, sēsē Sullae dēdidērunt), multī praetereā in fīnitimās cīvitātēs refūgērunt; signaque mīlitāria ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt relāta CLXXX et aquilae VIIII.

L. Domitius ex castrīs in montem refugiēns, cum vīrēs eum lassitūdine dēfēcissent, ab equitibus est interfectus.

---

9. **vidēbantur**, etc.: the expression suggests a rough estimate; the number of prisoners is more definitely stated, since they were accurately counted.

14. **aquilae VIIII**: the eagles of all but two of Pompey's 11 legions fell into Caesar's hands, a sweeping victory (Fig. 150). The most graphic description of the battle of Pharsalus in English literature is in chap. 21 of *A Friend of Caesar*, by W. S. Davis.

15. **L. Domītius**: N. to chap. 3, l. 2.

Historical Significance of the Battle of Pharsalus. "In none (of the world's decisive battles)," says Warde Fowler, "have the contending forces in a world-wide revolution been so exactly focussed in two armies on a single battle-field. On one side the disunion, selfishness, and pride of the last survivors of an ancient oligarchy, speculating before the event on the wealth or office that victory was to bring them; on the other, the absolute command of a single man, whose clear mental vision was entirely occupied with the facts and issues that lay before him that day.

"The one host was composed in great part of a motley crowd from Greece and the East, representing that spurious Hellenic civilisation that for a century had sapped the vigour of Roman life; the other was chiefly drawn from the Gallic populations of Italy and the West, fresh, vigorous, intelligent, and united in devotion and loyalty to a leader whom not even defeat could dishearten.

"With Pompeius was the spirit of the past, and his failure did but answer to the failure of a decaying world; with Caesar was the spirit of the future, and his victory marks the moment when humanity could once more start hopefully upon a new line of progress."

SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT READING

1. The Pig's Last Will and Testament

Testāmentum Porcellī.

Incipit testāmentum porcellī.

M. Grunnius Corocotta, porcellus, testāmentum fēcit. Quoniam manū meā scrībere nōn potuī, scrībendum dictāvī.

Magīrus, cocus, dīxit:

'Venī hūc, ēversor domī, solivertiātor, fugitīve porcelle, et hodiē tibi dirimō vītam.'

Corocotta, porcellus, dīxit:

'Sī qua fēcī, sī qua peccāvī, sī qua vāscella pedibus meīs

---

1. 1. **Incipit**: '(Here) begins.' **testāmentum**: in our legal phrase, 'the last will and testament.' The Pig's Will, the author of which is unknown, afforded amusement to many generations of Roman schoolboys. **porcellus, -ī**, m., 'pig.' *75, a.*

2. **M. Grunnius Corocotta**, gen. **Mārcī Grunniī Corocottae**, m., 'Marcus Grunter Bristleback.' All the names of the Will are made up, and their meaning, although obvious to a Roman, can be only approximated in translation.

3. **scrībendum**: gerundive, 'for writing'; sc. *testāmentum.* **dictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, [frequentative of **dīcō**, *78, a*], 1, 'dictate.'

4. **Magīrus, -ī**, [*μάγειρος*], m., 'Chef'; Greek word meaning 'cook,' here used as a name. **cocus, -ī**, m., 'cook.'

5. **ēversor, -ōris**, [**ēvertō**], m., 'overturner.' **solivertiātor, -ōris**, [**solum**, 'ground,' **vertō**], m., a made-up word, 'rooter.'

6. **hodiē**: adv., 'to-day.' **dirimō**: colloquial present instead of the future.

8. **qua**: 'anything,' lit. 'anythings.' **peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, 1, 'transgress,' 'do mischief.' **qua peccāvī**: 'have done any mischief.' **qua**: 'any.' **vāscellum, -ī**, n., 'dish.'

cōnfrēgī, rogō, domine coce, vītam petō, concēde rogantī.'

Magīrus, cocus, dīxit:

'Trānsī, puer, affer mihi dē cocīnā cultrum, ut hunc porcellum faciam cruentum.'

Porcellus comprehenditur ā famulīs, ductus, sub diē XVI kal. lucernīnās, ubi abundant cȳmae, Clībanātō et Piperātō cōnsulibus. Et ut vīdit, sē moritūrum esse, hōrae spatium petiit, et cocum rogāvit, ut testāmentum facere posset.

Clāmāvit ad sē suōs parentēs, ut dē cibāriīs suīs aliquid dīmitteret eīs. Quī ait:

'Patrī meō, Verrīnō Lārdīnō, dō, lēgō darī glandis modiōs XXX; et mātrī meae, Veturīnae Scrōfae, dō, lēgō darī Lacōnicae siligīnis modiōs XL; et sorōrī meae Quirīnae, in

---

9. **cōnfringō, -ere, cōnfrēgī, -frāctus**, 3, 'smash,' 'break to pieces.' **dominus, -ī**, m., 'master.' **rogantī**: sc. *mihi*.

11. **puer**: the cook's helper. **cocīna, -ae**, f., 'kitchen.' **culter, -trī** (7, *c*), m., 'butcher-knife.'

12. **cruentus, -a, -um**, adj., 'bloody'; here, 'all bloody.'

13. **famulus, -ī**, m., 'servant.'

14. **lucernīnus, -a, -um**, adj., a made-up word, 'of candle-light'; the expression 'the kalends of candle-light' humorously suggests the beginning of the long winter nights — the season when spring pigs (and turkeys) are in demand. **cȳma, -ae**, f., 'young cabbage.' **Clībanātus, -ī**, [**clībanus**, 'baking-pan'], m., 'Roastingpan.' **Piperātus, -ī**, [**piper**, 'pepper'], m., 'Blackpepper.'

18. **clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, 1, 'call.'

19. **dīmitteret eīs**: 'bestow upon them.' **Quī ait**: 'And he said.'

20. **Verrīnus Lārdīnus, -ī -ī**, [**verrēs**, 'boar,' **lārdum**, 'bacon'], m., 'Boar Bacon.' **lēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, 1, 'appoint.' **lēgō darī**: 'I bequeath,' lit. 'I appoint to be given'; legal formality and redundancy of expression. **glandis**: singular where we use the plural; 'of acorns.' **modius, -ī**, m., 'peck.'

21. **Veturīna Scrōfa, -ae -ae**, 'Dame Hogg.'

22. **Lacōnicus, -a, -um**, adj. 'Lacedaemonian.' **silīgō, -inis**, f. 'white wheat.' **Quirīna, -ae**, f., 'Squealy.' **in**: 'at.'

23. **vōtum**: 'wedding.' **hordeum, -ī**, n., 'barley.'

cuius vōtum interesse nōn potuī, dō, lēgō darī hordeī modiōs XXX.

'Et dē meīs vīsceribus dabō, dōnābō, sūtōribus saetās, rīxōribus capitīnās, surdīs auriculās, causidicīs et verbōsīs linguam, isiciāriīs femora, cursōribus et vēnātōribus tālōs, latrōnibus ungulās.

'Et nec nōminandō cocō lēgātō dīmittō popiam et pīstillum, quae mēcum attuleram, dē Tebeste ūsque ad Tergeste; liget sibi collum dē reste.

'Et volō mihi fierī monumentum, aureīs litterīs scrīptum,

M · GRUNNIUS · COROCOTTA · PORCELLUS
VĪXIT · ANNĪS · DCCCC XC VIIII · ET · S
QUOD · SĪ · SĒMISSEM · VIXISSET
MILLE · ANNŌS · IMPLĒSSET

---

25. **vīscus, -eris,** (*13, e*), n., 'flesh.' **sūtor, -ōris,** m., 'shoemaker.' **saeta, -ae,** f., 'bristle,' used by cobblers in the waxed end of their threads.

26. **rīxor, -ōris,** m., 'quarreler.' **capitīna, -ae,** [**caput**], f., 'head-meat,' suggesting our word "headcheese." **surdus, -a, -um,** adj., 'deaf.' **auricula, -ae,** [diminutive of **auris**], f., 'ear'; the hearing of pigs is very keen. **causidicus, -ī,** [**causa, dīcō**], m., 'pleader.' **verbōsus, -ī,** [**verbum**], m., 'talkative person.'

27. **isiciārius, -ī,** m., 'sausage-maker.' **cursor, -ōris,** [**currō**], m., 'runner.' **tālus, -ī,** m., 'knucklebone.'

28. **ungula, -ae,** f., 'hoof.'

29. **nec nōminandō**: 'unspeakable.' **lēgātum, -ī,** n., 'legacy'; here dative of purpose. **popia, -ae,** f., 'soup-ladle.' **pīstillum, -ī,** n., 'pestle' of a mortar.

30. **dē,** etc.: like "from Dan to Beersheba." **Tebeste, -is,** n., 'Tebeste,' a city in Numidia, now Tébessa. **Tergeste, -is,** n., now Trieste.

31. **ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** 1, 'bind.' **collum, -ī,** n., 'neck.' **dē**: we should say 'with.' **restis, -is,** f., 'rope'; the cook is exhorted to hang himself.

32. **monumentum, -ī,** [**moneō**; *74, d*], n., 'monument.'

34. **S**: for **sēmisse,** abl. **sēmis, sēmissis,** m., 'half.'

'Optimī amātōrēs meī, vel cōnsulēs vītae, rogō vōs, ut cum corpore meō bene faciātis, bene condiātis dē bonīs condīmentīs nucleī, piperis et mellis, ut nōmen meum in sempiternum nōminētur.

'Meī dominī vel cōnsobrīnī meī, quī in mediō testāmentō interfuistis, iubēte signārī.'

Lārdiō signāvit.
Ofellicus signāvit.
Cȳminātus signāvit.
Lūcānicus signāvit.
Tergillus signāvit.
Celsīnus signāvit.
Nūptiālicus signāvit.

Explicit testāmentum porcellī, sub diē XVI kal. lucernīnās, Clībanātō et Piperātō cōnsulibus, fēliciter.

---

35. **quod**: 'but.' **sēmissem**: 'half' of a year.

36. **impleō, -ēre, implēvī, -ētus**, 2, 'fill out'; satirical in respect to the veracity of inscriptions on tombstones.

37. **amātor, -ōris**, [**amō**], m., 'lover.' **meī**: 'of me.' **cōnsulēs**: translate as if *cōnsulentēs;* double meaning, 'ye who have regard for (my) life,' 'ye who are fond of good living.'

38. **condiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus**, 4, word of double meaning: 'embalm' from the pig's point of view, 'season' from the point of view of the 'lovers' of roast pig. **condiātis**: sc. *id.* **dē**: 'with.'

39. **condīmentum, -ī**, [**condiō**], n., 'seasoning.' **nucleus, -ī**, m., 'nut-meat.' **piper, -eris**, n., 'pepper.' **mel, mellis**, n., 'honey.'

40. **sempiternus, -a, -um**, [**semper**], adj., 'everlasting'; neuter as noun, **in sempiternum**, 'forever and ever.'

41. **Meī dominī**: title of respect; 'good sirs.' **cōnsobrīnus, -ī**, m., 'cousin.' **in mediō testāmentō**: i.e. 'at the making of my will.'

42. **signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, [**signum**], 1, 'affix a seal'; **signārī**, 'that the seals be affixed.' Each of the seven witnesses of a will was supposed to stamp his signet in the wax covering the ends of the string with which the tablets were tied together (Fig. 203).

43–49. **Lārdiō**: 'Fatbacon.' **Ofellicus**: 'Tidbit.' **Cȳmi-**

2. Witticisms attributed to Cicero

On Lentulus, his son-in-law.

Cicerō cum Lentulum, generum suum, exiguae statūrae hominem, longō gladiō accīnctum vīdisset,

'Quis,' inquit, 'generum meum ad gladium alligāvit?'

On Piso, a son-in-law, who walked effeminately.

Cicerō, cum Pīsō gener eius mollius incēderet, fīlia autem concitātius, ait fīliae: 'Ambulā tamquam vir!' 5

On a portrait of his brother Quintus, larger than life.

Nec Q. Cicerōnī frātrī circā similem mordācitātem pepercit. Nam cum in eā prōvinciā, quam ille rēxerat, vīdisset

---

nātus: 'Youngcabbager.' **Lūcānicus**: 'Porksausager.' **Tergillus**: 'Porkrind.' **Celsīnus**: 'Porkpie.' **Nūptiālicus**: 'Weddingporker,' suggesting a dish in favor for wedding-feasts.

50. **explicō, -āre, explicuī, explicitus**, [**ex** + **plicō**], 1, 'unroll,' as a book written in the form of a scroll. **Explicit**: in full, *explicitum est*, lit. 'is unrolled'; we should say, 'Here ends.' The form of expression, while not suitable for the tablets on which wills were written, is appropriate for the scroll-shaped book in which the Pig's Will is represented as being recorded (Figures 166 and 191).

51. **fēlīciter**: 'happily,' a word of good omen, often added at the end of a writing.

2. 2. **accingō, -cingere, -cīnxī, -cīnctus**, [**ad** + **cingō**], 3, 'gird on,' 'arm.'

3. **alligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, [**ad** + **ligō**], 1, 'tie (to).'

4. **molliter**, [**mollis**], adv., 'lazily.'

5. **concitātē**, [**concitātus**, participle of **concitō**], adv., 'energetically.' **ambulō, -āre, -āvī**, 1, 'walk.' **tamquam**, [**tam** + **quam**], adv., 'just as.' **vir**: '(your) husband (does).'

6. **circā**: 'in the use of'; lit. 'around.' **mordācitās, -ātis**, [**mordāx**], f., 'sharpness' of speech. **pepercit**: sc. *M. Cicero*.

7. **rēxerat**: 'had governed'; Quintus Cicero was governor of the province of Asia (*302, c*) for three years, before he became a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul.

clipeātam imāginem eius, ingentibus līniāmentīs, ūsque ad pectus ex mōre pictam (erat autem Quīntus ipse statūrae parvae), ait:

'Frāter meus dīmidius maior est quam tōtus.'

On a certain foppishness of Caesar's attire.

In Caesarem quoque mordācitās Cicerōnis dentēs suōs strīnxit. Nam prīmum post victōriam Caesaris interrogātus, cūr in ēlectiōne partis errāsset, respondit: 'Praecinctūra mē dēcēpit,' iocātus in Caesarem, quī ita togā praecingēbātur, ut trahendō laciniam velut mollis incēderet.

On Caesar's enlargement of the Senate.

Cicerō aliās facilitātem Caesaris in allēgandō senātū irrīsit palam. Nam cum ab hospite suō, P. Malliō, rogārē-

---

8. **clipeātus, -a, -um,** [**clipeus**], adj., 'shield-shaped,' i.e. 'oval,' like the *clipeus*. **imāgō, -inis,** f., 'portrait.' **līniāmentum, -ī,** n., 'feature.' **ūsque,** etc.: the painted portrait resembled a bust.

9. **ex mōre**: 'in the usual fashion.' **pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pictus,** 3, 'paint.'

11. **Frāter meus dīmidius**: 'the half of my brother.'

12. **dentēs suōs strīnxit**: 'showed its teeth,' we should say.

13. **victōriam**: at Pharsalus; Cicero had joined the party of Pompey.

14. **ēlectiō, -ōnis,** [**ēligō**], f., 'choice.' **praecinctūra, -ae,** [**praecingō**], f., 'manner of dress,' referring to the effeminate way that Caesar draped his toga.

15. **iocor, -ārī, -ātus,** 1, dep., 'jest.' **toga, -ae,** f., 'toga,' the principal outer garment worn by Roman men. **praecingō, -cingere, -cīnxī, -cīnctus,** [**prae** + **cingō**], 3, 'gird about.' The passive is here used in a middle sense; 'would wrap his toga about him in such a way,' lit. 'would so wrap himself up with his toga.'

16. **lacinia, -ae,** f., 'end' of a toga; 'by letting the end of his toga drag,' instead of carefully tucking it in.

17. **facilitās, -ātis,** [**facilis**], f., 'ready compliance.' **allēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** 1, 'depute'; 'in appointing (men to) the Senate.'

18. **P. Mallius,** gen. **Publiī Mallī,** m., a friend of Cicero.

tur, ut decuriōnātum prīvignō eius expedīret, assistente frequentiā, dīxit:

'Rōmae, sī vīs, habēbit; Pompeiīs difficile est.'

A play upon words.

Nē illa quidem (ōrātōribus conveniunt), quae Cicerōnī aliquando, sed nōn in agendō, excidērunt, ut dīxit, cum is candidātus, quī cocī fīlius habēbātur, cōram eō suffrāgium ab aliō peteret:

'Ego, quoque, tibi favēbō.'

To Vatinius, Caesar's friend, anticipating a compliment.

Vatīnius, pedibus aeger, cum vellet vidērī commodiōris valētūdinis factus et dīceret, sē iam bīna mīlia ambulāre:

'Diēs enim,' inquit *Cicero*, 'longiōrēs sunt.'

---

19. **decuriōnātus, -ūs**, m., 'membership in a town council,' probably at Pompeii, near which Cicero had a countryseat. **prīvignus, -ī**, m., 'step-son.' **expedīret**: 'help to secure.'

20. **frequentia, -ae**, [**frequēns**], f., 'crowd.'

21. **Rōmae**: locative. *146*. **Pompeiīs**: 'at Pompeii.' *145, b*.

22. **illa**: 'those (sayings).' **ōrātōribus conveniunt**: 'are proper for an orator.' **Cicerōnī — excidērunt**: 'fell from the lips of Cicero.' *109, b*.

23. **in agendō**: 'while arguing' in court.

24. **candidātus, -ī**, [**candidus**, 'white'], m., 'candidate.' **cocī**: gen. of **cocus**, 'cook,' pronounced as if spelled **quoquus**. **cōram**: here a preposition with the ablative; 'in his presence.'

26. **quoque**: either the adverb, or the vocative of *quoquus* = *cocus*.

27. **pedibus aeger**: Vatinius had the gout.

28. **commodiōris valētūdinis factus** [esse]: 'to have improved in health,' lit. 'to have become of better health.' **bīna mīlia** [passuum]: 'two miles (a day).'

30. **enim**: '(Of course), for.'

On the consulship of Vatinius, which lasted a few days.

In cōnsulātū Vatīniī, quem paucīs diēbus gessit, notābilis Cicerōnis urbānitās circumferēbātur:

'Magnum ostentum,' inquit, 'annō Vatīniī factum est, quod illō cōnsulātū nec brūma nec vēr nec aestās nec autumnus fuit.'

Querentī deinde Vatīniō, quod gravātus esset, domum ad sē īnfīrmātum venīre, respondit:

'Voluī in cōnsulātū tuō venīre, sed nox mē comprehendit.'

On the consulship of Caninius Rebilus, formerly a lieutenant of Caesar, which lasted only a few hours, at the end of 45 B.C.

'Hōc cōnsecūtus est Rebilus, ut quaererētur, quibus cōnsulibus cōnsul fuerit.'

'Vigilantem habēmus cōnsulem Canīnium, quī in cōnsulātū suō somnum nōn vīdit.'

Retorts for persons who lie about their age.

Redarguimus interim apertē, ut Cicerō Vibium Curium, multum dē annīs aetātis suae mentientem:

---

31. **notābilis, -e,** [**nota**], adj., 'remarkable.'

32. **urbānitās, -ātis,** [**urbānus**], f., 'pleasantry'; trans. 'witticism.' **circumferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus,** [**circum** + **ferō**], 3, 'carry around'; here 'circulate.'

33. **ostentum, -ī,** [**ostendō**], n., 'marvel.'

36. **gravātus esset**: 'because (as he said, Cicero) had been unwilling.' **domum ad sē**: 'to his house to (see) him.'

37. **īnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** [**īnfīrmus**], 1, 'enfeeble.' **īnfīrmātum**: 'when he was laid up.'

40. **ut quaererētur**: 'that the question should be raised.' **quibus cōnsulibus**: 'in whose consulship.'

42. **vigilāns, -antis** [**vigilō**, 'keep awake'], adj. of double meaning, 'watchful' and 'wakeful.'

44. **redarguō, -ere, -uī,** 3, 'show up'; 'we show up (people).' **interim**: 'sometimes.' **Vibius Curius, -ī -ī,** m., an acquaintance of Cicero's; sc. *redarguit.*

'Tum ergō, cum ūnā dēclāmābāmus, nōn erās nātus!'

Interim et simulātā assēnsiōne, ut īdem, Fabiā Dolābellae dīcente *trīgintā sē annōs habēre*,

'Vērum est,' inquit, 'nam hōc illam iam vīgintī annīs audiō!'

On a man from Africa, who wished to pass as an aristocrat.

Octāvius, quī nātū nōbilis vidēbātur, Cicerōnī recitantī ait: 'Nōn audiō, quae dīcis.'

Ille respondit: 'Certē solēbās bene forātās habēre aurēs!'

Hōc eō dictum, quia Octāvius Libys oriundus dīcēbātur, quibus mōs est aurem forāre.

3. Legal Maxims

Fundamental maxims of right conduct.

Iūris praecepta sunt haec: honestē vīvere, alterum nōn laedere, suum cuique tribuere.

Definition of justice.

Iūstitia est cōnstāns et perpetua voluntās iūs suum cuique tribuendī.

---

45. **mentior, -īrī, -ītus**, 4, dep., 'lie.'

46. **dēclāmō, -āre**, etc., [**dē** + **clāmō**], 1, 'practice declamation.'

47. **assēnsiō, -ōnis**, f., 'agreement.' **īdem**: Cicero; subject of *inquit*. **Fabia, -ae**, f., wife of Dolabella. **Dolābella, -ae**, m., P. Cornelius Dolabella, who was born in 70 B.C., and was prominent in Roman politics at the time of the Civil War.

48. **trīgintā**, etc.: 'that she was thirty years old.'

49. **hōc**, etc.: sc. *dīcere;* 'I've been hearing her say that.'

53. **forō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, 1, 'bore'; of the ear, 'pierce.'

54. **Libys, -yos**, m., 'a Libyan'; 'was said to be a Libyan by birth.'

55. **quibus**: *et eīs*, the Libyans.

3. 1. **honestē**, [**honōs**]: adv., 'honorably.'

2. **suum cuique**: 'to each what belongs to him.'

3. **cōnstāns, -tis**, adj., 'unvarying.' **voluntās**: 'determination.' **iūs suum cuique**: 'to each his due.'

4. **tribuendī**: translate as if an infinitive.

The principal is responsible for his agent.

Quī facit per alium, facit per sē.

The plea, "I did not know the law," is not valid.

Ignōrantia lēgis nēminem excūsat.

We cannot confer upon another ampler rights than we ourselves possess.

Nēmō plūs iūris in alium trānsferre potest quam ipse habet.

A single crime, a single punishment.

Nēmō dēbet bis pūnīrī prō ūnō dēlictō.

In heated argument men lose sight of the truth.

Nimium altercandō vēritās āmittitur.

4. Fables

In union lies safety; in discord, weakness.

In eōdem prātō pāscēbantur trēs bovēs in maximā concordiā, et sīc ab omnī ferārum incursiōne tūtī erant. Sed discidiō inter illōs ortō, singulī ā ferīs petītī et laniātī sunt. Fābula docet, quantum bonī sit in concordiā.

Circumstances may make cowards brave.

Haedus, stāns in tēctō domūs, lupō praetereuntī male-

---

6. **ignōrantia**, -ae, f., 'ignorance.'

9. **pūniō**, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, 4, 'punish.'

10. **altercor**, -ārī, -ātus, [**alter**], 1, dep., 'dispute.' **vēritās**, -ātis, [**vērus**], f., 'truth.'

4. 1. **prātum**, -ī, n., 'meadow.' **pāscor**, -ī, **pāstus**, 3, dep., 'feed.' **concordia**, -ae, f., 'harmony.'

3. **discidium**, -ī, n., 'discord.' **laniō**, -āre, etc., 1, 'tear to pieces.'

4. **fābula**, -ae, f., 'fable.'

5. **haedus**, -ī, m., 'kid.' **lupus**, -ī, m., 'wolf.' **maledīcō**, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, 3, 'rail at.'

dīxit. Cui lupus, 'Nōn tū,' inquit, 'sed tēctum mihi maledīcit.'

Saepe locus et tempus hominēs timidōs audācēs reddit.

The dog in the manger.

Canis iacēbat in praesēpī bovēsque lātrandō ā pābulō arcēbat. Cui ūnus boum, 'Quanta ista,' inquit, 'invidia est, quod nōn pateris, ut eō cibō vescāmur, quem tū ipse capere nec possīs!

Haec fābula invidiae indolem dēclārat.

"Who will put the bell on the cat?"

Mūres aliquando habuērunt cōnsilium, quō modō sibi ā fēle cavērent. Multīs aliīs prōpositīs, omnibus placuit, ut eī tintinnābulum annecterētur; sīc enim ipsōs sonitū admonitōs eam fugere posse. Sed cum iam inter mūrēs quaererētur, quī fēlī tintinnābulum annecteret, nēmō repertus est.

Fābula docet, in suādendō plūrimōs esse audācēs, sed in ipsō perīculō timidōs.

He who urges others on, shares the responsibility.

Tubicen ab hostibus captus, 'Nē mē,' inquit, 'interficite; nam inermis sum, neque quicquam habeō praeter hanc tubam.'

---

9. **canis, -is,** m., 'dog.' **praesēpe, -is,** n., 'manger.' **lātrō, -āre, -āvī,** 1, 'bark.'

10. **arceo, -ēre, -uī,** 2, 'keep (from).' **invidia, -ae,** f., 'meanness.'

11. **vescor, -ī,** 3, dep., 'eat.'

13. **indolēs, -is,** f., 'true nature.'

14. **mūs, mūris,** m., 'mouse.'

15. **fēlis, -is,** f., 'cat.'

16. **tintinnābulum,** -ī, n., 'bell.' **annectō, -nectere, -nexuī, -nexus,** 3, 'tie (to).' **sonitus, -ūs,** m., 'sound.'

20. **suādeō, -ēre, -sī,** 2, 'advise.'

22. **tubicen, -inis,** m., 'trumpeter.'

At hostēs, 'Propter hōc ipsum,' inquiunt, 'tē interimēmus, quod, cum ipse pugnandī sis imperītus, aliōs ad pugnam incitāre solēs.'

Fābula docet, nōn sōlum maleficōs esse pūniendōs, sed etiam eōs, quī aliōs ad male faciendum irritent.

5. The First Psalm

Beātus vir, quī nōn abiit in cōnsiliō impiōrum,
et in viā peccātōrum nōn stetit,
et in cathedrā pestilentiae nōn sēdit;
sed in lēge Dominī voluntās eius,
et in lēge eius meditābitur diē ac nocte.
Et erit tamquam lignum, quod plantātum est secus dēcursūs aquārum,
quod fructum suum dabit in tempore suō,
et folium eius nōn dēfluet,
et omnia, quaecumque faciet, prosperābuntur.

---

25. **inquiunt**: from *inquam*; 'say.' **interimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, 3,** 'kill.'

28. **maleficus, -ī,** m., 'evildoer.'

29. **irritō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1,** 'stir up.'

5. 1. **Beātus, -a, -um,** adj., 'happy,' 'blessed.' **impius, -a, -um,** [in- + **pius**], adj., 'wicked,' 'ungodly'; as a noun, **impius, -ī,** m., 'wicked man.'

2. **peccātor, -ōris,** [**peccō**], m., 'sinner.'

3. **cathedra, -ae,** [*καθέδρα*], f., 'chair,' 'seat.' **pestilentia, -ae,** [**pestilēns,** 'unwholesome'], f., 'plague'; here 'they that are a plague,' 'the scornful.' **sedeō, -ēre, sēdī,** sup. **sessum,** 2, 'sit.'

4. **Dominus, -ī,** m., 'Lord.' **voluntās**: sc. *est*.

5. **meditor, -ārī, -ātus,** 1, dep., 'reflect,' 'meditate.'

6. **lignum, -ī,** n., 'wood,' 'tree.' **plantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** [**planta,** 'a plant'], 1, 'plant.' **secus,** prep., 'along,' 'beside.' **dēcursus, -ūs,** [**dēcurrō**], m., 'course' of a brook or stream, 'river.'

8. **folium, -ī,** n., 'leaf.' **dēfluō, -fluere, -flūxī,** [**dē** + **fluō**], 3, 'flow away'; of a leaf, 'fade,' 'wither.'

9. **prosperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** [**prosper,** 'favorable'], 1, 'succeed,' 'prosper.'

Nōn sīc impiī, nōn sīc ;
  sed tamquam pulvis, quem prōicit ventus ā faciē terrae.
Ideō nōn resurgent impiī in iūdiciō,
  neque peccātōrēs in conciliō iūstōrum ;
quoniam nōvit Dominus viam iūstōrum,
  et iter impiōrum perībit.

6. The Twenty-third Psalm

Dominus regit mē, et nihil mihi deerit.
  In locō pāscuae ibi mē collocāvit ;
super aquam refectiōnis ēducāvit mē,
  animam meam convertit.
  Dēdūxit mē super sēmitās iūstitiae propter nōmen suum.
Nam, et sī ambulāverō in mediō umbrae mortis,
  nōn timēbō mala, quoniam tu mēcum es :
  virga tua et baculus tuus, ipsa mē cōnsōlāta sunt.
Parāstī in cōnspectū meō mēnsam, adversus eōs quī trībulant mē :

---

10. **impiī** : sc. *sunt*.

11. **faciēs, -ēī**, f., 'face.'

12. **resurgō, -ere, resurrēxī, resurrēctus**, [re- + **surgō**], 3, 'rise again,' 'stand.'

13. **iūstus, -ī**, [**iūstus, -a, -um**], m., 'just man,' 'righteous man.'

6. 2. **pāscua, -ae**, f., 'pasturage,' 'pasture.'

3. **refectiō, -ōnis**, [**reficiō**], f., 'refreshing.' **ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, [ē + **ducō**, from **dux**], 1, 'rear' ; 'support,' 'nourish.'

5. **iūstitiae** : 'righteousness.'

6. **et** : 'even.' **ambulō, -āre, -āvī**, 1, 'walk.' **umbra, -ae**, f., 'shadow.'

8. **virga, -ae**, f., a slender branch, 'rod.' **baculus, -ī**, m., 'staff.' **ipsa** : neuter plural as referring to both *virga* and *baculus* (cf. *163, c*) ; emphatic 'they.'

9. **mēnsa, -ae**, f., 'table.' **trībulō, -āre**, 1, 'thresh' ; 'afflict,' 'torment.'

impinguāstī in oleō caput meum,
et calix meus inēbriāns quam praeclārus est!
Et misericordia tua subsequētur mē omnibus diēbus vītae meae,
et ut inhabitem in domō Dominī in longitūdinem diērum.

---

10. **impinguō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** [**in** + **pinguis**], 1, 'make fat'; 'anoint.' **in**: 'with.' **oleum, -ī,** n., 'oil' of the olive.

11. **calix, -icis,** m., 'cup.' **inēbriō, -āre,** 1, 'fill full'; 'overflow.' **praeclārus, -a, -um,** [**prae** + **clārus**], adj., 'glorious,' 'splendid.'

13. **inhabitō, -āre, -āvī,** [**in** + **habitō**], 1, 'dwell in,' 'dwell.' **in longitūdinem diērum**: 'forever.'

A COMPANION TO CAESAR

Essentials of Latin Grammar for the Study of Caesar . . . . . §§ 1–243

Gaius Julius Caesar . . . . . §§ 244–280

The Geography of Caesar's Commentaries . . §§ 281–306

The Roman Art of War in Caesar's Time . . §§ 307–351

FIGURE 151. — The Goddess of Victory bearing a Gallic war trumpet, in commemoration of a victory over Gauls. From a relief at Pompeii.

ESSENTIALS OF LATIN GRAMMAR FOR THE STUDY OF CAESAR

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

1. The Latin language has no article. In translating into English, the definite article *the*, or the indefinite article *a*, should be supplied with nouns in the different cases as the sense may require.

FIRST DECLENSION

2. *a.* The Nominative Singular of nouns of the First Declension ends in **-ă**.

b. Nouns of the First Declension are nearly all of the Feminine Gender; a few nouns referring to males are masculine, as **nauta**, *sailor* (III. 9); **Cotta**, a man's name (C. I. 6).

3. An example of the First Declension is: **via** (stem **viā-**), F., *way* (I. 9):

SINGULAR

Case		Meaning	Termination
Nom.	**via**	*a way, the way*	**-ă**
Gen.	**viae**	*of a way, of the way*	**-ae**
Dat.	**viae**	*to* or *for a way*, or *the way*	**-ae**
Acc.	**viam**	*a way, the way*	**-am**
Voc.	**via**	*O way!*	**-ă**
Abl.	**viā**	*from, by, in a way* or *the way*	**-ā**

PLURAL

Nom.	**viae**	*ways, the ways*	**-ae**
Gen.	**viārum**	*of ways, of the ways*	**-ārum**
Dat.	**viīs**	*to* or *for ways*, or *the ways*	**-īs**
Acc.	**viās**	*ways, the ways*	**-ās**
Voc.	**viae**	*O ways!*	**-ae**
Abl.	**viīs**	*from, by, in ways*, or *the ways*	**-īs**

4. *a.* Besides the six cases of the First Declension there is a rare Locative Case, of which the Singular is exactly like the Genitive, as **Samarobrīvae**, *at Samarobriva* (V. 24).

b. The Greek Name **Achillās** (C. III. 104) is of the First Declension, and declined as follows: *Nom.* **Achillās**, *Gen.* **Achillae**, *Dat.* **Achillae**, *Acc.* **Achillam**, *Voc.* **Achillā** or **Achilla**, *Abl.* **Achillā**.

SECOND DECLENSION

5. *a.* The Nominative Singular of the Second Declension ends in **-um** for Neuter Nouns and **-us**, **-er**, **-ir** for all others.

b. Nouns of the Second Declension in **-us**, **-er**, and **-ir** are generally Masculine. Feminine are most names of Trees and Plants, as **fāgus**, *beech* (V. 12), and most names of Countries, Islands, and Cities, as **Aegyptus**, *Egypt* (C. III. 104).

6. *a.* Examples of Nouns of the Second Declension in **-us** and **-um** are **lēgātus** (I. 7) and **bellum** (I. 1):

	lēgātus (stem **lēgāto-**), M., *envoy, lieutenant*		**bellum** (stem **bello-**), N., *war*	
	SINGULAR			
		TERMINATION		TERMINATION
Nom.	lēgātus	-us	bellum	-um
Gen.	lēgātī	-ī	bellī	-ī
Dat.	lēgātō	-ō	bellō	-ō
Acc.	lēgātum	-um	bellum	-um
Voc.	lēgāte	-e	bellum	-um
Abl.	lēgātō	-ō	bellō	-ō
	PLURAL			
Nom.	lēgātī	-ī	bella	-a
Gen.	lēgātōrum	-ōrum	bellōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	lēgātīs	-īs	bellīs	-īs
Acc.	lēgātōs	-ōs	bella	-a
Voc.	lēgātī	-ī	bella	-a
Abl.	lēgātīs	-īs	bellīs	-īs

b. Caesar uses the Neuter **vulgus** in the Nominative (IV. 5), Genitive **vulgī** (I. 20), and the Accusative **vulgus** (I. 46).

c. Caesar uses **locus**, **-ī**, M., *place*, with a Neuter Plural declined thus: *Nom.* **loca**, *Gen.* **locōrum**, *Dat.* **locīs**, *Acc.* **loca**, *Abl.* **locīs**.

d. The Second Declension has a rare Locative Case, of which the Singular is like the Genitive; as **Cavillōnī**, *at Cavillonum* (VII. 90).

7. *a.* Examples of Nouns of the Second Declension in **-er** and **-ir** are **puer**, *boy* (I. 29), **ager**, *field* (I. 4), and **vir**, *man* (II. 25):

	puer (stem **puero-**), M., *boy*	**ager** (stem **agro-**), M., *field*	**vir** (stem **viro-**), M., *man*	
	SINGULAR			
				TERMINATION
Nom.	puer	ager	vir	——
Gen.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
Dat.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
Acc.	puerum	agrum	virum	-um
Voc.	puer	ager	vir	——
Abl.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō

	PLURAL			TERMINATION
Nom.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
Gen.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
Acc.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
Voc.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
Abl.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

b. Declined like **puer** are **socer**, M., *father-in-law* (I. 12), **gener**, M., *son-in-law* (V. 56), **vesper**, M., *evening* (I. 26), **līberī**, M., plural only, *children* (I. 11), and compounds of **-fer** and **-ger**, as **signifer**, *standard-bearer* (II. 25).

c. Like **ager** is **arbiter, -trī**, M., *referee* (V. 1); also **faber, -brī**, M., *mechanic, Gen.* Plural generally **fabrum** (V. 11), **administer, -trī**, M., *helper* (VI. 16), **culter, -trī**, M., *butcher-knife* (p. 464).

8. *a.* In Caesar's time nouns of the Second Declension in **-ius** and **-ium** formed the Genitive Singular in **-ī** (not **-iī**), retaining the accent on the penult of words of more than two syllables even when this was short; thus, **fīlī**, **Vale′rī**, **negō′tī**, **impe′rī**. Afterwards Common Nouns in **-ius**, and many Proper Names in **-ius**, were written with the Genitive in **-iī**, and for the sake of consistency such Genitives are frequently printed with **-iī** to-day, as **cōnsiliī** (I. 21), **Valeriī** (I. 47).

b. The Genitive of **Pompeius** is written with **-ī**, **Pompe′ī** (VII. 6, C. III. 84), as are also the Genitives of some other Proper Names in **-ius.**

c. The Vocative of **fīlius** and of Proper Names in **-ius** ends in **-ī** (not **-ie**), the accent remaining on the penult of vocatives containing more than two syllables; thus: **Pompe′ī** (C. III. 87).

d. The declension of **deus**, M., *god* (I. 12), is irregular:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	**deus**	**dī, deī, diī**
Gen.	**deī**	**deōrum, deum**
Dat.	**deō**	**dīs, deīs, diīs**
Acc.	**deum**	**deōs**
Voc.	**deus**	**dī, deī, diī**
Abl.	**deō**	**dīs, deīs, diīs**

THIRD DECLENSION

9. In the Third Declension are comprised nouns with stems ending in a consonant (mute stems, liquid stems, nasal stems, and **-s** stems), nouns with stems ending in **-i**, nouns with mixed stems, and nouns of irregular declension. The stem rarely appears unchanged in the Nominative, but may usually be recognized in the Genitive.

10. *a.* Mute Stems may end in a Labial, **p**, **b**; in a Guttural, **c**, **g**; or in a Dental, **t**, **d**. In Guttural Stems the **-s** of the case ending in the Nominative unites with the **c** or **g** of the stem, producing **x**; thus **dux** for **duc-s**, in which the stem is **duc-**, the termination **-s**; and **rēx** for **rēg-s**.

b. Examples of nouns with mute stems are **prīnceps** (I. 13), **rēx** (I. 31), **pēs** (I. 8), **mīles** (I. 7), **virtūs** (I. 1) and **caput** (I. 29):

	prīnceps (stem in oblique cases **prīncip-**), M., *leader, leading man*	**rēx** (stem **rēg-**), M., *king*	**pēs** (stem in oblique cases **ped-**), M., *foot*	
		SINGULAR		TERMINATION
Nom.	prīnceps	rēx	pēs	**-s**
Gen.	prīncipis	rēgis	pedis	**-is**
Dat.	prīncipī	rēgī	pedī	**-ī**
Acc.	prīncipem	rēgem	pedem	**-em**
Voc.	prīnceps	rēx	pēs	**-s**
Abl.	prīncipe	rēge	pede	**-e**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	pedēs	**-ēs**
Gen.	prīncipum	rēgum	pedum	**-um**
Dat.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	pedibus	**-ibus**
Acc.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	pedēs	**-ēs**
Voc.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	pedēs	**-ēs**
Abl.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	pedibus	**-ibus**

	mīles (stem in oblique cases **mīlit-**), M., *soldier*	**virtūs** (stem in oblique cases **virtūt-**), F., *valor, virtue*	**caput** (stem in oblique cases **capit-**), N., *head*
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	mīles	virtūs	caput
Gen.	mīlitis	virtūtis	capitis
Dat.	mīlitī	virtūtī	capitī
Acc.	mīlitem	virtūtem	caput
Voc.	mīles	virtūs	caput
Abl.	mīlite	virtūte	capite
		PLURAL	
Nom.	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita
Gen.	mīlitum	virtūtum	capitum
Dat.	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus
Acc.	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita
Voc.	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita
Abl.	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus

c. Like **rēx** are declined Gallic Proper Names in **-rīx**, as, in Singular only, **Orgetorīx**, *Gen.* **Orgetorīgis** (I. 2), and **Dumnorīx**,

-rīgis (I. 3), and, in Plural only, **Biturīgēs, Biturīgum** (I. 18); also **dux, ducis,** M., *leader* (I. 13), **pāx, pācis,** F., *peace* (I. 3), **pix, picis,** F., *pitch* (VII. 22), and **vōx, vōcis,** F., *voice, utterance* (I. 32).

d. Like **mīles** in Declension are **eques, equitis,** M., *horseman* (I. 15), **pedes, peditis,** M., *foot-soldier* (I. 42); and **caespes,** M., *sod* (III. 25), **comes,** M., *companion* (VI. 30), **hospes,** M., *guest-friend* (I. 53), **stīpes,** M., *tree-trunk* (VII. 73).

e. **Quiēs,** F., *repose* (V. 40), is declined **quiēs, quiētis, quiētī,** etc.; but **ariēs,** M., *battering-ram* (II. 32), **abiēs,** F., *fir-tree* (V. 12), **interpres,** M., *interpreter* (I. 19), **seges,** F., *grainfield* (VI. 36) have **-ĕtis** in the Genitive and are declined **ariēs, arietis, arietī, arietem,** etc.

f. Like **virtūs** are **salūs, salūtis,** F., in Singular only, *safety* (I. 27), **servitūs, servitūtis,** F., *slavery* (I. 11); here also belong the Feminine Nouns whose Nominative ends in **-tās,** as **cīvitās, cīvitātis,** *state* (I. 2), **aestās, aestātis,** *summer* (I. 54).

g. Lacking the Dental in the Nominative are the Neuters **cor, cordis,** *heart* (VI. 19), and **lac, lactis,** *milk* (IV. 1).

11. *a.* Liquid stems end in **-l** or **-r.**

b. Examples of nouns with liquid stems are **cōnsul** (I. 2), **victor** (I. 31) and **pater** (I. 3):

	cōnsul (stem **cōnsul-**), M., *consul*	**victor** (stem **victōr-**), M., *victor*	**pater** (stem **patr-**), M., *father*
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	cōnsul	victor	pater
Gen.	cōnsulis	victōris	patris
Dat.	cōnsulī	victōrī	patrī
Acc.	cōnsulem	victōrem	patrem
Voc.	cōnsul	victor	pater
Abl.	cōnsule	victōre	patre
		PLURAL	
Nom.	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	patrēs
Gen.	cōnsulum	victōrum	patrum
Dat.	cōnsulibus	victōribus	patribus
Acc.	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	patrēs
Voc.	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	patrēs
Abl.	cōnsulibus	victōribus	patribus

c. Like **consul** are **sōl, sōlis,** M., *sun* (I. 1), **exsul, exsulis,** M., *exile* (V. 55), **sāl, salis,** M., *salt* (C. II. 37); also some **-r** stems, as **Caesar, Caesaris,** M., *Caesar* (*19, c*); **agger, aggeris,** M., *mound* (II. 20), **ānser, -eris,** M., *goose* (V. 12), **mulier, mulieris,** F., *woman* (I. 29), **arbor, arboris,** F., *tree* (II. 17).

d. Like **victor** are declined Masculine nouns of Agency in **-tor**, as **mercātor, -ōris**, *trader* (I. 1), **dēprecātor, -ōris**, *intercessor* (I. 9); and Abstract nouns in **-or**, as **timor, -ōris**, M., *fear* (I. 22).

e. Like **pater** are declined **frāter, frātris**, M., *brother* (I. 3), and **māter, mātris**, F., *mother* (I. 18).

12. *a.* Nasal Stems end in **-n**, excepting in **hiems, hiemis**, F., *winter* (IV. 1), of which the stem ends in **-m**.

b. Examples are **sermō** (V. 37), **homō** (I. 2) and **nōmen** (I. 13):

	sermō (stem **sermōn-**), M., *conversation*	**homō** (stem **homin-**), M., *man*	**nōmen** (stem **nomin-**), N., *name*
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	sermō	homō	nōmen
Gen.	sermōnis	hominis	nōminis
Dat.	sermōnī	hominī	nōminī
Acc.	sermōnem	hominem	nōmen
Voc.	sermō	homō	nōmen
Abl.	sermōne	homine	nōmine
		PLURAL	
Nom.	sermōnēs	hominēs	nōmina
Gen.	sermōnum	hominum	nōminum
Dat.	sermōnibus	hominibus	nōminibus
Acc.	sermōnēs	hominēs	nōmina
Voc.	sermōnēs	hominēs	nōmina
Abl.	sermōnibus	hominibus	nōminibus

c. Like **sermō** are declined **harpagō, harpagōnis**, M., *grappling-hook* (VII. 81); **latrō, latrōnis**, M., *bandit* (III. 17); **Dīvicō, Dīvicōnis**, M., (I. 13; in Singular only); and nouns in **-iō**, as **suspīciō, suspīciōnis**, F., *suspicion* (I. 4), **coniūrātiō, -ōnis**, F., *league* (I. 2), **Cūriō, Cūriōnis**, M., (C. II. 3; in Singular only).

d. Like **homō** are declined **ōrdō, ōrdinis**, M., *rank* (I. 40); **necessitūdō, -inis**, F., *close connection* (I. 43); **testūdō, testūdinis**, F., *testudo* (II. 6); **nēmō**, *Dat.* **nēminī**, *Acc.* **nēminem** (the place of the *Gen.* and *Abl.*, and sometimes the *Dat.*, being supplied by *Gen.* **nūllīus**, *Abl.* **nūllō**, *Dat.* **nūllī**, from **nūllus**), M., *no one*; **Apollo, Apollinis**, M., (VI. 17, in Singular only); **sōlitūdo, sōlitūdinis**, F., *wilderness* (IV. 18); and **virgō, -inis**, F., *maiden* (C. II. 4).

e. Like **nōmen** are declined other Neuters in **-men**, as **flūmen, flūminis**, *river* (I. 1), **agmen, agminis**, *column* (I. 15), and **certāmen, -inis**, *contest* (III. 14).

13. *a.* The **-s-** of **-s** Stems becomes **r** between vowels in the oblique cases. In **honōs, -r** generally appears also in the Nominative; **-r** is

always found in the Nominative of **rūmor** and many other nouns of this class.

b. Examples of nouns with **-s** stems are **mōs** (I. 4), **honōs** (VI. 13), or **honor**, and **genus** (I. 48):

	mōs (oblique stem **mōr-**), M., *custom*	**honōs, honor** (oblique stem **honōr-**), M., *honor*	**genus** (oblique stem **gener-**), N., *race*
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	mōs	honōs *or* honor	genus
Gen.	mōris	honōris	generis
Dat.	mōrī	honōrī	generī
Acc.	mōrem	honōrem	genus
Voc.	mōs	honor	genus
Abl.	mōre	honōre	genere
		PLURAL	
Nom.	mōrēs	honōrēs	genera
Gen.	mōrum	honōrum	generum
Dat.	mōribus	honōribus	generibus
Acc.	mōrēs	honōrēs	genera
Voc.	mōrēs	honōrēs	genera
Abl.	mōribus	honōribus	generibus

c. Like **mōs** is declined **flōs**, M., *flower* (VII. 73).

d. Like **honor** are **soror, sorōris**, F., *sister* (I. 18), **uxor, uxōris**, F., *wife* (I. 18).

e. Like **genus** are declined the Neuters **fūnus, fūneris**, *funeral* (VI. 19); **latus, lateris**, *side* (I. 25); **mūnus, mūneris**, *gift* (I. 43); **onus, oneris**, *burden, load* (II. 30); **opus, operis**, *work* (I. 8); **scelus, sceleris**, *crime* (I. 14); **vulnus, vulneris**, *wound* (I. 25), etc.

f. Similar in declension to **genus**, but having a different vowel before the Endings of the Oblique Cases, are the Neuters **corpus, corporis**, *body* (I. 25); **dēdecus, -oris**, *disgrace* (IV. 25); **facinus, -oris**, *evil deed* (I. 40); **frīgus, frīgoris**, *cold* (I. 16); **lītus, lītoris**, *shore* (IV. 23); **pectus, pectoris**, *breast* (VII. 47); **pecus, pecoris**, *cattle* (III. 29); **tempus, temporis**, *time* (I. 16); and **rōbur, rōboris**, *oak* (III. 13).

g. Among other Nouns of the Third Declension with Nominative in **-s** and Genitive in **-ris** are the Masculine **pulvis, pulveris**, *dust* (*Acc.* **pulverem**, IV. 32), **lepus, leporis**, *hare* (*Acc.* **leporem**, V. 12), **mās, maris**, *male* (*Gen.* VI. 26); and the Neuters **iūs, iūris** (I. 4; *Nom.* Plural **iūra**, VI. 13), **aes, aeris**, *copper* (IV. 31), **crūs, crūris**, *leg* (VI. 27), and **ōs, ōris**, *mouth, face* (V. 35; *Acc.* Plural **ōra**, VI. 39).

h. **iūs iūrandum**, N., *oath* (I. 3), is thus declined, in the Singular:

Nom. **iūs iūrandum**, *Gen.* **iūris iūrandī**, *Dat.* **iūrī iūrandō**, *Acc.* **iūs iūrandum**, *Abl.* **iūre iūrandō**.

14. *a.* The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine nouns with **-i** Stems ends ordinarily in **-is**, the Genitive Plural always in **-ium**.

b. Examples of Masculine and Feminine **-i** Stems with Nominative Singular in **-is** are **turris** (II. 30), **īgnis** (I. 4) and **hostis** (I. 21):

	turris (stem **turri-**), F., *tower*	**īgnis** (stem **īgni-**), M., *fire*	**hostis** (stem **hosti-**), C., *enemy*	
		SINGULAR		TERMINATION
Nom.	turris	īgnis	hostis	-is
Gen.	turris	īgnis	hostis	-is
Dat.	turrī	īgnī	hostī	-ī
Acc.	turrim or -em	īgnem	hostem	-im, -em
Voc.	turris	īgnis	hostis	-is
Abl.	turrī or -e	īgnī or -e	hoste	-e, -ī
		PLURAL		
Nom.	turrēs	īgnēs	hostēs	-ēs
Gen.	turrium	īgnium	hostium	-ium
Dat.	turribus	īgnibus	hostibus	-ibus
Acc.	turrīs or -ēs	īgnīs or -ēs	hostīs or -ēs	-īs, -ēs
Voc.	turrēs	īgnēs	hostēs	-ēs
Abl.	turribus	īgnibus	hostibus	-ibus

c. Like **turris**, but in the Singular only, is **Sabis**, **-is**, *Acc.* **-im**, M., *the Sambre* (II. 16); also **Tamesis**, **-is**, *Acc.* **-im**, M., *the Thames* (V. 11, 18).

15. *a.* The Nominative Singular of some nouns with **-i** Stems ends in **-ēs**, of a few others in **-er**. Examples are **caedēs** (V. 47) and **linter** (I. 12):

	caedēs (stem **caedi-**), F., *slaughter*		**linter** (stem **lintri-**), F., *skiff*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	caedēs	caedēs	linter	lintrēs
Gen.	caedis	caedium	lintris	lintrium
Dat.	caedī	caedibus	lintrī	lintribus
Acc.	caedem	caedēs or -īs	lintrem	lintrēs, -īs
Voc.	caedēs	caedēs	linter	lintrēs
Abl.	caede	caedibus	lintrī or -e	lintribus

b. Like **caedēs** are declined the Feminine Nouns **cautēs**, **cautis**, *jagged rock* (III. 13), **mōlēs**, **mōlis**, *dike* (III. 12), **rūpēs**, **-is**, *cliff* (II. 29), **sēdēs**, **-is**, *abode* (I. 31), **saepēs**, **-is**, *hedge* (II. 17), **alcēs**, **-is**, *moose* (VI. 27); also **famēs**, **-is**, *hunger* (I. 28), which, however, has **famē** in the Ablative Singular (VII. 20).

c. Like **linter** is **imber**, **imbris**, M., *rainstorm* (III. 29).

16. *a.* The Nominative Singular of Neuter nouns with **-i** Stems ends in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar**; the Ablative Singular ends in **-ī**, the Genitive Plural in **-ium**.

b. Examples of neuter nouns with **-i** Stems are **mare** (III. 7) and **animal** (VI. 17):

	mare (stem **mari-**), N., *sea*		**animal** (stem **animāli-**), N., *animal*		Terminations	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	**mare**	**maria**	animal	animālia	**-e** or wanting	**-ia**
Gen.	**maris**	**marium**	animālis	animālium	**-is**	**-ium**
Dat.	**marī**	**maribus**	animālī	animālibus	**-ī**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**mare**	**maria**	animal	animālia	**-e** or wanting	**-ia**
Voc.	**mare**	**maria**	animal	animālia	**-e** or wanting	**-ia**
Abl.	**marī**	**maribus**	animālī	animālibus	**-ī**	**-ibus**

c. **Bibracte**, N., is declined thus: *Nom.* **Bibracte**, *Gen.* **Bibractis**, *Dat.* **Bibractī**, *Acc.* **Bibracte**, *Abl.* **Bibracte**; no Plural.

d. Like **animal** is **vectīgal**, **-ālis** (I. 18).

17. *a.* The declension of nouns with Mixed Stems in the Singular conforms to that of Mute Stems, in the Plural to that of **-i** Stems.

b. Examples of nouns with Mixed Stems are **mōns** (I. 1), **pars** (I. 1), **nox** (I. 26) and **urbs** (I. 39):

	mōns (stem **mont-**), M., *height*	**pars** (stem **part-**), F., *part*	**nox** (stem **noct-**), F., *night*	**urbs** (stem **urb-**), F., *city*
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	**mōns**	**pars**	**nox**	**urbs**
Gen.	**montis**	**partis**	**noctis**	**urbis**
Dat.	**montī**	**partī**	**noctī**	**urbī**
Acc.	**montem**	**partem**	**noctem**	**urbem**
Voc.	**mōns**	**pars**	**nox**	**urbs**
Abl.	**monte**	**parte**	**nocte**	**urbe**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	**montēs**	**partēs**	**noctēs**	**urbēs**
Gen.	**montium**	**partium**	**noctium**	**urbium**
Dat.	**montibus**	**partibus**	**noctibus**	**urbibus**
Acc.	**montēs**, **-īs**	**partēs**, **-īs**	**noctēs**, **-īs**	**urbēs**, **-īs**
Voc.	**montēs**	**partēs**	**noctēs**	**urbēs**
Abl.	**montibus**	**partibus**	**noctibus**	**urbibus**

c. Among Nouns with Mixed Stems used by Caesar are **pōns**, **pontis**, M., *bridge* (I. 6); **cliēns**, **clientis**, M., *retainer* (I. 4); **parēns**, **-entis**, M. and F., *parent* (V. 14); **falx**, **falcis**, F., *sickle, hook* (III. 14); **fax**, **facis**, F., *torch* (VII. 24); **glāns**, **glandis**, F., *acorn*,

slingshot (V. 43); **dōs, dōtis,** F., *dowry* (VI. 19); **fraus, fraudis,** F., *deception* (VII. 40); **frōns, frontis,** F., *front* (II. 8); **laus, laudis,** F., *praise* (I. 40); **līs, lītis,** F., *damages* (V. 1); **mors, mortis,** F., *death* (I. 5); **nix, nivis,** F., *snow* (VII. 8); **plēbs, plēbis,** F., *people* (I. 3); **trabs, trabis,** F., *beam* (II. 29); **sors, sortis,** F., *lot* (I. 50); **stirps, stirpis,** F., *stock* (VI. 34).

d. Defective is the noun with the stem **spont-**, which has only a Genitive, **spontis**, and Ablative, **sponte** (I. 9).

18. *a.* The declension of the nouns **vīs** (I. 6), **bōs** (VI. 26), **carō** (V. 14), and **Iuppiter** (VI. 17), is exceptional, not conforming to any of the types which have been given:

	vīs (stems **vi-**, **vīr-**), F., *force*	**bōs** (stem **bov-**), C., *ox, cow*	**carō** (stem **carn-**), F., *flesh*	**Iuppiter** (stem **iov-**, + **pater** in the Nom.), M., *Jupiter*
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	vīs	bōs	carō	Iuppiter
Gen.	——	bovis	carnis	Iovis
Dat.	——	bovī	carnī	Iovī
Acc.	vim	bovem	carnem	Iovem
Voc.	vīs	bōs	carō	Iuppiter
Abl.	vī	bove	carne	Iove
		PLURAL		
Nom.	vīrēs	bovēs	carnēs	
Gen.	vīrium	boum or bovum	carnium	
Dat.	vīribus	bōbus or būbus	carnibus	
Acc.	vīrēs	bovēs	carnēs	
Voc.	vīrēs	bovēs	carnēs	
Abl.	vīribus	bōbus or būbus	carnibus	

b. **Senex,** M., *old man* (I. 29), stem **seni-** in oblique cases, is declined thus: **senex, senis, senī, senem, senex, sene; senēs, senum, senibus, senēs, senēs, senibus.**

c. **Iter,** N., *journey, route* (I. 3), has a stem **itiner-** in the oblique cases: **iter, itineris, itinerī, iter, iter, itinere; itinera, itinerum, itineribus, itinera, itinera, itineribus.**

d. **Femur,** N., *thigh,* in the oblique cases has two stems, **femor-** and **femin-**, thus: *Nom.* **femur**, *Gen.* **femoris** or **feminis** (VII. 73), etc.

e. **Arar,** M., *the Arar* (I. 12, 13, 16), is declined thus: **Arar, Araris, Ararī, Ararim, Arar, Ararī**; similar is **Liger, Ligeris,** M., *the Liger* (III. 9).

f. **phalanx,** F., *mass formation, mass,* is declined thus: *Nom.* **phalanx**, *Gen.* **phalangis**, *Dat.* **phalangī**, *Acc.* **phalangem** or **phalanga**, *Abl.* **phalange.**

g. **Tauroīs**, F., *Taurois*, is thus declined: **Tauroīs**, *Gen.* **Tauroëntis**, *Acc.* **Tauroënta** (C. II. 4).

Names of the First, Second, and Third Declensions

19. *a.* Of the Second Declension are all Roman First Names (**praenōmina**) used by Caesar, and in reading the text the name should be supplied, in the proper case form, from the abbreviation. The First Names are **Aulus**, *Gen.* **Aulī** (abbreviation **A.**), **Appius** (**Ap.**), **Gāius** (abbreviation **C.**, an old form of **G.**), **Decimus** (**D.**), **Gnaeus** (**Cn.**), **Lūcius** (**L.**), **Mārcus** (**M.**), **Pūblius** (**P.**), **Quīntus** (**Q.**), **Servius** (**Ser.**), and **Titus** (**T.**).

b. The Clan Names (**nōmina**), ending in **-ius** (as **Iūlius**, **Tullius**), are of the Second Declension.

c. The Family Names or Surnames (**cognōmina**) are partly of the First Declension, as **Galba** (**Servius Sulpicius Galba**) ; of the Second, as **Baculus** (**Pūblius Sextius Baculus**); and of the Third, as **Caesar** (*11, c*), the full name being declined thus: *Nom.* **Gāius Iūlius Caesar**, *Gen.* **Gāī Iūlī Caesaris** or **Gāiī Iūliī Caesaris** (*8, a*), *Dat.* **Gāiō Iūliō Caesarī**, *Acc.* **Gāium Iūlium Caesarem**, *Voc.* **Gāī Iūlī Caesar** (*8, c*), *Abl.* **Gāiō Iūliō Caesare**.

d. The names of Gauls or Germans are generally of the Second Declension, as **Dīviciācus**, **-ī**, or of the Third, as **Dumnorīx**, *Gen.* **Dumnorīgis**; of the First Declension are **Galba** (II. 4, 13) and **Nasua** (I. 37), as well as the Numidian names **Juba**, **Saburra** (C. II. 38).

e. The names of Foreign Peoples are ordinarily declined in the Plural only. A few are of the First Declension, as **Belgae**, **-ārum** (I. 1); the rest are of the Second Declension, as **Helvētiī**, **-ōrum** (I. 1), or of the Third, as **Allobrogēs**, **-um** (I. 6).

f. In the Accusative Plural of names of foreign peoples Caesar sometimes has the Greek ending **-as** instead of **-ēs**; as **Allobrogas** (I. 14), **Crētas** (II. 7), **Coriosolitas** (II. 34).

Fourth Declension

20. *a.* Nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in **-us** are generally Masculine, nouns ending in **-ū** are Neuter; **domus**, **manus**, and **Īdūs** (Plural) are Feminine.

b. Examples of nouns of the Fourth Declension are **frūctus** (VI. 19) and **cornū** (I. 52):

frūctus (stem **frūctu-**) M., *fruit*		**cornū** (stem **cornu-**), N., *horn*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom. frūctus	frūctūs	cornū	cornua
Gen. frūctūs	frūctuum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat. frūctuī	frūctibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc. frūctum	frūctūs	cornū	cornua
Voc. frūctus	frūctūs	cornū	cornua
Abl. frūctū	frūctibus	cornū	cornibus

c. **Domus** (stem **domu-**), f., *house*, has also a stem **domo-** of the Second Declension, from which are formed a Locative Singular, **domī**, *at home* (I. 18, 20, etc.), an Ablative Singular, **domō**, *from home*, (I. 5, 6, etc.), an Accusative Plural, **domōs** (I. 30), and some forms not used by Caesar.

d. Many nouns of the Fourth Declension are defective, being used only in the Ablative Singular, as **iniussū** (I. 19), **iussū** (VII. 3), **nātū** (II. 13).

FIFTH DECLENSION

21. *a.* Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in **-ēs**, and are Feminine except **diēs**, *day*, and **merīdiēs**, *midday* (I. 50), which are Masculine; but **diēs** is usually Feminine when referring to a certain day (as I. 4, 8, 30), or to *time* in general.

b. Examples of nouns of the Fifth Declension are:

diēs (stem **diē-**), M., *day*		**rēs** (stem **rē-**), F., *thing*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom. diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen. diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat. diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc. diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Voc. diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Abl. diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

c. In the Genitive and Dative Singular **-ēī** becomes **-eī** when a consonant precedes, as in **reī** (I. 21); so **speī** (VII. 63, C. II. 5).

ADJECTIVES

22. *a.* In Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions the Masculine is declined like **lēgātus** (*6*, *a*), **puer** (*7*, *a*), or **ager** (*7*, *a*), the Feminine like **via** (*3*), and the Neuter like **bellum** (*6*, *a*).

b. Declined like **lēgātus**, **via**, **bellum**, are many Adjectives, as **bonus**, **bona**, **bonum**, *good:*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

c. Distributive adjectives are declined like **bonus** except that in the Genitive Plural they have **-um** instead of **-ōrum**, as **quadrāgēnum** (IV. 17).

d. A few Adjectives are declined like **puer**, **via**, **bellum**, as **miser**, **misera**, **miserum**, *wretched* (I. 32):

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom.	miser	misera	miserum	miserī	miserae	misera
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum	miserōs	miserās	misera
Voc.	miser	misera	miserum	miserī	miserae	misera
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

e. Like **miser** are declined **asper** (V. 45), **līber** (I. 44), and **tener** (II. 17).

f. Declined like **ager**, **via**, **bellum**, are most adjectives in **-er**, as **aeger**, **aegra**, **aegrum**, *sick* (V. 40), **integer** (III. 4), etc.:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom.	aeger	aegra	aegrum	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
Gen.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī	aegrōrum	aegrārum	aegrōrum
Dat.	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
Acc.	aegrum	aegram	aegrum	aegrōs	aegrās	aegra
Voc.	aeger	aegra	aegrum	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
Abl.	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs

23. *a.* Six Adjectives in **-us** (**ūnus**, *one*; **sōlus**, *alone*; **tōtus**, *whole*; **alius**, *other*; **ūllus**, *any*; **nūllus**, *none*) and three in **-er** (**alter**, *the other*; **ūter**, *which (of two)?* and **neuter**, *neither*), have **-īus** (or **-ius**) in the Genitive and **-ī** in the Dative Singular of all genders, and lack the Vocative; the Plural is regular. They are thus declined in the Singular:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
Gen.	[alīus	alīus	alīus]	alterius	alterius	alterius
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō
Nom.	tōtus	tōta	tōtum	uter	utra	utrum
Gen.	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus
Dat.	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī	utrī	utrī	utrī
Acc.	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum	utrum	utram	utrum
Abl.	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō	utrō	utrā	utrō

b. The Genitive Singular of **alter** is generally **alterius**, instead of **alterīus**; and **alterius** is ordinarily used in place of the Genitive **alīus**.

24. Some Adjectives of the Third Declension have three endings in the Nominative Singular, others two, and others only one. Adjectives with three endings are declined like **ācer, ācris, ācre,** *sharp* (C. III. 72):

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs, -īs	ācrēs, -īs	ācria
Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

25. *a.* Adjectives of the Third Declension with two endings are in part formed on **-i** Stems, like nouns, and in the Positive Degree, as **fortis, forte,** *strong* (II. 33); in part they are Comparatives formed on **-s** Stems (*13, a*), as **fortior, fortius,** *stronger* (III. 14), **melior, melius,** *better* (VI. 12):

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masculine and Fem.	Neuter	Masculine and Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	forte	fortēs or -īs	fortia
Voc.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masculine and Fem.	Neuter	Masculine and Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	melior	melius	meliōrēs	meliōra
Gen.	meliōris	meliōris	meliōrum	meliōrum
Dat.	meliōrī	meliōrī	meliōribus	meliōribus
Acc.	meliōrem	melius	meliōrēs or -īs	meliōra
Voc.	melior	melius	meliōrēs	meliōra
Abl.	meliōre	meliōre	meliōribus	meliōribus

b. **Plūs**, *more*, is defective, in the Singular having only the neuter forms, *Nom.* **plūs**, *Gen.* **plūris**, *Acc.* **plūs**, *Abl.* **plūre**; the Plural is declined *Nom.* **plūrēs, plūra**, *Gen.* **plūrium, plūrium**, *Dat.* **plūribus, plūribus**, *Acc.* **plūrēs** or **plūrīs, plūra**, *Abl.* **plūribus, plūribus.**

26. *a.* With Adjectives of the Third Declension having one ending in the Nom. Singular are included also present participles. Examples are **duplex**, *double* (II. 29), **regēns**, *ruling*, and **vetus**, *old* (1. 13):

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masculine and Fem.	Neuter	Masculine and Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	duplex	duplex	duplicēs	duplicia
Gen.	duplicis	duplicis	duplicium	duplicium
Dat.	duplicī	duplicī	duplicibus	duplicibus
Acc.	duplicem	duplex	duplicēs or -īs	duplicia
Voc.	duplex	duplex	duplicēs	duplicia
Abl.	duplicī	duplicī	duplicibus	duplicibus

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masculine and Fem.	Neuter	Masculine and Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	regēns	regēns	regentēs	regentia
Gen.	regentis	regentis	regentium	regentium
Dat.	regentī	regentī	regentibus	regentibus
Acc.	regentem	regēns	regentēs or -īs	regentia
Voc.	regēns	regēns	regentēs	regentia
Abl.	regente (participle) regentī (adjective)	regente (participle) regentī (adjective)	regentibus	regentibus

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masculine and Fem.	Neuter	Masculine and Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Gen.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
Dat.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
Acc.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Voc.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Abl.	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

b. The Adjective **prīnceps, -cipis** (I. 7) is declined like the Noun (*10, b*); the Adjectives **anceps, ancipitis** (I. 26), **particeps, -cipis**, (C. III. 60), and **praeceps, -cipitis** (II. 24), also have additional syllables in the oblique cases.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

27. *a.* Examples of the Regular Comparison of Adjectives, and of participles used as Adjectives, are:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus, -a, -um, *high*	**altior**, altius, *higher*	**altissimus, -a, -um**, *very high, highest*
antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient*	**antīquior, -ius**	**antīquissimus**
fortis, -e, *brave*	**fortior**, fortius	**fortissimus**
nōbilis, -e, *noble*	**nōbilior**, nōbilius	**nōbilissimus**
ferāx, *fertile*	**ferācior**, ferācius	**ferācissimus**
potēns, *able*	**potentior**, potentius	**potentissimus**
apertus, *open, exposed*	**apertior**, apertius	**apertissimus**

b. **Novus**, *new*, lacks the Comparative, but has a Superlative, **novissimus**, *last* (I. 15).

28. *a.* Examples of Adjectives in **-er**, with Comparative in **-ior** and Superlative in **-rimus**, are:

asper, -ra, -rum, *rough*	**asperior, -ius**	**asperrimus, -a, -um**
celer, -eris, -ere, *swift*	**celerior, -ius**	**celerrimus**
crēber, -bra, -brum, *frequent*	**crēbrior, crēbrius**	**crēberrimus**
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful*	**pulchrior, -ius**	**pulcherrimus**

b. **Vetus**, *Gen.* **veteris**, *old*, Sup. **viterrimus**, lacks the Comparative.

29. Six Adjectives in **-ilis** have **-limus** in the Superlative: **facilis, difficilis, gracilis, humilis, similis, dissimilis**:

facilis, -e, *easy*	**facilior**, facilius	**facillimus, -a, -um**
difficilis, -e, *difficult*	**difficilior, -ius**	**difficillimus**
humilis, -e, *low*	**humilior, -ius**	**humillimus**
similis, -e, *like*	**similior, -ius**	**simillimus**

30. Some Adjectives form the Comparative and the Superlative by prefixing **magis**, *more*, and **maximē**, *most*, as **magis dērēctum**, *straighter* (VI. 26), and **maximē acceptus**, *very acceptable* (I. 3), **maximē frūmentāriīs**, *exceedingly fertile* (I. 10), **maximē ferī**, *most barbarous* (II. 4).

31. The Adjectives **dīves** or **dīs**, *rich* (I. 2), **honōrificus**, *complimentary* (I. 43), and **magnificus**, *splendid* (VI. 19) are thus compared:

dīves or **dīs**	**dīvitior** or **dītior**	**dīvitissimus** or **dītissimus**
honōrificus	**honorificentior**	**honorificentissimus**
magnificus	**magnificentior**	**magnificentissimus**

32. Several common Adjectives are irregular in Comparison:

bonus, -a, -um, *good*	melior, melius, *better*	optimus, -a, -um, *best*
malus, *bad*	peior, peius, *worse*	pessimus, *worst*
parvus, *small*	minor, minus, *less*	minimus, *least*
magnus, *great*	maior, maius, *greater*	maximus, *greatest*
multus, *much*	plūs, gen. plūris (*25, b*)	plūrimus, *most*

33. Several Adjectives lack the Positive, though the Stem appears in Prepositions and Adverbs; others have a Positive only in a limited or special use. Examples are:

(citrā, *on this side*)	citerior, citerius, *on this side, hither*	citimus, -a, -um, *nearest*
(ultrā, *beyond*)	ulterior, ulterius, *farther*	ultimus, *farthest*
(intrā, *within*)	interior, interius, *inner*	intimus, *inmost*
(prope, *near*)	propior, propius, *nearer*	proximus, *nearest*
(dē, *down*)	dēterior, dēterius, *inferior*	dēterrimus, *worst*
(prae, prō, *before*)	prior, prius, *former*	prīmus, *first*
posterus, *following*	posterior, *later*	postrēmus, *latest, last*
īnferus, *below*	īnferior, īnferius, *lower*	īnfimus, īmus, *lowest*
superus, *above*	superior, superius, *higher*	suprēmus, summus, *highest*
exterus, *foreign* (C. III. 43)	exterior, *outer*	extrēmus, *outermost*

ADVERBS

34. *a.* Adverbs regularly formed from Adjectives have the Positive in **-ē** (**-ĕ** in **facile**) or **-ter**, the Comparative in **-ius**, and the Superlative in **-ē**:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
amplē (amplus), *fully*	**amplius**, *more fully*	**amplissimē**, *most fully*
aegrē (aeger), *ill*	**aegrius**	**aegerrimē**
mātūrē (mātūrus), *early*	**mātūrius**	**mātūrrimē**
facile (facilis), *easily*	**facilius**	**facillimē**
fortiter (fortis), *bravely*	**fortius**	**fortissimē**
audācter (audāx), *boldly*	**audācius**	**audācissimē**
ācriter (ācer), *fiercely*	**ācrius**	**ācerrimē**

b. Some Adverbs formed from Adjectives end in **-ō** (**-ŏ** in **cito**), as **continuō, subitō, prīmō**; such, with Comparative and Superlative, are:

crēbrō (crēber), *frequently*	**crēbrius**	**crēberrimē**
tūtō (tūtus), *safely*	**tūtius**	**tūtissimē**
cito (citus), *quickly*	**citius**	**citissimē**

c. A few Adverbs formed from Adjectives end in **-um** (Acc. Singular Neuter), as **multum (multus)**, *much* (III. 9); in **-tim**, as **prīvātim (prīvātus)**, *privately* (I. 17); and in **-tus**, as **antīquitus (antīquus)**, *in ancient times* (II. 4).

35. The following Adverbs have irregularities in Formation or in Comparison:

bene, *well*	melius, *better*	optimē, *best*
male, *ill*	peius, *worse*	pessimē, *worst*
magnopere, *greatly*	magis, *more*	maximē, *most*
multum, *much*	plūs, *more*	plūrimum, *most*
nōn multum, parum, *little*	minus, *less*	minimē, *least*
nūper, *recently*	——	nūperrimē, *most recently, very recently*
diū, *long*	diūtius, *longer*	diūtissimē, *longest*
saepe, *often*	saepius, *oftener*	saepissimē, *most often, oftenest*
prope, *near*	propius, *nearer*	proximē, *nearest, next*
——	potius, *rather*	potissimum, *especially, above all*
satis, *enough*	satius, *better*	——
——	prius, *before*	prīmum, *first*

NUMERALS

36. The Roman Notation, and Cardinal, Ordinal, and Distributive Adjectives are presented in the following list:

Roman Notation	Cardinals	Ordinals	Distributives
I.	ūnus, ūna, ūnum,	prīmus, *first*	singulī, *one by one*
II.	duo, duae, duo	secundus, *second*	bīnī, *two each*
III.	trēs, tria, *three*	tertius, *third*	ternī, trīnī, *three by three, three each*
IIII, or IV.	quattuor, *four*	quārtus, *fourth*	quaternī, *four by four, four each*
V.	quīnque, *five*	quīntus, *fifth*	quīnī, *five by five, five each*
VI.	sex, *six*	sextus, *sixth*	sēnī, *six by six, six each*
VII.	septem, *seven*	septimus, *seventh*	septēnī, *by sevens, seven each*
VIII.	octō, *eight*	octāvus, *eighth*	octōnī, *by eights, eight apiece*
VIIII, or IX.	novem, *nine*	nōnus, *ninth*	novēnī, *nine each*
X.	decem, *ten*	decimus, *tenth*	dēnī, *ten each*
XI.	ūndecim, *eleven*	ūndecimus, *eleventh*	ūndēnī, *eleven each*
XII.	duodecim, *twelve*	duodecimus, *twelfth*	duodēnī, *twelve each*
XIII.	tredecim, *thirteen*	tertius decimus, *thirteenth*	ternī dēnī, *thirteen each*
XIIII, or XIV.	quattuordecim, *fourteen*	quārtus decimus, *fourteenth*	quaternī dēnī, *fourteen each*
XV.	quīndecim, *fifteen*	quīntus decimus, *fifteenth*	quīnī dēnī, *fifteen each*
XVI.	sēdecim, *sixteen*	sextus decimus, *sixteenth*	sēnī dēnī, *sixteen each*

Roman Notation	Cardinals	Ordinals	Distributives
XVII.	septendecim, *seventeen*	septimus decimus, *seventeenth*	septēnī dēnī, *seventeen each*
XVIII.	duodēvīgintī, *eighteen*	duodēvīcēsimus, *eighteenth*	duodēvīcēnī, *eighteen each*
XVIIII, or XIX.	ūndēvīgintī, *nineteen*	ūndēvīcēsimus, *nineteenth*	ūndēvīcēnī, *nineteen each*
XX.	vīgintī, *twenty*	vīcēsimus, *twentieth*	vīcēnī, *twenty each*
XXI.	vīgintī ūnus, ūnus et vīgintī, *twenty-one*	vīcēsimus prīmus ūnus et vīcēsimus, *twenty-first*	vīcēnī singulī, singulī et vīcēnī, *twenty-one each*
XXII.	vīgintī duo, duo et vīgintī, *twenty-two*	vīcēsimus secundus, alter et vīcēsimus, *twenty-second*	vīcēnī bīnī, bīnī et vīcēnī, *twenty-two each*
XXX.	trīgintā, *thirty*	trīcēsimus, *thirtieth*	trīcēnī, *thirty each*
XXXX, or XL.	quadrāgintā, *forty*	quadrāgēsimus, *fortieth*	quadrāgēnī, *forty each*
L.	quīnquāgintā, *fifty*	quīnquāgēsimus, *fiftieth*	quīnquāgēnī, *fifty each*
LX.	sexāgintā, *sixty*	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēnī, *sixty each*
LXX.	septuāgintā, *seventy*	septuāgēsimus, *seventieth*	septuāgēnī, *seventy each*
LXXX.	octōgintā, *eighty*	octōgēsimus, *eightieth*	octōgēnī, *eighty each*
LXXXX, or XC.	nōnāgintā, *ninety*	nōnāgēsimus, *ninetieth*	nōnāgēnī, *ninety each*
C.	centum, *one hundred*	centēsimus *one hundredth*	centēnī, *one hundred each*
CI.	centum ūnus, centum et ūnus, *one hundred and one*	centēsimus prīmus, centēsimus et prīmus, *hundred and first*	centēnī singulī, *one hundred and one each*
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a, *two hundred*	ducentēsimus, *two hundredth*	ducēnī, *two hundred each*
CCC.	trecentī, -ae, -a, *three hundred*	trecentēsimus, *three hundredth*	trecēnī, *three hundred each*
CCCC.	quadringentī, *four hundred*	quadringentēsimus, *four hundredth*	quadringēnī, *four hundred each*
D.	quīngentī, *five hundred*	quīngentēsimus, *five hundredth*	quīngēnī, *five hundred each*
DC.	sescentī, *six hundred*	sescentēsimus, *six hundredth*	sescēnī, *six hundred each*
DCC.	septingentī, *seven hundred*	septingentēsimus, *seven hundredth*	septingēnī, *seven hundred each*
DCCC.	octingentī, *eight hundred*	octingentēsimus, *eight hundredth*	octingēnī, *eight hundred each*
DCCCC.	nōngentī, *nine hundred*	nōngentēsimus, *nine hundredth*	nōngēnī, *nine hundred each*
M.	mīlle, *thousand*	mīllēsimus, *thousandth*	singula mīlia, *a thousand each*
MM.	duo mīlia, *two thousand*	bis mīllēsimus, *a two thousandth*	bīna mīlia, *two thousand each*

37. *a.* **Ūnus** is declined like **tōtus** (*23, a*).

b. **Duo** (I. 48) and **trēs** (I. 1) are declined thus:

Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

c. Like **duo** is declined **ambō** (V. 44), excepting **-ō** instead of **-o**.

d. **Ducentī, -ae, -a** (I. 43) and the other words for *hundreds* to **nōngentī, -ae, -a** (C. III. 71) are declined like the Plural of **bonus**, but the Genitive Plural generally ends in **-um**.

e. When Plural Nouns, which generally have a Singular Meaning, are used with a Plural Meaning, a Numeral in agreement must be Distributive; with such Nouns **trīnī** is always used instead of **ternī**. Thus, **trīnīs catēnīs**, *with three chains* (I. 53).

38. *a.* **Mīlle** (I. 22) in the Singular is used as an Indeclinable Adjective. In the Plural it is used as a Substantive and thus declined:

Nom. mīlia *Gen.* mīlium *Dat.* mīlibus *Acc.* mīlia *Abl.* mīlibus

b. The Roman numerical symbols are frequently used in place of Ordinal as well as Cardinal Adjectives. In reading Latin the proper form of the Adjective should be supplied; thus **ducenta quadrāgintā** should be read for **CCXL** in **mīlia passuum CCXL** (I. 2); **decimā** for **X** in **legiōne X** (C. III. 91).

PRONOUNS

39. *a.* The Personal Pronouns of the First and Second Person are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	ego, *I*	nōs, *we*	tū, *thou*	vōs, *you*
Gen.	meī	nostrum, nostrī	tuī	vestrum, vestrī
Dat.	mihī	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Voc.	——	——	tū	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

b. The place of a Personal Pronoun of the Third Person is taken by the demonstratives (*160, a* and *b*).

40. *a.* In the oblique cases the Pronouns of the First and Second Person may be used in a Reflexive sense, as **vōs recipite**, lit. *take yourselves back, retreat* (VII. 50); **meī**, may mean *of myself*, **tibi**, *to* or *for thyself, yourself*, etc.

b. The Reflexive Pronoun of the Third Person has no separate forms for the three genders, and is declined in Singular and Plural alike, as follows:

Gen. **suī**, *of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves*
Dat. **sibi**, *to* or *for himself, herself, itself, themselves*
Acc. **sē** or **sēsē**, *himself, herself, itself, themselves*
Abl. **sē** or **sēsē**, *with*, or *by, himself, herself, itself, themselves*

41. The Possessive Pronouns are declined like Adjectives. They are: **meus, mea, meum**, *my;* **noster, nostra, nostrum**, *our;* **tuus, tua, tuum**, *thy;* **vester, vestra, vestrum**, *your;* and **suus, sua, suum**, *his, her, its, their.* **Suus** is used only in a Reflexive sense.

42. *a.* The Demonstrative Pronouns are **hīc**, *this, such;* **iste**, *that* of yours, *that:* **ille**, *that, such;* **is**, *that, he, such,* and **īdem**, *the same.*

b. **Hīc**, *this, such,* is declined thus:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

43. *a.* The Demonstrative Pronoun **ille**, *that, such,* is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

b. The Demonstrative Pronoun **iste, ista, istud**, *that of yours, that,* is declined like **ille.**

44. The Demonstrative Pronoun **is**, *that, he, such,* is thus declined:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, iī,	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

45. The Demonstrative Pronoun **īdem**, *the same,* is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem, iīdem, *or* īdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem, iīsdem, *or* īsdem	eīsdem, iīsdem, *or* īsdem	eīsdem, iīsdem, *or* īsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem, iīsdem, *or* īsdem	eīsdem, iīsdem, *or* īsdem	eīsdem, iīsdem, *or* īsdem

46. The Intensive Pronoun **ipse**, *self*, is thus declined:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

47. The Relative Pronoun **quī**, *who, which*, is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

48. *a.* The Substantive Interrogative Pronoun is **quis, quid**, *who? what?* It is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom.	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

b. The Adjective Interrogative Pronoun is **quī, quae, quod**, *what?* as **quī numerus**, *what number?* (I. 29). It is declined like the Relative Pronoun (*47*).

c. Interrogative **quis** and **quī** may be strengthened by **-nam**, as **quibusnam manibus**, *by what hands, pray?* (II. 30).

49. *a.* The Indefinite Pronouns follow the Declension of the Relative and Interrogative Pronouns, but only the Pronominal Part of the Compounds is declined. The following Indefinite Pronouns are used by Caesar, in both Substantive and Adjective forms:

Substantive Forms			Adjective Forms			
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
quis *or* quī (Masc.)	quid	*any one, anything*	quī *or* quis	quae *or* qua	quod	*any*
			Nom. and *acc.* Pl. Neut., quae *or* qua			
aliquis aliquī (V. 26)	aliquid	*some one, something*	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod	*any*
quispiam	quidpiam	*some one, something*	quispiam	quaepiam	quodpiam	*some*
quisquam	quicquam	*any one, anything at all*	quisquam		quicquam	*any* (rare)
(Plural lacking.)			(Plural lacking.)			
quisque	quidque	*each one, each thing*	quisque	quaeque	quodque	*each*
quīvīs quaevīs quidvīs *acc.* quemvīs quamvīs quidvīs		*any one, anything you please*	quīvīs *acc.* quemvīs	quaevīs quamvīs	quodvīs quodvīs	*any you please*
quīdam quaedam quiddam *acc.* quendam quandam quiddam		*a certain person, or thing*	quīdam *acc.* quendam	quaedam quandam	quoddam quoddam	*a certain*

b. The Indefinite Pronoun **quis, quī**, is used by Caesar only after **sī, nisī, seu, nē, neu**, and **ubi**.

50. *a.* The Indefinite Relative **quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**, *whoever, whatever*, the first part **quī-** being declined like the relative **quī**, is used both as an Adjective and as a Substantive; as **quaecumque bella**, *whatever wars* (I. 44), **quīcumque bellum īnferant**, *whoever*, or *no matter who, should wage war* (IV. 7).

b. The parts of the Indefinite Relative **quisquis, quidquid** or **quicquid**, *whoever, whatever*, are both declined like **quis** (*48*), but only **quisquis, quicquid** (II. 17), and **quōquō** are in common use.

51. Caesar uses two compounds of **uter** (*23, a*) with the force of Indefinite Pronouns, **uterque, utraque, utrumque** (**utrīusque**, *etc.*), *each of two*, Plural *both, the two;* and **alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum**, *one or the other*, as **alterutrō exercitū**, *the one or the other army* (C. III. 90).

VERBS[1]

52. The verb **sum** is inflected as follows:

PRINCIPAL PARTS:

PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE	PERF. INDICATIVE	FUT. PART. (Perf. Part. lacking)
sum	**esse**	**fuī**	**futūrus**

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sum, *I am*	**sumus**, *we are*
es, *thou art*	**estis**, *you are*
est, *he (she, it) is*	**sunt**, *they are*

IMPERFECT

eram, *I was*	**erāmus**, *we were*
erās, *thou wast*	**erātis**, *you were*
erat, *he was*	**erant**, *they were*

FUTURE

erō, *I shall be*	**erimus**, *we shall be*
eris, *thou wilt be*	**eritis**, *you will be*
erit, *he will be*	**erunt**, *they will be*

PERFECT

fuī, *I have been, I was*	**fuimus**, *we have been, we were*
fuistī, *thou hast been, you were*	**fuistis**, *you have been, you were*
fuit, *he has been, he was*	**fuērunt**, **fuēre**, *they have been, they were*

PLUPERFECT

fueram, *I had been*	**fuerāmus**, *we had been*
fuerās, *thou hadst, you had, been*	**fuerātis**, *you had been*
fuerat, *he had been*	**fuerant**, *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, *I shall have been*	**fuerimus**, *we shall have been*
fueris, *thou wilt have been*	**fueritis**, *you will have been*
fuerit, *he will have been*	**fuerint**, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sim	**sīmus**
sīs	**sītis**
sit	**sint**

IMPERFECT

essem	**essēmus**
essēs	**essētis**
esset	**essent**

PERFECT

fuerim	**fuerīmus**
fuerīs	**fuerītis**
fuerit	**fuerint**

PLUPERFECT

fuissem	**fuissēmus**
fuissēs	**fuissētis**
fuisset	**fuissent**

[1] Since the Principal Parts of all the Verbs in the Latin Text of this book are given in the Vocabulary, it has not been thought necessary to extend this outline by presenting either a List of Verbs or a discussion of the Stems.

IMPERATIVE

Pres. **es**, *be thou* **este**, *be ye*
Fut. **estō**, *thou shalt be* **estōte**, *ye shall be*
estō, *he shall be* **suntō**, *they shall be*

INFINITIVE

Pres. **esse**, *to be*
Perf. **fuisse**, *to have been*
Fut. **futūrus esse**, *or* **fore**, *to be about to be*

PARTICIPLE

Fut. **futūrus**, *about to be*

FIRST CONJUGATION

53. Verbs of the First Conjugation are inflected like **amō**, *I love*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS:

PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE	PERF. INDICATIVE	PERF. PASS. PARTICIPLE
Active. **amō**	**amāre**	**amāvī**	**amātus**
PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE		PERF. INDICATIVE
Passive. **amor**	**amārī**		**amātus sum**

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
amō, *I love*	**amāmus**, *we love*
amās, *you love*	**amātis**, *you love*
amat, *he loves*	**amant**, *they love*

IMPERFECT

amābam, *I was loving*	**amābāmus**, *we were loving*
amābās, *you were loving*	**amābātis**, *you were loving*
amābat, *he was loving*	**amābant**, *they were loving*

FUTURE

amābō, *I shall love*	**amābimus**, *we shall love*
amābis, *thou wilt, you will, love*	**amābitis**, *you will love*
amābit, *he will love*	**amābunt**, *they will love*

PERFECT

amāvī, *I have loved, I loved*	**amāvimus**, *we have loved, we loved*
amāvistī, *you have loved, you loved*	**amāvistis**, *you have loved, you loved*
amāvit, *he has loved, he loved*	**amāvērunt**, **-ēre**, *they have loved, they loved*

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
I am loved, etc.	
amor	**amāmur**
amāris or **-re**	**amāminī**
amātur	**amantur**

IMPERFECT

I was loved, etc.

amābar	**amābāmur**
amābāris *or* **-re**	**amābāminī**
amābātur	**amābantur**

FUTURE

I shall be loved, etc.

amābor	**amābimur**
amāberis, *or* **-re**	**amābiminī**
amābitur	**amābuntur**

PERFECT

I have been loved or *I was loved*, etc.

amātus (-a, -um) sum	**amātī (-ae, -a) sumus**
amātus es	**amātī estis**
amātus est	**amātī sunt**

Active Voice

INDICATIVE MOOD

Pluperfect

amāveram, *I had loved*,	**amāverāmus**, *we had loved*
amāverās, *you had loved*	**amāverātis**, *you had loved*
amāverat, *he had loved*	**amāverant**, *they had loved*

Future Perfect

amāverō, *I shall have loved*	**amāverimus**, *we shall have loved*
amāveris, *you will have loved*	**amāveritis**, *you will have loved*
amāverit, *he will have loved*	**amāverint**, *they will have loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
I may love, let us love, etc.	
amem	**amēmus**
amēs	**amētis**
amet	**ament**

Imperfect

I might love

amārem	**amārēmus**
amārēs	**amārētis**
amāret	**amārent**

Perfect

I may have loved

amāverim	**amāverīmus**
amāverīs	**amāverītis**
amāverit	**amāverint**

Pluperfect

I might have loved

amāvissem	**amāvissēmus**
amāvissēs	**amāvissētis**
amāvisset	**amāvissent**

Passive Voice

INDICATIVE MOOD

Pluperfect

I had been loved, etc.

amātus erām [1]	**amātī erāmus**
amātus erās	**amātī erātis**
amātus erat	**amātī erant**

Future Perfect

I shall have been loved

amātus erō [1]	**amātī erimus**
amātus eris	**amātī eritis**
amātus erit	**amātī erunt**

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
I may be loved, etc.	
amer	**amēmur**
amēris, *or* **-re**	**amēminī**
amētur	**amentur**

Imperfect

I might be loved

amārer	**amārēmur**
amārēris, *or* **-re**	**amārēminī**
amārētur	**amārentur**

Perfect

I may have been loved

amātus sim [2]	**amātī sīmus**
amātus sīs	**amātī sītis**
amātus sit	**amātī sint**

Pluperfect

I might have been loved

amātus essem [2]	**amātī essēmus**
amātus essēs	**amātī essētis**
amātus esset	**amātī essent**

---

[1] In the Perfect Passive **fuī**, **fuistī**, **fuit**, *etc.*, are sometimes used for **sum**, **es**, **est**, *etc.*, and **fueram**, **fuerās**, **fuerō**, *etc.*, for **eram**, **erō**, *etc.*

[2] Here **fuerim**, **fuerīs**, **fuissem**, *etc.*, are sometimes used for **sim**, **essem**, *etc.*

Active Voice

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	**amā**, *love thou*	**amāte**, *love ye*
Fut.	**amātō**, *thou shalt love*	**amātōte**, *ye shall love*
	amātō, *he shall love*	**amantō**, *they shall love*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**amāre**, *to love*
Perf.	**amāvisse**, *to have loved*
Fut.	**amātūrus esse**, *to be about to love*

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	**amāns**, *loving* (*Gen.* **amantis**)
Fut.	**amātūrus**, *about to love*

GERUND

Gen.	**amandī**, *of loving*
Dat.	**amandō**, *for loving*
Acc.	**amandum**, *loving*
Abl.	**amandō**, *by loving*

SUPINE

Acc.	**amātum**, *to love*
Abl.	**amātū**, *to love, to be loved*

Passive Voice

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	**amāre**, *be thou loved*	**amāminī**, *be ye loved*
Fut.	**amātor**, *thou shalt be loved*	**amantor**, *they shall be loved*
	amātor, *he shall be loved*	

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**amārī**, *to be loved*
Perf.	**amātus esse**, *to have been loved*
Fut.	**amātum īrī**, *to be about to be loved*

PARTICIPLE

Perfect.	**amātus**, *loved, having been loved*
Gerundive.	**amandus**, *to be loved, worthy to be loved*

SECOND CONJUGATION

54. Verbs of the Second Conjugation are conjugated like **moneō**, *I advise.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS:

	PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE	PERF. INDICATIVE	PERF. PASS. PARTICIPLE
Active.	**moneō**	**monēre**	**monuī**	**monitus**

	PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE	PERF. INDICATIVE
Passive.	**moneor**	**monērī**	**monitus sum**

Active Voice

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense

I advise, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
moneō	**monēmus**
monēs	**monētis**
monet	**monent**

Passive Voice

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense

I am advised, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
moneor	**monēmur**
monēris or **-re**	**monēminī**
monētur	**monentur**

Active Voice

INDICATIVE MOOD

Imperfect

I was advising, or *I advised*, etc.

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

Future

I shall advise

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

Perfect

I have advised, or *I advised*

monuī	monuimus
monuistī	monuistis
monuit	monuērunt, *or* -ēre

Pluperfect

I had advised

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

Future Perfect

I shall have advised

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

I may advise, let us advise, etc.

moneam	moneāmus
moneās	moneātis
moneat	moneant

Imperfect

I might advise, you would advise

monērem	monērēmus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

Passive Voice

INDICATIVE MOOD

Imperfect

I was advised, etc.

monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris, *or* -re	monēbāminī
monēbātur	monēbantur

Future

I shall be advised

monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis, *or* -re	monēbiminī
monēbitur	monēbuntur

Perfect

I have been advised, I was advised

monitus sum	monitī sumus
monitus es	monitī estis
monitus est	monitī sunt

Pluperfect

I had been advised

monitus eram	monitī erāmus
monitus erās	monitī erātis
monitus erat	monitī erant

Future Perfect

I shall have been advised

monitus erō	monitī erimus
monitus eris	monitī eritis
monitus erit	monitī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

I may be advised, etc.

monear	moneāmur
moneāris, *or* -re	moneāminī
moneātur	moneantur

Imperfect

I might be advised

monērer	monērēmur
monērēris, *or* -re	monērēminī
monērētur	monērentur

Active Voice

SUBJUNCTIVE

Perfect

I may have advised, etc.

monuerim	**monuerīmus**
monuerīs	**monuerītis**
monuerit	**monuerint**

Pluperfect

I might have advised, you would have advised, etc.

monuissem	**monuissēmus**
monuissēs	**monuissētis**
monuisset	**monuissent**

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	**monē**, *advise thou*	**monēte**, *advise ye*
Fut.	**monētō**, *thou shalt advise*	**monētōte**, *ye shall advise*
	monētō, *he shall advise*	**monentō**, *they shall advise*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**monēre**, *to advise*
Perf.	**monuisse**, *to have advised*
Fut.	**monitūrus esse**, *to be about to advise*

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	**monēns**, *advising* (*Gen.* **monentis**)
Fut.	**monitūrus**, *about to advise*

GERUND

Gen.	**monendī**, *of advising*
Dat.	**monendō**, *for advising*
Acc.	**monendum**, *advising*
Abl.	**monendō**, *by advising,*

SUPINE

Acc.	**monitum**, *to advise*
Abl.	**monitū**, *to advise, to be advised*

Passive Voice

SUBJUNCTIVE

Perfect

I may have been advised, etc.

monitus sim	**monitī sīmus**
monitus sīs	**monitī sītis**
monitus sit	**monitī sint**

Pluperfect

I might have been advised

monitus essem	**monitī essēmus**
monitus essēs	**monitī essētis**
monitus esset	**monitī essent**

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	**monēre**, *be thou advised*	**monēminī**, *be ye advised*
Fut.	**monētor**, *thou shalt be advised*	
	monētor, *he shall be advised*	**monentor**, *they shall be advised*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**monērī**, *to be advised*
Perf.	**monitus esse**, *to have been advised*
Fut.	**monitum īrī**, *to be about to be advised*

PARTICIPLE

Perfect,	**monitus**, *advised, having been advised*
Gerundive,	**monendus**, *to be advised, worthy to be advised*

THIRD CONJUGATION

55. Verbs of the Third Conjugation are inflected like **regō**, *I rule*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS:

	PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE	PERF. INDICATIVE	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
Active.	regō	regere	rēxī	rēctus
	PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE	PERF. INDICATIVE	
Passive.	regor	regī	rēctus sum	

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

I rule, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
regō	regimus
regis	regitis
regit	regunt

IMPERFECT

I was ruling, or *I ruled*

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

FUTURE

I shall rule

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
reget	regent

PERFECT

I have ruled, or *I ruled*

rēxī	rēximus
rēxistī	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxērunt, *or* -ēre

PLUPERFECT

I had ruled

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have ruled

rēxerō	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

I am ruled, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
regor	regimur
regeris or -re	regiminī
regitur	reguntur

IMPERFECT

I was ruled

regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbāris, *or* -re	regēbāminī
regēbātur	regēbantur

FUTURE

I shall be ruled

regar	regēmur
regēris, *or* -re	regēminī
regētur	regentur

PERFECT

I have been ruled, or *I was ruled*

rēctus sum	rēctī sumus
rēctus es	rēctī estis
rēctus est	rēctī sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had been ruled

rēctus eram	rēctī erāmus
rēctus erās	rēctī erātis
rēctus erat	rēctī erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been ruled

rēctus erō	rēctī erimus
rēctus eris	rēctī eritis
rēctus erit	rēctī erunt

Active Voice

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

I may rule, let us rule, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
regam	**regāmus**
regās	**regātis**
regat	**regant**

Imperfect

I might rule, you would rule, etc.

regerem	**regerēmus**
regerēs	**regerētis**
regeret	**regerent**

Perfect

I may have ruled

rēxerim	**rēxerīmus**
rēxerīs	**rēxerītis**
rēxerit	**rēxerint**

Pluperfect

I might have ruled, you would have ruled

rēxissem	**rēxissēmus**
rēxissēs	**rēxissētis**
rēxisset	**rēxissent**

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	**rege**, *rule thou*	**regite**, *rule ye*
Fut.	**regitō**, *thou shalt rule*	**regitōte**, *ye shall rule*
	regitō, *he shall rule*	**reguntō**, *they shall rule*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**regere**, *to rule*
Perf.	**rēxisse**, *to have ruled*
Fut.	**rēctūrus esse**, *to be about to rule*

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	**regēns**, *ruling* (*Gen.* **regentis**)
Fut.	**rēctūrus**, *about to rule*

Passive Voice

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

I may be ruled, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
regar	**regāmur**
regāris, *or* **-re**	**regāminī**
regātur	**regantur**

Imperfect

I might be ruled, you would be ruled

regerer	**regerēmur**
regerēris, *or* **-re**	**regerēminī**
regerētur	**regerentur**

Perfect

I may have been ruled

rēctus sim	**rēctī sīmus**
rēctus sīs	**rēctī sītis**
rēctus sit	**rēctī sint**

Pluperfect

I might have been ruled, you would have been ruled

rēctus essem	**rectī essēmus**
rēctus essēs	**rectī essētis**
rēctus esset	**rectī essent**

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	**regere**, *be thou ruled*	**regiminī**, *be ye ruled*
Fut.	**regitor**, *thou shalt be ruled*	
	regitor, *he shall be ruled*	**reguntor**, *they shall be ruled*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**regī**, *to be ruled*
Perf.	**rēctus esse**, *to have been ruled*
Fut.	**rēctum īrī**, *to be about to be ruled*

PARTICIPLE

Perfect,	**rēctus**, *ruled, having been ruled*
Gerundive	**regendus**, *to be ruled, deserving to be ruled*

Active Voice

GERUND	SUPINE
Gen. **regendī**, *of ruling*	
Dat. **regendō**, *for ruling*	
Acc. **regendum**, *ruling*	*Acc.* **rēctum**, *to rule*
Abl. **regendō**, *by ruling*	*Abl.* **rēctū**, *to rule, to be ruled*

56. Verbs in **-iō** of the Third Conjugation have in the present system forms in which **-i-** is followed by a vowel; these forms are like the corresponding forms of the Fourth Conjugation. An example is **capiō**, *I take.*

Principal Parts:

	Pres. Indicative	Pres. Infinitive	Perf. Indicative	Perf. Pass. Partic.
Active.	capiō	capere	cēpī	captus
	Pres. Indicative	**Pres. Infinitive**	**Perf. Indicative**	
Passive.	capior	capī	captus sum	

Active Voice

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense

SINGULAR	PLURAL
capiō	capimus
capis	capitis
capit	capiunt

Imperfect

capiēbam	capiēbāmus
capiēbās	capiēbātis
capiēbat	capiēbant

Future

capiam	capiēmus
capiēs	capiētis
capiet	capient

Perfect

cēpī	cēpimus
cēpistī	cēpistis
cēpit	cēpērunt *or* -ēre

Pluperfect

cēperam	cēperāmus
cēperās	cēperātis
cēperat	cēperant

Future Perfect

cēperō	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

Passive Voice

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense

SINGULAR	PLURAL
capior	capimur
caperis, *or* -re	capiminī
capitur	capiuntur

Imperfect

capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbāris	capiēbāminī
capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Future

capiar	capiēmur
capiēris	capiēminī
capiētur	capientur

Perfect

captus sum	captī sumus
captus es	captī estis
captus est	captī sunt

Pluperfect

captus eram	captī erāmus
captus erās	captī erātis
captus erat	captī erant

Future Perfect

captus erō	captī erimus
captus eris	captī eritis
captus erit	captī erunt

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
SUBJUNCTIVE		**SUBJUNCTIVE**	
Present		Present	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris, *or* -re	capiāminī
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur
Imperfect		Imperfect	
caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris	caperēminī
caperet	caperent	caperētur	caperentur
Perfect		Perfect	
cēperim	cēperīmus	captus sim	captī sīmus
cēperis	cēperītis	captus sīs	captī sītis
cēperit	cēperint	captus sit	captī sint
Pluperfect		Pluperfect	
cēpissem	cēpissēmus	captus essem	captī essēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis	captus essēs	captī essētis
cēpisset	cēpissent	captus esset	captī essent
IMPERATIVE		**IMPERATIVE**	
Pres. cape	capite	*Pres.* capere	capiminī
Fut. capitō	capitōte	*Fut.* capitor	
capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. capere	*Pres.* capiēns (*Gen.* capientīs)	*Pres.* capī	
Perf. cēpisse		*Perf.* captus esse	*Perf.* captus
Fut. captūrus esse	*Fut.* captūrus	*Fut.* captum īrī	*Ger.* capiendus

GERUND		SUPINE	
Gen.	capiendī		
Dat.	capiendō		
Acc.	capiendum	*Acc.*	captum
Abl.	capiendō	*Abl.*	captū

57. *a.* Inflected like **capiō** are its Compounds, **accipiō**, **concipiō**, **dēcipiō**, **excipiō**, **incipiō**, **percipiō**, **praecipiō**, **recipiō**, and **suscipiō**.

b. The following verbs in **-iō**, inflected like **capiō**, are used by Caesar: **cupiō**, *ardently desire, wish well to* (I. 18, etc.); **faciō**, *do, make*, and its Compounds **afficiō**, **cōnficiō**, **dēficiō**, **efficiō**, **īnficiō**, **perficiō**, **praeficiō**, **prōficiō**, **reficiō** and **sufficiō**; **ēliciō**, *entice* (V. 50), **fodiō**, *dig* (VII. 73) and its Compounds **effodiō** (VII. 4), **īnfodiō** (VII. 73), **subfodiō** (IV. 12), **trānsfodiō** (VII. 82); **fugiō**, *run away*,

and its Compounds **cōnfugiō**, **dēfugiō**, **effugiō**, **perfugiō**, **prōfugiō**, and **refugiō**; **iaciō**, *throw*, and its Compounds **abiciō**, **coniciō**, **dēiciō**, **disiciō**, **ēiciō**, **iniciō**, **obiciō**, **prōiciō**, **reiciō**, and **subiciō**; **pariō**, *bring forth, gain* (C. III. 82); two Compounds of **quatiō**, *shake*, **discutiō** (VII. 8) and **percutiō** (V. 44); five Compounds of **rapiō**, *seize*, **arripiō** (V. 33), **corripiō**, **dīripiō**, **ēripiō** and **praeripiō**; **sapiō**, *have sense* (V. 30); **alliciō**, *attract* (V. 55, VII. 31); and Compounds of **speciō**, *look*, **cōnspiciō**, **dēspiciō**, **perspiciō**, **prōspiciō**, and **respiciō**.

c. Similar in inflection to the Passive of **capiō** are the following Deponent Verbs in **-ior** used by Caesar: **patior**, *suffer* (inflected below, *60*), and its Compound **perpetior** (C. III. 47); **morior**, *die* (I. 4, etc.); and the following Compounds of **gradior**, *step*: **aggredior**, **congredior**, **dēgredior**, **dīgredior**, **ēgredior**, **ingredior**, **praegredior**, **prōgredior**, and **regredior**.

FOURTH CONJUGATION

58. Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are inflected like **audiō**, *I hear*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS:

	PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE	PERF. INDICATIVE	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
Active.	**audiō**	**audīre**	**audīvī**	**audītus**
	PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE	PERF. INDICATIVE	
Passive.	**audior**	**audīrī**	**audītus sum**	

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

I hear, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiō	**audīmus**
audīs	**audītis**
audit	**audiunt**

IMPERFECT

I was hearing, or *I heard*

audiēbam	**audiēbāmus**
audiēbās	**audiēbātis**
audiēbat	**audiēbant**

FUTURE

I shall hear

audiam	**audiēmus**
audiēs	**audiētis**
audiet	**audient**

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

I am heard, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audior	**audīmur**
audīris, *or* **-re**	**audīminī**
audītur	**audiuntur**

IMPERFECT

I was heard

audiēbar	**audiēbāmur**
audiēbāris, *or* **-re**	**audiēbāminī**
audiēbātur	**audiēbantur**

FUTURE

I shall be heard

audiar	**audiēmur**
audiēris, *or* **-re**	**audiēminī**
audiētur	**audientur**

Active Voice

INDICATIVE MOOD

Perfect

I have heard, or *I heard*

audīvī	audīvimus
audīvistī	audīvistis
audīvit	audīvērunt, *or* -ēre

Pluperfect

I had heard

audīveram	audīverāmus
audīverās	audīverātis
audīverat	audīverant

Future Perfect

I shall have heard

audīverō	audīverimus
audīveris	audīveritis
audīverit	audīverint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

I may hear, let us hear, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiam	audiāmus
audiās	audiātis
audiat	audiant

Imperfect

I might hear, you would hear

audīrem	audīrēmus
audīrēs	audīrētis
audīret	audīrent

Perfect

I may have heard

audīverim	audīverīmus
audīverīs	audīverītis
audīverit	audīverint

Pluperfect

I might have heard, you would have heard

audīvissem	audīvissēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis
audīvisset	audīvissent

Passive Voice

INDICATIVE MOOD

Perfect

I have been heard, or *I was heard*

audītus sum	audītī sumus
audītus es	audītī estis
audītus est	audītī sunt

Pluperfect

I had been heard

audītus eram	audītī erāmus
audītus erās	audītī erātis
audītus erat	audītī erant

Future Perfect

I shall have been heard

audītus erō	audītī erimus
audītus eris	audītī eritis
audītus erit	audītī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

I may be heard, let us be heard, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiar	audiāmur
audiāris, *or* -re	audiāminī
audiātur	audiantur

Imperfect

I might be heard, you would be heard

audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēris, *or* -re	audīrēminī
audīrētur	audīrentur

Perfect

I may have been heard

audītus sim	audītī sīmus
audītus sīs	audītī sītis
audītus sit	audītī sint

Pluperfect

I might have been heard, you would have been heard

audītus essem	audītī essēmus
audītus essēs	audītī essētis
audītus esset	audītī essent

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
IMPERATIVE		**IMPERATIVE**	
Pres. **audī**, *hear thou*	**audīte**, *hear ye*	*Pres.* **audīre**, *be thou heard*	**audīminī**, *be ye heard*
Fut. **audītō**, *thou shalt hear*	**audītōte**, *ye shall hear*	*Fut.* **audītor**, *thou shalt be heard*	
audītō, *he shall hear*	**audiuntō**, *they shall hear*	**audītor**, *he shall be heard*	**audiuntor**, *they shall be heard*
INFINITIVE	**PARTICIPLE**	**INFINITIVE**	**PARTICIPLE**
Pres. **audīre**, *to hear*	*Pres.* **audiēns**, *hearing* (*Gen.* **audientis**)	*Pres.* **audīrī**, *to be heard*	*Perf.* **audītus**, *heard, having been heard*
Perf. **audīvisse**, *to have heard*		*Perf.* **audītus esse**, *to have been heard*	
Fut. **audītūrus esse**, *to be about to hear*	*Fut.* **audītūrus**, *about to hear*	*Fut.* **audītum īrī**, *to be about to be heard*	*Ger.* **audiendus**, *to be heard, worthy to be heard*
GERUND	**SUPINE**		
Gen. **audiendī**, *of hearing*			
Dat. **audiendō**, *for hearing*			
Acc. **audiendum**, *hearing*	*Acc.* **audītum**, *to hear*		
Abl. **audiendō**, *by hearing*	*Abl.* **audītū**, *to hear, to be heard*		

DEPONENT VERBS

59. *a.* The forms of Deponent Verbs are generally Passive, while the meaning is Active.

b. The Passive meaning is found in the Gerundive of Deponent Verbs, and sometimes in the Perfect Participle; as **dīmēnsō**, *measured off* (II. 19); **dēpopulātīs**, *having been ravaged* (I. 11).

c. Deponent Verbs have in the Active form a Future Infinitive, Present and Future Participles, Gerund, and Supine.

60. Deponent Verbs in the four conjugations are inflected, as **hortor**, *urge* (I. 19); **vereor**, *fear* (I. 19); **sequor**, *follow* (I. 22), and **patior**, *suffer, allow* (I. 6, 9); **largior**, *give freely* (I. 18):

INDICATIVE MOOD

	First Conjugation	Second Conjugation	Third Conjugation	Third Conj. in -iōr	Fourth Conjugation
Pres.	hortor	vereor	sequor	patior	largior
	hortāris, -re	verēris, -re	sequeris, -re	pateris, -re	largīris, -re
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	patitur	largītur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	patimur	largīmur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	patiminī	largīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	patiuntur	largiuntur
Imp.	hortābar, *etc.*	verēbar, *etc.*	sequēbar, *etc.*	patiēbar, *etc.*	largiēbar, *etc.*
Fut.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	patiar	largiar
Perf.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	passus sum	largītus sum
Plup.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	passus eram	largītus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	passus erō	largītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	horter	verear	sequar	patiar	largiar
Imp.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	paterer	largīrer
Perf.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	passus sim	largītus sim
Plup.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	passus essem	largītus essem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	patere	largīre
Fut.	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	patitor	largītor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	patī	largīrī
Perf.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	passus esse	largītus esse
Fut.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	passūrus esse	largītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	patiēns	largiēns
Fut.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	passūrus	largītūrus
Perf.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	passus	largītus
Ger.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	patiendus	largiendus

GERUND

Gen.	hortandī	verendī	sequendī	patiendī	largiendī
Dat.	hortandō	verendō	sequendō	patiendō	largiendō
Acc.	hortandum	verendum	sequendum	patiendum	largiendum
Abl.	hortandō	verendō	sequendō	patiendō	largiendō

SUPINE

Acc.	hortātum	veritum	secūtum	passum	largītum
Abl.	hortātū	veritu	secūtū	passū	largītū

61. *a.* Of the Deponent Verbs used by Caesar, besides those previously mentioned, the most important are:

(1) First Conjugation, **arbitror**, *think* (I. 4), **cohortor**, *urge on* (I. 25), **cōnor**, *attempt* (I. 3), **cōnsector**, *pursue* (III. 19), **cōnsōlor**, *reassure* (I. 20), **cōnspicor**, *catch sight of* (I. 25), **cunctor**, *delay* (III. 23), **dominor**, *hold sway* (II. 31), **frūmentor**, *get supplies* (IV. 9), **glōrior**, *boast* (I. 14), **grātulor**, *congratulate* (I. 30), **interpretor**, *expound* (VI. 13); **mīror**, *wonder* (I. 32) and **admīror** (I. 14); **miseror**, *lament* (I. 39); **moror**, *delay* (I. 39), and **dēmoror** (III. 6); **pābulor**, *get fodder* (V. 17), **populor**, *lay waste* (I. 11), and **dēpopulor**, *completely lay waste* (II. 7); **recordor**, *recall* (C. III. 72), **remūneror**, *compensate* (I. 44), and **speculor**, *spy out* (I. 47).

(2) Second Conjugation, **fateor**, *acknowledge* (C. III. 20), and its Compounds **cōnfiteor** (V. 27) and **profiteor** (VI. 23); **liceor**, *bid* (I. 18), and **polliceor**, *promise* (I. 14); **mereor**, *earn* (I. 40); **tueor**, *protect* (IV. 8), and **intueor**, *look upon* (I. 32); **vereor**, *be afraid* (I. 19).

(3) Third Conjugation, **complector**, *embrace* (I. 20), **dēfetīscor**, *become exhausted* (VII. 88); **fruor**, *enjoy* (III. 22); **lābor**, *slip, fall away* (V. 3), and **ēlābor**, *escape* (V. 37); **loquor**, *speak* (I. 20); **nāscor**, *be born, rise* (II. 18), and **ēnāscor**, *grow out* (II. 17); **nancīscor**, *obtain* (I. 53); **nītor**, *strive, rely on* (I. 13), and **innītor**, *lean upon* (II. 27); **oblīvīscor**, *forget* (I. 14), **proficīscor**, *set out* (I. 3), **queror**, *complain* (I. 16); the Compounds of **sequor**, **cōnsequor**, **exsequor**, **īnsequor**, **persequor**, **prōsequor**, **subsequor**; **reminīscor**, *remember* (I. 13), **ulcīscor**, *avenge* (I. 12); and **ūtor**, *use, adopt* (I. 5).

(4) Fourth Conjugation, **experior**, *try* (I. 31), **largior**, *give freely, bribe* (I. 18); **mētior**, *measure* (I. 16), and **dīmētior**, *measure off* (II. 19, IV. 17); **partior**, *divide* (III. 10), and **potior**, *become master of* (I. 3).

b. To the Fourth Conjugation belongs the Deponent **orior**, *rise*, with its Compounds **adorior**, *attack* (I. 13) and **coörior**, *arise* (III. 7); but Caesar uses certain forms of **orior** which are like those of Deponents in **-ior** of the Third Conjugation, as **oritur** (VI. 25) and **orerētur** (Imperfect Subjunctive; VI. 9, VII. 28).

62. Semi-Deponent Verbs have a Perfect System Passive in form but Active in meaning; they are **audeō** (I. 18), **fīdō** (C. III. 111)

with its compounds **cōnfīdō** (I. 23) and **diffīdō** (V. 41); **gaudeō** (IV. 13), and **soleō** (VI. 15):

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare.*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *trust.*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice.*
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be wont.*

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

63. The Periphrastic Conjugation has an Active and a Passive form, made up by combining the Future Active Participle and the Future Passive Participle, or Gerundive, with the verb **sum**, thus:

Active Periphrastic Conjugation

INDICATIVE MOOD		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
Pres.	**amātūrus (-a, -um) sum,** *I am about to love*	*Pres.*	**amātūrus sim,** *I may be about to love*
Imp.	**amātūrus eram,** *I was about to love*	*Imp.*	**amātūrus essem,** *I might be about to love*
Fut.	**amātūrus erō,** *I shall be about to love*	*Perf.*	**amātūrus fuerim,** *I may have been about to love*
Perf.	**amātūrus fuī,** *I have been, was, about to love*	*Plup.*	**amātūrus fuissem,** *I might have been about to love*
Plup.	**amātūrus fueram,** *I had been about to love*		
Fut. P.	**amātūrus fuerō,** *I shall have been about to love*		

INFINITIVE

Pres. **amātūrus esse,** *to be about to love*
Perf. **amātūrus fuisse,** *to have been about to love*

Passive Periphrastic Conjugation

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Pres.	**amandus (-a, -um) sum,** *I am to be loved, I must be loved*	*Pres.*	**amandus sim,** *I may have to be loved*
Imp.	**amandus eram,** *I had to be loved*	*Imp.*	**amandus essem,** *I might have to be loved*
Fut.	**amandus erō,** *I shall have to be loved*	*Perf.*	**amandus fuerim,** *I may have had to be loved*
Perf.	**amandus fuī,** *I have had to be loved, had to be loved*	*Plup.*	**amandus fuissem,** *I might have had to be loved*
Plup.	**amandus fueram,** *I had deserved to be loved*		
Fut. P.	**amandus fuerō,** *I shall have had to be loved*		

INFINITIVE

Pres. **amandus esse,** *to have to be loved*
Perf. **amandus fuisse,** *to have had to be loved*

64. *a.* Perfects in **-āvī**, **-ēvī**, and **-īvī**, and other tenses formed from the same stems, are sometimes contracted by the loss of **-vi-** or **-ve-** before **-s-** or **-r-**; Perfects in **-īvī** lose the **-v-** before **-r-** but retain the vowel. Examples are:

(1) **oppugnārant** (I. 5) for **oppugnāverant**; **adamāssent** (I. 31) for **adamāvissent**; **commemorāssent** (I. 14) for **commemorāvissent**; **superārint**, Perfect Subjunctive (I. 40) for **superāverint**; **superāssent** (I. 40) for **superāvissent**.

(2) **cōnsuērunt** (III. 8, etc.) for **cōnsuēvērunt**; **cōnsuērint** (I. 44, etc.) for **cōnsuēverint**; **cōnsuēsse** (I. 14) for **cōnsuēvisse**.

(3) **audiērunt** (V. 28) for **audīvērunt**; **audierit** (IV. 5) for **audīverit**; **audierant** (II. 12, VI. 37) for **audīverant**; **audīssent** (VII. 62) for **audīvissent**; **audīstis** (C. III. 87) for **audīvistis**.

b. The Future Passive Participle, or Gerundive, sometimes has the ending **-undus** instead of **-endus**, as **faciundī** (I. 7), **potiundī** (II. 7).

IRREGULAR VERBS

65. Of the Irregular Verbs Caesar most frequently uses **sum**, **dō**, **eō**, **ferō**, **fīō**, **volō** and certain compounds.

66. *a.* Of the compounds of **sum** Caesar uses **absum**, **adsum**, **dēsum**, **intersum**, **possum**, **praesum**, **prōsum**, **subsum**, and **supersum**. These are inflected like **sum** (*52*), excepting **possum**; but in **prō-sum** (**prōfuisse**, VI. 40) the preposition has the form **prōd-** before vowels, as **prōdest**.

b. **Possum**, *I am able*, is inflected as follows:

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **possum** **posse** **potuī**

INDICATIVE MOOD

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	possum	possumus
	potes	potestis
	potest	possunt
Imp.	poteram, poterās, *etc.*	poterāmus -erātis, *etc.*
Fut.	poterō, poteris, *etc.*	poterimus
Perf.	potuī, potuistī, *etc.*	potuimus
Plup.	potueram, potuerās, *etc.*	potuerāmus
Fut. P.	potuerō, potueris, *etc.*	potuerimus

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	possim	possīmus,
	possīs	possītis,
	possit	possint
Imp.	possem	possēmus
	possēs	possētis
	posset	possent
Perf.	potuerim	potuerīmus
	potuerīs	potuerītis
	potuerit	potuerint
Plup.	potuissem	potuissēmus
	potuissēs	potuissētis
	potuisset	potuissent

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	posse	*Pres.*	potēns (*used as an adjective*)
Perf.	potuisse	*Gen.*	potentis

67. *a.* **Dō, dare,** *give*, has **-a-** instead of **-ā-** in the Present System except in the Second Person of the Present Indicative and the Present Imperative. The inflection of the Perfect System (**dedī**, *etc.*), is regular.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **dō dare dedī datus**

ACTIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE MOOD		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
Pres.	dō	damus	*Pres.* dem	dēmus
	dās	datis	dēs	dētis
	dat	dant	det	dent
Imp.	dabam, *etc.*	dabāmus	*Imp.* darem	darēmus
Fut.	dabō, *etc.*	dabimus	darēs	darētis
Perf.	dedī, *etc.*	dedimus	daret	darent
Plup.	dederam, *etc.*	dederāmus	*Perf.* dederim, *etc.*	dederīmus, *etc.*
Fut. P.	dederō, *etc.*	dederimus	*Plup.* dedissem, *etc.*	dedissēmus, *etc.*

	IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres.	dā	date	*Pres.* dare	dāns
Fut.	datō	datōte	*Perf.* dedisse	
	datō	dantō	*Fut.* datūrus esse	datūrus

GERUND	SUPINE
dandī, *etc.*	datum, datū

b. The Passive of **dō** has **-a-** instead of **-ā-**, as **darī, datur, dabar, dabor, darer, datus**, *etc.*; the First Person of the Present Indicative Passive is not in use.

c. The compounds of **dō** are of the Third Conjugation except **circumdō**, which is inflected like **dō**.

68. *a.* **Eō, īre,** *go*, is thus inflected:

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **eō īre iī (īvī) itum (est)**

	INDICATIVE MOOD		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
Pres.	eō	īmus	*Pres.* eam	eāmus
	īs	ītis	eās	eātis
	it	eunt	eat	eant
Imp.	ībam, *etc.*	ībāmus	*Imp.* īrem	īrēmus
Fut.	ībō, *etc.*	ībimus	īrēs	īrētis
Perf.	iī	iimus	īret	īrent
	īstī *or* iistī	īstis *or* iistis	*Perf.* ierim	ierīmus
	iit	iērunt *or* iēre	ierīs	ierītis
Plup	ieram, *etc.*	ierāmus	ierit	ierint
Fut. P.	ierō, *etc.*	ierimus	*Plup.* īssem, *etc.*	īssēmus, *etc.*

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE	
Pres. ī	īte	*Pres.* īre	*Pres.* iēns	*Gen.* euntis
Fut. ītō	ītōte	*Perf.* īsse		
ītō	euntō	*Fut.* itūrus essė	*Fut.* itūrus	*Gerundive* eundum
		Pass. īrī		

GERUND	SUPINE
eundī, eundō, *etc.*	itum, itū

b. Caesar uses the Compounds **abeō**, **adeō**, **coeō** (VI. 22), **exeō**, **ineō**, **obeō**, **prōdeō**, **redeō**, **subeō**, and **trānseō**, inflected like **eō**.

c. Transitive compounds of **eō** are used also in the Passive, as **numerus inībātur**, *the number was cast up* (VII. 76); **initā aestāte**, *at the beginning of summer* (II. 2); **trānsītur**, *is crossed* (I. 6).

d. Impersonal Passive forms of **eō** are **īrī** (III. 18), **īrētur** (III. 24).

69. *a.* **Ferō, ferre,** *bear, carry*, is inflected as follows:

PRINCIPAL PARTS:

Active.	**ferō**	**ferre**	**tulī**	**lātus**
Passive.	**feror**	**ferrī**		**lātus sum**

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	ferō	ferimus
	fers	fertis
	fert	ferunt
Imp.	ferēbam, *etc.*	ferebāmus
Fut.	feram	ferēmus
Perf.	tulī	tulimus
Plup.	tuleram	tulerāmus
Fut. P.	tulerō	tulerimus

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Pres.	feram	ferāmus
	ferās	ferātis
	ferat	ferant
Imp.	ferrem	ferrēmus
	ferrēs	ferrētis
	ferret	ferrent
Perf.	tulerim	tulerīmus
Plup.	tulissem	tulissēmus

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	fer	ferte
Fut.	fertō	fertōte
	fertō	feruntō

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	feror	ferimur
	ferris	feriminī
	fertur	feruntur
Imp.	ferēbar	ferēbāmur
Fut.	ferar	ferēmur
Perf.	lātus sum	lātī sumus
Plup.	lātus eram	lātī erāmus
Fut. P.	lātus erō	lātī erimus

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Pres.	ferar	ferāmur
	ferāris, *or* -re	ferāminī
	ferātur	ferantur
Imp.	ferrer	ferrēmur
	ferrēris	ferrēminī
	ferrētur	ferrentur
Perf.	lātus sim	lātī sīmus
Plup.	lātus essem	lātī essēmus

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	ferre	feriminī
Fut.	fertor	
	fertor	feruntor

	Active Voice		Passive Voice	
	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres.	ferre	*Pres.* ferēns	*Pres.* ferrī	
Perf.	tulisse	(*Gen.* ferentis)	*Perf.* lātus esse	*Perf.* lātus
Fut.	lātūrus esse	*Fut.* lātūrus	*Fut.* lātum īrī	*Ger.* ferendus *or* ferundus

	GERUND	SUPINE
Gen.	ferendī	
Dat.	ferendō	
Acc.	ferendum	*Acc.* lātum
Abl.	ferendō	*Abl.* lātū

b. Caesar uses the Compounds, **afferō, anteferō, conferō, dēferō, differō, efferō, īnferō, offerō, perferō, praeferō, prōferō** and **referō**, which are inflected like **ferō**.

70. *a.* **Fīō**, *become* (with **-ī-** except in **fit** and before **-e-**), is used as the Passive of **faciō**, with the meaning *be made, be done.* It is inflected as follows:

Principal Parts: **fīō** **fierī** **factus sum**

	INDICATIVE MOOD		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	fīō	fīmus	*Pres.* fīam	fīāmus
	fīs	fītis	fīās	fīātis
	fit	fīunt	fīat	fīant
Imp.	fiēbam, *etc.*	fiēbāmus	*Imp.* fierem	fierēmus
Fut.	fiam	fiēmus	fierēs	fierētis
Perf.	factus sum	factī sumus	fieret	fierent
Plup.	factus eram	factī erāmus	*Perf.* factus sim	factī simus
Fut. P.	factus erō	factī erimus	*Plup.* factus essem	factī essēmus

IMPERATIVE

Pres. fī fīte

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. fierī	
Perf. factus esse	*Perf.* factus
Fut. factum īrī	*Ger.* faciendus

b. Of compounds of **fīō** Caesar uses **cōnfierī** (VII. 58) and **collabefierī** (C. II. 6).

c. Compounds of **facio** with Prepositions have their own Passive forms; so **cōnfecta erat**, *had been made* (I. 29); **patefierī**, *be kept open* (III. 1).

71. Volō, *I wish*, and its compounds **nōlō**, *I am unwilling*, and **mālō**, *I prefer*, are inflected as follows:

PRINCIPAL PARTS:	**volō**	**velle**	**voluī**
	nōlō	**nōlle**	**nōluī**
	mālō	**mālle**	**māluī**

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
volō	velim	nōlō	nōlim	mālō	mālim
vīs	velīs	nōn vīs	nōlīs	māvīs	mālīs
vult	velīt	nōn vult	nōlīt	māvult	mālit
volumus	velīmus	nōlumus	nōlīmus	mālumus	mālīmus
vultis	velītis	nōn vultis	nōlītis	māvultis	mālītis
volunt	velint	nōlunt	nōlint	mālunt	mālint
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
volēbam, *etc.*	vellem	nōlēbam	nōllem	mālēbam	māllem
FUTURE		FUTURE		FUTURE	
volam, *etc.*		nōlam		mālam	
PERFECT		PERFECT		PERFECT	
voluī, *etc.*	voluerim	nōluī	nōluerim	māluī	māluerim
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
volueram	voluissem	nōlueram	nōluissem	mālueram	māluissem
FUTURE PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
voluerō, *etc.*		nōluerō		māluerō	

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	nōlī	nolīte
Fut.	nōlītō	nolītōte
	nōlitō	nōluntō

INFINITIVE		INFINITIVE	INFINITIVE
Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	volēns	nōlēns	—

DEFECTIVE VERBS

72. *a.* Caesar uses one or more forms of each of the following Defective Verbs: **inquam**, *I say*, which he uses only in direct quotations, in the Third Person Singular Indicative Present, **inquit**, *he says, says he;* **coepī**, *I have begun, I began*, which belongs chiefly to the Perfect System; **meminī**, *I remember*, and **ōdī**, *I hate*, which are Perfect in form, but Present in meaning.

b. **Coepī**, **meminī** and **ōdī** are inflected as follows:

INDICATIVE MOOD

Perf.	coepī, *etc.*	meminī	ōdī
Plup.	coep-eram	memin-eram	ōderam
Fut. P.	coeperō	meminerō	ōderō

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

coeperim	meminerim	ōderim
coepissem	meminissem	ōdissem

IMPERATIVE

Sing.	mementō	
Plur.	mementōte	

INFINITIVE

Perf.	coepisse	meminisse	ōdisse
Fut.	coeptūrus esse		ōsūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

Perf.	coeptus, *begun*	ōsus
Fut.	coeptūrus	ōsūrus

c. The Passive forms of **coepī** are used with the Passive Infinitive, as **lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt**, *stones began to be thrown* (II. 6).

IMPERSONAL VERBS

73. *a.* Of the Impersonal Verbs Cæsar oftenest uses **licet**, *it is permitted* (I. 7) and **oportet**, *it is necessary, it behooves* (I. 4); he has also **paenitet**, *it makes sorry* (IV. 5) and **pudet**, *it makes ashamed* (VII. 42).

b. The Impersonal **licet** is inflected as follows:

INDICATIVE

Pres.	licet, *it is permitted*
Imp.	licēbat, *it was permitted*
Fut.	licēbit, *it will be permitted*
Perf.	licuit, *it has been permitted* or *it was permitted*
Plup.	licuerat, *it had been permitted*
Fut. P.	licuerit, *it will have been permitted*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	liceat, *it may be permitted*
Imp.	licēret, *it might be permitted*
Perf.	licuerit, *it may have been permitted*
Plup.	licuisset, *it might have been permitted*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	licēre, *to be permitted*	*Perf.*	licuisse, *to have been permitted*

c. Cæsar uses Impersonally the Third Person Singular of a number of Verbs, among which are **accēdit**, *it is added, there is the further fact that* (III. 13); **accidit**, *it happens, it turns out* (I. 31); **cōnstat**, *it is certain* (III. 6); **interest**, *it is important* (II. 5); **placet**, *it pleases* (I. 34); and **praestat**, *it is better* (I. 17).

d. Cæsar uses Impersonally the Passive of several Intransitive Verbs, making prominent the action rather than the doer; as **pugnātur**, *fighting goes on*, lit. *it is fought* (VII. 67, 84); **pugnātum est**, *fighting went on* (I. 26); **Ubi eō ventum est**, *when (they) had come thither*, lit. *when it was come thither*, the *coming* being made prominent (I. 43).

e. Verbs are often used impersonally in the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, denoting Obligation or Necessity (*229, c*); as, **reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum [esse]**, *that he should provide for supplies*, lit. *that it ought to be provided for supplies* by him (I. 23).

WORD FORMATION

74. The following classes of words are derived from Verbs:

a. Nouns with the Suffix **-tor** denoting the agent, as **vic-tor**, (I. 31), *victor*, from **vincō**; **dēfēn-sor** (II. 6; for **dēfend-tor**, as **dēfēn-sus** for **dēfend-tus**), *defender*, from **dēfendō**.

b. Nouns with the Suffixes **-tiō** (**-siō**), **-tus**, **-tūra**, **-ium**, denoting an action or the result of an action, as **coniūrā-tiō** (I. 2), *a swearing together, league* (**coniūrō**); **mūnī-tiō** (I. 10), *a fortifying, a fortification* conceived as a result of fortifying (**mūniō**); **adven-tus** (I. 22), *arrival* (**adveniō**); **exerci-tus** (I. 13), *army*, conceived as a product of *training* (**exerceō**); **armā-tūra** (II. 10), *equipment* (**armō**); **imperium** (I. 3), *command, sovereignty* (**imperō**); **iūdic-ium** (I. 4), *judgment, trial* (**iūdicō**).

c. Nouns with the Suffix **-or**, denoting a condition or state, as **tim-or** (I. 22), *fear* (**timeō**).

d. Nouns with the Suffixes **-men** or **-mentum**, **-ulum**, **-bulum**, **-crum**, denoting process, means, or result, as **flū-men** (I. 12), *stream, river*, conceived as *a flowing* or *current* (**fluō**); **impedī-mentum** (I. 25), *hindrance* (**impediō**), pl. **impedīmenta** (I. 24), *baggage*, conceived as an aggregation of hindrances; **vinc-ulum** (I. 4), *bond, chain*, conceived as a means of binding (**vinciō**); **pā-bulum** (I. 16), *fodder*, conceived as a means of feeding (**pāscō**); **simulā-crum** (VI. 16), *image*, conceived as something *made like* something else (**simulō**, *make like*).

e. Adjectives with the Suffix **-āx**, denoting a quality or tendency, as **ferāx** (II. 4), *productive, fertile* (**ferō**, *bear*).

f. Adjectives with the Suffixes **-ilis** and **-bilis**, denoting passive qualities, or capacity, as **fac-ilis** (I. 6), *easy*, i.e. capable of being done or made (**faciō**); **mō-bilis** (IV. 5), *easily moved, changeable* (**moveō**); **incrēdibilis** (I. 12), *incredible* (negative **in-** + **crēdibilis**, *capable of being believed*, from **crēdō**).

g. A few Adjectives in **-tīvus**, as **cap-tīvus** (I. 50), *captive* (**capiō**), **fugi-tīvus** (I. 23), *fugitive* (**fugiō**).

75. The following classes of words are derived from Nouns:

a. Diminutive Nouns, ending in **-lus** (Fem. **-la**, Neut. **-lum**), and in **-ulus**, **-olus**, **-culus**, etc., as **arti-culus** (VI. 27), *joint* (**artus**);

tabella (C. III. 83), *voting tablet* (**tabula**); **porcellus**, *pig*, dim. from **porculus**, *young hog, pig*, which is itself a dim. from **porcus**, *hog*, (p. 463).

b. Nouns with the Suffix **-ātus**, denoting an official position or body, as **cōnsul-ātus** (I. 35), *consulship* (**cōnsul**); **magistrātus** (I. 4), *magistracy, magistrate* (**magister**); **senātus** (I. 3), *senate* (**senex**).

c. A few Abstract Nouns in **-tās** and **-tūs**, as **cīvi-tās** (I. 2), *citizenship, state* (**cīvis**); **vir-tūs** (I. 1), *valor* (**vir**).

d. Adjectives with the Suffix **-eus**, denoting material, as **aureus** (V. 12), *of gold* (**aurum**); **ferreus** (III. 13), *of iron* (**ferrum**).

e. Adjectives with the Suffixes **-ius, -icus, -cus, -ānus, -īnus, -nus, -ālis, -īlis, -ārius, -āris, -īvus**, meaning *connected with, belonging to, from*, etc., as **patr-ius** (II. 15), *of a father, ancestral* (**pater**); **bell-icus** (VI. 24), *of war* (**bellum**); **Gall-icus** (I. 31), *Gallic;* **Germān-icus** (IV. 16), *Germanic;* **urb-ānus** (VII. 1), *of a city, of the city* (**urbs**); **Rōm-ānus**, *of Rome* (**Rōma**); **Lat-īnus**, *of Latium, Latin:* **nāv-ālis** (III. 19), *naval* (**nāvis**); **legiōn-ārius** (I. 51), *of a legion, legionary* (**legiō**); **cōnsul-āris** (C. III. 82), *consular;* **aest-īvus** (VI. 4), *of summer.*

f. Adjectives with the suffix **-ōsus**, denoting fullness, as **perīculōsus** (I. 33), *full of danger* (**perīculum**); **bellic-ōsus** (I. 10), *warlike* (**bellic-us, bellum**).

g. Denominative Verbs, of the different conjugations, as **cūrō, -āre** (I. 19), *care for, take care* (**cūra**); **laudō, -āre** (C. III. 87), *praise* (**laus, laudis**); **tribuō, -ere** (I. 13), *assign* (**tribus**); **fīniō, -īre** (IV. 16), *limit* (**fīnis**); **partior, -īrī** (III. 10), *divide* (**pars, partis**).

76. *a.* Derived from Adjectives are Abstract Nouns with the Suffixes **-tia, -ia, -tās**, and **-tūdō**, denoting quality or condition, as **dūri-tia** (VI. 21), *hardness* (**dūrus**); **audāc-ia** (I. 18), *boldness* (**audāx**); **grāt-ia** (I. 9), *favor* (**grātus**); **cupidi-tās** (I. 2), *desire* (**cupidus**); **forti-tūdō** (I. 2), *bravery* (**fortis**).

b. Derived from Adverbs are several Adjectives in **-urnus, -turnus, -tinus**, referring to Time, as **diū-turnus** (I. 14), *long-continued* (**diū**), and **diū-tinus** (V. 52), *protracted* (**diū**); so **Crāstinus** (C. III. 91), like the English name *Morrow*, from **crās-tinus**, *of to-morrow* (**crās**).

c. A few Adjectives have a Diminutive in **-ulus**; as **tantulus**, *so small*, from **tantus** (IV. 22).

77. Adverbs[1] are sometimes formed from the Stem of the Perfect Passive Participle with the suffix **-im**, as **stat-im** (I. 53), *immediately*

[1] The formation of Adverbs from Adjectives is treated under Adverbs, *34, 35.*

(**status, stō**); and from nouns, with the ending **-tim** (or **-im**), as **virī-tim** (VII. 71), *man by man* (**vir**), and **part-im** (II. 1), *partly*, which was originally an Accusative of **pars**.

78. Verbs derived from Verbs are:

a. Frequentatives, expressing repeated or intensive action; frequentatives derived from Verbs of the First Conjugation end in **-itō**, as **clāmitō** (V. 7), *cry out loudly, shout* (**clāmō**); others end in **-tō** or **-sō**, as **iactō** (I. 25), *toss about, cast* (**iaciō**), **concursō** (V. 33), *rush hither and yon, rush about* (**concurrō**).

b. Inchoatives, or Inceptives, expressing the beginning of an action or state, a becoming; they end in **-scō**, preceded by **-ā-**, **-ē-**, or **-ī-**, as **mātūrēscō** (VI. 29), *become ripe* (**mātūrō**).

79. *a.* In the first part of a Compound Word the final vowel of the Stem of a Noun or Adjective is dropped before a vowel, and becomes **-i-** before a consonant, while in the case of consonant Stems **-i-** is often inserted; in the second part vowel changes frequently appear. Thus **signi-fer** (II. 25), *standard-bearer* (for **signo-fer, signum** + **fer-** in **ferō**); **prīn-ceps** (I. 30), *leader*, i.e. *taking foremost place* (for **prīmo-cap-s, prīmus** + **cap-** in **capiō**); **ampli-ficō** (II. 14), *enlarge* (for **amplo-fac-ō, amplus** + **fac-** in **faciō**).

b. The first part of a Compound is often a Preposition or other indeclinable word, as **per-ficiō** (I. 3), *carry through* (**per** + **faciō**); **in-iussū** (I. 19), *without orders* (negative **in-** + **iussū**); **bi-enn-ium** (I. 3), (*period of*) *two years* (for **bi-anno-ium, bis** + **annus** + suffix **-ium**); **quotannīs** (I. 36), *annually* (**quot** + Ablative of **annus**).

c. Compounds originating in phrases are sometimes declinable, as **prō-cōnsul**, *proconsul*, Abl. **prō-cōnsule** (VI. 1); sometimes indeclinable, as **ob-viam**, *in the way* (VII. 12, 28).

d. The following indeclinable prefixes are found only in Compound Words:

amb-, am-, (an-), *about*, as in **ān-frāctus** (VII. 46), *curve*.

com-, co- (old form of **cum**, *with*), *with, together*; see under **cum** in Vocabulary.

dis-, appearing also as **dir-, dī-**, *apart*, as in **dis-cēdō** (I. 16), *go apart*; **dir-imō** (I. 46), *take apart, break off*; **dī-mītto** (I. 18), *send about, send off*.

in-, = *un-*, *not*, as in **incertus** (IV. 5); to be carefully distinguished from the preposition **in** in composition.

por-, *forth, forward*, as in **por-rigō** (II. 19), *extend*.

re-, red-, *back*, as in **re-maneō** (I. 39), *stay behind*; **red-eō** (I. 29), *return*.

sē-, sēd-, *apart*, as in **sē-parō** (VII. 63), *separate*, **sēd-itiō** (VII. 28), *mutiny*.

THE DERIVATION OF ENGLISH WORDS FROM THE LATIN[1]

80. *a.* Very many of the Words in the English Language in common use are derived, indirectly or directly, from the Latin.

The percentage of classical Latin words that have been taken over into English directly,[2] however, is exceedingly small; the people whose name survives in the word "English" reached Britain too late for any direct contact with classical Latin. But in the Middle Ages a modified Latin was spoken and written by educated men all over Europe; and classical Latin authors continued to be read, less in the Middle Ages, but extensively after the Revival of Learning. Meanwhile the Latin spoken by the common people in Italy, France, Spain, and other countries conquered by the Romans, had developed into the Romance languages, French, Italian, Spanish and kindred tongues; and after the Norman Conquest, in the eleventh century, French was both spoken and written in England. Thus it happens that words of Latin origin have come down into the English of to-day in various ways, some through the writings and speech of those who read classical Latin, a great many through mediæval Latin, but far the greatest number through the Romance languages, particularly French.

b. Some Latin words appear in English in their Latin forms, though they may have passed through other forms and may now have a different meaning; as "arbor" (II. 17), "census" (I. 29), "color" (V. 14), "duplex" (II. 29), "senator" (II. 28), "victor" (I. 31), and "omnibus," meaning originally *for all*, from the Dative Plural Masculine of **omnis** (I. 1).

81. Many Latin Words appear in English with slight change of spelling, as "cent" from **centum** (I. 37), "condition" from **condiciō** (I. 28) through a late spelling **conditiō**; "difficulty" from **difficultās**

[1] Classes in Caesar find it a useful exercise to make, on separate slips or cards, a list of Latin words in each lesson having English derivatives, adding the words derived from them. The Latin words from time to time can be classified, in groups corresponding with the numbered paragraphs *80–85*, the words in each group being arranged in alphabetical order.

[2] The editor is indebted to Professor O. F. Emerson, of Western Reserve University, for helpful suggestions.

(II. 20), "fort" from **fortis** (I. 48), "future" from **futūrus** (I. 10), the Future Participle associated with **sum**; "office" from **officium** (I. 40), "senate" from **senātus** (I. 3), and "victory" from **victōria** (I. 53); "false" from **falsus** (VI. 20), and "pedal" from **pedālis** (III. 13), which goes back to **pēs**, Gen. **pedis**, *foot* (I. 25); "admire" from **admīror** (I. 14), "ascend" from **ascendō** (I. 21), "accept" from **accipiō** (I. 14) through the Frequentative **acceptō**, *accept*, which is formed from **acceptus** (I. 48), Participle of **accipiō**.

82. *a.* Some English Words have been formed from Latin Words by Analogy of Latin or French Words already in the language. Examples are "magistracy" and "classical."

b. "Magistracy" goes back to **magistrātus** (I. 4). From **magistrātus** came "magistrate," to which the suffix "-cy" was added from Analogy to the English nouns of Latin origin ending in "-cy"[1]; this suffix represents the Latin termination **-tia**, as in "clemency," from **clēmentia** (II. 14). With the addition of the suffix "-cy" the last two letters of "magistrate" disappeared; hence "magistracy."

c. "Classical" comes from the Adjective **classicus**, *first class*, which goes back to **classis**, *a class*, though in Caesar **classis** (III. 14, etc.) has only the meaning *fleet*, as a class or division of military forces. From **classicus** comes "classic"; the suffix "-al" was added from Analogy to the English Words which are derived from the Latin Adjectives ending in **-ālis**, as "social" from **sociālis** (ultimately from **socius**, *fellow*, *ally*, I. 5), "hospital" from **hospitālis** (ultimately from **hospes**, Gen. **hospitis**, *guest-friend*, I. 53), and "legal" from **lēgālis** (ultimately from **lēx**, **lēgis**, *law*, I. 1). Similarly, "aural" is derived from **auris**, *ear* (VI. 26), "continual" from **continuus** (I. 48), and "senatorial" from **senātōrius** (C. III. 83), the suffix "-al" replacing the Latin terminations.

83. *a.* Some English Words are formed from Words of ultimate Latin origin by the addition of a suffix of English origin. Thus "falsehood" comes from "false" (Latin **falsus**, VI. 20) with the suffix "-hood" denoting quality; "citizenship" from "citizen," which goes back ultimately to Latin **cīvis** (VII. 77), with the suffix "-ship" denoting state or office; "instantly" from "instant" (Latin **īnstāns**, Gen. **īnstantis**, Present Participle of **īnstō**, I. 16), and "nobly" from "noble" (Latin **nōbilis**, I. 2), by addition of the suffix "-ly," which has the same origin as the English word "like."

[1] This suffix has no connection with a similar suffix of Greek origin found in "democracy" and a few other English words.

b. A few English Words are formed from Latin Words by the addition of an English suffix of Greek origin; as "jurist" from **iūs**, Gen. **iūris** (I. 4) with the suffix "-ist," which represents a Greek termination denoting the agent; "Caesarism," "nihilism," "terrorism" from **Caesar** (I. 7), **nihil** (I. 11), and **terror** (II. 12) with the suffix "-ism," also of Greek origin, implying doctrine or practice.

84. Many Latin Words, especially those that have come into English through the French, have undergone so great changes that their Latin origin is not at once perceived, though it can always be traced through intermediate forms. Such are "captaincy," from "captain," which is ultimately derived from **caput** (I. 29), *head*, with the suffix "-cy" (*82*, *b*); "city," from **cīvitās** (I. 2); "lieutenant," from **locum tenēns** (Present Participle of **teneō**, *hold*), one holding another's office or place; "madam," "Madonna," from **mea domina**, Feminine corresponding to the Masculine **meus dominus** (Dative **dominīs**, VI. 13); "governor" from **gubernātor** (III. 9); "peril" from **perīculum** (I. 17), and "perilous" from **perīculōsus** (I. 33), "preach" from **praedicō** (I. 44), and "receive" from **recipiō** (I. 5).

85. A few common abbreviations represent Latin Words; as "no." in "no. 9," where "no." stands not for "number" but for **numerō** (I. 5), the Ablative of **numerus**. Also, the symbols for English money, £ s. d., now read as "pounds, shillings, pence," are derived from Latin words: £ = **lībra**, a *pound* in weight, whence **lībrīlis**, *weighing a pound* (VII. 81); s. = **solidus**, a Roman gold coin; and d. = **dēnārius**, a Roman silver coin, translated *penny*, though its value as silver was originally between fifteen and twenty cents in our currency. **Solidus**, the name of the coin, came from the Adjective **solidus**, from which our word "solid" is derived; it survives in our word "soldier" as "one having pay" for military service. **Dēnārius** came from **dēnī**, *ten each* (I. 43) because it originally contained ten of the monetary units called **as**, and **as** survives in our word "ace."

Our abbreviation "Mr." is for "Master," but "Master" is of Latin origin, being derived from **magister** (C. III. 43).

86. The value of the contribution which the English language has received from the Latin cannot be measured in percentages of words. The words of English origin which we use are largely concrete, and well fitted to express fundamental ideas; but we are indebted to the Latin for a very large proportion of the words employed in the arts, science and education, which fit the English language to be the vehicle of expression for a constantly developing civilization.

SYNTAX

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

87. *a.* A Noun or Pronoun, or an Adjective taking the place of a Noun, when used as the Subject of a Finite Verb is in the Nominative Case; as, **lēgātī revertērunt**, *the envoys returned* (I. 8); **integrī dēfessīs succēderent**, *fresh men were relieving the exhausted* (VII. 41).

b. A Personal Pronoun used as a Subject is expressed only when there is emphasis or contrast; as, **Dēsilīte, commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum . . . officium praestiterō**, *Leap down, comrades, unless you want to abandon your eagle to the enemy; I at any rate shall have done my duty.* Here **ego** is emphatic, but the subject of the Plural Verbs is not emphatic, and hence is not expressed (IV. 25).

c. Instead of a Noun or other Substantive word an Infinitive or a Clause may be used as the Subject of a Verb; as, **Commodissimum vīsum est Gāium Valerium Procillum . . . mittere**, *It seemed most expedient to send Gaius Valerius Procillus*, where **mittere** is the subject of **vīsum est** (I. 47).

88. *a.* A Predicate Noun, in the same case as the Subject, is used with **sum** and the Passives of Verbs of *calling, choosing, making, esteeming*, and the like; as, **Dīvicō prīnceps fuit**, *Divico was the leading man* (I. 13); **quī . . . Gallī appellantur**, *who are called Gauls* (I. 1); **ducēs eī dēliguntur**, *those are chosen (as) leaders* (III. 23).

b. A Predicate Noun after Passive Participles is similarly used; as, **obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis**, *having received the foremost men of the state as hostages*, lit. *the foremost men of the state having been received as hostages* (II. 13).

89. *a.* A Verb is sometimes omitted when it can easily be supplied from the context; as, **aciēs** (I. 25), where **intulit** is to be supplied.

b. Forms of **sum** are often omitted in the compound tenses; as, **occīsa** (I. 53) for **occīsa est**, *was killed.*

c. In the Future Active and Perfect Passive Infinitive, and also in the Present Passive Infinitive of the Periphrastic Conjugation, **esse**

is frequently omitted; as, **conciliātūrum** (I. 3) for **conciliātūrum esse**; **itūrōs atque futūrōs** (I. 13) for **itūrōs esse atque futūrōs esse**; **lātūrī** for **lātūrī esse** (I. 40); **occīsum . . . pulsum . . . missum** (I. 7) for **occīsum esse . . . pulsum esse . . . missum esse**; **exspectandum** (I. 11) for **exspectandum esse**.

90. *a.* In certain connections **est**, **erat**, etc., may best be translated *there is*, *there was*, etc., with the Subject following; as, **Flūmen est Arar**, *There is a river, the Arar* (I. 12); **Erant itinera duo**, *There were two routes* (I. 6).

b. Occasionally *there* may be used in like manner in translating other verbs than **sum**; as, **Relinquēbātur ūna via**, *There remained only the route* (I. 9).

NOUNS

91. *a.* Nouns used as Appositives, whether in the Nominative or in the Oblique cases, agree in case with the Nouns to which they belong; as, **Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum**, *Ariovistus, king of the Germans* (I. 31); **ā Bibracte, oppidō** (Ablative) **Aeduōrum**, *from Bibracte, a town of the Aeduans* (I. 23).

b. Nouns in Predicate Apposition sometimes agree with an unexpressed Subject, which is implied in the Verb; as, **hominēs . . . (eī) afficiēbantur**, (*being*) *men . . . they were sorely troubled* (I. 2).

c. A Noun referring to a Part may be in Apposition to a Noun expressing the Whole (Partitive Apposition); as, **itinera duo: unum** (iter), **alterum** (iter), *two routes: the one* (*route*) . . . , *the other* . . . (I. 6).

92. *a.* A Plural Noun is often used in Latin where English usage prefers the Singular; as, **ad effēminandōs animos**, *to weaken the courage* (I. 1).

b. An Abstract Noun is sometimes used in Latin where English usage expects a Concrete Plural Noun; as, **coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis**, *a conspiracy of the nobles*, lit. *of the nobility* (I. 2).

c. Abstract Nouns are sometimes used in the Plural to denote instances of the Quality; as; **ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs**, *to avoid heat and cold* (VI. 22).

THE VOCATIVE CASE

93. The Vocative Case is used only in Direct Address; as, **Quid dubitās, Vorēne**? *Vorenus, why do you hesitate?* (V. 44).

THE GENITIVE CASE

94. *a*. In the Possessive Genitive the idea of Possession or of Close Connection is generally prominent; as, **fīnēs Sēquanōrum**, *the territory of the Sequanians, the Sequanians' country* (I. 8); **ā hūmānitāte prōvinciae**, *from the refinement of the Province* (I. 1).

b. The Possessive Genitive is used idiomatically with **causā**, **grātiā** and **īnstar**; as, **auxiliī causā**, *as an auxiliary force*, lit. *for the sake of support* (II. 24); **suī pūrgandī grātiā**, *in order to clear themselves* (VII. 43); **īnstar mūrī mūnīmentum**, *a barrier like a wall*, lit. *the image of a wall* (II. 17).

c. A Genitive, perhaps Possessive in Origin, is used with **prīdiē** and **postrīdiē**; as, **prīdiē eius diēī**, *the day before that day, on the previous day* (I. 47); **postrīdiē eius diēī**, *the next day* (II. 12).

d. With **sum** and **fīō** the Possessive Genitive is used Predicatively with the meaning (*the business*) *of, belonging to*, etc.; as, **neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī**, *and he judged that Gaul did not belong to Ariovistus* (lit. *was not Ariovistus's*) *any more than to the Roman people* (I. 45).

95. The Subjective Genitive designates the Person or Agent whose act or feeling is expressed in the Noun on which the Genitive depends; as, **ab Ariovistī iniūriā**, *from the wrongdoing of Ariovistus* (I. 31); **terrōre equōrum**, *the fright caused by the horses*, lit. *of the horses* (IV. 33).

96. The Appositional Genitive defines or explains the Noun on which it depends; as, **iniūria retentōrum equitum**, *the wrong* (*committed by*) *detaining the knights*, the detaining of the knights being the wrong expressed in **iniūria** (III. 10).

97. *a*. The Partitive Genitive, or Genitive of the Whole, designates the Whole of which a Part is expressed in the Noun, Pronoun, Adjective, or Numeral on which it depends; as, **quārum ūnam (partem)**, *of which* (i. e. *three parts*) *one* (*part*) (I. 1); **mīlia passuum CCXL**, *two hundred and forty miles*, lit. *two hundred and forty thousands of paces* (I. 2); **prīmōs cīvitātis**, *the first* (*men*) *of the state* (II. 3); **nihil reliquī . . . fēcērunt**, *they spared no effort*, lit. *nothing of the rest* (II. 26).

b. The Part on which the Genitive of the Whole depends may be indefinitely expressed by the Singular Neuter of a Pronoun or of an Adjective, used substantively, or by the Adverb **satis** used substantively; as, **quid negōtiī**, *what business*, lit. *what of business* (I. 34);

quid suī cōnsiliī sit, *what his plan was* (I. 21); **aliquid novī cōnsiliī**, *some new scheme or other* (IV. 32); **quantum bonī**, *how great good* (I. 40); **plūs dolōris**, *more suffering* (I. 20); **tōtīus Galliae plūrimum possent**, *were the most powerful of all Gaul* (I. 3); **satis causae**, *sufficient ground*, lit. *enough of cause* (I. 19).

c. In the English phrase *all of these* there is no Partitive idea, because *these* and *all* refer to the same whole. Such phrases are not expressed in Latin by the Partitive Genitive but by words agreeing in Case; as, **Hī omnēs**, *all these* (I. 1); **complūrēs nostrī**, *a large number of our men* (I. 52); **omnium vestrum**, *of all of you, of you all* (VII. 77).

d. Caesar sometimes uses **dē** or **ex** with the Ablative instead of the Genitive of the Whole; so regularly with **quīdam** and words referring to Number. Thus, **quīdam ex hīs**, *some of these* (II. 17); **paucī dē nostrīs**, *a few of our men* (I. 15).

e. A Genitive of the Whole may be used with an Adverb in the Superlative Degree; as **Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt**, *of the gods they worship Mercury above all others* (VI. 17).

98. *a.* A variety of the Genitive of the Whole is the Genitive of Material, which is used to designate the Material or Units included in the Noun on which it depends; as, **multitūdinem hominum**, *a force of men*, lit. *a multitude (made up) of men* (I. 4); **aciem legiōnum quattuor**, *a line (consisting) of four legions* (I. 24).

b. The Material of which anything is made is expressed by the Ablative with **ex**; as, **scūtīs ex cortice factīs**, *with shields made of bark* (II. 33).

99. The Genitive is used to express Origin; as, **Catamantāloedis fīliō**, *son of Catamantaloedes* (I. 3).

100. *a.* The Genitive of Quality and the Genitive of Measure are modified by Adjectives or Numerals; as, **hominēs magnae virtūtis**, *men of great valor* (II. 15); **mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim**, *a rampart sixteen feet high*, lit. *to the height of sixteen feet* (I. 8)

b. The Genitive of Quality and Genitive of Measure may be used predicatively; as, **Erant eius modī sitūs oppidōrum**, *The strongholds were so situated*, lit. *the situations of the strongholds were of such a character* (III. 12).

101. The Neuter Genitives **magnī**, **tantī**, and some others are used predicatively, without a Noun, to express Indefinite Value; as, **magnī habēbātur**, *was considered of great weight* (IV. 21); **tantī**, *of so great account* (I. 20).

102. The Objective Genitive is used with Nouns to denote the Object toward which Action or Feeling is directed, and with Adjectives to limit their application; as, **reī pūblicae** (Genitive) **iniūriam**, *the wrong done to the state* (I. 20); **rēgnī cupiditāte inductus**, *led by desire of kingly power* (I. 2); **imperītum rērum**, *unversed in affairs* (I. 44); **alicuius iniūriae cōnscius**, *conscious of any wrong-doing* (I. 14).

103. *a.* Caesar uses **reminīscor** and **oblīvīscor** with a Genitive of the thing remembered or forgotten; as, **reminīscerētur incommodī**, *he should recall the disaster* (I. 13); **contumēliae oblīvīscī**, *to be forgetful of an affront* (I. 14).

b. A Genitive of the Charge is used with Verbs of Accusing and Condemning; as, **prōditiōnis īnsimulātus**, *accused of treachery* (VII. 20); **capitis damnārent**, *should condemn (to loss) of civil rights*, lit. *of head* (C. III. 83).

c. Caesar uses the impersonal **paenitet** with the Accusative of the Person repenting and the Genitive of the Object of Repentance; as, **quōrum eōs paenitēre necesse est**, *of which they of necessity repent*, lit. *of which it is necessary that it repent them* (IV. 5).

d. Caesar uses **interest** with a Genitive Neuter to express the degree of concern; as, **magnī interesse arbitrābātur**, *he thought that it was of great importance* (V. 4).

e. With **interest** Caesar uses a Genitive of the Interest concerned; as, **reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit** (Historical Present), *it concerned the State and their mutual welfare* (II. 5).

THE DATIVE CASE

104. *a.* The Dative of the Indirect Object is used with Transitive Verbs which have a Direct Object in the Accusative, or an Infinitive Clause as Object, and also with the Passive of such Verbs; as, **dat** (Historical Present) **negōtium Senonibus**, *He assigned the task to the Senones* (II. 2); **nostrīs — dabātur**, *was given to our men* (IV. 29).

b. With such Verbs the place of the Direct Object may be taken by an Adverb or a Clause; as, **nē suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret**, *that he should not presume over-much upon his valor* (I. 13).

105. The Dative of the Indirect Object is used with many Intransitive Verbs meaning *persuade, trust, distrust; command, obey, serve, resist; pardon, spare; please, displease, favor, indulge; approach; envy, threaten, rebuke*, and some others; as, **persuādet Casticō**, *he persuades Casticus* (I. 3), that is, *he prevails upon Casticus*. The Roman point

of view in these verbs is somewhat different from that of the English, which with corresponding verbs generally uses a Direct Object.

The following are among the Intransitive Verbs thus used with the Dative by Caesar:

accidit, *happens to* (I. 18); **appropinquō**, *approach* (II. 10); **cēdō**, *yield to* (VII. 89); **concēdō**, *acknowledge inferiority to* (IV. 7); **cōnfīdō**, *trust* (I. 42); **cōnsulō**, *look out for* (VI. 31); **contingit**, *it falls to the lot of* (I. 43); **crēdō**, *intrust* (VI. 31); **cupiō**, *wish well to* (I. 18).

dēspērō, *despair of* (III. 12); **diffīdō**, *lose confidence in* (VI. 38); **ēvenit**, *it turns out* (IV. 25); **faveō**, *favor* (VI. 7); **ignōscō**, *pardon* (I. 45); **imperō**, *command* (I. 28); **indulgeō**, *treat with favor* (I. 40); **invideō**, *envy, be jealous of* (II. 31).

licet, *it is permitted* (I. 30); **medeor**, *remedy* (V. 24); **noceō**, *do injury to* (III. 13); **obtemperō**, *submit to* (IV. 21); **parcō**, *spare* (VI. 28); **pāreō**, *obey* (VI. 13); **persuādeō**, *persuade* (I. 2); **placet**, *it pleases* (I. 34); **prōspiciō**, *arrange for* (I. 23); **prōsum**, *be of benefit to* (VI. 40).

repugnō, *contend against* (I. 19); **resistō**, *oppose* (I. 25); **satisfaciō**, *make restitution* (I. 14); **serviō**, *be the slave of* (IV. 5), *devote one's self to* (VII. 34); **studeō**, *be eager for* (I. 9), *give attention to* (II. 17); **temperō**, *restrain* (I. 33).

106. *a.* A few Intransitive Verbs are also used Transitively by Caesar, and govern the Accusative; examples are, **impūnitātem concēdere**, *grant escape from punishment* (I. 14); **mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat**, *the soldiers that he had levied* (I. 7).

b. Verbs which take the Dative of the Indirect Object are in the Passive used only Impersonally; as, **Sibi persuādērī**, *That the conviction was forced upon him, that he was persuaded* (I. 40).

107. *a.* The Dative of the Indirect Object is used after many Verbs compounded with the Prepositions **ad, ante, com-** (for **cum**), **in, inter, ob, prae, sub,** and **super**; as, **omnibus praestārent**, *they excelled all* (I. 2).

b. Transitive Verbs compounded with these Prepositions may have both a Direct and an Indirect Object, the Dative depending not on the Preposition but on the Compound; as, **fīnitimīs bellum īnferre**, *to wage war on their neighbors* (I. 2).

108. *a.* The Dative is used after Adjectives meaning *agreeable, friendly, hurtful, hostile, like, unlike, near, subject, obedient, suitable, appropriate*, and many others; as, **plēbī acceptus**, *acceptable to the people* (I. 3); **proximī Germānīs**, *next to the Germans* (I. 1); **locum idōneum castrīs**, *a place suitable for a camp* (II. 17).

b. **Similis** is used with the Genitive when referring to an inner or complete resemblance, as, **vērī simile**, *probable*, lit. *having the likeness*

of truth (III. 13); otherwise with the Dative; as, **fugae similis**, *like a rout* (V. 53).

109. *a.* The Dative of Reference designates the Person or Interest affected by the action or state expressed in a Verb, or in a Clause as a whole; it should be translated with *to, for, of, from, in,* or left untranslated, according to the meaning of the clause in which it appears, and the requirements of English idiom. Thus, **iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset**, *had been conscious of wrong-doing*, lit. *had been conscious, to itself, of wrong-doing* (I. 14); **sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent**, *if they wanted to clear themselves in his sight*, lit. *to clear themselves with reference to himself* (I. 28); **sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt**, *prostrated themselves at Caesar's feet*, lit. *in relation to Caesar* (I. 31).

b. A Dative of Reference is used with Verbs of *taking away*, especially those compounded with **ab**, **dē**, and **ex** (sometimes called Dative of Separation); thus, **Aeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī**, *that they were going to take away liberty from the Aeduans*, lit. *that as regards the Aeduans, they are*, etc. (I. 17); **scūtō ūnī mīlitī dētrāctō**, *snatching a shield from a soldier*, lit. *to a soldier*, the Dative expressing the point of view of the soldier (II. 25); **longē eīs āfutūrum**, *would be far from benefiting them*, lit. *would be far away with reference to them* (I. 36).

c. A Dative of Reference is used with **interdīcō**, which may take also the Ablative of the Thing; as, **Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset**, *had denied to the Romans any rights in Gaul*, lit. *from Gaul* (I. 46).

110. The Dative is used with the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation to express Agency; as, **omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum**, *that all the Celts would have to do the same thing* (I. 31); **Caesarī omnia erant agenda**, *Caesar had to see to everything* (II. 20).

111. The Dative is used with the Verb **sum** to denote Possession; as, **Mercātōribus est aditus**, *Traders have access* (IV. 2); **quid . . . Caesarī . . . negōtiī esset**, *what business Caesar . . . had* (I. 34).

112. *a.* The Dative is used with Verbs to denote the Purpose or Tendency of an action; as, **locum domiciliō dēligerent**, *might select a place for a permanent habitation* (I. 30); **locum castrīs dēligit** (Historical Present), *selected a place for a camp* (VII. 16 and often); **Diēs colloquiō dictus est**, *a day was appointed for a conference* (I. 42).

b. **Sum** and several other Verbs may have two Datives, a Dative of Purpose or Tendency and a Dative of Reference; as, **sibi eam rem cūrae futūram**, *that this matter should have his attention*, lit. *should be to him for a care* (I. 33); **cum auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent**, *when they were*

coming to the assistance of the Nervians, lit. *for an aid to the Nervians* (II. 29).

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

113. *a.* The Direct Object of a Transitive Verb is in the Accusative Case; as, **frūmentum combūrunt** (Historical Present), *they burned the grain* (I. 5).

b. Caesar uses as Transitive Verbs several Intransitives compounded with **ad, ante, circum, com-, in, ob, prae, praeter, sub,** and **trāns**; as, **sī īnsulam adīsset**, *if he should have visited the island* (IV. 20); **reliquōs antecēdunt**, *surpass the rest* (III. 8); **eum convēnissent**, *had met him* (I. 27); **sē grātiam initūrōs [esse]**, *that they would gain favor* (VI. 43); **initā hieme**, *at the beginning of winter*, lit. *winter having been begun* (III. 7); **tēctum nōn subīssent**, *had not found shelter under a roof*, lit. *had not passed under a roof* (I. 36); **tantam virtūtem praestitērunt**, *displayed so great valor* (II. 27).

c. Caesar uses both **animadvertō** and **animum advertō** with the Accusative of the Direct Object conceived as the object of the mental action expressed by the Compound; thus, **id animum advertit**, *he noticed that* (I. 24); **haec animadvertisset**, *had noticed this* (I. 40).

114. *a.* Transitive Verbs compounded with **trāns** or **circum** may have two Accusatives, one dependent on the Verb, the other on the Preposition; as, **trēs partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse**, *that the Helvetians had taken three-fourths of their forces across the river* (I. 12), **partēs** being the object of **dūcere**, while **flūmen** is governed by **trāns**.

b. In the Passive the Object of the Verb used with two Accusatives becomes a Subject, while the Accusative governed by the Preposition remains; as, **nē maior multitūdō Rhēnum trādūcātur**, *that no greater host be brought across the Rhine* (I. 31).

115. *a.* Verbs of *making, choosing, regarding, giving, sending, having, calling, showing*, and some others, may have two Accusatives, one a Direct Object, the other a Predicate Accusative; as, **quem rēgem cōnstituerat**, *whom he had made king* (IV. 21); **quem 'vergobretum' appellant Aeduī**, *which the Aeduans call Vergobret* (I. 16).

b. In the construction of Verbs of *making, choosing, calling*, etc., with two Accusatives, the Predicate Accusative may be an Adjective; as, **utī . . . cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent**, *that they might have states tributary* to them (I. 30).

c. In the Passive of Verbs of *making, choosing, calling*, etc., the

Direct Object of the Active is made the Subject and the Predicate Accusative becomes a Predicate Nominative; as, **quī Celtae appellantur**, *who are called Celts* (I. 1); **Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt**, *the Helvetians were informed*, where **certiōrēs**, an adjective in the comparative degree, is predicative (I. 7).

116. *a.* Verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *teaching* may have two Accusatives, one of the Person, the other of the Thing; as, **Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre**, *kept pressing the Aeduans for the grain* (I. 16).

b. With Verbs of *asking* and *demanding*, the Person may be expressed by the Ablative with a Preposition, the Thing asked by an Accusative or by a Clause; as, **abs tē ratiōnem reposcent**, *they will demand an accounting from you* (V. 30); **cum ab eīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs . . . essent**, *making inquiry of them what states were . . .* (II. 4).

c. With **quaerō** the Person may be expressed by the Ablative with **ab** or **ex**; as, **quaerit ex sōlō ea**, *asked*, lit. *asks*, (*him*) *alone about those things* (I. 18); the Accusative of the Thing may be replaced by an Ablative with **dē**; as, **quōrum dē nātūrā cum quaereret**, *making inquiry about the character of whom* (II. 15).

d. **Volō** is sometimes used like a Verb of *asking*, with two Accusatives; as, **sī quid** (Accusative) **ille sē** (Accusative) **velit**, *if he* (*Caesar*) *wished anything of him* (I. 34).

117. *a.* With both Intransitive and Transitive Verbs Caesar sometimes uses a Neuter Pronoun as an Accusative of Result produced, to carry forward or qualify the meaning; as, **Id eīs persuāsit**, *he persuaded them* (*to adopt*) *that* (*course*), lit. *he persuaded that to them* (I. 2); **hōc facere**, *to do this* (III. 27).

b. The Accusative of Result may be a Noun of kindred meaning with the Verb (Cognate Accusative); thus, **tūtam vītam vīvere**, *to live a safe life.*

118. *a.* The Accusative is used to express Extent and Duration; as, **mīlia passuum XVIIII** (for **undēvīgintī**), *nineteen miles* (I. 8); **multōs annōs**, *many years* (I. 3); **magnam partem aestātis**, *during a great part of the summer* (III. 12); **trīduī viam prōcessisset**, *had advanced a three days' march* (I. 38).

b. Indefinite Extent or Degree may be expressed with certain Verbs by the Neuter Accusative of Pronouns, or of Adjectives used substantively; as, **quicquid possunt**, *whatever strength they have*, lit. *to whatever degree they are able* (II. 17); **quid Germānī virtūte possent**, *what mettle the Germans had*, lit. *to what degree the Germans were*

able in respect to bravery (I. 36); **quōrum auctōritās plūrimum valeat** (Historical Present), *whose influence carried very great weight*, lit. *is strong to the highest degree* (I. 17); **sī quid** (Accusative) **opus esset**, *if there should be any need*, lit. *need to any extent* (I. 42).

c. Extent is expressed by the Accusative of **nihil**, and also by **partem** (Accusative of **pars**) used indefinitely, a construction often called Adverbial Accusative; as, **nihil Caesaris imperium exspectābant**, *were not waiting at all for Caesar's orders*, lit. *to extent of nothing, to no extent* (II. 20); **maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt**, *they live mostly on milk and meat*, where **partem** is used indefinitely, not being limited to a definite idea, as it is when a Genitive is dependent upon it (IV. 1).

d. Caesar uses **quod**, Singular Neuter of the Relative **quī**, as an Adverbial Accusative before **sī**, **nisi**, and **ubi**, where it may be translated *now, moreover, but, and*, or *even*, lit. *as to which*: as, **Quod sī . . . vellet**, *even if he were willing* (I. 14); **Quod sī quid . . .** *Now if anything* (I. 20).

e. Caesar uses **quid**, Singular Neuter of the Interrogative **quis**, as an Adverbial Accusative with the meaning *why?* lit. *as to what thing?* Thus, **Quid dubitās**, *Why do you hesitate?* (V. 44).

119. *a.* Names of Towns or Small Islands are put in the Accusative to express the Limit of Motion; as, **Bibracte īre contendit** (Historical Present), *he made haste to go to Bibracte* (I. 23).

b. In like manner **domum**, the Accusative of **domus**, is used to express Limit of Motion; as, **quī domum rediērunt**, *who returned home* (I. 29).

120. *a.* The Accusative of names of towns is used with **ad** to express *to the vicinity of, in the neighborhood of;* as, **ad Genavam pervenit**, *he proceeded to the vicinity of Geneva* (I. 7); **Caesar . . . ad Alesiam castra fēcit**, *Caesar encamped in the neighborhood of Alesia* (VII. 68); but Caesar has **Vercingetorīx . . . Alesiam iter facere coepit**, *Vercingetorix began to march to Alesia*, without **ad**, because Vercingetorix fled to the town itself for refuge, **Alesiam** here expressing the Limit of Motion (VII. 68).

b. In such phrases as **ad oppidum Noviodūnum** (II. 12) the Name of the Town is in the Accusative, not because expressing a Limit of Motion, but as an appositive of **oppidum**.

121. The Subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative; as, **diem īnstāre**, *that the day was at hand* (I. 16).

122. *a.* Caesar uses the following Prepositions with the Accusa-

tive only: **ad**, *to;* **adversus**, *against;* **ante**, *before;* **apud**, *near, with, among;* **circā**, *around* (C only); **circiter**, *about;* **circum**, *around;* **cis**, *on this side of;* **citrā**, *on this side of;* **contrā**, *against;* **ergā**, *towards;* **extrā**, *outside of;* **infrā**, *below;* **inter**, *between;* **intrā**, *within;* **iuxtā**, *near;* **ob**, *on account of;* **penes**, *in the possession of;* **per**, *through;* **post**, *after;* **praeter**, *excepting;* **prope**, *near;* **propter**, *on account of;* **secundum**, *along, after, besides, according to;* **suprā**, *above;* **trāns**, *across, on the other side of;* **ultrā**, *beyond;* **versus**, *toward.*

b. Several of these Prepositions are used by Caesar also as Adverbs; as, **contrā**, *in opposition* (I. 18); **suprā**, *above* (II. 18).

123. *a.* With Nouns referring to Persons Caesar often uses **per** with the Accusative to express the Means through which something is done, as distinguished from Direct Agency, which is expressed by the Ablative with **ab**; as, **per eōs**, *with their help*, lit. *by means of them* (I. 4).

b. Caesar uses also **propius**, *nearer*, the Comparative of **prope**, and **proximus**, *next*, the Superlative of **propior**, with the Accusative; as, **propius sē**, *nearer to themselves* (IV. 9); **quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt**, *who dwell next to the Rhine* (I. 54).

c. **Versus** follows its Noun, and is sometimes used in a separable Compound with **ad** and **in**; as, **Metlosēdum versus**, *towards Metlosedum* (VII. 61); **ad Oceanum versus**, *towards the Ocean* (VI. 33).

124. *a.* The Prepositions **in** and **sub** are used with the Accusative to denote Motion, with the Ablative to denote Rest; as, **in partēs trēs**, *into three parts* (I. 1); **in eōrum fīnibus**, *in their country* (I. 1); **sub iugum missum**, *sent under the yoke* (I. 7); **sub aquā**, *under water* (V. 18).

b. **Super** is used ordinarily with the Accusative, but occasionally with the Ablative.

THE ABLATIVE CASE

125. *a.* Caesar uses the following Prepositions with the Ablative: **ā**, or **ab**, **abs**, *away from, by;* **cum**, *with;* **dē**, *down from, concerning;* **ex** or **ē**, *out from, out of;* **prae**, *before;* **prō**, *in front of, for, considering, as;* **sine**, *without.*

b. The form **abs** appears only in **abs tē** (V. 30). **Ab** and **ex** are regularly used before vowels and **h**; **ā** and **ē**, before consonants, but before consonants **ab** and **ex** are also used.

c. With the Ablative of the Personal, Reflexive, and Relative Pronouns **cum** is ordinarily joined; thus **nōbīscum**, *with us* (V. 17);

sēcum, *with him* (I. 8), *with himself* (I. 36); **quibuscum**, *with whom* (I. 1).

126. *a*. Direct Agency with the Passive is expressed by **ā, ab**, with the Ablative; as, **ab Helvētiīs pulsum**, *routed by the Helvetians* (I. 7).

b. Caesar sometimes uses an Abstract or Collective Noun with **ā, ab**, to express Agency; as, **ā multitūdine**, *by a host* (III. 2).

c. Caesar often uses **ā, ab**, and sometimes **ex**, to indicate a Local Relation, where we use *on, in*, or *at*; as, **ā dextrō cornū**, *on the right wing*, lit. *from* (*the point of view of*) *the right wing* (I. 52); **ā novissimō agmine**, *on the rear* (I. 23); **ā fronte**, *in front* (II. 23).

127. *a*. An Ablative of Separation without a Preposition is regularly used by Caesar with many Verbs meaning *keep from, refrain from; withdraw from; strip, deprive of; free from; lack, be without*; as, **proeliō abstinēbat**, *was refraining from battle* (I. 22); **eā spē dēiectī**, *deprived of this hope* (I. 8).

The most important of the Verbs thus used by Caesar are:

abstineō, *refrain from*; **careō**, *be without* (VI. 38); **dēiciō**, *cast down from*; **dēsistō**, *desist from, leave off* (I. 8); **egeō**, *lack* (C. III. 32); **emittō**, *let go from* (I. 25); **excēdō**, *withdraw from, leave* (II. 25); **exuō**, *strip* (III. 6); **interclūdō**, *cut off* (I. 23).

levō, *relieve from* (V. 27); **līberō**, *free from* (IV. 19); **nūdō**, *clear* (II. 6); **prohibeō**, *keep from* (I. 1); **spoliō**, *rob of, despoil* (V. 6), and **exspoliō**, *rob* (VII. 77).

b. With several of these Verbs the idea of Separation may be expressed by a Preposition; as, **ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre**, *to defend the towns against the violence of the enemy*, lit. *to hold back the violence of the enemy from the towns* (I. 11).

c. With other Verbs the Ablative of Separation is regularly accompanied by a Preposition; as, **exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus**, *leads his army out of these regions* (I. 44).

d. Caesar uses **egeō** with the Genitive also: **nē quis . . . auxiliī egēret**, *that not any one be without help* (VI. 11).

128. *a*. A variety of the Ablative of Separation is the Ablative of Source, or Origin, which Caesar uses with **nātus**, participle of **nāscor**, and **ortus**, participle of **orior**; as, **amplissimō genere nātus**, *sprung from most illustrious stock* (IV. 12); **summō ortus locō**, *born to the highest station in life*, lit. *risen from the highest place* (VII. 77).

b. Origin is more broadly stated with Prepositions; as, **quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus**, *tribes from which they* (*were*) *descended* (V. 12);

ortōs ā Germānīs, *descendants* (lit. *descended*) *from the Germans* (II. 4); **ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs**, *descendants from Father Dis* (VI. 18).

129. *a.* The Ablative of Comparison is used by Caesar after Comparative Adjectives and Adverbs; as, **paulō cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, cēterīs** being used instead of **quam cēterī (sunt)**, *a little more civilized than the rest* (IV. 3); **nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum**, *not more than five or six miles each day* (I. 15); **celerius omnī opīniōne**, *more quickly than any one had anticipated*, lit. *than every expectation* (II. 3).

b. In a few instances Caesar uses **amplius, longius**, and **minus** as if in place of **amplius quam, longius quam, minus quam**, without influence upon the construction of the Noun following; as, **nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum** (Genitive of Measure), *not more than six hundred feet* (I. 38); **neque longius mīlia** (Accusative of Extent) **passuum VIII**, *and not further than eight miles* (V. 53); **mīlitēs sunt paulō minus DCC dēsīderātī**, *almost seven hundred men were lost*, lit. *by a small degree less than* 700 (VII. 51).

130. *a.* The Place Whence is regularly expressed by the Ablative with a Preposition, generally **ex** or **dē**; as, **ex agrīs**, *from the country* (I. 4).

b. **Domō**, Ablative of **domus**, is used in the Ablative of the Place Whence without a Preposition; as, **domō exīre**, *to go out from home* (I. 6).

131. *a.* The Ablative is used to denote Means or Instrument; as, **gladiīs partem eōrum interfēcērunt**, *killed a part of them with swords* (II. 23); **proeliīs contendunt**, *they contend in battle*, lit. *by means of battles* (I. 1); **memoriā tenēbat**, *he remembered*, lit. *held by means of memory* (I. 7).

b. The Ablative of Means may denote persons as well as things; as, **quīngentīs equitibus**, *with five hundred horsemen* (I. 15).

c. Caesar uses the Ablative of Means with **ūtor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, nītor, innītor**, and ordinarily with **potior**; thus **ephippiīs ūtī**, *to use saddle-cloths*, lit. *to assist themselves by means of saddle-cloths* (IV. 2); **impedīmentīs potītī sunt**, *obtained possession of the baggage*, that is *made themselves masters by means of the baggage* (I. 26).

d. Caesar uses **potior** also with the Genitive; as, **tōtīus Galliae potīrī**, *to become masters of the whole* (*of*) *Gaul* (I. 3).

e. Caesar uses an Ablative of Means with **frētus**, *relying on*, lit. *supported by*; as, **victōriīs frētī**, *relying on their victories* (III. 21).

f. The Ablative with **ūtor** is sometimes accompanied by a Predi-

cate Ablative, the construction resembling that of two Accusatives after verbs of *having* (*115, a*); thus **īsdem ducibus ūsus**, *employing the same men as guides* (II. 7).

132. *a.* **Opus est**, *there is need*, is used with the Ablative of the Thing needed, which may be expressed by a Perfect Passive Participle; thus, **sī quid opus factō esset**, *if anything should require action*, lit. *if there should be need of (something) done, to any extent* (I. 42).

b. With **opus est** the Thing needed may be expressed by a Neuter Pronoun in the Nominative; as, **sī quid** (Subject) **ipsī ā Caesare opus esset**, *if he himself had wanted anything of Caesar*, lit. *if anything were necessary to himself from Caesar* (I. 34); **quid . . . opus esset**, *what was necessary* (II. 22); **Quaecumque opus sunt**, *Whatever is* (lit. *whatever things are*) *necessary* (V. 40).

133. The Ablative of Means is used with a few Adjectives; as, **nāvēs . . . omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae**, *ships completely fitted out with every kind of equipment* (III. 14).

134. *a.* Caesar uses the Ablative of the Way by Which with several words referring to Natural Features and Military Operations; as, **adversō colle**, *up the hill*, lit. *by the hill facing them* (II. 19); **quod flūmine subvexerat**, *which he had brought up the river*, lit. *by means of the river* (I. 16); **duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī**, *that a sally be made from* (lit. *by*) *two gates* (III. 19).

The words thus used are:

collis, **flūmen**; **fretum** (C. II. 3); **iter**, especially in **magnīs itineribus**, *by forced marches* (I. 37); **iugum** (C. III. 97); **pōns** (C. I. 55); **porta**, **vadum** (I. 6, 8), and **via** (V. 19).

b. The Ablative of the Way by Which is sometimes used indefinitely with words referring to Distance; as, **tantō spatiō secūtī quantum efficere potuērunt**, *following so great a distance* (lit. *by so great a space*) *as they were able to cover* (IV. 35).

135. *a.* An Ablative denoting Cause is used with many Verbs and Adjectives, particularly those which express *pleasure*, *pain*, *trust*, *distrust*, *boastfulness*, and the like; as, **annī tempore cōnfīsae**, *trusting in the time of year*, lit. *confident because of the time of year* (III. 27); **Quod suā victōriā glōriārentur**, *the fact that they were boasting of* (lit. *by reason of*) *their victory* (I. 14).

b. In some phrases the force of the Ablative of Cause has become obscured, as in **causā** and **grātiā**, *for the sake of*, with the Genitive, and in **iussū**, **iniussū**, and the like; as, **auxiliī causā**, *as an auxiliary force*, lit. *for the sake of support* (III. 18; II. 24); **iussū Caesaris**, *by*

(*reason of*) *Caesar's orders* (VII. 3); **iniussū suō et cīvitātis**, *without his own authorization and* (*that*) *of the state*, i.e. because of un-authorization (I. 19).

136. *a.* The Ablative of Manner (answering the question "How?") is used by Caesar with **cum**, especially when the Noun is modified by an Adjective; as, **cum cruciātū necābātur**, *was put to death with torture* (V. 45); **multīs cum lacrimīs**, *with many tears* (I. 20).

b. The Ablative of Manner is often used without a Preposition; as, **et mente et animō**, *with heart and soul* (VI. 5).

c. In certain connections Caesar uses an Ablative with the meaning *in accordance with;* as, **Mōribus suīs**, *in accordance with their customs* (I. 4); **cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī**, *in accordance with the practice of the Roman people* (III. 23).

137. *a.* The Ablative is used with **cum** to express Accompaniment; as, **cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs**, *with all his forces* (I. 38).

b. An Ablative of Accompaniment referring to Military Operations, when qualified by an Adjective, may be used without **cum**; but if the modifier is a Numeral, **cum** must be used. Thus, **omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt**, *they hastened with all their forces* (II. 7); **cum duābus legiōnibus**, *with two legions* (I. 21).

c. The use of **cum** with the Ablative of Accompaniment is much broader than the meaning *together with.* Examples are: **cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs**, *had appointed with the envoys* (I. 8); **cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs commūnicātō**, *having imparted his determination to his lieutenants* (IV. 13); **cum Caesare ēgit**, *treated with Caesar* (I. 13); **cum illā (cōnsuētūdine) comparandam**, *to be compared with that manner of life* (I. 31).

138. An Ablative of Attendant Circumstance is used by Caesar with an Adjective, Pronominal Adjective, or Genitive as modifying word, and without a Preposition; as, **paribus intervāllīs**, *at equal intervals* (I. 51); **imperiō nostrō**, *under our sovereignty* (II. 1); **commodō reī pūblicae**, *with advantage to* (lit. *of*) *the State* (I. 35); **Caesaris voluntāte**, *with Caesar's approval* (I. 30).

139. The Ablative is used with certain Verbs meaning *exchange, mix,* and *accustom;* thus, **nē studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent**, *that they may not exchange their devotion to aggressive warfare for farming* (VI. 22); **nūllō officiō aut dīsciplīnā assuēfactī**, *habituated to* (lit. *familiarized with*) *no obligation or training* (IV. 1); **admixtum lacte**, *mixed with milk* (C. III. 48).

140. The Ablative of Degree of Difference is used with Compara-

tives, and with Adverbs or Phrases implying Comparison; as, **paulō longius**, *a little further*, lit. *further by a little* (II. 20); **paucīs ante diēbus**, *a few days before* (I. 18); **mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum**, *two miles beyond him*, lit. *beyond him by two miles* (I. 48).

141. The Ablative of Price is used by Caesar only in indefinite expressions; thus, **parvō pretiō redēmpta**, *purchased at a low price* (I. 18); **impēnsō pretiō**, *at a high price* (IV. 2); **quantō dētrīmentō**, *at how great a loss* (VII. 19); **levī mōmentō**, *of slight account* (VII. 39).

142. *a.* The Ablative of Specification (answering the question "In respect to what?") is used with Verbs and Adjectives and the Adverb **saepe**; as, **cum virtūte omnibus praestārent**, *since they surpassed all in valor* (I. 2); **Suēba nātiōne**, *a Sueban by birth* (I. 53); **numerō ad duodecim**, *about twelve in number*, lit. *in number about twelve* (I. 5); **saepe numerō**, *frequently*, lit. *often in respect to number* (I. 33).

b. The Ablative of Specification is used with **dignus** and **indignus**; as, **nihil, quod ipsīs esset indignum, committēbant**, *they did nothing that was unworthy of them*, lit. *in respect to themselves* (V. 35).

143. *a.* The Descriptive Ablative, or Ablative of Quality, is modified by an Adjective or, more rarely, by a Noun in the Genitive; as, **hominēs inimīcō animō**, *men of unfriendly (attitude of) mind* (I. 7).

b. The Descriptive Ablative may be used predicatively; as, **ingentī magnitūdine Germānōs esse**, *that the Germans were of huge size* (I. 39); **sunt speciē . . . taurī**, *they have* (lit. *are of*) *the appearance of a bull* (VI. 28).

144. *a.* The Ablative Absolute consists of a Noun or Pronoun in the Ablative with a Participle, Adjective, or Noun in the same case, and is loosely related with the rest of the sentence; as, **rēgnō occupātō**, *having seized the governing power*, lit. *the governing power having been seized* (I. 3).

b. The Ablative Absolute may express Time, Attendant Circumstance, Cause, Condition, Concession, Means, or Manner, and may often be translated by a clause; thus:

(1) Time: **M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus**, *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso*, lit. *Marcus Messala, Marcus Piso (being) consuls* (I. 2).

(2) Attendant Circumstance: **convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus**, *having called together their leading men* (I. 16); **captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs**, *after they had reached the height and our men were coming up* (I. 25).

(3) Cause: **omnibus frūgibus āmissīs**, *since all the produce of the fields was gone*, lit. *all . . . having been lost* (I. 28).

(4) Condition: **datā facultāte**, *if opportunity should have been granted* (I. 7).

(5) Concession or Opposition: **superiōribus locīs occupātīs**, *though the higher positions had been seized* (I. 23).

(6) Means: **eō dēprecātōre**, *through his intercession*, lit. *he (being) intercessor* (I. 9).

(7) Manner: **equō admissō**, *with (his) horse at top speed*, lit. *his horse having been let go* (I. 22).

145. *a.* The Place Where is regularly expressed by the Ablative with a Preposition; as, **in eōrum fīnibus**, *in their territories* (I. 1).

b. Names of Towns, excepting those in the Singular of the First and Second Declensions, are put in the Ablative of the Place Where, without a Preposition; as, **Bibracte**, *at Bibracte* (VII. 90).

c. The Noun **locus**, Singular and Plural, is often used in the Ablative of the Place Where without a Preposition, as are also several other Nouns when modified by an Adjective, particularly **tōtus**; thus, **aliēnō locō**, *on unfavorable ground*, lit. *in an unfavorable place* (I. 15); **tōtīs castrīs**, *throughout the camp*, lit. *in the whole camp* (I. 39); **eōdem vēstīgiō**, *in the same spot* (IV. 2).

146. With Names of Towns of the First and Second Declensions, Singular, Place Where is expressed by the Locative; as, **Cēnabī**, *at Cenabum* (VII. 14); also **domī**, Locative of **domus**, *at home* (I. 18).

147. *a.* The Time When, and Time Within Which anything happens, may be denoted by the Ablative without a Preposition; as, **diē quārtō**, *on the fourth day* (I. 26); **paucīs annīs**, *within a few years* (I. 31).

b. Words that have only an indirect reference to Time are sometimes put in the Ablative of Time When or Within Which; as, **patrum nostrōrum memoriā**, *within the memory of our fathers* (I. 12); **initiō ōrātiōnis**, *at the beginning of his statement* (I. 43).

c. Intervals of Space and Duration of Time are sometimes expressed by the Ablative, especially when modified by an Adjective or Genitive; as, **mīlibus passuum sex**, *six miles (distant)*, lit. *by six thousands of paces* (I. 48); **tōtā nocte iērunt**, *all night long they went on* (I. 26).

ADJECTIVES

148. *a.* Adjectives and Participles, whether Attributive or Predicative, agree in Gender, Number, and Case with the Noun or Pronoun to which they belong.

b. Attributive Adjectives and Participles stand in direct relation with a Noun or Pronoun; as, **fortissimō virō** (Abl.), *a very brave man* (II. 25); **Is, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus**, *He, led on by a desire of kingly power* (I. 2).

c. Predicate Adjectives, and Participles in Predicate used as Adjectives, are connected with a Noun or Pronoun through a Verb or Participle; as, **fortissimī sunt Belgae**, *the Belgians are the bravest* (I. 1); **quī perītissimus habēbātur**, *who was considered highly skilled* (I. 21); **Gallia est dīvīsa**, *Gaul is divided*, the Perfect Passive Participle of **dīvidō** being used as an Adjective; if **est dīvīsa** were here a Perfect Passive tense, it would have to be translated *has been divided* or *was divided* (I. 1).

d. A Predicate Adjective or Participle limiting an Infinitive or Clause is Neuter; as, **perfacile esse . . . potīrī**, *that it was exceedingly easy* (or, *a very easy thing*) *to obtain possession of*, **perfacile** being the Predicate after **esse**, to which **potīrī** stands as subject (I. 2).

e. A Participle forming part of an Infinitive may agree with the Subject of the Principal Verb; as, **meritus** [esse] **vidēbātur**, *was seen to have earned* (I. 40).

149. Demonstrative and other Pronouns used like Adjectives agree with the word to which they belong; as, **eō tempore**, *at that time* (I. 3); **quā arrogantiā**, *what presumption* (I. 46); **id ipsum**, *that very thing* (VII. 50).

150. *a.* An Attributive Adjective used with two or more Nouns regularly agrees with the Nearest; as, **eādem alacritāte ac studiō**, *the same eagerness and enthusiasm* (IV. 24).

b. A Predicate Adjective used with two or more Nouns is regularly Plural; when the Nouns are of Different Genders, the Adjective is generally Masculine if Persons are referred to, Neuter if only Things or Abstract Qualities are denoted, though even in this case the agreement may be with the nearer substantive; as, **frāter et soror eōrum bonī sunt**, *their brother and sister are good*; **et mūrus et porta alta erant**, *both the wall and the gate were high*; **ut bracchia atque umerī . . . līberī esse possent**, *that their arms and shoulders might be free* (VII. 56).

c. An Adjective or Participle may agree with a Noun in Sense, without regard to Grammatical Gender or Number; as, **hominum mīlia** (Neuter) **VI, perterritī** (Masculine), *six thousand (of) men, thoroughly frightened* (I. 27).

d. A Noun, particularly a Noun with Verbal Force, is sometimes modified by a prepositional phrase; as, **lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs**, *the office of envoy to the states* (I. 3).

151. Adjectives are sometimes used in Latin where in English an Adverb or a Phrase is required; as, **laetī . . . ad castra pergunt** (Historical Present), *joyfully . . . they advanced against the camp* (III. 18); **viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant**, *they oblige travelers, even against their will, to stop* (IV. 5).

152. *a.* Certain Adjectives often designate a part of that to which they refer; as, **in colle mediō**, *halfway up the hill* (I. 24); **prīmā nocte**, *in the first part of the night* (I. 27); **summus mōns**, *the top of the height* (I. 22).

The Adjectives thus used by Caesar are **extrēmus** (as II. 5); **īnfimus** (II. 18); **medius**; **multus** (I. 22); **novissimus**, in **novissimum agmen** (I. 15 and often), *the rear of a* marching *column* as the *latest part* of a column to pass a given point; **prīmus** and **summus**.

b. The Adjectives **prīnceps, prior, prīmus** are sometimes used by Caesar to designate *the first to* do or experience something; as, **prīnceps poenās persolvit**, *was the first to pay the penalty* (I. 12); **neque priōrēs bellum īnferre**, *did not take the lead in waging war*, where **prior** is used because only two peoples, the Germans and the Romans, are referred to (IV. 7).

c. The Adjective **multus** and another Adjective agreeing with the same Noun are joined by **et** or **-que**; as, **multīs gravibusque vulneribus**, *many severe wounds* (II. 25).

153. *a.* The Comparative and Superlative of both Adjectives and Adverbs sometimes have shades of meaning best expressed in English by *too, rather, very, exceedingly*, or *highly*, and the like, with the Positive; as, **paulō fortius**, *unusually brave*, lit. *a little braver* than usual (III. 14); **lātissimō atque altissimō**, *very wide and very deep* (I. 2).

b. A Superlative is sometimes modified by an Adverb; as, **longē nōbilissimus**, *far the highest in rank* (I. 2).

c. The highest possible degree is expressed by **quam** with the Superlative, as **quam maximum numerum**, *as great a number as possible, the greatest possible number* (I. 3); **quam celerrimē potuit**, *as quickly as possible* (I. 37); **quam prīmum**, *as soon as possible* (I. 40).

154. *a.* Adjectives and Participles are used as Substantives, frequently in the Plural, less often in the Singular; as, **vērī** (Neuter) **simile**, *probable*, lit. *like truth* (III. 13); **nostrī**, *our men* (I. 52); **novissimīs** (Masculine), *for the rear*, lit. *for those last* (I. 25); **sua**, *their possessions* (I. 11); **prō vīsō**, *as seen*, lit. *for* (*that which was*) *seen* (I. 22).

b. Caesar uses the Genitive Singular Neuter **suī** with a collective force in the Gerundive Construction, and in such cases it should be translated as if plural; as, **suī colligendī facultātem**, *opportunity of collecting their forces*, lit. *of collecting themselves* (III. 6).

PRONOUNS

155. The Genitives **meī**, **nostrī**, **tuī**, and **vestrī** (*39, a*) are regularly Objective, **nostrum** and **vestrum** being used in other relations; as, **tantā contemptiōne nostrī**, *with so great contempt for us* (V. 29); **omnium vestrum**, *of you all* (VII. 77).

156. The Plural is often used for the Singular of the Pronoun of the First Person, just as in our "editorial we"; thus Caesar when referring to himself as writer often uses a Plural Verb, as, **ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus**, *as we have previously shown* (II. 22).

157. *a.* The Possessive Pronouns are expressed only when required for the sake of Clearness, Emphasis, or Contrast; in translating they must be supplied in accordance with English idiom; as, **Cōnsidius, equō admissō**, *Considius with* (*his*) *horse at top speed* (I. 22).

b. When expressed for Clearness, and unemphatic, the Possessive Pronoun follows its Noun, as, **in cīvitāte suā**, *in his state* (I. 3); when used for Emphasis or Contrast, the Possessive Pronoun precedes its Noun, as, **meum officium**, *my duty* (IV. 25).

c. Caesar often uses **noster** to designate that which is Roman; as, **nostram amīcitiam**, *our friendship* (I. 43).

d. A Possessive Pronoun and a Genitive are sometimes coördinated in construction; as, **suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō**, *with his own kindness and that of the Roman people*, that is, *kindness of himself and of the Roman people* (I. 35).

e. **suus** may mean *his characteristic*, *his well-known*; as **suā clēmentiā**, *his well-known clemency* (II. 14).

158. *a.* The Reflexive Pronoun of the Third Person, **sē**, and the corresponding Possessive **suus**, refer to the Subject of the Verb; in a Subordinate Clause they may refer to the Subject of the Principal Clause (Indirect Reflexive). Thus, **sē ēripuit**, *he rescued himself*

(I. 4); **legiō . . . eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset,** *the legion . . . conveyed thanks to him because he had passed an extremely favorable opinion on it* (I. 41).

b. In the Pronouns of the First and Second Persons the regular forms are sometimes Reflexive, as, **mē servāre nōn possum,** *I cannot save myself* (VII. 50); so also *is*, as **eōs,** *themselves* (II. 1).

c. In translating into Latin the English Possessives 'his,' 'her,' 'its,' 'their,' when referring to the subject of the Verb must be rendered by forms of the Reflexive **suus.**

159. The Reciprocal Relation is expressed by **inter sē** (lit. *among themselves*), which must be translated in accordance with the requirements of English idiom; as, **inter sē dant,** *they gave* (lit. *give*) *to one another* (I. 3); **inter sē differunt,** *they differ from one another* (I. 1); **inter sē collocūtī,** *having conferred with one another* (IV. 30); **cohortātī inter sē,** *urging one another on* (IV. 25); **inter sē contenderent,** *they strove together* (I. 31); **inter sē,** referring to two persons, *with each other* (V. 44).

160. *a.* The Demonstrative Pronoun **hīc,** *this*, refers to something near the speaker or the subject of thought; **iste,** *that of yours*, to something near the person addressed; **ille,** *that*, to something more remote; and **is,** *that*, to something thought of in a less definite relation. Thus: **Hīc pāgus,** *This canton* (I. 12); **Animī est ista mollitia,** *That is lack of resolution on your part* (VII. 77); **illī simile bellō,** *like that war* with the Cimbrians and Teutons (VII. 77); **Is diēs,** *That day* just referred to (I. 6).

b. Caesar frequently uses the Demonstrative **is,** less frequently **hīc** and **ille,** where the English has a Personal Pronoun of the Third Person; as, **ad eōs,** *to them* (I. 1); **cur hunc quisquam discessūrum iūdicāret,** *why should any one suppose that he* (Ariovistus) *would withdraw* (I. 40); **illum ūnō diē fēcisse . . .** , *that he* (Caesar) *had in one day accomplished* (I. 13).

c. Caesar frequently uses the Neuter Singular and Neuter Plural of **hīc, ille,** and **is** with the meaning *this* (*thing*), *that* (*thing*), *it*, *these things*, *those things;* a Noun may sometimes be supplied in translation. Thus, **id quod,** *that which* (I. 5); **Id eīs persuāsit,** *he persuaded them* (*to*) *that course* (I. 2); **illa esse vēra,** *that those statements were true* (I. 20).

d. A Demonstrative Pronoun is sometimes used in Latin where English usage prefers an Article; thus, **Ea rēs,** *The matter*, lit. *that thing* (I. 4); **eum locum,** *a place* (II. 16).

e. A Demonstrative Pronoun used as Subject is regularly attracted into agreement with a Noun in the Predicate; as **Animī est ista mollitia**, for **istud est animī mollitia**, *that is lack of resolution on your part* (VII. 77).

161. *a.* The Demonstratives **hīc** and **ille** sometimes refer to what follows; as, **hōc facilius . . . quod**, *the more easily on this (account) because* (I. 2); **multīs dē causīs . . . quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod**, *for many reasons, of which this was the most weighty, that* (IV. 16).

b. Caesar sometimes uses **hīc** and **ille** in contrast, with the meaning *the latter* (that last mentioned) and *the former* (that previously mentioned); as, **Reliquī . . . sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent**, *The rest support themselves and those* in the field; *the latter after one year are again in arms, the former remain at home* (IV. 1).

c. A Conjunction followed by **is** or **hīc** may express an Emphatic Characterization; as, **legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam** (sc. **legiōnem**), *the legion, and that lacking its full strength*, lit. *and that not most full* (III. 2).

162. *a.* The Intensive Pronoun **ipse** with Nouns and Pronouns has the meaning *self, very*; as, **ipsī magistrātūs**, *the magistrates themselves* (I. 17); **ipsum esse Dumnorīgem**, *that Dumnorix was the very man* (I. 18); **in ipsīs rīpīs**, *on the very banks* (II. 23).

b. In Subordinate Clauses **ipse** may be used as an Indirect Reflexive referring to the Principal Subject, or to avoid ambiguity; as, **Ariovistus respondit, sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset**, *Ariovistus answered that if he himself had wanted anything of Caesar*, lit. *if anything were necessary to himself from Caesar* (I. 34).

c. Contrasted pronouns are often placed in proximity; as, **sē ipsī interficiunt**, *they all killed one another*, lit. *they themselves slay themselves* (V. 37).

163. *a.* A Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender and Number, but its Case depends upon its construction in the clause to which it belongs; as, **trēs** (**legiōnēs**, Fem., Acc.), **quae** (Fem., Pl., Nom.) . . . **hiemābant**, *three legions which were wintering* (I. 10).

b. A Relative referring to two or more Antecedents of the same Gender and Number agrees with them in Gender, but in Number may agree with the nearest Antecedent, or be Plural; as, **prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam audīrent**, *in accordance with his forbearance and graciousness, of which they were hearing* (II. 31);

fīlius et frātris fīlius, . . . quōs . . . , *his son and his brother's son, whom . . .* (V. 27).

c. A Relative referring to two or more Antecedents of different Gender or Number may agree with the nearest Antecedent, or be Masculine Plural in case one Antecedent denotes a man, Feminine Plural in case one Antecedent denotes a woman and the others things, or Neuter Plural in case only things are denoted; thus, **frūmentō** (Neut.) **commeātūque, quī** (M., Sing.), *grain and (other) supplies which . . .* (I. 48); **mātrēs familiae . . . petiērunt, nē sē** (Fem.), **et līberōs dēderent, quōs . . . ,** *the matrons besought not to give up themselves and the children whom* (VII. 26); **ūsus ac disciplīna, quae** (Neuter Plural) **. . . ,** *experience and training, which . . .* (I. 40).

164. *a.* The Antecedent of a Relative Pronoun is sometimes omitted; as, **(eī incolunt) quī,** *those inhabit who* (I. 1).

b. Caesar sometimes uses a Relative referring to an implied Antecedent; as, **servīlī tumultū, quōs . . . ,** as if he had said **tumultū servōrum, quōs . . . ,** *in the uprising of the slaves, whom . . .* (I. 40).

c. A Noun in Predicate attracts a Relative Pronoun standing as subject into agreement with it; as, **Belgās, quam** (for **quōs**) **tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus,** *the Belgians who, we had said, form* (lit. *are*) *a third of Gaul* (II. 1).

d. A Plural Relative may refer for its Antecedent to a Singular Collective Noun which suggests Plurality; as, **equitātum . . . quī videant,** *cavalry . . . to see*, lit. *who should see* (I. 15).

165. *a.* An Antecedent is sometimes repeated in a Relative Clause, and should be translated only once; as, **itinera duo, quibus itineribus,** *two routes by which* (I. 6), not *by which routes.*

b. An Appositional Antecedent is sometimes incorporated in a Relative Clause, and should be translated; as, **quod tempus convēnerat,** *the time which had been agreed on* (II. 19).

c. An Antecedent is often incorporated in a Relative Clause; as, **Cui ratiōnī, . . . hāc,** *By the cunning, . . . for which* (I. 40).

166. Caesar uses the Neuter of a Relative or Demonstrative Pronoun, sometimes both a Demonstrative and a Relative, referring to a Clause or Thought as a whole; as, **supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod . . . ,** *a thanksgiving was decreed, (a distinction) which . . .* (II. 35); **magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, perturbātiō facta est,** *a great commotion, as was bound to be the case, ensued* (IV. 29).

167. A Relative is often used in Latin at the beginning of a Clause or Sentence where English idiom requires a Demonstrative, with or

without a connective; as, **Quā dē causā**, *And for this reason, For this reason* (I. 1); **Quī . . . proelium committunt** (Historical Present), *They* (or *And they*) . . . *joined battle* (I. 15).

168. Of the Indefinite Pronouns, Caesar uses **quīdam**, *a certain*, in respect to persons or things distinctly thought of but not described; **aliquis**, *some, any, somebody*, of persons or things referred to in a general way; **quis** and **quī**, *any, some*, still more vaguely, with **sī**, **nisi**, **seu, nē**, and **ubi**; and **quisquam**, *any at all*, in Interrogative or Negative Clauses or in a Clause following a Comparative; as, **quāsdam rēs**, *certain things* (I. 30); **quīdam ex mīlitibus**, *a certain one* (or *one*) *of the soldiers* (I. 42); **alicuius iniūriae**, *of any wrong-doing* (I. 14); **sī quid vellent**, *if they wanted anything* (I. 7); **Cur quisquam iūdicāret**, *Why should any one suppose* (I. 40); **prius quam quicquam cōnārētur**, *before taking any measures*, lit. *before he should attempt anything at all* (I. 19).

169. Caesar uses the Indefinite Distributive Pronoun **uterque**, *each of two*, in the Plural as well as the Singular; as, **utrīsque castrīs**, *for each camp* (I. 51); **ab utrīsque**, *by those on each side* (IV. 26).

170. *a.* Caesar sometimes uses the Indefinite Distributive Pronoun **quisque**, *each*, with a Superlative to designate a Class, or with a Numeral Ordinal to indicate a Proportion; thus, **nōbilissimī cuiusque līberōs**, *the children of every man of high rank* (I. 31); **decimum quemque mīlitem**, *one soldier in ten*, lit. *each tenth soldier* (V. 52).

b. Caesar uses **quisque**, *each*, in close connection with **sē** and **suus**; as, **cum sibi quisque . . . peteret**, *when each one was seeking for himself* (II. 11); **utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret**, *that each might have them as witnesses of his own valor* (I. 52).

171. *a.* Of the Pronominal Adjectives, **cēterī** (Plural) means *the other, the rest* besides those mentioned; **reliquī**, *the rest* in the sense *those remaining* after some are taken; as, **Aeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī**, *the Aeduans and the other friends of the Roman people* (I. 35); **reliquōs Gallōs**, *the rest of the Gauls*, after the Helvetians have been singled out (I. 1).

b. Caesar repeats **alter** and **alius** in a Correlative Relation; as, **hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est**, *of these* (*daughters*) *one was killed, the other captured* (I. 53); **aliae (nāvēs) . . . aliae . . .**, *some* (*ships*) . . . *others* (IV. 28); **alterī — alterī**, *the latter — the former* (VII. 17).

c. Caesar repeats **alius** with the sense *one . . . one, another . . . another;* as, **legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte resisterent**, *legions were offering resistance, one at one point, another at another* (II. 22).

VERBS

AGREEMENT, MOODS AND TENSES, QUESTIONS

172. *a.* A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person; in compound forms of the Verb the Participle must agree with the Subject also in Gender. Thus, **Orgetorīx dēligitur**, *Orgetorix is chosen* (I. 3); **Ea rēs est ēnūntiāta**, *The matter* (lit. *that thing*) *was made known* (I. 4).

b. When a Verb is used with more than one Subject, it may agree with the nearest Subject, or be Plural; as, **fīlia et ūnus ē fīliīs captus est**, *a daughter and one of the sons were taken captive* (I. 26); **Nammeius et Verucloetius . . . obtinēbant**, *Nammeius and Verucloetius held* (I. 7).

c. Verbs are sometimes used in the Third Person Plural with an implied indefinite subject, as, **dīcunt**, *they say* (V. 12).

d. A verb in Latin is sometimes used with a Personal Subject where the English prefers the Impersonal Construction with "it"; as, **Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs . . . dīcantur**, *As to the fact that it was said that they would not be obedient*, lit. *that they are said not to be about to be*, etc. (I. 40).

173. *a.* When two Subjects express a single idea, the Verb may be Singular; as, **Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit**, *the Marne and the Seine separate . . .*, the two rivers being thought of as forming one boundary (I. 1).

b. A Plural Verb may be used with a Singular Noun, or with an unexpressed Subject representing a Singular Noun, where the sense suggests Plurality; as, **cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs conicerent**, *when so great a host were hurling stones* (II. 6).

174. Caesar rarely uses a Passive Verb or Participle in a Reflexive Sense; as, **sublevātī**, *supporting themselves* (I. 48); **armārī**, *to arm themselves* (IV. 32).

175. *a.* The Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses represent an action as going on in Present, Past, or Future Time; as, **eōrumque agrōs populābantur**, *and were laying waste their country* (I. 11).

b. In vivid narration Caesar often thinks of past events as in progress and uses the Present Indicative (Historical Present). In trans-

lating the Historical Present a past tense should generally be used; as, **dīcit līberius**, *he spoke* (lit. *speaks*) *more freely* (I. 18).

c. The Present is used in statements true at all times (Universal Present), and statements about Customs; as, **hominēs id, quod [crēdere] volunt, crēdunt**, *men readily believe what they wish to believe* (III. 18).

d. The Imperfect may be used of Repeated or Customary Action; as, **perīclitābātur**, *he kept trying* (II. 8); **adoriēbantur . . . circumsistēbant . . . coniciēbant**, *would attack . . . would surround . . . would hurl* (IV. 26).

e. The Imperfect is sometimes used of Attempted Action (Conative Imperfect); as, **nostrōs intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant**, *were trying to prevent our men from getting inside the fortification* (V. 9).

f. The Imperfect with **iam**, used of an action already in progress for a considerable period, should be translated with a Progressive Pluperfect; as, **Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex pugnārētur**, *when fighting had now been going on more than six hours* (III. 5).

176. *a.* Caesar generally uses the Historical Perfect, as **discessit**, *he withdrew* (I. 14); very rarely he uses the Perfect in the sense of the English Present Perfect, as **nōn vēnērunt**, *they have not come* (VII. 77).

b. The Perfect and Pluperfect of **nōscō, cognōscō, cōnsuēscō** express a state resulting from action, and are generally best translated by the Present and Imperfect; as, **nōvērunt**, *they are familiar with*, lit. *have come to know* (VI. 15); **īre cōnsuērant**, *were accustomed (had become accustomed) to go* (III. 1). The Perfect and Pluperfect of **meminī** and **ōdī** also are translated by the Present and Imperfect.

c. The Latin Future Perfect is used with great precision, where frequently in English a Future or Present Tense might be employed; as, **meum officium praestiterō**, *I shall have done my duty*, where we should ordinarily say, *I shall do my duty* (IV. 25).

177. *a.* In the Sequence of Tenses a Primary Tense (Present, Future, or Future Perfect[1]) in the Principal Clause is ordinarily followed by a Primary Tense in the Subordinate Clause; and a Secondary Tense (Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect[2]) of the Principal

---

[1] The Primary Tenses of the Indicative, referring to Present and Future Time, are the Present, Future, and Future Perfect. The Primary Tenses of the Subjunctive are the Present and Perfect. Cf. *354* (p. 642).

[2] The Secondary Tenses of the Indicative, referring to Past Time, are the Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect. The Secondary Tenses of the Subjunctive are the Imperfect and Pluperfect.

Clause by a past tense in the Subordinate Clause. Thus, **Mercātōribus est aditus ut, quae bellō cēperint, quibus vēndant, habeant,** *Traders have access (to them) . . . that they may have purchasers for the things that they have captured in war,* lit. *that they may have (those) to whom they may sell (those things) which they have taken in war* (IV. 2); **equitātumque, quī sustinēret impetum, mīsit,** *and he sent his cavalry to sustain the attack* (I. 24).

b. A Historical Present in the Principal Clause is sometimes followed by a Primary Tense, sometimes by a Secondary Tense, in the Subordinate Clause; as, **diem dīcunt, quā diē . . . conveniant,** *they set a day on which they were* (lit. *are*) *to come together* (I. 6); **pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindī,** *he gave* (lit. *gives*) *orders that the bridge, which was near Geneva, be cut down* (I. 7).

c. A verb in a Subordinate Clause containing a Statement of Fact or a General Truth may be in the Present Tense even though the verb of the Principal Clause is in a Past Tense; as, **eīs persuāsit, quod Helvetiī . . . continentur,** *he persuaded them, because the Helvetians are hemmed in . . .* (I. 2).

178. The Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse express time relative to that of the Verbs on which they depend, the Present Infinitive expressing the same time as the Governing Verb; the Perfect Infinitive, time earlier than that of the Governing Verb; and the Future Infinitive, time later than that of the Governing Verb. Thus, **nōn sē hostem verērī . . . dīcēbant,** *were saying that they did not fear the enemy* (I. 39); **illum fēcisse intellegerent,** *they understood that he had done* (1. 13); **Caesar . . . sēsē eōs . . . cōnservātūrum [esse] dīxit,** *Caesar said that he would spare their lives* (II. 15).

179. *a.* Direct Questions in Latin are introduced by Question Words and are of two kinds:

(1) Single Questions, introduced by Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs, or by the Enclitic **-ne** attached to the emphatic word of the question and asking for information, by **nōnne** implying the answer "Yes," or **num** implying the answer "No." Thus: **quem locum . . . exspectās?** *what (kind of a) chance are you waiting for* (V. 44)? **Audīsne?** *Do you hear?* **Nōnne audīs?** *Do you not hear?* **Num audīs?** *You don't hear, do you?*

(2) Double Questions, which ordinarily have **utrum** or the Enclitic **-ne** in the First Member, and **an,** *or,* or **annōn,** *or not,* in the second; as, **utrum officium, an timor, plūs valet,** *Is sense*

of duty, or cowardice, stronger? The First Member of a Double Question may be omitted, **An** alone introducing the second; as, **An . . . dubitātis?** *Do you have (any) doubt* (VII. 77)?

b. In Indirect Discourse Caesar uses Rhetorical Questions, implying a Negative Answer, Doubt, or Perplexity; these in the Direct Form would have had the Indicative, or the Deliberative Subjunctive. Thus:

(1) Indicative in the Direct Form: **num . . . memoriam dēpōnere posse?** *could he lay aside the recollection?* As a Direct Question: **Num . . . memoriam dēpōnere possum**, *can I put aside the recollection?* implying the answer "No"; as when we say "How can I do that?" meaning, emphatically, "I cannot do that" (I. 14).

(2) Deliberative Subjunctive in the Direct Form: **cūr quisquam . . . iūdicāret**, *why should any one infer?* in the Direct form, **cūr iūdicet?** (I. 40); **neque satīs Brūtō . . . centuriōnibusque . . . cōnstābat, quid agerent**, *and Brutus and the centurions . . . did not quite know what to do*, lit. *and it was not quite clear to Brutus and the centurions . . . what they should do;* as a Direct Question, **Quid agāmus?** *What are we to do?* (III. 14).

180. *a.* Caesar rarely uses the Subjunctive in the First Person to express an Exhortation (Hortatory Subjunctive); as, **hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus**, *let us kill these bandits* (VII. 38); **sīmus parātī**, *let us be ready* (C. III. 85).

b. Caesar rarely uses the Subjunctive in the Third Person to express a Command (Jussive Subjunctive); as, **Cum hīs mihi rēs sit**, *let me deal* (lit. *let the issue be to me*) *with those* (VII. 77).

c. A Wish Capable of Realization is expressed by the Present Subjunctive, often with **utinam**; as, **utinam redeant**, *may they return!*

d. A Wish Incapable of Realization is expressed in Present Time by **utinam** with the Imperfect Subjunctive and in Past Time by **utinam** with the Pluperfect Subjunctive; as, **utinam adessent**, *oh that they were here* (but they are not); **utinam redīssent**, *oh that they had come back* (but they did not).

181. *a.* Caesar rarely uses the Imperative, in Direct Quotations, as **Dēsilīte**, *Jump down* (IV. 25).

b. Caesar uses the Imperatives **nōlī, nōlīte** with the Infinitive to

express Prohibition; as, **Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre**, *Do not* (lit. *be unwilling to*) *rob them of your assistance* (VII. 77).

182. Caesar rarely uses an Infinitive in a Principal Clause in the place of an Imperfect or Perfect Indicative (Historical Infinitive), the Subject being in the Nominative; as, **Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre**, *Caesar kept pressing the Aeduans for the grain* (I. 16); **hostēs . . . signō datō dēcurrere**, *the enemy at a given signal rushed down* (III. 4).

CAUSAL AND TEMPORAL CLAUSES, RELATIVE CLAUSES, CLAUSES OF PURPOSE AND RESULT

183. *a.* In Causal Clauses introduced by **quod** and **quoniam** Caesar uses the Indicative when the reason is stated as that of Caesar the Writer, the Subjunctive when the reason is presented as some one else's. Thus, **Dumnorīx . . . Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod . . . dūxerat**, *Dumnorix was friendly to the Helvetians, because he had taken . . .*, the **quod**-clause containing Caesar's explanation of the reason why Dumnorix favored the Helvetians (I. 9); **eī grātiās ēgit, quod optimum iūdicium fēcisset**, *thanked him because* (as the delegation said) *he had passed a most favorable judgment*, the **quod**-clause here having the Subjunctive because it presents the reason given by the delegation for the expression of thanks (I. 41).

b. In Causal Clauses Caesar sometimes uses the Subjunctive of a Verb of Saying or Thinking to introduce a statement of a reason ascribed to some one else; as, **Bellovacī suum numerum nōn complēvērunt, quod sē suō nōmine . . . bellum gestūrōs dīcerent**, *the Bellovaci did not furnish their full contingent because, as they said, they were going to wage war on their own account . . .* (VII. 75).

c. The Subjunctive introduced by **nōn quod**, *not because*, or **quam quō** (= **quam eō quod**), *than because*, may be used to express an alleged or assumed reason; as, **quam quō . . . dēsīderent**, *than because they desire* (IV. 2).

184. *a.* A Causal Clause introduced by **cum**, *since*, has its verb in the Subjunctive; as, **cum . . . persuādēre nōn possent**, *since they were not able to persuade* (I. 9).

b. Caesar sometimes uses the adverb **praesertim**, *especially*, to make prominent the Causal Idea in a Clause introduced by **cum**; as, **praesertim cum eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit**, *especially*

since, in response to (lit. *prevailed upon by*) *their entreaties, he had undertaken the campaign* (I. 16).

185. *a.* **Cum** Temporal, *when*, referring to the Present or Future is used with the Indicative; as, **cum . . . premuntur**, *when they are overwhelmed* (VI. 13).

b. With **cum** Temporal, *when*, and **cum prīmum**, *as soon as*, referring to Past Time, Caesar uses the Indicative when the force of **cum** is purely Temporal; as, **cum . . . exercitus . . . meritus (esse) vidēbātur**, *when the army clearly earned*, lit. *was seen to have earned* (I. 40); **cum prīmum potuit**, *as soon as he could* (III. 9).

c. With **cum** Temporal, *when*, and **cum prīmum**, *as soon as*, referring to Past Time, Caesar uses the Subjunctive when an idea of Circumstance, Condition, or Cause is involved; as, **cum ferrum sē īnflexisset**, *when* (i.e. *when and because*) *the iron had become bent*, lit. *had bent itself* (I. 25); **cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet**, *as soon as* (*and because*) *there began to be plenty of forage* (II. 2).

186. *a.* Caesar sometimes uses **cum** Temporal or **ubi** with the Indicative to denote recurrent action; as, **cum ūsus est**, *whenever it is necessary* (IV. 2).

b. Caesar sometimes uses **cum** Temporal correlatively with the Adverb **tum** in the sense *not only . . . but also, but, both . . . and;* as, **cum omnis iuventūs . . . convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubīque fuerat**, *not only* (lit. *when*) *had all the youth . . . assembled but* (lit. *then*) *all the ships they had* (III. 16).

187. Caesar sometimes uses **cum** Adversative, *although, while*, with the Subjunctive; as, **cum ea ita sint**, *although this* (lit. *those things*) *is true* (I. 14).

188. *a.* Caesar uses the Temporal Conjunctions **ubi, ut**, *when*, **postquam**, *after*, **posteā quam** (written as two words) *after that, after*, and **simul atque, simul**, *as soon as*, with the Indicative, usually in the Perfect Tense. Thus, **Quod ubi Caesar resciit**, *When Caesar found this out* (I. 28); **postquam Caesar pervēnit**, *after Caesar arrived* (I. 27); **simul atque sē recēpērunt**, *so soon as they rallied* (IV. 27).

b. The conjunction **ut**, *as*, introducing a comparison, is used with the Indicative; as, **ut . . . nōluerant, ita**, *as they had been unwilling so . . .* (II. 1).

c. **ubi prīmum**, *as soon as* (lit. *when first*), is used with the Perfect Indicative; as, **ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt**, *as soon as they saw our horsemen* (IV. 12).

d. The Pluperfect Indicative with **ubi** may denote a Repeated Action; as, **ubi . . . cōnspexerant**, *whenever they saw*, lit. *when they had seen* (IV. 26).

189. *a.* Caesar uses **prius quam**, *until, before*, with the Indicative to denote an actual occurrence or a fact; as, **neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum . . . pervēnērunt**, *and they did not stop their flight until they reached the river Rhine* (I. 53).

b. Caesar uses **prius quam** and **ante quam**, *sooner than, before*, with the Subjunctive, implying Expectancy or Purpose in an action; as, **prius quam sē hostēs reciperent**, *before the enemy could rally* (II. 12).

190. *a.* Caesar uses **dum** Temporal in the sense of *while* with the Indicative Historical Present; in the sense of *so long as, while*, with the Indicative Present, Imperfect, and Perfect. Thus, **Dum ea conquīruntur**, *while those things were* (lit. *are*) *being sought out* (I. 27); **Dum longius aberant Gallī**, *so long as the Gauls were further away* (VII. 82).

b. Caesar uses **dum**, *until*, with the Subjunctive to denote Intention or Expectancy; as, **dum . . . Helvētiī pervenīrent**, *until the Helvetians should reach* (I. 11).

c. Caesar uses **quoad** in the Temporal sense of *so long as, until*, with the Indicative; in the sense of *until* denoting Intention or Expectancy, with the Subjunctive. Thus, **quoad potuit**, *so long as he could* (IV. 12); **quoad ipse propius . . . accessisset**, *until he himself should have come up nearer* (IV. 11).

191. *a.* Caesar uses the Adversative Conjunctions **etsī**, **tametsī**, *although*, with the Indicative; as, **etsī . . . vidēbat**, *although he saw* (I. 46).

b. Concessive **ut**, meaning *granted that, although*, is followed by the Subjunctive; as, **ut omnia contrā opīniōnem accidant**, *granted that everything turn out contrary to expectation* (in Indirect Form III. 9).

192. Relative Clauses, introduced by a Relative or General Relative Pronoun, have their Verb in the Indicative unless an idea of Purpose, Characteristic, Cause, Result, or Condition is involved; as, **Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant**, *of the Allobroges, who had lately been subdued* (I. 6); **quaecumque pars castrōrum . . . premī vidēbātur**, *whenever any part* (lit. *whatever part*) *of the camp seemed to be hard pressed* (III. 4).

193. *a.* A Relative Clause of Purpose may be introduced by **quī** (= **ut is**, *in order that he*), or by the Relative Adverbs **quō** (= **ut**

eō), **quā** (= **ut eā**), and has its Verb in the Subjunctive; as, **lēgātōs mittunt** (Historical Present) **nōbilissimōs cīvitātis . . . quī dīcerent**, *they sent as envoys the citizens of highest rank to say*, lit. *who should say* (I. 7); **quō gravius hominēs . . . doleant**, *in order that men may more bitterly suffer* (I. 14). Cf. *355* (p. 643).

b. In Relative Clauses of Purpose **quō** is generally used with a Comparative; as, **quō facilius . . . possit**, *that he might* (lit. *may*) *be able the more easily* (I. 8).

194. *a.* A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive, introduced by a Relative Pronoun or Relative Adverb, may characterize an Indefinite Antecedent (Clause of Characteristic); as, **itinera duo, quibus itineribus . . . exīre possent**, *two routes by which they could go out*, i.e. two routes of such a character that by them they could go out (I. 6); **nihil [eīs] erat quō famem tolerārent**, *they had nothing with which they could satisfy hunger* (I. 28).

b. A Clause of Characteristic may be used after a Comparative; as **nōn longius aberant quam quō tēlum adigī posset**, *were already within range*, lit. *not further away than* (the distance) *to which a dart could be thrown* (II. 21).

c. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive may have a Causal Force; as, **Catuvolcus . . . dētestātus Ambiorīgem, quī eius cōnsiliī auctor fuisset, . . . sē exanimāvit**, *cursing Ambiorix, since he* (lit. *who*) *had been the originator of that scheme, Catuvolcus killed himself* (VI. 31).

d. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive may have an Adversative Force; as, **Cicerō, quī . . . mīlitēs in castrīs continuisset**, *Cicero, although he had kept the soldiers in camp* (VI. 36).

e. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive may have a Conditional Force; as **quī . . . vidēret** *if one should look at* (VII. 19).

f. A Restrictive Clause may be introduced by the Relative **quod** and have the Subjunctive; as, **quod . . . posset**, *so far as he might be able*, (lit. *that*) *which*, etc. (I. 35).

195. A Relative Clause of Result may be introduced by **quī** (= **ut is**, *so that he*), or **quīn** (= **quī nōn, quae nōn, quod nōn**), and has its Verb in the Subjunctive; as, **Nēmō est tam fortis, quīn reī novitāte perturbētur**, *No one* (*of them*) *was so strong that he was not upset by the unexpectedness of the occurrence* (VI. 39).

196. *a.* Clauses of Purpose in Caesar are most often introduced by **ut, utī**, *in order that, that*, or **nē**, *in order that not, lest*, and have their Verb in the Subjunctive; as, **ut spatium intercēdere posset,**

in order that a period of time might (lit. *might be able to*) *intervene* (I. 7); **Id nē accideret**, *in order that this might not happen* (I. 38).

b. In Clauses of Purpose Caesar uses **nē . . . nēve (neu)** in the sense of *that not . . . nor*, and **ut (utī) . . . nēve (neu)** in the sense of *that . . . and that not*, with the Subjunctive; as, **ut . . . eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent**, *that the force of these things might be lessened and that they might not damage the bridge* (IV. 17).

197. *a.* Clauses of Result are most often introduced by **ut** or **utī**, *so that, that* (negative **nōn**), and have their Verb in the Subjunctive; as, **ut perpaucī prohibēre possent**, *so that a very few* (*men*) *could stop them* (I. 6); **ut . . . iūdicārī nōn possit**, *that it cannot be determined* (I. 12).

b. Clauses of Result are often preceded by a word of Measure or Quality, **tam, tantus, ita, sīc**, etc.; as, **tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī . . . proelium redintegrārent**, *so great a change was brought about that our* (*men*) *renewed the fight* (II. 27); **sīc mūniēbātur, ut magnam . . . daret facultātem**, *was so fortified that it afforded a great resource* (I. 38).

c. A Clause of Result with the Subjunctive may be introduced by **quam** after a Comparative, with or without **ut**; as, **pulverem maiōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret**, *a cloud of dust greater than usual* lit. *greater than* (*so that*) *an ordinary condition would bring it* (IV. 32).

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

198. *a.* Substantive Clauses are used as Subject of a Verb, as Object of a Verb, and in other Relations similar to those in which Nouns are used.

b. A Substantive Clause introduced by **quod**, meaning *the fact that, that*, has its Verb in the Indicative, and may stand as Subject, or Predicate, or Object of a Verb, or in Apposition. Thus, **magnō erat impedīmentō, quod . . . neque . . . poterant**, *A great hindrance . . . was the fact that they were able neither to . . .* the **quod**-clause being the Subject of **erat** (I. 25); **causa mittendī fuit quod . . . volēbat**, *the reason for sending was the fact that he wanted . . .* the **quod**-clause being in Predicate (III. 1); **multae rēs . . . in prīmīs quod . . . vidēbat**, *many circumstances, first of all the fact that he saw . . .* the **quod**-clause being in Apposition with **rēs** (I. 33).

c. A Substantive Clause introduced by **quod**, meaning *As to the fact that, As regards the fact that*, may have the force of an Accusative or Ablative of Specification. Thus, **quod . . . ēnūntiārit**, 'As to the

fact that he had reported'; in the direct form, **quod ēnūntiāvī**, *as to the fact that I have reported* (I. 17).

199. *a.* Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by **ut**, or **utī**, *that*, and **nē**, *that not*, are used after Verbs of *Commanding, Urging, Reminding, Asking, Persuading, Conceding* and *Permitting, Deciding, Striving;* the Subjunctive may often best be translated by an Infinitive. Thus, **Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut . . . cōpiam facerent**, *ordered the Allobroges to furnish* (lit. *that they should furnish*) *a supply . . .* (I. 28); **persuādet** (Historical Present) **Casticō . . . ut rēgnum . . . occupāret**, *persuaded Casticus to seize the kingly power* (I. 3).

Such Verbs and Phrases used by Caesar are :

(1) Commanding : **imperō**, *order;* **interdīcō**, *enjoin* (VII. 40); **mandō**, *command* (I. 47); **negōtium dō**, *assign the task* (II. 2); **praecipiō**, *enjoin, direct* (I. 22); **dēnūntiō**, *enjoin,* (C. III. 86); **praedīcō**, *order in advance* (C. III. 92).

(2) Urging : **cohortor**, *encourage* (II. 21); **hortor**, *urge* (I. 19); **sollicitō**, *press* (III. 8).

(3) Reminding : **admoneō**, *admonish* (V. 49); **moneō**, *warn* (I. 20).

(4) Asking : **dēprecor**, *beg to escape* (II. 31); **ōrō**, *beg* (IV. 16); **obsecrō**, *beseech* (I. 20); **obtestor**, *pray* (IV. 25); **petō**, *ask earnestly* (I. 28); **postulō**, *demand* (I. 34); **rogō**, *ask* (I. 7).

(5) Persuading: **addūcō**, *prevail upon* (I. 31); **persuadeō**, *persuade;* **impellō**, *incite* (IV. 16).

(6) Conceding and Permitting : **concēdō**, *grant* (III. 18); **patior**, *suffer, allow* (I. 45); **permittō**, *permit* (I. 35).

(7) Deciding : **cēnseō**, *decree* (I. 35); **cōnstituō**, *determine* (II. 10); **placuit**, *it pleased* (I. 34); **sanciō**, *bind* (I. 30).

(8) Striving : **agō**, *arrange* (I. 41); **contendō**, *strive* (I. 31); **dō operam**, *take pains* (V. 7); **impetrō**, *obtain one's request* (I. 9); **labōrō**, *put forth effort* (I. 31).

b. Such Verbs are sometimes used impersonally in the Passive, the Substantive Clause taking the place of a Subject; as **erat eī praeceptum, nē proelium committeret**, *he had been ordered not to join battle,* lit. *it had been ordered to him that he should not,* etc. (I. 22).

c. With such Verbs the Substantive Clause is sometimes replaced by the Infinitive, with or without a Subject Accusative; as, **loquī concēditur**, *permission is given to speak* (VI. 20); **Hās [nāvēs] āctuāriās imperat** (Historical Present) **fierī**, *he ordered that these* (*ships*) *be built for fast movement* (V. 1).

d. As a Negative Connective between Substantive Subjunctive Clauses Caesar uses **nēve** (before vowels and **h**) and **neu** (before consonants), with the meaning *and that . . . not, or that . . . not.*

200. *a.* In Substantive Clauses with **ut** after **admoneō, cōhortor, cōnstituō, imperō, mandō, nūntiō,** *order*, **postulō,** *demand*, and **rogō,** *ask*, and a few phrases, the **ut** is sometimes omitted; as, **rogat** (Historical Present), **fīnem ōrandī faciat,** *asked him to make an end of his pleading* (I. 20).

b. **Iubeō,** *order*, *bid*, and **vetō,** *forbid*, are regularly used by Caesar with the Infinitive and Subject Accusative; **cōnor,** *attempt*, with the Infinitive; as, **quemque effere iubent,** *they gave* (lit. *give*) *orders that each person carry away* . . . (I. 5); **exsequī cōnārētur,** *attempted to enforce* (I. 4).

201. *a.* Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by **nē,** *that not*, **quō minus,** *that not* (lit. *by which the less*), and **quīn,** *that not*, are used after Verbs of *Hindering*, *Preventing*, and *Refusing;* the Conjunction often may best be rendered by *from* with a Participle. Thus, **hōs . . . dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant,** *these through fear were holding back* (*the people*) *from furnishing the grain* (I. 17); **retinērī nōn potuerant quīn . . . tēla conicerent,** *could not be restrained from hurling darts* (I. 47).

. Such Verbs used by Caesar are:

dēterreō, *hold back through fear;* **recūsō,** *refuse* (I. 31); **retineō,** *restrain;* **temperō,** *restrain one's self* (I. 33); **teneō,** *hold back* (IV. 22); **terreō,** *frighten* (VII. 49).

b. Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by **quīn** are used also after general expressions of Doubt and Negation, **quīn** being translated *that*. Thus, **nōn esse dubium, quīn . . .,** *that there was no doubt that* (I. 3); **neque abest suspīciō . . . quīn,** *and there is ground for suspecting that*, lit. *and there is not lacking suspicion that* (I. 4).

c. After **dubitō,** meaning *doubt*, Caesar uses a Substantive Clause with **quīn** and the Subjunctive; after **dubitō,** *hesitate*, generally the Infinitive, rarely a clause with **quīn.** Thus, **nōn dubitāre quīn . . . sūmat,** *he did not doubt that he* (Ariovistus) *would inflict* (I. 31); **trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt,** *did not hesitate to cross the river* (II. 23); **dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit quīn . . . proficīscirētur,** *thought that he ought not to hesitate to set out* (II. 2).

202. Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by **ut** and **nē** are used after Verbs of Fearing; after such Verbs **ut** is to be translated *that not*, and **nē,** *that*, or *lest*. Thus, **nē . . . offenderet verēbātur,** *was afraid that he might offend* (I. 19); **ut . . . supportārī posset, timēre dīcēbant,** *were saying that they feared that* (*the supply of grain*) *could not be brought up* (I. 39).

203. Clauses of Result introduced by **ut** or **utī** and **ut nōn** are used as Substantive Clauses in four ways:

(1) As the Subject of Impersonal Verbs; thus, **fīēbat ut . . . vagārentur**, *it came about that they wandered* (I. 2); **Accēdēbat ut . . . tempestātem ferrent**, *There was the additional fact that they weathered the storm* (III. 13).

The more important Impersonal Forms thus used by Caesar are **accēdēbat**; **accidit**, *it happened* (IV. 29); **fit** (C. II. 4); **fīēbat**; **factum est** (III. 19); **factum esse** (I. 31), **fierī** (II. 4); **īnstitūtum est**, *the custom became fixed* (C. III. 92); **Relinquēbātur**, *the result was*, lit. *it was left* (V. 19); and the Future Infinitive of **sum** in both forms, **futūrum esse** (I. 10, 20, 31), and **fore** (I. 42).

(2) As Predicate or Appositive with **cōnsuētūdō est** and **iūs est**; thus, **ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae . . . dēclārārent**, *there was the custom that the matrons should declare* (I. 50).

(3) As Object after Verbs of Action and Accomplishment; thus, **committeret ut is locus . . . nōmen caperet**, lit. *bring it about that the place . . . should assume a name* (I. 13); **commeātūs ut . . . portārī possent, efficiēbat**, *made it possible for supplies to be brought*, lit *was accomplishing that supplies could be brought* (II. 5).

The Verbs thus used by Caesar are **committō**, **efficiō**, **perficiō** (I. 9).

(4) As Appositive of a Noun or Neuter Pronoun whose meaning the **ut**-clause defines; thus, **poenam, ut īgnī cremārētur**, *the penalty of being burned by fire*, lit. *that he should be burned by fire* (I. 4); **id, quod cōnstituerant . . . ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant**, *that which they had resolved upon, a migration from their country*, lit. *that they should go out from their territories* (I. 5).

204. Indirect Questions are used as Substantive Clauses after Expressions of Inquiry, Narration, Deliberation, and Uncertainty, and have the Subjunctive. The following types of Indirect Questions are used by Caesar:

(1) Introduced by the Interrogative Particles **-ne** (V. 27), **num** (I. 14) in Single Questions; in Double Questions, by the Correlative Particles **utrum . . . an**, *whether . . . or* (I. 40); **utrum . . . necne**, *whether . . . or not*, **neṇe** representing **annōn** of the Direct Form (I. 50); **-ne . . . an**, *whether . . .*

or (VI. 31); **-ne . . . an . . . an**, *whether . . . or . . . or* (IV. 14); **-ne . . . -ne**, *whether . . . or* (VII. 14); and **an** alone, **utrum** being omitted, *or* (VII. 15). Thus, **cōnsultum [esse], utrum īgnī statim necārētur an . . . reservārētur**, *that counsel was taken whether he should at once be put to death by burning, or saved up* for another occasion (I. 53).

(2) Introduced by an Interrogative Pronoun; as, **Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit** (Historical Present), **ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit** (*Caesar*), *set guards over Dumnorix, in order to be able to know what* (lit. *what things*) *he did, with whom he talked* (I. 20).

(3) Introduced by Pronominal Adjectives, and Adverbs used Interrogatively; as, **in utram partem fluat**, *in which direction it flows* (I. 12). Adjectives and Adverbs thus used by Caesar are **quālis**, *of what sort* (I. 21); **quam** with an Adjective, *how* (I. 43); **quantus**, *how great* (I. 17); **quem ad modum**, *in what way* (I. 36); **uter**, *which*; **cūr**, *why* (I. 40); **quārē**, *wherefore, why* (I. 45); **quō**, *whither* (III. 16); **quot**, *how many* (VII. 19); **quotiēns**, *how often* (I. 43); **unde**, *whence* (V. 53); **ut**, *how* (I. 43).

(4) Introduced by **sī**, *if, whether*, after Verbs of Effort and Expectation; as, **sī perrumpere possent, cōnātī**, *trying* (*to see*) *whether they could break through* (I. 8).

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

205. Caesar has General Conditions of the First Type (Conditions of Fact) introduced by **sī**, *if*, with the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Protasis implying Customary or Repeated Action; **sī** is almost equivalent to *whenever*. Thus:

(1) Present Tense in both Protasis and Apodosis: **sī quī ex reliquīs excellit, succēdit**, *if anyone of the rest is preëminent, he becomes the successor* of the arch-druid (VI. 13).

(2) Imperfect Tense in both Protasis and Apodosis: **sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant**, *if there was unusually serious difficulty* (lit. *if there was anything rather hard*) *they would rush to the rescue* (I. 48).

(3) Perfect Tense in the Protasis, Present in the Apodosis: **sī compertum est, interficiunt**, *if the fact* (*of crime*) *has been established, they kill* (VI. 19).

(4) Pluperfect Tense in the Protasis, Imperfect in the Apodosis: **sī quī . . . equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant**, *if anyone had fallen from his horse, they would gather around him* (I. 48).

206. Caesar has Specific Conditions of the First Type (Conditions of Fact) introduced by **sī**, *if*, or **nisi**, *unless*, with the Indicative in the Protasis, and the Indicative, Imperative, or Hortatory Subjunctive in the Apodosis. Thus:

(1) Present Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis: **Cuius sī vōs paenitet, vestrum vōbīs beneficium remittō**, *if you regret this, I give you back your favor* (C. II. 32).

(2) Present Indicative in the Protasis, Present Imperative in the Apodosis: **Dēsilīte . . . nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere**, *jump down, unless you wish to abandon your eagle to the enemy* (IV. 25).

(3) Present Indicative in the Protasis, Hortatory Subjunctive in the Apodosis: **Sī quid in nōbīs animī est, persequāmur mortem**, *if we have any vestige of courage in us, let us avenge the death* (VII. 38).

(4) Future Perfect Indicative in the Protasis, Future Indicative or Imperative in the Apodosis: **sī gravius quid acciderit, ratiōnem reposcent**, *if any disaster shall befall them* (lit. *anything rather heavy shall have happened*), *they will demand an accounting* (V. 30); **Tuēminī castra, et dēfendite, sī quid dūrius acciderit**, *guard the camp, and defend it in case of any trouble*, lit. *if anything rather hard shall have happened* (C. III. 94).

207. Caesar has conditions of the Second Type (Conditions of Possible Realization), introduced by **sī**, *if*, **nisi**, *unless*, or **sīn**, *but if*, with the Subjunctive in the Protasis, and the Potential Subjunctive, or the Indicative (emphasizing the situation as an actual one) in the Apodosis; thus:

(1) Present Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis: **quī, sī per te liceat, . . . cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant**, *if they should have your permission, they would share the fortune of war with the rest* (V. 30).

(2) Present Subjunctive in the Protasis, Present Indicative in the Apodosis: **neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam habet auctōritātem**, *and if* (*a leading man*) *does* (lit. *should do*) *otherwise, he has no influence at all* (VI. 11).

(3) Imperfect Subjunctive in the Protasis, Imperfect Indicative in the Apodosis: **sī continēre ad signa manipulōs vellet, locus ipse erat praesidiō barbarīs,** *if he desired to keep his companies with the standards, the very (character of the) region was a protection to the natives* (VI. 34).

208. *a.* Caesar has Conditions of the Third Type (Conditions Contrary to Fact), introduced by **sī**, *if*, or **nisi**, *unless*, with the Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Imperfect referring to Present Time, the Pluperfect to Past Time. Thus:

(1) Imperfect: **ego hanc sententiam probārem . . . sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem,** *I should approve this view if I saw that no (loss) was involved except the loss of our own lives*, implying that the speaker did not approve the view, and that other loss was involved (VII. 77).

(2) Pluperfect: **nisi . . . mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent,** *if the soldiers had not been exhausted . . ., the entire forces of the enemy might have been wiped out*, implying that the soldiers were exhausted, and that many of the enemy escaped (VII. 88).

b. The Indicative is used in the Apodosis of Conditions Contrary to Fact when there is present an idea of Necessity, Propriety, or Possibility; as, **sī populus Rōmānus alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre,** *if the Roman people had been conscious of any wrongdoing it would not have been* (lit. *was not*) *difficult (for them) to take precautions* (from the Indirect Form in I. 14).

c. The Imperfect Subjunctive, referring to Past Time, may be used in Conditions Contrary to Fact, if a lasting state of affairs is implied; as, **sī quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ad eum vēnissem,** *If I had wanted (or now wanted) anything of Caesar, I should have come to him* (from the Indirect Form in I. 34).

209. In the Protasis of a Conditional Sentence an Ablative Absolute, a Participle, or other form of expression implying a Condition, may be used in place of the clause with **sī**; as, **datā facultāte**, taking the place of **sī facultās data esset,** *if an opportunity should have been granted*, in the Direct Form, **sī facultās data erit** (I. 7); **damnātum (eum)**, *him, if condemned*, **damnātum** taking the place of **sī damnātus esset** (I. 4).

210. Caesar has Conditional Clauses of Comparison with the Subjunctive introduced by **velut sī, quasi,** and **proinde ac sī.** Thus: **quod . . . absentis Ariovistī crūdēlitātem velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent,** that is . . . **velut horrērent, sī cōram adesset, horrērent,** *because they dreaded Ariovistus's cruelty when he was away just as (they would dread it) if he were present* (I. 32); **Quasi vērō cōnsiliī sit rēs,** *As if indeed it were a matter of choice,* i.e. *as it would be, if it should be a matter of choice* (VII. 38); **proinde ac sī . . . vellent,** *just as if they proposed* (C. III. 60).

DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUOTATION AND INDIRECT DISCOURSE

GENERAL STATEMENT

211. *a.* Caesar presents the language of another person in two ways, either in Direct Quotation, or in Indirect Quotation, a form of Indirect Discourse.

b. In Direct Quotation Caesar quotes:

(1) Words spoken directly to him, as the brave words of Crastinus just before going into action at the battle of Pharsalus (C. III. 91).

(2) Words reported to him, presumably by his officers; as the exhortation of the unnamed standard-bearer of the Tenth Legion when landing on the British shore, if this was spoken outside of Caesar's hearing (IV. 25), and the challenge of Pullo to Vorenus (V. 44).

(3) Words or Speeches, sometimes in dialects foreign to Caesar, which he presents in his own language, but throws into the form of Direct Quotation in order to enhance the effect; such are the words of the Eburonian captive to the Sugambrian leaders (VI. 35), and the speech of the cold-blooded Critognatus at the war council in Alesia (VII. 77); also the words of the dying eagle-bearer (C. III. 64), and the remarks of Pompey and Labienus before Pharsalus (C. III. 86, 87).

212. *a.* In Indirect Quotation, or Indirect Discourse in the narrower sense, Caesar in most cases aims to present, not a word-for-word reproduction of what was said or written, but a summary, as brief as possible, of the main points. For example, in order to move to action the other prominent Helvetians, and carry through the negotiations with Casticus and Dumnorix, Orgetorix must have had

many conferences, extending over a considerable period of time; yet the gist of the argument by which, according to Caesar, he persuaded the whole Helvetian nation to migrate, is given in ten words of Indirect Discourse (I. 2), while the gist of the argument by which Casticus and Dumnorix were induced to join him in forming a triumvirate of usurpation is summarized in thirty-one words (I. 3).

b. The kind of Summary found in the longer passages of Caesar's Indirect Discourse has a parallel in the condensed reports of addresses in the newspapers. A reporter, sent to prepare a synopsis of a lecture an hour in length, on the Moon, might on his return to the newspaper office find his space reduced, by pressure of matter, to sixty words; he might nevertheless summarize the main points thus:

"The lecturer said *that the moon is nearly two hundred and thirty-nine thousand miles from the earth; that under the telescope it has the appearance of a dead planet; that most careful observations have failed to detect the presence of air or water; and that, notwithstanding the moon's brightness, due to reflection, its surface must be as cold as ice.*"

c. In a manner somewhat similar, but with marvelous clearness and cogency in view of the degree of condensation, Caesar in Indirect Discourse presents summarizing statements, or outlines, including —

(1) Conferences with Gallic and German leaders, conducted, no doubt haltingly, through interpreters, as with Divico (I. 13, 14), Liscus and other Aeduans (I. 17, 18), the Gallic delegation (I. 30–33), and Ariovistus (I. 43–45).

(2) His own addresses; as the speech with which he quelled an incipient mutiny (I. 40), and his exhortation to his soldiers at Pharsalus (C. III. 90).

(3) Reports made to him; as by Labienus (II. 1) and the envoys of the Remi (II. 3. 4).

(4) Requests and replies, messages and instructions; as the request of the Helvetian envoys, and Caesar's answer (I. 7); the plea of the Aeduans (I. 11), Caesar's message to the Lingones (I. 26), messages to and from Ariovistus (I. 34–36, 47).

(5) Arguments; as the arguments of Orgetorix (I. 2, 3), and of disloyal natives (II. 17).

(6) Brief reports, explanations or speeches, presented in some cases with little or no condensation, as the hurried report of Considius (I. 22), the apology of the soldiers (I. 41), the joke by the soldier of the Tenth Legion (I. 42), and the taunt of the Atuatuci as translated into Latin (II. 30).

d. Indirect Discourse in a broader sense includes all statements in the Indirect Form after words of Thought as well as Speech; as, **biennium satis esse dūxērunt**, *they reckoned that two years would be sufficient* (I. 3).

e. In the Latin text of this book the more important Indirect Quotations and Summaries are printed in Italic Type.

213. *a.* Indirect Discourse is introduced by a Verb or other Expression of *Saying, Perceiving, Ascertaining, Thinking, Knowing*, or *Remembering;* as, **sē . . . condōnāre dīcit** (Historical Present) *he said that he would pardon* (I. 20).

Such Verbs and Expressions used by Caesar are:

ago, *present a case* (I. 13); **animadvertō**, *notice* (I. 32); **arbitror**, *think* (I. 2); **audiō**, *hear* (IV. 7); **cōnseō**, *decide, think* (VII. 21); **certiōrem faciō**, *inform* (I. 11); **certior fit**, *is informed* (I. 12); **clāmitō**, *cry out* (V. 7), **cogitō**, *think* (V. 33); **cognōscō**, *learn* (I. 22); **commemorō**, *relate* (IV. 16); **comperiō**, *ascertain* (IV. 19); **conclāmō**, *shout* (III. 18); **cōnfīdō**, *be confident, trust* (III. 9); **cōnfīrmō**, *assure* (I. 3); **coniectūram capiō**, *infer* (VII. 35); **cōnspiciō**, *see* (II. 24); **cōnstat**, *it is agreed* (III. 6); **cōnstituō**, *resolve* (II. 10); **contendō**, *insist* (VI. 41); **crēdō**, *believe* (II. 33).

dēmōnstrō, *show, prove* (I. 11); **dēnūntiō**, *threaten* (I. 36); **dīcō**, *say;* **diffīdō**, *lose confidence* (VI. 36); **discō**, *learn* (VII. 54); **doceō**, *explain* (I. 43); **dūcō**, *reckon* (I. 3); **exīstimō**, *reckon, think* (I. 6); **faciō verba**, *make a plea* (II. 14); **intellegō**, *understand* (I. 16); **inveniō**, *find out* (II. 16); **iūdicō**, *judge* (I. 45); **iūrō**, *swear* (VI. 12); **loquor**, *speak, say* (II. 31).

meminī, *remember* (III. 6); **memoriā teneō**, *hold in memory, remember* (I. 7); **mihi persuāsum habeō**, *am convinced* (III. 2); **moneō**, *explain* (C. III. 89); **negō**, *declare that . . . not* (I. 8); **nūntiō**, *announce* (II. 2); **nūntium mittō**, *send word* (II. 6); **ostendō**, *make plain* (I. 8); **perscrībō**, *write fully* (V. 49); **perspiciō**, *perceive* (III. 9); **polliceor**, *promise* (I. 33); **praedicō**, *declare* (I. 39); **prō explōrātō habeō**, *consider certain* (VI. 5); **probō**, *show, prove* (I. 3); **profiteor**, *declare* (VII. 2); **prōnūntiō**, *announce* (V. 56); **prōvideō**, *foresee* (VII. 39); **putō**, *think* (IV. 3).

recordor, *recall* (C. III. 47); **referō**, *report* (VI. 10); **renūntiō**, *bring (back) report* (I. 10); **reperiō**, *find out, ascertain* (I. 18); **respondeō**, *answer* (I. 14); **sciō**, *know* (I. 20); **scrībō**, *write* (V. 13); **sentiō**, *perceive* (I. 18); **spem habeō**, *have hope that* (I. 33); **significō**, *give intimation* (II. 13); **simulō**, *pretend* (IV. 4); **spērō**, *hope* (I. 3); **statuō**, *determine* (I. 42); **suspicor**, *suspect* (I. 44); **testibus ūtor**, *take as witnesses that* (VII. 77); **videō**, *see* (I. 33); **voveō**, *vow* (VI. 16).

b. The Verb of Saying, on which Indirect Discourse depends, is sometimes not expressed, but implied in the Context; as, **Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit . . . scīre sē**, *throwing his arms around Caesar began to beseech (him, saying) that he knew* (I.20).

RULES FOR INDIRECT DISCOURSE

214. *a.* In Indirect Discourse the Principal Statements, corresponding with the Principal Clauses of Direct Discourse, are expressed by the Subject Accusative and the Infinitive; Subordinate Clauses have the Subjunctive. Thus, **Cōnsuēsse deōs immortālēs . . . quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs, et diūturniōrem impūnitātem, concēdere,** *The immortal gods are wont to grant a more prosperous estate meanwhile, and longer freedom from punishment, to those whom they desire to punish for their wickedness;* in the Direct Form **cōnsuēsse deōs** would become **consuērunt dī**, and **velint** in the Subordinate Clause would be **volunt**, the other words remaining unchanged, and the sentence would read **Cōnsuērunt dī immortālēs . . . quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī volunt, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere** (I. 14).

b. A Subordinate Clause containing an implied quotation may have the Subjunctive; as, **frūmentum, quod essent pollicitī,** *the grain which (as he said) they had promised* (I. 16).

c. In Indirect Discourse a Subordinate or Parenthetical Clause, presenting a Statement of Fact which is not necessarily a part of the Indirect Discourse, may have the Indicative; as, **Condrūsōs . . . Paemānōs, quī Germānī appellantur,** *that the Condrusi . . . and the Paemani, who are called Germans* (II. 4).

215. The Subject Accusative in Indirect Discourse is sometimes omitted when it is easily understood from the Context, especially when it refers to the same person as the Subject of the Verb on which the Indirect Discourse depends; as, **scīre,** for **sē scīre,** *that he knew* (I. 40, l. 41); **prohibitūrum ostendit,** for **sē prohibitūrum esse ostendit** (Historical Present), *he showed that he would prevent them* (I. 8).

216. Commands expressed in Direct Quotation by the Imperative, or by the Jussive Subjunctive, in Indirect Discourse have the Subjunctive, the Negative being **nē**. Thus, **reminīscerētur,** *let him remember,* which in the Direct Form would be Imperative, **reminīscere,** *remember* (I. 13); **nē . . . tribueret,** *that he should not presume,* the Direct Form being **nōlī tribuere** (I. 13).

217. *a.* Ordinary Questions in Indirect Discourse have the Subjunctive; as, **Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret,** *Why did he (Caesar) come into his possessions?* in the Direct Form this would be,

Cūr in meās possessiōnēs venīs? *Why do you come into my possessions* (I. 44)*?*

b. Deliberative Questions in Indirect Discourse retain the Subjunctive, but the Tense is governed by that of the Verb on which the Indirect Discourse depends (*177, a, b*); thus, **Quid agāmus?** *What are we to do?* after a Past Tense in Indirect Discourse becomes **Quid agerent**; as, **neque satis . . . cōnstābat, quid agerent,** *and it was not quite clear . . . what they should do* (III. 14).

c. Rhetorical Questions in Indirect Discourse have the Infinitive (*179, b*); as, **quid esse levius,** *what is more capricious*, implying that nothing could be more capricious (V. 28).

218. An Apodosis of a Conditional Sentence containing a Statement is expressed in Indirect Discourse by the Accusative and Infinitive, containing a Command, by the Subjunctive; the Protasis, containing the Condition, has the Subjunctive, as follows:

(1) a. In the First Type (Conditions of Fact), the Tense of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse corresponds with the Tense of the Apodosis in the Direct Form, while the Tense of the Protasis, introduced by **sī** or **sīn**, is governed by that of the Verb on which the Indirect Discourse depends (*177, a, b*). Thus, **Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs [esse] atque ibi futūrōs [esse] Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset,** *He took up* (*the matter*) *with Caesar thus: If the Roman people would make peace with the Helvetians, they would go wherever Caesar should have appointed and wished them to be, and would there remain*; in the Direct Form, **Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ībunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs tū cōnstitueris** (Future Perfect Indicative) **atque esse volueris** (I. 13).

b. In the Protasis of the First Type a Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse may represent a Future Perfect Indicative in the Direct Form; as, **Quod sī fēcerit** (Perfect Subjunctive), **Aeduōrum auctōritātem amplificātūrum [esse]**, *If he should do this, he would increase the prestige of the Aeduans;* in the Direct Form, **Quod sī fēceris** (Future Perfect Indicative) **Aeduōrum auctōritātem amplificābis,** *If you will do* (lit. *shall have done*) *this, you will increase the prestige of the Aeduans* (II. 14).

(2) In the Second Type (Conditions of Possible Realization) the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse represents the Subjunctive of the Direct Form; the Tense of the Present Subjunctive in the Protasis is Present after a Present Tense, but Imperfect in case the Indirect Discourse follows a Past Tense. Thus, after a Present Tense, **Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem . . . venīre**, *if any (disaster) should befall the Romans, he would entertain the highest expectation*, lit. *would come into the highest hope*; in the Direct Form, **sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem veniat** (I. 18).

(3) In the Third Type (Conditions Contrary to Fact) in Indirect Discourse the Perfect Infinitive of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation corresponds to the Active Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Apodosis of the Direct Form, while a Passive Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Apodosis is represented by **futūrum fuisse** (Impersonal) **ut . . .** with a Passive Imperfect Subjunctive, the Protasis being in the Subjunctive; as, **neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset**, (fuisse) **ventūrōs**, *nor would the Eburones have come if he (had been and) were at hand* (V. 29; cf. *208, c*); **nisi nūntiī essent allātī, exīstimābant plērīque futūrum fuisse, utī (oppidum) amitterētur**, *if news had not been brought, most people were of the opinion that the town would have been lost*, in the Direct Form, **nisi nuntiī essent allātī, oppidum amissum esset** (C. III. 101).

219. The Apodosis of a Conditional Sentence is sometimes incorporated in a Substantive Clause introduced by **ut, nē**, or **quīn**. Thus, **ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās non deesset**, *in order that, if Ariovistus wished to contend in battle, opportunity might not be lacking to him*, in the Direct Form, **Sī . . . volet . . . nōn deerit** (I. 48); **neque dubitāre debēre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint** (Perfect Subjunctive) **Rōmānī . . . Aeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī**, *and that they ought not to doubt that, if the Romans should have overpowered the Helvetians, they were going to take away liberty from the Aeduans*, in the Direct Form, **sī Helvētiōs superāverint** (Future Perfect Indicative) **Rōmānī . . . ēreptūrī sunt** (I. 17).

220. The Verb of a clause subordinate to a clause having its Verb in the Subjunctive, or in the Infinitive, is ordinarily put in the Subjunctive (Subjunctive by Attraction); as, **utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī . . . supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet**, *that he might cut Caesar off from the grain and other supplies which were being brought up* (I. 48).

THE INFINITIVE

221. *a.* Caesar uses the Infinitive after many Verbs to complete the Meaning (Complementary Infinitive); as, . . . **exīre possent**, *they were able to go out*, **exīre** filling out the sense which with **possent** alone would be incomplete (I. 6).

b. A Participle, Adjective or Noun in Predicate with a Complementary Infinitive is attracted to the case of the Subject of the Verb on which the Infinitive depends; as, **pūrgātī esse vellent**, *they should wish to be guiltless* (I. 28).

c. Caesar has the Infinitive after certain Participles used as Adjectives; as, **parātum** (Accusative) **dēcertāre**, *ready to fight it out* (I. 44).

222. *a.* An Infinitive may be the Subject of an Impersonal Verb, or of other Verbs used Impersonally; as, **Maiōrī partī placuit . . . dēfendere**, *The majority decided* (lit. *to the greater part it was pleasing*) *to defend* . . . (III. 3); **Commodissimum vīsum est . . . mittere**, *It seemed most expedient to send*, **mittere** being the Subject of **vīsum est** (I. 47).

b. An Infinitive is sometimes used as the Subject of an Infinitive, especially in Indirect Discourse; as, **commodissimum esse statuit . . . impōnere**, *he decided that the most expedient* (*thing*) *was to place . . . on*, **impōnere** being the Subject of **esse** used impersonally (I. 42).

c. An Infinitive used as Subject may have a Subject Accusative; as, **intersit** (Historical Present) **manūs distinērī**, *it was important that the forces be kept apart* (II. 5).

223. *a.* Caesar uses the Accusative with the Infinitive not only after words of Speech and Thought (Indirect Discourse, *212, d*), but also after Words expressing *Will* or *Desire*, *Feeling*, *Permission* and *Prevention*, *Persuasion*, *Command*, *Training* and *Compulsion*; as, **eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat**, *he was unwilling that those matters should be discussed* (I. 18); **eōs īre paterentur**, *would allow them to go* (I. 6).

Such Words used by Caesar are:

(1) Expressing Will or Desire: **dēsīderō**, *desire* (IV. 2); **mālō**, *prefer* (C. III. 80); **nōlō**, *be unwilling*; **studeō**, *be eager* (C. I. 4); **vōlō**, *wish* (I. 13).

(2) Expressing Feeling: **admīror**, *be surprised* (I. 14); **doleō**, *grieve* (III. 2); **gaudeō**, *rejoice* (IV. 13); **glōrior**, *boast* (C. I. 4); **queror**, *complain* (C. III. 96; usually followed by a **quod** clause); **magnō dolōre ferō**, *feel deeply chagrined* (VII. 63); **molestē ferō**, *feel irritation* (II. 1).

(3) Expressing Permission or Prevention: **patior**, *suffer, allow* (sometimes followed by an **ut**-clause); **prohibeō**, *prevent . . . from* (II. 4, etc.).
(4) Expressing Command, Training, or Compulsion: **iubeō**, *order* (I. 5); **vetō**, *forbid* (II. 20); **assuēfaciō**, *train* (IV. 2); **cōgō**, *force* (I. 4).

b. **Cupiō, mālō, nōlō, studeō,** and **volō** frequently have the Infinitive without a Subject Accusative (Complementary Infinitive); as, **ulcīscī velint**, *may wish to punish* (I. 14).

224. *a.* When Verbs which, in the Active Voice, have the Accusative and Infinitive, are used in the Passive, a Subject Nominative may take the place of the Accusative, the Infinitive remaining the same; in translating, the English Impersonal construction should often be used. Thus, **nōn fore dictō audientēs . . . dīcantur**, *that it is said they will not be obedient to the command*, lit. *that they are said not to be about to be obedient* (I. 40).

b. The Accusative and the Infinitive may stand as the Subject of an Impersonal Verb, or of other Verbs used Impersonally; as, **poenam sequī oportēbat**, *the penalty would inevitably follow*, lit. *that the penalty follow, was inevitable* (I. 4); **Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre**, *That it was not right for the Germans to conquer*, **Germānōs superāre** being the Subject of **esse** used Impersonally (I. 50).

225. The place of the Future Infinitive may be taken by **fore** or **futūrum esse** and a clause with **ut** and the Subjunctive; as, **fore, utī pertināciā dēsisteret**, *that he would desist from his obstinate course*, lit. *that it would be that he would desist* (I. 42).

PARTICIPLES

226. *a.* The Time denoted by a Present Participle is the same as that of the Principal Verb; as, **flēns peteret**, *with tears* (lit. *weeping*) *he was entreating* (I. 20).

b. The Time denoted by a Perfect Participle is prior to that of the Principal Verb; as, **cupiditāte inductus**, *led on* (lit. *having been led*) *by a desire* (I. 2).

c. Caesar sometimes uses Perfect Participles of Deponent and Semi-deponent Verbs where English usage prefers a Present Participle; as, **Caesarem complexus**, *embracing Caesar*, lit. *having embraced* (I. 20). Examples are:

arbitrātus, *thinking* (III. 28); **complexus**; **commorātus**, *delaying* (V. 7); **cōnfīsus**, *trusting* (I. 53); **cōnsōlātus**, *comforting* (I. 20); **diffīsus**, *distrusting* (VI. 38); **gāvīsus**, *rejoicing* (IV. 13); **mīrātus**, *wondering* (I. 32); **secūtus**, *following* (I. 24); **ūsus**, *using* (II. 7); **veritus**, *fearing* (II. 11).

227. *a.* A Participle is often used to express concisely an idea which might have been expanded into a Clause, particularly an idea of *Cause*, *Condition*, *Opposition*, *Characterization*, or *Description*. Thus:

(1) Expressing Cause: **sē, Biturīgum perfidiam veritōs, revertisse,** *that they, fearing the treachery of the Bituriges, had come back*, that is, *that they had come back because they feared the treachery of the Bituriges* (VII. 5).

(2) Expressing Condition: **hanc adeptī victōriam, in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfīdēbant,** *having won this victory, they were confident that they would be victorious for all time*, **adeptī** being equivalent to **sī adeptī essent** (V. 39).

(3) Expressing Opposition: **in colloquium venīre invītātus,** *although invited to come to a conference* (I. 35).

(4) Expressing Characterization or Description: **victīs, venientēs,** *those beaten, those coming up*, meaning *those who had been beaten, those who were coming up* (I. 25).

(5) Expressing Time: **cōnantēs,** *when they were attempting* (I. 47).

b. A Participle may express Manner or Circumstance; as, **flēns peteret,** *with tears* (lit. *weeping*) *he was entreating* (I. 20); **pugnāns interficitur,** *is killed while fighting* (V. 37).

228. *a.* Caesar sometimes uses a Perfect Participle in agreement with the Subject or the Object of a Verb where English usage prefers a coördinate clause. Thus, **Persuādent** (Historical Present) **Rauracīs . . . utī, eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, . . . cum eīs proficīscantur,** *Persuaded the Rauraci . . . to adopt the same plan, and set out with them*, lit. *that, having used the same plan, they should set out* (I. 5); **Boiōs . . . receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi ascīscunt,** *they received and associated with themselves the Boians*, lit. *the Boians, having been received . . . they associated* (I. 5).

b. Caesar sometimes uses a Perfect Passive Participle in agreement with a Noun where the Participle has the main idea and is best translated by a Noun; as, **ante prīmam cōnfectam vigiliam,** *before the end of the first watch*, lit. *before the first watch having been completed* (VII. 3).

c. Caesar sometimes uses a Participle in agreement with the Object of a Verb to depict an Action or a Situation more vividly. Thus, **aliquōs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant,** *had seen some* (*soldiers*) *disembarking*, is more vivid than **aliquōs . . . ēgredī,** *that some* (*soldiers*) *were disembarking* (IV. 26).

229. *a*. **Habeō** with a Perfect Passive Participle in agreement with its Object may have almost the force of a Perfect or Pluperfect tense; as, **quem . . . coāctum habēbat**, *which he had collected*, lit. *which, having been collected, he was having* (I. 15).

b. Caesar uses the Future Passive Participle (Gerundive) in agreement with the Object of Certain Verbs to express Purpose or Accomplishment; as, **pontem faciendum cūrat** (Historical Present), *he had a bridge built, he attended to the building of a bridge*, lit. *cared for a bridge to be built* (I. 13).

The verbs thus used are **cūrō**, *arrange, provide;* **dō**, *give* (IV. 22); and **trādō**, *deliver* (VI. 4).

c. The Future Passive Participle combined with the forms of **sum** in the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (*63*) is often used to express Obligation, Necessity, or Propriety; as, **revocandī [erant] mīlitēs**, *the soldiers had to be called back* (II. 20). Cf. *357*, *a* and *b* (p. 643).

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION

230. In place of the Gerund, Caesar more often uses the Gerundive Construction, with the Noun in the case in which the Gerund might have been put, and the Gerundive agreeing with it. His use of the Gerund and of the Gerundive Construction is as follows:

(1) Genitive after Nouns and Adjectives, and with **causā** and **grātiā** expressing Purpose: **bellandī cupidī**, *desirous of waging war* (I. 2); **Galliae impugnandae causā**, *in order to attack Gaul* (I. 44). Cf. *355* (p. 643).

(2) Dative after Verbs (Gerundive Construction only): **vix ut eīs rēbus . . . collocandīs . . . tempus darētur**, *barely time (enough) was given for making those arrangements*, lit. *for those things to be arranged* (III. 4).

(3) Accusative after **ad** to express Purpose: **ad dēlīberandum**, *for consideration* (I. 7); **Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās**, *To complete these preparations*, lit. *for these things to be accomplished* (I. 3). Cf. *355* (p. 643).

(4) Ablative of Means without a Preposition, and Ablative with the Prepositions **in** or **dē**: **fallendō**, *by practising deception* (IV. 13); **in quaerendō**, *on making inquiry* (I. 18); **dē expugnandō oppidō**, *in regard to storming the stronghold* (II. 10).

THE SUPINES

231. *a.* The Supine in **-um** is used, chiefly after Verbs of Motion, to express Purpose; as, **ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt**, *came to Caesar to offer congratulations* (I. 30). Cf. *355* (p. 643).

b. The Supine in **-um** may be followed by a Direct Object, or by a Clause; as, **lēgātōs mittunt** (Historical Present) **rogātum auxilium**, *sent envoys to ask for help* (I. 11); **questum, quod Harūdēs . . . fīnēs eōrum populārentur**, *to make complaint because the Harudes were laying waste their country* (I. 37).

232. Caesar uses the Supine in **-ū** after a few adjectives to denote in What Respect their Meaning is to be taken; as, **Perfacile factū**, *very easy of accomplishment*, lit. *very easy in respect to the doing* (I. 3).

The Adjectives thus used by Caesar are **horridus** (V. 14), **optimus** (IV. 30), and **perfacilis** (I. 3, VII. 64).

CONJUNCTIONS

233. *a.* Of the Copulative Conjunctions Caesar uses **et**, *and*, **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*, *on the one hand . . . on the other*, to express simple connection; **-que**, *and*, **-que . . . -que**, *both . . . and*, to express a closer connection; **atque** or **ac**, *and also*, *and indeed*, *and*, to express a close connection and also make that which follows slightly more prominent; and **neque** or **nec**, *and . . . not*, **neque** (or **nec**) **. . . neque** (or **nec**), *neither . . . nor*, *not . . . and not*; **et . . . neque**, *both . . . and not*; **neque** or **nec . . . et**, *and not . . . and*, to express a connection with a negative idea.

b. The enclitic Conjunction **-que**, *and*, is attached to the word introduced by it, or to the first word of a Phrase or Clause which it introduces, excepting a Prepositional Phrase; **-que** introducing a Prepositional Phrase may be attached to the first word after the Preposition. Thus, **ob eāsque rēs**, *and on account of these things* (II. 35).

c. After words expressing Similarity, or the Opposite, **atque** or **ac** has the force of *than*, *as*; as, **in parem . . . condiciōnem atque ipsī erant**, *into the same condition . . . as themselves*, lit. *as (and) they themselves were* (I. 28).

d. Caesar uses the conjunctions **et**, **-que**, **atque**, **ac**, and **neque** in various combinations, sometimes joining more than two members; as, **et . . . que** (III. 11), **-que . . . et** (II. 22), **et . . . atque** (I. 15), **atque . . . et** (II. 8), **atque . . . -que** (VI. 11), **neque . . . atque**

(II. 10), **neque . . . et** (II. 25), **-que . . . -que . . . -que** (I. 30), **ac . . . atque . . . -que** (III. 5), **et . . . atque . . . et . . . et . . . et** (IV. 33).

234. *a.* When more than two words stand in the same relation, the Copulative Conjunction may be expressed with all, or omitted with all, or the last two words may be joined by **-que**; in each case English usage generally prefers "and" between the last two words. Thus, **Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs**, *the Rauraci, Tulingi, and Latobrigi* (I. 5); **linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus**, *in respect to language, institutions, and laws* (I. 1); **puerī, senēs mulierēsque**, *children, old men, and women* (I. 29).

b. Sometimes, especially after a negative expression, Caesar uses **et**, **-que**, and **atque** or **ac**, where English usage prefers *but;* as, **portūs . . . capere nōn potuērunt, et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt**, *could not make the harbors but were carried a short distance below* (IV. 36).

235. *a.* Of the Disjunctive Conjunctions Caesar uses **aut**, *or*, to connect alternatives that cannot, in most cases, both be true at the same time; **vel**, *or*, negative **nēve** or **neu**, *or not, and not*, to connect alternatives between which there might be a choice; and **sīve** or **seu**, *or if*, to connect alternatives involving a condition. Thus, **quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum**, *five or six miles* each day (I. 15); **Brūtō . . . vel tribūnīs**, *to Brutus or the tribunes* (III. 14).

b. The Disjunctive Conjunctions are often used in pairs, as **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or* (I. 1), **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or* (I. 6), **sīve . . . sīve**, *whether . . . or, either . . . or* (I. 12).

236. *a.* Of the Adversative Conjunctions Caesar uses **at**, *but, at any rate*, to express Contrast or Restriction; **autem**, *however, on the other hand, moreover*, to express Contrast or Addition; **sed**, *but*, to correct or limit a Preceding Statement; **tamen**, *nevertheless, yet*, to emphasize the importance of something that follows in opposition to a Preceding Statement; and **vērō**, *in fact, but in truth*, to emphasize a contrast with a Preceding Statement.

b. The Adversative Conjunctions **autem** and **vērō** are regularly placed after the First Word of a Clause.

c. The Adversative Conjunction **tamen** sometimes stands after the First Word of a Clause.

d. Caesar uses correlatively **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also;* **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also;* **nōn modo . . . sed**, *not only . . . but;* **nōn modo nōn . . . sed nē . . . quidem**, *not only not . . . but not even.*

e. In **nōn modo . . . nē — quidem** Caesar uses **nōn modo** as equivalent to **nōn modo nōn**, when a verb appears only in the second member; as **nōn modo dēfessō . . . sed nē sauciō quidem**, *not only not to one (who was) exhausted . . . but even to a wounded man* (III. 4).

237. *a.* Of the Conjunctions denoting Logical Relations Caesar uses chiefly **itaque**, *accordingly* (lit. *and so*), to introduce a statement of a fact or situation naturally resulting from what preceded; **proinde**, *hence*, to introduce a Command; **nam** or **enim**, *for*, to introduce an Explanation of a Preceding Statement; and **quārē**, *wherefore, and therefore*, to introduce a Logical Consequence, or a Command.

b. In presenting a succession of points Caesar often uses **prīmum**, *first*, and **deinde**, *then, in the second place;* sometimes, also, **dēnique** *in fine*, to introduce the conclusion of an argument.

c. In the Adverbial Phrase **nē . . . quidem**, *not even*, the word or phrase emphasized is placed between the two words; as, **nē pabulī quidem**, *not even of fodder* (I. 16).

FIGURES OF SPEECH

238. Caesar uses the following Grammatical Figures:

a. Asyndeton (a-sin′de-ton),[1] the omission of a Conjunction where a Connective might have been used; as, **loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset**, *should have become acquainted with the natural features, the harbors (and) the approaches* (IV. 20); **L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus**, *in the Consulship of Lucius Piso (and) Aulus Gabinius* (I. 6).

b. Brachylogy (bra-kil′o-ji), a condensed form of expression; as, **cōnsimilis caprīs figūra**, *shape like (that of) goats*, that is, **figūra cōnsimilis figūrae** (Dative) **caprārum** (VI. 27).

c. Ellipsis (e-lip′sis), the omission of words essential to the meaning; as, **Duae fīliae**, for **Duae fīliae fuērunt**, *There were two daughters* (I. 53).

d. Hendiadys (hen-dī′a-dis), the use of two Nouns with a Connective where a noun with a Modifying Genitive or Adjective might have been expected; as, **fidem et iūs iūrandum**, *a pledge of good faith bound by an oath*, lit. *good faith and oath* (I. 3).

e. Parenthesis (pa-ren′the-sis), the insertion of an Independent Sentence or phrase, interrupting the Construction; as, **quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat . . . legiō ūna)**,

[1] The key to the Pronunciation is given at the beginning of the Vocabulary.

pontem . . . iubet (Historical Present), **rescindī**, *he levied as many soldiers as possible* (*there was only one legion, altogether, in further Gaul*) *and gave orders that the bridge be cut down* (I. 7).

f. Polysyndeton (pol-i-sin′dę-ton), the use of more Conjunctions than the sense requires; as, **Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs**, *the Ceutrones, the Graioceli, and the Caturiges* (I. 10).

g. Prolepsis (prō-lep′sis), or *Anticipation*, the use of a Noun as Object in a clause preceding that in which it naturally belongs as Subject; as, **rem frūmentāriam, ut supportārī posset, timēre**, *that they feared that the supply of grain could not be brought up*, lit. *they feared the supply of grain, that it . . .* (I. 39).

h. Synesis (sin′ę-sis), construction according to the Sense, without regard to the Grammatical Form; as, **cīvitātī persuāsit, ut . . . exīrent**, *persuaded the* (*people of his*) *state to go out*, lit. *persuaded his state that they should go out* (I. 2).

239. Caesar uses the following Rhetorical Figures:

a. Anaphora (an-af′ǫ-rą), the Repetition of the same word at the beginning of Successive Phrases or Clauses; as, **nōn aetāte cōnfectīs, nōn mulieribus, nōn īnfantibus pepercērunt**, *they spared not the aged, not the women, not the children* (VII. 28).

b. Antithesis (an-tith′e-sis), the juxtaposition of contrasted expressions in like order; as, **Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi, bellum intulisse**, *He did not make war on the Gauls, but the Gauls on him* (I. 44).

c. Chiasmus (kī-as′mus), an arrangement of contrasted words in inverse order; as, **fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō**, *in reputation notable, and powerful in war* (VII. 77).

d. Climax (klī′max), an arrangement of words, phrases, or clauses with gradual increase of interest or vigor of expression to the end; as, **cōnferre, comportarī, adesse**, *that it was being collected, was on the way, was at hand* (I. 16).

e. Euphemism (ū′fę-mizm), the use of a mild expression in order to avoid a word of bad omen; as, **sī quid accidat Rōmānīs**, *if anything should happen to the Romans*, meaning *if any disaster should befall the Romans* (I. 18).

f. Hyperbaton (hī-per′ba-ton), the arrangement of words in unusual order, as the separation of words that belong together, such as the insertion of one or more words between the parts of an Ablative Absolute; thus, **simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā**, *that Caesar under the pretense of friendship*, the usual order being **Caesarem, simulātā amīcitiā** (I. 44, l. 37).

g. Litotes (lit'o-tēz), the Affirmation of an idea through the Negation of its Opposite; as, **neque tam imperītum esse rērum ut nōn scīret**, *and he was not so unversed in affairs as not to know*, meaning *that he was so worldly wise that he very well knew* (I. 44, l. 32).

h. Personification (pėr-son'i-fi'kā'shun), the representation of something inanimate or abstract as endowed with Life and Action; as **Cōnspicātae nāvēs trirēmēs duae nāvem D. Brūtī**, *Two triremes, sighting the ship of Decimus Brutus* (C. II. 6).

EXPRESSIONS RELATING TO TIME

240. *a.* The Roman year **(annus)** is usually dated by the consuls in office, their names being given in the Ablative Absolute with **cōnsulibus**; as, **Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus**, *in the consulship of Gnaeus Pompey and Marcus Crassus* (IV. 1), 55 B.C.

Figure 152. — A Roman Calendar.

Of marble. Above the name of each month is a sign of the zodiac associated with it: Capricorn with January, Aquarius with February, Pisces with March, Aries with April, Taurus with May, and Gemini with June.

b. In Caesar's time the year commenced on January 1, and the months were named **(mēnsis) Iānuārius, Februārius, Mārtius** (originally the first month of the year), **Aprīlis, Maius, Iūnius, Quīnctīlis** (from **quīnque**; named the *fifth* month when the year began with March), **Sextīlis (sex), September, Octōber, November, December** (the *tenth* month, reckoning March as the first). Afterwards **Quīnctīlis** was changed to **Iūlius** (our *July*) in honor of Julius Caesar, and **Sextīlis** to **Augustus** (our *August*) in honor of the Emperor Augustus.

241. *a.* Dates in the month were reckoned backward from three points, the mode of reckoning being similar to that which we use when we say "Four days yet before the New Moon." These points, designated by Plural Feminine Nouns, are *the Calends*, **Kalendae,**

the *first* day of the month; *the Nones*, **Nōnae** (ninth before the Ides), the *seventh* day of March, May, July, and October, the *fifth* day of other months; and *the Ides* (**Īdūs**), the *fifteenth* day of March, May, July, and October, the *thirteenth* of other months.

b. In giving dates the days at the beginning and end of a given period were both included, and abbreviations were employed. Thus, **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.** (I. 6), in full would be **ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs**, which is translated as if it were (**diēs**) **quīntus ante Kalendās Aprīlēs**, *the fifth* (*day*) *before the Calends of April;* since March had 31 days, we start from April 1 and count back:

Day I	Day II	Day III	Day IV	Day V
April 1	March 31	March 30	March 29	March 28

and so we find the fifth day, which is March 28 according to our method of writing dates.

c. In 46 B.C. the Calendar was reformed by Julius Caesar by virtue of his authority as Supreme Pontiff (*252*), and since that year it has undergone slight change. As the dates of the Gallic War and of the Civil War are prior to 46 B.C., they fall in the period of the Unreformed Calendar, when there was much confusion. Thus, the twenty-eighth day of March of the Unreformed Calendar in 58 B.C. (I. 6) is considered by some to be the same as March 24 of our Calendar; by others, the same as March 25; by others still, as April 16 of our Calendar.

242. *a.* The day from sunrise to sunset was divided into twelve hours, **hōrae**, which varied in length according to the season of the year, and were numbered 1–12; thus, **hōrā septimā**, *the seventh hour* (I. 26). Since the sixth hour ended at noon, the seventh hour at the equinoxes would correspond exactly with the hour between twelve and one o'clock according to our reckoning; at other times the seventh hour would end after, or before, one o'clock.

b. The method of reducing the Roman hours to our system of reckoning may be illustrated by the following problem:

Question. "What, approximately, is our equivalent of the fourth Roman hour in the last week of August in the region of Dover, England?"

Answer. In the region of Dover in the last week in August the sun rises about 5 o'clock and sets about 7. The length of the day is therefore about 14 hours by our reckoning. Since the Romans divided the full day into 12 equal hours, we divide 14 by 12 and have $1\frac{1}{6}$, that is, the Roman hour in this problem $= 1\frac{1}{6}$ of our hours. At the beginning of the fourth Roman hour 3 Roman hours have passed; $3 \times 1\frac{1}{6} = 3\frac{1}{2}$, that is, at the beginning of the fourth Roman hour $3\frac{1}{2}$ of our hours have passed since sunrise. As sunrise is

reckoned about 5 o'clock by our time, we add $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 5, making 8.30; that is, 8.30 A.M., by our reckoning from midnight, will approximately represent the beginning of the fourth hour of the day by Roman reckoning under the conditions of the problem.

c. In military usage the night was divided into four watches of three hours each: **prīma vigilia**, *first watch* (VII. 3), commencing at sunset, 6 to 9 o'clock by Roman reckoning; **secunda vigilia** (II. 11), ending at midnight, 9 to 12 o'clock; **tertia vigilia** (II. 33), commencing at midnight, 12 to 3 o'clock A.M.; **quārta vigilia** (I. 21), ending at sunrise, 3 to 6 o'clock A.M., by Roman reckoning.

d. Caesar uses the Preposition **dē** in certain expressions of time with the meaning *just after, in the course of*: as **dē mediā nocte**, *just after midnight* (II. 7); **dē tertiā vigiliā**, *soon after the beginning of the third watch* (I. 12), which lasted from midnight to 3 A.M.

e. When the sun was not visible, recourse might be had to water clocks, **ex aquā mensūrae** (V. 13), for the measurement of time.

EXPRESSIONS RELATING TO LENGTH AND DISTANCE

243. *a.* Of the terms denoting measurement Caesar uses **digitus**, *finger-breadth* (VII. 73); **pēs**, *foot* (I. 8), which measured approximately .97 of the English foot; **passus**, *pace* (I. 49); and **mīlle passūs**, *mile*, Plural **mīlia passuum**, *miles* (I. 2). The **passus** contained two ordinary steps (**gradus**), and measured the distance between the points where the same heel is lifted and touches the ground again.

b. The relations of the units of measurement, and their modern equivalents, are as follows:

		English Feet	Meters
	1 digitus	= .728 inch	= .0185
16 digitī	= 1 pēs	= 11.65 inches	= .296
$2\frac{1}{2}$ pedēs	= 1 gradus	= 2 feet $5\frac{1}{8}$ inches	= .74
2 gradūs	= 1 passus	= 4 feet $10\frac{1}{4}$ inches	= 1.48
1000 passūs	= mīlle passūs	= 4854 feet	= 1480.00

Since the Roman foot was approximately .97 of the English foot in length, the Roman mile, 4854 English feet in length, was 426 feet shorter than the English mile of 5280 feet; 12 English miles are a little more than the equivalent of 13 Roman miles.

c. Long distances may be loosely expressed by **iter** (Accusative) with the Genitive; as, **novem diērum iter**, *a nine days' journey* (VI. 25).

GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

LIFE OF CAESAR

244. "My aunt Julia," said Julius Caesar in an address in 68 B.C. at the funeral of his aunt, wife of the famous Marius, "My aunt Julia on her mother's side traced her ancestry back to kings, on her father's side to the immortal gods. For those who bear the name Marcius Rex, her mother's family, are descended from Ancus Marcius;[1] from Venus the Julii are sprung, and to that clan our family belongs. In our stock therefore are blended the sacred authority of kings, whose power is greatest among men, and a right to the reverence due to the gods, under whose power kings themselves are."

Figure 153. — Aeneas fleeing from Troy.

Silver coin, denarius, struck in the East soon after the battle of Pharsalus. Inscription, CAESAR.

Whatever the truth may be about the origin of the Julian clan (*gens*), in these proud words the man who was destined to become its most distinguished representative asserted, unmistakably, its aristocratic standing. Twenty years afterwards, when Caesar had the authority to strike coins, he gave a visible expression to the popular belief in the Trojan origin of the Julii, from Venus and Anchises; stamped upon a denarius (*85*) Aeneas appears, in the flight from burning Troy, carrying his aged father Anchises upon his left shoulder and in his right hand the sacred image, the Palladium, which, men said, had fallen from heaven (Fig. 153).

[1] The fourth king of Rome, following Tullus Hostilius.

245. Toward the end of the Republic the Caesar family far outstripped the other families of the Julian gens in prominence. In the two centuries immediately preceding the Christian era it furnished a full score of names sufficiently distinguished to find mention in biographical dictionaries two thousand years afterwards. Of the father of Julius Caesar, however, nothing important is of record except his sudden death, at Pisa, when he was putting on his shoes.

246. Gaius Julius Caesar was born on July 12, in the year 100 B.C.; he was thus six years younger than Pompey and the orator Cicero. It is assumed that his birthplace was Rome. His mother was Aurelia, a Roman matron of the highest type. She not only watched over the education of her son — and Julius was the only son — with great care, but followed his career with solicitude, and on one occasion at least rendered him a notable service. She was not spared, however, to see her son at the head of the State, or to be harrowed by civil war; she died when Caesar was in Gaul.

Figure 154. — A Roman Boy

Portrait of a Roman boy, probably connected with the Caesar family. From a bronze statue of the first century B.C., in the Metropolitan Museum, New York.

We know nothing about the education of the young Julius, except that he had as private teacher, at his own home, Antonius Gnipho, a distinguished rhetorician, who had studied at Alexandria and was well versed in Greek. We may assume that the youth received the usual training of the time in Greek as well as in declamation, numbers, and music; for Greek was then the foundation of liberal studies.

At the age of twelve Caesar's face must remotely, at least, have resembled that of the Roman boy whose portrait is preserved in the lifelike bronze statue acquired in 1914 by the Metropolitan Museum in New York (Fig. 154).

247. The only career deemed suitable for a young patrician was in the service of the State, either through public office, or through service in the field, as occasion might require. We do not understand how high-born Caesars were first led to espouse the cause of the common people and champion the interests of the masses as opposed to the aristocracy, which believed in the government of the many by the few and had its stronghold in the Senate; but when Julius was old enough to take an active interest in public affairs, his uncle by marriage, Marius, was leader of the popular or democratic party, which was then dominant. Marius died in 86 B.C., and was succeeded by Cornelius Cinna as democratic leader.

248. The daughter of this Cinna, Cornelia, in 83 B.C. became Caesar's wife. To them was born a daughter Julia who, in 59 B.C., in her early twenties, became the fourth wife of Pompey.

249. In 82 B.C. Sulla returned from a series of victories in the East and restored the power of the Senate, wreaking vengeance upon political enemies. There was a reign of terror. Cinna had been killed, and Sulla ordered Caesar to divorce his wife, Cinna's daughter. This Caesar refused, at the risk of his life. In disguise he made his escape to the mountains. He was tracked by Sulla's emissaries, one of whom found him; he purchased his life with a large bribe. After a time, through influential friends, pardon was obtained from Sulla, who is said to have granted it with the warning that in young Caesar there were many Mariuses.

Advancement in Rome, however, was blocked so long as Sulla lived. Caesar went East and joined the army. At the siege of Mytilene, on the island of Lesbos, in 80 B.C., he was awarded the Civic Crown for conspicuous bravery. This crown, though made of oak leaves, represented a military dis-

tinction rarely conferred, and most highly esteemed. It was given only to the soldier who had saved the life of a Roman citizen in battle, had killed his adversary, and held the position where the rescue was made, without retreating. There is a good representation of a Civic Crown on a coin of the Emperor Augustus (Fig. 155).

Figure 155.—Civic Crown, corona civica.

Silver coin of Augustus, denarius, struck in 16 or 15 B.C. The crown, of oak leaves, is tied with a fillet. Inscription, OB CIVIS SERVATOS, 'on account of the saving of citizens.'

250. Returning to Rome, after Sulla's death (78 B.C.), Caesar brought charges of extortion in provincial management first against Gnaeus Dolabella, who had been proconsul in Macedonia, and afterwards against Gaius Antonius, who had plundered Greece; at that time the bringing of delinquent officials to justice was a common way of introducing one's self to public notice. Though both Dolabella and Antonius seem to have escaped punishment, Caesar showed marked oratorical power, and in prosecuting them attracted favorable attention.

Wishing to perfect himself in oratory, in 76 Caesar started for Rhodes, to study under Apollonius Molo, the most eminent teacher of the art. In the Eastern Mediterranean the pirates were still active; near Miletus his ship was captured, and he was held a prisoner on an island for thirty-eight days, until his retinue could return and bring to the pirates a ransom of fifty talents, more than fifty thousand dollars. As a captive he showed himself merry and sociable; and he jokingly told his captors that some day he would come back and crucify them. Being released, he at once manned ships at Miletus, attacked the pirates suddenly, and captured most of them. True to his word, he crucified them, but ordered their throats cut first — Suetonius adds, as an example of Caesar's humaneness — in order to spare needless suffering. The quickness of action, daring, and success of this adventure reveal in Caesar

at the age of twenty-four the qualities that characterized his entire career.

251. *a.* During the next sixteen years Caesar followed the usual course of political promotion, neglecting no means by which he might increase his popularity. He bestowed gifts with a free hand, assumed the debts of bankrupt young nobles who had squandered their inheritance, gave largesses to the people. When his own means were exhausted, he borrowed large sums at high rates of interest, with the design of obtaining reimbursement from the spoils of office. According to Plutarch his indebtedness, before he held a single office, had reached the enormous sum of thirteen hundred talents, about a million and a half of dollars.

Figure 156. — Ancient trophy, of marble.

Now on the Capitoline hill in Rome, badly weatherworn; by some thought to be one of the very trophies set up by Marius and restored by Julius Caesar.

This is an imitation of the trophies which were made on battle-fields by fastening shields, helmets, and other weapons of the enemy to trunks of trees, or posts.

b. In 68 B.C. Caesar was quaestor, and accompanied Antistius Vetus to Spain. Here his duties were chiefly financial; the provincial quaestor had charge of the military stores and supervised the keeping of accounts for the provincial governor. This was doubtless a good business training

for Caesar, which he turned to excellent use later in his administration in Gaul.

c. In 65 B.C. Caesar was curule aedile, with Bibulus as colleague; the curule aediles had charge of the streets and public buildings, the markets, and the celebration of the public games. In this office, by extravagant expenditures on games and public improvements, he raised the enthusiasm of the populace to the highest pitch. He even dared by night to set up in the Capitol the statue of Marius, and trophies of victories in the Jugurthine and Cimbrian wars, which had been thrown down by Sulla seventeen years before; and the people wept for joy at the revival of old memories (Fig. 156). He secured so many gladiators for public shows that the Senate became alarmed, on account of the presence of so great an armed force, and passed a law restricting the number; but he nevertheless exhibited three hundred and twenty pairs, all resplendent in silver armor. Caesar's political methods were not unlike those of his contemporaries, but he excelled them in daring and foresight — and succeeded.

Figure 157. — Symbols of Caesar's office, as Supreme Pontiff.

Middle, axe used in sacrifices, with wolf's head above.

Right, priest's cap, with point (apex), and bands for tying under the chin.

Left, sprinkler for holy water, and underneath, wine-ladle.

Silver coin, denarius, struck by Caesar in Gaul, probably in 50 B.C. Obverse in Fig. 164.

252. It has been believed by many that Caesar was connected with the Catilinarian conspiracy of 65 B.C., if not also with that of 63; but the evidence is meager. Much more important was his election, in 63 B.C., after a bitter contest, to the office of Supreme Pontiff, Pontifex Maximus. The tenure of this office was for life. As the head of the college of pontiffs, then fifteen in number, the Supreme Pontiff was virtually the head of the Roman religious system. He decided questions relating to religious law and usage, and he had charge of the

Calendar; the priests of Jupiter and of other divinities, as well as the Vestal Virgins, were under his jurisdiction. The first coin struck by Caesar in Gaul on one side bears the symbols of his sacred office (Fig. 157), the ax for striking victims in offering sacrifice, the close-fitting cap, with point of olive wood, worn by certain priests, the brush-shaped sprinkler for holy water, and the ladle for dipping up wine, for use in pouring libations.

253. In 62 B.C. Caesar held the office of praetor, in the discharge of which, amid scenes of violence, he carried himself with firmness and dignity; the functions of the praetor were judicial, and in stormy times the administration of justice is doubly difficult. The next year he was propraetor in Further Spain, where he won distinction by subduing several tribes along the Atlantic in Gallaecia and Lusitania. Returning to Rome in the summer of 60, with abundant means of satisfying his creditors, he was decreed a public thanksgiving for his victories, and was soon elected consul for the year 59.

In the year of his consulship, 59, Caesar married Calpurnia, familiar to readers of Shakespeare's "Julius Caesar"; she was the daughter of Calpurnius Piso (I. 12), and was Caesar's fourth wife. For his first wife, Cossutia, was divorced before he married Cornelia, his second wife (*248*), who had died before his quaestorship; and Pompeia, whom Caesar married in 67 B.C., as his third wife, was divorced six years later.

254. For some years Pompey had been the most conspicuous Roman. His successes in the campaign against the pirates and the war with Mithridates, and his conquest of Syria and Palestine, had made him the national hero (Fig. 147). But in the qualities needful for a political leader he was quite lacking; so that even from his own party, the aristocratic, he was unable to win either the recognition he desired or the privileges to which he was entitled. More than once the Senate snubbed him outright. Here Caesar saw an opportunity. Relying on his own popularity, he proposed to Pompey that they work in harmony, and by uniting their influence accom-

plish what either might desire. Pompey agreed; and with these two, Crassus, the wealthiest man of Rome, was joined, making a political coalition really supreme, which is known as the First Triumvirate. It had no official existence; it was simply a political ring, of only three members but of unlimited power. It was to cement this union that Pompey, then a widower for the third time, married Caesar's daughter Julia (*248*), who was less than half his age.

255. During his consulship, in 59, among other measures Caesar caused a law to be passed regarding the division of the public lands, which, though bitterly opposed by the Senate, pleased the people greatly. With his aid, too, Pompey gained the favors previously denied. While consul he seems to have used his influence with the Senate to secure a recognition of Ariovistus, the German ruler, with whom he afterwards fought (I. 33, 35, 40).

Figure 158. — Goddess of Concord.

Silver coin, denarius, struck about 53 B.C. to symbolize the harmony between the members of the Triumvirate. Inscription, CONCORDIAI = *Concordiae*, 'To Concord.'

At the close of his consulship, as it was the custom to give to ex-consuls the charge of provinces, Caesar easily obtained for five years the government of both Cisalpine Gaul (*284*) and Illyricum (*298*), together with the part of Transalpine Gaul previously subdued, which in this book is called the Province (*290*).

256. Caesar was soon engaged in the conquest of Transalpine Gaul beyond the Province. The first summer (58 B.C.) he drove back to their homes the Helvetians, who had attempted to migrate from the country now called Switzerland, to the west of Gaul; and he annihilated the army of the German king, Ariovistus. The following year he subdued the Belgic States in the north.

The third campaign (56 B.C.) was against the peoples of northwest Gaul, that had leagued together to resist Caesar. In April

of this year at Luca, near the southern border of Cisalpine Gaul, Caesar had renewed his compact with Pompey and Crassus, who agreed to see to it that his command should be extended for five years longer (Fig. 158). A part of every winter except one (54–53), he spent in Cisalpine Gaul, so as to be near Rome and retain his influence in home politics; it was contrary to law that a provincial governor having an army should enter Italy while in office.

In 55 B.C. Caesar chastised several German tribes and bridged the Rhine; then he crossed over to Britain. The campaign of the next summer (54) was principally against the Britons, part of whom he reduced to nominal subjection. In the fall a division of his army in Belgium, under the command of Sabinus and Cotta, was cut off by a sudden uprising of the enemy.

Figure 159. — Symbols of victories over the Gauls.

Middle, trophy, draped; at the top, a Gallic helmet, horned.

Hanging from the trophy at the left is an oval shield; at the right, a Gallic war-trumpet.

Behind the war-trumpet is a sacrificial axe, above which is the head of an animal.

Gold coin, aureus, struck by Caesar in Rome in 49 B.C.

In 53 Caesar had to face an extensive rebellion of the Gallic states, which, however, he speedily crushed. But the next year almost all Gaul rose against him, and under the leadership of Vercingetorix taxed his powers to the utmost. He finally prevailed; and after the fall of Alesia (52 B.C.), the strength of the Gauls was forever broken.

In the eighth campaign, summer of 51, the states that had not submitted were one by one reduced to complete subjection. The following spring, in 50 B.C., Caesar left his army and went into Cisalpine Gaul. Here he resolved to remain till the expiration of his command in 49, returning to Transalpine Gaul only for a short time during the summer to review the troops.

257. Caesar's Gallic victories are symbolically portrayed on several coins. On one (Fig. 159), we see in the middle a trophy,

draped; on the top is a Gallic helmet, with a bull's horns. Suspended on one side of the trophy is an oval shield; opposite is a Gallic war trumpet, with the mouth carved to represent the head of a serpent; then, nearer the edge of the coin, a sacrificial ax. The base of the trophy divides the victor's name, CAESAR. A trophy appears less distinctly on another coin of Caesar, but at the foot is Vercingetorix, sitting, with his hands tied behind him; his head is turned toward the left as he looks upward (cf. Fig. 161).

258. During Caesar's absence in Gaul, in 55 B.C., Crassus undertook a campaign of conquest against the Parthians, in the Far East; he was defeated and killed in 53 B.C. The triumvirate was thus brought to an end, and with it speedily ended the coöperation between Caesar and Pompey.

Figure 160. — Pompey the Great.

Silver coin struck by Pompey's admiral, Nasidius, some years after his death. The trident, the dolphin, and the inscription NEPTUNI, 'Of Neptune,' refer to the fleet of his son, Sextus Pompey. Cf. Fig. 146.

Pompey began to view Caesar's successes with distrust and alarm. He entered into alliance again with the aristocracy. In 50 B.C. the Senate in Pompey's interest passed a decree that he and Caesar should each give up a legion for service in the East. Since 53 Caesar had had one of Pompey's legions; this was now demanded back. Caesar let it go, and one of his own too, without a complaint, although the intent of the whole action was evidently to weaken his forces. As it was not lawful for him to proceed in person to Rome, he stationed himself in Ravenna, the town of Cisalpine Gaul nearest the boundary of Italy (*283*), on the east side; thence he sent agents and friends to the City to negotiate for him, to try to offset the influence now openly brought to bear against him, but the negotiations were fruitless.

Pompey (Fig. 160) and the Senate both hated and feared Caesar. A decree was passed that he should disband his army

by a certain date, or be considered an outlaw. In the state of public affairs at the time, this was simply to wrest from him the fruits of his hard-won successes, without leaving him even a guaranty of his personal safety. Caesar hesitated. The Senate voted further, that the consuls should "provide that the state receive no hurt," which is like a proclamation of martial law in our day.

259. This action of the Senate was virtually a declaration of war against Caesar, inspired by the jealousy of his opponent. With one legion he at once (in January, 49 B.C.) crossed the Rubicon, the boundary of his province (*283*), and marched south. Soon all Italy was in his power; Pompey, the Senate, and their followers had fled to Macedonia, on the east side of the Adriatic (*299*).

After arranging matters at Rome to suit himself, in April, 49 B.C., Caesar went to Spain, where lieutenants devoted to Pompey, Afranius and Petreius, had a strong army. They were soon crushed, the main force being captured near Ilerda in August of 49. On his return from Spain to Italy, Massilia (*Marseilles*), which had closed its gates to him on the way out, and had been besieged with great energy in his absence by Trebonius, gave itself into his hands; its fleet had been destroyed, in two engagements, by Decimus Brutus (p. 425).

260. Operations in Africa in 49 were not so fortunate; for the force dispatched under Curio to defeat the followers of Pompey in Africa, led by Varus, was utterly destroyed through the aid of the wily Numidian king, Juba.

261. At the end of 49 Caesar had control of all Roman territories west of the Adriatic; the provinces east of the Adriatic, however, were in the hands of Pompey, who was mobilizing forces in Macedonia obviously for a descent upon Italy from across the sea; in consequence Caesar also now gathered his forces on the east side of the Adriatic. For some months, in the earlier part of 48, the armies of Pompey and Caesar faced each other near Dyrrachium (*Durazzo*); but Caesar was obliged to withdraw into the interior. The decisive

battle was fought August 9, 48 B.C., near the city of Pharsalus, in Thessaly. Caesar's forces numbered about twenty-two thousand men, with one thousand cavalry; Pompey had forty-seven thousand infantry, seven thousand cavalry, and some light-armed troops. But superior generalship and the courage of desperation won the day against overwhelming odds. The Senatorial forces were entirely routed. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered.

262. Caesar also went with a small force to Egypt, where, in Alexandria, he became involved in the Alexandrine War. For a time this war occasioned him great difficulty because of his inability to secure reënforcements; but finally Mithridates of Pergamum came to his assistance with an army, marching down through Cilicia and Syria to Egypt. By April of 47 B.C. Caesar had the country under complete control; but he himself is said to have fallen a victim to the charms of the young and beautiful Egyptian princess, Cleopatra.

263. Leaving Cleopatra and a younger brother on the Egyptian throne, Caesar in June proceeded through Syria north to Pontus, where at Zela he easily crushed the rebellious King Pharnaces, reporting the quick victory to a friend in the laconic message, **vēnī, vīdī, vīcī.** He soon afterwards returned to Rome.

264. Caesar had only three months in Rome before he was obliged to take the field against the Pompeian forces, now gathered in Africa under the leadership of Scipio and Labienus. In January, 46, he landed with a small army near Hadrumetum, southeast from Carthage, where he maintained his position until sufficient forces could be brought over. At the battle of Thapsus, April 6, 46 B.C., he won a complete victory over the Pompeians and Juba, who was still helping them.

265. Caesar was now everywhere master. In accordance with legal forms he promulgated several laws of great benefit to the people. He reformed the calendar also (*241, c*). In August of 46 in Rome Caesar celebrated his great triumph. On four different days triumphal processions wound along the

Sacred Way through the Forum and up the Capitoline Hill, displaying to the astonished multitudes the spoils of victories in Gaul, Egypt, and Pontus, and over Juba in Africa. Treasure amounting to 65,000 talents (more than $70,000,000) was carried in the procession; and a conspicuous figure was the Gallic commander-in-chief, Vercingetorix, who had been kept in prison six years awaiting this event. In honor of the triumph twenty-two thousand tables were spread for the feasting of the populace, and games and gladiatorial shows were given with a magnificence previously unheard of.

Figure 161. — Commemoration of Gallic and Spanish victories.

Middle, trophy with Gallic and Spanish arms; cuirass, helmet, two spears, two oval shields, two trumpets.

Below, at right, Vercingetorix, seated, with hands bound behind him; at left, Hispania, personified, weeping.

Silver coin, denarius, struck by Caesar in Spain in 45 B.C.

266. In 45 B.C. a large army was collected against Caesar in Spain, commanded by the two sons of Pompey. Caesar marched against it, and at the battle of Munda (March 17) totally defeated it. On a coin struck in Spain in 45, and perhaps put into circulation in order to pay his soldiers, Caesar commemorates Spanish as well as Gallic victories (Fig. 161). A large trophy supports, in the middle, a coat of mail, above which is a helmet; on either side is a spear (disproportionately short), then a shield, and a war-trumpet. At the foot, on the right, is a seated captive, with his hands tied behind him and face turned backward, looking up, his hair streaming down; this we may safely identify as Vercingetorix. At the left sits a female figure, weeping, a personification of Hispania.

267. On Caesar's return to Rome the Senate, whose members were now mainly of his own choosing, loaded him with honors. By conferring upon him all the important offices, especially the dictatorship in life tenure, it centered the whole authority in his hands. Finally it ordered his portrait struck

on coins, from which previously faces of living men had been excluded (Fig. 162), and decreed that statues of him should be placed in the temples of the gods in Rome.

Figure 162. — Caesar.

Silver coin, denarius, struck in Rome in 44 B.C.

Obverse, head of Caesar with laurel wreath. Inscription: CAESAR, DICT[ATOR] PERPETUO, 'Dictator for Life.'

268. Caesar's use of absolute power was marked by unexpected clemency towards former opponents; in recognition of this the Senate shortly before his death ordered a temple built and dedicated to 'Caesar's Mercifulness,' personified as a divinity (Fig. 163). He contemplated large projects for the public weal; nevertheless his foresight and breadth of view counted for nothing in the bitter hatred of his political enemies. A conspiracy was formed to take his life. On March 15, 44 B.C., as Caesar had just entered the hall where the Senate met, near Pompey's Theater, he was set upon with daggers, and fell, pierced by twenty-three wounds, at the foot of a statue of his vanquished rival.

Figure 163. — Temple of Caesar's Mercifulness.

Front of the Temple, with four columns, and double doors closed. Inscription, CLEMENTIAE CAESARIS, 'To the Mercifulness of Caesar.'

Silver coin, denarius, struck in 44 B.C.

Though the assassination of Caesar was commemorated by a coin (Fig. 167), the plans of the murderers all miscarried. It is said that not one of them died a natural death; and before many years Caesar's nephew and heir, Octavianus, afterwards called Augustus, was Emperor of the Roman world.

269. Caesar was tall and of commanding presence. His features were angular and prominent. He had a fair complexion, with keen black eyes. In later years he was bald; at no time of life did he wear a beard. Suetonius says that among all the honors conferred

upon Caesar by the Senate and the People none was more acceptable to him than the privilege of wearing at all times a laurel crown, by which his baldness was concealed (Fig. 162). Though endowed with a constitution naturally by no means robust, he became inured to hardship, and exhibited astonishing powers of endurance. In matters of dress he was particular to the verge of effeminacy.

270. Of all the Romans Caesar was without doubt the greatest. In him the most varied talents were united with a restless ambition and tireless energy. While deliberate and far-seeing in forming his plans, in carrying them out he often acted with a haste that seemed like recklessness. He could occasion scenes of the most shocking cruelty; yet none could be more forgiving, or more gracious in granting pardon. Apparently believing, with the Epicurean philosophy, that death ends all and life is worth living only for the pleasure to be gotten out of it, he mingled freely with the dissolute society of Rome; yet when it was time for action he spurned indulgences, gave himself to the severest toil, and endured privations without a murmur.

In regard to all these things, however, we may say that Caesar's faults were those he shared in common with his age; his genius belongs to all ages. Chateaubriand declares that Caesar was the most complete man of all history; for his genius was transcendent in three directions — in politics, in war, and in literature.

THE NAME CAESAR

271. Roman surnames, which in many cases became family names, were generally derived from some personal characteristic or association. For the name **Caesar** scholars in antiquity suggested four derivations, of which one was, that the first of the Julii to bear the name Caesar received it because he was born with a thick *head of hair*, **caesariēs**; another was, that it came from the color of the eyes, *bluish gray*, **caesius.**

There was also a tradition that the first Julius to be called Caesar had killed an elephant and received the name from the word for elephant in the language of the Mauri, in Africa, from whose country elephants came. This derivation seems to have commended itself to Julius Caesar; for on a coin struck by him in Gaul (Fig. 164), we see, over his name, an elephant trampling upon a Gallic war trumpet with a serpent's head, symbolizing his utter defeat of the Gauls and conquest of the country.

Figure 164. — Elephant trampling upon a serpent-headed Gallic war-trumpet.

Silver coin, denarius, struck by Caesar in Gaul, probably in 50 B.C.

The reverse of the same coin is shown in Fig. 157.

To the end of the Empire Roman emperors adopted the name Caesar as a title; and it survives in two imperial titles of modern times, "Kaiser," of Germany and Austria, and "Czar," of Russia. What an impress the life of Julius Caesar made upon the world — not merely to leave a heritage of influence in government and literature, but to transmit his very name across the ages as a designation of the highest authority recognized among men!

THE PORTRAITS OF CAESAR

272. After Caesar became supreme, almost innumerable likenesses of him must have been made. Statues of him were ordered set up in all cities, as well as in the temples of Rome; his features were not only stamped on coins but engraved upon gems (Fig. 165).

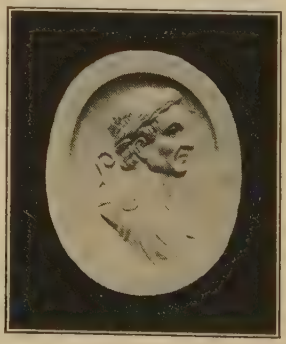


Figure 165. — Caesar.

Gem. Behind is an augur's staff, symbolic of his priestly authority.

Of the numerous extant busts and statues bearing Caesar's name, however, only a few can be considered authentic.

Though two of the best of these, a colossal bust at Naples and a large statue in Rome, have been somewhat restored, the expression of face has not been materially affected; a bust in the British Museum, representing Caesar at a somewhat later period of life, is singularly well preserved.

In the statue in Rome (shown in the frontispiece of this book, Plate I) Caesar appears as a commander. To judge from the manner of treatment, both this statue and the bust at Naples (Plate X) were made near the end of the first century A.D., but copied from earlier works.

CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES

273. The Commentaries of Caesar were not designed to be a biographical work, nor yet, strictly speaking, a military history. They were rather, as the title *Commentaries of Deeds*, **Commentārii Rērum Gestārum**, implies, an informal record of events. For **commentārius** comes from **commentor**, a verb used by speakers with the meaning *make preparation* for a speech by gathering material and preparing outlines; whence **līber commentārius**, or **commentārius**, *commentary*, came to designate a collection of materials for future use.

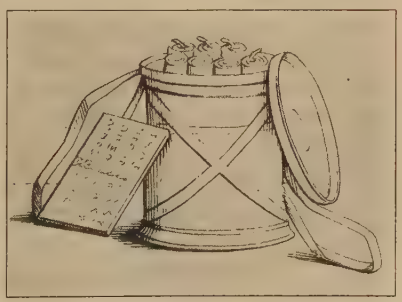


Figure 166. — A Case for Books.

With cover and straps for carrying. In the case are seven rolls, volumina, corresponding with the number of the Commentaries on the Gallic War. A writing tablet leans against the case.

Had Caesar intended that the Commentaries should be a formal history, the matter, in accordance with the universal custom of antiquity, would have been arranged in such a way that the books would be of about the same length; but he grouped his material by years, without regard to the length of the divisions, and we find that the first book, or Commentary, is as long as the second and third com-

bined, while the seventh is almost as long as the second, third, and fourth taken together. Approximate uniformity in the length of the books comprised in a literary work was usual on account of convenience in handling, since each book formed a separate roll; hence the name for the *roll* or *book*, **volūmen** (from **volvō**, *roll up*), which survives in our word "volume" (Fig. 166).

274. Nevertheless it is evident that the Commentaries were not prepared as a diary, for private use, but written at one time and intended for circulation. We are safe in believing that Caesar intended through them not only to give to the public an authoritative account of the important events treated, but also to supply to historians of the period a collection of authentic material on which they might draw; hence, perhaps, the peculiar restraint under which he refers to himself in the third person, a practice as rare in narratives of the kind in antiquity as it is to-day; hence, also, presumably, the frequent use of indirect discourse near the beginning, while in the later books the style is more often enlivened, as generally in Greek and Latin historical works, by direct quotation (*211, b*).

275. The Seven Commentaries of the Gallic War were probably composed soon after the fall of Alesia, in the winter of 52–51 B.C.; they were probably taken down from dictation and circulated through the multiplication of copies from the original copy or copies sent from Gaul to Rome in 51.

276. The Civil War was seemingly incomplete at the time of Caesar's death; only two Commentaries, narrating the events of 49 and 48 B.C., were finished. Later the first Commentary, dealing with the events of 49, was divided into two books, the other remaining undivided; consequently in manuscripts and editions the Civil War now appears in three books, the first and second being devoted to the events of 49, the third to those of 48 B.C.

277. A gap of two years was left between the Commentaries of the Gallic War, covering the period 58–52 B.C., and those of the Civil War, covering the years 49 and 48. This was filled

by Aulus Hirtius, who added to the Gallic War an eighth book narrating briefly the events of 51 and 50 B.C. in Gaul. Other writers afterwards extended the Civil War also by adding narratives of Caesar's military operations in Egypt, Africa, and Spain.

Figure 167. — Coin commemorating the assassination of Caesar.

Struck by an officer of Marcus Junius Brutus. A "cap of liberty" appears between two daggers. Inscription: EID · MAR, for EIDIBUS MARTIIS, 'On the Ides of March.'

278. Notwithstanding Caesar's aim in composing the Commentaries as source books rather than finished works, the clearness, conciseness, and vigor of his style, and the importance of the matter, have given them a place in the first rank of historical writings. Of the Commentaries on the Gallic War Cicero wrote (*Brut.* lxxv. 262):

"They are worthy of all praise. They are unadorned, straightforward, and elegant, every embellishment being stripped off as a garment. Caesar desired, indeed, to furnish others, who might wish to write history, with material upon which they might draw; and perhaps men without good taste, who like to deck out facts in tawdry graces of expression, may think that he has rendered a service to historians by providing them with raw material, but he has deterred men of sound sense from trying to improve on the Commentaries in literary expression. For in history a pure and brilliant conciseness of style is the highest attainable beauty."

279. The question has been much discussed whether or not in the Commentaries Caesar warped the truth in self-justification. No one will deny that he had a complete command of the facts, and that, when the Commentaries on the Gallic War were published, there were many officers and men who would instantly have detected untruths and condemned them. Caesar seems to have been too large a man to condescend to misrepresentation even in narrating his own defeats, as at Gergovia and Dyrrachium; while there may have been occasional lapses of memory in respect to details, we have no reason to question the substantial accuracy of the Commentaries as historical documents.

The Commentaries themselves convey no impression of exaggeration. Plutarch, who had at hand other sources of information, no longer extant, thus summarizes the results of the Gallic war:

"Caesar was engaged in the Gallic war less than ten years. In that time he captured more than eight hundred towns, brought into submission three hundred peoples, fought against three million foes, killed a million, and took a million prisoners."

Caesar took part in thirty battles.

CAESAR AS AN ORATOR

280. As an orator Caesar was rated second only to Cicero. His orations have perished; but apart from other evidence a favorable judgment of Caesar's oratorical style might be formed from the speech which he puts into the mouth of Critognatus (VII. 77), and the outline of the argument by which he quelled an incipient mutiny (I. 40).

THE GEOGRAPHY OF CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES

INTRODUCTORY

281. The Geography of the Commentaries on the Gallic War touches Italy, Cisalpine Gaul, Illyricum, and Transalpine Gaul; that of the Civil War touches also Spain, Macedonia, Epirus and Thessaly, Asia Minor, Syria, Egypt, and Africa.

282. Caesar frequently uses the name of a people for that of the country inhabited by them, where English usage expects the word "country" or "land" or an equivalent; as **quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit**, *which separates the Helvetian territory from that of the Germans*, lit. *from the Germans* (I. 2); **ūnum per Sēquanōs**, *one (route) through the country of the Sequanians*, lit. *through the Sequanians* (I. 6).

ITALY AND CISALPINE GAUL

283. Caesar uses **Italia**, *Italy*, in two senses:

a. Italy in the narrower sense as a political unit (C. I. 6); Italy proper, having as its northern boundary on the east side the small river Rubicon, on the west the lower course of the river Auser, and between the two rivers a line running a short distance south of Luca (modern *Lucca*).

b. Italy in the geographical sense (I. 10), designating the entire peninsula as far as the Alps, and including Cisalpine Gaul in addition to Italy proper.

284. Cisalpine Gaul is designated by Caesar as **Cisalpīna Gallia** (VI. 1), **Gallia citerior**, *Hither Gaul* (I. 24), and **citerior prōvincia**, *the nearer province* (I. 10). It comprised the great drainage area of the **Padus**, *Po* (V. 24), extending from Italy proper to the Alps. The entire region was brought under

Roman domination in the second century B.C., but Cisalpine Gaul was not joined with Italy politically till the reign of Augustus.

285. Of the cities of Cisalpine Gaul Caesar mentions two, **Aquileia** (I. 10), at the head of the Adriatic Sea, chief city of the Cisalpine Veneti, who gave their name to modern "Venice"; and **Ocelum** (I. 10), in the extreme western part.

TRANSALPINE GAUL

286. Transalpine Gaul is designated by Caesar as **Trānsalpīna Gallia** (VII. 6), **Gallia Trānsalpīna** (VII. 1); **Gallia ulterior** (I. 7), and **ulterior Gallia** (I. 10), *Further Gaul;* or simply **Gallia**, *Gaul* (I. 1). It extended from the Alps and the Rhine to the Atlantic Ocean, comprising the countries now known as France and Belgium, the German possessions west of the Rhine, and the greater part of Switzerland and Holland. In this book where "Gaul" stands alone, *Transalpine Gaul* is meant. (See Map inside back cover).

Figure 168. — Conquered Gaul, personified.

Behind the head is a Gallic war-trumpet. Denarius, 48 B.C.

After the conquest, **Gallia** as a subject country was personified as a female figure, sometimes with the characteristic Gallic war-trumpet, as on a coin struck in Rome in 48 B.C. (Fig. 168); here only the head is shown, with long hair, dishevelled, the war-trumpet being behind the head.

287. On account of differences in speech, and other characteristics, Caesar describes Transalpine Gaul as divided into three parts:

a. The land of the Belgians, Belgium, in the northeast, extending from the rivers **Sēquana**, *Seine*, and **Matrona**, *Marne*, to the river **Rhēnus**, *Rhine*. The Belgium described by Caesar was much larger than the modern country. The ancient Bel-

gian stock survives in the Walloons. The language was mostly Celtic.

b. The land of the Galli, the Celtic country, Celtic Gaul, extending from the *Seine* and *Marne* to the river **Garumna**, *Garonne*. This part is often called **Gallia** (I. 1, l. 20; I. 30). The numerous dialects of Celtic Gaul belonged to the great Celtic family, which has modern representatives in Armoric, spoken in Brittany, and the Welsh language.

c. The land of the Aquitanians, Aquitania, extending from the Garonne River to the Pyrenees. The language of the Aquitanians seems to have been related to the Basque.

288. *a.* The three divisions of Gaul were made up of many small *states*, **cīvitātēs**, each of which had its own political organization. A number of the states had their own coinage in gold and other metals; but the coins were mostly imitations of those struck by Greek states and Rome.

b. In Celtic Gaul the governing power was in the hands of two classes, the knights and the Druid priests; the condition of the common people was not much above slavery (VI. 13).

289. *a.* Government in Gaul was administered by *magistrates*, **magistrātūs**, chosen by the dominant classes, such as the Vergobrets (I. 16); a few of the more backward states had *kings*, **rēgēs**, as Galba, king of the Suessiones (II. 4), and Commius, king of the Atrebates (IV. 21).

b. In some states there was a *council of elders*, **senātus** (II. 5).

c. Politically Gaul in Caesar's time was in a condition of unrest. Usurpations of power and changes of rulers were frequent (II. 1). Not only in the different states but in the subdivisions of states, and even in powerful families, there were party divisions (VI. 11), from which strifes of great bitterness arose. A conspicuous example is the irreconcilable antagonism between the brothers Diviciacus and Dumnorix (I. 18), of whom the former did everything possible to advance Caesar's interests (II. 5, 10), while the latter, as leader of an anti-Roman party among the Aeduans, sought in all ways to

thwart Caesar, until finally he was killed, while resisting capture, by Caesar's cavalry (V. 7).

290. The southeastern part of Gaul, not specified in Caesar's threefold division, had been conquered by the Romans and organized into a province in 121 B.C. This was the only part of Transalpine Gaul that properly came under Caesar's jurisdiction when he went out as governor in 58 B.C. (*255*). It is designated by Caesar as **Gallia prōvincia** (I. 19) or **prōvincia Gallia** (I. 53), *the Gallic Province;* as **ulterior prōvincia**, *the Further Province* (I. 10), **prōvincia nostra**, *our Province* (I. 2), or simply **prōvincia**, *the Province* (I. 1).

291. Of the mountains of Gaul the most important are: **Alpēs**, *the Alps* (I. 10), of which the western and southern portion, the French and the Swiss Alps, were known to Caesar; **mōns Cebenna**, *the Cévennes* (VII. 8), in Southern Gaul; **mōns Iūra**, *the Jura Mountains* (I. 2), extending from the Rhone below Geneva northeast to the Rhine; **mōns Vosegus**, *the Vosges* (IV. 10), west of the Rhine and north of the Jura range; **Pȳrēnaeī montēs**, *the Pyrenees*, on the border toward Spain (I. 1).

292. The more important rivers of Gaul mentioned by Caesar are: **Rhodanus**, *the Rhone* (I. 2), which flows through **lacus Lemannus**, *Lake Geneva* (I. 2), and empties into the Mediterranean; **Arar**, *Saône* (I. 12), a tributary of the Rhone, which it enters from the north; **Sēquana**, *the Seine* (I. 1); **Matrona**, *Marne* (I. 1), a tributary of the *Seine*, which it enters from the east; **Axona**, *Aisne* (II. 5), a tributary of the *Oise*, which in turn flows into the *Seine* from the northeast, below the confluence with the Marne; **Rhēnus**, *Rhine* (I. 1); **Garumna**, *Garonne* (I. 1); **Liger**, *Loire* (III. 9), the largest river of Gaul, flowing into the Bay of Biscay; **Mosa**, *Meuse* (IV. 9), in northeastern Gaul; **Sabis**, *Sambre*, a tributary of the *Meuse*, which it enters from the west (II. 16).

293. The cities of Gaul in Caesar's time were situated on or near a coast, on a river, or on the top of a high mountain. The more noteworthy were:

a. In the Province: **Massilia**, *Marseilles* (C. II. 3), founded by Greeks from Phocaea about 600 B.C., a prosperous city, which retained its Greek character, carried on an extensive commerce, and became an important civilizing influence (Fig. 169); **Narbo**, *Narbonne* (III. 20), on the river Atax not far from the sea, colonized by the Romans in 118 B.C.; **Tolōsa**, *Toulouse* (III. 20), on the Garonne river; **Genava**, *Geneva* (I. 6), on **lacus Lemannus**, *Lake Geneva* (I. 2).

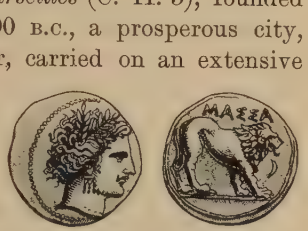


Figure 169. — Coin of Massilia.

Silver. Obverse, head of Artemis with earrings and necklace; reverse, lion, prowling, with abbreviation of the Greek name above, and crescent in front.

b. In Celtic Gaul: **Agedincum**, *Sens* (VI. 44); **Alesia**, *Alise-Sainte-Reine* (VII. 68); **Avaricum**, *Bourges* (VII. 13); **Bibracte**, on *Mt. Beuvray* (I. 23); **Cēnabum**, *Orléans* (VII. 3); **Decetia**, *Decize* (VII. 33); **Gergovia** (VII. 36); **Lutecia Parīsiōrum**, *Paris* (VI. 3); **Vesontiō**, *Besançon* (I. 38).

c. In Belgium: **Bibrax** (II. 6) near the *Aisne;* **Dūrocortorum**, *Reims* (VI. 44); **Noviodūnum** of the Suessiones, near *Soissons* (II. 12); **Samarobrīva**, *Amiens* (V. 24).

BRITAIN, GERMANY, AND SPAIN

294. Caesar uses **Britannia**, *Britain* (II. 4), to designate the island of Great Britain, including modern England, Scotland, and Wales. He was the first Roman general to invade the island, whose inhabitants he found similar to those of Celtic Gaul in language and institutions, but not so far advanced in civilization (Fig. 170). His two expeditions, in 55 and 54 B.C., had slight apparent effect, but they stimulated commerce and prepared the way for the introduction of Roman wares and customs (Fig. 140). The subjugation of Britain by the Romans began in 43 A.D.

Figure 170. — Early British Coin.

Silver, of crude workmanship; probably in circulation in Caesar's time.

295. Caesar uses **Germānia**, *Germany* (IV. 4), to designate a country of indefinite extent east of the Rhine and north of the Danube. He came into contact only with the German peoples near the Rhine. His two expeditions across the Rhine, in 55 and 53 B.C., produced slight effect; the Romans never conquered more of Germany than a narrow strip along the Rhine and the Danube.

296. Ancient *Spain*, **Hispānia**, included modern Spain and Portugal. After the Roman Conquest, about 200 B.C., it was divided into two provinces, **citerior Hispānia**, *Hither Spain* (III. 23), including the northern and eastern part of the peninsula, and **ulterior Hispānia**, *Further Spain* (C. I. 38), on the south and west.

297. Caesar sometimes uses **Hispānia**, *Spain*, to designate the peninsula as a whole (V. 1); sometimes the plural, **Hispāniae**, *the Spains* (C. III. 73), referring to the two Spanish provinces.

ILLYRICUM, MACEDONIA, EPIRUS, AND THESSALY

298. **Illyricum** was a narrow province that bordered Cisalpine Gaul for a short distance at the head of the Adriatic Sea, and extended down the east side of the Adriatic as far as the river **Drilo**, *Drin*. It included parts of modern Albania, Montenegro, Herzegovina, Dalmatia, Croatia, and Istria. It came under Roman control about 167 B.C.

299. Belonging, in Caesar's time, to the province of **Macedonia**, was a strip of coast between Illyricum and Epirus with the important cities **Apollōnia** (C. III. 75), about five miles from the sea, and **Dyrrachium**, *Durazzo* (C. III. 53), on the coast (Map 19).

300. **Ēpīrus** was the northernmost division of Greece on the west side; it occupied a part of modern Albania. It was conquered by the Romans in 168 B.C. (Map 19).

Towns of Epirus mentioned by Caesar are **Būthrōtum** (C. III. 16) and **Ōricum** (C. III. 90), both on the coast (Map 19).

301. **Thessalia**, *Thessaly*, in northeastern Greece, corresponded roughly with the division of modern Greece called

by the same name. Towns of Thessaly mentioned by Caesar are **Gomphī** (C. III. 80), **Lārīsa**, *Larissa* (C. III. 96), and **Metropolis** (C. III. 80). Cf. Map 19.

ASIA, SYRIA, EGYPT, AND AFRICA

302. The Romans used **Asia** in three senses, designating:

(*a.*) The continent Asia, as we use the name to-day.

(*b.*) The western projection of the continent, between the Mediterranean and the Black Sea; called **Asia Minor** in order to distinguish it from the mass of the continent as a whole.

(*c.*) The Roman province **Asia**, which was organized in 129 B.C. The Roman province Asia included only the western part of Asia Minor, with the countries Caria, Lydia, Mysia, and Phrygia. Caesar uses Asia (C. III. 53) to designate the Roman province, not Asia Minor or the continent.

303. At the time of the Civil War **Bithȳnia**, including a part of Pontus (C. III. 3), and **Cilicia** in Asia Minor (C. III. 102) were already organized as separate provinces.

304. **Syria** (C. III. 103), including **Phoenicia** and **Palestine**, was conquered by Pompey and became a Roman province about 64 B.C. At Jerusalem Pompey profaned the Holy of Holies in the Temple by entering it, but he refrained from carrying off the treasure. The treasure, however, a few years later fell a prey to Crassus, who, on his way to attack the Parthians (*258*), delayed in Jerusalem in order to rob the Temple.

305. **Aegyptus**, *Egypt* (C. III. 104), at the time of the Civil War was an independent kingdom. It was not made subject to Rome till 29 B.C. Its principal city, **Alexandrīa**, *Alexandria* (C. III. 103), was founded by Alexander the Great, who gave to it his name.

306. Caesar uses **Africa** (C. II. 37) to designate, not the continent, but the comparatively small Roman province of *Africa*, which was organized after the destruction of Carthage in 146 B.C. After the battle of Thapsus and the death of Juba (*262*) Caesar

made another province out of the Kingdom of Numidia, which adjoined the province Africa on the south and west, and after his death was added to it.

Figure 171. — Africa, personified as a goddess.

As a headdress she wears the spoils of an elephant, with trunk and tusks projecting above and broad ears falling beside the neck; over the right shoulder we see, projecting, the bow of the hunting goddess, Artemis, and the club of Hercules; underneath is the rattle, sistrum, sacred to Isis.

On her right shoulder is a lion, while an asp rises threateningly above her right hand, facing a panther that stands on the fruits gathered in the fold of her robe; these creatures and the fruits symbolize the wild life and fertility of the Province. Relief on a silver plate.

Africa was personified as a female figure, wearing as a headdress the spoils of an elephant (Fig. 171).

THE ROMAN ART OF WAR IN CAESAR'S TIME

I. COMPOSITION OF THE ARMY

307. The legion. — *a.* The *legion*, **legiō** (I. 7), in Caesar's time was composed exclusively of Roman citizens. Probably Caesar's *legionary soldiers*, **legiōnārīī** (C. III. 63) or simply **mīlitēs** (I. 7), were mainly volunteers who were willing to enlist for the regular term of twenty years on account of the certainty of the pay, and of provision for their old age in case they lived beyond the period of service. However, citizens between the ages of seventeen and forty-six were liable to be called out by a *levy*, **dīlectus** (C. I. 6), at any time. Romans of the upper classes who wished to serve in the army, or found themselves unable to evade conscription, were employed as officers, or attached to the bodyguard of the commander.

b. The normal strength of a legion at the end of the Republic was 6000 men; but the average number of men in Caesar's legions probably did not exceed 3600 in the Gallic War, and 3000 in the Civil War.

c. The legion was divided into ten *cohorts*, **cohortēs** (III. 1), averaging, in Caesar's army, about 360 men each; the cohort was divided into three *maniples*, **manipulī** (II. 25), of 120 men; the maniples into two *centuries* or *companies*, **ōrdinēs** (I. 40). In legions having a full complement of men each century would contain 100; in Caesar's army the number could hardly have averaged more than 60.

d. The legions that had seen long service, apparently not less than nine or ten years, were called *veteran*, **legiōnēs veterānae** (I. 24); the rest, *last levied*, or *raw*, **legiōnēs proximē cōnscriptae** (I. 24), or **legiōnēs tīrōnum** (C. III. 28). The legions were designated by number.

e. In the first year of the Gallic War Caesar had four veteran legions, numbered VII., VIII., IX., — these three apparently brought from the vicinity of Aquileia (I. 10), — and X.; the tenth legion was in the Province at the time of his arrival in Gaul (I. 7). After Caesar learned that the Helvetians proposed to go through the country of the Sequanians and Aeduans he hastily raised in Cisalpine Gaul two legions (I. 10), which were numbered XI. and XII. With these six legions he gained two of his most brilliant victories, over the Helvetians and over Ariovistus.

f. In the second year of the war Caesar raised two new legions in Cisalpine Gaul (II. 2), numbered XIII. and XIV., so that he now had four veteran and four raw legions, eight in all.

g. In the fifth year (54 B.C.) the XIVth legion and half of another were annihilated in the ambuscade set by Ambiorix (V. 26–37). At the beginning of the next year Caesar raised two more legions in Cisalpine Gaul, one replacing the lost XIVth (VI. 32), the other numbered XV., and besides obtained a legion from Pompey, which was numbered VI. (VI. 1; VIII. 54). In the last two years of the war he had thus ten legions (VII. 34), numbered VI. to XV. inclusive. It appears probable that the whole force of legionary soldiers engaged in the siege of Alesia fell short of forty thousand.

308. The infantry auxiliaries. — In addition to the legions, a Roman army contained bodies of infantry and cavalry drawn from allied and subject peoples, or hired outright from independent nations, called *auxiliaries* or *auxiliary troops*, **auxilia** (I. 24). These in some cases retained their native dress, equipment, and mode of fighting, in others were armed and trained after the Roman fashion (Fig. 172). To the former class belong the *light-armed troops*, **levis armātūrae peditēs** (II. 24), including as special classes the slingers (Plate III. 1), and bowmen. In the Gallic War Caesar availed himself of the help of *slingers*, **funditōrēs**, from the Balearic Islands (II. 7), *bowmen*, **sagittārii**, from Crete and from Numidia (II. 7), and light-armed German troops (VII. 65). He utilized also

contingents from the Gallic States that he subdued (III. 18, VIII. 10). In 52 B.C. he had a force of ten thousand Aeduans (VII. 34). Caesar, as other Roman writers, is generally not careful to state the exact number of the auxiliary troops; they were regarded as relatively unimportant. The officers of the auxiliaries, both infantry and cavalry, were Romans. Auxiliary troops posted on the wing of an army might be called *wing-men*, **ālārii** (I. 51).

Figure 172. — Light-armed soldier.

309. The cavalry. — *a.* A troop of cavalry usually accompanied each legion. While the evidence is not conclusive, it is probable that in the latter part of the Gallic War, if not from the beginning, Caesar had contingents of cavalry in connection with his legions, averaging 200 to 300 men each. These horsemen were foreigners, serving for pay; they were drawn from Spain, *Spanish horsemen*, **Hispānī equitēs** (V. 26), from Germany, *German horsemen*, **Germānī equitēs** (VII. 13), and from Gaul.

b. Apart from the legionary contingents, Caesar had a force of cavalry raised from the Gallic States subject or friendly to

Rome, which was reckoned as a single body, numbering under ordinary circumstances about 4000 (I. 15; V. 5), or 5000 men (IV. 12).

c. The cavalry was divided into *squads* or *squadrons*, **turmae**, of about 30 horsemen; such a squad went with Commius to Britain (IV. 35). Probably the squad contained three *decuries*, **decuriae**, of 10 men each, under the command of *decurions*, **decuriōnēs** (I. 23). The higher officers were called *cavalry prefects*, **praefectī equitum** (III. 26). See Plate III, 5.

310. The non-combatants. — *a.* There were two classes of non-combatants, slaves employed for menial services, and free men, or freedmen. In the former class were included the officers' servants and *camp servants*, **cālōnēs** (II. 24), as well as the drivers and *muleteers* with the heavy baggage, **mūliōnēs** (VII. 45); in the latter class were citizens or others who were allowed to accompany the army but were obliged to find quarters outside of the camp, as the *traders*, **mercātōrēs** (VI. 37).

b. The *mechanics*, **fabrī** (V. 11), were not enrolled as a separate corps, but were drawn from the ranks of the legionary soldiers whenever needed.

311. The baggage train. — Each legion had a separate baggage train. The heavy *baggage*, **impedīmenta** (II. 19), comprised tents, hand-mills for grinding grain, artillery, extra weapons, and other military stores, as well as supplies of food. In the enemy's country for better defense the baggage trains of a number of legions might be formed into a single column (II. 19). From the baggage of the legion, or heavy baggage, the baggage of the soldiers, carried in individual *packs*, **sarcinae**, should be clearly distinguished (Fig. 6).

II. THE OFFICERS

312. The general was properly called *leader*, **dux**, until he had won a victory; after the first victory he had a right to the title **imperātor**, *commander* or *general* (I. 40). Caesar used the title Imperator from the time that he defeated the Helvetians, in 58 B.C., until his death (I. 40, etc.).

313. *a.* Next in rank came the *lieutenant*, or *lieutenant-general*, **lēgātus** (I. 10), who was frequently placed by Caesar in command of separate legions, or of corps containing more than one legion. When acting in the absence of the general the lieutenant became *lieutenant in the general's place*, **lēgātus prō praetōre** (I. 21), and exercised unusual authority. The title "lieutenant general" would more accurately define the military position of Labienus, for example, than that of "lieutenant" as the word is used in the United States and England.

b. The *quaestor*, **quaestor** (I. 52), was charged with the care of the military chest and the supplies, but was sometimes clothed with purely military authority, and assumed the functions of a lieutenant. The quaestor and the lieutenants belonged to the staff of the general, and had with him the distinction of a *body-guard*, **cohors praetōria** (I. 40), composed of picked soldiers and of young men of rank who wished to acquire military experience.

314. The *military tribunes*, **trībūnī mīlitum** (I. 39), numbered six to a legion. In Caesar's army the tribunes appear to have received appointment for personal rather than military reasons; and they were intrusted with subordinate services, such as the leading of troops on the march, the command of detachments smaller than a legion (cf. VI. 39), the securing of supplies (III. 7), and the oversight of the watches. Only one military tribune, Gaius Volusenus (III. 5), is mentioned by Caesar in terms of praise.

315. *a.* In marked contrast with the higher officers, who were of good social position, were the captains, or *centurions*, **centuriōnēs, ōrdinēs** (V. 30). These were often of the humblest origin; they were promoted from the ranks simply on account of bravery and efficiency. At the drill, on the march, and in battle, they were at the same time the models and the leaders of the soldiers.

b. As each century had a centurion, there were 2 centurions in each maniple (distinguished as *first*, **prior**, and *second*, **pos-**

terior), 6 in each cohort, and 60 in the legion. The first in rank was the *first centurion* (of the first maniple) *of the first cohort*, **prīmipīlus** (II. 25). The first centurion of the second maniple of a cohort was called **prīnceps prior** (C. III. 64).

316. Below the centurions, but ranking above the common soldiers, were the privileged soldiers, who were relieved from picket duty as well as work on fortifications and other manual labor. Such were the *veteran volunteers*, **ēvocātī** (C. III. 53), soldiers who had served their full time but had reënlisted at the general's request; the musicians, and the *standard-bearers*, **signiferī**.

III. PROVISIONING AND PAY OF THE SOLDIERS

317. Caesar was careful to have ample supplies always at hand.

The care of the stores was in the hands of the quaestor, with his staff. Not bread or flour, but *grain*, **frūmentum** (I. 16), usually wheat, was served out to the soldiers for rations. This they themselves ground with *hand-mills*, **molae manuālēs**, and prepared for food by boiling into a paste or by making into bread without yeast.

The grain was portioned out every fifteen days, and on the march each soldier carried his share in a sack. The amount furnished does not seem large when we reflect that the men lived almost exclusively on a vegetable diet. The allowance for the fifteen days was two Roman *pecks*, **modiī**, about half a bushel by our measure. As the weight of this was not far from thirty pounds, the soldier had about two pounds per day. On difficult or forced marches extra rations were served out.

If the soldier desired to do so he could trade off his grain for bread, or buy other articles of food from the numerous *traders*, **mercātōrēs** (I. 39), who accompanied the army and had a flourishing business. When wheat was scarce, *barley*, **hordeum** (C. III. 47), was substituted. Rations of barley were frequently served out also instead of wheat as a punishment for slight

offenses. In traversing an enemy's country fresh meat was often secured.

318. The wages of the Roman soldier were very small, but in successful campaigns the men had a share of the *booty*, **praeda** (C. III. 97), consisting largely of captives, who were sold as slaves (VII. 89). These were bought up on the spot by the traders, and thus readily turned into cash. Sometimes Caesar gave money realized from the sale of booty; thus after the conquest of the Bituriges in 51 B.C. the soldiers received 200 sesterces (about $8.00) apiece, the centurions a much larger sum (VIII. 4). As other *rewards*, **praemia** (V. 58), the commander could make special *gifts*, **mīlitāria dōna** (C. III. 53), such as disk-shaped *decorations* of metal for the breast, **phalerae** (Fig. 62), clothing, and double pay (C. III. 53).

When convicted of cowardly or disgraceful conduct the soldier was deprived of his weapons and driven from the camp, or in extreme cases put to death; officers and privileged soldiers might be reduced in rank, as were certain standard-bearers after an engagement before Dyrrachium (C. III. 74).

319. At the close of his period of service, twenty years, or on reaching his fiftieth year, the soldier who had served well was entitled to an *honorable discharge*, **missiō honesta**, or **missiō** (C. I. 86), together with an allotment of land, or a payment of money.

IV. THE DRESS AND EQUIPMENT

320. The legionary soldier wore a thick woolen undergarment, *tunic*, **tunica**, reaching nearly to the knees (cf. C. III. 44). His *cloak*, **sagum** (C. I. 75), which served also as a blanket, was likewise of undyed wool, and fastened by a *clasp*, **fībula**, on the right shoulder, so as not to impede the movement of the right arm. The soldier's *shoes*, **caligae** (Fig. 173), were like a sandal, but had heavy

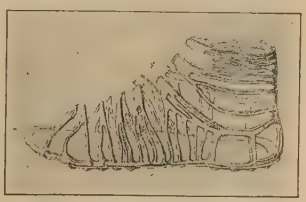


Figure 173. — Soldier's shoe.

Figure 174.— Legionary's helmet, galea, without the crest.

soles which were fastened on by straps over the foot and instep.

321. The *cloak* of the commander, **palūdāmentum**, differed from that of the soldier only in being more ample, of finer quality, and ornamented; it was ordinarily scarlet in color (VII. 88).

322. The weapons of the legionary were in part offensive, in part defensive.

As defensive *weapons*, **arma**, he had:

a. A *helmet*, **galea** (Fig. 174), ornamented with a *crest*, **crista** (Plate III, 3; Fig. 33). On the march the helmet was hung on a cord which passed through the ring at the top and around the soldier's neck. The crest was fastened on before going into action.

b. A *cuirass*, or *coat of mail*, **lōrīca**, of leather, or of leather strengthened with strips of metal, or of metal (Figures 148, 150).

c. A *shield*, ordinarily rectangular, **scūtum** (II. 25; Fig. 175; Plate IV, 3), but in some cases oval, **clipeus** (Plate IV, 1), made of two layers of boards fastened together, strengthened on the outside by layers of linen or of leather, and at the edges by a rim of metal. At the middle of the outside was an iron knob, **umbō**, used in striking.

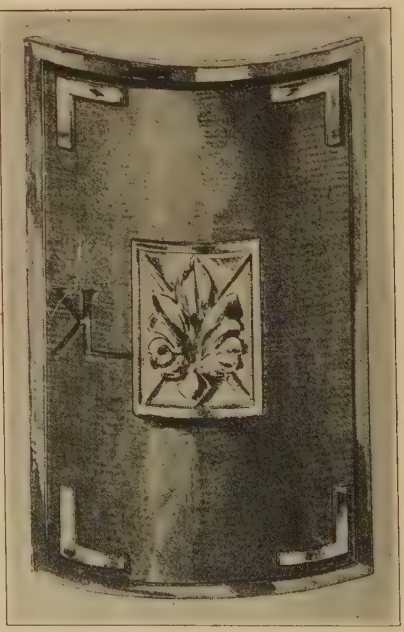


Figure 175.— Roman oblong shield, scutum.

On the march the shield was protected from the wet by a leather *covering*, **tegimentum** (II. 21). In battle it was held on the left arm (Fig. 33).

The offensive weapons of the legionary were:

d. A *pike*, **pīlum** (I. 25), a heavy and formidable javelin. It

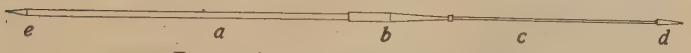


Figure 176. — Roman pike, restored.

a. Wooden shaft.
b. Iron collar, strengthening the end of the wooden shaft where the iron is fitted in.
c. The "iron," ferrum; of soft iron, easily bent.
d. Hard barbed point, of iron.
e. Iron shoe, making it possible to stick the pike into the ground, so that it would stand upright, without frazzling the wood.

consisted of a shaft of wood about four feet long, into the end of which was fitted a small iron shaft, **ferrum** (I. 25), with a pointed head, which projected two feet beyond the end of the wood (see Figures 49, 50, 176, and Plate IV, 6). The weight of the whole was not far from ten or eleven pounds. Pikes could be thrown only about 75 feet; but they were hurled with such skill and force that the first hurling often decided the battle.

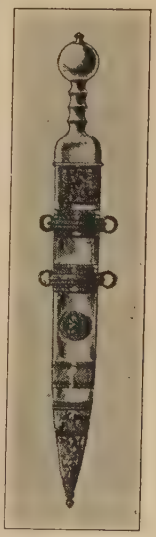


Figure 177. — Spanish sword, in the scabbard.

e. A *sword*, **gladius** (I. 25), called *Spanish sword*, **gladius Hispānus**, because made according to a pattern brought from Spain after the Second Punic War. The Spanish sword was short, broad, two-edged, and pointed, better adapted for stabbing than for slashing, though used for both purposes (Plate IV, 9). It was kept in a *scabbard*, **vāgīna** (V. 44), fastened to a *belt*, **balteus** (V. 44), which was passed over the left shoulder (Plate III, 3, and Fig. 177); this brought the sword on the right side, so that it was not in the way of the shield.

f. In the time of the Empire, and probably

also in Caesar's day, officers carried a *dagger*, **pugiō**, which was attached to a belt running around the waist (Fig. 178).

323. The dress and equipment of the light-armed soldiers varied greatly (Fig. 172, and Plate III, 1; Pl. IV, 7, 11). They, as well as the cavalry, seem generally to have had a light round or oval *shield*, **parma**, about three feet in diameter (Plate IV, 4). The cavalry had *helmets* of metal, **cassidēs** (VII. 45, Figure 179), light lances for hurling, and a longer sword than that used by the infantry (Figure 98, and Plate III, 5).

Figure 178. — Roman dagger.

V. THE STANDARDS

324. *a.* While the ancient battle lacked the noise and smoke of cannon and of other death-dealing devices of modern war, great clouds of dust were raised and obscured the movements of the combatants; the standards, or ensigns, were consequently more numerous, and had a relatively more important place, than flags have to-day.

Figure 179. — Cavalryman's helmet, cassis.

b. The ensigns of Caesar's army were:

(1) The *eagle* of the legion, **aquila** (IV. 25), of silver, carried in battle on the end of a pole by the *eagle-bearer*, **aquilifer** (V. 37). In camp it was kept in a little *shrine*, **sacellum** (Plate IV, 8). It was the standard of the legion as a whole; the eagle with extended wings borne aloft seemed to signify that the bird sacred to Jupiter, god of victory, was ready to lead the legion to success; and the loss of the eagle was the deepest disgrace that could be incurred (IV. 25; V. 37; C. III. 64). See Fig. 180, and Plate IV, 2.

The ancient Persians had a golden eagle as the royal stand-

ard; and to-day the eagle appears among the emblems of several European countries, and of the United States.

(2) The *standards*, **signa** (II. 21), one to each maniple, carried by *standard-bearers*, **signiferī** (II. 25; Fig. 187). These varied in appearance. One type, known from a coin struck in 49 B.C. (Fig. 180), had small streamers attached to the end of the pole, underneath which were two crescents (perhaps for good luck), one just above the other; below these were two disks of metal, **phalerae**, no doubt presented to the maniple for meritorious conduct, and last of all a square plate of metal, indicating by a letter the place of the maniple (**H** = **hastātī**, **P** = **prīncipēs**). In some cases figures of animals appeared.

Figure 180. — Standards.

Denarius, struck in 49 B.C.; eagle between two standards. Inscription, L · LENT[ULUS], C · MARC[ELLUS] COS. 'Lucius Lentulus and Gaius Marcellus, Consuls.'

There was no separate standard for the cohort.

(3) The *banners*, **vēxilla**, rectangular flags of different sizes used for a variety of purposes (Fig. 149). A large red flag was the special ensign of the commander (II. 20). Smaller banners were used by special detachments not formed of regular maniples (VI. 36), or attached to the standards of the maniples.

325. On the march the standard was at the front, in battle some distance behind the front, of the maniple.

From the immediate association of the manipular standards with military movements arose several idiomatic expressions used by Caesar. Such are:

signa ferre, *to go forward* (I. 39).

signa īnferre, *to advance* (II. 26).

signa convertere, *to face about* (I. 25).

ad signa convenīre, *to assemble* (VI. 1).

īnfestīs signīs, *in battle formation*, lit. *with hostile standards* (VII. 51; C. III. 93).

VI. THE MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

326. *a.* The musical instruments were:

(1) The *trumpet*, **tuba** (II. 20), about three feet long, with a funnel-shaped opening (Fig. 84, and Plate II, 7); it had a deep tone, and was sounded by the *trumpeters*, **tubicinēs** (VII. 47).

Figure 181. — Horn, with crosspiece by which it was carried.

(2) The *horn*, **cornū**, a large curved instrument, with a shriller note (Fig. 181, and Plate II. 8).

(3) The *shell trumpet*, **būcina**, perhaps resembling the large shells in use in modern times about Naples as dinner horns (Fig. 182); such at least is Triton's **būcina** described by Ovid (Met. I, 333–338).

The shell trumpet was used especially in camp for giving the signals to change the watches (C. II. 35).

b. As the maniple was the unit of military movement, signals were addressed to the *standard-bearers*, **signiferī**.

c. The order "to advance" or "to fall back" was conveyed by the general to the *trumpeters*, **tubicinēs** (cf. VII. 47); their signal was taken up by the *horn-blowers*, **cornicinēs**.

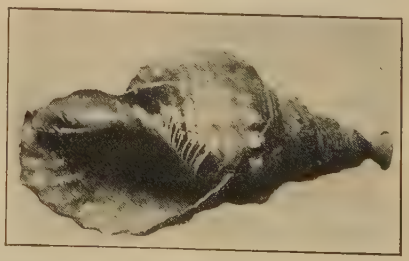


Figure 182. — Modern shell trumpet, with iron mouthpiece.

It has a deep tone which can be heard a long distance. From Boscoreale, near Pompeii.

cinēs, of whom there was one to each maniple. The notes of the instruments could be heard above the din of battle much more clearly than the spoken words of the officers.

VII. THE ARMY ON THE MARCH

327. When in an enemy's country Caesar maintained an exceedingly efficient information service. Parties of mounted *patrols*, **explōrātōrēs** (I. 21), scoured the country; and their observation was supplemented by single *scouts* or *spies*, **speculātōrēs** (II. 11), who gathered information wherever they could (Fig. 183).

Figure 183.— Scout, speculator.

328. The army advanced ordinarily in three divisions. At the *front*, **prīmum agmen** (VII. 67), came the cavalry, with perhaps a division of light-armed troops, sent ahead to feel out the enemy (I. 15), and in case of attack, to hold him at bay until the rest of the army could prepare for action (II. 19).

Next came the main force, each legion being accompanied by its baggage train; but when there was danger of attack the legions marched in single column, with the baggage of the whole army united (II. 19).

The *rear*, **novissimum agmen**, might in case of danger be formed of part of the legionary force, the baggage being between the rear and the main body (II. 19).

329. The regular *day's march*, **iūstum iter**, was from six to seven hours long. The start was usually made at sunrise; but in emergencies the army got under way at midnight, or two or three o'clock in the morning. The distance ordinarily traversed was about 15 or 16 English miles; on a *forced march*, **iter magnum** (II. 12), a much greater distance might be made, as 25 or 30 English miles (VII. 41). Caesar's forced marches manifested astonishing powers of endurance on the part of

his soldiers. Rivers were often crossed by fording; in such operations the ancient army had the advantage over the modern, because it carried no ammunition that would be spoiled by the water (V. 18, VII. 56).

330. On the march the soldier carried his rations, his cooking utensils, his arms, blanket, and one or two *rampart stakes*, or *palisades*, **vallī**; palisades for defense were carried by dragoons as late as the seventeenth century.

The luggage was done up in tight *bundles* or *packs*, **sarcinae** (Plate III, 4), which were fastened to forked poles, and raised over the shoulder (Fig. 6). This arrangement was introduced by Marius, in memory of whom soldiers so equipped were called *Marius's mules*, **mūlī Mariānī**. The helmet was hung by a cord from the neck, the other weapons disposed of in the most convenient way. When it rained, the oblong *shields*, **scūta** (*322, c*), could be put over the head like a roof.

VIII. THE ARMY IN CAMP

331. *a.* A camp was fortified at the close of every day's march. When the army was still on the march, men were sent forward to choose a suitable location for a camp and measure it off.

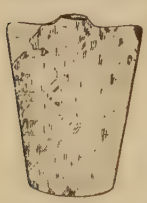


Figure 184. — Roman spade. Of iron; such, with wooden handles, were used by Caesar's soldiers.

b. Whenever possible, a site for the camp was selected on a slight elevation, with abundance of water, and of wood for fuel, near at hand. The proximity of a dense forest or overhanging mountain was avoided, that a favorable opportunity of attack might not be given to the enemy. Sometimes the rear or one side was placed parallel with a river (II. 5).

332. The camp was usually rectangular (see Maps 3, 4, 6, 20); in a few cases there were camps of irregular shapes, adapted to the nature of the ground (Maps 5, 15). The size of the camp varied according to the size of the force.

333. In fortifying a camp, first an embankment was thrown up on all four sides; for digging the soldiers used spades, or trenching tools, like those in use to-day (Figures 3, 4, 184).

Outside of this embankment was a trench, usually triangular in section (V-shaped), from which the earth for the embankment was taken (Fig. 185, and Plate IV, 10). On the outer

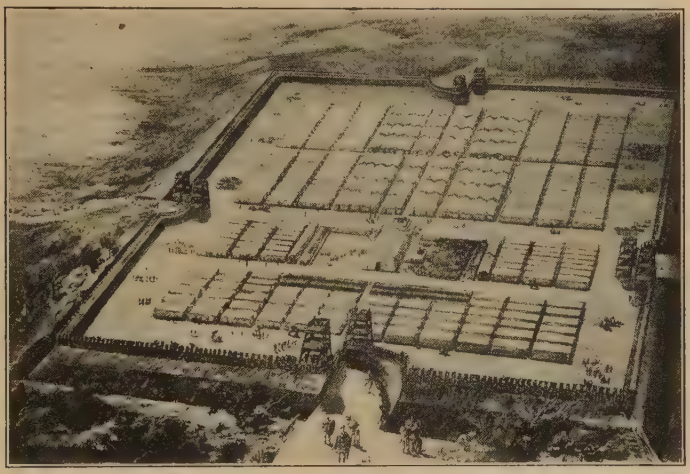


Figure 185. — Bird's-eye view of a Roman Camp.

Plainly seen are the trench or moat, and the rampart, with its stockade, on which are battlements; gates, with towers at each side; the general's quarters, and the rows of tents.

edge of the embankment a row of strong *rampart stakes* or *palisades*, **vallī**, was driven firmly in, forming a *stockade*. The *rampart*, **vallum** (II. 5), thus made, was several feet high and wide enough so that the soldiers could stand on it behind the palisades. The *trench*, or *moat*, **fossa** (II. 8), was from twelve to eighteen feet wide (II. 5) and from seven to ten feet deep. When the army expected to remain in the same place for a long time, as in *winter quarters*, **hīberna** (I. 54), or a *stationary camp*, **castra stativa** (C. III. 30), sometimes *towers*, **turrēs** (V. 40), were added at brief intervals, and the intervening spaces further protected by a roof (Plate IX, 6).

The labor of fortifying a camp was prodigious.

334. *a.* The camp had four gates (Plate IV, 10). That in the direction of the advance, toward the enemy, was called the *general's gate*, **porta praetōria** (C. III. 94), the one opposite to this, at the rear, *the decuman gate*, **porta decumāna** (II, 24); the gates on the right and left side respectively, as one faced the front, *main right gate*, **porta prīncipālis dextra**, and *main left gate*, **porta prīncipālis sinistra.** The last two were connected by the *main street*, **via prīncipālis.** The entrances were made more easily defensible by an approach so laid out that an enemy attempting to enter would expose the right, or unprotected side (Fig. 185).

b. Inside the rampart, between it and the tents, a vacant space two hundred feet wide was left on all sides. The remaining room in the enclosure was systematically divided, so that every maniple, decuria, and body of light-armed troops knew its place and could find its quarters at once. The *general's quarters*, **praetōrium** (C. III. 94), was near the middle of the camp; near it was an open space where he could address his troops from a *platform*, **suggestus** (VI. 3). Access to all parts of the camp was made by means of *passageways*, **viae** (V. 49).

335. *a.* The *tents*, **tabernācula** (I. 39), were of leather (Plate VII, 3); hence **sub pellibus**, lit. *under hides*, means *in tents* (III. 29). Each was calculated to hold ten men; but a centurion seems generally to have had more room to himself than the soldiers.

b. The *winter quarters*, **hīberna**, were made more comfortable by the substitution of straw-thatched *huts*, **casae** (V. 43), for tents.

c. In a hostile country a strong guard was kept before the gates of the camp (IV. 32). In the earlier times, and probably in Caesar's army, the password, admitting to the camp, was different each night; it was written on slips of wood, which were given by the commander to the military tribunes, and passed by these to the men on duty.

336. Many Roman camps became the nucleus of permanent

settlements, which survive in cities to-day. A marked instance is the city of *Chester*, England, the name of which is derived from **castra**; so *Rochester* comes from **Rodolphī castra.**

IX. THE ARMY IN BATTLE ARRAY

337. *a.* When the Roman force was far outnumbered by the enemy, the legionary soldiers might be arranged in a *double line*, **duplex aciēs** (III. 24), or even in a *single line*, **aciēs simplex,**

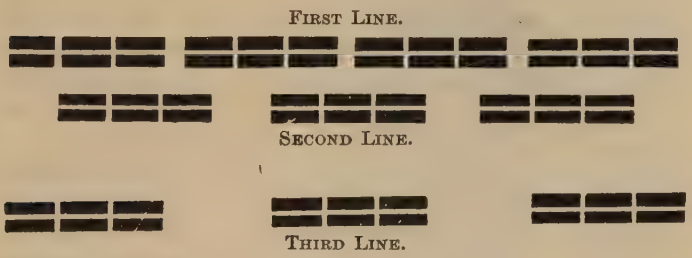


Figure 186. — Acies triplex.

One legion in triple line formation, showing the arrangement of the ten cohorts, and of the three maniples and six centuries in each cohort.

Four cohorts are shown in the first line, three in the second, and three in the third.

In each cohort the three maniples stand side by side. Each maniple is represented as divided into two centuries, one century being behind the other.

The men in each maniple probably stood 8 ranks deep, each century being formed in 4 ranks.

as at the battle of Ruspina, near Hadrumetum (*264*). But under ordinary circumstances Caesar drew up his legions in a *triple line*, **triplex aciēs**, as in the battles with the Helvetians, Ariovistus, and the Usipetes and Tencteri. This arrangement was probably as follows (Fig. 186):

(1) Four cohorts of each legion stood in the first line; about 160 feet behind them stood three cohorts; and ordinarily the remaining three cohorts of the legion were posted still farther back as a reserve. At the battle of Pharsalus there were only two cohorts in Caesar's third line (as indicated on Map 20), one cohort from each legion having been drawn off to form a

fourth line; and there were probably only two cohorts in the third line at the battle with Ariovistus (Map 4), one cohort from each legion being required for guard duty at the camps.

Figure 187. — Standard-bearer.

This standard-bearer belongs to a time somewhat later than Caesar; whether Caesar's standard-bearers wore bearskins on their heads or not, we do not know.

(2) In each cohort the three maniples stood side by side, one of the centuries in each maniple being behind the other.

The soldiers in each battle line stood about three feet apart each way; and there is some reason for supposing that in Caesar's cohorts the men stood 8 ranks deep.

The standard-bearers (Fig. 187) did not stand in the front rank, but were protected by soldiers selected for their agility and strength, *the men before the standards*, **antesignānī** (C. III. 84).

b. As the first line went into action the second followed closely behind; as the men of the first fell or withdrew exhausted, those of the second pressed forward and took their places; in case of need the third line advanced and in like manner relieved the combined first and second. In the battle with the Helvetians the whole third line faced about and repelled an attack on the rear (Map 3).

338. When circumstances required it, soldiers were massed in serried ranks, as in a wedge-shaped column, *wedge*, **cuneus** (VI. 40), or under a *turtle-shell roof*, **testūdō** (used by the Gauls, VII. 85). For defense sometimes a force was formed into a *circle*, **orbis**, corresponding with our hollow square (IV. 37).

339. The place of the light-armed troops and cavalry was ordinarily at first in front of the triple line, or on the wings. They opened the engagement by skirmishing, prevented flank movements of the enemy, drew the brunt of the attack if the legions wished to take another position, and were employed in various other ways as occasion demanded. The cavalry were utilized especially to cut down the fleeing.

X. OPERATIONS AGAINST FORTIFIED PLACES

340. The taking of walled towns was accomplished either by *sudden storming* without long preparation, **repentīna oppugnātiō** (C. III. 80), or **oppugnātiō** (VII. 36); by *siege blockade*, **obsidiō** (VII. 69), or **obsessiō** (VII. 36), which aimed to repel all attempts of the enemy to escape or secure supplies, and to reduce him by starvation, as at Alesia (VII. 69–90); or by *siege and storming*, **longinqua oppugnātiō** (C. III. 80), with the help of appliances to break down the enemy's fortifications and gain admission to the city, as at Avaricum (VII. 16–28).

In storming a city the forces rushed forward, tried to batter down the gates, fill up the moat, and mount the walls with ladders.

341. The siege was begun by extending a line of works, in case the nature of the site allowed, entirely around the place to be reduced. Then a *siege embankment*, or *mole*, **agger**, a wide roadway of timber and earth, was begun outside the reach of the enemy's weapons; it was gradually prolonged toward the city wall, and raised until at the front the top was on a level with the wall, or even higher.

342. *a.* The workmen at the front were protected by movable *breastworks*, **plutei** (cf. Plate IX, 4, 5), or by *arbor-sheds*, or

sappers' huts, **vīneae** (II, 12; see Plate IX, 9), made of timber or of thick wickerwork, with rawhides stretched over the outside as a protection against fire. Rows of arbor-sheds were placed along the sides of the mole to afford passageways to the front (Plate IX, 2); a long arbor-shed was called a *mousie*, **mūsculus** (VII. 84; C. II. 10). A sappers' shed with a sloping roof of strong boards specially adapted for use in undermining a wall was called a *turtle-shell shed*, **testūdō** (Plate VII, 10).

b. Movable towers, **turrēs ambulātōriae** (II. 12, 31), to be filled with soldiers, were built out of range of the enemy's missiles and brought up near the walls, usually on the siege embankment, which sloped gently from the rear up to the wall (Plate IX, 7; Plate XII).

Figure 188. — Wall hook.

Iron head of a wall hook, found in the remains of the Gallic wall at Besançon, ancient Vesontio.

c. In the lowest story of the movable tower, or under a separate roof, was the *battering ram*, **ariēs** (II. 32), an enormous beam with a metallic head which was swung against the walls with terrific force (Plate VII, 1). The attacking force tried also to pry stones out of the walls with *wall hooks*, **falcēs** (**mūrālēs**), light poles with a strong iron hook at the end (VII. 22; Fig. 188), and clear the walls of defenders by means of *artillery* of the *torsioner* type, **tormenta.**

d. Walls and ramparts were mounted by means of *scaling ladders*, **scālae** (V. 43).

343. For throwing heavy missiles the Romans had *torsioners*, **tormenta** (VII. 81), so named from the method of developing the force required for hurling; **tormentum** is derived from **torqueō**, *twist.* This was obtained by twisting with great tension strong ropes of hair (Fig. 189), which were suddenly released by means of a trigger; the force was utilized for the shooting of missiles by a mechanism of which there were three principal types:

a. The *catapult*, **catapulta** (Plate IX, 8), for shooting large

arrows or darts. A small catapult is called *scorpion*, **scorpiō**, by Caesar (VII. 25).

b. The *ballista*, **ballista** (Plate VII, 8), which cast stones; the trough was sharply inclined, while that of the catapult was nearly horizontal. The ballista is not mentioned by Caesar.

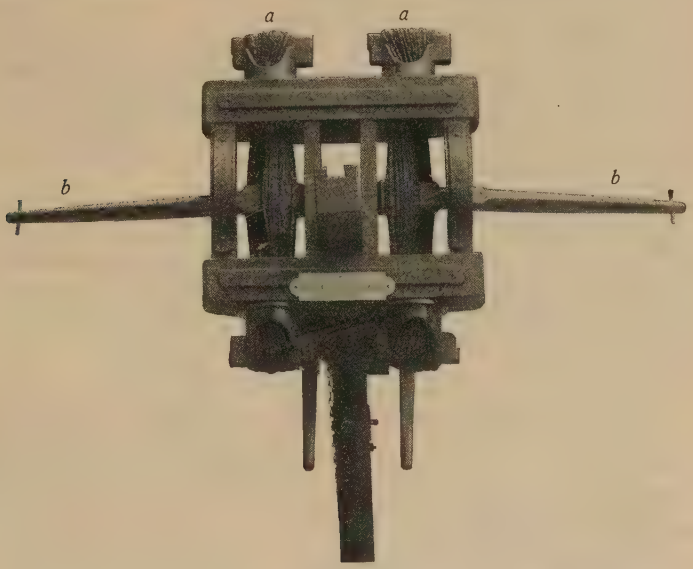


Figure 189. — Head of a catapult, restored. In the Museum of St. Germain, near Paris.

a, *a*. Tightly twisted ropes.

b, *b*. Arms, to which are attached the cords connected with the trigger. The methods of loading and discharging artillery of this kind are easily understood from the figures shown in Plate VII, 8, and Plate IX, 8.

c. The *wild ass*, **onager** (Plate VII, 7), which hurled stones, but was probably not used in Caesar's time.

Where the ground allowed, the walls were undermined and tunnels run under the town.

344. The besieged met mines by counter-mines. With great hooks they tried to catch the head of the battering ram and hold it, or let down masses of wood or wickerwork along the

side of the wall to deaden the force of the blow, or drew the wall hooks over into the city with windlasses (VII. 22). By frequent *sallies*, **ēruptiōnēs** (VII. 22), they endeavored to destroy the works of the besiegers, drove the workmen from their posts, and hurled firebrands into the sheds and towers.

345. Owing to the amount of wood used in siege works the danger from fire was great. Once even the siege embankment was burned (VII. 24). When a breach had been made in the wall, or a gate battered down, an attack was begun wherever it was thought possible to force an entrance. The siege embankment and towers were connected with the top of the wall by means of planks and beams thrown across (Plate XII). Detachments of soldiers, holding their oblong shields close together above their heads, formed a *turtle-shell roof*, **testūdō**, under which they marched up close to the walls and tried to scale them, or entered the breach (Plate VII, 6).

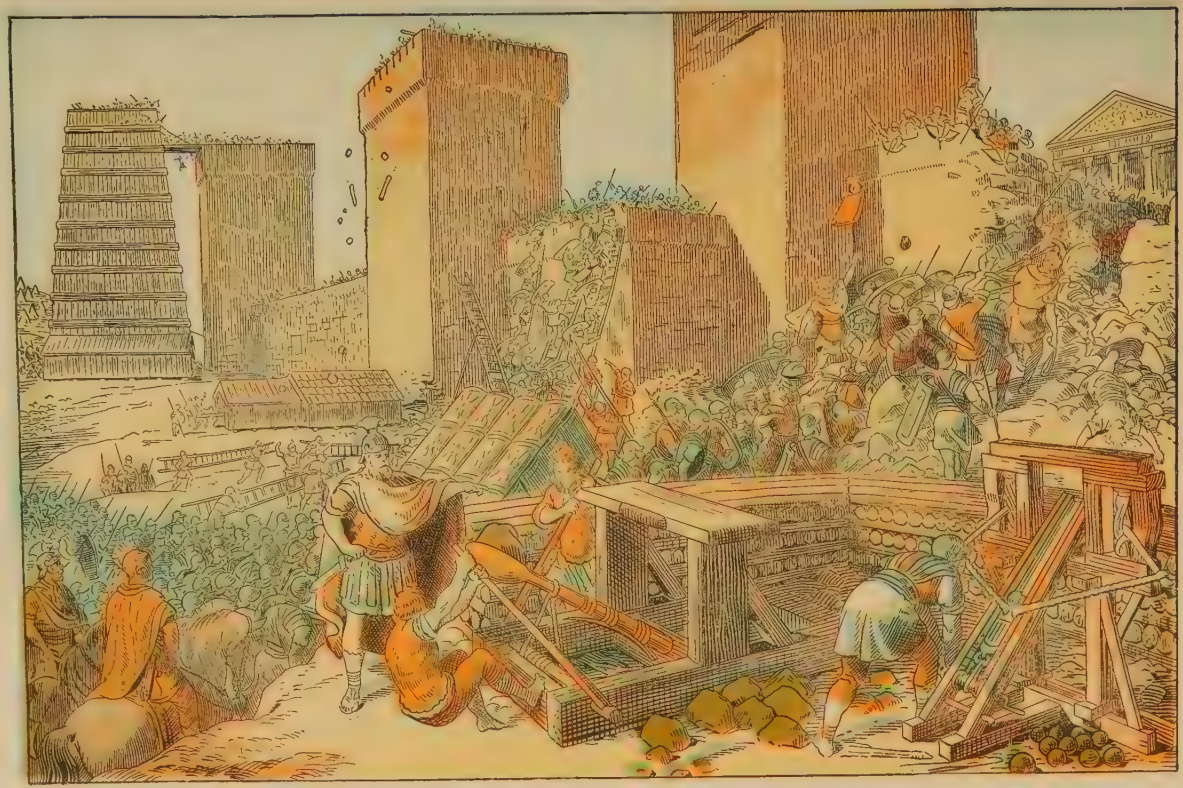
XI. THE ROMAN BATTLESHIPS

346. *a.* The *battleships* or *galleys*, **nāvēs longae** (III. 9), of Caesar's time were propelled mainly by oars; they had only one mast, and generally one large sail (Fig. 146). There were usually three rows or banks of oars, hence the name *trireme*, **nāvis trirēmis** (C. II. 6) or **trirēmis** (C. III. 101), but sometimes vessels with two banks of oars were used, *bireme*, **birēmis** (C. III. 40), and even five banks, *quinquereme*, **quīnquerēmis** (C. III. 101). The rowers kept time to the sound of a horn or click of a hammer.

b. The *rudders*, **gubernācula**, were not like those of to-day, but consisted of two large paddles thrust down into the sea, one on each side of the stern (Fig. 146); they were controlled by the *steersman*, **gubernātor** (III. 9). The anchor was like those of our own time.

c. At the prow, near the water line, was the ship's *beak*, **rōstrum** (III. 13), consisting of one or more sharp metal-

STORMING OF A BESIEGED CITY



pointed beams projecting in front, for use in ramming a hostile ship (Figures 24, 146). When the galleys were not in use they might be drawn up on the shore (IV. 29).

d. Before the galley went into action the sail was rolled up and the mast taken down; a *tower*, **turris** (III. 14), was raised on the front part of the ship, from which missiles could be hurled over into a vessel near at hand; *grappling-hooks*, **ferreae manūs** (lit. *iron hands;* C. II. 6), were provided, by which the opposing ship might be seized, and a movable bridge that could be thrown across in boarding.

e. For the carrying of his troops Caesar used *transports*, **onerāriae nāvēs** (IV. 22), which were broader and slower than the galleys (Fig. 202, in the Vocabulary); these were accompanied by galleys as escort (V. 8).

f. The admiral's ship, or flag-ship, was distinguished by a red *banner*, **vēxillum**, resembling that used by the general on land (*324, b*, 3).

347. The naval tactics of the Romans consisted mainly in either propelling a vessel with great force against a rival and crushing the side by ramming, or in catching hold of the hostile craft with grappling-hooks, pulling alongside, springing over on it, and settling the conflict with a hand-to-hand fight (Plate XI). In the sea-fight with the Venetans, who had only sailing vessels, the Roman sailors crippled the enemy's ships by cutting down the sail yards; the legionaries on the galleys then boarded the Venetan ships and despatched the crews (III. 13–15).

Galleys were used on the Mediterranean until the beginning of the nineteenth century.

XII. DRESS AND EQUIPMENT OF THE GAULS AND GERMANS

348. The Gauls wore trousers, **brācae**, which the Romans considered barbaric. The Gallic military *cloak*, **sagulum** (V. 42), was apparently smaller than that of the Roman soldiers.

Figure 190. — Gallic sword and sheath.

Found at Alesia. The handle has rusted away.

349. The Gallic infantry were protected by large oblong or oval shields, of wood or metal (called by Caesar, **scūta**, I. 25; Figures 19, 48, and 131), and by helmets of metal on which sometimes horns, and even wheels, appeared (Figures 46 and 131).

The offensive weapons of the Gauls were a long sword (Figures 39 and 190), and several types of missile for throwing (Figures 40, 43), as *javelins*, **gaesa** (III. 4), *spears*, **matarae** (I. 26), and *darts*, **trāgulae** (I. 26), or **verūta** (V. 44).

350. The Gallic standard, in many cases at least, was an image of a boar mounted on a pole (Figures 30, 42).

Signals in Gallic armies were given on a curved *war-trumpet*, **carnyx**, which terminated in the head of an animal or serpent (Figures 19, 151).

351. The clothing of the Germans was largely of skins (IV. 1), but the more advanced wore trousers, like the Gauls, and confined their long hair in a kind of knot (Fig. 66).

The principal weapons of the Germans were a shield and spear, and a long sword with a single edge (Fig. 67).

EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION

Forty Exercises reprinted, by permission, from *Latin Composition,* by Bernard M. Allen and John L. Phillips, of Phillips Academy, Andover, Massachusetts.

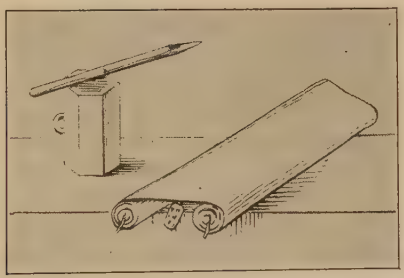


Figure 191. — Roman inkstand, reed pen, and book partly unrolled, with title on a small tag attached at the end. From an ancient wall painting.

POINTS TO BE NOTED IN WRITING LATIN

ORDER OF WORDS IN LATIN

352. Normal Order. *a.* When the emphasis is evenly distributed in a Latin sentence, the Subject comes first, the Predicate last, and the Modifiers of the Predicate precede the Verb in this order: Indirect Object, Direct Object, Adverb or Adverbial Phrase; as, **Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit,** *he took upon himself the misson of envoy to the states* (I. 3).

b. Genitives, Adjectives, Possessive Pronouns, and Ordinal Numerals when unemphatic follow their Nouns; as **glōriā bellī,** *reputation for war* (I. 2); **cupiditāte rēgnī,** *by desire of kingly power* (I. 9); **locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs,** *open and exceedingly productive country* (I. 10); **fīliam suam,** *his daughter* (I. 3); **diē quārtō,** *on the fourth day* (I. 26).

c. The Demonstrative Pronouns **hīc, iste, ille, is,** the Intensive **ipse,** and Adjectives indicating quantity or position when unemphatic precede their Nouns; as, **Hīs rēbus,** *by these conditions* (I. 3); **ipse imperātor,** *the general himself* (I. 40); **trēs populōs,** *three peoples* (I. 3); **magnum numerum,** *a great number* (I. 4); **extrēmum oppidum,** *the furthest town* (I. 6); **superiōre aciē,** *the upper line* (I. 24).

353. Order according to Emphasis. *a.* For the sake of emphasis the Normal Order of words in the sentence may be reversed, the Subject being placed last; as, **Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx,** *Among the Helvetians Orgetorix was far the highest in rank, and wealthiest* (I. 2).

b. Genitives, Adjectives, Possessive Pronouns, and Ordinal Numerals when emphatic precede their Nouns; as, **rēgnī cupiditāte,** *by desire of kingly power* (I. 2); **inimīcō animō,** *of hostile disposition* (I. 7); **decima legiō,** *the tenth legion* (I. 41).

c. When emphatic, the Demonstratives **hīc, iste, ille, is,** the Intensive **ipse** and Adjectives indicating quantity or position follow their nouns; as, **in īnsulā ipsā,** *in the island itself* (V. 12); **Galliae tōtīus,** *of entire Gaul* (I. 31); **partēs trēs,** *three parts* (I. 1); **locīs superiōribus,** *the higher places* (I. 10).

d. For the sake of emphasis words belonging together in construction are often separated; as, **aliud iter habērent nūllum,** *they had*

no other way (I. 7); **magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō**, *was a great hindrance* (I. 25).

e. An important word in a clause may be made emphatic by placing it before the conjunction introducing the clause; as **Diū cum esset pugnātum**, *When the fighting had continued a long time* (I. 26).

THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

354. In writing Latin the Sequence of Tenses should be particularly noted when a Subjunctive is required in a Dependent Clause. For convenience of reference the statement of the grammar (*177, a*) is here supplemented by a tabular outline:

PRIMARY SEQUENCE

rogat **rogābit** **rogāverit**	**quid faciam** (incomplete action)	*He asks, is asking* *He will ask* *He will have asked*	*what I am doing.*
rogat **rogābit** **rogāverit**	**quid fēcerim** (completed action)	*He asks, is asking* *He will ask* *He will have asked*	*what I did, or have done.*

SECONDARY SEQUENCE

rogābat **rogāvit** **rogāverat**	**quid facerem** (incomplete action)	*He asked, was asking* *He asked* *He had asked*	*what I was doing.*
rogābat **rogāvit** **rogāverat**	**quid fēcissem** (completed action)	*He asked, was asking* *He asked* *He had asked*	*what I had done.*

TABLE ILLUSTRATING SEQUENCE OF TENSES

	Main Verb	Followed by Subjunctive	
		Referring to the Same or Later Time	Referring to Previous Time
Primary Tenses	Present Future Future Perfect	Present	Perfect
Secondary Tenses	Imperfect Perfect Pluperfect	Imperfect	Pluperfect

WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

355. Purpose in Latin may be expressed in five ways:

By the use of **ut** with the Subjunctive (*196, a*);

By the use of a Relative with the Subjunctive (*193, a*);

By **ad** with the Accusative of the Gerund or the Gerundive Construction (*230*, 3);

By **causā** with the Genitive of the Gerund or the Gerundive Construction (*230*, 1);

By the Supine in **-um** (*231, a* and *b*).

"MAY," "MIGHT," AND "MUST," "OUGHT" IN LATIN

356. *a.* "May" and "might" often appear in clauses expressing Purpose, which are translated into Latin by **ut** with the Subjunctive; as, "in order that they might be more ready," **ut parātiōrēs essent** (I. 5). *196, a.*

b. "May" and "might" may also express Permission and be best translated by **licet** with the Dative of the Person and the Infinitive; as, "We may discuss with him," **nōbīs cum eō agere licet**, lit. 'it is permitted to us,' etc. *73, b*, and *222, a.*

357. *a.* "Must" implies Necessity, and is translated by the Passive Periphrastic conjugation (*73, e*, and *229, c*), or by **necesse est** with the Infinitive, or Infinitive with Subject-Accusative, the Infinitive with **necesse est** being the Subject of **est**; as, 'as was bound to happen,' **quod necesse erat accidere**, lit. 'which was necessary to happen,' **quod accidere** being the subject of **erat** (IV. 29).

b. "Ought," implying Obligation or Propriety, is translated either by the Passive Periphrastic conjugation (*73, e*, and *229, c*), by **oportet** and the Present Infinitive with Subject Accusative (*73, a*), or by **dēbeō** with a Present Infinitive; since "ought" is a defective verb, past time is expressed in English by the Past Infinitive with "ought," while in Latin past time is expressed by the Principal Verb and only the Present Infinitive is used. Thus:

PRESENT TIME	
"They ought to fight bravely"	**fortiter pugnāre dēbent** **eōs fortiter pugnāre oportet** **eīs fortiter pugnandum est**
PAST TIME	
"He ought to have sent hostages"	**obsidēs mittere dēbuit** **eum obsidēs mittere oportuit** **obsidēs eī mittendī erant**

LESSON I

PRONOUNS

Personal. *39, a* and *b*; *87, a* and *b*; *155, 156.* B. 242; A. 295; H. 500.
Demonstrative and Intensive. *42–45, 46; 160–162*; B. 246–249; A. 296–298; H. 505–507.
Reflexive. *40, a* and *b*; *158, a* and *b*; *159.* B. 244; A. 299, and 300, 1, 2; H. 502–504.

Book I. 1, 2. 1. These often carry on war with them 2. That river separates all these from the Belgians. 3. We call you Gauls. 4. They call themselves Celts. 5. The Helvetians carry on war with the Germans, and fight in their territory. 6. They all differ from one another. 7. The Belgians inhabit this part of Gaul, and call themselves the bravest of all. 8. Their boundaries are narrow in proportion to the number of men.

LESSON II

PRONOUNS — *Continued*

Relative. *47; 163, a* and *b*. B. 250, 251; A. 304–306, and 308, *a*; H. 510.
Possessive. *41; 157, a–c, 158, c.* B. 243; A. 302, *a, c, d, e*; H. 501.

Book I. 3, 4. 1. Casticus had been called our friend. 2. He will seize the royal power in his own state. 3. Diviciacus, who held the leadership, was a brother of Dumnorix. 4. They will establish peace with those states which are nearest. 5. They were influenced by his speech, and gave a pledge to one another. 6. His father held the royal power for many years. 7. He will take all his clients with him to the trial. 8. Dumnorix, to whom he gave his daughter in marriage, was very powerful. 9. You attempted the same thing in your state.

LESSON III

PRONOUNS — *Continued*

Interrogative. *48, a* and *b*. B. 90; A. 148, 152; H. 511.
Indefinite. *49, a* and *b*; *168*. B. 252; A. 309–314; H. 512–515.
Direct Questions. *179, a*. B. 162; A. 330–333; H. 378.
Ablative of Agent and Means. *126, a*; *131, a, b,* and *c*. B. 216; A. 405; H. 468, and 1.

Book I. 5, 6. 1. Were all the towns and villages burned by the Helvetians? 2. Certain[1] of the Rauraci adopted the same plan, and started out with them. 3. If there is any road by which we can[2] go from home, we will burn all our towns and villages. 4. What did they try to do when[3] they went out from home? 5. They cannot persuade their neighbor, can they, to attempt to do this? 6. They permitted them to go through their territory.

[1] *certain;* **quīdam** and numerals take **ex** with the Ablative instead of the Partitive Genitive. *97, d.*
[2] *can;* note mood in text. *194, a.*
[3] *when;* use **ubi**. Note construction in text.

LESSON IV

REVIEW

Book I. 7, 8. Lake Geneva empties into the Rhone, which is a river in Gaul between the (country of the) Sequanians[1] and the (country of the) Allobroges. Caesar built a rampart ten feet high from this lake to the Jura mountains, which separate the (country of the) Helvetians from the (country of the) Sequanians. When this rampart was finished, he fortified redoubts; and after stationing[2] garrisons, he was able very easily to stop those who tried to cross over. The Helvetians were intending to march through the Province because they could not go by any other route; and so[3] they fastened many boats together, and made rafts by which they crossed the Rhone at its shallowest point.

[1] *282.* [2] *after stationing;* use Ablative Absolute. *144, a* and *b*.
[3] *and so,* **itaque**. *237, a*.

LESSON V

Indirect Questions. *204.* B. 300; A. 573, 574; H. 649, II.
Sequence of Tenses. *177, a,* and *354.* B. 267, 268; A. 482–484; H. 543–545.

Book I. 9, 10. 1. He does not understand why they are sending envoys. 2. He announced what[1] the Helvetians were planning. 3. They found out why he had enrolled two legions. 4. Did Caesar know whether Dumnorix was a friend of the Helvetians or not? 5. Caesar knew what[1] was being done by the Helvetians. 6. He does not know whether they obtained their request. 7. Can he find out why they led their legions out from winter quarters? 8. I asked him whether Caesar was passing the winter there, or had gone into Gaul.

[1] *what*, plural.

LESSON VI

Subjunctive of Purpose. *196, a, b,* and *193, a, b.* B. 282; A. 531; H. 568, 590.
Constructions of Place. *119, a, b,* and *120, a; 130, a* and *b; 145, a, b, c; 146.* B. 182, 228, 229, 232; A. 426, 427; H. 418, and 4, 419, 1, and 461, 462, 483, 484.

Book I. 11, 12. 1. The Aeduans, in order to defend themselves and their possessions, asked help of[1] Caesar. 2. They sent an army to keep off the attack of the enemy. 3. They had nothing left at home. 4. When the Tigurini had gone out from home, they sent Cassius's army under the yoke. 5. He will cross the river in order to be able to judge in which direction it flows. 6. Caesar inflicted a great disaster on this state, with the design of avenging[2] his personal wrongs. 7. He will send envoys to Rome to ask help.

[1] *ask of*, **petō**, with **ab** and Ablative. *116, b.*
[2] *with the design of avenging*; in Latin, *with this design that he might avenge.*

LESSON VII

REVIEW

Book I. 13. Caesar led his army across the Arar, so that he might follow up the forces of the Helvetians. His sudden arrival alarmed them, and they sent envoys to him to make peace, for[1] they could not understand how[2] he had crossed the river so quickly.[3] Divico was the leader of this embassy, and he asked Caesar where he wished the Helvetians to go. He inquired if Caesar remembered the former valor[4] of the Helvetians, and the destruction of the army which had crossed from the Roman Province[5] into their territory.

[1] *for*, **nam**. [2] *how*, **quem ad modum**. [3] *quickly*, **celeriter**.
[4] *valor;* note case after **reminiscor** in text.
[5] *province*, **prōvincia**.

LESSON VIII

Subjunctive of Result. *197, a* and *b*. B. 284; A. 537; H. 570.
Ablative of Means. *131, a*. B. 218; A. 409; H. 476.
Dative of Possession. *111*. B. 190; A. 373; H. 430.

Book I. 14, 15. 1. They boasted so insolently that Caesar could not put aside the memory of the injuries. 2. Caesar had less doubt because he remembered what the envoys had mentioned. 3. They will march in such a way that we cannot attack them. 4. By this battle he kept the enemy from foraging. 5. The gods had granted prosperity to them for so long that they were grieved at the change of circumstances. 6. The number of the enemy is so large that they cannot drive them back. 7. He stationed men to see in what direction the enemy were marching.

LESSON IX

Indirect Discourse: Simple Declarative Sentences. *212, d; 213, a* and *b; 214, a; 178.* B. 313, 314, 1, 2, and 317; A. 579–582, 584; H. 642, 644.

Partitive Genitive. *97, a, b, c,* and *d.* B. 201, 1, 2; A. 346, *a, c;* H. 440, 5, and 441–443.

Book I. 16, 17. 1. Caesar said that the grain in the fields was not ripe. 2. He knew that many of their chiefs had been called together to complain about the leadership of the Aeduans. 3. For this reason he thought Caesar would take away liberty from the Gauls.[1] 4. Day after day he declared that the Aeduans were not collecting the grain. 5. They have a large supply of grain, which they can use if Caesar undertakes[2] the war. 6. He said that he thought we knew with how great danger he had reported our plans.

[1] *Gauls;* note case in text.

[2] *undertakes;* what time is referred to?

LESSON X

REVIEW

Book I. 18. Caesar realized that Liscus referred to Dumnorix, and that these matters had been discussed very freely and boldly; but because Dumnorix was in charge of the cavalry and was utterly reckless,[1] he wished him to favor the Romans. After dismissing[2] the council he asked many questions,[3] and discovered that for several years Dumnorix had been enlarging his private property and had very great power both at home and among the Helvetians. Caesar knew that Dumnorix, by means of this power, could restore himself to his former position of influence, and that he had amassed so much[4] wealth that he entertained hopes of getting the royal power. He learned also that Dumnorix and his horsemen had started the flight of the cavalry a few days before.

[1] *utterly reckless;* in Latin, *of supreme recklessness.*

[2] *after dismissing;* use Ablative Absolute. *144, a* and *b.*

[3] *questions;* omit, and use neuter adjective as a noun.

[4] *so much,* **tantus.**

LESSON XI

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Complex Sentences. *214, a*; *218*; *158, a*; *354.* B. 314, 1 and 318; A. 580, and 585, *a*; H. 643.

Prepositions. *122, a*; *124, a*; *125, a.* B. 141, 142, 143; A. 220, *a*, *b*, *c*; H. 420, 2 and 3, and 490, 2.

Book I. 19, 20. 1. He knew that everything[1] which was said to him was true. 2. Caesar hoped not to hurt (that he should not hurt) the feelings of Diviciacus, if he should punish his brother. 3. We all know that Procillus was a man in whom[2] he had great confidence. 4. Diviciacus thought that Caesar would punish Dumnorix because he had led an army through the territory of the Sequanians. 5. He will order Diviciacus to be called to him, in order that he may tell him what he knows. 6. Caesar replied that he would tell what had been said in the council.

[1] *everything*; in Latin, *all things.*
[2] *in whom*; use the Dative.

LESSON XII

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

Ablative Absolute. *144, a* and *b.* B. 227; A. 419, 420; H. 489.

Book I. 21, 22. 1. Caesar, having sent ahead all his cavalry, ordered Labienus to climb to the summit of the mountain. 2. While our men were seizing this mountain, the Helvetians moved camp. 3. After seizing the mountain, Labienus did not begin battle, but waited for Caesar. 4. Caesar led his forces to the nearest hill, but did not make an attack on the enemy. 5. When they had pitched camp three miles from Caesar's camp, the enemy refrained from battle.

LESSON XIII

REVIEW

Book I. 23, 24. On the following day it was announced to the enemy that Caesar had changed his route and gone to Bibracte, which was the richest city of the Helvetians, to provide for grain. The Helvetians thought that he was withdrawing because he was frightened, and attacked him in the rear; but Caesar, after leading his forces to the nearest hill and drawing up his line of battle, stationed two legions on the top of the ridge, and collected the packs in[1] one place. The Helvetians, following with all their baggage, formed a phalanx close by[2] the line of battle of the Romans.

[1] *in;* in Latin, *into.* *124, a.* [2] *close by*, **sub**, with the Ablative.

LESSON XIV

Substantive Clauses with Verbs of *Commanding, Urging, Reminding, Persuading,* and *Permitting.* *199, a*; *200, b*; *223, a,* (1) and (4). B. 294, 295, 1, 2, and 296, 1; A. 563; H. 564, 565, 568.

Ablative of Accompaniment. *137, a, b,* and *c.* B. 222; A. 413; H. 473, and 474, 2, N. 1.

Book I. 25, 26. They threw away their shields, and fought with the enemy with swords. 2. Caesar ordered the soldiers to make an attack on the Helvetians with drawn swords. 3. Having noticed this, he bade the cavalry surround the enemy and renew the battle. 4. He urges them to retreat to the mountain with their baggage and carts. 5. We persuaded them not to help the soldiers with wagons or anything else. 6. They fought a long time near the baggage, and got possession of the camp and the horses.

LESSON XV

Substantive Clauses with Verbs of *Asking* and *Fearing*. *199, a*, and *202*. B. 295, 1, and 296, 2; A. 563, 564; H. 565, 567.

Book I. 27, 28. 1. Caesar demanded that they should await his [1] arrival in that place. 2. The Helvetians feared that Caesar would ask that they surrender their arms. 3. They begged Caesar not to regard them as enemies. 4. He will ask that envoys be sent to him. 5. He was afraid that the Germans might cross into the territory of the Helvetians. 6. Caesar asked the Helvetians to return to their own territory, so that the lands [2] might not be unoccupied. 7. They urge him to accept their surrender.[3] 8. They fear that they may not be able to conceal their flight.

[1] *his*, indirect reflexive. *158, a.* [2] *lands*, **agrī**.
[3] *accept their surrender;* note the text.

LESSON XVI

REVIEW

Book I, 29, 30. The soldiers found records in the camp showing [1] the number of Helvetians who could bear arms. These had gone out from home with all the women and children. Caesar ordered his men to make an enumeration of those who had returned home, and the total was about 120,000. The envoys of the Gauls, who had come to Caesar, feared that he would inflict punishment on their states, but nevertheless asked him not to take possession of all Gaul. This war had turned out to the advantage of Gaul, and they begged Caesar that they might be permitted to appoint a council, and to ask of him the things which they wished.[2] This request was granted, and they agreed together not to disclose anything except with Caesar's consent.

[1] *showing;* in Latin, *which showed.*
[2] *wished;* use Subjunctive, Subordinate Clause in implied Indirect Discourse. *214, b.*

LESSON XVII

Ablative of Separation or Source. *127, a, b,* and *c.* B. 214, 215; A. 400-402, and 403, 1; H. 461–465, 467.
Ablative of Comparison. *129, a* and *b.* B. 217; A. 406 and 407, *a*; H. 471.
Ablative of Degree of Difference. *140.* B. 223; A. 414; H. 479.

Book I. 31 (*first half*). 1. They asked back their hostages from the Sequanians, and sought aid of the Roman people. 2. The Germans are much fiercer than the Gauls,[1] and covet their lands. 3. Diviciacus fled from his state, and came to Rome many years before. 4. The Aeduans are less powerful in Gaul than the Sequanians, being weakened by great disasters. 5. We are working to induce[2] Diviciacus to give his children as hostages to the Germans. 6. About a thousand of the Germans crossed the Rhine, and contended in arms with the Aeduans and their dependents.

[1] *than the Gauls*; express in two ways. [2] *to induce, 196, a.*

LESSON XVIII

Substantive Clauses of Result. *203.* B. 297; A. 568, 569; H. 571.
Ablative of Manner. *136, a* and *b.* B. 220; A. 412; H. 473, 3.
Ablative of Accordance. *136, c.* B. 220, 3; A. 418, *a*; H. 475, 3.

Book I. 31 (*latter half*). 1. The result was that they could not longer endure his cruelty. 2. He will cause a place to be prepared for the Harudes. 3. He saw that the best part of entire Gaul would be occupied by Ariovistus. 4. All these things were done with the greatest injustice. 5. He says that they will not be able to drive the Germans from the Gallic territory. 6. The cruelty of Ariovistus caused them to seek another home. 7. It happened that a larger number of Germans crossed the Rhine.

LESSON XIX

REVIEW

Book I. 32, 33. The lot of the Sequanians was much more unhappy than (that) of the others, because the cruelty of Ariovistus had caused them to fear him in his absence, and they did not dare to seek aid from Caesar.

Therefore[1] when Caesar asked why they did not do what the others did, it happened that they made no answer,[2] but remained silent. Diviciacus finally told what the reason was. Caesar promised to put an end to the outrages of Ariovistus, and dismissed the council. The Roman Province was separated by the Rhone from the territory of the Sequanians, and Caesar thought it would be dangerous to the Roman people (for) the Germans to cross from their own boundaries into Gaul.

[1] *therefore*, **itaque**.
[2] *made no answer*; in Latin, *answered nothing*.

LESSON XX

Verbs of Hindering, Preventing, Doubting. *201, a, b,* and *c.* B. 295, 3, and 298; A. 558; H. 568, 8, and 595, 1, 2, and 596, 2.
Ablative of Time. *147, a* and *b.* B. 230, 231; A. 423; H. 486, 487.
Accusative of Extent. *118, a.* B. 181; A. 423, 425; H. 417.

Book I. 34, 35. 1. They could not be restrained from sending envoys to Caesar. 2. In three days he will advance many miles. 3. There was no doubt that these replies had been brought back to Caesar. 4. He talked[1] with him a large part of the day about very important matters. 5. Caesar demanded of him that he prevent a large number from being led across the Rhine. 6. This river was half a mile (five hundred paces) wide.[2]

[1] *talked*, **agō**.
[2] *36*, and *243, a* and *b*.

LESSON XXI

Dative with Special Verbs. *105.* B. 187, II; A. 367; H. 426.
Dative with Compounds. *107, a* and *b*. B. 187, III; A. 370; H. 429.

Book I. 36. 1. The Germans rule those whom they conquer, as they wish. 2. We do not prescribe to you how you shall pay the tax. 3. I shall not make war on their allies unjustly. 4. They could not be persuaded to return the hostages. 5. No one had resisted him without his own destruction. 6. They put him in command[1] of the conquered. 7. He ordered[2] them not to make the revenues less. 8. He will persuade them to do what he wishes. 9. They had been ordered[2] to do all these things.

[1] *put in command*, **praeficiō**.
[2] *ordered;* use **imperō** in one sentence, and **iubeō** in the other.

LESSON XXII

REVIEW

Book I. 37, 38. The Harudes, who had lately come into Gaul, could not be kept from laying waste the lands of the Aeduans. The latter resisted bravely for many days, and did not doubt that Caesar was hurrying by forced marches against the Swabians, commanded by Nasua,[1] in order to prevent them from crossing the Rhine. Caesar thought that he ought to advance as quickly as possible to seize Vesontio, and after getting ready a grain supply, he hastened to that town with all his forces. The town is almost surrounded by a river of great width, which touches the base of a mountain six hundred feet high. Caesar fortified this town with a very high wall, so that a great opportunity was given to prolong the war, and having stationed a garrison there, he advanced a three days' march toward Ariovistus.

[1] *commanded by Nasua;* in Latin, *whom Nasua commanded.*

LESSON XXIII

Gerund and Gerundive. *230.* B. 338, 339; A. 501–507; H. 623–631.
Supine. *231, 232.* B. 340; A. 509; H. 633.
Active Periphrastic Conjugation. *63.* B. 115; A. 193–195, and 498, *a*; H. 236, 531.
Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. *63, 73, e,* and *229, c.* B. 115, and 337, 8, *b*, 1; A. 193, 194, 196, and 500, 2; H. 237, and 621, 1, 2.
Dative of Agent. *110.* B. 189, 1; A. 374, *a*; H. 431.

Book I. 39. 1. One assigned one reason for departing, another another. 2. He remained in camp for the sake of avoiding suspicion. 3. Caesar intended to delay a few days near Vesontio. 4. Caesar sent some of his men to bring up the grain.[1] 5. We shall have to break camp in a few days. 6. He said that he was going to report this to Caesar. 7. Having sealed their wills, they remained in their tents to lament the common danger. 8. The Germans, with whom they were going to contend, had[2] incredible valor.

[1] *to bring up the grain*; write in five ways. *355.*
[2] *had*; in Latin, *were of.*

LESSON XXIV

MAY, MIGHT, MUST, OUGHT

May, Might. *356, a* and *b.* B. 327, 1; A. 565, N. 1, 2; H. 564, 2.
Must, Ought. *357, a* and *b.* B. 115, 270, 2, and 337, 8, *b*, 1; A. 194, 196, 486, *a*, and 500, 2; H. 237, 618, 2, and 621, 1, 2.

Book I. 40 (*first half*). 1. Caesar ought[1] to summon to the council the centurions of all ranks. 2. A centurion is not allowed to inquire by what plan he is being led. 3. Caesar said he did this in order that Ariovistus might not reject his friendship. 4. This he should not have said (= ought not to have said). 5. After learning their plans, you may stay in camp if you wish. 6. The Romans did not need to fear that these unarmed men would conquer them.[2]

[1] *ought*; write in three ways. *357, b.* [2] *them, 158, a.*

LESSON XXV

REVIEW

Book I. 40 (*latter half*). Caesar urged the Roman soldiers not to despair in regard to grain, which was then already ripe in the fields. He told them that they ought not to be disturbed by the narrow roads, and that they were not permitted to dictate to the commander concerning his duties. He desired to know as soon as possible whether the soldiers were going to be [1] obedient to his command or not, and so he ordered them to move camp on the next night. He had the greatest confidence in the tenth legion, and did not [2] doubt that they would follow [3] him,[4] and do what [5] had to be done.

[1] *were going to be*, etc., *63*, and *204*, (1). [2] *and . . . not*, **neque**.
[3] *follow*, *201*, *b*. [4] *him*, *158*, *a*.
[5] *what*; in Latin, = *those things which*.

LESSON XXVI

Temporal Clauses with *Ubi, Ut, Postquam, Simul atque*. *188*, *a*. B. 287, 1; A. 543; H. 602.

Temporal Clauses with *Cum, Cum primum*. *185*, *a*, *b*, *c*. B. 288, 1, and 289; A. 545–547; H. 600, 601.

Ablative with Certain Deponents. *131*, *c*. B. 218, 1; A. 410; H. 477.

Book I. 41, 42. 1. When Caesar had delivered this speech, the military tribunes thanked him. 2. As soon as Ariovistus learned of Caesar's arrival, he promised many things of his own accord. 3. After getting possession of the horses, he put on them his bravest soldiers. 4. When he saw that Ariovistus wished a conference, he decided not to use the Gallic horsemen. 5. As soon as they came, they said that the enemy's forces were twenty miles away.

LESSON XXVII

Temporal Clauses with *Prius quam*. *189, a* and *b*. B. 291, 292; A. 551; H. 605.

Temporal Clauses with *Dum* and *Quoad*. *190, a, b,* and *c*. B. 293; A. 553–556; H. 603, 604, 1.

Ablative of Specification. *142, a* and *b*. B. 226; A. 418; H. 480.

Ablative of Cause. *135, a* and *b*. B. 219; A. 404; H. 475.

Book I. 43. 1. Caesar stationed the legion two hundred paces from the mound, before he came to the conference. 2. While he was making war on their allies, a part of the Germans crossed the Rhine. 3. The Aeduans had held the leadership before Ariovistus came into Gaul. 4. They had been able to secure these gifts through his kindness. 5. They did not send back the hostages until[1] he demanded them. 6. They were his allies, and for this reason he made these demands. 7. He waited[2] until they should seek our friendship.

[1] *until*, *190, b*. [2] *wait*, **exspectō**.

LESSON XXVIII

REVIEW

Book I. 44 (*first half*). After Ariovistus was summoned by the Gauls, he crossed the Rhine, and took possession of the settlements which the Gauls had granted him. When they made war upon him, they were routed in one battle, and after being defeated, paid tribute and enjoyed peace. While this was going on, Caesar was marching to attack Ariovistus, and wished to come into Gaul before he[1] should impose tribute on all the states. As soon as he came there, he pitched camp, and waited[2] until Ariovistus should reply to his demands. The latter[3] was ready to fight if Caesar wished to, but Caesar made objections about the tribute, which up to this time had been paid willingly by the Gauls.

[1] *he*, **ille**. [2] *wait*, **exspectō**. [3] *the latter*, here **ille**.

LESSON XXIX

Causal Clauses with *Quod, Quia, Quoniam.* *183, a* and *b.* B. 286, 1; A. 540; H. 588.
Causal Clauses with *Cum.* *184, a* and *b.* B. 286, 2; A. 549; H. 598.
Dative with Adjectives. *108, a* and *b.* B. 192; A. 383–385; H. 434.

Book I. 44 (*latter half*). 1. He withdrew his army into those regions, because they were nearest the province (of) Gaul. 2. Since the Aeduans had been called brothers by the senate, they ought to have enjoyed the assistance of the Romans. 3. Ariovistus complained because we had made an attack on his territories. 4. The friendship of the Roman people was pleasing to the Aeduans, since they did not wish to be overwhelmed. 5. Since he has withdrawn from Gaul, we shall consider him as a friend, and not as an enemy.

LESSON XXX

Adversative or Concessive Clauses. *187*, and *191, a* and *b.* B. 308, and 309, 2, 3; A. 527, 549; H. 585, 586, 598.
Genitive with Adjectives. *102.* B. 204, 1; A. 349, *a*; H. 450, 451.

Book I. 45, 46. 1. Although Fabius conquered the Avernians, he did not reduce them to a province. 2. Since the horsemen were hurling weapons against our men, Caesar stopped speaking.[1] 3. Although the soldiers were eager for the battle, Caesar ordered them not to make an attack. 4. Even if Gaul is free, still it cannot use its own laws. 5. When this had been announced to Caesar, he ordered his men to return to camp. 6. Although they are ignorant of the custom of the Roman people, he will not pardon them.

[1] *stopped speaking;* note the expression in the text.

LESSON XXXI

REVIEW

Book I. 47. Ariovistus sent a messenger to Caesar, to ask that he should a second time appoint a day for a conference. Although the matters which they had begun to discuss the day before had not been finished, Caesar was unwilling to go himself, or to send envoys and expose them to so great danger. However,[1] because he desired to know what Ariovistus would say (was going to say),[2] it seemed best to him to send Valerius Procillus and Marcus Mettius. When they had come to Ariovistus in[3] camp, and were attempting to speak, he called out that they were spies, and threw them into chains. Caesar ought not to have sent these men to Ariovistus, since there was no reason for a conference, and he knew that the danger to[4] them would be great.

[1] *however*, **autem**, the second word of its clause. *236*, *a* and *b*.
[2] *would say*, *63*.
[3] *in*, **in** with accusative. *124*, *a*.
[4] *to*; in Latin, *of*.

LESSON XXXII

Subjunctive of Characteristic. *194*, *a*. B. 283, 1, 2; A. 535, *a*, *b*; H. 591, 1, 2, 4, 5.
Ablative of Description. *143*, *a* and *b*. B. 224; A. 415; H. 473, 2.
Genitive of Quality and Measure. *100*, *a* and *b*. B. 203; A. 345; H. 440, 3.

Book I. 48, 49. 1. A place about six hundred paces long was picked out, suitable for two legions. 2. The forces of Ariovistus are the only ones which can keep our troops from supplies. 3. The Germans were very swift and of great courage, and terrified our men. 4. There is no army in all Gaul that can overcome the forces of the Romans. 5. They were (men) of so great swiftness that they equaled the speed of the horses. 6. They were cut off from grain and supplies by a river two hundred feet in width.[1]

[1] *Two hundred feet in width*; express in two ways.

LESSON XXXIII

Exhortations, and Jussive Subjunctive. *180, a* and *b*. B. 273–275; A. 439; H. 559, 1, 2.

Commands and Prohibitions. *181, a* and *b*. B. 276, *b*; A. 450; H. 561, 1.

Wishes. *180, c* and *d*. B. 279; A. 441; H. 558.

Dative of Purpose; Two Datives. *112, a* and *b*. B. 191, 1, 2; A. 382; H. 425, 3, and 433.

Book I. 50, 51. 1. Let us lead out the troops from camp, and draw up our line of battle. 2. Would that we had not given them an opportunity for fighting! 3. Caesar left the auxiliaries as a protection for the smaller camp. 4. O that they would not deliver us into slavery! 5. Do not fight before the new moon, if you wish to conquer. 6. Let him not use the auxiliaries for a show. 7. Would that it were not ordained that the Germains should conquer!

LESSON XXXIV

Conditions. *205–209*. B. 301–304, 1; A. 515–517; H. 574–579.

Book I. 52. 1. If the enemy should suddenly make an attack on our men, they would not be able to hurl their javelins. 2. They would have sent the lieutenant to our assistance, if they had noticed this. 3. If Caesar were in command of the troops, they would not be in difficulty. 4. I shall not begin battle on the left wing, unless I see that that part of the line is the strongest. 5. They said that if they leaped upon the enemy from above, they would put them to flight. 6. Do not throw your javelins against the enemy, unless they make an attack upon you. 7. Had he not put a lieutenant in charge of our men, they would have been routed.

LESSON XXXV

REVIEW

Book I. 53, 54. When the battle had been renewed, the enemy were put to flight, and fled to the river. A few, who trusted in their strength, swam across. There were some who crossed over in boats which they found, but the rest were put to death by our cavalry. Ariovistus himself would have been killed, if he had not found a skiff fastened to the shore, and sought safety in it.

While he was following the enemy, Caesar fell in with Valerius Procillus, whom the guards were dragging along. Having rescued him, Caesar said: "I should have little pleasure in this victory, if you were now in the hands of the enemy. Would that the other envoys, whom I sent to Ariovistus, had also been restored to me! Let us hope that they may be found and brought back."

LESSON XXXVI

REVIEW

Causal and Concessive Clauses (Lessons XXIX and XXX).

Book IV: 27, 28. As soon as the hostages, whom the enemy sent to Caesar, did what he had ordered, he pardoned them, and begged them not to make war on him without good cause. Although he pardoned their ignorance, he complained because they had thrown Commius the Atrebatian into chains, and had not sent him back. Since part of the hostages which they promised were at a distance, he ordered them to be sent to the continent in a few days. The ships in which the cavalry were carried approached Britain, but could not hold their course because a great storm suddenly came up and carried them back to the continent.

LESSON XXXVII

REVIEW

Clauses of Result, and Substantive Clauses of Result (Lessons VIII and XVIII).

Book IV. 29–31. 1. It happened that the tides were very high on that night because there was a full moon. 2. He caused those things which were of use to be brought from the continent. 3. We must keep them from supplies, and prolong the affair until winter. 4. The tide was so[1] high that it filled the ships which had been drawn up on dry land. 5. Although they were going to pass the winter in Gaul, they had made no provision for grain. 6. The ships are so damaged by the storm that they cannot be repaired. 7. He brought it about that no one afterwards crossed to Britain to bring on war. 8. It happened that everything was lacking which was useful for carrying on war.

[1] *so*, **tam.**

LESSON XXXVIII

REVIEW

Exhortations, Commands, Prohibitions and Wishes (Lesson XXXIII).

Book IV. 32, 33. 1. Let part of the legion march in that direction in which the dust was seen. 2. Would that Caesar had suspected the plans of the barbarians, and attacked them when their arms were laid aside! 3. It was reported to the general that the cohorts which were on guard had started in the same direction. 4. If the enemy attack you, throw your weapons quickly; let the cavalry dismount and fight on foot. 5. Do not be disturbed by the noise of the chariots, for if hard pressed, you will have an easy retreat. 6. The Britons fight with chariots, and daily practice makes them able to do many things with their horses at full speed.

LESSON XXXIX

REVIEW

Purpose Clauses, and Substantive Clauses after Certain Verbs (Lessons VI, XIV, and XV).

Book IV. 34, 35. 1. Caesar will keep his men in camp that they may not be attacked by the enemy. 2. The barbarians sent messengers in all directions to tell what had happened. 3. Storms followed for so many days[1] that the enemy were kept from a battle. 4. Caesar feared that the same thing would happen. 5. They urged the rest, who were in the fields, to depart. 6. Disturbed by the strange sort of fighting, they begged Caesar to send aid to them. 7. They gathered a large number of cavalry and infantry, in order that they might the more easily[2] drive the Romans from the camp. 8. He ordered them to burn the buildings far and near, and return to camp. 9. Having killed many, they prevented the rest from escaping.[3]

[1] *days*, *118*, *a*. [2] *easily*, **facile**. [3] *from escaping*, *201*, *a*, and *223*, *a*, (3).

LESSON XL

REVIEW

Conditions (Lesson XXXIV).

Book IV. 36–38. If Caesar had not sailed on that night, the hostages which he ordered would have been brought to him, but the equinox was near, and he thought if he hastened he would arrive safely at the continent. After finding a suitable place, he disembarked some three hundred men, who started for the camp, but were surrounded by the Morini, who said, "Lay down your arms if you do not wish to be killed. If Caesar and his cavalry were here, they would defend you, but you cannot withstand our attack and will be all killed unless he comes to your assistance." But after those who said this saw that our cavalry were coming, they quickly turned and fled.

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS[1]

PAGE

1. Wolf-holes along Caesar's lines before Alesia, in 52 B.C. L. Gurlitt, *Anschauungstafeln zu Caesar*,[2] II ix
2. Wolf-holes along the German lines near Ypres, Belgium, in 1914. Photograph, Press Illustrating Company, New York . . x
3. Roman soldier's trenching tool, spade, found in the remains of the Roman camp at the Saalburg, near Homburg. R. Forrer, *Reallexikon der prähistorischen, klassischen und frühchristlichen Altertümer*, Taf. 182 xi
4. Trenching tool, spade, supplied with the marching equipment of the U. S. army and navy xii
5. "One-man tank," used "somewhere in France." Photograph . xiii
6. Roman soldier in heavy marching order, impeditus.[3] S. Cybulski, *Tabulae*,[2] VI xiv
7. United States sailor in heavy marching-order equipment . . xv
8. French soldier hurling a hand grenade. Photograph, Underwood and Underwood, New York xvi
9. French bayonet, with scabbard. Type of 1915. Photograph, G. R. S.[4] xvii
10. French helmet, type of 1915. Photograph, G. R. S. . . xvii
11. Gallic bronze helmets, perhaps of the second century B.C. British Museum. Photograph, kindly furnished by Sir Hercules Read xviii

[1] Stereopticon slides of all illustrations and maps in this book can be supplied to teachers and schools at cost; inquiry should be addressed to the *Latin Department, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Michigan.*

[2] The three series of wall plates, L. Gurlitt's *Anschauungstafeln zu Caesar*, S. Cybulski's *Tabulae quibus antiquitates Graecae et Romanae illustrantur*, and Ad. Lehmann's *Kulturgeschichtliche Bilder* (cf. Fig. 117), are imported by G. E. Stechert and Company, New York, and A. J. Nystrom and Company, Chicago.

[3] The designs reproduced in the illustrations from Cybulski's *Tabulae* were prepared by Dr. Martin Fickelscherer. They are based chiefly upon evidence drawn from monuments later than Caesar's time, yet in most respects the designs are correct for the military equipment of Caesar's army.

[4] The photographs designated "G. R. S." were made by Mr. George R. Swain.

PAGE

12. Roman legionary's helmet, galea. S. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, V . xix
13. Italian barb-wire cutter. Photograph, Medem Photo Service . xxi
14. Leaden slingshot, inscribed. *Ephemeris Epigraphica*, vol. 6 (1885), pl. 3, no. 16 xxiii
15. Highlanders holding to stirrups of Scots Greys charging at St. Quentin. From a colored plate, published in 1915. Courtesy of *Collier's Weekly* xxv
16. Gold coin, ascribed to the Ambarri. H. de la Tour, *Atlas de monnaies gauloises* (Paris, 1895), pl. 16, no. 5315 . . xxix
17. Gold coin of the Mediomatrici. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 36, no. 8933 xxix
18. Arvernian gold coin. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 12, no. 3775 . . xxx
19. Altar, of marble, discovered at Nîmes. Espérandieu, *Bas-reliefs de la Gaule romaine*, vol. 1, no. 431 xxx
20. Bronze coin attributed to the Leuci or Treverans. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 37, no. 9248 xxxi
21. Gold coin of Tasciovanus. J. Evans, *Coins of the Ancient Britons*, pl. 8, no. 11; De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 43 . . . xxxi
22. Silver coin of Tasciovanus. J. Evans, *Coins of the Ancient Britons*, pl. 6, no. 6; De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 43 . . . xxxii
23. Bronze coin of Cunobelinus. J. Evans, *Coins*, pl. 12, no. 1; De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 44 xxxii
24. Bronze coin of Lugdunum. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 7, no. 4669 xxxii
25. Gold coin, aureus, of Julius Caesar: Pietas and trophy. Engraved from a cast of the original in the British Museum[1] xxxvi
26. Bronze ball believed to contain the ashes of Julius Caesar; on the Vatican obelisk, Rome, before it was moved to the front of St. Peter's, in 1586. From an engraving published by Gamucci, *Antichità di Roma* (1569) xxxix
27. Modern road in the Jura Mountains. Photograph, G. R. S. . 3
28. Long summit of the Jura range. Photograph, G. R. S. . . 6
29. Helvetian yoke, of wood, found in 1910. J. Déchelette, *Manuel d'archéologie préhistorique celtique et gallo-romaine*, II. 3 (1914), fig. 509 (p. 1194) 8
30. Gallic standard-bearer. From a plate of H. Rheinhard . . 12
31. Ancient Gallic mill. G. and A. de Mortillet, *Musée préhistorique*, 2d edit. (1903), pl. 66, no. 717 14

[1] Casts of Roman coins engraved for this book were kindly furnished by the British Museum, through the courtesy of Mr. G. F. Hill.

PAGE

32. Mill-race Gorge, Pas de l'Écluse, looking down the Rhone. Photograph, G. R. S. 17
33. Roman legionary soldier. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, VI . . . 19
34. Section of the fortifications along the Rhone. Napoleon III, *Atlas*, pl. 3 22
35. Lake Geneva. Photograph 23
36. A road through the Alps. Photograph 26
37. The Saône at Trévoux, looking upstream. Photograph, G. R. S. 30
38. The Rhone below Geneva. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . 33
39. Gallic swords, now in the Museum of St. Germain, near Paris. Photograph, G. R. S. 36
40. Gallic spear heads and dart heads, of iron. Déchelette, *Manuel*, II. 3, fig. 478 (p. 1145) 40
41. Mount Beuvray. Photograph, G. R. S. 42
42. Silver coin, of Dumnorix. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 15, no. 5026 . 47
43. Helvetian spear. Déchelette, *Manuel*, II. 3, fig. 494 (p. 1171) . 49
44. Lance heads found at Alesia, now in the Museum of St. Germain. Photograph, G. R. S. 50
45. Typical ridge in France, like that seized by Labienus. Photograph, G. R. S. 54
46. Gallic helmets. Déchelette, *Manuel*, II. 3, fig. 484 (p. 1156) . 56
47. Site of the battle with the Helvetians. Photograph, G. R. S. . 59
48. Gallic shield, of wickerwork. Drawing by R. Suarez after Déchelette, *Manuel*, II. 3, fig. 493 (p. 1169) 60
49. Pike iron. Drawing by R. Suarez, from a cast in the collection of the University of Michigan; original in the Museum of St. Germain 61
50. Roman pike irons, found at Alesia, now in the Museum of St. Germain. Photograph, G. R. S. 63
51. Carts about a corral. Drawing by R. Suarez 64
52. Care of Roman wounded, relief on the column of Trajan, in Rome. From a plate of H. Rheinhard 65
53. Writing tablets. Ancient wall painting. *Museo Borbonico*, vol. I, pl. 12 69
54. Helvetian silver coin. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 38, no. 9355 . 71
55. Sequanian silver coin. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 16, no. 5351 . 73
56. View across the Rhine valley, from the site of Ariovistus's camp. Photograph, G. R. S. 76
57. Pottery found at Bibracte, now in the Museum of St. Germain. Photograph, G. R. S. 83

		PAGE
58	Aeduan gold coin. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl 15, no. 4837	86
59.	The Doubs (Dubis) below Besançon (Vesontio). Photograph, G. R. S.	89
60.	The loop of the Dubis (Doubs) at Vesontio. C. Stoffel, *Guerre de César et d'Arioviste*, p. 48	91
61.	The Doubs River twenty-two miles above Besançon (Vesontio). Photograph, G. R. S.	94
62.	Centurion, with his decorations. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, VII	96
63.	Gold coin of the Leuci. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 37, no. 9018	100
64.	Modern canal in the plain of Alsace, near Strassburg. Photograph, G. R. S.	103
65.	Hill of Plettig. Photograph, G. R. S.	106
66.	The Conference between Caesar and Ariovistus. Gurlitt, *Anschauungstafeln*, III	113
67.	Ancient German sword with its wooden scabbard. Déchelette, *Manuel*, II. 3, fig. 469 (p. 1133)	124
68.	Scene in Belgium: the Meuse, below Namur. Photograph, G. R. S.	131
69.	Bronze coin of the Remi. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl 32, no. 8040	132
70.	Gold coin of the Bellovaci. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 32, no. 7878	135
71.	Bronze coin of the Ambiani. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 33, no. 8472	137
72.	View across the Aisne near where Caesar's camp was. Photograph, G. R. S.	139
73.	Slinger, supplied with pebbles. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, VI	142
74.	View toward the Miette from the site of Caesar's camp. Photograph, G. R. S.	145
75.	View across the Aisne toward Pontavert. Photograph, G. R. S.	147
76.	Leaden slingshot, inscribed. *Ephemeris Epigraphica*, vol. 6, pl. 8, no. 6	148
77.	Bronze coin of the Suessiones. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 41, no. 7704	152
78.	Hill town in France, having a situation similar to that of Noviodunum. Photograph, G. R. S.	153
79.	A Nervian gold coin. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 35, no. 8755	156
80.	A characteristic bit of the country through which Caesar made his three-day march. Photograph, G. R. S.	157
81.	A Viromanduan bronze coin. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 34, no. 8570	158
82.	Hedges near the river Sambre. Photograph, G. R. S.	161
83.	View across the fields in the direction from which Caesar's baggage was coming. Photograph, G. R. S.	164
84.	Roman trumpet, tuba. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, V	165

PAGE

85. Roman helmet, with crest. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, V . . . 168
86. Open ground along the Sambre over which the Nervians advanced; looking toward the site of Caesar's camp, which is now in part covered by woods. Photograph, G. R. S. . 171
87. Typical hedges near the site of the battle at the Sambre. Photograph, G. R. S. 175
88. View on the Sambre, near the site of the battle. Photograph, G. R. S. 179
89. Bronze coin of the Atuatuci. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 36, no. 8885 182
90. Site of the stronghold at Namur. Photograph, G. R. S. . 183
91. Coin of the Coriosolites. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 22, no. 6654 . 188
92. The great St. Bernard Pass and the famous hospice. Photograph 191
93. Valley of the Dranse. Photograph, Earle M. Parker . . 193
94. View of the Loire River with the town of Decize. Photograph, G. R. S. 201
95. A tongue of land on the Venetan coast. Photograph, E. M. P. 206
96. A denarius struck by Decimus Brutus. Original, British Museum 211
97. Venellan gold coin. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 24, no. 6925 . 215
98. Roman cavalryman. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, VII 220
99. Bronze coin struck by Adiatunnus. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 11, no. 3605 222
100. Gold coin of the Morini. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 35, no. 8704 . 229
101. A typical landscape on the lower Rhine. Photograph, *Neue Photographische Gesellschaft*, Berlin 233
102. A Treveran gold coin. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 35, no. 8799 . 235
103. Falls of the Rhine at Schaffhausen. Photograph, *Neue Photographische Gesellschaft* 239
104. Along the Meuse below Namur. Photograph, G. R. S. . . 243
105. The slopes of the Rhine valley. Photograph, *Neue Photographische Gesellschaft* 247
106. The Moselle at Beilstein; ruins of the castle at the right. Photograph, *Neue Photographische Gesellschaft* . . . 251
107. Foot of chalk cliffs north of Dover, at low tide. Photograph, G. R. S. 261
108. St. Margaret's Bay, between Dover and the open shore to the northeast where Caesar landed. Photograph, G. R. S. . 267
109. Ancient British shield, of bronze, enameled. *British Museum Guide to the Antiquities of the Early Iron Age* (1905), pl. 1 269
110. Cliffs on the English coast, north of Dover. Photograph, G. R. S. 273

PAGE

111. Gold coin of Cunobelinus. J. Evans, *Coins of the Ancient Britons*, pl. 9, no. 3; De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 44 . . . 277
112. British war chariot. From a plate of H. Rheinhard . . 280
113. Gold coin of the Menapii. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 35, no. 8743 285
114. View across Belgium's fertile fields. Photograph, G. R. S. . 287
115. British gold coin. J. Evans, *Coins*, pl. D. 6; De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 41 298
116. British bronze helmet, found in the Thames at Waterloo Bridge, London. *British Museum Guide to the Antiquities of the Early Iron Age*, fig. 67 298
117. Scene in a Roman camp. Ad. Lehmann, *Kulturgeschichtliche Bilder* 303
118. Gold coin of the Eburones. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 36, no. 8859 314
119. Looking down into a depression in Belgium thought by some to be the valley where the ambuscade took place. Photograph, G. R. S. 317
120. Statue of Ambiorix, at Tongres. Photograph, G. R. S. . . 322
121. Gold coin of the Atrebatians. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 34, no. 8588 332
122. Bronze coin of the Carnutes. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 38, no. 7064 346
123. Sacred stones called Menhirs. Photograph, Earle M. Parker . 349
124. Gallic bracelets, of bronze. Déchelette, *Manuel*, fig. 517 (p. 1220) 352
125. Bronze-trimmed burial bucket, imported into Britain from Gaul. *British Museum Guide to the Antiquities of the Early Iron Age*, fig. 25 353
126. Coin of the Boians, struck east of the Rhine. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 39, no. 9419 357
127. Caribou with one horn. Provincial Museum at Victoria, B. C. Photograph, kindly loaned by Charles Shelden . . 360
128. Horns of a Moose. E. Thompson Seton, *Life Histories of Northern Animals*, vol. I 361
129. Low ground northeast of Bourges, ancient Avaricum. Photograph, G. R. S. 373
130. Section of Caesar's works at Avaricum. Napoleon III, *Atlas*, pl. 20 374
131. Vercingetorix viewing the burning of Avaricum. Gurlitt, *Anschauungstafeln*, IV 380
132. Gergovia, slope down toward White Rock. Photograph, G. R. S. 383
133. Gold coin of the Parisii. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 31, no. 7816 . 390
134. Coin of the Senones, bronze. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 30, no. 7467 391

PAGE

135 The hill of Alesia, seen from the southeast. Photograph, G. R. S. 397

136. A Roman soldier cutting timber. Daremberg et Saglio, *Dictionnaire des antiquités grecques et romaines*, fig. 6277, after an ancient relief 402

137. A "goad," stimulus. Daremberg et Saglio, *Dictionnaire*, fig. 6639 404

138. Barbed hooks found at Alesia, now in the Museum of St. Germain. Photograph, G. R. S. 404

139. Gold coin of the Aulerci Cenomani. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 23, no. 6829 405

140. Coin of Verica, or Virica, son of Commius. J. Evans, *Coins of the Ancient Britons*, pl. 2, no. 10; De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 42 407

141. Alise-Ste-Reine, on the site of Alesia, seen from the south. Photograph, G. R. S. 409

142. Statue of Vercingetorix, at Alesia. Photograph, G. R. S. . 415

143. A characteristic bit of the slope at Alesia. Photograph, G. R. S. 417

144. Heads and butts of lances found at Alesia, now in the Museum of St. Germain. Photograph, G. R. S. 420

145. Denarius with portrait of Vercingetorix. Original coin in the British Museum 424

146. Denarius, with a galley: Q. Nasidius. British Museum . . 427

147. Pompey, marble bust in the Jacobsen Museum, Copenhagen. Photograph, kindly furnished by the Director . . . 444

148. Cuirass of a legionary soldier. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, V . . 447

149. Banner, vexillum. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, V 449

150. Symbols of Victory. From an ancient relief. *Museo Borbonico*, vol. 3, pl. 58 461

151. Goddess of Victory bearing a Gallic war trumpet. Relief. Mazois, *Les ruines de Pompéi*, I, pl. 26 477

152. Ancient Roman calendar, of marble. Naples Museum. *Museo Borbonico*, vol. 2, pl. 44 584

153. Denarius, Aeneas fleeing from Troy; Caesar. British Museum 587

154. Roman boy, head of bronze statue in the Metropolitan Museum, New York. Photograph, kindly furnished by Miss Gisela M. A. Richter 588

155. Silver coin of Augustus, with civic crown. British Museum . 590

156. Marble trophy on the Capitoline hill, Rome. Photograph . 591

PAGE

157. Denarius with symbols of office of Pontifex Maximus; Caesar. British Museum 592
158. Denarius with Concordia; Caesar. British Museum . . 594
159. Aureus with symbols of victories over the Gauls; Caesar. British Museum 595
160. Denarius with portrait of Pompey. British Museum . . 596
161. Denarius, commemorating Gallic and Spanish victories; Caesar. British Museum 599
162. Denarius with portrait of Caesar. British Museum . . . 600
163. Denarius with temple of Clementia. British Museum . . 600
164. Denarius with elephant; Caesar. British Museum . . . 602
165. Gem with portrait of Caesar. From a photograph kindly furnished by the Imperial German Archaeological Institute in Rome 602
166. A case for books. Ancient wall painting. *Museo Borbonico*, vol. 1, pl. 12 603
167. Denarius commemorating the assassination of Caesar. British Museum 605
168. Denarius, Gallia conquered, personified. British Museum . 608
169. Silver coin of Massilia. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 3, no 791 . 611
170. Early British silver coin. J. Evans, *Coins of the Ancient Britons*, pl. E, no. 1; De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 41 . . 611
171. Africa, personified. Silver plate in the Louvre. A. Mau and F. W. Kelsey, *Pompeii: Its Life and Art*, 2d edit., fig. 187 614
172. Light-armed soldier in the Roman army. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, VI 617
173. Soldier's shoe. H. Lindenschmit, *Tracht und Bewaffnung des roemischen Heeres*, Taf. 10 621
174. Legionary's helmet, galea, without the crest. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, V 622
175. Roman oblong shield, scutum. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, V . . 622
176. Roman pike, restored. Vjesnik, vol. 12 (1912), p. 93 . . 623
177. Spanish sword, gladius, in scabbard, vagina. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, V 623
178. Roman dagger, pugio. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, V 624
179. Cavalryman's helmet, cassis. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, V . . 624
180. Denarius, with standards. British Museum 625
181. Horn, cornu. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, V 626
182. Modern shell trumpet with iron mouthpiece. From Boscoreale, near Pompeii. Collection of the University of Michigan . 626

PAGE

183. Scout, speculator. Daremberg et Saglio, *Dictionnaire*, fig. 5790, after an ancient relief 627
184. Roman trenching tool, spade, found in the remains of the Roman camp at the Saalburg. Forrer, *Reallexikon*, Taf. 182 628
185. View of a Roman camp. Gurlitt, *Anschauungstafeln*, I . . 629
186. Acies triplex. E. Kalinka, *Das roemische Kriegswesen in Cäsars gallischen Kämpfen* (1906), fig. 27 . . . 631
187. Roman standard-bearer. Cybulski, *Tabulae*, VII . . . 632
188. Wall hook, falx muralis, found in the remains of a Gallic wall at Besançon (Vesontio). Daremberg et Saglio, *Dictionnaire*, fig. 2873 634
189. Head of a catapult, restored. Museum of St. Germain. Photograph, kindly furnished by M. S. Reinach . . . 635
190. Gallic sword and scabbard, found at Alesia; the handle has rusted away. *Revue archéologique*, vol. 10 (1864), pl. 22 . 638
191. Roman inkstand, reed pen, and book. Ancient wall painting. *Museo Borbonico*, vol. 1, pl. 12 639

VOCABULARY PAGE

192. Silver coin of the Allobroges. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 7, no. 2879 9
193. Gold coin of the Ambiani. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 33, no. 8380 9
194. Arvernian gold coin. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 11, no. 3614 . 13
195. Electrum coin of the Bituriges. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 13, no. 4072 16
196. Silver coin of the Boians, struck in northern Italy. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 51, no. 9910 16
197. Bronze coin of the Carnutes. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 20, no. 6391 18
198. Fortuna, marble statue in Rome. Photograph . . . 49
199. Silver coin, "Three Gauls." De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 7, no. 4798 50
200. Bust of Jupiter, discovered at Pompeii. A. Mau and F. W. Kelsey, *Pompeii: Its Life and Art*, 2d edit., fig. 22 . . 64
201. Bronze coin of the Lexovii. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 28, no. 7156 66
202. Ancient transport. Relief at Pompeii. Photograph . . 74
203. Roman document, with seals, restored. A. Mau and F. W. Kelsey, *Pompeii: Its Life and Art*, 2d edit., fig. 275 . 78
204. Gold coin of the Parisii. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 31, no. 7782 . 82
205. Silver coin of the Pictones. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 13, no. 4446 87

VOCABULARY PAGE

206. Gold coin of the Redones. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 22, no. 6756 99
207. Silver coin of the Santones. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 13, no. 4520 103
208. Silver coin of the Segusiavi. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 7, no. 4622 105
209. View in the Vale of Tempe. Photograph 113
210. Gold coin of the Venelli. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 20, no. 6927 . 120
211. Viromanduan bronze coin. De la Tour, *Atlas*, pl. 34, no. 8577 123

VOCABULARY

In the preparation of this Vocabulary Meusel's *Lexicon Caesarianum* has been of greatest service; Lodge's *Vocabulary of High School Latin* has also been helpful. For the less obvious Latin etymologies Walde's *Lateinisches Etymologisches Wörterbuch* (second edition) has generally been followed; for the English derivatives, *The Century Dictionary* and *The New English Dictionary*.

For the Key to the English Pronunciation of Proper Names, and in other matters of English pronunciation, the Editor was indebted to Professor George Hempl.

ABBREVIATIONS

A list of Abbreviations is given on the following page.

ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES

After each Proper Name in the Vocabulary a Key to the English Pronunciation is given, thus:

Matrona, -ae, f., (Mat′ rọ-nạ)

The English long vowels (so called) have above them a macron or some mark indicative of quality; the short stressed vowels have no mark at all; the obscure unstressed vowels have a dot under them, thus:

ā as in 'f*a*te.'	**ẹ** as in 'hat*e*d.' *	**ọ** as in 'dem*o*crat.' *
a " " 'f*a*t.'	**é** " " 'h*e*r.'	**ū** " " 'us*e*.'
ạ " " 'id*ea*.' *	**ɪ** " " 'p*i*ne.'	**u** " " 'u*p*.'
ä " " 'ar*m*.'	**i** " " 'p*i*n.'	**ụ̄** " " 'sing*u*lar.' *
â " " 'all.'	**ị** " " 'un*i*ty.' *	**ụ** " " 'circ*u*s.' *
ē " " 'm*e*.'	**ō** " " 'n*o*.'	**Ū** " " 'r*u*de.'
e " " 'm*e*t.'	**o** " " 'n*o*t.'	**U** " " 'f*u*ll.'

The chief stress, or accent, is indicated by ′, the secondary by ″; but the secondary stress is not marked when separated from another stress by a single intervening unstressed syllable, for in that case one naturally puts it in the proper place.

* The obscure unstressed vowels are in effect very much alike, but they differ slightly according to the character of the adjoining consonants. They are most correctly sounded when one glides over them rapidly and naturally.

ABBREVIATIONS

References to the Gallic War are printed thus: I. 7 (Book I, chapter 7); to the Civil War, C. I. 7.

English Derivatives of Latin words are inserted at the end of the definitions, set off by a half-bracket, thus: [accuse.

* Implies that the form before which it stands is hypothetical.

abl. = *ablative.*
abs. = *absolute.*
acc. = *accusative.*
adj. = *adjective.*
adv. = *adverb, adverbial.*
C. = *Bellum Civile,* Caesar's Civil War.
causat. = *causative.*
chap. = *chapter.*
comp. = *comparative.*
conj. = *conjunction.*
dat. = *dative.*
decl. = *declension.*
def. = *defective.*
dem. = *demonstrative.*
dep. = *deponent.*
dim. = *diminutive.*
distrib. = *distributive.*
e.g. = *exempli gratia* = *for example.*
et al. = *et alibi* = *and elsewhere.*
et seq. = *et sequentia* = *and what follows.*
etc. = *et cetera* = *and so forth.*
excl. = *exclamation.*
f. = *feminine.*
freq. = *frequentative.*
fut. = *future.*
gen. = *genitive.*
i.e. = *id est* = *that is.*
imp. = *imperative.*
impers. = *impersonal.*
impf. = *imperfect.*
inch. = *inchoative.*
indecl. = *indeclinable.*
indef. = *indefinite.*
indic. = *indicative.*
inf. = *infinitive.*
intens. = *intensive.*
inter. = *interrogative.*
interj. = *interjection.*
intr. = *intransitive.*
irr. = *irregular.*
l., ll., = *line, lines.*
lit. = *literally.*
m. = *masculine.*
n., neut. = *neuter.*
N. = *note.*
nom. = *nominative.*
num. = *numeral.*
ord. = *ordinal.*
p., pp. = *page, pages.*
part. = *participle.*
pass. = *passive.*
patr. = *patronymic.*
pers. = *person, personal.*
pf. = *perfect.*
pl. = *plural.*
pos. = *positive.*
pred. = *predicate.*
prep. = *preposition.*
pres. = *present.*
pron. = *pronoun.*
reflex. = *reflexive.*
rel. = *relative.*
semi-dep. = *semi-deponent.*
sing. = *singular.*
subj. = *subjunctive.*
sup. = *superlative.*
trans. = *translate,* or *translation.*
v. = *verb.*
voc. = *vocative.*
1, 2, 3, 4 with verbs = 1st, 2d, 3d, or 4th conjugation.

VOCABULARY

A

A., with proper names, = *Aulus.*

a. d. = **ante diem.**

ā, ab, abs, prep. with abl., *from, away from, out of; at, on;* of agency, with the passive voice, *by, on the part of;* of time, *from, since, after.* **ab utrōque latere,** *on both sides.* **ā parvīs,** *from childhood* (vi. 21).

abditus, -a, -um, [part. of **abdō**], adj., *concealed, secluded.* vi. 34.

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [**ab** + **dō**], 3, *put away, remove; conceal.* **sē abdere,** *to hide one's self.*

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**ab** + **dūcō**], 3, *withdraw; lead away, take off* (I. 11). [abduct.

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, [**ab** + **eō**], irr., *go away, depart.* vi. 43; vii. 50.

abesse, see **absum.**

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**ab** + **iaciō**], 3, *throw away, throw down; hurl* (v. 48). [abject.

abiēs, -ietis, f., *fir tree, spruce.* v. 12.

abiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, [**ab** + **iungō**], 3, *unyoke; separate, part* (vii. 56).

abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [**abs** + **caedō**], 3, *cut off* (III. 14); *lop off, cut away* (VII. 73).

absēns, [part. of **absum**], adj., *absent.* **sē absente,** *in his absence.* [absent

absimilis, -e, [**ab** + **similis**], adj., *unlike.*

absistō, -sistere, -stitī, [**ab** + **sistō**], 3, *withdraw, go away.*

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [**abs** + **teneō**], 2, *hold back; refrain from* (i. 22); *spare, give quarter* (vii. 47). [abstain.

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [**abs** + **trahō**], 3, *drag away, drag off, take away by force.* [abstract.

absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, [**ab** + **sum**], irr., *be distant, be absent* or *away from; be wanting, be lacking.* **longē abesse,** *to be far away.* **ā bellō abesse,** *to be exempt from military service* (vi. 14). **tōtō bellō abessent,** *they took no part in the entire war* (VII. 63).

abundō, -āre, -āvī, [**ab** + **undō**, from **unda**, *wave*], 1, *overflow; abound in; be well provided with* (VII. 14, 64). [abundant.

abūtor, -ūtī, -ūsus, [**ab** + **ūtor**], 3, dep., *use up, misuse; waste* (C. III. 90). [abuse.

ac, see **atque.**

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [**ad** + **cēdō**], 3, *come to, draw near, approach; be added.* [accede.

accelerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad** + **celerō**, from **celer**], 1, *make haste, hasten.* VII. 87. [accelerate.

acceptus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [part. of **accipiō**], adj., *acceptable, welcome, dear.* i. 3.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, [**ad** + **cadō**], 3, *fall* (III. 14, 25); *happen, occur, turn out; befall, fall to the lot of.* Impers., **accidit,** *it happens.* [accident.

accīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [**ad** + **caedō**], 3, *cut into.* vi. 27.

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [**ad** + **capiō**], 3, *take to one's self,*

receive, accept; hear of, learn; incur (vii. 17). [accept.

acclīvis, -e, [ad, cf. **clīvus**], adj., *sloping; up-hill, rising.*

acclīvitās -tātis, [acclīvis], f., *upward slope, ascent.* ii. 18. [acclivity.

Accō, -ōnis, m., (ak′ ō), a leader among the Senones. vi. 4, 44; vii. 1.

accommodātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of **accommodō**], adj., *suited, adapted.* III. 13. [accommodate.

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + **commodō**, from **commodus**], 1, *adjust, put on.* ii. 21.

accūrātē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [accurātus], adv., *carefully.* Comp., *with greater pains* (vi. 22).

accurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, or -currī, **cursum est**, [ad + **currō**], 3, *run to* (iii. 5), *hasten to* (i. 22).

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + **causa**], 1, *call to account, find fault with; reproach, accuse.* [accuse.

ācer, **ācris**, **ācre**, comp. **ācrior**, sup. **ācerrimus**, adj., *sharp;* of fighting, *fierce* (C. III. 72). [acrid.

acerbē, comp. **acerbius**, sup. **acerbissimē**, [acerbus], adv., *bitterly.* **sī acerbius inopiam ferrent**, *if they found the scarcity too severe* (vii. 17).

acerbitās, -tātis, [acerbus], f., *bitterness, sourness;* pl., *sufferings* (vii. 17). [acerbity.

acerbus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [ācer], adj., *bitter, harsh.*

ācerrimē, see **ācriter**.

acervus, -ī, m., *heap, pile.* ii. 32.

Achillās, -ae, [Ἀχιλλᾶς, Ἀχιλλεύς], m., *Achillas* (ạ-kil′ ạs), an official under the young King Ptolemy of Egypt in 49 B.C., one of the slayers of Pompey. C. III. 104.

aciēs, -ēī, f., *edge;* of the eye, *keen look* (i. 39); of an army, *line of battle, line, army in battle array, battle.*

acquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, [ad + **quaerō**], 3, *get in addition; gain further* (vii. 59). [acquire.

ācriter, comp. **ācrius**, sup. **ācerrimē**, [ācer], adv., *sharply, fiercely, with vigor, courageously.* **cum ācriter resisterētur**, *when a vigorous resistance was offered* (v, 30).

āctuārius, -a, -um, [agō], adj., *easily driven, swift.* **nāvis āctuāria**, *swift vessel,* driven by oars as well as sails. v. 1. [actuary.

āctus, see **agō**.

Acūtius, -ī, m., *Acutius Rufus* (ạ-kū′ sh(y)ụs rū′ fụs), a partizan of Pompey. C. III. 83.

acūtus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of **acuō**, *sharpen*], adj., *sharpened, sharp.* [acute.

ad, prep. with acc., *to, towards, up to;* of place, *in the vicinity of, at, near to, by, in the presence of, among, on;* of time, *till, to, up to, until;* of purpose, especially with the gerundive constr., *for, in order to, for the purpose of, in;* of other relations, *with regard to, according to, in respect to, in consequence of, as to, in;* with words of number, with adverbial force, *about.* **ad hunc modum**, *after this manner.* **ad ūnum**, *to a man.* **ad exercitum manēre**, *to remain with the army* (v. 53). **ad virtūtem**, *in respect to valor.* (C. II. 6).

adāctus, see **adigō**.

adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + aequō], 1, *make equal to, bring up to a level with* (III. 12); *be equal to, keep up with* (i. 48), *keep abreast of* (v. 8). [adequate.

adamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + amō], 1, *conceive a love for, covet*, i. 31.

Adbucillus, -ī, m., (ad-bū-sil′ us), an Allobrogian, father of Roucillus and Egus. C. III. 59.

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [ad + dō], 3, *add, join to; lay on* (vii. 23). [add.

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [ad + dūcō], 3, *lead to, bring, bring up* to a place; *lead, draw; induce, prevail upon.* [adduce.

adēmptus, see adimō.

adeō, -īre, -ī, -itum est, [ad + eō], irr., *go to, come near, draw near, approach; reach, visit.*

adeō, [ad + eō, from is], adv., *so far, to such a degree; so, so much.*

adeptus, see adipīscor.

adequitō, -āre, -āvī, [ad + equitō, from eques], 1, *ride towards; ride up to* (i. 46).

adhaerēscō, -haerēscere, -haesī, [ad + haerēscō], 3, *stick, adhere; remain clinging* (v. 48).

adhibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus, [ad + habeō], 2, *hold toward; bring forward, bring in, call in, summon, admit; use, employ.*

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus, [ad + hortor], 1, dep., *encourage, rally, exhort, rouse, urge.*

adhūc, [ad + hūc], adv., *hitherto, until now, as yet.* iii. 22.

adiaceō, -iacēre, -iacuī, [ad + iaceō], 2, *lie near, border upon, be adjacent.* vi. 33. [adjacent.

Adiatunnus, -ī, m., (ā′′ di-a-tun′ us), a leader of the Sotiates. iii. 22.

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [ad + iaciō], 3, *throw to, hurl; throw up; join to, add.*

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [ad + agō], 3, *drive* (*to*), *drive in;* of missiles, *cast, hurl* (*to*); of piles, *drive home* (iv. 17); of a tower, *move up* (v. 43); of an oath, *bind* (vii. 67, C. I. 76).

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [ad + emō], 3, *take away* (v. 6, C. I. 7); *cut off* (vii. 81).

adipīscor, -ipīscī, -eptus, [ad + apīscor, *reach*], 3, dep., *gain, obtain, secure.* v. 39. [adept.

aditus, -ūs, [adeō], m., *approach, access; way of approach, means of access;* pl. *landing-places* (IV. 20).

adiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + iūdicō], 1, *award* by judicial decision, *adjudge.* VII. 37. [adjudicate.

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, [ad + iungō], 3, *join to, attach; add, unite with; annex.* [adjunct.

adiūtor, -ōris, [adiuvō], m., *helper, confederate* (v. 38); *mediator* (v. 41).

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, adiūtus, [ad + iuvō], 1, *help, assist, support; render assistance, be of assistance.* [adjuvant.

Admagetobriga, -ae, f., (ad′′ ma-je-tob′ ri-ga), a place in Gaul. i. 31.

administer, -trī, [ad + minister], m., *assistant, helper; officiating priest* (VI. 16).

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + ministrō], 1, *render assistance; manage, carry on, administer; arrange for, get ready;* of orders, *execute, carry out.* [administer.

admīror, -ārī, -ātus, [ad + mīror], 1, dep., *wonder at, be surprised at; admire.* [admire.

admisceō, -ēre, admiscuī, admixtus, [a + misceō], 2, *mingle with, mix with.* C. III. 48. [admix.

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [ad + mittō], 3, *let go; admit, receive; become guilty of, commit; incur* (IV. 25, C. III. 64). **facinus admittere**, *to commit a crime.* **ad-**

missīs equīs, *with their horses at top speed*, lit. *let go* (C. II. 34). [admit.

admodum, [ad + acc. of **modus**], adv., lit. *up to the measure; quite, very;* with numbers, *fully, at least.*

admoneō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itus**, [ad + **moneō**], 2, *warn.* [admonish.

admonitus, **-ūs**, [**admoneō**], m., *suggestion, advice.* C. III. 92.

adnō, **-nāre**, [ad + **nō**, *swim*], 1, *swim to.* C. II. 44.

adolēscō, **-olēscere**, **-olēvī**, **-ultus**, [ad + **olēscō**, *grow*], 3, *grow up, reach maturity.* vi. 18. [adolescent.

adorior, **-orīrī**, **-ortus**, [ad + **orior**], 4, dep., *fall upon, attack, assail.*

adortus, pf. part. of **adorior**, *having attacked, attacking.*

adsum, **-esse**, **affuī**, [ad + **sum**], irr., *be at hand, be present; assist, help* (vii. 62).

adulēscēns, **-entis**, [**adolēscō**], adj., *young.* As noun, m., *young man, youth.*

adulēscentia, **-ae**, [**adulēscēns**], f., *youth.* i. 20; C. II. 38. [adolescence.

adulēscentulus, **-ī**, [dim. of **adulēscēns**], m., *very young man, stripling.* iii. 21.

adventus, **-ūs**, [**adveniō**], m., *coming, approach, arrival.* [advent.

adversārius, **-a**, **-um**, [**adversor**], adj., *opposed.* As noun, **adversārius**, **-ī**, m., *opponent, enemy.* [adversary.

adversus, **-a**, **-um**, sup. **-issimus**, [part. of **advertō**], adj., *turned towards, fronting, in front, facing, opposite; unfavorable, adverse, unsuccessful.* **adversō flūmine**, *up the stream* (vii. 60). **in adversum ōs**, *full in the face* (v. 35). **rēs adversae**, *misfortune, disasters* (vii. 30). [adverse.

adversus, [**advertō**], prep. with acc. only, *opposite to; against* (iv. 14).

advertō, **-tere**, **-tī**, **-sus**, [ad + **vertō**], 3, *turn to, direct.* **animum advertō**, *notice, observe.* [advert.

advocō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [ad + **vocō**], 1, *call.* vii. 52. [advocate.

advolō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, [ad + **volō**, *fly*], 1, *fly to; hasten to, rush upon.*

aedificium, **-ī**, [**aedificō**], n., *building.* [edifice.

aedificō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**aedēs**, *building*, + FAC, in **faciō**], 1, *build, construct.*

Aeduus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *Aeduan.* As noun, **Aeduus**, **-ī**, m., *an Aeduan;* pl., *Aeduans, the Aedui*, (ed′ū-ī *or* ej′ u-ī), a Gallic people, between the upper waters of the Sequana (*Seine*) and the Liger (*Loire*), in alliance with the Romans before Caesar's arrival in Gaul and prominent throughout the Gallic War.

aeger, **-gra**, **-grum**, adj., *sick.* As noun, **aegrī**, **-ōrum**, m., pl., *the sick* (v. 40, C. III. 75).

aegerrimē, see **aegrē.**

aegrē, comp. **aegrius**, sup. **aegerrimē**, [**aeger**], adv., *with difficulty, scarcely, hardly.* **aegerrimē**, *with the greatest difficulty* (i. 13).

Aegyptus, **-ī**, [Αἴγυπτος], f., *Egypt.* C. III. 104.

Aemilius, **-ī**, m., *Lucius Aemilius* (ę-mil′ i-us), a decurion in charge of a squad of Gallic cavalry. i. 23.

aequāliter, [**aequālis**, *equal*], adv., *evenly, uniformly.* ii. 18.

aequinoctium, **-ī**, [**aequus** + **nox**], n., *equinox.* iv 36; v. 23. [equinox.

aequitās, **-tātis**, [**aequus**], f., *evenness; justness, fairness.* **animī aequitās**, *contentment* (vi. 22). [equity.

aequō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**aequus**], 1, *equalize, make equal.* [equate.

aequus, -a, -um, comp. **aequior**, sup. **aequissimus**, adj., *level, even, flat; fair, just, equitable; like, equal; favorable, advantageous.* **aequō animō**, *with tranquil mind, without anxiety.*

aerāria, -ae, [**aerārius**, *of copper*], f., *copper mine.* iii. 21.

aerārium, -ī, [**aerārius**, *of copper*], n., *the public treasury* in Rome, *the treasury.* C. i. 6.

aerātus, -a, -um, [**aes**, through *aerō, -āre], adj., *sheathed with copper* or *bronze.* C. ii. 3.

aes, aeris, n., *copper; bronze*, an alloy of copper and tin; *money.* **aes aliēnum**, (lit., *another's money*), *debt* (vi. 13).

aestās, -tātis, f., *warm season, summer.*

aestimātiō, -ōnis, [**aestimō**], f., *valuation, appraisement.* [estimation.

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**aes**], 1, *value, appraise, estimate; regard, consider.* [estimate.

aestīvus, -a, -um, [**aestās**], adj., *of summer.*

aestuārium, -ī, [**aestus**], n., *place overflowed at high tide*, (*salt*) *marsh.* ii. 28; iii. 9. [estuary.

aestus, -ūs, m., *heat; tide.*

aetās, -tātis, f., *age, time of life; old age.* **aetāte cōnfectus**, *advanced in years.* **puerīlis aetās**, *age of childhood.* **per aetātem**, *by reason of age.*

aeternus, -a, -um, [for *aeviternus, from **aevum**], adj., *everlasting, perpetual.* vii. 77. [eternal.

Aetōlia, -ae, [Αἰτωλία], f., (ē-tō′lĭ-ạ), a province of Greece, south of Epirus. C. iii. 61.

afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus, [**ad** + **ferō**], irr., *bring, convey, deliver; bring forward, allege; produce, cause, occasion.* [afferent.

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**ad** + **faciō**], 3, *do something to, treat, use; visit with, afflict, trouble, weaken, impair; treat* with kindness, *place under obligation* (i. 35; vii. 37); *visit* with punishment (i. 27); *fill* with joy (v. 48). [affect.

affīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, [**ad** + **fīgō**], 3, *fasten to.* iii. 14. [affix.

affingō, -fingere, -finxī, -fictus, [**ad** + **fingō**], 3, *fashion;* of a report, *embellish* (vii. 1).

affīnitās, -tātis, [**affīnis**, from **ad** + **fīnis**], f., *relationship* by marriage, *kinship, connection.* [affinity.

affīrmātiō, -ōnis, [**affīrmō**], f., *assurance.* vii. 30. [affirmation.

affixus, see **affīgō**.

afflictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **affligō**], 1, *shatter, damage* (iv. 29); *strand, wreck* (iii. 12).

afflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flictus, [**ad** + **flīgō**, *strike*], 3, *dash against; throw down, knock down; shatter, damage.* [afflict.

affore (= **affutūrus esse**), future infinitive of **adsum**.

Āfrānius, -ī, m., *Lucius Afranius*, (ạ-frā′ nĭ-ụs), a lieutenant of Pompey defeated by Caesar in Spain in 49 B.C. C. iii. 83, 88.

Āfrica, -ae, f., (af′ rĭ-kạ), the Roman province of Africa. C. ii. 37.

Āfricus, -a, -um, [**Āfrica**], adj., *of Africa.* As noun, **Āfricus**, -ī, m. (originally sc. **ventus**), *southwest wind* (v. 8).

āfuisse, āfutūrus, see **absum**.

Agedincum, -ī, n., (aj-ẹ-ding′ kụm), chief city of the Senones, now *Sens.*

ager, agrī, m., *land* under cultivation, *field, territory, domain;* pl. *lands, territory, country, the country.*

agger, -geris, [**aggerō**, **ad** + **gerō**], m., that which is *brought to* a place, *material for an embankment, filling*

of earth and timber; *earth; embankment, mound, dike;* rampart. **aggerem exstruere**, *to build a rampart* (vii. 72). **multō aggere**, *with much earth* (vii. 23).

aggredior, -gredī, -gressus, [ad + gradior, *walk, go*], 3, dep., *approach; go against, attack, fall upon.* [aggressive.

aggregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + gregō, from **grex**, *flock*], 1, *bring together, join.* **sē aggregāre**, *to place one's self with* (iv. 26), *to join one's self to* (vi. 12). [aggregate.

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of agō], 1, *drive onward, impel; stir up, discuss* (vii. 2). [agitate.

agmen, -minis, [agō], n., *army on the march, marching column; line of march.* **agmen claudere**, *to bring up the rear* (i. 25, ii. 19). **novissimum agmen**, *the rear.* **primum agmen**, *the van.* **in agmine**, *on the march* (iii. 24, vii. 66).

agnōscō, -ere, agnōvī, [ad + gnōscō], 3, *recognize.* C. ii. 6.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, 3, *set in motion, drive, move forward; direct, conduct, guide; incite, urge; press forward, chase, pursue; drive off* as plunder, *rob; do, act, transact, perform; manage, carry on, accomplish; treat, discuss, confer, plead with;* of time, *spend, pass, live;* of court, *hold;* of sheds and towers, *bring up.* **grātiās agere**, *to thank.* [act.

alacer, -cris, -cre, comp. **alacrior**, adj., *lively; eager, in high spirits.*

alacritās, -tātis, [alacer], f., *liveliness; enthusiasm.* [alacrity.

ālārius, -a, -um, [āla, *wing*], adj., *of the wing.* As noun, **ālārii**, -ōrum, m., pl., *auxiliary troops* posted on the wings, *wing-men.*

Albicī, -ōrum, m., pl., (al′ bi-sī), a small warlike people living north of Massilia. C. ii. 6.

albus, -a, -um, adj., *white.* **plumbum album**, *tin* (v. 12). [album.

alcēs, -is, f., *moose*, European *elk.* vi. 27.

Alesia, -ae, f., (ą-lē′ sh[y]ą *or* ą-lē′ zh [y]ą), chief city of the Mandubians, now *Alise-Sainte-Reine.* vii. 68–90.

Alexandrīa, -ae, [Ἀλεξάνδρεια], f., (al-eg-zan′ dri-ą), capital of Egypt. C. iii. 103, 104.

ali-, the form of **alius** in composition.

aliās, [alius], adv., *at another time.* **aliās . . . aliās**, *at one time . . . at another, sometimes . . . sometimes, now . . . now.* [alias.

aliēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [aliēnus], 1, *alienate, estrange.* **aliēnātā mente**, *deprived of reason* (vi. 41) [alienate.

aliēnus, -a, -um, [alius], adj., *belonging to another, another's; strange, foreign; unsuitable, unfavorable, disadvantageous.* As noun, **aliēnissimī**, -ōrum, sup., m., pl., *entire strangers* (vi. 31). [alien.

aliō, [alius], adv., *to another place, elsewhere.* vi. 22.

aliquamdiū, [aliquī, diū], adv., *for some time, for a while.*

aliquandō, [alī- + quandō], adv., *at some time or other, sometime; at length* (vii. 27, 77).

aliquantus, -a, -um, [ali- + quantus], adj., *some, considerable.* Neut., **aliquantum**, as noun, *a little, somewhat.* **aliquantum itineris**, *some distance* (v. 10).

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, [ali- + quī], indefinite pronominal adj., *some, any, some other.*

aliquis (rarely **aliquī**), aliqua, aliquid, nom. and acc. pl., n., aliqua, [ali- + quis], indefinite pron., *some one, any one, anybody;* pl., *some, any*

Neut., **aliquid**, *something, somewhat, anything.* **aliquid calamitātis**, *some disaster* (v. 29).

aliquot [ali- + quot], num. adj., indecl., *some, several.*

aliter, [alis, alius], adv., *otherwise, differently.* **aliter ac**, *otherwise than, different from what.*

alius, -a, -ud, dat. **aliī**, adj., *another, some other, other, different, else,* **alius . . . alius**, *one . . . another, the one . . . the other;* pl., **aliī . . . aliī**, *some . . . other;* often as noun, **alius**, *another*, **aliī**, *others.* **longē alius atque**, *very different from.*

allātus, see **afferō**.

alliciō, -licere, -lexī, [**ad** + **laciō** *entice*], 3, *attract, allure.*

Figure 192. — Coin of the Allobroges.

Silver. Reverse, horned animal galloping; underneath, a wheel.

Allobrogēs, -um, (acc. **Allobrogas**, i. 14, vii. 64), m., pl., (ạ-lob′ rọ-jēz), a Gallic people in the northeastern part of the Province. Acc. sing., **Allobrogem**, *an Allobrogian* (C. III. 84). Fig. 192.

alō, alere, aluī, altus, 3, *nourish, increase; maintain, keep; rear, foster, raise.*

Alpēs, -ium, 3, f., pl., *Alps*, general term for the mountains separating Cisalpine Gaul from Transalpine Gaul and Germany.

alter, -era, -erum, gen. **alterīus** or **alterius**, adj., often with the force of a noun, *one of two, the other, another; second.* **alter . . . alter**, *the one . . . the other.* **alterī . . . alterī**, *the one division, the one party . . . the other.* [alter.

alternus, -a, -um, [alter], adj., *in turn, alternate.* vii. 23. [alternate.

alteruter, -tra, -trum, pronominal adj., *either of two.* C. III. 90.

altitūdō, -inis, [altus], f., *height, depth;* of a beam, *thickness* (iii. 13). [altitude.

altus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [part. of **alō**], adj., *high, deep.* As noun, **altum**, -ī, n., *the deep, the open sea.*

alūta, -ae, f., *soft leather.* iii. 13.

am-, see **ambi-**.

ambactus, -ī, m., *vassal, dependant.* vi. 15.

Ambarrī, -ōrum, m., pl., (ạm-bar′ rī), a people east of the Arar (*Saône*), near its junction with the Rhone. i. 11, 14.

ambi-, amb-, am-, an-, prep. found only in composition, *round about, around.*

Ambiānī, -ōrum, m., pl., (am-bi̯-ā′nī), a small state in Belgic Gaul. Fig. 193.

Figure 193. — Coin of the Ambiani.

Gold. Crude imitation of a Greek coin with a head of Hercules and a four-horse chariot. Underneath the chariot, imitation of the Greek name, "Of Philip."

Ambibariī, -ōrum, m., pl. (am-bi̯-bā′ ri̯-ī), a small state on the northwest coast of Gaul. vii. 75.

Ambiliatī, -ōrum, m., pl., (am′′bi̯-li′ ạ-tī), a small state in Central Gaul. iii. 9.

Ambiorīx, -īgis, m., (ạm-bī′ ọ-rịks), a leader of the Eburones, who destroyed the Roman force under Sabinus and Cotta, and inspired the attack on Cicero's camp.

Ambivaretī, -ōrum, m., pl., (am-bị-var′ ẹ-tī), a people in Central Gaul, clients of the Aeduans.

Ambivaritī, -ōrum, m., pl. (am-bị-var′ị-tī), a small state in Belgic Gaul. IV. 9.

ambō, -ae, -ō, [cf. **ambi-**], adj., often used as noun, *both*. v. 44, C. II. 6.

āmentia, -ae, [**āmēns**, from **ā** + **mēns**], f., *madness, folly*.

āmmentum, -ī, n., *thong, strap*, for hurling a dart. v. 48.

amīcitia, -ae, [**amīcus**], f., *friendship*; of a state, *friendship, alliance*.

amīcus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [**amō**], adj., *friendly, faithful, well-disposed*. [amicable.

amīcus, -ī, [**amō**], m., *friend, ally*.

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [**ā** + **mittō**], 3, *send away; let go, let slip, lose*.

amor, -ōris, [**amō**], m., *affection, love*.

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**amplus** + **faciō**], 1, *make large, increase, extend*. [amplify.

amplitūdō, -inis, [**amplus**], f., *breadth, size; greatness, dignity*. [amplitude.

amplius, [comp. of **amplē**, from **amplus**], sup. **amplissimē**, adv., *more, further*.

amplus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *large* in extent, *great, extensive; distinguished, splendid, noble, prominent*. As noun, **amplius**, comp., n., *more*. **amplius obsidum**, *more hostages* (vi. 9). [ample.

an, inter. conj., *or, or rather, or indeed*. **-ne . . . an**, or **utrum . . . an**, *whether . . . or*.

an-, see **ambi-**.

Anartēs, -ium, m., pl., (ạn-är′ tēz), a tribe on the Tibiscus (*Theiss*), in Dacia (*Hungary*).

Ancalitēs, -um, m., pl., (ạn-cal′ ị-tēz), a British tribe. v. 21.

anceps, -cipitis, [**an-** + CAP in **caput**], adj., *two-headed, twofold, double*. **anceps proelium**, *battle on two fronts*.

ancora, -ae, [ἄγκυρα], f., *anchor*. **in ancorīs**, *at anchor*. [anchor.

Andecumborius, -ī, m., (an″ dẹ-cọm-bō′ rị-ụs), a leader among the Remi.

Andēs, -ium, or **Andī**, -ōrum, m., pl., (an′ dēz, or an′ dī), a Gallic people north of the Liger (*Loire*).

ānfrāctus, -ūs, [**an-**, cf. **frangō**], m., *curve* in a path or road, *bend, turn*. vii. 46.

angulus, -ī, m., *corner*. v. 13. [angle.

angustē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [**angustus**], adv., *closely, in close quarters; scantily, sparingly*.

angustiae, -arum, [**angustus**], f., pl., *narrow place, narrow part, defile, narrowness; straits, difficulties, perplexity; scarcity*.

angustus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cf. **angō**, *squeeze*], adj., *contracted, narrow, close*. Neut. as noun, **angustum**, -ī, *crisis* (ii. 25).

anima, -ae, f., *breath; soul, life* (vi. 14). [animate.

animadversiō, -ōnis, [**animadvertō**], f., *consideration; punishment* (C. III. 60). [animadversion.

animadvertō, -tere, -tī, -sus, [**animus** + **advertō**], 3, *turn the mind to, attend to; notice, observe, perceive*. **in eum animadvertō**, *inflict punishment upon him*, as we say "attend to him." I. 19. [animadvert.

animal, -ālis, [anima], n., *living being, animal.* vi. 17, 19. [animal.

animus, -i, m., *soul, mind, consciousness; disposition, feelings; courage, spirit, temper, resolution.* **esse in animō**, *to intend.* [animus.

annōtinus, -a, -um, [annus], adj., *of the year before, last year's.* v. 8.

annus, -ī, m., *year.* [annual.

annuus, -a, -um, [annus], adj., *of a year, yearly, annual.* i. 16. [annuity.

ānser, -eris, m., *goose.* v. 12.

ante, adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., *in front; before, previously.* **ante quam**, *before.* **paulō ante**, *a little while before, a short time previously.* **paucīs ante diēbus**, *a few days before.*

(2) As prep. with acc., *before, in front of, in advance of.*

anteā, [ante + eā], adv., *previously, before, formerly.*

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, [ante + cēdō], 3, *go in advance, outstrip; anticipate* (C. III. 6); *surpass, excel.* [antecedent.

antecursor, -ōris, [antecurrō], m., lit., *fore-runner;* pl., *advance guard, vanguard* (v. 47).

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [ante + ferō], irr., *carry in front; place before, prefer* (v. 44).

antemna, -ae, f., *sail-yard.* [antennae.

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [ante + pōnō], 3, *place before; prefer, value above* (iv. 22).

antesignānus, -ī, [ante signum], m., *one in front of a standard;* pl., **antesignānī**, -ōrum, *soldiers before the standards* (C. III. 84).

antevertō, -tere, -tī, [ante + vertō], 3, *place before, take precedence.*

antīquitus [antīquus], adv., *in former times, long ago, anciently.*

antīquus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [ante], adj., *old, former, old-time, ancient.* [antique.

Antistius, -ī, m., *Gaius Antistius Reginus* (ạn-tis′ tị-ụs rẹ jī′ nụs), a lieutenant of Caesar.

Antōnius, -ī, m., *Marcus Antonius,* (mär′ kụs ạn-to′ nị-ụs), *Mark Antony* (born 83, died 30 B.C.), a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul in 52 and 51 B.C., and afterwards in the Civil War; member of the Second Triumvirate, and rival of Octavianus. vii. 81; C. III. 89.

aperiō, -perīre, -peruī, -pertus, 4, *open, uncover.* vii. 22. [aperient.

apertē, -ius, -issimē, [apertus], adv., *openly, clearly, manifestly.*

apertus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of aperiō], adj., *open, uncovered; exposed, unprotected.* **loca aperta**, *open country.* **latus apertum**, *open flank, exposed flank.*

Apollō, -inis, m., (ạ-pol′ ō), a divinity worshiped by the Greeks and Romans, identified by Caesar with a Gallic deity. vi. 17.

Apollōnia, -ae, [Ἀπολλωνία], f., (ap-ọ-lō′ nị-ạ), a city in the Roman province of Macedonia, near the Adriatic Sea, about fifty miles south of Dyrrachium. C. III. 75.

apparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + parō], 1, *prepare, make ready, get ready.* [apparatus.

appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [ad + pellō], 3, *drive to, bring in;* of ships, *make for, put in, land.*

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *address, accost, call to, appeal to; call by name, name.* [appellate.

appetō, -petere, -petīvī, or -iī, -petītus, [ad + petō], 3, *strive after, seek; approach, draw near.* [appetite.

Appius, -ī, m., (ap′ i̯-u̯s), a Roman first name.

applicō, -plicāre, -plicāvī or -plicuī, -plicātus, [ad + plicō], *fold, join.* **sē applicāre ad,** *to lean against* (vi. 27). [applicant.

apportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + portō], I, *carry to, bring.* v. I.

approbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + probō], I, *approve, favor.* [approve.

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum est, [ad + propinquō], I, *approach, come near, draw near.*

appulsus, see **appellō**.

Apr., = **Aprīlis.** i. 6.

Aprīlis, -e, adj., *of April.*

aptus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *fitted, adapted, suited; suitable, appropriate, ready.* [apt.

apud, prep. with acc. only, *at, with, near, close to, by; among, in the presence of.*

aqua, -ae, f., *water.* [aqueous.

aquātiō, -ōnis, [aquor], f., *obtaining water.* iv. 11.

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle;* as an eagle of silver or gold on the end of a pole formed the chief ensign of the legion, *eagle, standard.* [aquiline.

Aquileia, -ae, f., (ak-wi̯-lē′ yą), a city at the head of the Adriatic Sea. I. 10.

aquilifer, -erī, [aquila + ferō], m., *bearer of the eagle, eagle-bearer.*

Aquītānia, -ae, f., (ak-wi̯-tā′ ni̯-ą), one of the three main divisions of Gaul.

Aquītānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Aquitania.* As noun, **Aquītānus**, -ī, m., *Aquitanian* (iv. 12); pl., *Aquitanians, Aquitani,* (ak-wi̯-tā′ nī), inhabitants of Aquitania. i. 1; iii. 21.

aquor, -ārī, -ātus, [aqua], I, dep., *obtain water, get water.* C. III. 97.

Arar, -aris, acc. -im, m., *Arar* (ā′ rar) River, now *Saône* (sōn). It rises in the Vosges (vōzh) Mts., and flows southward into the Rhone.

arbiter, -trī, m., *witness; referee, commissioner* (v. 1). [arbiter.

arbitrium, -ī, [arbiter], n., *decision, arbitrament; authority.*

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, [arbiter], I, dep., *think, consider, believe.* [arbitrate.

arbor, -oris, f., *tree.* [arbor-vitae.

arcessō, -sere, -sīvī, -sītus, 3, *cause to come, fetch; send for, summon, call in, invite.*

ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, 2, *be on fire; be ablaze, be aroused; be eager, desire ardently.* [ardent.

Arduenna, -ae, f., (är-dų̄-en′ ną), *the Ardennes,* a forest-covered range of hills in the northeastern part of France, extending also into Belgium.

arduus, -a, -um, adj., *steep, high; hard, difficult.* [arduous.

Arecomicī, -ōrum, m., pl., (ar-ę-kom′ i̯-sī), a division of the Volcae, in the Province.

Arelās, -ātis, f., (är′ ę-lą̄s), a town in Southern Gaul, on the Rhone, north of Massilia; now *Arles.* C. II. 5.

Aremoricus, -a, -um, [Celtic, a r ē = ad, + mori, = mare, 'by the s e a'], adj., *Aremorican,* name applied to a group of small states along the northwest coast of Gaul (**Aremoricae cīvitātēs**).

argentum, -ī, n., *silver* (vi. 28); *silver-ware* (vii. 47; C. III. 96). [argent.

argilla, -ae, f., *clay.* v. 43. [argillaceous.

āridus, -a, -um, sup. -issimus, [āreō, *be dry*], adj., *dry.* As noun, **āridum**, -ī, n., *dry land, shore.* [arid.

ariēs, -ietis, m., *ram; battering-ram; prop, buttress* (iv. 17). [Aries.

Arīminum, -ī, n., (ą-rim′ i̯-nųm), a town in Italy on the Adriatic, the

northernmost city in Italy proper; now *Rimini*. C. I. 8.

Ariovistus, -ī, m., (ā″ ri-o-vis′ tus), a German king, defeated by Caesar, 58 B.C.

Aristius, -ī, m., *Marcus Aristius*, (a-ris′ ti-us), a military tribune. vii. 42, 43.

arma, -ōrum, n., pl., *implements; implements of war, arms, armor, weapons;* of a ship, *equipment, tackle* (iii. 14). **ad arma concurrere**, *to rush to arms.* [arms.

armāmenta, -ōrum, [armō], n., pl., *implements; equipment;* of a ship, *rigging.* [armament.

armātūra, -ae, [armō], f., *armor, equipment.* **levis armātūrae peditēs**, *light infantry.* **levis armātūrae Numidae**, *light-armed Numidians* (ii. 10). [armature.

armātus, -a, -um, sup. **armātissimus**, [part. of armō], adj., *armed, in arms, equipped.* As noun, **armātī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *armed men, warriors, soldiers.*

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [arma], 1, *provide with weapons, arm;* of a ship, *equip, fit out.* [arm.

Arpineius, -ī, m., *Gaius Arpineius*, (ar-pi- nē′ yus), a Roman knight, envoy of Caesar to Ambiorix. v. 27, 28.

arripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, [ad + rapiō], 3, *lay hold of, snatch.* v. 33.

arroganter, comp. -ius, [arrogāns], adv., *presumptuously, arrogantly.*

arrogantia, -ae, [arrogāns], f., *presumption, insolence.* [arrogance.

ars, artis, f., *skill; art, science* (vi. 17). [art.

artē, comp. **artius**, sup. **artissimē**, [artus], adv., *closely, tightly.*

articulus, -ī, [dim. of **artus**, *joint*], m., *joint, knuckle.* vi. 27. [article.

artificium, -ī, [**artifex**, *artist*], n., *an art, trade; skill; craft, cunning.* [artifice.

artus, -a, um, comp. -ior, sup. **artissimus**, adj., *close;* of woods, *dense* (vii. 18).

Arvernus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Arverni, Arvernian.* As noun, **Arvernī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *Arvernians, the Averni*, (är -vėr′ nī), a powerful people about the upper part of the Elaver (*Allier*); their chief city, Gergovia, was unsuccessfully besieged by Caesar. Fig. 194.

Figure 194. — Arvernian coin.

Gold. Obverse, Apollo. Reverse, two-horse chariot, copied from a coin of Philip, father of Alexander the Great; Greek name, "Of Philip," misspelled.

arx, arcis, f., *citadel, stronghold.*

ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [ad + scandō, *climb*], 3, *ascend, climb up; mount.* [ascend.

ascēnsus, -ūs, [ascendō], m., *ascent, climbing; approach.*

ascīscō, ascīscere, ascīvī, ascītus, [ad + sciscō, *approve*], 3, *admit* to association with one's self, *accept.*

Asia, -ae, [Ἀσία], f., the Roman province *Asia*, (ā′ sh[y]a, *or* ā′ zh[y]a), including Phrygia, Lydia, Caria, and Mysia in Asia Minor. C. III. 53.

aspectus, -ūs, [aspiciō, *look at*], m., *appearance, sight, look.* [aspect.

asper, -era, -erum, comp. -ior, sup. -rimus, adj., *rough, uneven; fierce, violent* (v. 45).

assiduus, -a, -um, [ad + SED, SID, in **sedeō**, *sit*], adj., *continuous, constant, incessant.* [assiduous.

assistō, -ere, astitī, [ad + **sistō**], 3, *stand near, stand by; appear* (vi. 18). [assist.

assuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [assuētus + **faciō**], 3, *accustom, habituate, familiarize, train.*

assuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, [ad + **suēscō**, *become accustomed*], 3, *become accustomed to.* **assuēscere ad hominēs**, *to become domesticated* (vi. 28).

at, conj., *but, yet, but yet, at least.*

atque, ac, [ad + -que], conj.:

(1) Copulative, *and, and also, and even, and in particular.*

(2) Comparative, after words of likeness or unlikeness, *as, than.* **idem atque, par atque**, *the same as.*

Atrebās, -ātis, m., *an Atrebatian;* pl., *Atrebatians, the Atrebates*, (at-rẹ-bā′ tēz), a Belgic people.

Ātrius, -ī, m., *Quintus Atrius* (ā′tri-ụs), an officer in Caesar's army. v. 9, 10.

attenuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + **tenuō** from **tenuis**], 1, *make thin; weaken, reduce in strength* (C. III. 89). [attenuate.

attexō, -ere, -texuī, attextus, [ad + **texō**], 3, *weave to, join on.* v. 40.

Attiānus, -a, -um, [Attius], adj., *of Attius*, referring to P. Attius Varus. C. II. 34.

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus, [ad + **tangō**], 3, *touch upon, touch; reach;* of territorial divisions, *border on, extend to, adjoin.*

Attius, -ī, m., *P. Attius Varus* (at′ i-ụs vā′ rus), a lieutenant of Pompey in Africa. C. II. 34.

attribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [ad + **tribuō**], 3, *assign, allot.* [attribute.

attulī, see **afferō**.

Atuatuca, -ae, f., (at-ụ̄-at′ ụ̄-ka), a stronghold in the territory of the Eburones.

Atuatucī, -ōrum, m., pl., (at-ụ̄-at′ ụ̄-sī), a warlike people on the left bank of the Meuse, descended from the Cimbrians and Teutons.

auctor, -ōris, [**augeō**], m., *originator, instigator; adviser, promoter, favorer.* [author.

auctōritās, -tātis, [**auctor**], f., *influence, weight; prestige, authority, power.* [authority.

auctus, -a, -um, comp. **auctior**, [**augeō**], adj., *increased; rich.* I. 43.

audācia, -ae, [**audāx**], f., *boldness, daring, recklessness.* [audacity.

audācter, comp. **audācius**, sup. **audācissimē**, [**audāx**], adv., *boldly, courageously, fearlessly.*

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, 2, semi-dep., *venture, dare, risk; attempt.*

audiō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -ītus, 4, *hear, listen to; hear of.* Present participle as Adj. in **dictō audiēns esse**, *to be obedient to the word of command, to obey.* [audience.

audītiō, -ōnis, [**audiō**], f., *report, rumor, hearsay.* [audition.

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, 2, semi-dep., *increase, enlarge, augment, add to.*

Aulercus, -ī, m., *an Aulercan* (vii. 57); pl., *the Aulerci* (â-lèr′ sī), a people of Central Gaul, of which Caesar mentions three branches, **Brannovīcēs** (vii. 75), **Cēnomanī** (vii. 75), and **Eburovīcēs** (iii. 17, vii. 75).

Aulus, -ī, m., (â′ lụs), a Roman first name.

aureus, -a, -um, [**aurum**], adj., *of gold, golden.* v. 12. [oriole.

aurīga, -ae, [**aurea**, *bridle*, + **agō**], m., *charioteer, driver.* iv. 33.

auris, -is, f., *ear.* [aural.

Aurunculeius, -i, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, (â′′ ruṇg-kū-lē′ yus kot′ ạ), a lieutenant of Caesar, killed by the Eburones.

Auscī, -ōrum, m., pl., (â′ sī), a people in the eastern part of Aquitania. iii. 27.

ausus, see **audeō**.

aut, conj., *or.* **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or.* **aut . . . aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or . . . or.*

autem, conj., *but, however, on the contrary; and now, moreover.*

autumnus, -ī, m., *autumn.* [autumn.

auxiliāris, -e, [**auxilium**], adj., *auxiliary.* As noun, **auxiliārēs**, -ium, m., pl., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries* (iii. 25). [auxiliar.

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus, [**auxilium**], 1, dep., *render aid, assist, help.*

auxilium, -ī, [cf. **augeō**], n., *help, aid, assistance; relief, remedy, resource.* Pl., **auxilia**, *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries, allied forces.*

Avaricēnsis, -e, adj., *of Avaricum, at Avaricum.* vii. 47.

Avaricum, -ī, n., (ạ-var′ i-kum), largest and most strongly fortified city of the Bituriges, now *Bourges;* besieged and taken by Caesar, the inhabitants put to the sword.

avāritia, -ae, [**avārus**, *greedy*], f., *greed, covetousness.* [avarice.

āvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, [**ā** + **vehō**], 3, *carry off, carry away.*

āversus, -a, -um, sup. **āversissimus**, [part of **āvertō**], adj., *turned away; behind, in the rear.* [averse.

āvertō, -tere, -tī, -sus, [**ā** + **vertō**], 3, *turn away, turn aside, avert; divert, alienate, estrange.* [avert.

avis, -is, f., *bird.* iv. 10. [aviation.

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather.*

Axona, -ae, f., (aks′ ọ-nạ), a river in the southern part of Belgic Gaul, now *Aisne.*

B

Bacēnis, -is, (sc. **silva**), f., (bạ-sē′ nis), a forest in Germany. vi. 10.

Baculus, -ī, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus*, (bac′ ū-lus), one of the bravest of Caesar's centurions. He distinguished himself in the battle with the Nervians (ii. 25); his advice saved the day when Galba was attacked in the Alps (iii. 5); and his heroic resistance checked a surprise attack on Cicero's camp (vi. 38).

Bagradās, or **Bagrada**, -ae, m., (bag′ rạ-dạs), an important river of Roman Africa, now *Medjerda.* C. ii. 38.

Baleārēs, -ium, [= *βαλιαρεῖς, slingers*], m., pl., (bạl-ę-ā′rēz), natives of the Balearic Islands, off the east coast of Spain; famous as slingers. ii. 7.

balteus, -ī, m., *belt, sword-belt.*

Balventius, -ī, m., *Titus Balventius*, (bạl-ven′ sh[y]-us), a brave centurion. v. 35.

barbarus, -a, -um, [= *βάρβαρος*], adj., *foreign, strange; rude, savage, uncivilized.* As noun, **barbarī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *strangers, foreigners; natives, barbarians.* [barbarous.

Basilus, -ī, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, (mị-nū′ sh[y]us bas′ ị-lus), an officer of Caesar, afterwards one of the conspirators against him; murdered in 43 B.C. on account of cruelty to his slaves.

Batāvī, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Batavians, Batavi*, (bạ-tā′ vī), a people dwelling near the mouth of the Rhine. iv. 10.

Belgae, -ārum, m., pl., *the Belgians, Belgae*, (bel′ jē), inhabitants of one of the three main divisions of Gaul, divided into many small states.

Belgium, -ī, n., (bel′j[y]ụm), *the land of the Belgians, Belgic Gaul, Belgium.* v. 12, 25. [Belgium.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [bellicus], adj., *warlike, fond of war.* i. 10. [bellicose.

bellicus, -a, -um, [bellum], adj., *of war, martial, military.* vi. 24.

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [bellum], 1, *wage war, carry on war, fight.*

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m., pl., (bẹ-lov′-ạ-sī), a powerful Belgic people.

bellum, -ī, n., *war, warfare.* **bellum gerere**, *to wage war.* **bellum īnferre**, *to make war.* **bellum parāre**, *to prepare for war.*

bene, comp. **melius**, sup. **optimē**, [bonus], adv., *well, ably, successfully.*

beneficiārius, -ī, [beneficiārius, -a, -um, from **beneficium**], m., *privileged soldier*, who, by order of the commander, was exempt from ordinary tasks and detailed for special duties (C. III. 88). [beneficiary.

beneficium, -ī, [bene + faciō], n., *kindness, favor, service.* [benefice.

benevolentia, -ae, [benevolus], f., *good will, friendly disposition, kindly feeling, friendship.* [benevolence.

Bibracte, -is, n., [bi̯-brak′ tē], capital of the Aeduans, situated on a mountain now called *Mont Beuvray* (height, 2,690 ft.).

Bibrax, -actis, f., (bī′ braks), a town of the Remi, north of the Axona (*Aisne*). ii. 6.

Bibrocī, -ōrum, m., pl., (bib′ rọ-sī), a people in the southern part of Britain. v. 21.

bīduum, -ī, [bi-, = bis, cf. **diēs**], n., *space of two days, two days.*

biennium, -ī, [bi-, = bis, cf. **annus**], n., *period of two years, two years' time.* i. 3. [biennial.

Bigerriōnēs, -ōnum, m., pl., (bī′′ jer-ri̯-ō′ nēz], a people in Aquitania iii. 27.

bīnī, -ae, -a, [bis], distributive adj., *two by two, two each, by twos, two.*

bipedālis, -e, [bi-, = bis, + pedālis, from **pēs**], adj., *two feet* in width, length, or height; *two feet thick* (iv. 17).

bipertītō, [bipartītus, bi-, = bis, + partītus], adv., *in two divisions.* i. 25; v. 32. [cf. bipertite.

bis, [for duis, cf. **duo**], num. adv., *twice.*

Biturīgēs, -um, m., pl., (bit-ụ-rī′ jēz), a people in Central Gaul (Fig. 195).

Figure 195. — A coin of the Bituriges.

Electrum, gold alloyed with silver. Obverse, head of crude but bold design. Reverse, above the horse, a bird; underneath, a three-leaf ornament. This coin may possibly belong to the Pictones.

Boduognātus, -ī, m., (bod′′ ụ̄-ọg-nā′ tụs), a leader of the Nervians. ii. 23.

Boiī, -ōrum, m., pl., *Boians, Boii* (bō′ ị-ī), a Celtic people once widely dif-

Figure 196. — Coin of the Boians.

Silver, struck in Cisalpine Gaul. Obverse, a laurel wreath encircles the head. Reverse, the horseman wears a crown.

fused over Central Europe (Fig. 196).

bonitās, -tātis, [**bonus**], f., *goodness, excellence;* of land, *fertility* (i. 28).

bonus, -a, -um, comp. **melior**, sup. **optimus**, adj., *good, advantageous; pleasant, well-disposed, friendly.* As noun, **bonum**, n., *profit, advantage;* pl., **bona**, -ōrum, *goods, property, possessions.* [bonus; optimist.

bōs, **bovis**, gen. pl. **boum**, m. and f., *ox, bull, cow.* [bovine.

bracchium, -ī, [= βραχίων], n., *arm, forearm.*

Brannovīcēs, -um, (bran-o̤-vī′ sēz), m., pl., see **Aulercī**.

Brātuspantium, -ī, n., (brat-u̯s-pan′ sh[y]um), a stronghold of the Bellovaci. ii. 13.

brevis, -e, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, adj., *short, brief.* [brief.

brevitās, -tātis, [**brevis**], f., *shortness* (ii. 20); *smallness, small stature* (ii. 30). [brevity.

breviter, comp. **-ius**, sup. **-issimē**, [**brevis**], adv., *briefly, with few words, concisely.* vii. 54.

Britannī, -ōrum, m., pl., *natives of Britain, Britons.*

Britannia, -ae, f., (bri-tan′ i̯-a), *Britain.*

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj., *of Britain, British.* v. 4.

brūma, -ae, [for *brevuma, sup. of **brevis**, sc. **diēs**], f., *winter solstice, shortest day; winter* (v. 13).

Brundisium, -ī, [βρεντάσιον], n., (brun-dizh′ i̯-um), a city of Italy on the Adriatic, the principal port of embarcation for Greece; now *Brindisi.* C. III. 87.

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Decimus Junius Brutus Albinus*, (jūn′ yus brū′tus al-bī′ nus), an officer of Caesar, both in the Gallic and in the Civil War; afterwards a conspirator against him.

būcinātor, -ōris, [**būcina**, *trumpet*], m., *trumpeter.* C. II. 35.

C

C, in expressions of number, = 100.

C., see **Gāius**.

Cabūrus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, (va-lē′ ri-us ka-bū′ rus), a Gaul who received the Roman citizenship.

cacūmen, -inis, n., *end, point* (vii. 73); *peak, summit.* [cacuminous.

cadāver, -eris, [cf. **cadō**], n., *corpse, dead body.* [cadaver.

cadō, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **cāsūrus**, 3, *fall; be slain, die.* [chance.

Cadūrcī, -ōrum, m., pl., (ka-dėr′ sī), a people in Aquitania. Sing. **Cadūrcus**, -ī, m., *a cadurcan* (VII. 5).

caedēs, -is, [**caedō**], f., *killing; slaughter, murder, massacre.*

caedō, **caedere**, **cecīdī**, **caesus**, 3, *cut, cut down; cut to pieces, slay.*

caelestis, -e, [**caelum**], adj., *heavenly.* As noun, **caelestēs**, -ium, m., pl., *the gods* (vi. 17). [celestial.

caelum, -ī, n., *heaven, the heavens, the sky.* C. II. 5.

caerimōnia, -ae, f., *religious ceremony, sacred rite.* vii. 2. [ceremony.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, m., pl., (se-rō′ sī), a people in Belgic Gaul. ii. 4.

caeruleus, -a, -um, adj., *deep blue, dark blue.* v. 14. [cerulean.

Caesar, -aris, m.:

(1) *Gaius Julius Caesar* (gā′yus jūl′ yus sē′ zar).

(2) *Lucius Julius Caesar*, consul in 64 B.C., a distant relative of the great Caesar, under whom he served as lieutenant, in 52 B.C. vii. 65.

caespes, -itis, m., *sod, turf.*

calamitās, -tātis, f., *loss, damage; disaster, defeat.* [calamity.

Caletī, -ōrum, also **Caletēs, -um**, m., pl., (kal′ ẹ-tī, kal′ ẹ-tēz), a people near the mouth of the Sequana (*Seine*).

callidus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [calleō, *be skillful*], adj., *skillful; tactful, crafty* (iii. 18).

cālō, -ōnis, m., *soldier's servant, camp servant.*

campester, -tris, -tre, [campus], adj., *of level ground, flat, level.*

campus, -ī, m., *plain.* [campus.

Camulogenus, -ī, m., (kam-ū-loj′ ẹ-nụs), an Aulercan, commander of the Parisii against Labienus.

Canīnius, -ī, m., *Gaius Caninius Rebilus*, (kạ-nin′ ị-ụs reb′ ị-lụs), a lieutenant of Caesar's in the latter part of the Gallic War, and in the Civil War; made consul by Caesar for a few hours to fill a vacancy on the last day of December, B.C. 45. vii. 83, 90; C. ii. 34.

canō, canere, cecinī, 3, *sing; of a musical instrument, sound, play.*

Cantabrī, -ōrum, m., pl., *Cantabrians, Cantabri* (kan′ tạ-brī), a warlike people in northern Spain.

Cantium, -ī, n., *Kent, Cantium*, (kan-sh[y] ụm), a district in the southeast part of England.

capillus, -ī, [cf. **caput**], m., *hair of the head, hair.* [capillary.

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, 3, *take, get; seize, capture; occupy, take possession of; select, win over, charm, captivate; receive;* of vessels, *reach, make; deceive* (i. 40). **initium capere**, *to begin.* **cōnsilium capere**, *to form a plan.* **dolōrem capere**, *to be grieved.* [capture.

Capitōlium, -ī, n., *the Capitol*, the temple of Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva on the Capitoline hill in Rome; sometimes referring to the hill as a whole, *the Capitoline hill.* C. i. 6. [Capitol.

capra, -ae, [caper], f., *she-goat.*

captīvus, -a, -um, [cf. **capiō**], adj., *taken prisoner, captured* (C. ii. 5). As noun, **captīvus, -ī**, m., *captive, prisoner* (vi. 43). [captive.

captus, -a, -um, see **capiō**.

captus, -ūs, [capiō], m., *capacity; understanding, notion* (iv. 3).

Capua, -ae, f., (kap′ ū-ạ), a city in Italy, in Campania. C. iii. 71.

caput, -itis, n., *head;* by metonymy, *person, man, life, safety;* of a river, *mouth* (iv. 10). **capitis poena**, *capital punishment* (vii. 71). **duo milia capitum**, *two thousand souls.* [capital.

Carcasō, -ōnis, f., (kär′ kạ-sō), a town in southern Gaul, now *Carcassonne* (iii. 20).

careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, 2, *be without, lack, want.* vi. 38; vii. 17.

carīna, -ae, f., *keel* of a ship.

Carnutēs, -um, m., pl., (kär′ nū-tēz), a people in Central Gaul, north of the Liger (*Loire*); chief city, Cenabum (Fig. 197).

Figure 197. — Coin of the Carnutes.

Bronze. Obverse, head of Hercules; inscription [A]CUSSROS.

Reverse, boar.

Copied from a Roman coin, except the name.

carō, carnis, f., *flesh, meat.* [carnage.

carpō, -ere, -sī, -tus, 3, *pluck; censure, criticise* (iii. 17). [carp.

carrus, -ī, m., *cart, wagon.* [car.

cārus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **carissimus**, adj., *dear, precious.*

Carvilius, -ī, m., (kạr-vil′ i̯-ụs), one of four British rulers in Kent. v. 22.

casa, -ae, f., *hut, cottage, barrack.*

cāseus, -ī, m., *cheese.* vi. 22.

Cassī, -ōrum, m., pl., (kas′ ī), a tribe in Britain. v. 21.

Cassiānus, -a, -um, [**Cassius**], adj., *of Cassius.* i. 13.

cassis, -idis, f., *helmet* of metal.

Cassius, -ī, m., *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, (kash′ [y]ụs lọn-jī′ nụs), praetor III B.C.; when consul, 107 B.C., he engaged in battle with the Tigurians in the territory of the Allobroges, and was defeated and slain. I. 7, 12.

Cassivellaunus, -ī, m., *Cassivellaunus* (kas′′ i̯-vẹ-lâ′ nụs), *Caswallon*, leader of the British army against Caesar in 54 B.C.

castellum, -ī, [dim. of **castrum**], n., *redoubt, fortress, stronghold.* [castle.

Casticus, -i, m., (kas′ ti̯-kụs), a prominent Sequanian. i. 3.

castīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, I, *reprove.* C. III. 60. [castigate.

castra, -ōrum, n., [pl. of **castrum**, *fortress*], *camp, encampment; military service* (I. 39); *day's march* (VII. 36). **castra movēre**, *to break camp.* **castra pōnere**, *to encamp, camp.* [-chester *in* Ro-chester, etc.

cāsus, -ūs, [**cadō**], m., *fall; chance, occurrence, happening, fortune; opportunity, event; accident, mishap, evil plight, death.* **cāsū**, *by chance.* [case.

Catamantāloedis, -is, m., (kat-ạman-tạ-lē′ dis), a leader among the Sequanians before Caesar's time. I. 3.

catēnae, -ārum, f., pl., *chains; fetters.*

Caturīgēs, -um, m., pl., (kat-ụ-rī′ jēz), a Gallic people in the eastern part of the Province. i. 10.

Catuvolcus, -ī, m., (kat-ụ-vol′ kụs), a ruler of the Eburones; despairing of success in the war against Caesar, he took poison. v. 24, 26; vi. 31.

causa, -ae, f., *cause, ground, reason; pretext, excuse; condition, state, case, suit.* **causā**, with gen., *for the sake of, on account of.* [cause.

cautē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [**cautus**, from **caveō**], adv., *cautiously, carefully.* v. 49.

cāutēs, -is, f., *jagged rock, cliff.* iii. 13.

Cavarillus, -ī, m., (kav-ạ-ril′ ụs), an Aeduan of high rank. vii. 67.

Cavarīnus, -ī, m., (kav-ạ-rī′ nụs), a ruler among the Senones. v. 54; vi. 5.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautūrus, 2, *be on one's guard, beware of, take precaution; give security.* [cautious.

Cavillōnum, -ī, n., (kav-i̯-lō′ nụm), an Aeduan city on the Arar, now *Châlon-sur-Saône.* VII. 42, 90.

Cebenna, -ae, f., *Cebenna* (sẹ-ben′ ạ), *the Cévennes*, a mountain range in southern Gaul, about 250 miles long.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, 3, *go away, depart, withdraw, retreat; yield, give up to; abandon.* [cede.

celer, -eris, -ere, comp. -ior, sup. **celerrimus**, adj., *quick, speedy.*

celeritās, -tātis, [**celer**], f., *speed, quickness, swiftness, rapidity, despatch.* [celerity.

celeriter, comp. **celerius**, sup. **celerrimē**, [**celer**], adv., *quickly, speedily, at once, immediately.*

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, I, *conceal, hide, keep secret.* ii. 32; vii. 80.

Celtae, -ārum, m., pl., *Celts, Celtae* (sel′ tē), inhabitants of central Gaul, divided into many states.

Celtillus, -ī, m., (sẹl-til′ ụs), an Arvernian ruler, father of Vercingetorix. vii. 4.

Cēnabēnsēs, -ium, [Cēnabum], m., pl., *the inhabitants of Cenabum.*

Cēnabum, -ī, n., (sen′ ạ-bụm), chief city of the Carnutes, later called *Aurelianensis Urbs*, whence comes *Orléans*, name of the city on the site of Cenabum.

Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, m., pl., (sen-ị-mag′ nī), a British people. v. 21.

Cēnomanī, -ōrum, (sẹ-nom′ạ-nī), see Aulercī.

cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -us, 2, *estimate; think, hold, judge; decree, resolve upon, determine; vote for, favor.*

cēnsus, -ūs, [cēnseō], m., *count, enumeration.* i. 29. [census.

centum, or C, indeclinable num. adj., *hundred.* [cent. *in* per cent.

centuriō, -ōnis, [centuria], m., *centurion.* [centurion.

cernō, cernere, crēvī, 3, *separate; distinguish, discern, see, perceive.*

certāmen, -inis, [certō], n., *contest, rivalry* (v. 44); *struggle, battle, engagement* (iii. 14).

certē, comp. **certius**, [certus], adv., affirmative, *certainly, surely* (vi. 31); restrictive, *at least, at any rate* (IV. 25, V. 29, VII. 50).

certus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [part. of cernō], adj., *certain, fixed, definite; positive, undoubted, trustworthy, true.* **certiōrem facere**, *to inform.* **certior fierī**, *to be informed.* Neut. as noun, **certī quid esset**, *what was really going on* (vii. 45); **prō certō**, *as a certainty, as certain* (vii. 5). [certain.

cervus, -ī, m., *stag* (vi. 26); in military language, *stag's horns*, a device for hindering the approach of an enemy (vii. 72). [cervine.

cēterus, -a, -um, nom. sing. m. not in use, adj., *other, the other, the rest, remainder;* pl., *the rest, all the others, the other.* As noun, **cēterī, -ōrum**, m., pl., *the others, all the rest, every one else;* **cētera, -ōrum**, n., pl., *the rest, all else, everything else.*

Ceutronēs, -um, m., pl. (sū′ trọ-nēz):

(1) A Belgic people, subject to the Nervians. v. 39.

(2) A people in the eastern part of the Province. i. 10.

chara, -ae, f., *chara*, a plant the tuberous roots of which were used by Caesar's soldiers for food. C. III. 48.

Cheruscī, -ōrum, m., pl., (kẹ-rus′ ī), a German people north of the Suebi. vi. 10.

cibāria, -ōrum, [cibārius, from cibus], n., pl., *provisions, rations.*

cibus, -ī, m., *food, nourishment.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Quintus Tullius Cicero* (tul′ ị-ụs sis′ ẹ-rō), brother of Marcus Tullius Cicero, the orator, born about 102 B.C. He became a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul in 55, and made a heroic defence of his camp in 54; he held aloof from Caesar in the Civil War, but was reconciled with him in 47; he was put to death by order of the triumvirs in 43 B.C.

Ciliciēnsis, -e, [Cilicia], adj., *Cilician, of Cilicia*, a province in the southern part of Asia Minor.

Cimberius, -ī, m., (sim-bē′ rị-ụs), a leader of the Suebi. i. 37.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m., pl., *Cimbrians, Cimbri* (sim′ brī), a Germanic people that joined with the Teutones in the invasion of Gaul.

Cingetorīx, -īgis, m., (sịn-jet′ ọ-rịks):

(1) Rival of Indutiomarus for the headship of the Treverans, and loyal to Caesar. v. 3, 4, 56, 57; vi. 8.

(2) A British ruler. v. 22.

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus, 3, *surround, encircle; invest.* [cincture.

cippus, -ī, m., *stake, post.* vii. 73.

circinus, -ī, [= κίρκινος], m., *pair of compasses.* i. 38.

circiter, [circus, *circle*], adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., *about, not far from, near.*

(2) As prep., with acc. only, *about* (i. 50).

circuitus, -ūs, [circumeō], m., *a going around; detour, circuit, winding path, way around.* [circuit.

circum, [acc. of circus, *circle*], adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., *about, around.*

(2) As prep. with acc., *around, about; in the neighborhood of, near, near by.*

circumcīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [circum + caedō], 3, *cut around, cut.* v. 42.

circumcīsus, -a, -um, [part. of circumcīdō], adj., *cut off; steep, precipitous.* vii. 36.

circumclūdō, -dere, -sī, -sus, [circum + claudō], 3, *encircle.* vi. 28.

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, [circum + dō, *place*], 1, *place around, encompass, surround, encircle.*

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [circum + dūcō], 3, *lead around; trace* (i. 38). [circumduct.

circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, [circum + eō], irr., *go around, pass around; surround, encircle; go about, visit* for inspection (v. 2).

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [circum + fundō], 3, *pour around; surround, hem in;* pass. often used reflexively, *spread (themselves) around, crowd around.*

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [circum + iaciō], 3, *throw around, place around.* ii. 6.

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [circum + mittō], 3, *send around.* v. 51; vii. 63.

circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [circum + mūniō], 4, *surround with walls, fortify; hem in* (ii. 30).

circumplector, -plectī, 3, dep., *embrace, encompass, surround.* vii. 83.

circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī or -stitī, [circum + sistō], 3, *stand around, surround, take a position around.*

circumspiciō, -icere, -exī, -ectus, [circum + speciō, *look*], 3, *look about, survey; ponder, consider; look about for, look over* (v. 31). [circumspect.

circumvāllō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [circum + vāllō], 1, *surround with a rampart, blockade, invest.*

circumvehor, -vehī, -vectus, [circum + vehō], 3, pass. as dep., *ride around* (vii. 45); *sail around.*

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, [circum + veniō], 4, *come around, go around; surround, encompass; ensnare, overreach, deceive.* [circumvent.

cis, prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, [cis + Alpīnus], adj., *Cisalpine, on this* (the Italian) *side of the Alps.* [Cisalpine.

Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um, [cis + Rhēnānus], adj., *on this side* (the west side) *of the Rhine.* vi. 2.

Cita, (sī′ ta), see **Fūfius.**

citātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [citō], adj., *rapid.* iv. 10.

citerior, -us, [citer, from cis], comp. adj., *on this side, hither, nearer.*

citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of ciēō, *set in motion*], 1, *urge on.* C. III. 96. [cite.

cito, comp. citius, sup. citissimē, [citus], adv., *speedily.* citissimē, *with the utmost rapidity* (iv. 33).

citrā, [citer, from cis], prep. with acc. only, *on this side of.*

citrō, [citer, from cis], adv., *hither.* **ultrō citrōque**, *to and fro, back and forth* (i. 42).

cīvis, -is, m. and f., *citizen, fellow-citizen.* [civil.

cīvitās, -tātis, [cīvis], f., *body of citizens, state, nation; citizenship* (i. 47). [city.

clam, [cf. cēlō], adv., *secretly.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of clāmō], I, *cry out loudly, shout.*

clāmor, -ōris, [cf. clāmō, *cry out*], m., *outcry, shout, din.* [clamor.

clandestīnus, -a, -um, [clam], adj., *secret, hidden.* vii. 1, 64. [clandestine.

clārē, [clārus], adv., *loudly, distinctly.* C. III. 94.

clārus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *clear, distinct;* of the voice, *loud* (v. 30); *famous.* [clear.

classicum, -ī, [classicus, -a, -um, from classis], n., *trumpet signal.* C. III. 82.

classis, -is, f., *a class; a fleet.* [class.

Claudius, -ī, m., *Appius Claudius Pulcher*, (klâ′ dĭ-ŭs pul′ kẽr), brother of Clodius (see below); praetor in 57 B.C., and consul in 54. v. 1.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, 3, *shut, close.* [close.

clāvus, -ī, m., *nail, spike.* iii. 13.

clēmentia, -ae, [clēmēns], f., *forbearance, mercifulness.* [clemency.

Cleopātra, -ae, f., (klē-ŏ-pā′ trạ), sister of the young Egyptian king, Ptolemy, and afterwards queen of Egypt. C. III. 103.

cliēns, -entis, m., *retainer, dependent, client, adherent.* [client.

clientēla, -ae, [cliēns], f., *relation of client to patron, clientship, vassalage;* pl., *following of clients* (vii. 32), *dependencies* (vi. 12). [clientele.

clīvus, -ī, m., *slope.* VII. 46.

Clōdius, -ī, m., (klō′ dĭ-ŭs):

(1) *Publius Clodius Pulcher*, the enemy of Cicero, who as tribune in 58 B.C. drove the orator into exile; he was killed in 52 B.C. VII. 1.

(2) *Aulus Clodius*, a mutual friend of Caesar and of Scipio. C. III. 90.

Cn., = Gnaeus (nē′ ŭs), a Roman first name.

co-, see **com-**.

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [co- + acervō], I, *heap up, pile up.* ii. 27.

coāctus, pf. pass. part. of **cōgō**.

coāctus, -ūs, [cōgō], m., only abl. sing. in use, *compulsion.* v. 27.

coagmentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [coagmentum, cf. cōgō], I, *fasten together.* vii. 23. [coagment.

coartō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [co- + artō, *make close*], I, *press together, crowd together.* vii. 70.

Cocosātēs, -um, m., pl., (kok-ọ-sā′ tēz), a people in Aquitania. iii. 27.

coëmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [co- + emō], 3, *buy up, purchase.*

coĕō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum est, [co- + eō], irr., *come together, join together.* vi. 22.

coepī, -isse, coeptus, def., (present supplied by incipiō), *have begun, began.*

coërceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus, [co- + arceō, *shut up*], 2, *confine; restrain, check* (i. 17; v. 7). [coerce.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [co- +, agĭtō], I, *think about, think; intend, purpose, plan.* [cogitate.

cognātiō, -ōnis, [cognātus], f., *blood-relationship; blood-relations, kindred.* [cognation.

cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, cognitus, [co- + (g)nōscō], 3, *become acquainted with, learn, learn of, ascertain; be familiar with, know,*

recognize; spy out, examine; take cognizance of. [cognizance.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, [co- + agō], 3, *drive together, bring together, collect, gather, assemble; compel, force, oblige.* [cogent.

cohors, -hortis, f., *cohort, battalion,* the tenth part of a legion. [cohort.

cohortātiō, -ōnis, [cohortor], f., *encouraging, exhortation.* ii. 25.

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus, [co- + hortor], 1, dep., *encourage; urge, exhort; address* with encouraging words. [cohortative.

collabefīō, -fierī, -factus, [com- + labefīō, *be shaken loose*], pass., *be shattered.* C. II. 6.

collātus, see **cōnferō.**

collaudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + laudō], 1, *praise warmly, commend.*

colligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + ligō, *bind*], 1, *bind together, fasten together.* i. 25.

colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [com- + legō, *gather*], 3, *gather together, collect, assemble; obtain, get.* **sē colligere,** *to gather themselves together; to form* in battle order (III. 19); *to recover themselves, rally.* [collect.

collis, -is, m., *hill, height, elevation.*

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + locō, *place*], 1, *place, set, post, station; set in order, arrange;* with or without **nūptum,** *give in marriage* (i. 18). [collocate.

colloquium, -i, [colloquor], n., *conference, interview.* [colloquy.

colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus, [com- + loquor], 3, dep., *talk with, hold a conference, hold a parley.*

colō, colere, coluī, cultus, 3, *cultivate, till* (iv. 1; v. 12); *honor, worship* (vi. 17).

colōnia, -ae, [colōnus], f., *colony, settlement.* vi. 24. [colony.

color, -ōris, m., *color.* [color.

com-, co-, prep., old form of **cum,** *with,* found only in composition; see **cum.**

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, [com- + *būrō, = ūrō, *burn*], 3, *burn up, consume* by fire. i. 5. [combustion.

comes, -itis, [co- + eō], m. and f., *companion, comrade.* [count (title).

comitātus, -ūs, [comes], m., *retinue, company.* C. III. 61, 96. [county.

comitia, -ōrum, [sing. **comitium,** *meeting-place* for elections], n., pl., *elections* (vii. 67; C. III. 82).

comitor, -ārī, -ātus, [comes], 1, dep., *accompany, attend.* vi. 8.

commeātus, -ūs, [commeō], m., *passing to and fro, trip, voyage* (v. 23); *supplies, provisions,* often including grain, **frūmentum.**

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + memorō], 1, *call to mind, recount, relate.* [commemorate.

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + mandō], 1, *commit* to one *for protection, entrust; ask favor for, commend.* [commend.

commentārius, -ī, [commentor], m., *note-book, source-book.* [commentary.

commeō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + meō, *go*], 1, *go to and fro, visit, resort to.* i. 1; vii. 36.

commīlitō, -ōnis, [com- + mīlitō, from mīles], m., *fellow-soldier, comrade.*

comminus, [com- + manus], adv., *hand to hand, at close quarters.*

commissūra, -ae, [committō], f., *joint, seam, juncture.* vii. 72.

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [com- + mittō], 3, *join, bring together, connect; entrust, commit; cause, do, perpetrate.* **committere proelium,** *to join battle, begin the engagement.* [commit.

Commius, -ī, m., *Comm, Commius*, (kom′ i̯-u̯s), an Atrebatian, loyal and useful to Caesar (especially in the British campaigns) till the uprising in 52, when he became a commander in the Gallic army raised for the relief of Alesia.

commodē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [commodus], adv., *conveniently, opportunely, to advantage; readily, easily; fitly, suitably, properly.*

commodus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [com- + modus, i.e. *having full measure*], adj., *convenient, advantageous, easy; good, favorable; suitable, fit.* As noun, **commodum**, -ī, n., *convenience, advantage, profit.* [commodious.

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [commoneō + faciō], 3, *remind; impress upon* one (i. 19).

commoror, -ārī, -ātus, [com- + moror], 1, dep., *delay, linger.*

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, commōtus, [com- + moveō], 2, *disturb, disquiet, alarm; move, stir.* [commotion.

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [commūnis], 1, *share together, share with, divide with; communicate, impart; consult with* (v. 36). [communicate.

commūniō, -īre, -īvī or -ī, -ītus, [com- + mūniō], 4, *fortify on all sides, strongly fortify, intrench.*

commūnis, -e, [com- + mūnus], adj., *common, in common, general, public; indiscriminate* (vi. 9). **commūnī cōnciliō**, *in accordance with the general plan, by common consent.* **in commūnī conciliō**, *at a general council* (ii. 4; vii. 15). [common.

commūtātiō, -ōnis, [commūtō], f., *complete change, alteration.*

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + mūtō], 1, *change, wholly change, alter; exchange* (vi. 22). [commute.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + parō], 1, *prepare, make ready, get together; acquire, secure; amass,* (i. 18).

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com-par, *like*], 1, *match, compare.* [compare.

compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [com- + pellō], 3, *drive together, collect; drive, force.* [compel.

compendium, -ī, [com- + pendō], n., *profit, gain.* vii. 43. [compend.

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertus, [com- + PER in experior], 4, *ascertain, learn, discover, find out.*

complector, -plectī, -plexus, [com- + plectō, *braid*], 3, dep., *embrace,* (i. 20); *surround, include, encompass* (vii. 72, 74). [complex.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [com- + pleō, *fill*], 2, *fill up, fill; complete, cover;* of troops, *fully occupy, fill full.* [complete.

complexus, see **complector.**

complūrēs, -a, [com- + plūrēs, from plūs], adj., pl., *several, a number of; many.* As noun, **complūrēs**, -ium, m., pl., *a great many, quite a number, many.*

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + portō], 1, *bring in, carry, convey, bring over.* [comport.

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, [com- + prehendō], 3, *grasp; seize; arrest, capture;* of fire, *catch* (v. 43). [comprehend.

comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + probō], 1, *approve fully, justify.*

cōnātum, -ī, [n. of cōnātus, part. of cōnor], n., *attempt, undertaking.*

cōnātus, -ūs, [cōnor], m., *attempt.*

cōnātus, pf. part. of **cōnor.**

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [com- + cēdō], 3, *withdraw, de-*

part; give up, yield, cede; submit; allow, grant; grant permission, permit. [concede.

concelebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + celebrō], 1, *frequent; publish abroad, make known.* C. III. 72.

concessus, -ūs, [concēdō], m., used only in abl. sing., *permission, leave.*

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, [com- + cadō], 3, *fall down, fall; perish, be slain.*

concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [com- + caedō], 3, *cut up, cut off; cut to pieces, kill, slay, destroy.*

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [concilium], 1, *win over, reconcile; win, gain, procure.* [conciliate.

concilium, -ī, n., *meeting, assembly.* [council.

concinō, -ere, -uī, [com- + canō], 3, *sound together.* C. III. 92.

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + citō], 1, *rouse, stir up.*

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + clāmō, *shout*], 1, *cry aloud together, shout, cry out.*

conclūsus, -a, -um, [conclūdō], adj., *confined, shut in.* III. 9.

Conconnetodumnus, -ī, m., (kŏn-kŏn′ ĕ-tō-dum′ nŭs), a chief of the Carnutes. vii. 3.

concrepō, -āre, -uī, -itus, [com- + crepō, *rattle*], 1, *rattle, clash.* vii. 21.

concurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum est, [com- + currō], 3, *run together, run up, rush; charge; gather; resort* (VI. 13). [concur.

concursō, -āre, [freq. of concurrō], 1, *rush to and fro, run about.*

concursus, -ūs, [concurrō], m., *running together; dashing together, collision* (v. 10; C. II. 6); *onset, charge* (vi. 8; vii. 62). [concourse.

condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + damnō], 1, *condemn, find guilty (of).* vii. 19. [condemn.

condiciō, -ōnis, [com- + DIC, *declare*], f., *condition, situation, state; terms, stipulation.* [condition.

condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + dōnō], 1, *give up, overlook, disregard, pardon.* i. 20. [condone.

Condrūsī, -ōrum, m., pl. (kŏn-drū′ sī), a Belgic people on the right bank of the Mosa (*Meuse*).

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [com- + dūcō], 3, *bring together, collect; hire.* [conduce.

cōnfectus, see **cōnficiō**.

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātus, [com- + ferō], irr., *bring together, gather, collect, convey; compare* (i. 31); *ascribe, refer* (i. 40); *put off, postpone* (i. 40). **sē cōnferre**, *to betake one's self, turn, proceed.* [confer.

cōnfertus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part of cōnferciō], adj., *crowded together, close, dense.*

cōnfestim, adv., *immediately, at once, speedily.*

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [com- + faciō], 3, *do thoroughly, complete, finish, accomplish, do; bring to an end, wear out, exhaust, enfeeble;* of troops, *bring together, furnish* (ii. 4). [confectionery.

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, [com- + fīdō, *trust*], 3, semi-dep., *trust firmly, rely upon, have confidence in; believe, be confident.* [confide.

cōnfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, [com- + fīgō, *fasten*], 3, *fasten together, join.* iii. 13.

cōnfīnis, -e, [com- + fīnis], adj., *bordering on, adjoining.* vi. 3.

cōnfīnium, -ī, [cōnfīnis], n., *boundary, frontier.* v. 24. [confine.

cōnfīō, -fierī, [com- + fīō], irr., sometimes used instead of **cōnficior**, pass. of **cōnficiō**, *be accomplished, be done.* vii. 58.

cōnfīrmātiō, -ōnis, [cōnfīrmō], f., *assurance.* iii. 18. [confirmation.

cōnfīrmātus, -a, -um, [cōnfīrmō], adj., comp. **cōnfīrmātior**, *encouraged, confident.* C. III. 84.

cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com-, cf. fīrmus], 1, *strengthen, confirm; arrange for, establish; reassure, encourage; assert, declare; assure.* [confirm.

cōnfīsus, -a, -um, see **cōnfīdō**.

cōnfiteor, -fitērī, -fessus, [com- + fateor, *confess*], 2, dep., *confess, acknowledge.* v. 27. [confess.

cōnfixus, -a, -um, see **cōnfīgō**.

cōnflagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + flagrō, *blaze*), 1, *be in flames, be on fire.* v. 43. [conflagration.

cōnflīctō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **cōnflīgō**], 1, dep., *harass, assail.* v. 35. [conflict.

cōnflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctus, [com- + flīgō, *strike*], 3, *dash together; contend, fight.*

cōnfluēns, -entis, [cōnfluō], m., *flowing together* of two streams, *confluence.* iv. 15.

cōnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, [com- + fluō], 3, *flow together; flock* (vii. 44). [confluent.

cōnfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, [com- + fugiō], 3, *flee for refuge.* vi. 5.

cōnfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [com- + fundō], 3, *pour together; mass together* (vii. 75). [confound.

congerō, -gerere, -gessī, -gestus, [com- + gerō], 3, *bring together, collect.* C. II. 37.

congredior, -gredī, -gressus, [com- + gradior, *step*], 3, dep., *come together, meet, unite with; join battle, engage, contend.*

congressus, -a, -um, see **congredior**.

congressus, -ūs, [congredior], m., *meeting; encounter, engagement* (iii. 13). [congress.

conicio, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [com- + iaciō], 3, *throw together, hurl, cast; throw up, throw; place, put.* **in fugam conicere**, *to put to flight.*

coniectūra, -ae, [coniciō], f., *inference.* [conjecture.

coniūnctim, [coniungō], adv., *jointly, in common.*

coniūnctus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [part of **coniungō**], adj., *connected; closely allied* (vii. 33). [conjunct.

coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, [com- + iungō], 3, *join together, unite, join.* [conjoin.

coniūnx, **coniugis**, [coniungō], m. and f., *husband; wife, spouse* (vii. 14). [conjugal.

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, [coniūrō], f., *union bound by oath, league; conspiracy, plot.*

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + -iūrō], 1, *take oath together* (vii. 1); *form a league, conspire, plot.* [conjure.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, 1, dep., *endeavor, attempt, undertake, try.* [conative.

conquiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētūrus, [com- + quiēscō, *rest*], 3, *take complete rest, repose.* vii. 46.

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, [com- + quaerō], 3, *seek out, hunt up; bring together, collect.*

conquīsītus, see **conquīrō**.

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, [com- + sanguineus, from **sanguis**], adj., *of the same blood.* As noun, m., and f., *relative, kinsman;* pl., *kinsfolk, blood-relations.* [consanguineous.

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [com- + scandō, *climb*],

3, *mount, ascend.* **nāvēs cōnscendere**, *to embark.*

cōnscientia, **-ae**, [cōnsciō], f., *knowledge* (v. 56); with **animī**, *moral sense, conscience* (C. III. 60). [conscience.

cōnscīscō, **-scīscere**, **-scīvī**, **-scītus**, [**com-** + **sciscō**, *approve*], 3, *decree, appoint; inflict, bring upon.* **sibi mortem cōnscīscere**, *to commit suicide* (i. 4; iii. 22).

cōnscius, **-a**, **-um**, [**com-**, cf. **sciō**], adj., *conscious, aware (of).* [conscious.

cōnscrībō, **-scrībere**, **-scrīpsī**, **-scrīptus**, [**com-** + **scrībō**], 3, *write* (v. 48); *enrol, levy, enlist.* [conscript.

cōnscrīptus, see **cōnscrībō**.

cōnsecrātus, **-a**, **-um**, [part. of **cōnsecrō**], adj., *holy, sacred.* [consecrate.

cōnsector, **-ārī**, **-ātus**, [**cōnsequor**], 1, dep., *follow up, pursue.*

cōnsecūtus, see **cōnsequor**.

cōnsēnsiō, **-ōnis**, [**cōnsentiō**], f., *common feeling, agreement.* vii. 76.

cōnsēnsus, **-ūs**, [**cōnsentiō**], m., *common feeling, agreement, understanding.* [consensus.

cōnsentiō, **-sentīre**, **-sēnsī**, **-sēnsus**, [**com-** + **sentiō**], 4; *agree; plot together, conspire.* [consent.

cōnsequor, **-sequī**, **-secūtus**, [**com-** + **sequor**], 3, dep., *follow after, follow; pursue, overtake; obtain, secure, gain.* [consequence.

cōnservō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**com-** + **servō**], 1, *save, spare;* of laws or rights, *observe, maintain.* [conserve.

cōnsīderātē, [**cōnsīderātus**, from **cōnsīderō**], adv., *circumspectly.* Comp. **cōnsīderātius**, *with unusual caution* (C. III. 82).

Cōnsidius, **-ī**, m., *Publius Considius*, (kŏn-sĭd′ ĭ-ŭs), an officer in Caesar's army.

cōnsīdō, **-sīdere**, **-sēdī**, **-sessum**, [**com-** + **sīdō**, *sit*], 3, *sit down, seat one's self; halt, encamp; take up an abode, establish one's self, settle.*

cōnsilium, **-ī**, [cf. **cōnsulō**], n., *consultation, deliberation, counsel; gathering for deliberation, council; advice; decision, plan, design, scheme; project, proposal; good judgment, prudence, discretion.* **cōnsilium inīre** or **habēre**, *to form a plan.* [counsel.

cōnsimilis, **-e**, [**com-** + **similis**], adj., *very like, quite like.*

cōnsistō, **-sistere**, **-stitī**, [**com-** + **sistō**, *set, place*], 3, *stand, stop, halt; take a position, be posted, make a stand; stay, remain; sojourn, settle; consist (in), depend (on).* **in orbem cōnsistere**, *to form a circle* (v. 33). [consist.

cōnsobrīnus, **-ī**, [**com-**, cf. **soror**], m., *cousin.* vii. 76. [cousin.

cōnsōlor, **-ārī**, **-ātus**, [**com-** + **sōlor**, *comfort*], 1, dep., *comfort, cheer, encourage.* [console.

cōnspectus, **-ūs**, [**cōnspiciō**], m., *sight, view, presence.* [conspectus.

cōnspiciō, **-spicere**, **-spexī**, **-spectus**, [**com-** + **speciō**, *look*], 3, *observe, behold, see, perceive.*

cōnspicor, **-ārī**, **-ātus**, 1, dep., *catch sight of, see, observe.*

cōnspīrō, **-ārē**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**com-** + **spīrō**, *breathe*], 1, *agree; combine, form a league, conspire* (iii. 10). [conspire.

cōnstanter, comp. **-ius**, sup. **-issimē**, [**cōnstāns**], adv., *resolutely* (iii. 25); *uniformly, unanimously* (ii. 2).

cōnstantia, **-ae**, [**cōnstāns**], f., *firmness, resolution.* [constancy.

cōnsternō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, 1,

alarm, terrify. vii. 30. [consternation.

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus, [com- + sternō], 3, *strew over, cover* (IV. 17); *strew, carpet* (C. III. 96).

cōnstīpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + stīpō, *press*], I, *crowd together, crowd closely.* v. 43.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus, [com- + statuō], 3, *station, place, draw up; bring to a halt, stop* (vii. 47); of ships, *moor; appoint, establish; resolve upon, determine, decide, fix, settle.* [constitute.

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, [com- + stō], I, *stand firm; remain the same* (vii. 35); *remain, lie* (vii. 21); *depend on* (vii. 84); *cost* (vii. 19); *be made up of* (C. II. 36). **cōnstat,** impers., *it is certain, well-known, evident, it is clear.*

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, [com- + suēscō, *become used*], 3, *form a habit, become accustomed, be accustomed, be wont.*

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, [cōnsuēscō], f., *habit, practice, custom, usage; mode of life* (v. 14, vi. 21); *practice* in speaking a language (i. 47). **cōnsuētūdō vīctūs,** *standard of living* (I. 31). [custom.

cōnsuētus, see **cōnsuēscō.**

cōnsul, -ulis, m., *consul,* one of the two chief magistrates at Rome, chosen annually. [consul.

cōnsulāris, -e, [cōnsul], adj., *consular.* C. I. 6. [consular.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, [cōnsul], m., *consulship.* i. 35. [consulate.

cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultus, 3, *consult, deliberate, take counsel of;* with dat., *have regard for, look out for.*

cōnsultō, [cōnsulō], adv., *on purpose, designedly, purposely.*

cōnsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of cōnsulō], I, *deliberate, take counsel.* v. 53; vii. 77. [consult.

cōnsultum, -ī, [cōnsultus, from cōnsulō], n., *deliberation; resolution, decree, decision.*

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, [com- + sūmō], 3, *use up, devour, eat up; waste, exhaust, destroy;* of time, *spend, pass.* [consume.

cōnsūmptus, see **cōnsūmō.**

cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, consurrēctum est, [com- + surgō, *rise*], 3, *rise together, arise, stand up.*

contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com-, cf. tabula, *board*], I, *construct of boards; build up in stories.* vii. 22.

contāgiō, -ōnis, [cf. contingō], f., *contact.* vi. 13. [contagion.

contāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [contāmen, = contāgiō], I, *taint, pollute.* vii. 43. [contaminate.

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, [com- + tegō], 3, *cover, cover up* (vii. 85).

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptus, [com- + temnō, *despise*], I, *despise, hold in contempt.* [contemn.

contemptiō, -ōnis, [cf. contemnō], f., *a despising, contempt, scorn.*

contemptus, -ūs, [contemnō], m., *scorn.* [contempt.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, [com- + tendō], 3, *put forth effort, strive for, make effort, strive; demand* (vii. 63, C. III. 97); *hasten, make haste, push forward; struggle, contend, vie; maintain, insist, protest* (vi. 37, 41, 43). [contend.

contentiō, -ōnis, [contendō], f., *effort; struggle, fight, contest; dispute, controversy.* [contention.

contentus, -a, -um, [part. of contineō], adj., *satisfied.* [content.

contexō, **-texere**, **-texuī**, **-textus**, [**com-** + **texō**, *weave*], 3, *weave together, weave; bind together, join, construct.* [context.

continēns, **-entis**, [part. of **contineō**], adj., *adjoining; continuous, unbroken, consecutive.* **continentī impetū**, *without pausing* (vii. 28). As noun, (originally sc. **terra**), f., *mainland.* [continent.

continenter, [**continēns**], adv., *constantly, incessantly, without interruption, continually.*

continentia, **-ae**, [**continēns**], f., *self-restraint, moderation.* vii. 52.

contineō, **-tinēre**, **-tinuī**, **-tentus**, [**com-** + **teneō**], 2, *hold together; hold; hold back, keep in hand; keep, retain, detain, shut in;* of places and regions, *hem in, bound, border;* of space, *fill* (i. 38); of a rite, pass., *consist of* (vii. 2). [contain.

contingō, **-tingere**, **-tigī**, **-tāctus**, [**com-** + **tangō**], 3, *touch, extend to, border on, reach; happen, fall to the lot of* (i. 43). [contact.

continuātiō, **-ōnis**, [verb **continuō**], f., *succession.* iii. 29. [continuation.

continuō, [**continuus**], adv., *forthwith, immediately, at once.*

continuus, **-a**, **-um**, [**com-**, cf. **teneō**], adj., *successive, uninterrupted.* [continuous.

cōntiō, **-ōnis**, [for *coventiō, **co-**, cf. **veniō**], f., *assembly, meeting* (v. 52, vii. 52); *address, harangue.* **hāc habitā cōntiōne**, *having delivered this address* (vii. 53).

cōntiōnor, **-ārī**, **-ātus**, [**cōntiō**], 1, dep., *address* an assembly, *make an address.* C. i. 7.

contrā, [related to **com-**], adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., *opposite, in opposition, on the other side; on the other hand, on the contrary* (v. 31). **contrā atque**, *otherwise than, contrary to what* (iv. 13).

(2) As prep., with acc. only, *opposite to, facing, over against, contrary to; against, in hostility to, to the disadvantage of, in spite of; in reply to* (v. 29).

contrahō, **-trahere**, **-trāxī**, **-trāctus**, [**com-** + **trahō**], 3, *bring together, collect; draw in, contract, make smaller* (v. 49; vii. 40). [contract.

contrārius, **-a**, **-um**, [**contrā**], adj., *opposite, contrary.* **ex contrāriō**, *on the contrary* (vii. 30). [contrary.

contrōversia, **-ae**, [**contrōversus**], f., *dispute, debate, controversy, quarrel.* **minuere contrōversiās**, *to settle the questions at issue* (v. 26; vi. 23). [controversy.

contumēlia, **-ae**, f., *insult, indignity;* of waves, *buffeting* (iii. 13). [contumely.

convalēscō, **-valēscere**, **-valuī**, [**com-** + **valēscō**, inch. from **valeō**], 3, *grow strong, get well, recover.* vi. 36. [convalesce.

convallis, **-is**, [**com-** + **vallis**], f., *valley, ravine, defile.*

convehō, **-vehere**, **-vexī**, **-vectus**, [**com-** + **vehō**], 3, *bring together, collect, store.* vii. 74.

conveniō, **-venīre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventum est**, [**com-** + **veniō**], 4, *come together, gather, assemble, meet, come* in a body; *come* to an assembly (v. 56); *be agreed upon* (i. 36, ii. 19); impers., *be fitting* (vii. 85); *fall in with, meet* (i. 27). [convene.

conventus, **-ūs**, [cf. **conveniō**], m., *assembly, meeting; court.* [convent.

conversus, see **convertō**.

convertō, **-vertere**, **-vertī**, **-versus**, [**com-** + **vertō**], 3, *turn, direct, turn about, wheel around; change* (i. 41). **conversa signa īnferre**, *to face*

about and advance (i. 25; ii. 26). [convert.

Convictolitāvis, -is, acc. -im, (vii. 55), m., (kon′ vĭk-tŏ-lĭ-tā′ vĭs), an Aeduan whose claims to the office of Vergobret were sustained by Caesar.

convictus, see **convincō**.

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, [com- + vincō], 3, *prove clearly, establish, prove* (i. 40). [convict.

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + vocō], 1, *call together, summon, assemble.* [convoke.

coörior, -orīrī, -ortus, [co- + orior], 4, dep., *arise;* of storm and wind, *arise, rise, spring up;* of war, *break out* (iii. 7).

coörtus, see **coörior**.

cōpia, -ae, [= co-opia, from co- + ops], f., *quantity, abundance, supply, plenty.* Pl., **cōpiae**, -ārum, *means, resources, wealth; forces, troops.*

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cōpia], adj., *well-supplied, wealthy, rich.* i. 23. [copious.

cōpula, -ae, [co- + AP in aptus], f., *band;* pl., *grappling-hooks* (iii. 13). [copula.

cor, **cordis**, n., *heart.* **cordī esse**, *to be dear* (vi. 19). [cordial.

cōram, [co-, cf. ōs, *face*], adv., *face to face, in person.* **cōram perspicit** (v. 11) or **cernit** (vi. 8), *he sees with his own eyes.* As prep., with the ablative, *in the presence of.*

Coriosolitēs, -um, m., pl., (kō′ rĭ-ō-sol′ ĭ-tēz), a people along the northwestern coast of Gaul.

corium, -ī, n., *hide.* vii. 22.

Cornēlius, -a, -um, adj., *of Cornelius, Cornelian.* **castra Cornēlia**, *Cornelian camp*, near Utica (C. ii. 37).

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn;* of a deer, *antler* (vi. 26); of an army, *wing.*

corōna, -ae, [= κορώνη], f., *crown, wreath* (iii. 16); of soldiers, *continuous cordon, cordon* (vii. 72). [crown.

corpus, -oris, n., *body.* [corporal.

corripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, [com- + rapiō], 3, *snatch up; seize, carry away* (C. iii. 64).

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [com- + rumpō, *break*], 3, *spoil, destroy.* vii. 55, 64. [corrupt.

cortex, corticis, m. and f., *bark* of a tree. ii. 33, C. iii. 49.

Cōrus, -ī, m., *northwest wind.* v. 7.

coss., = **cōnsulibus**, from **cōnsul.**

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, [cotīdiē], adj., *daily; ordinary, usual.*

cotīdiē, [quot + diēs], adv., *daily, every day.*

Cotta, -ae, m.:

(1) *L. Aurunculeius Cotta*, see Aurunculeius.

(2) *L. Aurelius Cotta* (â-rē′ lĭ-ŭs kot′ ă), consul in 65 B.C. C. i. 6.

Cotuātus, -ī, m., (kot-ū-ā′ tŭs), a leader of the Carnutes. vii. 3.

Cotus, -ī, m., (kō′ tŭs), an Aeduan, rival of Convictolitavis for the office of Vergobret. vii. 32, 33, 39, 67.

crassitūdō, -inis, [**crassus**, *thick*], f., *thickness.* iii. 13; vii. 73.

Crassus, -ī, m., (kras′ ŭs):

(1) *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, member of the triumvirate with Caesar and Pompey, consul in 55 B.C.; perished in the disastrous Parthian expedition, 53 B.C. i. 21; iv. 1.

(2) *Publius Licinius Crassus*, younger son of the triumvir, lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul, B.C. 58–56; returning to Rome in 55, he followed his father to the East and fell in the same battle, 53 B.C. i. 52; ii. 34; iii. 7, 8, 9, 11, 20–27.

(3) *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, elder son of the triumvir, quaestor in Caesar's army after his brother

Publius left Gaul. v. 24, 46, 47; vi. 6.

Crāstinus, -ī, [crās], m., (kras′ tị-nụs), a brave soldier in Caesar's army. C. III. 91, 99.

crātēs, -is, f., *wicker-work, wattle; hurdle, fascine.* [crate, grate.

crēber, -bra, -brum, comp. **crēbrior**, sup. **crēberrimus**, adj., *thick, numerous, frequent, a great many.*

crēbrō, comp. **crēbrius**, sup. **crēberrimē**, [crēber], adv., *frequently, in quick succession.* vii. 41.

crēdō, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**, **crēditus**, 3, *trust, believe, think, suppose; intrust, consign* (vi. 31). [creed, credit.

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *burn; burn to death* (i. 4.) [cremate.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *create, make; choose, elect, appoint.* [create.

crēscō, **crēscere**, **crēvī**, **crētus**, 3, inch., *grow; become great, become powerful* (i. 20); of a river, *become swollen* (vii. 55). [crescent.

Crētēs, -um, accusative **Crētas**, [Κρῆτες], m., pl., *Cretans*, inhabitants of Crete.

Critognātus, -ī, m., (krit-ọg-nā′ tụs), a prominent Arvernian. vii. 77, 78.

cruciātus, -ūs, [cruciō, *torture*], m., *torture, cruelty, torment, suffering.*

crūdēlitās, -tātis, [crūdēlis], f., *cruelty, barbarity.* [cruelty.

crūdēliter, comp. **crūdēlius**, sup. **crūdēlissimē**, [crūdēlis], adv., *cruelly, with cruelty.* i. 31; vii. 38.

crūs, **crūris**, n., *leg.* vi. 27.

cubīle, -is, [cf. **cubō**, *lie down*], n., *bed, resting-place.* vi. 27.

culmen, -inis, n., *height, summit, top.* iii. 2. [culminate.

culpa, -ae, f., *blame, fault, error.* iv. 27; v. 52. [culpable.

cultūra, -ae, [cf. **colō**], f., *tilling, cultivation.* [culture.

cultus, -ūs, [colō], m., *cultivation, care; mode of life, civilization.* [cult.

cum, prep. with ablative only, *with, along with, together with.*

In composition the earlier form **com-** is used, which remains unchanged before **b**, **p**, **m**, but is changed to **col-** or **con-** before **l**, **cor-** or **con-** before **r**, **con-** before other consonants, and **co-** before vowels and **h**; implies doing anything *in concert with* others, or *thoroughly* and *completely.*

cum, conj., temporal, *when, while, as often as, as;* causal, *since;* adversative, *although.* **cum . . . tum**, *both . . . and, not only . . . but also.* **cum prīmum**, *as soon as.*

cunctātiō, -ōnis, [cunctor], f., *delay, hesitation.* iii. 18, 24.

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, 1, dep., *delay, hesitate.* iii. 23; iv. 25.

cūnctus, -a, -um, adj., *all together, all.* As noun, **cūnctī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *all in a body* (vii. 11).

cuneātim, [cuneātus, cuneus], adv., *in the form of a wedge; in wedge-shaped masses* (vii. 28).

cuneus, -ī, m., *wedge;* of troops, *wedge-shaped mass* (vi. 40).

cunīculus, -ī, m., *rabbit;* in military language, *underground passage, mine.* iii. 21; vii. 22, 24.

cupidē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [cupidus], adv., *eagerly, ardently.*

cupiditās, -tātis, [cupidus], f., *ardent desire, eagerness.* [cupidity.

cupidus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cf. **cupiō**], adj., *desirous, eager for, fond of.*

cupiō, **cupere**, **cupīvī**, **cupītus**, 3, *desire; wish well to* (i. 18).

cūr, adv., *why? wherefore?*

cūra, -ae, f., *care, attention, anxiety, trouble.* [cure (noun).

Cūriō, **-ōnis**, m., *Gaius Scribonius Curio*, (scri̯-bō′ ni̯-us kū′ ri̯-ō), a lieutenant of Caesar's army. C. II. 3, 34 et seq.

cūrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**cūra**], 1, *take care, provide for, superintend, arrange.* **nāvēs aedificandās cūrāre**, *to have ships built* (v. 1). [cure (verb).

currus, **-ūs**, [cf. **currō**], m., *chariot.*

cursus, **-ūs**, [cf. **currō**], m., *running; speed; course.* [course.

cūstōdia, **-ae**, [**cūstōs**], f., *a watching; guard, watch;* pl., *watch stations* (C. II. 5). [custody.

cūstōdiō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītus**, [**cūstōs**], 4, *guard, keep.* vi. 4.

cūstōs, **-tōdis**, m. and f., *guard, keeper, watch.*

D

D., with proper names, = **Decimus.**

D = **quīngentī**, 500.

d., see **a. d.**

Dācī, **-ōrum**, m., pl., *the Dacians, Daci* (dā′ sī), a people living north of the lower course of the Danube River, in the countries now called *Hungary* and *Rumania.* vi. 25.

Damasippus, **-ī**, see **Licinius.**

damnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**damnum**], 1, *condemn, sentence.* **capitis damnāre**, *to condemn to death* (C. III. 83). Part. as noun, **damnātī**, **-ōrum**, m., pl., *those condemned, criminals* (v. 55).

damnum, **-ī**, n., *loss.* vi. 44.

Dānuvius, **-ī**, m., *the Danube.* vi. 25.

dē, prep. with abl., denoting separation, *from, down from, away from; out of, of; from among; on account of, for, through, by; concerning, about, in respect to; after, during, in the course of, in.*

dēbeō, **dēbēre**, **dēbuī**, **dēbitus**, [**dē** + **habeō**], 2, *owe;* pass., *be due;* followed by infin., *ought, must, should.* [debit.

dēcēdō, **-cēdere**, **-cessī**, **-cessūrus**, [**dē** + **cēdō**], 3, *go away, retire, withdraw; avoid, shun; die* (vi. 19).

decem, or **x**, indeclinable num., *ten.*

dēceptus, see **dēcipiō.**

dēcernō, **-cernere**, **-crēvī**, **-crētus**, [**dē** + **cernō**], 3, *pass judgment, decide; resolve upon, resolve, determine; assign* by vote (C. I. 6).

dēcertō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**dē** + **certō**, *contend*], 1, *fight to a finish, fight a decisive battle.*

dēcessus, **-ūs**, [**dēcēdō**], m., *departure, withdrawal.* [decease.

Decetia, **-ae**, f., (dę-sē′ sh[y]ą), a town of the Aeduans, on the Liger (*Loire*). vii. 33.

dēcidō, **-cidere**, **-cidī**, [**dē** + **cadō**], 3, *fall down, fall off.* [deciduous.

decimus, **-a**, **-um**, or **x**, [**decem**], num. adj., *tenth.* [decimal.

Decimus, **-ī**, m., (des′ i̯-mus), a Roman first name.

dēcipiō, **-cipere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptus**, [**dē** + **capiō**], 3, *catch; deceive* (i. 14). [deceive.

dēclārō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**dē** + **clārō**, from **clārus**], 1, *make clear, announce.* i. 50. [declare.

dēclīvis, **-e**, [**dē** + **clīvus**], adj., *sloping, descending.* As noun, **dēclīvia**, n., pl., *slopes, declivities* (vii. 88).

dēclīvitās, **-tātis**, [**dēclīvis**], f., *descent.* [declivity.

dēcrētum, **-ī**, [**dēcernō**], n., *decree, decision.* [decree.

decumānus, **-a**, **-um**, [**decimus**], adj., *of a tenth part, decuman.* **decumāna porta**, *rear gate* of the Roman camp, opposite the **porta praetōria.**

decuriō, **-ōnis**, [**decuria**], m., *decurion,* a cavalry officer in charge of a *decuria*, consisting of 10 horsemen.

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursūrus, [dē + currō], 3, *run down, rush down, hasten.*

dēdecus, -oris, [dē + decus, *honor*], n., *disgrace, dishonor.* iv. 25.

dēditīcius, -ī, [dēditus, from dēdō], adj., *that has surrendered, subject.* As noun, dēditīcii, -ōrum, m., pl., *prisoners of war, captives.*

dēditiō, -ōnis, [dēdō], f., *surrender.* accipere or recipere in dēditiōnem, *to receive by capitulation.* in dēditiōnem venīre, *to surrender* (vi. 3, 9).

dēditus, -a, -um, [part. of dēdō], adj., *devoted* (vi. 16).

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [dē + dō], 3, *give up, surrender; devote* (iii. 22).

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [dē + dūcō], 3, *lead down; lead away, lead off, withdraw; lead, induce; conduct, bring;* of ships, *draw down, launch* (v. 2, 23); *bring home* as a bride, *marry* (v. 14). [deduce.

dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis, [dēfatīgō], f., *weariness, exhaustion.* iii. 19.

dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + fatīgō, *weary*], 1, *tire out, exhaust.*

dēfectiō, -ōnis, [dēficiō], f., *a failing; desertion, revolt.* [defection.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus, 3, *ward off, repel; defend, guard, protect.* [defend.

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, [dēfendō], f., *defence.* ii. 7; vii. 23.

dēfēnsor, -ōris, [dēfendō], m., *defender, protector;* of piles protecting a bridge, *guards* (iv. 17).

dēfēnsus, see dēfendō.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [dē + ferō], irr., *bring down; carry away, bear away; bring (to), carry (to); refer (to), confer upon, lay before; report, announce.* [defer.

dēfessus, -a, -um, [part. of dēfetīscor], adj., *worn out, exhausted.* As noun, dēfessus, -ī, m., *one exhausted* (iii. 4), pl., *the exhausted* (vii. 25, 41, C. III. 94).

dēfetīscor, -ī, dēfessus, [dē + fatīscor], 3, dep., *become exhausted* (vii. 88).

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [dē + faciō], 3, *fail, be lacking; fall away, revolt, rebel.* dēficere animō, *to lose heart* (vii. 30). [deficit.

dēfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, fīxus, [dē + fīgō, *fasten*], 3, *make fast, fix, fasten; stick fast* (v. 44).

dēfīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [dē + fīniō], 4, *set bounds to; define, fix, set* (vii. 83); *apportion* (C. III. 82). [define.

dēfore, see dēsum.

dēformis, -e, comp. -ior, [dē + fōrma], adj., *ill-shaped* (iv. 2); *unsightly* (vii. 23). [deform.

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, [dē + fugiō], 3, *flee from, shun, avoid.*

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [dē + iaciō], 3, *throw down, cast down, throw; dislodge, drive from, rout;* of a ship, pass., *be carried* (iv. 28); of lots, *cast* (C. III. 6); *kill, destroy; disappoint.* [dejection.

dēiectus, see dēiciō.

dēiectus, -ūs, [dēiciō], m., *descent, slope, declivity.* ii. 8, 22, 29.

deinceps, [dein, = deinde, + CAP in capiō], adv., *one after the other, in succession, in turn; without interruption* (III. 29).

deinde, [dē + inde], adv., *thereafter, afterwards, then, next.*

dēlātus, see dēferō.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of dēliciō], 1, *please;* in pass., *have pleasure in* (iv. 2). [delectation.

dēlēctus, see dēligō.

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, 2, *destroy, annihilate;* of disgrace, *wipe out* (ii. 27). [delete.

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē, cf. lībra, *balance*], 1, *deliberate, ponder.* Impersonal, **dēlīberātur**, *the question is discussed* (vii. 15). [deliberate.

dēlībrō, -āre, ——, -ātus, [dē + līber, *bark*], 1, *strip off the bark, peel.* vii. 73.

dēlictum, -ī, [dēlinquō, *do wrong*], n., *offence, crime.* vii. 4. [delict.

dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + ligō, *bind*], 1, *bind fast, make fast, tie, fasten.*

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [dē + legō], 3 *choose, select, pick out.*

dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, [dē + latēscō, from lateō], 3, *conceal one's self.* iv. 32.

dēmentia, -ae, [dēmēns], f., *madness, folly.* iv. 13. [dementia.

dēmessus, see dēmetō.

dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messus, [dē + metō], 3, *reap.* iv. 32.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + migrō, *depart*], 1, *move from, withdraw; depart, migrate.*

dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtus, [dē + minuō], 3, *lessen, make smaller; impair.* [diminish.

dēmissus, -a, -um, comp. -ior [part. of dēmittō], adj., *low.* vii. 72.

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [dē + mittō], 3, *send down, let down;* of the head, *bow* (i. 32). **dēmissae**, *letting themselves down* (vii. 47). **sē dēmittere**, *to go down, come down, descend* (v. 32; vi. 40; vii. 28). **sē animō dēmittere**, *to be discouraged* (vii. 29). [demit.

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptus, [dē + emō], 3, *take down.* v. 48.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + mōnstrō, *show*], 1, *point out, state, mention; show, explain.* [demonstrate.

dēmoror, -ārī, -ātus, [dē + moror], 1, dep., *delay, retard, hinder.*

dēmptus, see dēmō.

dēmum, adv., *at length, finally.*

dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + negō], 1, *refuse, deny.* i. 42. [deny.

dēnī, -ae, -a, [decem], distributive num. adj., *ten each, ten apiece.*

dēnique, adv., *at last, finally; in a word, in short; at any rate* (ii. 33).

dēnsus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *thick, closely packed, dense, crowded.* [dense.

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + nūntiō], 1, *announce, declare; threaten* (i. 36); *order* (vi. 10); *admonish* (C. III. 86). [denounce.

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [dē + pellō], 3, *drive away, dislodge;* of disease, *ward off* (vi. 17).

dēperdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [dē + perdō, *destroy*], 3, *lose.*

dēpereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, [dē + pereō], irr., *be destroyed* (v. 23); *be lost, perish* (vii. 31, C. III. 87).

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [dē + pōnō], 3, *lay aside, lay down, place; give up, resign* (vii. 33). [deposit.

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus, [dē + populor], 1, dep., *lay waste, plunder;* part. **dēpopulātus**, pass., *laid waste, devastated* (i. 11; vii. 77). [depopulate.

dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + portō], 1, *remove.* iii. 12. [deport.

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, [dē + poscō], 3, *demand, earnestly desire.*

dēpositus, see dēpōnō.

dēprāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē, prāvus], 1, *distort, corrupt.* [deprave.

dēprecātor, -ōris, [dēprecor], m., *intercessor, mediator.* [deprecator.

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus, [dē + precor, *pray*], 1, dep., *pray to be delivered from, beg to escape; ask for quarter, beg for mercy* (iv. 7, vi. 4). [deprecate.

dēprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, [dē + prehendō], 3, *catch, seize; surprise.*

dēprehēnsus, see dēprehendō.

dēprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [dē + premō], 3, *press down; sink* (C. II. 6, 7, 43). [depress.

dēpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + pugnō], 1, *fight decisively, fight it out* (vii. 28).

dēpulsus, see dēpellō.

dērēctē, comp. -ius, [dērēctus], adv., *directly, straight up and down* (iv. 17).

dērēctus, -a, -um, [part. of dērigō], adj., *laid straight, straight; straight up and down, perpendicular.* [direct.

dērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [dē + regō], 3, *lay straight;* of a line of battle, *draw up, form* (vi. 8). [dress.

dērivō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + rīvus, *brook*], 1, *draw off, turn aside.* vii. [derive.

dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + rogō], 1, *withdraw.* vi. 23. [derogate.

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, dēscēnsum est, [dē + scandō, *climb*], 3, *come down, descend;* with **ad** and the acc., *resort to, stoop to.* [descend.

dēsecō, -cāre, -cuī, -ctus, [dē + secō], 1, *cut off.* vii. 4.

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, [dē + serō, *join*], 3, *leave, abandon, desert.* [desert.

dēsertor, -ōris, [dēserō], m., *deserter, runaway.* vi. 23.

dēsertus, see dēserō.

dēsertus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** sup. **-issimus,** [part. of dēserō), adj., *deserted, solitary.* v. 53.

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *wish for, want, long for, miss; lack, lose;* pass. often, especially of soldiers, *be missing, be lost.* [desideratum.

dēsidia, -ae, [dēses, *idle,* cf. dēsideō], f., *indolence, idleness.* vi. 23.

dēsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + signō, *mark*], 1, *point out; indicate, evidence* (C. III. 96); *designate* (I. 18). [designate.

dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultus, [dē + saliō, *leap*], 4, *leap down, jump down;* from horses, *dismount.*

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus, [dē + sistō], 3, *leave off, cease; desist from, stop, give up.* **dēsistere sententiā,** *to give up the notion* (vi. 4). [desist.

dēspectus, see dēspiciō.

dēspectus, -ūs, [dēspiciō], m., *a looking down* from an elevation, *view.*

dēspērātiō, -ōnis, [dēspērō], f., *despair, hopelessness.* [desperation.

dēspērātus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** sup. **-issimus,** [part. of dēspērō], adj., *without hope, beyond hope, desperate.* vii. 3. [desperate.

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + spērō], 1, *give up hope of, despair of, have no hope of.* [despair.

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [dē + speciō, *look*], 3, *look down upon; despise, disdain.* [despise.

dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + spoliō], 1, *despoil, rob.* ii. 31. [despoil.

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *make fast, bind, stay.* **operī dēstinātī,** *detailed for the work* (vii. 72). [destine.

dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus, [dē + statuō], 3, *desert, abandon, leave.* i. 16. [destitute.

dēstrictus, see dēstringō.

dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, [dē + stringō, *pluck off*], 3, *unsheathe, draw.* i. 25; vii. 12.

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, [dē + sum], irr., *be wanting, fail, be lacking.*

dēsuper, [dē + super], adv., *from above.* i. 52.

dētendō, -ere, ——, dētēnsus, [dē + tendō], 3, *relax;* of tents, *strike* (C. III. 85).

dēterior, -us, comp., sup. dēterrimus, [dē], adj., *worse, poorer; of less value* (i. 36). [deteriorate.

dēterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus, [dē + terreō], 2, *frighten off, prevent, deter; repress* (v. 7). **dēterrēre nē, quō minus,** or **quīn,** *to prevent from.* [deter.

dētestor, -ārī, -ātus, [dē + testor], 1, dep., *curse, execrate.* [detest.

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [dē + teneō], 2, *hold back.* iii. 12. [detain.

dētrāctus, see dētrahō.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, trāctus, [dē + trahō], 3, *draw off, take off; take away, remove.* [detract.

dētrectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + tractō], 1, *avoid.* vii. 14.

dētrīmentōsus, -a, -um, [dētrīmentum], adj., *hurtful, detrimental.* vii. 33.

dētrīmentum, -ī, [dē, cf. terō, *wear away*], n., *loss, damage, injury; loss in war, repulse, reverse, defeat.* **quid dētrīmentī,** *any harm* (C. I. 7). [detriment.

dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + turbō, *disturb*], 1, *force back in disorder, dislodge.* v. 43; vii. 86.

deūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, [dē + ūrō], 3, *burn up.* vii. 25.

deus, -ī, m., *god.* [deity.

dēvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, [dē + vehō], 3, *carry away, remove, convey.*

dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [dē + veniō], 4, *come.* ii. 21.

dēvexus, -a, -um, [dēvehō], adj., *sloping.* As noun, **dēvexa,** n., pl., *sloping places, slopes* (vii. 88).

dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, [dē + vincō], 3, *conquer completely, subdue.* vii. 34, C. III. 87.

dēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + vocō], 1, *call away.* **in dubium dēvocāre,** *to risk, endanger* (vi. 7).

dēvōtus, [part. of dēvoveō], adj., *bound by a vow.* As noun, **dēvōtī,** -ōrum, m., pl., *faithful followers* (iii. 22).

dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, [dē + voveō], 2, *vow, devote* (iii. 22); *offer* to the gods, *consecrate* (vi. 17). [devote.

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right.* [dexterous.

dextra, -ae, [dexter, sc. manus], f., *right hand.* i. 20.

Diablintēs, -um, m., pl., (dī-a-blin′tēz), a small people in northwestern Gaul, probably a division of the Aulercī. iii. 9.

diciō, -ōnis, pl. and nom. sing. not in use, f., *sway, sovereignty, authority, lordship.* i. 31, 33; ii. 34.

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *dedicate; devote, offer* (VI. 12, 13).

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, 3, *say, converse, speak; mention, tell, utter; appoint;* of a case, *plead;* of a day, *set.*

dictiō, -ōnis, [dīcō], f., *speaking; pleading* (i. 4). [diction.

dictum, -ī, [dīcō], n., *saying, word; command, order.* **dictō audiēns, audientēs,** *obedient to* (*his*) *order.* [dictum.

dīdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [dis- + dūcō], 3, *lead in different*

directions (VI. 34); *divide, separate* (III. 23); *distribute.* [diduce.

diēs, diēī, m. and f., *day; time* (i. 7). **in diēs**, *day by day, every day.* **diem dīcere**, *to set a day.*

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus, [dis- + ferō], irr., *spread, scatter* (V. 43); *put off, delay* (vii. 11, C. III. 85); *differ, be different.* [differ.

difficilis, -e, comp. **difficilior**, sup. **difficillimus**, [dis- + facilis], adj., *difficult, hard.* [difficile.

difficultās, -tātis, [difficilis], f., *difficulty, trouble.* [difficulty.

difficulter, comp. **difficilius**, sup. difficilimē, [difficilis], adv., *with difficulty;* comp., *with too great difficulty* (vii. 58).

diffīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, [dis- + fīdō], 3, semi-dep., *distrust, lose confidence in, despair of.* [diffident.

diffīsus, -a, -um, part. of **diffīdō**.

diffluō, -ere, difflūxī, [dis- + fluō], 3, *flow* in different directions, *divide.* IV. 10. [diffluent.

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [dis- + fundō], 3, *pour forth; spread out, extend* (VI. 26). [diffuse.

digitus, -ī, m., *finger;* as a measure, *finger's breadth* (VII. 73), the 16th part of a Roman foot, .728 of an inch. **digitus pollex**, *thumb* as a measure (III. 13). [digit.

dignitās, -tātis, [dignus], f., *worth, merit; self-respect* (VI. 8); *greatness, rank, reputation.* [dignity.

dignus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, adj., *worthy, worth, deserving.* VII. 25.

dīiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dis- + iūdicō], 1, *decide.* V. 44. [dijudicate.

dīlēctus, see **dīligō**.

dīlēctus, -ūs, [dīligō], m., *levy, draft, enlistment.*

dīligenter, comp. **dīligentius**, sup. **dīligentissimē**, [dīligēns], adv., *carefully, punctually, with painstaking.*

dīligentia, -ae, [dīligēns], f., *care, painstaking, activity.* [diligence.

dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [dis- + legō, *choose*], 3, *love, prize.* VI. 19.

dīmēnsus, see **dīmētior**.

dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus [dis- + mētior], 4, dep., passive in Caesar, *measure, measure off* (IV. 17); of work, *lay out* (II. 19). [dimension.

dīmicātiō, -ōnis, [dīmicō], f., *combat, engagement, encounter.* VII. 86.

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum est, [dis- + micō], 1, *fight, contend, struggle.*

dīmidius, -a, -um, [dis- + medius], adj., *half* (VI. 31). As noun, **dīmidium**, -ī, n., *half.*

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [dis- + mittō], 3, *send in different directions, send about; dismiss, send off; let go, let slip, lose; abandon, leave; give up* (VII. 17); *disband* (II. 14). [dismiss.

dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [dis- + emō, *take*], 3, *take apart; break off, put an end to* (I. 46).

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, [dis- + rapiō, *seize*], 3, *tear asunder; ravage, plunder, pillage.*

dis- (dī-), inseparable prep., used only as a prefix with other words, adding the force of *apart, asunder, in different directions, utterly, entirely; not, un-.*

In Composition **dis-** becomes **dif-** before **f**, **dir-** before vowels, **dī-** before **d, g, l, m, n, r,** and **v.**

Dīs, Dītis, m., with **pater**, *Dis pater* (dis pā′ tẹr), *Father Dis*, god of the Underworld. VI. 18.

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, pf. pass. impers., **discessum est**, [dis- + cēdō], 3, *go apart, disperse,*

scatter; depart, withdraw, leave, go away, go off. **ab armīs discēdere**, *to lay down one's arms.*

disceptātor, -ōris, [disceptō, *decide*], m., *arbitrator, umpire, judge.* vii. 37.

discernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus, [dis- + cernō], 3, *distinguish between, know apart, keep separate* (vii. 75). [discern.

discessus, -ūs, [discēdō], m., *departure, going away.*

disciplīna, -ae, [discipulus], f., *instruction, training; system.* [discipline.

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [dis- + claudō], 3, *keep apart, hold apart* (iv. 17); *separate* (vii. 8).

discō, discere, didicī, 3, *learn.*

discrīmen, -inis, [cf. discernō], n., *interval; crisis, peril* (vi. 38).

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus, [dis- + quatiō, *shake*], 3, *shatter; remove, clear away* (vii. 8). [discuss.

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [dis- + iaciō], 3, *drive asunder; disperse, scatter, rout* (i. 25; iii. 20).

disiectus, see disiciō.

dispār, -paris, [dis- + pār], adj., *unequal, unlike.* v. 16; vii. 39.

disparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dis- + parō], 1, *divide, separate.* [disparate.

dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersus, [dis- + spargō, *scatter*], 3, *scatter, scatter about, disperse.* [disperse.

dispersus, see dispergō.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [dis- + ponō], 3, *set in various places, distribute; station, post.* [dispose.

disputātiō, -ōnis, [disputō], f., *discussion, debate, dispute.* [disputation.

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dis- + putō], 1, *treat, investigate, discuss.* vi. 14. [dispute.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, [dissentiō], f., *disagreement, dissension.* [dissension.

dissentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, [dis- + sentiō], 4, *differ in opinion, disagree.* v. 29; vii. 29. [dissent.

disserō, -serere, [dis- + serō, *sow*], 3, *plant here and there, place at intervals.* vii. 73.

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dis- + simulō], 1, *make unlike; conceal, keep secret* (iv. 6). [dissimulate.

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *scatter, disperse.* [dissipate.

dissuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, [dis- + suādeō], 2, *advise against, object, oppose.* vii. 15. [dissuade.

distendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, [dis- + tendō], 3, *stretch out.* C. iii. 92. [distend.

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [dis- + teneō], 2, *keep apart, hold apart, separate; hinder, delay* (vii. 37).

distō, -āre, [dis- + stō], 1, *stand apart, be separated, be distant.* **distantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs**, *two feet apart* (vii. 23). [distant.

distrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [dis- + trahō, *draw*], 3, *wrench asunder* (vii. 23); *draw apart* (C. iii. 92). [distract.

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtus, [dis- + tribuō], 3, *distribute, divide, assign, apportion.* [distribute.

dītissimus, see dīves.

diū, comp. diūtius, sup. diūtissimē, adv., *long, for a long time.* **quam diū**, *as long as* (i. 17).

diurnus, -a, -um, [cf. diēs], adj., *of the day, by day.* [diurnal.

diūtinus, -a, -um, [diū], adj., *long-continued, lasting.* v. 52.

diūtissimē, see diū.

diūtius, see diū.

diūturnitās, -tātis, [diūturnus], f., *long continuance, length (of time), long duration.* i. 40; iii. 4.

diūturnus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [diū], adj., *long, prolonged.* i. 14.

dīversus, -a, -um, [part. of dīvertō], adj., *opposite; separate, apart; different; remote* (vi. 25). [diverse.

dīvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, [dis- + vertō], 3, *separate.* ii. 24. [divert.

dīves, -itis, comp. dītior, sup. dītissimus, adj., *rich, wealthy.* i. 2.

Dīviciācus, -ī, m., (div′ i̯-shi̯-ā′ kŭs):

(1) An Aeduan of influence, loyal to Caesar, who at his intercession pardoned Dumnorix (i. 18–20), and the Bellovaci (ii. 14, 15).

(2) A ruler of the Suessiones. ii. 4.

Dīvicō, -ōnis, m., (div′ i̯-kō), leader of the Helvetians in their war with Cassius, 107 B.C., and head of an embassy to Caesar, 58 B.C. i. 13, 14.

dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsus, 3, *separate, divide.* [divide.

dīvīnus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [dīvus], adj., *divine, sacred.* [divine.

dīvīsus, see dīvidō.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, irr., *give, give up, give over, grant; offer, furnish, allow.* in fugam dare, *to put to flight.* operam dare, *to take pains* (v. 7). [date.

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, 2, *teach; inform; point out, state; show* (vi. 1). [doctor.

documentum, -ī, [doceō], n., *proof, warning.* vii. 4. [document.

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, 2, *suffer; be grieved, be annoyed.*

dolor, -ōris, [doleō], m., *pain, suffering; grief, distress.* [dolors.

dolus, -ī, m., *cunning, fraud, deceit* (i. 13; iv. 13). [dole.

domesticus, -a, -um, [domus], adj., *home, native, internal; their own* (ii. 10); *of their own household* (C. iii.60). domesticum bellum, *civil war* (v. 9). [domestic.

domicilium, -ī, [domus], n., *dwelling, abode, habitation.* [domicile.

dominor, -ārī, -ātus, [dominus], 1, dep., *be master, have dominion.* ii. 31. [dominate.

dominus, -ī, [domō, *subdue*], m., *master, lord.* vi. 13. [dominie.

Domitius, -ī, m., (dọ-mish′ [y]ŭs):

(1) *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul with Appius Claudius Pulcher, 54 B.C. (v. 1), in the Civil War a general on the side of Pompey.

(2) *Gnaeus Domitius*, a cavalry officer in Curio's army in Africa. C. ii. 42.

(3) *Gnaeus Domitius Calvīnus*, a general in Caesar's army. C. iii. 89.

domus, -ūs, f., *house, home.* [dome.

Donnotaurus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus* (don-ọ-tâ′ rŭs), a leader among the Helvii. vii. 65.

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dōnum], 1, *give, grant, confer.* i. 47; vii. 11. [donate.

dōnum, -ī, [dō], n., *gift, present.*

dorsum, -ī, n., *back;* of a mountain, *long summit*, like the back of an animal (vii. 44). [dorsal.

dōs, dōtis, [cf. dō], f., *dowry, marriage portion.* vi. 19. [dot (dowry).

Druidēs, -um, m., pl., *Druids.*

Dubis, -is, m., (dū′ bis), a river in Gaul, tributary of the Arar (*Saône*); now the *Doubs.* i. 38.

dubitātiō, -ōnis, [dubitō], f., *doubt, hesitation.* [dubitation.

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dubius], 1, *be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay.*

dubius, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful, uncertain.* [dubious.

ducentī, **-ae**, **-a**, or **CC**, [duo + centum], adj., *two hundred.*

dūcō, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**, 3, *lead, guide, conduct, bring, take;* of a trench, *make; protract, prolong, put off; think, consider, reckon.* **in mātrimōnium dūcere**, *to marry* (i. 9, 53). [ductile.

ductus, **-ūs**, [dūcō], m., *generalship, command.* vii. 62, C. i. 7. [duct.

dum, conj., *while; until.*

Dumnorīx, **-īgis**, m., (dum′ nọ-rịks), an Aeduan, brother of Diviciacus, and son-in-law of Orgetorix; a bitter enemy of Caesar, and leader of an Aeduan anti-Roman party; slain by Caesar's orders while trying to escape from him, 54 B.C. (Fig. 42.)

dumtaxat, [dum + taxat], adv., *merely, only.* C. ii. 41.

duo, **-ae**, **-o**, or **II**, adj., *two.* [duet.

duodecim, or **XII**, [duo + decem], indecl. num. adjective, *twelve.* [duodecimal.

duodecimus, **-a**, **-um**, [duodecim], num. adj., *twelfth.*

duodēnī, **-ae**, **-a**, gen. pl. **duodēnum** (vii. 36), [duodecim], distributive num. adj., *twelve at a time, by twelves.*

duodēseptuāgintā, or **LXVIII**, [duo + dē + septuāgintā], indeclinable num. adj., *sixty-eight.* i. 29.

duodētrīgintā, or **XXVIII**, [duo + dē + trīgintā], indeclinable num. adj., *twenty-eight.* v. 2.

duodēvīgintī, **-ae**, **-a**, or **XVIII**, [duo + dē + vīgintī], num. adj., *eighteen.*

duplex, **-icis**, [duo, cf. **plicō**, *fold*], adj., *twofold, double.* [duplex.

duplicō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**duplex**], 1, *make double, double.* [duplicate.

dūritia, **-ae**, [dūrus], f., *hardness; severe mode of life* (vi. 21). [duress.

dūrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [dūrus], 1, *harden, make hardy.* vi. 28.

Dūrocortorum, **-ī**, n., (dū-rọ-cor′ tọ-rụm), capital of the Remi, now *Reims.* vi. 44.

dūrus, **-a**, **-um**, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, adj., *hard, severe, difficult;* of a season, *inclement* (vii. 8).

Dūrus, **-ī**, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus*, (lą-bē′ rị-ụs dū′ rụs), a military tribune. v. 15.

dux, **ducis**, [dūcō, *lead*], m., *leader, guide; general, commander.* [duke.

Dyrrachīnus, **-a**, **-um**, [**Dyrrachium**], adj., *at Dyrrachium, of Dyrrachium.* C. iii. 84, 87, 89.

Dyrrachium, **-ī**, [Δυρράχιον], n., (dir-rā′ kị-ụm), a city on the east coast of the Adriatic, formerly called *Epidamnus;* now *Durazzo*, in Albania. C. iii. 53.

E.

ē, see **ex.**

eā, [properly abl. of **is**, sc. **parte**], adv., *there, on that side.* v. 51.

Eburōnēs, **-um**, m., pl., (eb-ū-rō′ nēz), a Belgic people north of the Treverans. In 54 B.C. they destroyed a detachment of Caesar's army under Sabinus and Cotta, and were afterwards almost exterminated by him.

Eburovīcēs, **-um**, m., pl., (eb′′ ū-rọ-vī′ sēz), a division of the **Aulercī.**

ēdiscō, **-discere**, **-didicī**, [ex + discō], 3, *learn by heart.* vi. 14.

ēditus, **-a**, **-um**, comp. **-ior**, [part. of ēdō], adj., *elevated; rising* (ii. 8).

ēdō, **-dere**, **-didī**, **-ditus**, [ex + dō], 3, *put forth; inflict* (i. 31). [edit.

ēdoceō, **-docēre**, **-docuī**, **-doctus**, [ex + doceō], 2, *teach carefully, instruct, inform, tell.*

ēdūcō, **-dūcere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus**, [ex + dūcō], 3, *lead out, lead forth;* of a sword, *draw* (v. 44). [educe.

effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + fēmina], 1, *make womanish, weaken, enervate.* i. 1; iv. 2. [effeminate.

efferciō, -īre, effertus, [ex+farciō, *stuff*], 4, *fill in.* vii. 23.

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus, [ex + ferō], irr., *bring out, carry forth, carry away* (i. 5; v. 45); *spread abroad, publish* (i. 46; vi. 14; vii. 1, 2); *lift up, pull up; extol* (C. III. 87); *elate* (v. 47, VII. 47). [elate.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [ex+ faciō], 3, *make out, bring about; accomplish, effect, produce; make, render; build, construct.* [effect.

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, [ex + fodiō], 3, *dig out; of the eyes, gouge out* (VII. 4).

effossus, see **effodiō**.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, [ex+fugiō], 3, *escape.*

effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [ex + fundō], 3, *pour out.* **sē effundere**, of a crowd, *pour out, rush forth* (C. II. 7); of cavalry, *dash forth* (v. 19). [effusive.

egēns, **egentis**, comp. **egentior**, sup. -issimus, [part. of **egeō**], adj., *needy.* As noun, **egentēs**, -ium, m., pl., *the needy, destitute men* (vii. 4, C. III. 59).

egeō, **egēre**, **eguī**, 2, *lack, be in want (of).* vi. 11.

egestās, -tātis, [egēns], f., *privation, destitution, want.* vi. 24.

ego, **meī**, personal pron., *I;* pl. **nōs**, **nostrum**, *we.* [egotism.

egomet, pl. **nōsmet** [ego + -met, enclitic suffix = 'self'], personal pronoun, *I myself, ourselves.* vii. 38.

ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus, [ex + gradior, *step*], 3, dep., *go out, go forth, come forth, leave;* from a ship, *land, disembark.*

ēgregiē, [ēgregius], adv., *remarkably well, admirably, splendidly.*

ēgregius, -a, -um, [ex + grex, *herd, crowd*], adj., *eminent, marked, distinguished, excellent.* [egregious.

ēgressus, see **ēgredior.**

ēgressus, -ūs, [ēgredior], m., *departure; disembarking, landing* (v. 8). [egress.

Egus, -ī, m., (ē′ gus), an Allobrogian, son of Roucillus. C. III. 59.

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [ex + iaciō], 3, *throw out, cast out, thrust out, expel; cast up* (v. 10). **sē ēicere**, *to rush, sally forth.* [eject.

eius modī, see **modus.**

ēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus, [ex + lābor], 3, dep., *slip away; escape* (v. 37). [elapse.

ēlātus, see **efferō.**

Elaver, **Elaveris**, n., (el′ a-vẹr), a tributary of the Liger (*Loire*), into which it flows from the south after a course of about 200 miles; now *Allier.*

ēlēctus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of **ēligō**], adj., *chosen, picked.* ii. 4, C. III. 91. [elect.

elephantus, -ī, [ἐλέφας], m., *elephant.* vi. 28. [elephant.

Eleutetī, -ōrum, m., pl., (ẹ-lū′ tẹ-tī), a people of Central Gaul. vii. 75.

ēliciō, -icere, -licuī, [ex + laciō, *entice*], 3, *entice forth, lure forth; bring out, draw out.* [elicit.

ēloquor, -ī, **ēlocūtus**, [ex + loquor], 3, dep., *speak out, utter, declare.* C. II. 34. [eloquent.

Elusātēs, -ium, m., pl., (el-ū-sā′ tēz), a people in Central Aquitania. iii. 27.

ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, [ex + migrō, *depart*], 1, *go forth* to remain, *move, emigrate.* i. 31. [emigrate.

ēmineō, -minēre, -minuī, 2, *project, stand out.* vii. 72, 73. [eminent.

ēminus [ex + manus, *hand*], adv., *at a distance, from afar.* vii. 24.

ēmissus, see ēmittō.

ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [ex + mittō], 3, *send out; hurl, cast, shoot, discharge* (ii. 23); *throw away, let go* (i. 25). [emit.

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, 3, *buy, purchase.* i. 16; ii. 33.

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, [ex + nāscor], 3, dep., *grow out;* of branches, *shoot out* (ii. 17).

enim [nam], conj., postpositive, *for, for in fact.* **neque enim**, *and* (*with good reason*) *for . . . not, for in fact . . . not.*

ēnītor, -ī, ēnīsus, [ex + nītor], 3, dep., *make effort* (C. II. 6); *force one's way out* (C. II. 34).

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex + nūntiō], I, *report, reveal, disclose.* [enounce.

eō, abl. of is (*44*).

eō, [cf. is], adv., *thither, to that place, there.*

eō, īre, iī, itūrus, ītum est, irr., *go, pass, march, advance.*

eōdem [īdem], adv., *to the same place; to the same thing* (I. 14), *to the same end* (IV. 11).

ephippiātus, -a, -um, adj., *riding with saddle-cloths.* iv. 2.

ephippium, -ī, [ἐφίππιον, from ἐπί + ἵππος], n., *saddle-cloth.* IV. 2.

Ēpīrus, -ī, [Ἤπειρος], f., (e-pī′ rus), a province in the northern part of Greece, east of the Adriatic. C. III. 47, 61.

epistula, -ae, [ἐπιστολή], f., *letter, despatch.* v. 48. [epistle.

Eporēdorīx, -īgis, m., (ep-o-red′ o-riks):

(1) A leader of the Aeduans, captured by Caesar. vii. 67.

(2) A young Aeduan of rank, for a time friendly to Caesar, afterwards one of the commanders of the Gallic army raised for the relief of Alesia. vii. 38, 39, 40, 54, 55, 63, 64, 76.

epulae, -ārum, f., pl., *feast.* vi. 28.

eques, -itis, [equus], m., *horseman, cavalryman, trooper;* as a member of a social order, *knight.*

equester, -tris, -tre, [eques], adj., *of cavalry, cavalry-.* [equestrian.

equitātus, -ūs, [equitō, *ride*], m., *cavalry; knighthood,* collectively *knights* (I. 31).

equus, -ī, m., *horse.* [equine.

Eratosthenēs, -is, [Ἐρατοσθένης], m., (er-a-tos′ thē-nēz), a Greek, born at Cyrene, in Africa, B.C. 276; died about B.C. 196; librarian of the great library at Alexandria in Egypt, and famous as a geographer, mathematician, historian, and grammarian. vi. 24.

ērēctus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, [part. of ērigō], adj., *high, elevated.* iii. 13. [erect (adj.).

ēreptus, see ēripiō.

ergā, prep. with acc., *towards.* v. 54.

ergō, adv., *therefore, then.* vii. 77.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [ex + regō], 3, *raise to a standing position,* (vi. 27); *erect.* [erect (verb).

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, [ex + rapiō, *seize*], 3, *take away, snatch away; rescue, save* (I. 53). **sē ēripere**, *to rescue one's self, make one's escape.*

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, I, *wander; be mistaken, delude one's self.* [err.

error, -ōris, [errō], m., *wandering; mistake* (C. III. 73). [error.

erumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [ex + rumpō, *break*], 3, *burst forth, sally forth.* iii. 5. [erupt.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, [ērumpō], f., *a bursting forth; sally, sortie.* [eruption.

essedārius, -ī, [essedum], m., *fighter from a chariot, chariot-fighter.*

essedum, -ī, n., two-wheeled *war-chariot.* iv. 32, 33; v. 9, 16, 17.

Esuviī, -ōrum, m., pl., (ę-sū′ vi̯-ī), a people in northwestern Gaul.

et, conj., *and.* **et . . . et**, *both . . . and.*

etiam [et + iam], conj., *also; even.* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also.*

etsī [et + sī], conj., *although, though, even if.*

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus, [ex + vādō], 3, *escape.* iii. 19. [evade.

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus, [ex + vellō, *pluck*], 3, *pull out.* i. 25.

ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [ex + veniō], 4, *turn out, happen.* iv. 25.

eventus, -ūs, [cf. ēveniō], m., *outcome, result; chance, fortune* (vi. 42); *fate, accident* (iv. 31). [event.

ēvocātus, -ī, [part. of ēvocō], m., *veteran volunteer*, a soldier serving voluntarily after the completion of his time of service. vii. 65.

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + vocō], 1, *call out, call forth, call, summon; invite* (v. 58). [evoke.

ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, [ex + volō, *fly*], 1, *fly forth, rush out, dash out.*

ex, often before consonants **ē**, prep. with abl., *from, out of, down from; since, after; of; by reason of, by, because of, in consequence of; according to, with, in, on.* **ex ūnā parte**, *on one side.*

In composition **ex** becomes **ef** before **f**, **ē** before **b**, **d**, **g**, **i** consonant, **l**, **m**, **n**, and **v**.

exāctus, see **exigō**.

exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + agitō, freq. of agō], 1, *disturb, harass.* ii. 29; iv. 1.

exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-āmen, *tongue of a balance*], 1, *weigh,* v. 12. [examine.

exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [exanimus], 1, *deprive of life, kill;* pass., *be out of breath, weakened, exhausted* (ii. 23, iii. 19; C. iii. 92).

exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, -ārsūrus, [ex + ārdēscō], 3, *take fire; be incensed* (v. 4).

exaudiō, -dīre, -dīvī, -dītus, [ex + audiō], 4, *hear distinctly, hear plainly.*

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [ex + cēdō], 3, *go out, leave, withdraw, depart.* [exceed.

excellēns, -entis, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [excellō], adj., *surpassing, excellent.* C. iii. 99. [excellent.

excellō, -cellere, participial adj. **excelsus**, 3, *be eminent, surpass.* vi. 13. [excel.

excelsus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [part. of excellō], adj., *high* (vi. 26). [excelsior.

exceptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of excipiō], 1, *catch up* with the hands, *take hold of* (vii. 47).

exceptus, see **excipiō**.

excīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [ex + caedō], 3, *cut out; cut down* (vii. 50). [excise.

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [ex + capiō], 3, *take out; take up* (vii. 3); *take in* (vii. 28); *cut off, catch* (vi. 28, 35; vii. 20); *receive, withstand* (i. 52, iii. 5, iv. 17, C. iii. 92); *cope with, encounter* (iii. 13); *take the place of, relieve, succeed, follow* (v. 16; vii. 51, 88, C. ii, 7, iii. 87). [except.

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + citō, *move*], 1, *erect, raise rapidly* (iii. 14; v. 40); *stir up, rouse, spur on; kindle* (vii. 24). [excite.

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [ex + claudō], 3, *shut out, shut*

off, cut off; hinder, prevent. [exclude.

excōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + cōgitō], 1, *think out, think of.* v. 31. [excogitate.

excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + cruciō, from crux, *cross*], 1, *torment, torture.* [excruciate.

excubitor, -ōris, [excubō], m., *soldier in bivouac; watchman, sentinel.* vii. 69.

excubō, -cubāre, -cubuī, [ex + cubō, *lie down*], 1, *lie out* of doors, *bivouac; keep watch, keep guard.*

exculcō, -āre, [ex + calcō, from calx, *heel*], 1, *tread down, pack down* by stamping. vii. 73.

excursiō, -ōnis, [ex, cf. currō], f., *a running out; sally, sortie* (ii. 30). [excursion.

excursus, -ūs, [excurrō], m., *a running forth; onset, attack* (C. III. 92). [excursus.

excūsātiō, -ōnis, [excūsō], f., *excuse, apology, defence.* vi. 4.

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex, cf. causa], 1, *excuse, make excuse for.* iv. 22. [excuse.

exemplum, -ī, [cf. eximō], n., *example, precedent;* as an example to warn others, *kind of punishment* (I. 31). [example.

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est, [ex + eō], irr., *go forth, go out; withdraw, leave.*

exerceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus, [ex + arceō], 2, *exercise, practice; train, discipline.* [exercise.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, [exercitō, freq. of exerceō], f., *practice, exercise, training.*

exercitātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [exercitō, freq. of exerceō], adj., *practiced, experienced, trained.*

exercitus, -ūs, [exerceō], m., *army,* as a trained and disciplined body.

exhauriō, -haurīre, -hausī, -haustus, [ex + hauriō, *draw up*], 4, *take out.* v. 42. [exhaust.

exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [ex + agō], 3, *drive out;* of time, *spend, complete, end* (iii. 28; vi. 1); of money, *demand, require* (C. I. 6). [exact.

exiguē [exiguus], adv., *barely, hardly.* vii. 71.

exiguitās, -ātis, [exiguus], f., *smallness* (iv. 30); *scantness* (iv. 1); *small number, fewness* (iii. 23); *shortness* (ii. 21, 33).

exiguus, -a, -um, sup. -issimus, [exigō], adj., *small, scanty, little.*

eximius, -a, -um, [cf. eximō], adj., *distinguished, excellent.* ii. 8.

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, [exīstimō], f., *opinion, judgment* (i. 20; v. 44); *good name, reputation* (C. I. 7).

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + aestimō, *compute*], 1, *reckon; think, consider, judge, suppose, believe.*

exitus, -ūs, [exeō], m., *a going out, egress* (vii. 44); *passage* (vii. 28); *conclusion, end; issue, event, outcome.* [exit.

expediō, -pedīre, -pedīvī, -pedītus, [ex, cf. pēs], 4, *disengage, set free; get ready, make ready.* [expedite.

expedītiō, -ōnis, [expediō], f., *rapid march.* v. 10. [expedition.

expedītus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of expediō], adj., *with light equipment, unencumbered, light-armed; convenient, easy.* legiōnēs expedītae, *legions in light marching order,* without baggage. As noun, expedītus, -ī, m., *soldier with light equipment, light-armed soldier.*

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [ex + pellō], 3, *drive out, drive away, remove.* [expel.

experior, -perīrī, -pertus, 4, dep., *put to the test, try.* [expert.

expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + piō, *appease*], 1, *atone for, make amends for.* v. 52. [expiate.

expleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [ex + pleō, *fill*], 2, *fill up, fill full; fill out, complete.*

explicō, -āre, -āvī and -uī, **explicitus, explicātūrus**, [ex + plicō, *fold*], 1, *unfold;* of troops, with sē, *deploy* (C. III. 93). [explicate.

explōrātor, -ōris, [explōrō], m., *scout, patrol.*

explorātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of explōrō], adj., *established, certain, settled, sure.* Neut. as noun in prō explōrātō, lit. *for a certainty, as certain* (vi. 5).

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *search out, investigate, explore; spy out, reconnoitre; gain, secure.* [explore.

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [ex + pōnō], 3, *set out, put out; place in full view, array* (iv. 23); from ships, *set on shore, land; set forth, state, explain.* [expose.

exportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + portō], 1, *carry away.* iv. 18. [export.

exposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, [ex + poscō], 3, *earnestly request, clamor for.* vii. 19; C. III. 90.

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [ex + premō], 3, *press out; force out* (i. 32); *raise, increase* (vii. 22). [express.

expugnātiō, -ōnis, [expugnō], f., *storming, assault.* vi. 41.

expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + pugnō], 1, *take by storm, take by assault, capture.*

expulsus, see expellō.

exquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, [ex + quaerō], 3, *seek out, search out* (i. 41); *ask for, inquire into* (iii. 3). [exquisite.

exquīsītus, see exquīrō.

exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [ex + sequor], 3, dep., *follow up; maintain, enforce* (i. 4). [execute.

exserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, [ex + serō], 3, *thrust out; thrust out* from one's garments, *bare* (vii. 50).

exsertus, see exserō.

exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, [ex + sistō], 3, *appear; spring up, arise, ensue;* of a horn, *project* (vi. 26). [exist.

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + spectō], 1, *look out for, wait for, await; look to see, expect.* [expect.

exspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + spoliō], 1, *deprive, rob.* vii. 77.

exstinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus, [ex + stinguō], 3, *quench completely.* v. 29. [extinguish.

exstō, -stāre, [ex + stō], 1, *stand out, project.* v. 18. [extant.

exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, [ex + struō, *pile*], 3, *pile up, heap up; rear, build, construct, make* (vii. 72).

exsul, -ulis, m. and f., *outlaw, exile.* v. 55.

exter or **exterus**, -a, -um, comp. exterior, sup. extrēmus, [ex], adj., *outward, outer.* Sup. extrēmus, *last, extreme, at the end.* As noun, extrēmī, -ōrum, m., pl., *the rear* (v. 10); neut. sing. in ad extrēmum, *at the end, finally* (iv. 4). [extreme.

externus, -a, -um, [exter], adj., *outward; foreign* (C. II. 5). [external.

exterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [ex + terreō, *scare*], 2, *greatly frighten, terrify.*

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, [ex + timēscō, *fear*], 3, *fear greatly, dread,* iii. 13.

extorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortus, [ex + torqueō, *twist*], 2, *force from; wrest from* (vii. 54). [extort.

extrā [exter], prep. with acc., *outside of, beyond, without.* [extra.

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [ex + trahō, *draw*], 3, *draw out; draw out* to no purpose, *waste* (v. 22). [extract.

extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsus, [ex + trūdō], 3, *thrust out; shut out* (iii. 12). [extrude.

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, 3, *strip, strip off, despoil, deprive.*

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, [ex + ūrō, *burn*], 3, *burn up.* i. 5.

F.

faber, fabrī, m., *skilled workman, mechanic, artisan.* v. 11. [fabric.

Fabius, -ī, m., (fā′ bi-us):

(1) *Quintus Fabius Maximus* (mak′ si-mus), called *Allobrogicus* (al-o-broj′ i-kus), in honor of his victory over the Allobroges, Arvernians, and Ruteni in the year of his consulship, B.C. 121. i. 45.

(2) *Gaius Fabius*, a lieutenant of Caesar in the Gallic War, and in the first year of the Civil War.

(3) *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion, killed at Gergovia. vii. 47, 50.

(4) *Fabius, the Paelignian*, a soldier in Curio's army. C. ii. 35.

facile, comp. **facilius**, sup. **facillimē**, [facilis], adv., *easily, readily.*

facilis, -e, comp. **facilior**, sup. **facillimus**, [cf. faciō], adj., *easy, not difficult, not hard.* [facile.

facinus, -oris, [faciō], n., *action; wicked action, misdeed, crime.*

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, 3, *do, make; act, perform, accomplish, form; bring about, cause; furnish, give.* For pass., fīō, fierī, factus sum, see fīō. **certiōrem facere**, *to inform.* **imperāta facere**, *to obey commands.* **iter facere**, *to march.* **vim facere**, *to use violence* (i. 8, v. 7). [factor.

factiō, -ōnis, [faciō], f., *party, political party; league.* [faction.

factū, pass. supine of faciō.

factum, -ī, [faciō], n., *deed, action, achievement.* [fact.

facultās, -ātis, [facilis], f., *ability, capability; opportunity, chance; abundance; supply* (iii. 9). Pl., *resources, wealth.* [faculty.

fāgus, -ī, f., *beech-tree.* v. 12.

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus, 3, *deceive, cheat; disappoint.*

falsus, -a, -um, [part. of fallō], adj., *false, ungrounded.* [false.

falx, falcis, f., *sickle;* sickle-shaped *hook.*

fāma, -ae, [cf. fārī, *to speak*], f., *report, rumor, common talk; reputation, fame* (vii. 77). [fame.

famēs, -is, f., *hunger, starvation.* [famine.

familia, -ae, [famulus, *servant*], f., *body of slaves* in one household, *household; family* (vii. 33); including the whole body of serfs and retainers under the authority of a nobleman, *retinue* (i. 4). **pater familiae**, *head of a family, householder* (vi. 19); **patrēs familiae**, *heads of families* (C. ii. 44). **mātrēs familiae**, *matrons* (i. 50; vii. 26, 47, 48). **antīquissimā familiā**, *of a very old family* (vii. 32). **amplissimā familiā**, *of a very distinguished family* (vii. 37). [family.

familiāris, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [familia], adj., *belonging to a family, private.* **rēs familiāris**, *private property, estate, private fortune* (i. 18; vii. 14, 64). As noun, **familiāris**, -is, m., *intimate friend, companion.* [familiar.

familiāritās, -ātis, [familiāris], f., *intimacy, close friendship.* [familiarity.

fānum, -ī, n., *shrine.* C. i. 6. [fane.

fās, only nom. and acc. sing. in use, [cf. fārī, *to speak*], indecl., n., *right* according to the laws of God and nature. **fās est**, *it is right, allowable, lawful;* of an event, *it is predestined* (i. 50).

fascis, -is, m., *bundle* of reeds or twigs; especially pl., **fascēs**, -ium, *the fasces*, a bundle of rods with an axe, carried before the highest magistrates as an emblem of authority (C. iii. 71).

fastīgātē [fastīgātus], adv., *sloping; slanting* (iv. 17).

fastīgātus, -a, -um, [cf. fastīgium], adj., *sloping, sloping down.* ii. 8.

fastīgium, -ī, n., of a roof, *top;* of a hill, *summit, peak* (vii. 69); *sloping side, slope, descent, declivity.*

fatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *weary.* C. iii. 95. [fatigue.

fātum, -ī, [cf. fārī, *to speak*], n., *fate, destiny.* i. 39. [fate.

Faustus, -ī, see **Sulla.**

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, 2, *be favorable, be inclined toward, favor, countenance.* [favor.

fax, facis, f., *torch, firebrand.* vii. 24.

fēlīcitās, -ātis, [fēlīx, *happy*], f., *good fortune* (i. 40, C. iii. 73); *success* (vi. 43). [felicity.

fēlīciter, comp. fēlīcius, sup. fēlīcissimē, [fēlīx], adv., *with good fortune, luckily, happily* (iv. 25; C. i. 7).

fēmina, -ae, f., *woman; female.* vi. 21, 26. [feminine.

femur, -oris and -inis, n., *thigh.* v. 35; vii. 73. [femoral.

fera, -ae, [ferus, *wild*], f., *wild beast, wild animal.* vi. 25, 28.

ferāx, -ācis, comp. ferācior, sup. ferācissimus, [ferō], adj., *fertile, productive.* ii. 4. [feracious.

ferē, adv., *almost, nearly;* with words denoting time, *about; for the most part, as a rule, usually, generally.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, irr., *bear, carry, bring; endure, support, suffer, hold out against; bear away; obtain, receive; assert, report, say* (vi. 17). **signa ferre**, *to advance.*

ferrāmentum, -ī, [ferrum], n., *iron tool.* v. 42.

ferrāria, -ae, [ferrum], f., *iron mine.* vii. 22.

ferreus, -a, -um, [ferrum], adj., *of iron, iron.* **ferreae manūs**, *grappling-hooks* (C. ii. 6). [ferreous.

ferrum, -ī, n., *iron* (v. 12); figuratively, *the iron*, with a barbed point, at the end of a pike (i. 25), *sword* (v. 30).

fertilis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [ferō], adj., *fertile, fruitful, productive.* vi. 24; vii. 13. [fertile.

fertilitās, -ātis, [fertilis], f., *productiveness.* ii. 4. [fertility.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild; rude, savage, fierce.* [fierce.

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [ferveō + faciō], 3, *make hot, heat, heat red-hot.* v. 43; vii. 22.

ferveō, -ēre, 2, *be boiling hot, be heated, glow.* Present Participle as Adj., **fervēns**, -tis, *red-hot* (v. 43). [fervent.

fībula, -ae, [cf. fīgō, *fasten*], f., *clasp; brace, bolt* (iv. 17).

fidēlis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [fidēs], adj., *faithful, trustworthy* (vii. 76); *true, loyal* (iv. 21).

fidēs, -eī, f., *good faith, fidelity, loyalty; pledge of good faith, promise; confidence, trust; protection, alliance.* [faith.

fīdūcia, -ae, [fīdus], f., *reliance, confidence, assurance.* [fiduciary.

figūra, -ae, [cf. fingō], f., *form, shape*. [figure.

fīlia, -ae, f., *daughter*.

fīlius, -ī, m., *son*. [filial.

fingō, **fingere**, **fīnxī**, **fictus**, 3, *form, shape; conceive, imagine, think of* (vi. 37); *invent, devise* (iv. 5); of the features, *change, control* (i. 39). [feign.

finiō, **fīnīre**, **fīnīvī**, **fīnītus**, [fīnis], 4, *bound, define* (iv. 16); *measure, limit* (vi. 18, 25). [finite.

fīnis, -is, m., *limit, border, boundary, end*. Pl., *borders*, hence *territory, country, land*. [finis.

fīnitimus, -a, -um, [fīnis], adj., *bordering on, neighboring, adjoining*. As noun, **fīnitimī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *neighbors, neighboring peoples*.

fīō, **fierī**, **factus**, irr., used as pass. of **faciō**, *be made, be done; be performed*, (II. 5); *become, take place, happen; come about, come to pass*. **certior fierī**, *to be informed*.

firmiter, [fīrmus], adv., *steadily, firmly*. iv. 26.

firmitūdō, -inis, [fīrmus], f., *strength, solidity; rigidity*. iii. 13; iv. 17.

firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [fīrmus], 1, *make firm, strengthen, fortify*. vi. 29.

fīrmus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *strong, firm; steadfast, powerful*. [firm.

fistūca, -ae, f., *rammer, pile-driver*. iv. 17.

Flaccus, -ī, (flak'ŭs), see Valerius (2) and (7).

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *ask earnestly, importune, demand*. i. 16.

flamma, -ae, f., *blazing fire, flame, fire*. v. 43; vi. 16. [flame.

flectō, **flectere**, **flexī**, **flexus**, 3, *bend, turn, curve*. iv. 33; vi. 25. [flex.

Flegīnās, -ātis, m., *Gaius Fleginas* (flĕ-jī'năs), a Roman knight killed in action near Dyrrachium. C. III. 71.

fleō, **flēre**, **flēvī**, **flētus**, 2, *weep, shed tears, cry*.

flētus, -ūs, [fleō], m., *weeping*.

flō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *blow*. v. 7.

flōrēns, -entis, comp. -entior, sup. -entissimus, [flōreō, *bloom*], adj., *flourishing, prosperous* (I. 30, IV. 3); *influential* (vii. 32).

flōs, flōris, m., *flower*. vii. 73. [flower.

fluctus, -ūs, [cf. fluō], m., *wave*.

flūmen, -inis, [cf. fluō], n., *flowing water, current; stream, river*. **adversō flūmine**, *up the stream*.

fluō, **fluere**, **flūxī**, sup. **flūxum**, 3, *flow*. [flux.

fodiō, **fodere**, **fōdī**, **fossus**, 3, *dig, dig out*. vii. 73.

foedus, **foederis**, n., *treaty, compact, league*. vi. 2.

forāmen, -inis, [forō, *bore*], n., *hole*. C. III. 53.

fore = **futūrum esse**; see **sum**.

forem = **essem**; see **sum**.

forīs, [**foris**, *door*], adv., *out of doors; outside of a city, without* (vii. 76).

fōrma, -ae, f., *shape, form*. [form.

fors, **fortis**, [cf. ferō], f., *chance, luck, accident*. ii. 21; vii. 87.

fortasse, [**forte**], adv., *perhaps, possibly*. C. III. 60.

forte [abl. of **fors**], adv., *by chance, by accident; perchance, perhaps*.

fortis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *strong; brave, courageous*. [fort.

fortiter, comp. **fortius**, sup. **fortissimē**, [fortis], adv., *bravely, boldly, courageously*.

fortitūdō, -inis, [fortis], f., *courage, bravery*. i. 2. [fortitude.

fortuītō, [abl. of **fortuītus**, from **forte**], adv., *by chance*. [fortuitous.

fortūna, -ae, [fors], f., *luck, lot, fate, chance, fortune; good fortune; the goddess Fortune* (Fig. 198); Pl., *fortunes* (III. 12; V. 3; VI. 7; VII. 77); *pos-*

sessions, property (i. 11; v. 43; vi. 35; vii. 8). [fortune.

Figure 198. — The Goddess Fortune as conceived by the Romans.

Marble Statue, in Rome. The goddess wears a broad diadem. Her left hand holds a cornucopia, filled with good things for those whom she favors. Her right hand grasps a steering-paddle, with which, noiselessly but remorselessly, she guides the affairs of mankind; the steering-paddle rests upon a globe symbolizing the world.

Some such picture as this presented itself to Caesar's mind when he vividly personified *fortuna*, which in certain passages of his text (as v. 44) is sometimes written with a capital letter. But his vision was too broad and his mind too philosophical to believe in Fortuna as those did who worshipped at her shrine.

fortūnātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of **fortūnō**, from **fortūna**], adj., *prosperous, fortunate.* vi. 35. [fortunate.

forum, -ī, n., *market-place.* vii. 28. [forum.

fossa, -ae, [cf. **fodiō**], f., *trench, intrenchment.* [fosse.

fovea, -ae, f., *pit, pitfall.* vi. 28.

frangō, **frangere**, **frēgī**, **frāctus**, 3, *break; dash to pieces, wreck* (iv. 29); *crush, dishearten* (i. 31). [fracture.

frāter, -tris, m., *brother;* pl. as a name of honor applied to allies, *brethren* (i. 33, 44; ii. 3).

frāternus, -a, -um, [**frāter**], adj., *of a brother, brotherly.* [fraternal.

fraudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**fraus**], 1, *cheat; embezzle* (C. iii. 59, 60).

fraus, **fraudis**, f., *deception, imposition.* vii. 40. [fraud.

fremitus, -ūs, [cf. **fremō**, *roar*], m., *uproar, noise, din.*

frequēns, -entis, comp. **frequentior**, sup. -issimus, adj., *in large numbers, crowded.* [frequent.

fretum, -ī, n., *strait.* **fretum Siciliae**, *Sicilian strait, strait of Messina* (C. ii. 3).

frētus, -a, -um, adj., *relying on, depending on;* followed by abl.

frīgidus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [**frīgeō**, *be cold*], adj., *cold.* iv. 1. [frigid.

frīgus, **frīgoris**, n., *cold, cold weather.* Pl., *cold seasons, cold climate.*

frōns, **frontis**, f., *forehead; front.* **ā mediā fronte**, *in the middle of the forehead* (vi. 26). [front.

frūctuōsus, -a, -um, sup. -issimus, [**frūctus**], adj., *fruitful, fertile.* i. 30.

frūctus, -ūs, m., *fruit, product; profit, interest, income* (vi. 19); *advantage, gain, reward* (vii. 27, 86). [fruit.

frūgēs, -um, f., pl., *produce, crops, fruits.* i. 28. [frugal.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, [**frūmentum**], adj., *relating to grain* or *supplies* of grain; *productive* of grain (i. 10). **rēs frūmentāria**, *supply of grain, supplies.*

frūmentātiō, -ōnis, [frūmentor), f., *obtaining of grain, expedition in quest of grain.*

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus, [frūmentum], I, dep., *get grain, forage.*

frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain;* pl. often *crops of grain, grain-crops.*

fruor, fruī, frūctus, 3, dep., *enjoy;* followed by abl. iii. 22.

frūstrā, adv., *in vain, without effect; for nothing, without reason.* [frustrate.

Fūfius, -ī, m., *Gaius Fufius Cita* (fū′ fi-ụs sī′ tạ), a Roman knight. vii. 3.

fuga, -ae, f., *flight.* **in fugam dare**, *to put to flight, rout.*

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, 3, *flee, run away, make off; avoid, shun* (vii. 30); *escape* (vii. 38).

fugitīvus, -a, -um, [fugiō], adj., *fleeing, runaway.* As noun, **fugitīvus**, -ī, m., *runaway slave* (i. 23). [fugitive.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [fuga], I, *put to flight, rout.* vii. 68.

fūmō, -āre, [fūmus], I, *smoke.* vii. 24. [fume.

fūmus, -ī, m., *smoke.* ii. 7; v. 48.

funda, -ae, f., *sling.*

funditor, -ōris, [funda], m., *slinger.*

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, 3, *pour* (vii. 24); *scatter, rout* (iii. 6). [foundry.

fūnebris, -e [fūnus], adj., *funeral.* As noun, **fūnebria**, -ium, neuter plural, *funeral rites* (vi. 19).

fungor, fungī, fūnctus, 3, dep., *discharge, perform.* vii. 25. [function.

fūnis, -is, m., *rope;* rope *cable* (III. 13, IV. 29, V. 10); *halyards* (III. 14).

fūnus, -eris, n., *funeral.* vi. 19. [funeral.

furor, -ōris, [furō, *rage*], m., *rage, madness, fury.* [furor.

fūrtum, -ī, [fūr, *thief*], n., *theft.*

fūsilis, -e, [cf. fundō], adj., *molten;* of clay, *kneaded, molded.* v. 43. [fusile.

futūrus, -a, -um, see **sum**.

G.

Gabalī, -ōrum, m., pl., (gab′ạ-lī), a people in Southern Gaul, subject to the Arvernians. VII. 7, 64, 75.

Gabīnius, -ī, m., *Aulus Gabinius* (gạ-bin′ i-ụs), consul with Lucius Calpurnius Piso, 58 B.C. i. 6; C. III. 103.

gaesum, -ī, n., *heavy javelin* used by the Gauls. iii. 4.

Gaius, -ī, abbreviation **C.**, m., *Gaius* (gā′ yụs), sometimes in English written *Caius*, a Roman first name.

Galba, -ae, m., (gal′ bạ):

(1) *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a lieutenant of Caesar in the earlier part of the Gallic War, Praetor at Rome in 54 B.C.; afterwards named among the conspirators who took Caesar's life. iii. 1–6.

(2) *Galba*, a ruler of the Suessiones. ii. 4, 13.

galea, -ae, f., *helmet.* ii. 21.

Figure 199. — Coin struck at Lugdunum, now Lyons.

Silver, issued by order of Galba, latter half of first century A.D. Inscription, TRES GALLIA[E], 'Three Gauls.' The identification of the heads is uncertain; an ear of wheat projects in front of each.

Gallia, -ae, [Gallus], f., *Gallia* (gal′ i-ạ), *Gaul*, used of Transalpine Gaul, and of the middle one of its three parts, Celtic Gaul (i. 1);

also of Cisalpine Gaul, and of the Province; once in the plural, **Galliae**, as referring to the several divisions (iv. 20). After Caesar's conquest the plural was used of three provinces in Transalpine Gaul (Fig. 199). [Gaul.

Gallicus, -a, -um, [**Gallus**], adj., *of Gaul, Gallic.*

gallīna, -ae, [**gallus**, *cock*], f., *hen.*

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic.* As noun, m., *a Gaul;* pl., **Gallī**, **-ōrum**, *Celts, Galli* (gal′ ī), used by Caesar as referring to the inhabitants of *Gallia Celtica*, the middle of the three main divisions of Gaul.

Gallus, -ī; m., see **Trebius.**

Garumna, -ae, f., (gą-rum′ nạ), the great river of southwestern France, which rises in the Pyrenees Mountains and flows in a northwesterly direction to the Atlantic Ocean, after a course of about 350 miles; now *Garonne.* i. 1.

Garumnī, **-ōrum**, m., pl., (gą-rum′ nī), a people in Aquitania, probably near the sources of the Garonne. iii. 27.

Gatēs, -ium, m., pl., (gā′ tēz), a people in Aquitania. iii. 27.

gaudeō, **gaudēre**, **gāvīsus sum**, 2, semi-dep., *rejoice, be glad.* iv. 13.

gāvīsus, see **gaudeō.**

Geidumnī, **-ōrum**, m., pl., (jẹ-dum′ nī), a people of Belgic Gaul, clients of the Nervians. v. 39.

Genava, -ae, f., (jen′ ą-vạ), a city of the Allobroges, on the lacus Lemannus; now *Geneva.* i. 7.

gener, **generī**, m., *son-in-law.* v. 56.

generātim [**genus**], adv., *by kind; by peoples, by tribes, nation by nation* (i. 51; vii. 19).

gēns, **gentis**, f., *clan, family* (vi. 22); *nation, people.* [gentile.

genus, **generis**, n., *birth, descent, family; race* (iv. 3; vii. 22, 42); *kind, species; class, rank; method, nature.* [genus.

Gergovia, -ae, f., (jẹr-gō′ vị-ạ), chief city of the Arvernians, situated on a narrow plateau (elevation, 2,440 ft.) about six miles south of Clermont-Ferrand.

Germānia, -ae, [**Germānus**], f., *Germany.* [Germany.

Germānicus, -a, -um, [**Germānī**], adj., *German.*

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *of* or *from Germany, German.* As noun, **Germānī**, **-ōrum**, m., pl., *Germans, the Germans.* [German.

gerō, **gerere**, **gessī**, **gestus**, 3, *bear, carry; manage, transact, do, carry on; carry out, perform, accomplish;* of an office, *fill;* of war, *wage.* **rem gestam perscrībit**, *he wrote a full account of what had been done* (v. 47). [jest.

gestus, see **gerō.**

gladius, -ī, m., *sword.* [gladiolus.

glāns, **glandis**, f., *acorn; slingshot, bullet* hurled by a sling (v. 43; vii. 81). [gland.

glēba, -ae, f., *lump of earth, clod; lump, mass* (vii. 25). [glebe.

glōria, -ae, f., *fame, renown.* [glory.

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus, [**glōria**], 1, dep., *boast, brag* (i. 14).

Gnaeus, -ī, abbreviation **Cn.**, m., (nē′ ụs), a Roman first name.

Gobannitiō, **-ōnis**, m., (gob-ą-nish′ [y]ō), an uncle of Vercingetorix, hostile to him. vii. 4.

Gorgobina, -ae, f., (gọr-gob′ ị-nạ), a city in the country of the Aeduans, inhabited by Boians (vii. 9).

Gracchī, **-ōrum**, m., pl., *the Gracchi*, (grak′ ī), Tiberius and Gaius Sempronius Gracchus, leaders in reforms which led to violence; Tiberius Gracchus was killed in 133 B.C., Gaius in 121 B.C. C. I. 7.

Graecus, -a, -um, [Γραικός], adj., *Greek, Grecian.* As noun, **Graecus**, -ī, m., *a Greek* (vi. 24).

Graiocelī, -ōrum, m., pl., (grạ-yō′-sẹ-lī), a Gallic people in the Alps. i. 10.

grandis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *large, great.* [grand.

Grānius, -ī, m., *Aulus Granius*, (grā′-nị-ụs), a Roman knight killed in action near Dyrrachium. C. iii. 71.

grātia, -ae, [grātus], f., *favor, gratitude; esteem, regard; recompense, requital* (i. 35, v. 27); *popularity; influence* (i. 9, 18, 20, 43, etc.). Pl., **grātiae**, -ārum, *thanks.* **grātiās agere**, *to thank.* **grātiā**, *for the sake of* (vii. 43). [grace.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, [grātulor], f., *rejoicing, congratulation.* [gratulation.

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus, [grātus], 1, dep., *offer congratulations, congratulate.* i. 30. [gratulate.

grātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *acceptable, pleasing* (vi. 16). Neut. as noun, **grātum**, -ī, *a kindness, a favor* (i. 44). [grateful.

gravis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *heavy* (iv. 24); *heavily laden* (v. 8); *severe, hard, serious, troublesome;* of age, *advanced* (iii. 16). [grave (adjective).

gravitās, -ātis, [gravis], f., *weight* (v. 16); *importance* (iv. 3). [gravity.

graviter, comp. **gravius**, sup. **gravissimē**, [gravis], adv., *heavily* (iii. 14); *severely, warmly, bitterly; seriously, with great displeasure.* **graviter ferre**, *to be annoyed, be disturbed.*

gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [gravis], 1, *weigh down.* Pass. as dep., *hesitate, be unwilling* (i. 35).

Grudiī, -ōrum, m., pl., (grū′ dị-ī), a Belgic people near the Nervians. v. 39.

gubernātor, -ōris, [gubernō, *steer*], m., *helmsman, pilot.* [governor.

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [gustus, *tasting*], 1, *taste, taste of.* [gustatory.

H.

habeō, **habēre**, **habuī**, **habitus**, 2, *have, hold, possess, keep; regard, think, consider; account, repute, reckon;* of a count, *make* (i. 29). **ōrātiōnem habēre**, *to make a speech, deliver an address.* [habit.

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **haereō**], 1, *stick fast, remain fixed.* vii. 19. [hesitate.

hāmus, -ī, m., *hook; barbed hook* (vii. 73). [hamate.

harpagō, -ōnis, [= ἁρπάγη], m., *grappling-iron, grappling-hook*, a pole with an iron hook at the end. vii. 81.

Harūdēs, -um, m., pl., (hạ-rū′ dēz), a German tribe between the Danube and the upper part of the Rhine.

haud, adv., *not at all, not.* v. 54.

hedera, -ae, f., *ivy.* C. iii. 96.

Helvēticus, -a, -um, adj., *Helvetian.* **Helvēticum proelium**, *the battle with the Helvetians* (vii. 9).

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., *of the Helvetians, Helvetian.* **cīvitās Helvētia**, *the State of the Helvetians, Helvetian State*, divided into four cantons, the names of two of which, **pāgus Tigurīnus**, **pāgus Verbigenus**, are known (i. 12). As noun, **Helvētiī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Helvetians, Helvetii* (hẹl-vē′ sh[y]ī).

Helviī, -ōrum, m., pl., (hẹl′ vị-ī), a Gallic people in the Province.

Hercynius, -a, -um, adj., *Hercynian.* **Silva Hercynia** [in Greek Ἀρκύνια

δρη, Ἑρκύνιοι δρυμοί], a forest in southern Germany and Austria, which followed the course of the Danube from its source eastward beyond modern Vienna to the Carpathian Mountains. [hercynite.

hērēditās, -ātis, [hērēs, *heir*], f., *inheritance*. vi. 13. [heredity.

Hibernia, -ae, f., *Hibernia* (hī-bĕr'-nĭ-ą), *Ireland*. v. 13. [Hibernian.

hībernus, -a, -um, [hiems], adj., *of winter*. As noun, **hīberna**, -ōrum (sc. **castra**), n., pl., *winter-quarters*. [hibernal.

hīc, haec, hōc, gen. huius, dem. pron., *this*, *the following*, *he*, *she*, *it*.

hīc, [pron. hīc], adv., *here*, *at this place*; of time, *at this point*.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [hiems], 1, *pass the winter*, *winter*.

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter*; *wintry storm*, *stormy weather* (iv. 36).

hinc [hīc], adv., *hence*, *from this place*, *from this point*.

Hirrus, -ī, m., see **Lūcīlius**.

Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain*. Pl., **Hispāniae**, -ārum, *Spanish provinces*, referring to the division into the two parts, **Hispānia citerior**, *Hither Spain*, and **ulterior**, *Further Spain* (C. III. 73). [Spain.

Hispānus, -a, -um, adj., *Spanish*. v. 26. [spaniel, *i.e.* 'Spanish dog.'

homō, hominis, m. and f., *human being*, *man*.

honestus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [honōs], adj., *honorable*, *noble*; *of good family*, (vii. 3; C. II. 5). **locō nātus honestō**, *of excellent family* (v. 45, C. III. 61). [honest.

honōrificus, -a, -um, comp. **honōrificentior**, sup. -centissimus, [honōs, cf. faciō], adj., *conferring honor*, *complimentary*. i. 43. [honorific.

honōs, or **honor**, -ōris, m., *honor*, *esteem*, *respect*, *dignity*; *public office*, *office*, *post*. [honor.

hōra, -ae, [= ὥρα], f., *hour*, a twelfth part of the day, from sunrise to sunset, the Roman hours varying in length with the season of the year.

hordeum, -ī, n., *barley*. C. III. 47.

horreō, horrēre, horruī, 2, *tremble at*, *shudder at*, *dread*. i. 32.

horribilis, -e, comp. -ior, [horreō], adj., *dread-inspiring*. [horrible.

horridus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [horreō], adj., *wild*, *frightful* (v. 14). [horrid.

hortātus, -ūs, [hortor], m., *encouragement*, *urging*. C. III. 86.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, 1, dep., *urge*, *encourage*; *exhort*, *incite*, *press*.

hospes, hospitis, m., *host*; *guest* (vi. 23); *friend* bound by hospitality, *guest-friend* (i. 53, v. 6). [host.

hospitium, -ī, [hospes], n., *relation of guest and host*, *tie of hospitality*, *hospitality*. [hospice.

hostis, -is, m., public *enemy*, *foe*; in this book both the sing. and the pl., **hostēs**, -ium, in most cases = *the enemy*. Cf. **inimīcus**. [host (army).

hūc, [hīc], adv., *hither*, *here*, *to this place*.

huius modī, see **modus**.

hūmānitās, -ātis, [hūmānus], f., *humanity*; *refinement*, *culture* (i. 1. 47). [humanity.

hūmānus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [homō], adj., *of man*, *human* (C. I. 6); *refined*, *civilized* (iv. 3; v. 14). [human.

humilis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. **humillimus**, [humus, *ground*], adj., *low*; *shallow* (v. 1); *mean*, *humble*, *insignificant*, *weak*. [humble.

humilitās, -ātis, [humilis], f., *lowness* (v. 1); *humble position*, *insignificance* (v. 27). [humility.

I.

iaceō, **iacēre**, **iacuī**, **iacitūrus**, 2, *lie, lie prostrate; lie dead* (vii. 25). Pres. part. as noun, **iacentēs**, **-ium**, m., pl., *the fallen* (ii. 27).

iaciō, **iacere**, **iēcī**, **iactus**, 3, *throw, cast, hurl; throw up, construct* (ii. 12); of an anchor, *drop* (iv. 28).

iactō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [freq. of iaciō], 1, *throw, cast* (vii. 47); *throw about, jerk back and forth* (i. 25); *discuss, agitate* (i. 18); *boast of, vaunt* (C. III. 83).

iactūra, **-ae**, [iaciō], f., *a throwing; loss, sacrifice, cost.*

iactus, see iaciō.

iaculum, **-ī**, [cf. iaciō], n., *javelin.* v. 43, 45.

iam, adv., *already, now; at once, immediately* (vi. 35, vii. 38); *at length* (i. 42); *actually* (iii. 17); *in fact, indeed* (iii. 9).

ibi or **ibī**, adv., *in that place, there.*

Iccius, **-ī**, m., (ik′ sh[y]us), a leader of the Remi.

ictus, **-ūs**, [īcō, *strike*], m., *blow, stroke.* i. 25; vii. 25.

Id., abbreviation for **Īdūs.**

idcircō, [id + abl. of circus], adv., *on that account, therefore.* v. 3.

īdem, **eadem**, **idem**, **eiusdem**, dem. pron., *the same.* [identity.

identidem, [idem et idem], adv., *repeatedly, again and again.* ii. 19.

idōneus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *suitable, convenient, fit, capable.*

Īdūs, **-uum**, f., pl., abbreviation **Īd.**, *the Ides*, the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October; the thirteenth day of other months. i. 7.

īgnis, **-is**, m., *fire.* Pl., **īgnēs**, *fire-signals, watch-fires* (ii. 33). [igneous.

ignōbilis, **-e**, [in- + (g)nōbilis], adj., *unknown; obscure* (v. 28). [ignoble.

ignōminia, **-ae**, [in- + (g)nōmen], f., *disgrace, dishonor.* [ignominy.

ignōrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [cf. ignōscō], 1, *be ignorant of, not to know, be unaware; overlook* (i. 27). **nōn ignōrāns**, *being not unfamiliar with* (vi. 42), *not unaware* (vii. 33). [ignore.

ignōscō, **-gnōscere**, **-gnōvī**, **-gnōtus**, [in- + (g)nōscō, *know*], 3, *pardon, overlook; forgive, excuse.*

ignōtus, **-a**, **-um**, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [in- + (g)nōtus], adj., *unknown; unfamiliar* (iv. 24).

illātus, see **īnferō.**

ille, **illa**, **illud**, **illīus**, dem. pron., used with or without a noun, *that; he, she, it.*

illīc [loc. of ille], adv., *there, in that place, in that region.* i. 18; vii. 20.

illigō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [in + ligō, *bind*], 1, *tie on; bind* (iv. 17); *fasten* (v. 45).

illō [ille], adv., *thither, to that place; to that end* (iv. 11).

illūstris, **-e**, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [in, cf. lūx], adj., *prominent, distinguished; remarkable, noteworthy* (vii. 3). [illustrious.

Illyricum, **-ī**, n., (i-lir′ i-kum), a region along the east coast of the Adriatic Sea, now *Istria* and *Dalmatia.* ii. 35; iii. 7; v. 1.

imbēcillitās, **-ātis**, [imbēcillus, *weak*], f., *weakness.* [imbecility.

imber, **imbris**, m., *rain, rainstorm.* **magnus imber**, *a violent rainstorm* (vii. 27).

imitor, **-ārī**, **-ātus**, 1, dep., *copy, imitate.* vi. 40; vii. 22. [imitate.

immānis, **-e**, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, adj., *huge, enormous, immense.*

immineō, **-minēre**, [in + mineō, *overhang*], 2, *overhang; be near at hand, threaten* (vi. 38). [imminent.

immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [in + mittō], 3, *send into; send against* (vii. 40); of pikes, *hurl, cast* against (v. 44, vi. 8, C. III. 92); of timbers, *let down* into (iv. 17), *let in between* (iv. 17).

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in, cf. **mola**, *meal*], 1, lit. *sprinkle meal on* a victim for sacrifice; *sacrifice, offer up* (vi. 16, 17). [immolate.

immortālis, -e, [in- + **mortālis**, from **mors**], adj., *immortal.* [immortal.

immūnis, -e, [in- + **mūnus**], adj., *free from taxes*: vii. 76. [immune.

immūnitās, -ātis, [**immūnis**], f., *freedom* from public burdens, *exemption* (vi. 14). [immunity.

imparātus, -a, -um, sup. **-issimus,** [in- + **parātus**], adj., *not ready, unprepared.* vi. 30.

impedīmentum, -ī, [**impediō**], n., *hindrance, interference* (i. 25; ii. 25). Pl. **impedīmenta, -ōrum,** *heavy baggage, baggage; pack-animals* (vii. 45). [impediment.

impediō, -pedīre, -pedīvī, -pedītus, [in, cf. **pēs**], 4, *hinder, obstruct, interfere with; prevent, disorder;* of the mind, *occupy, engage* (v. 7); *make unpassable* (vii. 57). [impede.

impedītus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** sup. **-issimus,** [part. of **impediō**], adj., *encumbered* with baggage, *hindered, hampered, obstructed, embarrassed; difficult, hard* (ii. 28, iii. 9); of places, *hard, inaccessible.*

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [in + **pellō**), 3, *strike against; urge, urge on, drive on, impel.* [impel.

impendeō, -pendēre, [in + **pendeō**, *hang*], 2, *hang over, overhang.* i. 6; iii. 2. [impend.

impēnsus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** [part. of **impendō**, *expend*], adj., *ample, great;* of price, *dear, high* (iv. 2).

imperātor, -ōris, [**imperō**], m., *commander-in-chief, commander, general.* [emperor.

imperātōrius, -a, -um, [**imperātor**], adj., *of a commander, general's.* C. III. 96.

imperātum, -ī, [**imperō**], n., *command, order.* **ad imperātum,** *in accordance with his command* (vi. 2).

imperītus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** sup. **-issimus,** [in- + **perītus**], adj., *inexperienced, unskilled, unacquainted with.*

imperium, -ī, [cf. **imperō**], n., *command, order; control, government, dominion; military authority.* **nova imperia,** *a revolution* (ii. 1). [empire.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *command, order; exercise authority over, rule* (i. 31, 36); *requisition, order to furnish, levy, draft, demand.* After **imperō**, ut is ordinarily to be translated by *to*, and **nē** by *not to*, with the infin. [imperative.

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + **patrō**, *execute*], 1, *obtain* by request, *procure, get; accomplish, bring to pass; gain one's request.* **rē impetrātā,** *the request having been granted, after the request had been granted.*

impetus, -ūs, [in, cf. **petō**], m., *attack, assault, charge; raid* (i. 44); *fury, impetuosity, force.* [impetus.

impius, -a, -um, [in- + **pius**], adj., *wicked, impious.* As noun, **impiī, -ōrum,** m., pl., *the wicked* (vi. 13). [impious.

implicō, -āre, -āvī or **-uī, -ātus** or **-itus,** [in + **plicō**, *fold*], 1, *infold; interweave* (vii. 73). [implicate.

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + **plōrō**, *cry out*], 1, *beseech, implore* (i. 51); *invoke, appeal to* (v. 7, C. III. 82). **auxilium implōrāre,** *to solicit aid* (i. 31, 32). [implore.

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [in + pōnō], 3, *put on, place on, put; impose (upon); levy upon* (I. 44); of horses, *mount* (I. 42). [impose.

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + portō], I, *bring in, import.* I. I; IV. 2; V. 12. [import.

improbus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [in- + probus, *good*], adj., *bad, shameless.* I. 17.

improvīsō [improvīsus], adv., *unexpectedly, suddenly.* I. 13.

improvīsus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [in- + part. of prōvideō], adj., *unforeseen, unexpected.* Neut. as noun in dē improvīsō, *unexpectedly, suddenly.*

imprūdēns, -entis, [contr. from improvidēns, in- + part. of prōvideō], adj., *unawares, off one's guard.* III. 29; V. 15. [imprudent.

imprūdentia, -ae, [imprūdēns], f., *lack of foresight, indiscretion, ignorance.* [imprudence.

impūbēs, -eris, [in- + pūbēs], adj., *under age; unmarried* (VI. 21).

impugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + pugnō], I, *attack, make an attack on* (I. 44); *fight* (III. 26). [impugn.

impulsus, -ūs, [impellō], m., *push; instigation* (V. 25). [impulse.

impulsus, see impellō.

impūne [impūnis, from in- + poena], adv., *without punishment, with impunity.* I. 14.

impūnitās, -ātis, [impūnis, from in- + poena], f., *exemption from punishment, impunity.* I. 14. [impunity.

īmus, see īnferus.

in, prep. with acc. and abl.:

(1) With the acc.: *into, to, up to, towards, against; until, till; for, with a view to; in, respecting, concerning, according to; after, over.*

(2) With the abl.: *in, within, on, upon, among, over; in the course of, within, during, while; involved in, in case of, in relation to, respecting.*

In composition in retains its form before the vowels and most of the consonants; is often changed to il- before l, ir- before r; usually becomes im- before m, p, p.

in-, inseparable prefix, = *un-, not*, as in incertus, *uncertain.*

inānis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *empty* (V. 23); *vain, useless* (VII. 19). [inane.

incautē, comp. incautius, [incautus], adv., *carelessly.* VII. 27.

incautus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [in- + cautus, cf. caveō], adj., *off one's guard.* VI. 30. [incautious.

incēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, [in + cēdō, *go*], 3, *go forward, move (forward); come upon, enter* (C. III. 74).

incendium, -ī, [cf. incendō], n., *fire, conflagration.* [incendiary.

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus, [in, cf. candeō, *shine*], 3, *set on fire, burn; rouse, excite* (VII. 4). [incense.

incēnsus, see incendō.

inceptus, see incipiō.

incertus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [in- + certus], adj., *uncertain, doubtful; undecided* (VII. 62); *indefinite* (VII. 16); of reports, *unreliable, unauthenticated* (IV. 5); of a military formation, *in disorder* (IV. 32).

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, [in + cadō], 3, with in and the acc., *fall in with, come upon, fall in the way of* (I. 53; VI. 30); *occur, happen* (VII. 3); of war, *break out* (II. 14, VI. 15). [incident.

incīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [in + caedō], 3, *cut into.* II. 17. [incise.

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [in

+ **capiō**], 3, *begin, commence, undertake.* [incipient.

incīsus, see **incīdō.**

incitātiō, -**ōnis,** [**incitō**], f., *a rousing, spurring on.* C. III. 92.

incitō, -**āre,** -**āvī,** -**ātus,** [**in** + **citō**, *move rapidly*], 1, *urge, urge on, hurry;* of vessels, *drive forward* with oars, *drive* (iii. 14; iv. 25; vii. 60; C. II. 6); of horses, *urge on, spur;* of water, with **sē**, *rush against* (iv. 17), *run in* (iii. 12); of men, *rouse, stir up, excite; spur on* (iii. 10); *exasperate* (vii. 28). [incite.

incognitus, -**a,** -**um,** [**in-** + part. of **cognōscō**], adj., *unknown, not known.* iv. 20, 29. [incognito.

incolō, -**colere,** -**coluī,** [**in** + **colō**], 3, intrans., *live, dwell;* trans., *inhabit, dwell in, live in.*

incolumis, -**e,** adj., *safe, unharmed, uninjured, unhurt.*

incommodē, comp. -**ius,** sup. -**issimē,** [**incommodus**], adv., *inconveniently; unfortunately* (v. 33).

incommodum, -**ī,** [**incommodus**], n., *inconvenience, disadvantage; misfortune, disaster, injury, defeat.* **quid incommodī,** *any harm* (vi. 13), *what disadvantage* (vii. 45).

incrēdibilis, -**e,** [**in-** + **crēdibilis**], adj., *beyond belief, extraordinary, incredible.* [incredible.

increpitō, -**āre,** [freq. of **increpō**, *chide*], 1, *reproach, rebuke* (ii. 15); *taunt* (ii. 30).

incumbō, -**ere, incubuī, incubitus,** [**in** + **cumbō** for **cubō**, *lie*], 3, *press upon; devote one's self to* (vii. 76). [incumbent.

incursiō, -**ōnis,** [**incurrō**], f., *invasion, raid, inroad.* [incursion.

incursus, -**ūs,** [**incurrō**], m., *onrush* (ii. 20); *assault, attack* (vii. 36).

incūsō, -**āre,** -**āvī,** -**ātus,** [**in** + **causa**], 1, *find fault with, accuse; chide, rebuke* (i. 40; ii. 15).

inde, adv., of place, *from that place, thence;* of time, *after that, then* (vii. 48).

indicium, -**ī,** [cf. **indicō**, *reveal*], n., *information, disclosure.*

indīcō, -**dīcere,** -**dīxī,** -**dictus,** [**in** + **dīcō**], 3, *proclaim, declare;* of a council, *call, appoint.* [indict.

indictus, see **indīcō.**

indictus, -**a,** -**um,** [**in-** + **dictus**], adj., *unsaid;* of a case, *untried* (VII. 38).

indigeō, -**ēre, indiguī,** [**indu,** for **in,** + **egeō**], 2, *be in want of, lack.* C. II. 35. [indigent.

indignē, comp. -**ius,** sup. **indignissimē,** [**indignus**], adv., *unworthily, shamefully.* vii. 38.

indignitās, -**ātis,** [**indignus**], f., *shamefulness* (vii. 56); *indignity, ill-treatment* (ii. 14). [indignity.

indignor, -**ārī,** -**ātus,** [**indignus**], 1, dep., *consider unworthy; be indignant* (vii. 19). [indignant.

indignus, -**a,** -**um,** comp. -**ior,** sup. -**issimus,** [**in-** + **dignus**], adj., *unworthy.* v. 35; vii. 17.

indīligēns, -**entis,** comp. -**ior,** [**in-** + **dīligēns**], adj., *negligent, remiss.* vii. 71.

indīligenter, comp. -**ius,** [**indīligēns**], adv., *negligently, carelessly.* ii. 33.

indīligentia, -**ae,** [**indīligēns**], f., *negligence, carelessness.* vii. 17.

indūcō, -**dūcere,** -**dūxī,** -**ductus,** [**in** + **dūcō**], 3, *lead in; lead on, induce, influence* (i. 2, 27); *cover* (ii. 33). [induce.

inductus, see **indūcō.**

indulgentia, -**ae,** [**indulgēns**], f., *favor, kindness,* vii. 63. [indulgence.

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, 2, *be kina to, favor*. [indulge.

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtus, 3, *put on* (ii. 21); with **sē**, *pierce, stab themselves* (vii. 73, 82).

industria, -ae, [industrius], f., *activity, energy*. C. II. 4, III. 73. [industry.

industriē [industrius], adv., *actively, energetically*. vii. 60, C. III. 95.

indūtiae, -ārum, f., pl., *truce, armistice*. iv. 12, 13.

Indutiomārus, -ī, m., (ịn-dū′′ sh(y)o-mā′ rụs), a Treveran, rival of Cingetorix and hostile to Caesar.

ineō, -īre, -iī, -itus, [in + eō], irr., *enter, enter upon, begin;* of favor, *win* (vi. 43); of a plan, *form;* of an account or enumeration, *cast up, make*.

inermis, -e, and (i. 40) **inermus, -a, -um**, [in- + arma], adj., *unarmed, without arms*.

iners, -ertis, comp. **inertior**, sup. **inertissimus**, [in- + ars], adj., *indolent; unmanly* (iv. 2). [inert.

īnfāmia, -ae, [īnfāmis, from in- + fāma], f., *disgrace, dishonor*. [infamy.

īnfāns, -antis, comp. **īnfantior**, sup. **-issimus**, [in- + part. of **for**, *speak*], adj., *without speech*. As noun, m. and f., (lit. *one not speaking*), *child, infant* (vii. 28, 47). [infant.

īnfectus, -a, -um, [in- + factus], adj., *not done, unaccomplished*. **īnfectā rē**, *without accomplishing his* (*their*) *purpose* (vi. 12, vii. 17, 82).

īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus, [in + ferō], irr., *bring in, import* (ii. 15); *throw upon* (vii. 22), *throw into* (vi. 19); of injuries, *inflict;* of hope and fear, *inspire, infuse;* of an excuse, *offer, allege* (i. 39); of wounds, *make, give*. **bellum īnferre**, *to make war*. **signa īnferre**, *to advance*. **in equum īnferre**, *to put on a horse* (vi. 30). [infer.

īnferus, -a, -um, comp. **īnferior**, sup. **īnfimus** or **īmus**, adj., *below, underneath;* comp., *lower, inferior;* sup., *lowest, at the bottom*. **sub īnfimō colle**, *at the foot of the hill* (vii. 49). Neut. as noun, **ab īnfimō**, *from the foot* (vii. 19), *at the bottom* (vii. 73); **ad īnfimum**, *toward the bottom* (vii. 73); **ab īmō**, *from the bottom* (iii. 19), *at the lower end* (iv. 17). [inferior.

īnfestus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, adj., *hostile, threatening*.

īnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [in + faciō], 3, *stain*. v. 14. [infect.

īnfidēlis, -e, sup. **-issimus**, [in- + fidēlis], adj., *unfaithful, untrustworthy*. vii. 59. [infidel.

īnfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, [in + fīgō], 3, *fasten in*. vii. 73. [infix.

īnfimus, see **īnferus**.

īnfīnītus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, [in- + fīnītus, from fīniō], adj., *unlimited, boundless; vast, immense; numberless* (v. 12). [infinite.

īnfīrmitās, -ātis, [īnfīrmus], f., *weakness, feebleness* (vii. 26); *fickleness* (iv. 5, 13). [infirmity.

īnfīrmus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [in- + fīrmus], adj., *not strong, weak; depressed, timid* (iii. 24); comp., *less strong* (iv. 3). [infirm.

īnflātē, comp. **īnflātius**, [**īnflātus**], adv., *boastfully*. C. II. 39.

īnflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexus, [in + flectō], 3, *bend*. i. 25; ii. 17. [inflect.

īnflexus, see **īnflectō**.

īnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, [in + fluō], 3, *flow into, flow; drain into* (vii. 57). [influx.

īnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, [**in** + **fodiō**], 3, *bury*. vii. 73.

īnfrā, [for **īnferā,** sc. **parte**], adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., *below*. iv. 36; vii. 61.

(2) As prep., with acc., *below*. vi. 28, 35.

īnfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus, [**in** + **frangō**], 3, *break off; break, lessen* (C. III. 92). [infraction.

ingēns, -entis, comp. **ingentior,** adj., *large, vast, great;* of size of body, *huge* (I. 39).

ingrātus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** sup. **-issimus,** [**in-** + **grātus**], adj., *unacceptable, unwelcome*. [ingrate.

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus, [**in** + **gradior,** *step*], 3, dep., *advance; enter, go into* (ii. 4; v. 9). [ingress.

iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**in** + **iaciō**], 3, *throw in; lay on* (iv. 17); *place on, put on* (vii. 58); *inspire, infuse* (i. 46); of fear, *strike into* (iv. 19; vii. 55). [inject.

iniectus, see **iniciō**.

inimīcitia, -ae, [**inimīcus**], f., *enmity*. vi. 12.

inimīcus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** sup. **-issimus,** [**in-** + **amīcus**], adj., *unfriendly, hostile*. As noun, **inimīcus, -ī,** m., *enemy, personal enemy,* as distinguished from **hostis,** *a public enemy; adversary*. [inimical.

inīquitās, -ātis, [**inīquus**], f., *unevenness; unfairness, unreasonableness; disadvantage*. **inīquitās locī,** *unfavorableness of (the) position, disadvantageous position*. [iniquity.

inīquus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** sup. **-issimus,** [**in-** + **aequus**], adj., *uneven, sloping; unfavorable, disadvantageous; unfair, unjust* (i. 44).

initium, -ī, [cf. **ineō**], n., *beginning, commencement;* pl., *elements, first principles* (vi. 17). [initial.

initūrus, see **ineō**.

initus, -a, -um, see **ineō**.

iniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, [**in** + **iungō**], 3, *fasten upon, impose*. vii. 77. [enjoin.

iniūria, -ae, [**iniūrius, in-** + **iūs**], f., *wrong, outrage, injustice, injury*. [injury.

iniussus, -ūs, [**in-** + **iussus**], m., only abl. in use, *without command, without orders*. i. 19; v. 28.

innāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, [**in** + **nāscor**], 3, dep., *be born in, be latent in* (vii. 42, C. III. 92); *spring up in, arise in* (i. 41). [innate.

innātus, -a, -um, see **innāscor**.

innītor, -nītī, -nīxus or **-nīsus,** [**in** + **nītor**], 3, dep., *support one's self with, lean upon*. ii. 27.

innīxus, see **innītor**.

innocēns, -entis, comp. **innocentior,** sup. **-issimus,** [**in-** + **nocēns,** from **noceō**], adj., *blameless, innocent*. As noun, **innocentēs, -ium,** m., pl., *the innocent* (vi. 9), *innocent men* (vi. 16). [innocent.

innocentia, -ae, [**innocēns**], f., *blamelessness, integrity*. i. 40. [innocence.

inopia, -ae, [**inops,** *needy*], f., *want, lack, need, shortage, scarcity*.

inopīnāns, -antis, [**in-** + **opīnāns,** from **opīnor**], adj., *not expecting, unawares, off one's guard*.

inquam, inquis, inquit, present indicative, def., *say, says*.

īnsciēns, -entis, [**in-** + **sciēns,** from **sciō**], adj., *not knowing, unaware*.

īnscientia, -ae, [**īnsciēns**], f., *ignorance, lack of knowledge*.

īnscius, -a, -um, [**in-,** cf. **sciō**], adj., *not knowing, unaware, ignorant*.

īnsecūtus, see **īnsequor**.

īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [in + sequor], 3, dep., *follow up, pursue, follow in pursuit.*

īnserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, [in + serō], 3, *fasten in.* iii. 14. [insert.

īnsidiae, -ārum, [cf. īnsideō], f., pl., *ambush, ambuscade; artifice, device, trap, pitfall.* per īnsidiās, *by stratagem* (i. 42; iv. 13). [insidious.

īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus, [īnsidiae], 1, dep., *lurk in ambush, lie in wait.*

īnsigne, -is, [īnsignis], n., *sign, mark, signal; decoration.* [ensign.

īnsignis, -e, comp. -ior, [in + signum], adj., *noteworthy.* i. 12.

īnsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, [in + saliō, *leap*], 4, *leap upon.* i. 52.

īnsimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + simulō], 1, *charge* with, *accuse* of; with gen. vii. 20, 38.

īnsinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + sinuō, *curve*], 1, *push in;* with sē, *make one's way* (iv. 33). [insinuate.

īnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, [in + sistō], 3, *stand, stand upon, keep one's footing; press on; follow, pursue* (iii. 14). tōtus īnsistit in, *he devotes himself wholly to* (vi. 5). [insist.

īnsolēns, -entis, [in-, soleō], adj., *unusual.* īnsolēns bellī, *unaccustomed to war* (C. II. 36). [insolent.

īnsolenter [īnsolēns], adv., *arrogantly, haughtily.* i. 14.

īnsolitus, -a, -um, [in- + solitus], adj., *unaccustomed.* C. III. 85.

īnspectō, -āre, only pres. part. in use, [freq. of īnspiciō], 1, *look at, look.* īnspectantibus nōbīs, *under our own eyes* (vii. 25). [inspect.

īnstabilis, -e, [in- + stabilis, from stō], adj., *unsteady.* iv. 23.

īnstāns, -antis, comp. īnstantior, [part. of īnstō], adj., *impending, pressing.* vi. 4. [instant.

īnstar, n., indecl., *likeness;* followed by gen., *like* (ii. 17).

īnstīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *urge on, incite.* v. 56. [instigate.

īnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus, [in + statuō], 3, of troops, *draw up, arrange; devise, build, construct; make; make ready, furnish; obtain* (III. 9); *establish, institute* (vi. 16); *undertake, commence, begin; resolve upon, determine; train, teach.* [institute (verb).

īnstitūtum, -ī, [īnstituō], n., *plan, practice* (i. 50; vii. 24); *custom, usage* (iv. 20; vi. 18); *institution* (i. 1); *arrangement, disposition* (C. III. 84). [institute (noun).

īnstitūtus, see īnstituō.

īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, [in + stō], 1, *be near at hand, approach; press on, press forward.*

īnstrūmentum, -ī, [īnstruō], n., *tool;* singular with collective force, *stock, outfit.* mīlitāre īnstrūmentum, *stock of weapons* (vi. 30). [instrument.

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, [in + struō, *build*], 3, *build, construct;* of troops, *draw up, form; fit out, equip, supply* (v. 5; vii. 59; C. III. 61). [instruct.

īnsuēfactus, -a, -um, [īnsuēscō + faciō], adj., *accustomed, trained.* iv. 24.

īnsuētus, -a, -um, [part. of īnsuēscō], adj., *unaccustomed.*

īnsula, -ae, f., *island.* [insular.

īnsuper [in + super], adv., *above, on top.* iv. 17; vii. 23.

integer, -gra, -grum, comp. integrior, sup. integerrimus, [in- + TAG in tangō], adj., *untouched, whole, unhurt, undamaged; fresh,*

vigorous. **rē integrā**, *at the outset* (vii. 30). As noun, **integrī, -ōrum**, m., pl., *fresh troops.* [integer.

integō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, [in + tegō], 3, *cover, cover over.*

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [inter + legō], 3, *understand, see clearly, realize.* [intelligent.

intentus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [part. of **intendō**], adj., *attentive, eager, intent.* [intent.

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among;* of time, *during, for* (i. 36). **inter sē**, *with each other, among themselves, with one another.*

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [inter + cēdō], 3, *go between, be placed between* (ii. 17); *lie between* (i. 39; v. 52; vii. 26, 46, 47); of time, *intervene, pass* (i. 7; v. 53); *take place, occur* (v. 11). [intercede.

intercessiō, -ōnis, [intercēdō], f., *interposition, protest.* C. i. 7. [intercession.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [inter + capiō], 3, *cut off, intercept.* [intercept.

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [inter + claudō], 3, *shut off, cut off; block up, blockade, hinder.*

interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, [inter + dīcō], 3, *forbid, prohibit, exclude, interdict;* followed by a prohibition, *enjoin* (v. 58; vii. 40). [interdict.

interdiū, [inter, cf. **diēs**], adv., *in the daytime, by day.*

interdum, [inter + dum], adv., *for a time, for a season* (i. 14); *sometimes* (i. 39).

intereā, [inter + eā], adv., *in the mean time, meanwhile.*

intereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, [inter + eō], 4, *perish, be destroyed, die.*

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [inter + faciō], 3, *slay, kill.*

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [inter + iaciō], 3, *throw between, place between, put between;* pass. part., **interiectus**, *lying between, intervening.* [interject.

interiectus, see **intericiō**.

interim, [inter + -im], adv., *in the mean time, meanwhile.*

interior, -ius, gen. **-ōris**, sup. **intimus**, [inter], adj. in comp. degree, *inner, interior.* As noun, **interiōrēs, -um**, m., pl., *those* living *in the interior* (v. 14), *those within* the city (vii. 82, 86). [interior.

interitus, -ūs, [intereō], m., *destruction, death.* v. 47.

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [inter + mittō], 3, *leave an interval, leave vacant; leave off, leave; stop, break, cease, discontinue; interrupt, suspend;* pass., of fire, *abate* (v. 43), of wind, *fail* (v. 8). [intermittent.

interneciō, -ōnis, [cf. **internecō**, *destroy*], f., *slaughter* (i. 13); *utter destruction* (ii. 28). [internecine.

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *interrupt; disturb, hinder* (i. 44). [interpellate.

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [inter + pōnō], 3, *place between, put between, interpose; put forward* (i. 42); *present, manifest* (iv. 32); of time, *suffer to elapse.* **fidem interpōnere**, *to pledge one's honor* (v. 6, 36). [interpose.

interpres, -pretis, m., *interpreter*, i. 19; v. 36. [interpreter.

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus, [interpres], 1, dep., *explain, expound.* vi. 13. [interpret.

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [inter + rogō], 1, *ask, question.* vii. 20. [interrogate.

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [inter + rumpō], 3, *break*

down, destroy. vii. 19, 34. [interrupt.

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, [inter + scindō], 3, *cut down* (ii. 9); *cut through* (vii. 24).

intersum, -esse, -fuī, irr., *be between, lie between; be present at, take part in.* Impers., **interest**, *it concerns, is important.* **magnī interest**, *it is of great importance* (v. 4, vi. 1). **neque interest**, *and it makes no difference* (vii. 14). [interest.

intervāllum, -ī, [inter + vāllum], n., room between two palisades, *interval, space, distance.* [interval.

interveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum est, [inter + veniō], 4, *arrive* (vi. 37); *appear, present one's self* (vii. 20). [intervene.

interventus, -ūs, [interveniō], m., *intervention.* iii. 15.

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, [in + texō, *weave*], 3, *weave in, interweave.* ii. 33.

intoleranter, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [intolerāns], adv., *unendurably; violently* (vii. 51).

intrā, [for interā, sc. **parte**], prep. with acc., *inside of, within.*

intrītus, [in- + part. of terō, *rub*], adj., *unworn; unwearied, fresh* (iii. 26).

intrō, adv., *within, inside.*

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + *trō, cf. trāns], 1, *enter, go in.* [enter.

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [intrō + dūcō], 3, *lead into, bring into.* [introduce.

introeō, -īre, -īvī, [intrō + eō], irr., *go in; come in, enter* (v. 43).

introitus, -ūs, [introeō], m., *an entering; entrance* (v. 9). [introit.

intrōmissus, see intrōmittō.

intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [intrō + mittō], 3, *send into, send in; let in; bring in* (v. 58).

intrōrsus, [intrō + versus], adv., *within, inside.*

intrōrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [intrō + rumpō, *break*], 3, *burst into; break in* (v. 51).

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus, [in + tueor], 2, dep., *look upon.* i. 32. [intuition.

intuleram, see īnferō.

intulī, see īnferō.

intus, adv., *within, on the inside.*

inūsitātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [in- + part. of ūsitor, freq. of ūtor], adj., *unfamiliar, unwonted, unprecedented.*

inūtilis, -e, comp. -ior, [in- + ūtilis], adj., *useless, unserviceable, of no use; disadvantageous* (vii. 27). [inutile.

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, [in + veniō], 4, *come upon, find, discover; find out, learn* (ii. 16). [invent.

inventor, -ōris, [inveniō], m., *originator, inventor.* vi. 17. [inventor.

inveterāscō, -ere, **inveterāvī**, [in + veterāscō, from vetus], 3, *grow old; become established, become fixed* (v. 41); *establish one's self* (ii. 1). [cf. inveterate.

invictus, -a, -um, [in- + part. of vincō], adj., *unconquerable, invincible.* i. 36.

invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, [in + videō], 2, *look askance at; envy* (ii. 31).

invidia, -ae, [invidus], f., *envy, jealousy.* [envy.

inviolātus, -a, -um, [in- + part. of violō], adj., *inviolable.* iii. 9. [inviolate.

invīsitātus, -a, -um, [in- + vīsitātus], adj., *unseen.* C. II. 4.

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *invite, request* (i. 35; iv. 6); *entice, attract* (v. 51; vi. 35). [invite.

invītus, -a, -um, sup. -issimus, adj.,

unwilling, reluctant. **sē invītō** (I. 8; IV. 16), **eō invītō** (i. 14), *against his will.*

ipse, -a, -um, gen. **ipsīus**, dem. pron., *self; himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, they* (emphatic); *very.* **hōc ipsō tempore**, *just at this moment* (vi. 37).

īrācundia, -ae, [īrācundus], f., *anger, passion.* vi. 5; vii. 42.

īrācundus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, [īra], adj., *passionate, quick-tempered.* i. 31. [iracund.

irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, [in + rīdeō, *laugh*], 2, *laugh at, make fun of, ridicule.* ii. 30.

irrīdiculē, [in- + rīdiculē], adv., *without wit.* i. 42.

irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [in + rumpō, *break*], 3, *break into, burst into, rush in.*

irruptiō, -ōnis, [irrumpō], f., *raid* (vii. 7); *attack* (vii. 70). [irruption.

is, ea, id, gen. **eius**, dem. pron., *he, she, it; that, this, the, the one;* before **ut**, **is** = tālis, *such;* after **et**, *and that too;* after **neque**, *and that not* (iii. 2); with comparatives, abl. **eō** = *the, all the*, as **eō magis**, *all the more.*

iste, -a, -ud, gen. **istīus**, dem. pron., *that, that of yours.* vii. 77.

ita, [cf. **is**], adv., *in this way, so, thus; in the following manner, in such a way, accordingly.* **nōn ita**, *not so very, not very* (iv. 37; v. 47).

Italia, -ae, f., *Italy.* [Italy.

itaque, = **et ita**, *and so* (i. 52).

itaque, [ita + -que], adv., *and thus, accordingly, therefore, consequently.*

item, adv., *also, further; just so, in like manner.* [item.

iter, itineris, [cf. **eō, īre**], n., *journey, line of march, march; road, route.* **magnum iter**, *forced march*, from 20 to 25 miles a day. **ex itinere**, *directly after marching, from the line of march;* used of a force which turns from marching at once, without encamping, to attack an enemy in the field (i. 25), to storm a town (ii. 6, 12; iii. 21), or to retreat (ii. 29). [itinerary.

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

Itius, -ī, m., *portus Itius* (ish′ [y]us), harbor from which Caesar sailed to Britain, probably *Boulogne.*

itūrus, see **eō**.

iuba, -ae, f., *mane.* i. 48.

Iuba, -ae, m., *Juba* (jū′ ba), a king of Numidia, who joined the side of Pompey in the Civil War.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, 2, *order, give orders, bid, command.* [jussive.

iūdicium, -ī, [iūdex, *judge*], n., legal *judgment, decision, decree; place of judgment, trial* (i. 4); *opinion, judgment.* [judicial.

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iūdex], 1, *judge, decide; think, be of the opinion; pronounce, declare* (v. 56). [judge (verb).

iugum, -ī, [IUG, cf. **iungō**], n., *yoke* (i. 7, 12; iv. 33); of hills and mountains, *ridge, summit, height.*

iūmentum, -ī, [for *iugumentum, root IUG in **iungō**], n., *yoke-animal, beast of burden, draught-animal*, used of horses, mules, and asses.

iūnctūra, -ae, [iungō], f., *juncture, joint.* iv. 17. [juncture.

iūnctus, see **iungō**.

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, 3, *join together, join, connect, unite.* [join.

iūnior, see **iuvenis**.

Iūnius, -ī, m., *Quintus Junius* (jūn′ yus), a Roman of Spanish birth in Caesar's army. v. 27, 28.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter* (jū′ pi̯tẹr). vi. 17. Fig. 200. [jovial.

Iūra, -ae, m., *Jura* (jū′ rạ), a range of mountains extending from the

Rhine to the Rhone (about 170 miles), and forming the boundary between the Helvetians and the Sequanians. i. 2, 6, 8.

Figure 200. — Bust of Jupiter, discovered at Pompeii.

Of marble. "The god is following with closest attention the course of events in some far distant place, affairs that in the next moment may require his intervention; excitement and expectancy are seen in the raised upper lip. The ideal of this sculptor was the wise and powerful king, whose watchful and all-protective eye sees to the furthest limits of his kingdom."

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iūs], 1, *take an oath, swear.* [jury.

iūs, iūris, n., *right, justice, authority.* **iūre bellī**, *by the laws of war* (i. 44; vii. 41). **in suō iūre**, *in the exercise of his own rights* (i. 36, 44). **iūs reddere**, *to render justice* (vi. 13). **iūs dīcere**, *to administer justice* (vi. 23). **iūra in hōs**, *rights over these* (vi. 13).

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, [iūs + gerundive of iūrō], n., *oath.*

iussus, -ūs, [iubeō], m., used only in abl. sing., *order, bidding, command.* vii. 3.

iūstitia, -ae, [iūstus], f., *justice, fair-dealing.* [justice.

iūstus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [iūs], adj., *just, rightful, fair; proper, suitable, due.* [just.

iuvenis, -e, comp. iūnior, adj., *young.* As noun, iūniōrēs, -um, m., pl., *younger men*, of military age, under forty-six years (vii. 1). [junior.

iuventūs, -ūtis, [iuvenis], f., *youth; young men.*

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, 1, *help, aid, assist.*

iūxtā, adv., *near by, near.* [jostle.

K.

Kal. = **Kalendae.**

Kalendae, -ārum, f., pl., *Calends*, the first day of the month. [Calendar.

L.

L., with proper names = **Lūcius.**

Laberius, -ī, m., see **Dūrus.**

Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Titus Labienus* (lā-bi-ē′ nus), the most prominent of

Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic War; in the Civil War he went over to the side of Pompey, but displayed small abilities as a commander, and fell at the battle of Munda, 45 B.C.

lābor, lābī, lāpsus, 3, dep., *slip; go astray* (v. 3); *fail, be deceived, be disappointed* (v. 55). [lapse.

labor, -ōris, m., *toil, work, exertion, labor; endurance* (iv. 2). [labor.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**labor**], 1, *make effort, labor, strive* (i. 31; vii. 31); *be hard pressed, be in distress, be in danger.* [labor (verb).

labrum, -ī, [LAB, cf. **lambō**, *lick*], n., *lip* (v. 14); *edge* (vii. 72); *rim, brim* (vi. 28).

lac, lactis, n., *milk.* [lacteal.

lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, [obsolete **laciō**, *entice*], 3, *arouse, provoke; harass, assail, attack.*

lacrima, -ae, f., *tear.* [lachrymal.

lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**lacrima**], 1, *shed tears, weep.* vii. 38.

lacus, -ūs, m., *lake.* [lake.

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus, 3, *injure; break, violate* (vi. 9).

laetitia, -ae, [**laetus**], f., *rejoicing, joy, delight.* v. 48, 52; vii. 79.

laetus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** sup. **-issimus,** adj., *joyful, glad.* iii. 18.

languidē, comp. **languidius,** [**languidus**], adv., *feebly, lazily.* vii. 27.

languidus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** [cf. **languor**], adj., *weak, faint, exhausted.* iii. 5. [languid.

languor, -ōris, [**langueō**, *be faint*], m., *faintness; exhaustion, weariness* (v. 31). [languor.

lapis, -idis, m., *stone.* [lapidary.

lāpsus, see **lābor.**

laqueus, -ī, m., *noose.* vii. 22.

largior, largīrī, largītus, [**largus**, *abundant*], 4, dep., *give freely, supply, bestow* (vi. 24); *bribe* (i. 18).

largiter, [**largus**, *abundant*], adv., *abundantly, much.*

largītiō, -ōnis, [**largior**], f., *lavish giving, bribery.* i. 9. [largition.

Lārīsa, -ae, [Λάρισσα], f. (la-ris′ a), a city in Thessaly, now *Larissa.* C. III. 96, 97, 98.

lassitūdō, -inis, [**lassus**, *weak*], f., *faintness, weariness.* [lassitude.

lātē, comp. **lātius,** sup. **lātissimē,** [**lātus**], adv., *widely, broadly, extensively.* **quam lātissimē,** *as far as possible.*

latebra, -ae, [cf. **lateō**], f., *hiding-place.* vi. 43. [latebricole.

lateō, latēre, latuī, 2, *lie hid* (ii. 19); *be unnoticed* (iii. 14). [latent.

lātissimē, see **lātē.**

lātitūdō, -inis, [**lātus**], f., *width, breadth, extent.* [latitude.

lātius, see **lātē.**

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, m., pl., (lat-o-brī′ jī), a people near the Helvetians.

latrō, -ōnis, m., *freebooter, robber.*

latrōcinium, -ī, [**latrōcinor**, *plunder*], n., *freebooting, brigandage, robbery.* vi. 16, 23, 35.

lātūrus, see **ferō.**

lātus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** sup. **-issimus,** adj., *broad, wide;* of territory, *extensive* (ii. 4; vi. 22).

latus, -eris, n., *side;* of an army, *flank.* **latus apertum,** *exposed flank.* **ab latere,** *on the flank.* [lateral.

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**laus**], 1, *praise, commend, compliment.* [laud (verb).

laurea, -ae, [**laurus**, *laurel*], f., *laurel tree; laurel* (C. III. 71). [laureate.

laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory, commendation, distinction.* [laud.

lavō, -āre, lāvī, lautus and **lōtus,** 1, *wash;* pass. **lavārī,** used reflexively, *bathe* (iv. 1). [lave.

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *make wide, spread out, extend.* [laxative.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, [lēgō, *despatch*], f., *envoyship, mission* (i. 3); referring to persons (= **lēgātī**), *deputation, embassy, envoys.* [legation.

lēgātus, -ī, [lēgō, *despatch*], m., *envoy;* of the army, *lieutenant, lieutenant-general.* [legate.

legiō, -ōnis, [cf. **legō**, *collect*], f., *legion.* [legion.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, [**legiō**], adj., *of a legion, legionary.* [legionary.

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, 3, *bring together; single out, select* (C. III. 59); *read.* [legible.

legūmen, -inis, [**legō**, *gather*], n., *pulse.* C. III. 47. [legume.

Lemannus, -ī, m., with **lacus**, *Lake Geneva.*

Lemovīcēs, -um, m., pl., (lem-o-vī′ sēz), a Gallic people west of the Arvernians.

lēnis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *smooth, gentle.* [lenient.

lēnitās, -ātis, [**lēnis**], f., *smoothness* (I. 12); *gentleness* (C. III. 98). [lenity.

lēniter, comp. **lēnius**, sup. -issimē, [**lēnis**], adv., *mildly, gently, slightly.*

lentē, [**lentus**], adv., comp. **lentius**, *slowly.* C. II. 40.

Lentulus, -ī, m., (len′ chū lụs):

(1) *Lucius Lentulus*, consul in 49 B.C., a partisan of Pompey, who was with him at the time of the battle of Pharsalus (C. III. 96).

(2) See **Spinther.**

lēnunculus, -ī, m., *boat, skiff.* C. II. 43.

Lepontiī, -ōrum, m., pl., (lẹ-pon′-sh[y]ī), a people in the Alps.

Leptitānī, -ōrum, [Leptis], m., pl., (lep-tị-tā′ nī), the inhabitants of Leptis Minor, a city on the coast of Africa southeast of Thapsus.

lepus, -oris, m., *hare.* V. 12.

Leucī, -ōrum, m., pl., (lū′ sī), a Gallic state south of the Mediomatrici. I. 40.

Levācī, -ōrum, m., pl., (lẹ-vā′ sī), a Belgic people, dependents of the Nervians. V. 39.

levis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *light, slight;* of a report, *baseless, unfounded* (VII. 42); of an engagement, *unimportant* (VII. 36, 53). Comp., *more capricious* (V. 28); *less serious* (VII. 4).

levitās, -ātis, [**levis**], f., *lightness* (V. 34); *fickleness, instability* (II. 1; VII. 43). [levity.

leviter, [**levis**], adv., comp. **levius**, sup. **levissimē**, *lightly.* C. III. 92.

levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**levis**], 1, *lighten; relieve, free from* (V. 27).

lēx, lēgis, f., *law, enactment.* [legal.

Lexoviī, -ōrum, m., pl., (lẹks-ō′ vị-ī), a Gallic state on the coast west of the Sequana (*Seine*). Fig. 201.

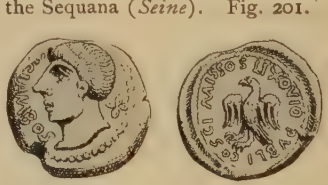


Figure 201. — Coin of the Lexovii.

Bronze. Obverse, portrait; inscription, CISIAMBOS, probably the name of the man whose portrait appears.

Reverse, eagle; inscription, PUBLICOS CIMISSOS LIXOVIO.

libenter, comp. **libentius**, sup. **libentissimē**, [**libēns**, *glad*], adv., *willingly, gladly, cheerfully.*

līber, -era, -erum, comp. -ior, sup. **līberrimus**, adj., *free, independent; unimpeded, unrestricted.* [liberal.

līberālitās, -ātis, [**līberālis**], f., *generosity* (I. 18); *generous help* (I. 43). [liberality.

līberāliter, comp. līberālius, sup. -issimē, [līberālis], adv., *graciously, courteously, kindly.*

līberē, comp. -ius, [līber], adv., *freely, without hindrance* (vii. 49); *boldly* (v. 19); *openly* (i. 18; vii. 1).

līberī, -ōrum, m., pl., *children.*

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [līber], 1, *set free, free; release, relieve.* [liberate.

lībertās, -ātis, [līber], f., *freedom, liberty, independence.* [liberty.

Libō, -ōnis, m., *Lucius Scribonius Libo* (skrĭ-bō′ nĭ-ŭs lī′ bō), a partisan of Pompey in the Civil War. C. III. 90.

lībrīlis, -e, [lībra, *pound*], adj., *weighing a pound.* vii. 81.

licentia, -ae, [licēns, licet], f., *lawlessness; presumption* (vii. 52). [license.

liceor, licērī, licitus, 2, dep., *bid, make a bid,* at an auction. i. 18.

licet, licēre, licuit and **licitum est,** 2, impers., *it is allowed, lawful, permitted.* **licet mihi,** *I am allowed, I may.* **petere ut liceat,** *to ask permission.* [licit.

Licinius, -ī, m., *Licinius* (lī-sin′ ĭ-ŭs), a Roman name:

(1) *Licinius Crassus,* see **Crassus.**

(2) *Licinius Damasippus* (dam-ă-sip′ ŭs), a Roman senator on the side of Pompey in the Civil War. C. II. 44.

līctor, -ōris, m., *lictor,* an attendant upon a Roman magistrate. C. I. 6.

Liger, -eris, m., (lī′ jẽr), *Loire,* which rises in the Cévennes (*Cebenna*) mountains, flows northwest, receives as a tributary the Allier (*Elaver*), flows west, and empties into the Atlantic, after a course of more than 500 miles. iii. 9; vii. 5, 11, 55, 59.

lignātiō, -ōnis, [lignor, from lignum], f., *getting wood.* v. 39.

lignātor, -ōris, [lignor, from lignum], m., *wood-cutter.* Pl., *men sent to get wood, wood foragers* (v. 26).

līlium, -ī, n., *lily.* vii. 73. [lily.

līnea, -ae, [līneus, from līnum], f., *line.* vii. 23. [line.

Lingonēs, -um, m., pl., (ling′ gŏ-nēz), a Gallic people west of the Sequanians.

lingua, -ae, f., *tongue; language* (i. 1, 47). [language.

lingula, -ae, [dim. of lingua], f., *tongue of land.* iii. 12.

linter, -tris, f., *boat, skiff.*

līnum, -ī, n., *flax.* iii. 13.

līs, lītis, f., *strife; lawsuit; damages,* adjudged by legal process (v. 1).

Liscus, -ī, m., (lis′ kŭs), chief magistrate (vergobret) of the Aeduans in 58 B.C.

Litaviccus, -ī, m., (lit-ă-vik′ ŭs), a prominent Aeduan.

littera, -ae, f., *letter, character,* of the alphabet. Pl. **litterae, -ārum,** *writing* (vi. 14); *letter, despatch.* **litterae pūblicae,** *public records* (v. 47). [letter.

lītus, -oris, n., *shore* of the sea, *strand, beach.* [littoral.

locuplēs, -ētis, [locus, cf. plēnus], adj., *wealthy, opulent.* C. III. 59.

locus, -ī, m., pl. **loca, -ōrum,** n., *place, ground; position, situation; room; social position, rank, standing; opportunity;* pl. **loca** often *region, country.* [local.

locūtus, see **loquor.**

longē, comp. **longius,** sup. **longissimē,** [longus], adv., *at a distance, far, by far.* Comp., of space, *further;* of time, *further, longer.* **quam longissimē,** *as far as possible.*

longinquus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** [longus], adj., *far removed, remote, distant; long-continued, prolonged, lasting.* [longinquity.

longitūdō, -inis, [**longus**], f., *length.* [longitude.

longurius, -ī, [**longus**], m., *long pole.*

longus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, adj., *long, extended, distant;* used of either space or time. **nāvis longa**, *battleship, galley.*

loquor, loquī, locūtus, 3, dep., *speak, say.* [loquacious.

lōrīca, -ae, [cf. **lōrum**, *leather strap*], f., *cuirass* of leather; *breastwork* (v. 40; vii. 72, 86). [loricate.

Lūcānius, -ī, m., *Quintus Lucanius* (lo͞o-kā′ nĭ-ŭs), a brave centurion. v. 35.

Lūcīlius, -ī, m., a Roman name. **Lūcīlius Hirrus** (lo͞o-sil′ ĭ-ŭs hir′ ŭs), a leader on the side of Pompey in the Civil War. C. III. 82.

Lūcius, -ī, m., (lo͞o′ sh[y]ŭs), a Roman first name; abbreviation, **L.**

Lucterius, -ī, m., (lo͞ok-tē′ rĭ-ŭs), a Cadurcan, a helper of Vercingetorix in the great uprising of 52 B.C.

lūctus, -ūs, [**lūgeō**], m., *mourning, lamentation.* C. II. 7.

Lugotorīx, -īgis, m., (lo͞o-got′ ō-rĭks), a British chief. v. 22.

lūna, -ae, f., *moon.* [lunar.

Lūna, -ae, f., *moon* as a divinity, *moon-goddess.* vi. 21.

Lutecia, -ae, f., (lo͞o-tē′ sh[y]ą), a city of the Parisii on an island in the Seine, *Paris.* vi. 3; vii. 57, 58.

lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight.* **prīmā lūce**, *at daybreak.*

lūxuria, -ae, [**lūxus**, *excess*], f., *high living, luxury.* ii. 15. [luxury.

M.

M., with proper names = **Mārcus.**

M as a designation of number = 1000.

māceria, -ae, [cf. **mācerō**, *soften*], f., originally *wall of soft clay; wall of loose stone* (vii. 69, 70.)

māchinātiō, -ōnis, [**māchinor**, *contrive*], f., *mechanical appliance, machine.* [machination.

maestus, -a, -um, sup. **-issimus**, [cf. **maereō**, *be sad*], adj., *sad, dejected.*

magis, sup. **maximē**, [cf. **magnus**], adv. in comp. degree, *more, rather.* **eō magis**, *all the more.* Sup. **maximē**, *very greatly, exceedingly, chiefly, especially.* **quam maximē**, *as much as possible.*

magister, -trī, m., *master* of a ship, *captain* (C. III. 43). [master.

magistrātus, -ūs, [**magister**], m., *magistracy, civil office; one holding a magistracy, magistrate.* [magistrate.

magnificus, -a, -um, comp. **magnificentior**, sup. **-issimus**, [**magnus**, cf. **faciō**], adj., *splendid, magnificent.* vi. 19. [magnificent.

magnitūdō, -inis, [**magnus**], f., *greatness, extent; size, bulk;* of winds and waves, *violence.* [magnitude.

magnopere, [for **magnō opere**, abl. of **magnum** + **opus**], adv., *very much, greatly, specially, deeply; earnestly, urgently.*

magnus, -a, -um, comp. **maior**, sup. **maximus**, adj., *great, large, powerful;* of wind, *violent;* of voices, *loud* (iv. 25). Sup., *greatest, very great, largest, very large.* As noun, **maiōrēs, -um**, m., pl., *forefathers, ancestors.* **maiōrēs nātū**, lit. *those older by birth, the old men, elders* (ii. 13, 28; iv. 13). [maximum.

maiestās, -ātis, [**maior**], f., *greatness, dignity.* vii. 17. [majesty.

maiōrēs, -um, see **magnus.**

malacia, -ae, [μαλακία], f., *calm, dead calm.* iii. 15.

male, comp. **peius**, sup. **pessimē**, [**malus**, *bad*], adv., *badly, ill, unsuccessfully.*

maleficium, -ī, [**maleficus**], n., *mischief, wrong-doing, outrage, harm.*

mālō, mālle, māluī, [**magis** + **volō**], irr., *prefer, choose rather, had rather.*

mālus, -ī, m., *upright pole, upright;* of a ship, *mast.* iii. 14; vii. 22.

mandātum, -ī, [part. of **mandō**], n., *commission, order; command; injunction, instruction.* [mandate.

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**manus** + **dō**], 1, *commit, entrust, commission; order, direct.* [mandatory.

Mandubiī, -ōrum, m., pl., *Mandubians, Mandubii* (man-dū′ bi̯-ī), a Gallic people north of the Aeduans; chief city Alesia, now *Alise-Ste-Reine.*

Mandubracius, -ī, m., (man-du̯-brā′-sh[y̆]us), a British chieftain, loyal to Caesar. v. 20, 22.

māne, adv., *in the morning.*

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, 2, *stay, remain; continue.* [manse.

manipulāris, -ē, [**manipulus**], adj., *of a maniple.* As noun, **manipulāris, -is,** m., *soldier of a maniple, fellow-manipular.* vii. 47, 50.

manipulus, -ī, [**manus** + PLE in **pleō**, the first standard of a maniple being a *handful* of hay raised on a pole], m., *company* of soldiers, *maniple,* one-third of a cohort. [maniple.

Mānlius, -ī, m., *Lucius Manlius* (man′ li̯-us), a proconsul in Gaul. iii. 20.

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, pass. **mānsuēfīō, -fierī,** [**mānsuētus,** *tame,* + **faciō**], 3, *make tame, tame.* vi. 28.

mānsuētūdō, -inis, [**mānsuētus,** *tame*], f., *gentleness, compassion.*

manus, -ūs, f., *hand;* of troops, *band, force.* [manicure.

Mārcellīnus, -ī, m., *P. Cornelius Lentulus Marcellinus* (len′ chū-lus mar-se-lī′ nus), a quaestor in Caesar's army in the Civil War. C. iii. 64.

Mārcellus, -ī, m., *Gaius Claudius Marcellus* (klâ′ di̯-us mar-sel′ us), one of the consuls in 49 B.C. C. i. 6.

Mārcius, -ī, m., *Marcius Rufus* (mär′ si̯-us rū′ fus), a quaestor in Curio's army (C. ii. 43).

Marcomanī, -ōrum, m., pl., (mar-kom′ a-nī), a Germanic people.

Mārcus, -ī, m., (mär′ kus), a Roman first name, our *Mark.*

mare, -is, n., *the sea.* [marine.

maritimus, -a, -um, [**mare**], adj., *of the sea, by the sea, near the sea; maritime, sea-.* **maritimae rēs,** *naval operations* (iv. 23). [maritime.

Marius, -ī, m., *Gaius Marius* (mā′-ri̯-us), a great Roman general; born 157 B.C., near Arpinum, died 86 B.C.; famous for his victories over Jugurtha, and the Cimbrians and Teutons; seven times consul, remaining to the end the bitter foe of the aristocratic party. i. 40.

Marrūcīnī, -ōrum, m., pl., (mär-ū̆-sī′ nī), a people of Central Italy, on the Adriatic coast. C. ii. 34.

Mārs, Mārtis, m., *Mars* (märz), god of war (vi. 17). [March.

mās, maris, m., *male.* vi. 26. [male.

Massilia, -ae, [Μασσαλία], f., (ma-sil′ i̯-a), a city in southern Gaul, founded by Greeks from Phocaea; now *Marseilles.* C. ii. 3, 7.

Massiliēnsēs, -ium, [**Massilia**], m., pl., *inhabitants of Massilia, Massilians.*

matara, -ae, f., *javelin, spear.* i. 26.

māter, -tris, f., *mother.* **mātrēs familiae,** *matrons.* [maternal.

māteria, -ae, and **māteriēs,** acc. (vii. 24) **māteriem,** [**māter**], f., *material, stuff; timber, wood; woodwork* (vii. 23). [material.

māterior, -ārī, [**māteria**], 1, dep., *procure timber, get wood.* vii. 73.

Matiscō, -ōnis, f., (mạ-tis′ kō), an Aeduan city on the Arar (*Saône*), now *Mâçon*. vii. 90.

mātrimōnium, -ī, [**mātĕr**], n., *marriage*. [matrimony.

Matrona, -ae, f., *Matrona* (mat′ rọ-nạ), *Marne*, a tributary of the Sequana (*Seine*), into which it flows four miles above Paris, after a course of more than two hundred miles. i. 1.

mātūrē, comp. **mātūrius**, sup. **mātūrrimē**, [**mātūrus**], adv., *early*. **quam mātūrrimē**, *as early as possible* (i. 33).

mātūrēscō, [**mātūrus**], **-ere**, **mātūruī**, 3, *become ripe, ripen*. vi. 29.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**mātūrus**], 1, *make haste, hasten*. [maturate.

mātūrrimē, see **mātūrē**.

mātūrus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **mātūrrimus**, adj., *ripe; early* (iv. 20). [mature.

Maurētānia, -ae, (mâ-rẹ-tā′ nị-ạ), a country of northern Africa reaching from Numidia west to the Atlantic Ocean. C. 1. 6.

maximē, [**maximus**], see **magis**.

maximus, see **magnus**.

Maximus, see **Fabius** (1).

medeor, -ērī, 2, dep., *heal; remedy, provide for* (v. 24). [medicine.

mediocris, -cre, [**medius**], adj., *common, ordinary;* of distance, *moderate, short*. [mediocre.

mediocriter, comp. **mediocrius** [**mediocris**], adv., *moderately, in a slight degree*.

Mediomatricī, -ōrum, m., pl., (mē″-dị-ọ-mat′ rị-sī), a Gallic people near the Rhine.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, [**medius** + **terra**], adj., *inland*. v. 12. [Mediterranean.

medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle, in the midst, mid-*. **media nox**, *midnight*. **dē mediā nocte**, *just after midnight*. [medium.

Meldī, -ōrum, m., pl., (mel′ dī), a Gallic people on the Matrona (*Marne*), east of the Parisii. v. 5.

melior, adj., see **bonus**.

melius, adv., see **bene**.

membrum, -ī, n., *limb*. [member.

meminī, -isse, def., *remember, bear in mind*. iii. 6; vii. 37.

memor, -oris, adj., *mindful, remembering*. C. II. 6.

memoria, -ae, [**memor**], f., *memory, recollection, remembrance*. **memoriā tenēre**, *to recollect*. **memoriā prōditum**, *reported, handed down, by tradition* (v. 12). [memory.

Menapiī, -ōrum, m., pl., (mẹ-nā′-pị-ī), a people in the northeast part of Belgic Gaul.

mendācium, -ī, [**mendāx**, *false*], n., *lie, falsehood*. [mendacious.

mēns, mentis, f., *mind; temper* (iii. 19); *attitude of mind, feeling* (i. 41; vii. 64). **et mente et animō**, *heart and soul* (vi. 5). [mental.

mēnsis, -is, m., *month*.

mēnsūra, -ae, [**mētior**], f., *measuring* (vi. 25); *measure*. **ex aquā mēnsūra**, *water-clock* (v. 13). [measure.

mentiō, -ōnis, [MEN in **memini**], f., *mention*. vi. 38. [mention.

mercātor, -ōris, [**mercor**, *trade*], m., *trader, merchant*.

mercātūra, -ae, [**mercor**, *trade*], f., *traffic, trade;* pl., *commercial transactions* (vi. 17).

mercēs, -ēdis, f., *pay, hire*. i. 31.

Mercurius, -ī, [cf. **merx**, *merchandise*], m., *Mercury*, messenger of the gods, patron of traders and thieves, promoter of eloquence, and conductor of souls to the lower world; also, patron divinity of athletes and athletics. vi. 17.

mereō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itus**, and **mereor**, **-ērī**, **-itus**, 2, dep., *deserve, merit; serve* (vii. 17). [merit.

merīdiānus, **-a**, **-um**, [**merīdiēs**], adj., *of mid-day.* **merīdiānō ferē tempore**, *about noon* (v. 8). [meridian.

merīdiēs, **-ēī**, [m e d ī-d i ē, loc.], m., *mid-day; south* (v. 13).

meritum, **-ī**, [part. of **mereō**], n., *desert, merit, service.* [merit.

meritus, see **mereor.**

Messāla, **-ae**, m., *Marcus Valerius Messala* (vạ-lē′ rị-ụs mẹ-sā′ lạ), consul, 61 B.C. i. 2, 35.

Messāna, **-ae**, [Μεσσήνη], f., (mẹ-sā′ nạ), a city of northeastern Sicily, now *Messina.* C. II. 3.

-met, enclitic, *self;* see **egō.**

mētior, **mētīrī**, **mēnsus**, 4, dep., *measure, measure out, distribute.*

Metius, **-ī**, m., *Marcus Metius* (mē′-sh[y]ụs), an envoy of Caesar to Ariovistus.

Metlosēdum, **-ī**, n., (met-lọ-sē′ dụm), a town of the Senones, on an island in the Sequana (*Seine*), 28 miles above Paris; later called Melodūnum, now *Melun.*

metō, **metere**, **messuī**, **messus**, 3, *reap.* iv. 32.

metus, **-ūs**, m., *fear, apprehension.*

meus, **-a**, **-um**, [**mē**], adj., *my, mine.*

mīles, **-itis**, m., *soldier, foot soldier.*

mīlitāris, **-e**, [**mīles**], adj., *of a soldier, military.* **rēs mīlitāris**, *art of war.* [military.

mīlitia, **-ae**, [**mīles**], f., *military service.* vi. 14, 18; vii. 14. [militia.

mīlle or **M**, indecl. adj., *a thousand.* As noun, **mīlia**, **-ium**, n., pl., *thousand, thousands.* [mile.

Minerva, **-ae**, f., (mị-nėr′ va), goddess of wisdom and the arts; identified with a Gallic divinity (vi. 17).

minimē, see **parum.**

minimus, **-a**, **-um**, see **parvus.**

minor, **-us**, see **parvus.**

Minucius, see **Basilus.**

minuō, **-uere**, **-uī**, **-ūtus**, 3, *lessen, diminish, reduce;* of the tide, *ebb* (iii. 12); of controversies, *settle, put an end to* (v. 26; vi. 23). [minute.

minus, see **parum.**

mīror, **-ārī**, **-ātus**, [**mīrus**], 1, dep., *wonder, wonder at.* i. 32; v. 54.

mīrus, **-a**, **-um**, [**mīror**], adj., *wonderful, remarkable, marvellous.*

miser, **-era**, **-erum**, comp. **-ior**, sup. **miserrimus**, adj., *wretched, unfortunate, pitiable; poor* (vi. 35). As noun, **miserī**, **-ōrum**, m., pl., *the wretched* (ii. 28). [miser.

misericordia, **-ae**, [**misericors**], f., *pity, compassion, mercy.*

miseror, **-ārī**, **-ātus**, [**miser**], 1, dep., *lament, deplore.* i. 39; vii. 1.

missus, **-ūs**, [**mittō**], m., used only in abl. sing., *a sending, despatching.* **missū Caesaris**, *being sent by Caesar* (v. 27; vi. 7).

missus, **-a** **-um**, see **mittō.**

mītissimē, [**mītis**, *mild*], adv., sup., *very gently, very kindly.* **quam mītissimē potest**, *in as kind a manner as possible* (vii. 43).

mittō, **mittere**, **mīsī**, **missus**, 3, *send, despatch; release, let go;* of weapons, *throw, hurl, shoot.* [missile.

mōbilis, **-e**, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [cf. **moveō**], adj., *fickle, changeable.* iv. 5. [mobile.

mōbilitās, **-tātis**, [**mōbilis**], f., *quickness of movement, speed* (iv. 33, C. II. 6); *instability, changeableness* (ii. 1). [mobility.

mōbiliter, [**mōbilis**], adv., *easily* (iii. 10).

moderor, **-ārī**, **-ātus**, [**modus**], 1, dep., *keep under control* (iv. 33); *manage, control* (vii. 75). [moderate.

modestia, -ae, [modestus], f., *self-control; subordination* (vii. 52). [modesty.

modo, [modus], adv., *only, merely, even;* of time, *lately, just now* (vi. 39, 43). **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also.*

modus, -ī, m., *measure, amount* (vi. 22); *plan* (v. 1); *manner, fashion, style.* **ad hunc modum**, *after this manner, in this way.* **eius modī**, *of such a character, of that kind.* **quem ad modum**, *in what way, how; in whatever way, just as* (i. 36). **modō**, abl., with a dependent genitive, *after the manner of, as* (iv. 17, 27). **nūllō modō**, *by no means* (vi. 12). **omnibus modīs**, *by all means, in every way* (vii. 14). [mode.

moenia, -ium, n., pl., *walls* of a city, *fortifications* as a whole.

mōlēs, -is, f., *mass, massive structure; dam, dike* (iii. 12). [mole.

molestē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [molestus, *troublesome*], adv., *with annoyance.*

mōlīmentum, -ī, [cf. **mōlior**, from **mōlēs**], n., *great effort.* i. 34.

molitus, see **molō**.

molliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [mollis], 4, *soften; make easy* (vii. 46).

mollis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *pliant, gentle; smooth* (v. 9); *weak, yielding* (iii. 19); *effeminate.*

mollitia, -ae (vii. 77), and (vii. 20) **mollitiēs**, -ēī, [mollis], f., *weakness, irresolution.*

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, 3, *grind.*

mōmentum, -ī, [for *movimentum, cf. **moveō**], n., *movement; thrust, forward movement* (C. II. 6); *influence* (vii. 85); *importance, account* (vii. 39). [moment.

Mona, -ae, f., (mō′ nạ), the *Isle of Man*, in the Irish Sea. v. 13.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, 2, *advise, warn, remind, admonish.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain, mountain-range, elevation, height.* **summus mōns**, *top of the height* (i. 22). **rādīcēs montis**, *foot of the mountain* or *height* (i. 38; vii. 36). [mount.

mora, -ae, f., *delay.*

morātus, -a, -um, see **moror**.

morbus, -ī, [cf. **morior**, **mors**], m., *disease, sickness.* vi. 16, 17. [morbid.

Morinī, -ōrum, m., pl., (mor′ i̯-nī), a Belgic people, on the seacoast opposite Kent.

morior, morī, mortuus, 3, dep., *die.* i. 4; vi. 13. [mortuary.

Moritasgus, -ī, m., (mor-i̯-tas′ gụs), a chief of the Senones. v. 54.

moror, -ārī, -ātus, [mora], 1, dep., *delay, wait, stay; hinder, delay, check, impede.* [moratorium.

mors, mortis, f., *death.* [mortal.

mortuus, -a, -um, see **morior**.

mōs, mōris, m., *usage, custom, way, wont, practice.* Pl., *customs, manners.* [moral.

Mosa, -ae, f., *Mosa* (mō′ sạ), *Meuse*, or *Maas*, which rises in the western spurs of the Vosges, pursues a northerly course till joined by the Waal, then flows westward into the North Sea.

mōtus, -ūs, [moveō], m., *movement, motion; disturbance, revolt, uprising.*

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, 2, *move, set in motion, remove;* of feelings, *disturb; stir, touch* (vii. 76). **castra movēre**, *to break camp.* [move.

mulier, -eris, f., *woman.*

mūliō, -ōnis, [mūlus], m., *muleteer, mule-driver.* vii. 45.

multitūdō, -inis, [multus], f., *great*

number, host, large body; crowd. [multitude.

multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**multa**, *a fine*], I, *punish; deprive of,* by way of punishment (vii. 54, C. III. 83). [mulct.

multō, multum, comp. **plūs,** sup. **plūrimum,** [**multus**], adv., *much, by far, greatly.* **multum posse** or **valēre,** *to have great power, influence.*

multum, adv., see **multō.**

multus, -a, -um, adj., comp. **plūs,** sup. **plūrimus,** *much;* pl., *many.* As noun, m., pl., **multī, -ōrum,** *many* (people); **plūrēs, -ium,** *more, quite a number, several;* neut., sing., **multum,** *much;* **plūs,** *more;* **plūrimum,** *very much:* neut., pl., **multa,** *many things, many considerations.* [plural.

mūlus, -ī, m., *mule.* vii. 45. [mule.

Mūnātius, see **Plancus.**

mundus, -ī, m., *world, universe.* vi. 14. [mundane.

mūnicipium, -ī, [**mūniceps**], n., *free town, municipality.* [municipal.

mūnīmentum, -ī, [**mūniō**], n., *fortification, defence, barrier.* ii. 17. [muniment.

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [**moenia**], 4, *fortify; protect, make secure.* **mūnīre iter,** *to construct a road* (vii. 58).

mūnītiō, -ōnis, [**mūniō**], f., *a fortifying, building of fortifications; works of fortification, fortification, intrenchment, defences.* **mūnītiōnī castrōrum,** *for the fortifying of the camp* (v. 9). [munition.

mūnītus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** sup., **-issimus,** [part. of **mūniō**], adj., *fortified, protected, secure.* **mūnītissima castra,** *a camp very strongly fortified* (v. 57).

mūnus, -eris, n., *duty, service, function; present, gift* (i. 43). **mūnus mīlitiae,** *military service* (vi. 18).

mūrālis, -e, [**mūrus**], adj., *of a wall, wall-.* **mūrālis falx,** *wall-hook* (iii. 14). **mūrāle pīlum,** *wall-pike* (v. 40; vii. 82). [mural.

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall; rampart, line of works* (i. 8). [mure, immure.

mūsculus, -ī, [dimin. of **mūs**], m., *little mouse;* in military language, *long shed, mousie.* vii. 84. [muscle.

mutilus, -a, -um, adj., *maimed, broken.*

mūtuor, -ārī, -ātus, [**mūtuus**], I, dep., *obtain a loan of, borrow.* C. III. 60.

N.

nactus, -a, -um, see **nancīscor.**

nam, conj., introducing an explanation or reason, *for.*

-nam; enclitic, *possible;* see **quisnam.**

Nammeius, -ī, m., (nạ-mē′ yụs), a Helvetian sent as envoy to Caesar. i. 7.

Namnetēs, -um, m., pl., (nam′ nẹ-tēz), a Gallic state north of the mouth of the Liger (*Loire*); the name survives in *Nantes.* iii. 9.

namque [**nam** + **-que**], conj., *for indeed, for truly, and* (*with good reason*) *for.*

nancīscor, -cīscī, nactus, and **nanctus,** 3, dep., *come upon, find, obtain; get, secure, get hold of.*

Nantuātēs, -um, m., pl., (nan-tụ-ā′-tēz), a Gallic people southeast of Lake Geneva.

Narbō, -ōnis, m., (när′ bō), capital of the Province, which was later named from it, *Gallia Narbonensis;* originally a city of the Volcae Arecomici, but made a Roman colony in 118 B.C.; now *Narbonne.* iii. 20; vii. 7.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, 3, dep., *be born, produced; is found* (v. 12); *rise* (ii. 18); *arise* (vi. 22; vii. 43). [nascent.

Nāsidiānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Nasidius*. C. II. 7.

Nāsīdius, -ī, m., *Lucius Nasidius* (nạ-sid′ ĭ-ụs), a naval commander on the side of Pompey in the Civil War. C. II. 3, 4.

Nasua, -ae, m., (nash′ ū-ạ), a chieftain of the Suebi. i. 37.

nātālis, -e, [nātus], adj., *of birth.* diēs nātālis, *birth-day* (vi. 18). [natal.

nātiō, -ōnis, [nāscor], f., *birth; people, tribe.* [nation.

nātīvus, -a, -um, [cf. nātus], adj., *natural, native.* vi. 10. [native.

nātūrāliter, [nātūrālis], adv., *by nature, naturally.* C. III. 92.

nātūra, -ae, [nātus, from nāscor], f., *nature, character; natural features, situation; nature of things, Nature.* nātūrā et opere, *naturally and artificially.* v. 9, 21. [nature.

nātus, -ūs, [cf. nāscor], m., used only in abl. sing., *birth.* maiōrēs nātū, see magnus.

nauta, -ae, [for *nāvita from nāvis], m., *sailor, seaman.* iii. 9; v. 10.

nauticus, -a, -um, [= ναυτικός], adj., *naval, nautical.* [nautical.

nāvālis, -e, [nāvis], adj., *naval.* As noun, nāvālia, -ium, n., pl., *shipyards.* C. II. 3. [naval.

nāvicula, -ae, [dim. of nāvis], f., *boat, skiff* (i. 53); *small ship* (C. II. 3).

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, [nāvigō], f., *navigation, sailing; voyage.* [navigation.

nāvigium, -ī, [nāvigō], n., *vessel, boat.* See speculātōrius.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nāvis, cf. agō], 1, *sail, go by water.* [navigate.

nāvis, -is, f., *ship, vessel;* for river navigation, *barge.* nāvis longa, *battleship, galley.* nāvis onerāria, *a transport* (Fig. 202). [nave.

Figure 202. — Ancient transport.

The transport is just entering the harbor, gliding into still water. The helmsman sits at the stern, and one of the two steering-paddles is plainly seen; the sailors are furling the large sail. From a relief on a tomb at Pompeii, symbolizing entrance into a haven of rest, after the stormy voyage of life.

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [(g)nāvus, *busy*], 1, *do with zeal.*

nē, adv., *not.* nē . . . quidem, *not . . . even.*

nē, conj., *that . . . not, lest, not to,* after words of fearing, *that;* after words of beseeching, ordering, commanding, *not to.* nē quis, *that no one.* nē qua spēs . . . *that no hope.* dēterrēre nē . . . *to frighten from.*

-ne, enclitic interrog. particle, *whether.* -ne . . . an, or -ne . . . -ne (vii. 14), *whether . . . or.*

nec, conj., see neque.

necessāriō, [necessārius], adv., *of necessity, unavoidably.*

necessārius, -a, -um, [necesse], adj., *needful, necessary; urgent, pressing.* As noun, necessārius, -ī, m., *relative, kinsman* (i. 11, C. III. 82). [necessary.

necesse, indecl. adj., *necessary, unavoidable, inevitable.*

necessitās, -tātis, [necesse], f., *necessity, need, urgency.* [necessity.

necessitūdō, -inis, [necesse], f., *close relationship, friendship.* i. 43.

necne, [nec + -ne], conj., *or not.* **utrum . . . necne**, *whether or not* (i. 50).

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *put to death, kill, destroy.* [noyade.

nēcubi, [nē + *cubi for **ubi**], conj., *that nowhere, lest anywhere.* vii. 35.

nefārius, -a, -um, [nefās], adj., *execrable, atrocious.* [nefarious.

nefās [ne, = nē, + fās], n., indecl., *a crime* against divine law, *impious deed.* **nefās est**, *it is wrong, it is not permitted* (vii. 40).

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [nec + legō], 3, *disregard, leave out of consideration, be indifferent to; neglect* (iii. 27; iv. 38); *overlook, leave unnoticed* (i. 35, 36; iii. 10). [neglect.

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *deny, say not, say no,* often = dīcit nōn; *refuse* (v. 6, 27). [negative.

negōtiātor, -ōris, [negōtior], m., *wholesale dealer, wholesaler.* C. III. 103. [negotiator.

negōtior, -ārī, -ātus, [negōtium], 1, dep., *transact business.* **negōtiandī causā**, *in order to carry on business* (VII. 3, 42, 55). [negotiate.

negōtium, -ī, [neg-, = nē, + ōtium], n., *business, enterprise, task; effort, trouble, difficulty.* **nihil negōtiī**, *no trouble,* (v. 38).

Nemetēs, -um, m., pl., (nem′ ẹ-tēz), a Germanic people, settled west of the Rhine.

nēmō, dat. **nēminī**, [nē + *hemō = homō], m., *no one, nobody.*

nēquāquam [nē + quāquam, *anywhere*], adv., *not at all, by no means.*

neque or **nec** [ne, = nē, + -que], adv., *nor, and . . . not.* **neque . . . neque** or **nec**, *neither . . . nor.*

nē . . . quidem, see nē.

nēquīquam [nē + quīquam], adv., *in vain, to no purpose.* ii. 27.

Nervicus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Nervians.* **Nervicum proelium**, *battle with the Nervians* (iii. 5).

Nervius, -ī, m., *a Nervian* (v. 45). Pl., **Nerviī**, **-ōrum**, *the Nervians, Nervii* (nėr′ vi-ī), a warlike people of Belgic Gaul.

nervus, -ī, m., *sinew, muscle* (vi. 21); pl., *power, force* (i. 20). [nerve.

neu, see nēve.

neuter, -tra, -trum, gen. **neutrīus**, [nē + uter], pron. adj., *neither.* As noun, **neutrī**, **-ōrum**, m., pl., *neither side* (vii. 63), *neither force* (ii. 9). [neuter.

nēve or **neu**, [nē + -ve, *or*], conj., *or not, and not, and that not, nor.* **neu . . . -que**, *and not . . . but* (ii. 21). **neu . . . et**, *and not . . . but* (v. 34).

nex, necis, f., *death* by violence.

nihil [ne, = nē, + hīlum, *trifle*], n., indecl., *nothing;* as adverbial acc., = emphatic nōn, *not at all.* [nihilism.

nihilō sētius, see sētius.

nihilum, -ī, [ne, = nē, + hīlum], n., *nothing.* **nihilō**, abl. of degree of difference, lit. *by nothing;* **nihilō minus**, *none the less.*

nimius, -a, -um, [nimis], adj., *excessive, too great.* vii. 29, C. III. 96.

nisi [ne, = nē, + sī], conj., *if not, unless, except.*

Nitiobrogēs, -um, m., pl., (nish-i-ob′ rọ-jēz), a people in Northern Aquitania.

nītor, nītī, nīxus and nīsus, 3, dep., *strive, endeavor; rely upon, depend on* (i. 13).

nix, nivis, f., *snow.* vii. 8, 55.

nōbilis, -e, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [cf. **nōscō**], adj., *noted, renowned* (vii. 77); *of high rank, noble* (i. 2, 18; v. 22; vii. 67). As noun, **nōbilēs**, **-ium**, m., pl., *nobles, men of rank* (i. 44; vi. 13); **nōbilissimus**, **-ī**, m., *man of highest rank;* pl., *men of highest rank* (i. 7, 31). [noble.

nōbilitās, **-tātis**, [**nōbilis**], f., *nobility, rank* (ii. 6); collective (for **nōbilēs**), *nobility, nobles, men of rank.* [nobility.

nocēns, **-entis**, comp. **nocentior**, sup. **-issimus**, [part. of **noceō**], adj., *guilty.* As noun, **nocentēs**, **-um**, m., pl., *the guilty* (vi. 9).

noceō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itūrus**, 2, *hurt, do harm, injure.*

noctū, [cf. **nox**], adv., *by night, at night, in the night.*

nocturnus, **-a**, **-um**, [cf. **nox**], adj., *by night, of night.* **nocturnus labor**, *the toil of the night* (vii. 83). **nocturnum tempus**, *night-time* (v. 11, 40). [nocturnal.

nōdus, **-ī**, m., *knot; node*, on the joint of an animal (vi. 27). [node.

nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, [**nē** + **volō**], irr., *be unwilling, not wish, not want.* **nōlī**, **nōlīte**, with infin., *do not.*

nōmen, **-inis**, n., *name, appellation, title; reputation, renown; account.* **suō nōmine**, *on his own account* (i. 18), *on their own account* (vii. 75). [noun.

nōminātim [**nōminō**], adv., *by name.*

nōminō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**nōmen**], 1, *name, call* by a name (vii. 73); *mention* (ii. 18). [nominate.

nōn, adv., *not, no.* **nōn nihil**, *to some extent, somewhat* (iii. 17). **nōn nūllus**, *some, several.* **nōn numquam**, *sometimes.*

nōnāgintā, or **xc**, indeclinable num. adj., *ninety.*

nōndum [**nōn** + **dum**], adv., *not yet.*

nōn nihil, see **nōn**.

nōn nūllus, **-a**, **-um**, see **nōn**.

nōn numquam, see **nōn**.

nōnus, **-a**, **-um**, [**novem**], numeral ord. adj., *ninth.* [noon.

Nōreia, **-ae**, f., (nọ-rē′ ya), chief city of the Norici (nor′ i-sī), now *Neumarkt.* i. 5.

Nōricus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *of the Norici, Norican* (i. 5). As noun, **Nōrica**, **-ae**, f., *Norican woman* (i. 53).

nōs, see **ego**.

nōscō, **nōscere**, **nōvī**, **nōtus**, 3, *obtain a knowledge of, learn;* in tenses from the pf. stem, *know, be familiar with, be acquainted with.*

nōsmet, see **egomet**.

noster, **-tra**, **-trum**, [**nōs**], pron. adj., *our, our own.* As noun, **nostrī**, **-ōrum**, m., pl., *our men, our side.* [nostrum.

nōtitia, **-ae**, [**nōtus**], f., *knowledge, acquaintance.* [notice.

notō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**nota**, *mark*], 1, *brand* (C. iii. 74); *reprimand, check* (C. i. 7). [note.

nōtus, **-a**, **-um**, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [part. of **nōscō**], adj., *known, well-known, familiar.*

novem, or **viiii**, indeclinable num. adj., *nine.*

Noviodūnum, **-ī**, [Celtic word, = 'Newtown'], n., (nō′ vi̯ọ-dū′ nụm), name of three towns:

(1) Of the Aeduans, on the right bank of the Liger (*Loire*); now *Nevers.* vii. 55.

(2) Of the Bituriges, south of Cenabum. vii. 12, 14.

(3) Of the Suessiones, on the Axona (*Aisne*). ii. 12.

novitās, **-tātis**, [**novus**], f., *novelty, newness, strangeness.*

novus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *new, fresh, strange.* Sup. **novissimus**, *last, at*

the rear. As noun, **novissimī**, **-ōrum**, m., pl., *those at the rear, the rear.* **novissimum agmen**, *rear of the line of march, the rear.* [novice.

nox, noctis, f., *night.* **multā nocte**, *late at night, when the night was far spent.* [nocti- in noctivagant, etc.

noxia, -ae, [**noxius, -a, -um**, *hurtful*], f., *hurt, offence, crime* (vi. 16).

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, supine **nūptum**, 3, *veil one's self* for marriage, *marry, wed.* i. 18. [nuptial.

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nūdus**], 1, *strip, make bare; clear* (II. 6); *expose, leave unprotected.*

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *naked, bare; unprotected* (i. 25). [nude.

nūllus, -a, -um, gen. **nūllīus**, dat. **nūllī**, [**ne**, = **nē**, + **ūllus**], adj., *none, no.* As noun, especially in the dat., m., *no one.*

num, interrogative particle, expecting the answer No.

nūmen, -inis, [cf. **nuō**, *nod*], n., *divine will; divine majesty* (vi. 16).

numerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**numerus**], 1, *count, reckon.* C. III. 53. [numerate.

numerus, -ī, m., *number, amount; estimation, account* (vi. 13). **obsidum numerō**, *as hostages* (v. 27). [number.

Numidae, -ārum, [*νομάς, wanderer*, pl. *νομάδες*], m., pl., *Numidians*, a people in Northern Africa, in the country now called Algeria, famous as archers, and employed by Caesar as light-armed troops (ii. 7, 10, 24). Numidians under Juba destroyed the army of Curio in 49 B.C. (C. II. 39, 41).

nummus, -ī, m., *piece of money, money, coin.* v. 12.

numquam [**ne**, = **nē**, + **umquam**], adv., *never, not at any time.*

nunc, adv., *now, at present.*

nūncupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**nōmen**, cf. **capiō**], 1, *name publicly;* of vows, *offer publicly* (C. I. 6).

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**nūntius**], 1, *announce, report; give orders* (iv. 11). Impers. **nūntiātur**, *word is brought, it is reported.*

nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger, agent* (i. 44); *message, tidings.* [nuncio.

nūper, sup. **nūperrimē**, adv., *lately, recently.*

nūtus, -ūs, [**nuō**, *nod*], m., *nod, nodding* (v. 43); *bidding, command* (i. 31; iv. 23).

O.

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of, for.* **ob eam causam**, *for that reason.* **ob eam rem**, *on that account, therefore.* **quam ob rem**, *wherefore* (I. 34); *for what reason* (i. 50).

obaerātus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, [**ob**, cf. **aes**], adj., *in debt.* As noun, **obaerātus, -ī**, m., *debtor, serf* (i. 4).

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**ob** + **dūcō**], 3, *lead forward;* of a trench, *prolong, extend* (ii. 8).

obeō, -īre, -īī, -itus, [**ob** + **eō**], irr., *go to meet; attend to.* **omnia per sē obīre**, *to see to everything in person* (v. 33).

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**ob**+ **iaciō**], 3, *throw before; place in front, place; put in the way, expose;* of taunts, *cast up at, twit of* (C. III. 96); of difficulties, *present* (vii. 59). [object.

obiectātiō, -ōnis, [**obiectō**], f., *reproach.* C. III. 60.

obiectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **obiciō**], 1, *accuse of; twit of* (C. III. 48).

obiectus, -a, -um, see **obiciō**.

obitus, -ūs, [cf. **obeō**], m., *destruction.* ii. 29. [obituary.

oblātus, see **offerō**.

oblīquē, [**obliquus**], adv., *obliquely, with a slant.* iv. 17.

oblīquus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *slanting, crosswise.* vii. 73. [oblique.

oblīvīscor, **-līvīscī**, **-lītus**, 3, dep., *forget.* [oblivion.

obses, **-idis**, [cf. **obsideō**], m. and f., *hostage.*

obsessiō, **-ōnis**, [cf. **obsideō**], f., *siege* (vii. 36); *blockade* (vi. 36). [obsession.

obsessus, see **obsideō**.

obsideō, **-sidēre**, **-sēdī**, **-sessus**, [**ob**

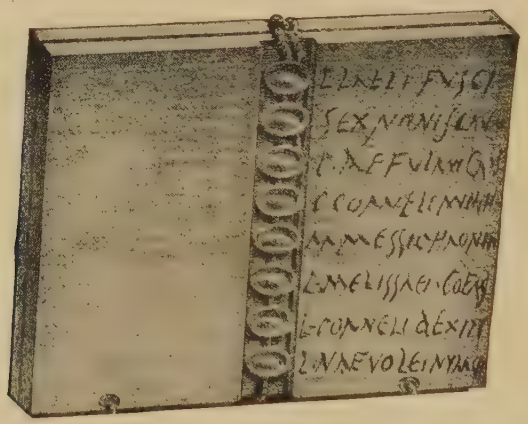


Figure 203. — A Roman document, tied and sealed.

The writing is on the two inside faces of the two tablets which were securely tied together. The seals of the 8 witnesses were stamped in wax over the ends of the cord, a groove of suitable width being cut in the wood of the tablets for the purpose.

The names of those who stamped their seals were written with ink on the wood at the right, in the genitive case. The number of witnesses was often 7 (cf. p. 467), sometimes 8, as here, sometimes 9 or more.

The illustration is from a charred tablet found at Pompeii, restored; it was sealed about 100 years after Caesar's death.

The names of the first three and last three witnesses are: L. LAELIUS FUSCUS, SEXTUS NONIUS SCAMANDER, P. AEFULANUS CRYSANTUS; L. MELISSAEUS COERASUS, L. CORNELIUS DEXTER, and L. NAEVOLEIUS NYMPHUS. The fourth and fifth names are uncertain.

obsecrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**ob** + **sacrō**, from **sacer**], 1, *beseech* in the name of that which is sacred, *implore, beg.* [obsecrate.

obsequentia, **-ae**, [**obsequēns**], f., *compliance, complaisance.* vii. 29.

observō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**ob** + **servō**], 1, *watch, observe* (vii. 16); *keep track of* (vi. 18); *heed, comply with* (i. 45; v. 35). [observe.

+ **sedeō**], 2, *besiege, blockade;* of roads, *seize upon, block* (iii. 23, 24; v. 40). [obsess.

obsidiō, **-ōnis**, [cf. **obsideō**], f., *siege, blockade; oppression* (iv. 19).

obsignō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**ob** + **signō**], 1, *seal up, seal* (Fig. 203).

obsistō, **-sistere**, **-stitī**, [**ob** + **sistō**], 3, *withstand.* vii. 29.

obstinātē [**obstinātus**, part. of **ob-**

stinō, *persist*], adv., *firmly, steadfastly, persistently.* v. 6.

obstrictus, -a, -um, see **obstringō**.

obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, [ob + stringō, *tie*], 3, *bind, place under obligation.* i. 9, 31.

obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, [ob + struō, *pile*], 3, *block up, stop up.* v. 50, 51; vii. 41. [obstruct.

obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob + temperō], 1, *submit to, obey.*

obtentūrus, fut. act. part. of **obtineō**.

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus, [ob + testor], 1, dep., *call as witness, appeal to; implore, adjure.*

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [ob + teneō], 2, *hold fast, maintain, keep, retain, hold* (i. 3); *get possession of, obtain* (i. 18; vi. 12); *possess, occupy, inhabit* (i. 1). [obtain.

obtrectātiō, -ōnis, [obtrectō], f., *disparagement.* C. i. 7.

obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [ob + veniō], 4, *fall in with, encounter* (ii. 23); *fall to the lot of, fall to* (vii. 28, 81, C. i. 6).

obviam, [ob + acc. of **via**], adv., *in the way, against.* **obviam Caesarī proficīscitur**, *goes to meet Caesar* (vii. 12).

occāsiō, -ōnis, [cf. **occidō**], f., *opportunity, favorable moment; surprise* (vii. 45). [occasion.

occāsus, -ūs, [cf. **occidō**], m., *going down, setting.* **sōlis occāsus**, *sunset, the west* (i. 1; iv. 28).

occidēns, -entis, [part. of **occidō**], adj., of the sun, *setting.* **occidēns sōl**, *the west* (v. 13). [occident.

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, [ob + cadō], 3, *fall* (vi. 37).

occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [ob + caedō], 3, *kill, slay.*

occīsus, -a, -um, see **occīdō**.

occultātiō, -ōnis, [occultō], f., *concealment.* vi. 21.

occultē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [occultus], adv., *secretly, in secret.*

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **occulō**, *cover*], 1, *hide, conceal; keep secret.*

occultus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of **occulō**, *cover*], adj., *hidden, secret, concealed.* As noun, **ex occultō**, *from ambush, in ambush* (vi. 34); **sē in occultum abdere**, *to go into hiding* (vii. 30); **in occultō**, *in hiding, in concealment* (ii. 18; vi. 35; vii. 27, 35), *in a secret place* (i. 31, 32). [occult.

occupātiō, -ōnis, [occupō], f., *employment, engagement.* [occupation.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob, cf. **capiō**], 1, *seize upon, seize, take possession of; fill, occupy* (ii. 8); of the attention, *engage, occupy.* **occupātus**, -a, -um, as adj., *engaged; busied* (ii. 19). [occupy.

occurrō, -currere, -currī, rarely -cucurrī, -cursūrus, [ob + currō], 3, *run to meet, come to meet, meet; meet with, fall in with, encounter; match, offset* (vii. 22); *come into mind, occur* (vii. 85). [occur.

Ōceanus, -ī, ['Ὠκεανός], m., *Ocean*, considered by Caesar as one body of water, including the Atlantic Ocean, the English Channel, and the North Sea; *the sea.* [ocean.

Ocelum, -ī, n., (ōs' ę-lụm), a town of the Graioceli in the Alps, west of modern Turin. i. 10.

octāvus, -a, -um, [octō], numeral ord. adj., *eighth.* [octave.

octingentī, -ae, -a, or **DCCC**, [octō + centum], num. adj., *eight hundred.*

octō, or **VIII**, indeclinable num. adj., *eight.* [October.

octōdecim, or **XVIII**, [octō + decem], indeclinable num. adj., *eighteen*.

Octodūrus, -ī, m., (ok-tọ-dū′ rụs), chief town of the Veragri, in the Rhone valley southeast of Geneva. iii. 1.

octōgēnī, -ae, -a, or **LXXX**, [octō], distrib. num. adj., *eighty* in each case.

octōgintā, or **LXXX**, [octō], indeclinable num. adj., *eighty*.

octōnī, -ae, -a, [octō], distrib. num. adj., *eight each, eight at a time*.

oculus, -ī, m., *eye*. [oculist.

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, def., *hate*.

odium, -ī, [ōdī], n., *hatred*. [odium.

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus, 3, *hit against; hurt, wound* (i. 19). Impersonal, **offendī posset**, *injury could be inflicted, a disaster might occur* (vi. 36); **esset offēnsum**, *a reverse had been experienced* (C. III. 72). [offend.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, [offendō], f., *hurting, wounding; reverse*.

offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātus, [ob + ferō], irr., *bring before; offer, present; put in one's way, afford*. **sē offerre**, *to offer one's self* (vii. 89), *expose one's self* (vii. 77), *rush against* (iv. 12). [offer.

officium, -ī, [for *opificium, ops + FAC in faciō], n., *service, duty; allegiance; sense of duty* (i. 40). [office.

Ollovicō, -ōnis, m., (ọ-lov′ ị-kō), a king of the Nitiobroges. vii. 31.

omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [ob + mittō], 3, *lay aside, throw away* (vii. 88); *neglect, disregard* (ii. 17). **omnibus omissīs rēbus**, *laying aside everything else* (vii. 34). [omit.

omnīnō, [omnis], adv., *altogether*; after negatives, *at all*; with numerals, *in all, altogether, only*. **nihil omnīnō**, *nothing at all*.

omnis, -e, adj., *every, all; as a whole*. As noun, pl., **omnēs**, -ium, m., *all men, all*; **omnia**, -ium, n., *all things, everything*. [omnibus.

onerārius, -a, -um, [onus], adj., *of burden*; see **nāvis**. [onerary.

onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [onus], 1, *load*. v. 1. [onerate.

onus, -eris, n., *load, burden, weight; cargo* (v. 1). [onus.

opera, -ae, [opus], f., *effort, work, pains; service, aid, assistance*. **dare operam**, *to take pains*. [opera.

opīniō, -ōnis, [opīnor, *think*], f., *idea, notion; good opinion, reputation; expectation*. **opīniō timōris**, *impression of fear*. **iūstitiae opīniō**, *reputation for fair dealing* (vi. 24). [opinion.

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, 2, impers., *it is necessary, it is needful; it behooves; ought; is proper* (vii. 33).

oppidānus, -a, -um, [oppidum], adj., *of the town*. As noun, **oppidānī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *townspeople, inhabitants of the town*.

oppidum, -ī, n., fortified *town, city*; fortified *enclosure, stronghold* (v. 21).

oppleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, [ob + pleō], 2, *fill completely*. C. III. 73.

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [ob + pōnō], 3, *place over against, set against, oppose*. [oppose.

opportūnē, sup. -issimē, [opportūnus], adv., *conveniently, seasonably, opportunely*.

opportūnitās, -ātis, [opportūnus], f., *fitness, favorableness, seasonableness; favorable situation, advantage*. [opportunity.

opportūnus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *fit, suitable, favorable, advantageous*. [opportune.

oppositus, -a, -um, [part. of op-

pōnō], adj., *placed opposite; lying in the way* (vii. 56). [opposite.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [ob + premō], 3, *weigh down; overwhelm, crush; take by surprise, surprise, fall upon.* [oppress.

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, [oppugnō], f., *storming* of a city or camp, *assault, attack, besieging.*

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob + pugnō], 1, *attack, assault; storm, besiege; take* by storming.

ops, opis, nom. and dat. sing. not in use, f., *help, power, might.* Pl., **opēs, -um,** *help* (vi. 21); *resources, means, wealth; influence; strength* (vii. 76). [opulent.

optātus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** sup. **-issimus,** [part. of optō], adj., *desired; welcome* (vi. 42).

optimē, see **bene.**

optimus, see **bonus.**

opus, n., used only in nom. and acc., *necessity, need.* **opus est,** *there is need, it is necessary.*

opus, operis, n., *work, labor;* that produced by labor, *structure, works; line of works, fortification.* Cf. **quantus.** [opus.

ōra, -ae, f., *coast, shore.* **ōra maritima,** *sea-coast* (iv. 20); place put for people, *inhabitants of the coast, people along the sea* (iii. 8, 16).

ōrātiō, -ōnis, [ōrō], f., *speech, words, remarks, plea.* [oration.

ōrātor, -ōris, [ōrō], m., *speaker; envoy* (iv. 27). [orator.

orbis, -is, m., *circle.* **in orbem cōnsistere,** *to form a circle* (v. 33). **orbis terrārum,** *the world* (vii. 29). [orb.

Orcynia, -ae, f., (or-sin′ i-a), with **silva,** *the Hercynian forest.* vi. 24.

ōrdō, -inis, m., *row, series; layer* (vii. 23); *rank, order; century* (half a maniple), *company* (i. 40, v. 35); *officer commanding a century, centurion.* [order.

Orgetorīx, -īgis, m., (or-jet′ or-riks), a Helvetian nobleman who formed a plot to seize the supreme power.

Ōricum, -ī, [Ὠρικόν], n., (or′ i-cum), a seaport on the east coast of the Adriatic, now *Palaeocastro,* on the bay of Valona. C. iii. 90.

oriēns, -entis, [part. of **orior**], adj., *rising.* **oriēns sōl,** *rising sun; the east* (i. 1; v. 13; vii. 69). [orient.

orior, orīrī, ortus, 4, dep., *rise, arise; begin, spring from; start from* (i. 39). **oriente sōle,** *at sunrise* (vii. 3). **ortā lūce,** *at daybreak* (v. 8).

ōrnāmentum, -ī, [ōrnō], n., *decoration; distinction, honor* (i. 44; vii. 15). [ornament.

ōrnātus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** sup. **-issimus,** [part. of ōrnō], adj., *equipped.* [ornate.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *furnish, equip; provide* (vii. 33).

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ōs, *mouth*], 1, *plead, beg, entreat.* [orate.

ortus, -ūs, [orior], m., *rising.* **ortus sōlis,** *sunrise* (vii. 41).

ortus, see **orior.**

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth; face* (v. 35; vi. 39; C. iii. 99). [oral.

Osismī, -ōrum, m., pl., (o-sis′ mī), a small state in the northwest corner of Gaul.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, [obs, for ob, + tendō], 3, *show, display; point out, set forth, declare.*

ostentātiō, -ōnis, [ostentō], f., *display, show; ostentation* (vii. 53). **ostentātiōnis causā,** *in order to attract attention* (vii. 45). [ostentation.

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **ostendō**], 1, *display, show;* with **sē,** *show off* (vii. 19).

ōtium, -ī, n., *rest, quiet, peace.*
ōvum, -ī, n., *egg.* iv. 10. [oval.

P.

P. with proper names = **Pūblius.**
pābulātiō, -ōnis, [**pābulor**], f., *foraging, getting fodder.* [pabulation.
pābulātor, -ōris, [**pābulor**], m., *forager.* v. 17.
pābulor, -ārī, -ātus, [**pābulum**], 1, dep., *forage, obtain fodder.*
pābulum, -ī, n., *fodder, forage.* [pabulum.
pācātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of **pācō**], adj., *peaceful, quiet.* [pacate.
pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**pāx**], 1, *pacify, tranquillize.* [pacable.
pactum, -ī, [**pacīscor**], n., *agreement; manner, way* (vii. 83). [pact.
Padus, -ī, m., (pā′ dus), *Po*, the great river of Northern Italy. v. 24.
Paelignus, -a, -um, *Paelignian, of the Paeligni* (pe-lig′ nī), a people of Central Italy, whose chief city was Corfinium. C. ii. 35.
Paemānī, -ōrum, m., pl., (pē-mā′ nī), a people in Belgic Gaul. ii. 4.
paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*
paenitet, -ēre, -uit, 2, impers., *it makes sorry, it causes regret.* [penitent.
pāgus, -ī, m., *district, canton*, generally referring to the inhabitants rather than to the country; *clan.* [pagan.
palam, adv., *openly, publicly.*
palma, -ae, f., *palm* of the hand; *hand* (vi. 26, C. iii. 98). [palm.
palūdātus, -a, -um, *wearing a general's cloak* (**palūdāmentum**); as we say, *in uniform.* C. i. 6.
palūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp, bog.*
palūster, -tris, -tre, [**palūs**], adj., *marshy, swampy* (vii. 20).
pandō, **pandere**, **pandī**, **passus**, 3, *spread out;* of hair, *dishevel* (vii. 48). **passīs manibus**, *with hands outstretched.*
pānis, -is, m., *bread;* pl., *loaves of bread* (C. iii. 48). [pantry.
pār, **paris**, adj., *like, similar, same; equal; corresponding* (vii. 74). **pār atque**, *same as.* [par.
parātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of **parō**], adj., *ready, prepared; provided.*
parcē, comp. -ius, [**parcus**], adv., *sparingly.* vii. 71.
parcō, **parcere**, **pepercī** and **parsī**, **parsūrus**, 3, *use sparingly* (vii. 71); with dat., *spare, give quarter to.*
parēns, -entis, [**pariō**], m. and f., *parent.* [parent.
parentō, -āre, -ātus, [**parēns**], 1, *offer a sacrifice in honor of* deceased *parents* or relatives; *take vengeance* for the death of any one, *avenge* (vii. 17).
pāreō, **pārēre**, **pāruī**, 2, *obey; submit to, be subject to.*
pariō, **parere**, **peperī**, **partus**, 3, *bring forth; obtain, get, acquire.*
Parīsiī, -ōrum, m., pl., (pa-rish′[y]ī), a Gallic people on the Sequana (*Seine*); the name survives in *Paris.*

Figure 204. — A coin of the Parisii.

Gold. Obverse, head with decorative treatment of the hair.

Reverse, chariot design conventionalized, the outline of the horse alone being distinctive.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *prepare, make ready, make ready for; obtain, secure.* [pare.

pars, partis, f., *part, portion, share, number; region, district, division; side, direction; party, faction* (vi. 11, l. 15). **pars maior**, *the majority*. **ūnā ex parte**, *on one side*. **in omnēs partēs**, *in every direction*. [part.

Parthī, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Parthians*, a Scythian people in the region of the Caspian Sea. C. III. 82.

particeps, -cipis, [pars, cf. capiō], adj., *sharing in*. C. III. 60. [participle.

partim, [acc. of pars], adv., *partly, in part*.

partior, partīrī, partītus, [pars], 4, dep., *divide, divide up, share*. Part. **partītus** in a passive sense, *divided, shared*. [partite.

partus, see pariō.

parum, comp. **minus**, sup. **minimē**, adv., *too little, not enough*. Comp., *less*. Sup., *least, very little; not at all, by no means*. [minus.

parvulus, -a, -um, [dim. of **parvus**], adj., *very small; very young; slight, trifling*.

parvus, -a, -um, comp. **minor**, sup. **minimus**, adj., *small, trifling, insignificant*. Comp., *smaller, less*. As noun, **minus**, n., *less*; **minimum**, n., *the least*. [minimum.

passim, [passus, from pandō], adv., *in all directions* (iv. 14); *here and there* (C. II. 38).

passus, -ūs, m., *step, pace*; as a measure of length, *pace* (reckoned as a double step, from the place where either foot is raised to the place where the same foot rests on ground again), = 5 Roman feet, or 4 feet, 10$\frac{1}{4}$ inches by English measurement. **mīlle passūs**, *mile*; pl., **mīlia passuum**, *miles*. [pace.

passus, see pandō.

passus, see patior.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, pass., patefīō, -fierī, -factus, [pateō + faciō], 3, *lay open, open*.

patēns, -entis, comp. **patentior**, [part. of pateō], adj., *open*. [patent.

pateō, patēre, patuī, 2, *be open, lie open, stand open; extend*.

pater, -tris, m., *father*. Pl., **patrēs**, -um, *fathers, forefathers*. [paternal.

patiēns, -entis, [patior], adj., comp. **patientior**, sup. **patientissimus**, *long-suffering, patient*. C. III. 96. [patient.

patienter, comp. **patientius**, [patiēns], adv., *patiently*. vii. 77.

patientia, -ae, [patiēns], f., *endurance* (vi. 24); *forbearance* (vi. 36). [patience.

patior, patī, passus, 3, dep., *suffer, bear, endure; permit, allow*. [passive.

patrius, -a, -um, [pater], adj., *of a father; ancestral, of (their) forefathers* (ii. 15).

patrōnus, -ī, [pater], m., *protector, patron*. vii. 40. [patron.

patria, -ae, [patrius, sc. *terra*], f., *native land, fatherland* (C. II. 7).

patruus, -ī, [pater], m., *father's brother, uncle* on the father's side.

paucitās, -ātis, [paucus], f., *fewness, small number*. [paucity.

paucus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *little*; pl., *few*. As noun, paucī, -ōrum, m., pl., *few, only a few*; n., pl., **pauca**, -ōrum, *a few words* (i. 44).

paulātim, [paulum], adv., *little by little, by degrees; gradually; one by one* (iv. 30).

paulisper, [paulum, per], adv., *for a short time, a little while*.

paulō, [abl. of paulus], adv., *by a little, just a little*.

paululum [paulus], adv., *a very little, only a little*. ii. 8.

paulum, [neut. acc. of **paulus**], adv., *a little, somewhat.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.* [peace.

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *do wrong.*

pectus, -oris, n., *breast.* [pectoral.

pecūnia, -ae, [cf. **pecus**, *cattle*], f., *property; money.* Pl., **pecūniae**, *contributions of money* (C. I. 6).

pecūniārius, -a, -um, [**pecūnia**], adj., *of money, pecuniary.* [pecuniary.

pecus, -oris, n., *cattle*, general term for domestic animals; *flesh* of cattle, *meat* (IV. 1).

pedālis, -e, [**pēs**], adj., *measuring a foot, a foot thick.* iii. 13. [pedal.

pedes, -itis, [**pēs**], m., *foot-soldier.* Pl., **peditēs, -um**, *infantry.*

pedester, -tris, -tre, [**pēs**], adj., *on foot.* **pedestrēs cōpiae**, *infantry.* [pedestrian.

peditātus, -ūs, [**pedes**], m., *infantry.*

Pedius, -ī, m., *Quintus Pedius* (pē'-di-us), nephew of Julius Caesar, under whom he served as lieutenant in the Gallic and Civil Wars. He was consul in 43 B.C. ii. 2, 11.

peior, see **malus.**

pellis, -is, f., *skin, hide.* [pelisse.

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, 3, *drive out, drive off; rout, defeat.*

Pēlūsium, -ī, [Πηλούσιον], n., (pe-lū'-shi-um), a city and fortress in Egypt, at the easternmost mouth of the Nile. C. III. 103.

pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus, 3, *weigh out; pay.* [pendent.

penes, prep. with acc., *in the power of, in the possession of.*

penitus, adv., *far within.* vi. 10.

per, prep. with acc., *through; across, along, over, among; during, in the course of; by, by the hands of, by means of, under pretence of; by reason of.* In oaths, *in the name of, by.* **per agrōs**, *over the country* (vi. 31; vii. 3).

In composition, **per** adds the force of *through, thoroughly, very much, very.*

peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctus, [**per** + **agō**], 3, *finish, complete, bring to an end.*

perangustus, -a, -um, [**per** + **angustus**], adj., *very narrow.* vii. 15.

percellō, -ere, perculī, perculsus, 3, *beat down; cast down, demoralize* (C. III. 47).

perceptus, see **percipiō.**

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [**per** + **capiō**], 3, *get, secure, gain; hear* (v. 1); *learn* (vi. 8). [perceive.

percontātiō, -ōnis, [**percontor**, *inquire*], f., *questioning, inquiry.*

percurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursūrus**, [**per** + **currō**], 3, *run through; run along* (iv. 33).

percussus, see **percutiō.**

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus, [**per** + **quatiō**, *shake*], 3, *thrust through.* v. 44. [percuss.

perdiscō, -discere, -didicī, [**per** + **discō**], 3, *learn thoroughly, learn by heart.* vi. 14.

perditus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [part. of **perdō**, *ruin*], adj., *abandoned, desperate* (iii. 17). As noun, **perditī, -ōrum**, m., pl., *desperate men, the desperate* (vii. 4).

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**per** + **dūcō**], 3, *lead through, bring, conduct, convey; bring over, win over* (vi. 12); *draw out, prolong* (v. 31, C. III. 95); *extend, construct, make.*

perendinus, -a, -um, [**perendiē**, *day after to-morrow*], adj., *after to-morrow.* **perendinō diē**, *day after to-morrow* (v. 30).

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, [per + eō], irr., *perish, be lost.* [perish.

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, [per + equitō, *ride*], 1, *ride through* (vii. 66); *ride about* (iv. 33).

perexiguus, -a, -um, [per + exiguus], adj., *very small.*

perfacilis, -e, [per + facilis], adj., *very easy.*

perfectus, see perficiō.

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [per + ferō], irr., lit. *carry through; carry, convey, bring, report; endure, suffer; bear, submit to.*

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [per + faciō], 3, *finish, complete; perform, accomplish, carry out; cause, effect; bring about, arrange.* [perfect.

perfidia, -ae, [perfidus], f., *faithlessness, bad faith, treachery.* [perfidy.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus, [per + frangō], 3, *break through.*

perfuga, -ae, [perfugiō], m., *deserter.*

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, [per + fugiō], 3, *flee for refuge, flee.*

perfugium, -ī, [cf. perfugiō], n., *place of refuge, refuge.* iv. 38.

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus, [per + regō], 3, *proceed, advance.*

perīclitor, -ārī, -ātus, [perīculum], 1, dep., *try, prove, make trial of, test; be in danger, incur danger* (vi. 34; vii. 56).

perīculōsus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [perīculum], adj., *full of danger, dangerous.* I. 33, vii. 8. [perilous.

perīculum, -ī, n., *trial, test* (i. 40); *attempt* (iv. 21); *risk, danger, hazard.* [peril.

perītus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *skilled, practised; familiar with.*

perlātus, see perferō.

perlēctus, see perlegō.

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [per + legō], 3, *read through, peruse.* v. 48. [perlection.

perluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtus, [per + luō, *wash*], 3, *wash.* Pass. used reflexively, *bathe* (vi. 21).

permagnus, -a, -um, [per + magnus], adj., *very large, very great.*

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, mānsūrus, [per + maneō], 2, *continue, stay, remain.* [permanent.

permisceō, -miscēre, -miscuī, -mixtus, [per + misceō, *mix*], 2, *mix, mingle.* vii. 62.

permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [per + mittō], 3, *give over, entrust, commit; grant, allow.* [permit.

permixtus, see permisceō.

permōtus, see permoveō.

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [per + moveō], 2, *deeply move, disturb, alarm; arouse, stir; influence, induce.*

permulceō, -ēre, -sī, -sus, [per + mulceō, *soothe*], 2, *calm, soothe.* iv. 6.

permulsus, see permulceō.

perniciēs, -ēī, [per, cf. nex], f., *ruin, destruction.* i. 20, 36.

perniciōsus, -a, -um, [perniciēs], adj., *ruinous.* C. I. 7. [pernicious.

pernīcitās, -tātis, [pernīx, *nimble*], f., *quickness of movement, nimbleness.* C. III. 84.

perpaucī, -ae, -a, [per + paucus], adj., *very few.* As noun, perpaucī, -ōrum, m., pl., *a very few.*

perpendiculum, -ī, [cf. perpendō], n., *plumb-line.* [perpendicular.

perpetior, -petī, -pessus, [per + patior], 3, dep., *bear patiently, endure.* vii. 10; C. III. 47.

perpetuō [perpetuus], adv., *continually, constantly* (vii. 41); *always, forever* (i. 31).

perpetuus, -a, -um, [per, cf. petō], adj., *continuous, unbroken, unceasing, entire, perpetual.* As noun, **in perpetuum,** *for ever, ever after.* [perpetual.

perquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, [per + quaerō], 3, *make careful inquiry about, inquire about.* vi. 9.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [per + rumpō, *break*], 3, *break through, burst through, force a passage.*

perruptus, see **perrumpō.**

perscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, [per + scrībō], 3, *write fully, report* in writing.

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [per + sequor], 3, dep., *follow up, pursue; assail, attack* (i. 13; v. 1); *avenge* (vii. 38). [persecute.

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [persevērus, *very strict*], 1, *continue* steadfastly, *persist.* [persevere.

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtus, [per + solvō], 3, *pay in full, pay.*

perspectus, see **perspiciō.**

perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [per + speciō, *look*], 3, *see, look; inspect, survey; perceive, observe, ascertain.* [perspective.

perstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, [per + stō], 1, *stand firmly, persist.*

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum est, [per + suādeō, *persuade*], 2, *convince, persuade, prevail upon, induce.* **mihi persuādētur,** *I am convinced.* [persuade.

perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus, [per + terreō], 2, *greatly alarm, frighten, terrify, dismay.* Part., **perterritus, -a, -um,** often *panic-stricken.*

pertināciа, -ae, [pertināx, per + tenāx, from teneō], f., *obstinacy, stubbornness.* [pertinacity.

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, [per + teneō], 2, *reach out, extend; pertain to, concern, belong to.* [pertain.

perturbātiō, -ōnis, [perturbō], f., *disturbance, confusion.* [perturbation.

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [per + turbō, *disturb*], 1, *disturb greatly, disorder, confuse.* [perturb.

pervagor, -ārī, -ātus, [per + vagor], 1, dep., *roam about.*

pervehō, -ere, pervexī, [per + vehō], 3, *carry through;* pass. with middle sense, *sail along* (C. ii. 3).

perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum est, [per + veniō], 4, *come (to), arrive (at), reach;* of an inheritance, *fall to* (vi. 19).

pēs, pedis, m., *foot;* as a measure of length, = .9708 of the English foot, or 296 millimetres. **pedem referre,** *to retreat.* [pedestrian.

pestilentia, -ae, [pestilēns], f., *plague, pestilence.* C. iii. 87. [pestilence.

petītus, see **petō.**

petō, petere, petīvī and **petiī, petītus,** 3, *make for, try to reach, seek; get, secure; beg, ask, request.* **petere ut liceat,** *to ask permission.*

Petrocorii, -ōrum, m., pl., (pet-rọ-ko′ rị-ī), a Gallic people north of the Garumna (*Garonne*) river. vii. 75.

Petrōnius, -ī, m., *Marcus Petronius* (pẹ-trō′ nị-ụs), a centurion of the eighth legion (vii. 50).

Petrosidius, -ī, m., *Lucius Petrosidius* (pet-rọ-sid′ ị-ụs), a brave standard-bearer. v. 37.

phalanx, -angis, Greek acc. sing., (i. 52) **phalanga,** [φάλαγξ], f., *compact host, mass, phalanx.* [phalanx.

Philippus, -ī, m., *Lucius Marcius Philippus* (fi-lip′ ụs), consul in 56 B.C. C. I. 6.

Pictonēs, -um, m., pl., (pik′ tọ-nēz), a Gallic people bordering on the Atlantic south of the Liger (*Loire*). Fig. 205.

Figure 205. — A coin of the Pictones.

Silver. Reverse, cavalryman with a shield. The object underneath has not been explained.

The hair of the head on the obverse is shown in thick masses.

pietās, -ātis, [**pius**, *dutiful*], f., *dutiful conduct, devotion*, to the gods, one's country, or one's kindred; *loyalty* (v. 27), [piety.

pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin, pike*. [pile.

pīlus, -ī, [pīlum], m., with **prīmus**, *maniple of the triarii*, a division in the army containing the most experienced soldiers. **prīmī pīlī centuriō**, *first centurion of the first maniple of the triarii, first centurion* of the legion in rank (iii. 5). **prīmum pīlum dūcere**, *to lead the first maniple of the triarii, to hold the rank of first centurion* (v. 35; vi. 38; C. III. 91).

pinna, -ae, f., *feather;* in military language, *battlement*. [pen.

Pīrustae, -ārum, m., pl., (pī-rus′tē), a people in Illyricum. v. i.

piscātōrius, -a, -um, [**piscātor**, *fisherman*], adj., *of a fisherman*. **nāvēs piscātōriae**, *fishing-smacks* (C. II. 4). [piscatory.

piscis, -is, m., *fish*. iv. 10. [Pisces.

Pīsō, -ōnis, m., (pī′ sō):

(1) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus*, consul 112 B.C. i. 12.

(2) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus*, consul with *Aulus Gabinius*, 58 B.C.; father-in-law of Caesar. i. 6, 12.

(3) *Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus*, consul with *M. Valerius Messala*, 61 B.C. i. 2, 35.

(4) *Piso*, a brave Aquitanian. iv. 12.

pix, picis, f., *pitch*. [pitch.

Placentia, -ae, f., (plạ-sen′ sh[y]ạ), a city in northern Italy, on the Po River; now *Piacenza*. C. III. 71.

placeō, **placēre**, **placuī**, **placitum est**, 2, *please, be agreeable, be welcome to*. Used impersonally, **placet**, *it pleases, it seems good; it is agreed, it is settled; it is resolved, it is decided*. **eī placuit**, *he resolved* (i. 34). [please.

placidē, comp. -ius, [**placidus**], adv., *quietly, calmly*. vi. 8.

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *appease, conciliate*. vi. 16. [placate.

Plancus, -ī, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus* (mụ-nā′ sh[y]ụs plang′-kụs), a lieutenant in Caesar's army. v. 24, 25.

plānē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [**plānus**], adv., *clearly, distinctly* (iii. 26); *entirely, quite* (vi. 43).

plānitiēs, -ēī, [**plānus**], f., *level ground, plain*.

plānus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *level, even* (iv. 23); *flat* (iii. 13). [plain.

plēbs, **plēbis**, or **plēbēs**, -eī, f., *the common folk, the common people, the masses*. **apud plēbem**, *among the masses*. [plebeian.

plēnē, comp. -ius, [**plēnus**], adv., *fully, completely*. iii. 3.

plēnus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *full*.

plērumque, [n. acc. of plērusque], adv., *commonly, generally, usually, for the most part.*

plērusque, -aque, -umque, [plērus, *very many*], adj., *very many, most.* As noun, **plērīque, -ōrumque,** m., pl., *the most, the greater part, the majority, most.*

Pleumoxiī, -ōrum, m., pl., (plū-mok′-si-ī), a Belgic people, subject to the Nervians. v. 39.

plumbum, -ī, n., *lead.* **plumbum album,** *tin* (v. 12.) [plumber.

plūrēs, plūrimus, see **multus.**

plūs, plūrimum, see **multum.**

pluteus, -ī, m., *breastwork* of planks or wickerwork, placed on ramparts (vii. 41), or on the stories of a tower (vii. 25); *wood construction* (vii. 72); movable *mantelet,* to protect besiegers.

pōculum, -ī, n., *cup, beaker.* vi. 28.

poena, -ae, f., *compensation, fine* (v. 1); *punishment, penalty.* **poenās pendere** (vi. 9) or **persolvere,** (i. 12), *to pay the penalty.* [penal.

pollex, pollicis, m., *thumb, great toe.*

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus, [por- + liceor], 2, dep., *promise, offer.*

pollicitātiō, -ōnis, [pollicitor, freq. of polliceor], f., *promise, offer.*

pollicitus, see **polliceor.**

Pompeiānus, -a, -um, [Pompeius], adj., *of Pompey.* As noun, **Pompeiānī, -ōrum,** m., pl., *soldiers of Pompey, Pompey's men.* (C. III. 48. 72).

Pompeius, -ī, m., (pom-pē′ yus):

(1) *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, Pompey,* Caesar's father-in-law and rival, born B.C. 106; conquered by Caesar at the battle of Pharsalus, and afterwards murdered in Egypt.

(2) *Gnaeus Pompeius,* an interpreter serving under Titurius Sabinus. v. 36.

pondus, ponderis, [cf. **pendō**], n., *heaviness, weight* (ii. 29; vi. 27; vii. 22); *a weight* as a standard of value (v. 12); *quantity* (C. III. 96). [ponderous.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, 3, *place, put; lay down* (iv. 37); *set aside* (vi. 17); *station; pitch.* Pass. often *be situated, be dependent, depend on.* **castra pōnere,** *to pitch camp, encamp.* [positive.

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.* [pontoon.

populātiō, -ōnis, [populor], f., *a laying waste, ravaging.* i. 15.

populor, -ārī, -ātus, 1, dep., *lay waste, devastate.* i. 11.

populus, -ī, m., *people* as a political whole, *nation.* [people.

por-, in composition, *forth, forward.*

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [por- + regō], 3, *reach out, extend.*

porrō, adv., *moreover, furthermore.* v. 27.

porta, -ae, f., *gate* of a city, *gateway;* of a camp, *gate, entrance, passage.* [porter (door-keeper).

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *carry, bring, convey, take.* [portage.

portōrium, -ī, n., *toll, tax, customs duties.* i. 18; iii. 1.

portus, -ūs, m., *harbor, haven.* [port.

poscō, poscere, poposcī, 3, *demand, ask for urgently;* of things, *require, make necessary* (vii. 1).

positus, -a, -um, see **pōnō.**

possessiō, -ōnis, [cf. **possīdō**], f., *possession.* [possession.

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, [por- + sedeō], 2, *hold, occupy, possess.* i. 34; ii. 4; vi. 12. [possess.

possīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessus, [por- + sīdō], 3, *gain possession of, possess one's self of.* iv. 7.

possum, posse, potuī, [potis, *able,* + sum], irr., *be able, can; have power, have influence.* **multum**

posse, *to have great influence;* **plūrimum posse**, *to have very great power, influence.* [posse.

post, adv., *afterwards, later, after;* with abl. of degree of difference, **annō post**, *a year later, the following year.* **paucīs post diēbus**, *a few days later.*

post, prep. with acc. only:

(1) Of place, *behind.* **post tergum**, *in the rear.*

(2) Of time, *after.* **post mediam noctem**, *after midnight.*

posteā [**post eā**], adv., *afterwards.* **posteā quam**, with the force of a conjunction, *after that, after.*

posterus, **-a**, **-um**, nom. sing. m. not in use, comp. **posterior**, sup. **postrēmus**, [**post**], adj., *the following, next.* As noun, **posterī**, **-ōrum**, m., pl., *posterity* (vii. 77). [postern.

postpōnō, **-pōnere**, **-posuī**, **-positus**, [**post** + **pōnō**], 3, *put after, lay aside.* **omnia postpōnere**, *to disregard everything else* (vi. 3). **omnibus rēbus postpositīs**, *laying everything else aside* (v. 7). [postpone.

postpositus, see **postpōnō**.

postquam [**post** + **quam**], conj., *after that, after, when;* **post** and **quam** are often separated by intervening words.

postrēmō [abl. of **postrēmus**, sc. **tempore**], adv., *at last, finally.*

postrīdiē, [locative from **posterus diēs**], adv., *the next day.* **postrīdiē eius diēī**, *the next day, the following day.*

postulātum, **-ī**, [part. of **postulō**], n., *demand, claim, request.*

postulō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, 1, *claim, demand, ask, request;* of things, *require, make necessary, demand; accuse of* (C. III. 83). [postulate.

potēns, **-entis**, comp. **potentior**, sup. **-issimus**, [part. of **possum**], adj., *powerful.* As noun, **potentior**, **-ōris**, m., *one more powerful* (vi. 11); pl., *the more powerful* (ii. 1; **vi.** 13, 22). **potentissimī**, **-ōrum**, m., pl., *the most powerful* (vi. 22). [potent.

potentātus, **-ūs**, [**potēns**], m., *power, headship, supremacy.* 1. 31. [potentate.

potentia, **-ae**, [**potēns**], f., *might, power, influence.* [potency.

potestās, **-ātis**, [**potis**], f., *might, power, authority, lordship; possibility, opportunity.* **potestātem facere**, *to give opportunity; to grant permission* (iv. 15; v. 41).

potior, **potīrī**, **potītus**, [**potis**, *able*], 4, dep., *obtain possession of, become master of, acquire, obtain.*

potius, adv. in comp. degree, sup. **potissimum**, [**potis**], adv., *rather, more, preferably.* **potius quam**, *rather than.*

prae, prep. with abl., *in comparison with* (ii. 30), *on account of* (vii. 44).

praeacuō, **-cuere**, **-cuī**, **-cūtus**, 3, *sharpen at the end.*

praeacūtus, **-a**, **-um**, [part. of **praeacuō**], adj., *sharpened at the end, sharpened, pointed; very sharp.*

praebeō, **-ēre**, **praebuī**, **praebitus**, [**prae** + **habeō**], 2, *hold forth; exhibit, manifest; furnish, provide* (ii. 17); *produce* (iii. 17). [prebendary.

praecaveō, **-cavēre**, **-cāvī**, **-cautus**, [**prae** + **caveō**], 2, *take precautions.* i. 38. [precaution.

praecēdō, **-cēdere**, **-cessī**, **-cessūrus**, [**prae** + **cēdō**], 3, *go before; surpass, excel* (i. 1). [precede.

praeceps, **-cipitis**, [**prae** + CAP in **caput**], adj., *headlong, with great speed, head over heels* (ii. 24; v. 17); *steep, precipitous* (iv. 33). [precipitous.

praeceptum, -ī, [part. of praecipiō], n., *order, command, instruction, injunction; precept.* v. 35; vi. 36. [precept.

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [prae + capiō], 3, *anticipate* (VII. 9; C. III. 87); *order, direct, instruct.*

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [praeceps], 1, *hurl headlong, fling down.* [precipitate.

praecipuē, [praecipuus], adv., *especially, specially, particularly.*

praecipuus, -a, -um, [prae + CAP in capiō], adj., *especial, particular.*

praeclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [prae + claudō], 3, *close up, block.* v. 9. [preclude.

praecō, -ōnis, m., *herald, crier.*

Praecōnīnus (prę-cọ-nī′ nụs), see Valerius (1).

praecurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, [prae + currō], 3, *run forward, hasten forward* (vi. 39, C. II. 34); *hasten in advance* (vii. 37); *anticipate* (vii. 9). [precursor.

praeda, -ae, [cf. praehendō], f., *booty, spoil, plunder.* [prey.

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prae + dicō], 1, *make known, declare, announce; boast* (i. 44, C. II. 39). [preach.

praedīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, [prae + dīcō], 3, *say beforehand; order, give orders,* in advance (C. III. 92). [predict.

praedō, -ōnis, [praeda], m., *robber, pirate.* C. III. 104.

praedor, -ārī, -ātus, [praeda], 1, dep., *obtain booty, pillage, plunder.*

praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [prae + dūcō], 3, *extend, make in front.* vii. 46, 69.

praefectus, see praeficiō.

praefectus, -ī, [praeficiō], m., *commander, prefect; subsidiary official* (I. 39). [prefect.

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [prae + ferō], irr., *carry before; put before, prefer to* (v. 54). **sē praeferre**, *to show one's self superior to* (ii. 27). [prefer.

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [prae + faciō], 3, *place in command of, appoint to command.*

praefīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, [prae + fīgō, *fasten*], 3, *fix in front.* **sudibus praefīxīs**, *by driving stakes in front* (v. 18). [prefix.

praefringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus, [prae + frangō], 3, *break off, shatter.* C. II. 6.

praemetuō, -ere, [prae + metuō, *fear*], 3, *be anxious.* vii. 49.

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [prae + mittō], 3, *send forward, send ahead, send in advance.* [premise.

praemium, -ī, [prae, cf. emō], n., *reward, distinction.* [premium.

praeoccupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prae + occupō], 1, *take possession of beforehand, seize first* (vii. 26). [preoccupy.

praeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prae + optō], 1, *choose rather, prefer.* I. 25.

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prae + parō], 1, *make ready beforehand, make ready, prepare.* [prepare.

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [prae + pōnō], 3, *set over, place in command of.*

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [prae + rumpō, *break*], 3, *break off in front, break off.* iii. 14.

praeruptus, -a, -um, [part. of praerumpō], adj., *steep, precipitous.*

praesaepiō, -saepīre, -saepsī, -saeptus, [prae + saepiō], 4, *fence in; block, bar* (vii. 77).

praesaeptus, see praesaepiō.

praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī,

-scrīptus, [prae + scrībō], 3, *give directions, direct* (i. 36, 40); *determine* (ii. 20). [prescribe.

praescrīptum, -ī, [part. of praescrībō], n., *direction, order, instructions.* i. 36. [prescript.

praesēns, -entis, comp. -ior, [part. of praesum], adj., *at hand, present.* [present.

praesentia, -ae, [praesēns], f., *presence* (v. 43); *present time.* in praesentiā, *for the present.* [presence.

praesentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, [prae + sentiō], 4, *perceive beforehand.* v. 54; vii. 30.

praesertim [prae, cf. serō, *join*], adv., *especially, particularly.*

praesidium, -ī, [praeses, *guard*], n., *guard, detachment, garrison, protection; post, redoubt; safety* (ii. 11).

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitus, [prae + stō], 1, *surpass, excel; exhibit, display, manifest; discharge, perform, do.* Impers. praestat, *it is preferable, it is better.*

praestō, adv., *at hand.* praestō esse, *to meet* (v. 26).

praesum, -esse, -fuī, [prae + sum], irr., *preside over; be at the head of, have command of, have charge of.*

praeter, prep. with acc. only, *beyond* (i. 48); *except, besides; contrary to.*

praetereā [praeter + eā], adv., *besides, further.*

praetereō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itus, [praeter + eō], irr., *pass over* (vii. 25, 77); *pass, go by* (vii. 77). [preterit.

praeteritus, see praetereō.

praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, missus, [praeter + mittō], 3, *pass over, let pass, allow to go by.*

praeterquam [praeter + quam], adv. with comparative force, *other than, besides.* vii. 77.

praetor, -ōris, [*praeitor, from praeeō], m., *general, commander* (i. 21); *praetor*, a Roman magistrate, next in rank to the consul.

praetōrium, -ī, [praetōrius], n., *general's tent.* C. III. 82.

praetōrius, -a, -um, [praetor], adj., *of the commander, general's* (i. 40, 42); *pretorian.* As noun, praetōrius, -ī, m., *ex-praetor, man of praetorian rank* (C. III. 82). [pretorian.

praetūra, -ae, [praetor], f., *the office of praetor, praetorship* (C. III. 82).

praeūstus, -a, -um, [part. of praeūrō], adj., *burnt at the end, hardened at the end by burning.*

praevertō, -vertere, -vertī, [prae + vertō], 3, *outstrip; attend to first* (vii. 33).

prāvus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *bad, wicked.* vii. 39.

precēs, see prex.

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, 3, *press, harass, oppress;* pass., *be hard pressed, be beset, be burdened, be in need.* [press.

prēndō (for prehendō), prēndere, prēndī, prēnsus, 3, *take, grasp.* i. 20.

pretium, -ī, n., *price, value.* [price.

prex, precis, f., generally pl., nom. and gen. sing. not in use, *prayer, entreaty, supplication; curse, imprecation* (vi. 31).

prīdiē, adv., *the day before, the previous day.* prīdiē eius diēī, *the day before that day, on the previous day* (i. 47).

prīmipīlus, -ī, [prīmus + pīlus], m., = prīmus pīlus, *first centurion;* see pīlus. ii. 25, C. III. 53.

prīmō [abl. of prīmus], adv., *at first, in the first place.*

prīmum [acc. of prīmus], adv., *first, before everything else, in the first*

place. **quam prīmum**, *as soon as possible.* **cum prīmum**, *as soon as.*

prīmus, see **prior**.

prīnceps, -ipis, [prīmus + CAP in capiō], adj., *first, chief, at the front.* As noun, m., *leading man, leader*, pl. often *leading men.* [prince.

prīncipātus, -ūs, [prīnceps], m., *chief authority, headship.* [principate.

prior, -us, gen. **priōris**, adj. in comp. degree, sup. **prīmus**, [cf. **prō**], *former, previous, first.* As noun, **priōrēs**, -um, m., pl., *those in advance* (ii. 11). Sup. **prīmus**, *first, the first.* As noun, **prīmī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the foremost men, the first.* **prīma**, -ōrum, n., pl., in the phrase **in prīmīs**, *especially.* [prior, prime.

prīstinus, -a, -um, [*prīs, = prius, + -tinus], adj., *former, previous, earlier, old-time.* [pristine.

prius [prior], adv., *before, sooner, earlier.*

priusquam, **prius quam**, conj., *before, sooner than;* **prius** and **quam** are often separated by intervening words.

prīvātim [prīvātus], adv., *privately, as individuals*, opposed in meaning to **pūblicē**. i. 17; v. 55.

prīvātus, -a, -um, [part. of **prīvō**], adj., *private, personal.* As noun, **prīvātus**, -ī, m., *private individual* (vi. 13). [private.

prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *rob, deprive.* C. III. 90.

prō, prep. with abl. only, *in front of, before; for, in behalf of; instead of, as; on account of, in return for; in accordance with* (ii. 31); *in proportion to, considering* (i. 2, 51; vi. 19; vii. 56, 74).

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [probus], 1, *approve; show to be worthy, display* (v. 44); *prove* (v. 27); *show, demonstrate* (i. 3). [probe.

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, [prō + cēdō], 3, *advance, go forward.* [proceed.

Procillus, (prọ-sil′ụs), see **Valerius** (4).

prōclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prō + clīnō, *bend*], 1, *bend forward, lean forward;* pass., *become desperate* (vii. 42).

prōcōnsul, -ulis, [prō + cōnsul], m., *proconsul*, an ex-consul appointed as governor of a province.

procul, adv., *at a distance, from afar, far off.*

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, [prō + cumbō, for cubō, *lie down*], 3, *fall prostrate* (vii. 15); *sink down* (ii. 27); *be beaten down* (vi. 43); *lie down* (vi. 27); *lean forward* (iv. 17).

prōcūrātiō, -ōnis, [prōcūrō], f., *charge, management.* C. III. 104.

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prō + cūrō], 1, *look after, have charge of, regulate.* vi. 13. [procure.

prōcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, [prō + currō], 3, *run forward, hasten forward, rush forward.*

prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est, [prōd-, for prō, + eō], irr., *come out, come forth, advance.*

prōdesse, see **prōsum**.

prōditiō, -ōnis, [prōdō], f., *treachery.*

prōditor, -ōris, [prodō], m., *traitor.*

prōditus, see **prōdō**.

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [prō + dō], 3, *give forth, make known; transmit, hand down; surrender, betray; give up, abandon* (iv. 25).

prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [prō + dūcō], 3, *bring out, lead forth; prolong* (iv. 30). [product.

prōductus, see **prodūcō**.

proelior, -ārī, -ātus, [proelium], 1, dep., *fight.*

proelium, -ī, n., *battle, combat, engagement.*

profectiō, -ōnis, [proficīscor], f., *departure, setting out.*

prōfectus, see prōficiō.

profectus, see proficīscor.

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [prō + ferō], irr., *bring out, bring forth.*

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [prō + faciō], 3, *effect, gain, accomplish.* [profit.

proficīscor, -ficīscī, -fectus, [prōficiō], 3, dep., *set out, depart; set out (for), proceed.*

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus, [pro, = prō, + fateor, *confess*], 2, dep., *declare openly, avow* (VII. 2, 37); *offer, promise.* [profess.

prōflīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prō + flīgō, *strike*], 1, *put to flight, rout.* ii. 23; vii. 13. [profligate.

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, [prō + fluō], 3, *flow forth.* IV. 10.

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī. [pro, = prō, + fugiō], 3, *flee, escape.*

prōfuī, see prōsum.

prōfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [prō + fundō], 3, *pour forth.* sē prōfūdit, *rushed forward* (C. III. 93).

prōgnātus, -a, -um, [prō + (g)nātus, from (g)nāscor], adj., *sprung, descended.* ii. 29; vi. 18.

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus, [prō + gradior, *step*], 3, dep., *advance, go forward, proceed.* [progress.

prōgressus, see prōgredior.

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus, [prō + habeō], 2, *hold, restrain; keep off, prevent, hinder; cut off, shut off; protect, defend.* [prohibit.

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [prō + iaciō], 3, *throw forward, throw, fling, cast;* of arms, *throw down; abandon, lose* (ii. 15). sē prōicere, *to leap down* (iv. 25), *to prostrate one's self* (i. 27, 31). proiectae, pass. as middle, *casting themselves* (vii. 26). [project.

proinde [prō + inde], adv., *hence, therefore, and so.* proinde ac sī, *just as if* (C. III. 60).

prōmineō, -minēre, -minuī, 2, *bend forward, lean forward.* [prominent.

prōmiscuē [prōmiscuus], adv., *in common, promiscuously.* vi. 21.

prōmissus, -a, -um, [part. of prōmittō], adj., of hair, *hanging down, flowing.* v. 14.

prōmōtus, see prōmoveō.

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [prō + moveō], 2, *move forward, push forward.* [promote.

prōmptus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of prōmō, *bring forward*], adj., *ready, quick.* [prompt.

prōmunturium, -ī, [cf. prōmineō], n., *headland.* iii. 12. [promontory.

prōnē [prōnus], adv., *bending forward, leaning forward.* iv. 17.

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prō + nūntiō], 1, *tell openly, declare; announce, give notice.* Impers., prōnūntiātur, *notice is given.* [pronounce.

prope, comp. **propius**, sup. **proximē**, adv., *near, nearly, almost;* followed by the acc., *near.* proximē, *nearest, next, very near; last, most recently.*

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [prō + pellō], 3, *drive away, put to flight, rout; force back* (v. 44). [propel.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [properus, *quick*], 1, *hurry, make haste, hasten.*

propinquitās, -ātis, [propinquus], f., *nearness, vicinity; relationship* (ii. 4). [propinquity.

propinquus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [prope], adj., *near, neighboring.* As noun, propinquus, -ī, m., *rela-*

tive; pl., **propinquī**, **-ōrum**, m., *relatives, kinsfolk;* **propinquae**, **-ārum**, f., *female relatives* (i. 18).

propior, **-us**, gen. **propiōrīs**, adj. in comp. degree, sup. **proximus**, [cf. **prope**], positive wanting, *nearer.* **proximus**, **-a**, **-um**, *nearest, next, last,* of space or time. **proximā nocte**, *on the following night.* [proximate.

propius, see **prope**.

prōpōnō, **-pōnere**, **-posuī**, **-positus**, [**prō** + **pōnō**], 3, *set forth, put forward, present; declare, explain; propose, intend; raise, display* (ii. 20). [propose.

prōpositum, **-ī**, [**prōpositus**], n., *intention, purpose.* C. III. 84.

prōpositus, see **prōpōnō**.

proprius, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *one's own, particular, peculiar, characteristic.* vi. 22, 23. [proper.

propter, prep. with acc. only, *on account of, in consequence of.*

propterea [**propter** + **eā**], adv., *for this reason, therefore.* **propterea quod**, *because.*

prōpugnātor, **-ōris**, [**prōpugnō**], m., *defender.* vii. 25.

prōpugnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**prō** + **pugnō**], 1, *come forth to fight* (v. 9); *fight* on the defensive (ii. 7; vii. 86).

prōpulsō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [freq. of **prōpellō**], 1, *drive off, drive back* (i. 49); *ward off, repel* (vi. 15).

prōra, **-ae**, [πρῷρα], f., *prow.* [prow.

prōruō, **-ere**, **-uī**, **-utus**, 3, *throw down; tear down* (iii. 26).

prōsequor, **-sequī**, **-secūtus**, [**prō** + **sequor**], 3, dep., *follow after; follow up, pursue; address* (II. 5). [prosecute.

prōspectus, **-ūs**, [cf. **prōspiciō**], m., *view, sight.* **in prōspectū**, *in sight, visible* (v. 10). [prospect.

prōspiciō, **-spicere**, **-spexī**, **-spectus**, [**prō** + **speciō**, *look*], 3, *look out, see to it* (v. 7); *provide for, look out for* (i. 23; vii. 50).

prōsternō, **-sternere**, **-strāvī**, **-strātus**, [**prō** + **sternō**, *scatter*], 3, *overthrow, utterly cast down, destroy.* vii. 77. [prostrate.

prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**, [**prō**, **prōd-**, + **sum**], irr., *be of advantage to.* VI. 40.

prōtegō, **-tegere**, **-tēxī**, **-tēctus**, [**prō** + **tegō**], 3, *cover, protect.* [protect.

prōterō, **-terere**, **-trīvī**, **-trītus**, [**prō** + **terō**], 3, *wear away, destroy.* C. II. 41.

prōterreō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itus**, [**prō** + **terreō**], 2, *frighten away, drive off* by means of fright. v. 58; vii. 81.

prōtinus [**prō** + **tenus**], adv., *forthwith, at once, immediately.*

prōturbō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**prō** + **turbō**, *disturb*], 1, *drive away, repulse.* ii. 19; vii. 81.

prōvèctus, see **prōvehō**.

prōvehō, **-vehere**, **-vexī**, **-vectus**, [**prō** + **vehō**], 3, *carry forward* (v. 8); pass. in a middle sense, *put out* to sea.

prōveniō, **-venīre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventum est**, [**prō** + **veniō**], 4, *come forth; grow* (v. 24).

prōventus, **-ūs**, [cf. **prōveniō**], m., *issue, result, outcome.* vii. 29, 80.

prōvideō, **-vidēre**, **-vīdī**, **-vīsus**, [**prō** + **videō**], 2, *foresee, perceive in advance; provide for, look out for.* [provide.

prōvincia, **-ae**, f., *province;* often *the Province,* the part of Transalpine Gaul subdued by the Romans before 58 B.C. [province.

prōvinciālis, **-e**, [**prōvincia**], adj., *of the province.* vii. 7. [provincial.

prōvīsus, see **prōvideō**.

prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, [prō + volō, *fly*], 1, *fly forward, dash forth.* ii. 19.

proximē, see **prope.**

proximus, -a, -um, see **propior.**

prūdentia, -ae, [prūdēns, for prōvidēns, *far-seeing*], f., *foresight, good judgment.* ii. 4. [prudence.

Ptiāniī, -ōrum, m., pl., (tī-ā′ nị-ī), a small state in Aquitania. iii. 27.

Ptolomaeus, -ī, [Πτολεμαῖος], m., *Ptolemy*, king of Egypt in 49 B.C., brother of Cleopatra. C. III. 103.

pūberēs, -um, [adj. pūbēs used as a noun], m., pl., *adults.* v. 56.

pūblicē [pūblicus], adv., *in the name of the state, as a state, publicly.*

pūblicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pūblicus], 1, *make public; confiscate* (v. 56; vii. 43). [publish.

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., *of the state, public, common.* **litterae pūblicae**, *state documents* (v. 47). **rēs pūblica**, *the state, public business, public interest.* As noun, **pūblicum**, -ī, n., *a public place* (vi. 28; vii. 26). **in pūblicō**, *in a public place* (vi. 18). [public.

Pūblius, -ī, m., (pub′ lị-ụs), a Roman first name.

pudet, **pudēre**, **puduit** or **puditum est**, 2, impers. form of **pudeō**, *it shames; it makes ashamed* (vii. 42).

pudor, -ōris, [cf. pudeō], m., *shame, sense of shame.*

puer, **puerī**, m., *child, boy.*

puerīlis, -e, comp. -ior, [puer], adj., *of a child.* [puerile.

pugna, -ae, f., *fight, combat, battle.*

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pugna], 1, *fight, engage* in battle. **pugnātum est**, *the battle raged.*

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, comp. -ior, sup. **pulcherrimus**, adj., *beautiful* (vii. 15); *noble* (vii. 77).

Pullō, -ōnis, m., (pul′ ō), a brave centurion. v. 44.

pulsus, see **pellō.**

pulsus, -ūs, [pellō], m., *stroke;* of oars, *movement* (III. 13). [pulse.

pulvis, **pulveris**, m., *dust.* [pulverize.

puppis, -is, f., *stern* of a ship. [poop.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [for *pūrigō; pūrus + agō], 1, *make clean; free from blame, excuse, clear.* **suī pūrgandī causā**, *in order to excuse themselves.* [purge.

Puteolī, -ōrum, m., pl., (pū-tē′ ọ-lī), a city on the coast of Campania, now *Pozzuoli.* C. III. 71.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *think, consider, believe, judge.* [putative.

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, [Πυρηναῖος], adj., *of Pyrene.* **Pȳrēnaeī montēs**, *the Pyrenees Mountains.* i. 1.

Q

Q. = **Quīntus.**

quā [abl. fem. of **quī**, originally sc. **viā** or **parte**], adv., *where.*

qua, nom. sing. fem., and neut. pl., of the indefinite pron. **quis**, or **quī.**

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, [quadrāgintā], num. distributive adj., *forty each, forty in each case.* iv. 17; vii. 23.

quadrāgintā, or **XL**, [quattuor], indeclinable num. adj., *forty.*

quadringentī, -ae, -a, or **CCCC**, [quattuor + centum], numeral adj., *four hundred.*

quaerō, -ere, **quaesīvī**, **quaesītus**, 3, *look for, seek* (ii. 21; vii. 37); *ask, inquire, make inquiry.* [query.

quaestiō, -ōnis, [cf. quaerō], f., *inquiry; examination, investigation.* [question.

quaestor, -ōris, [cf. quaerō], m.:

(1) *quaestor, state treasurer,* the lowest in rank of the great officers of state.

(2) *quarter-master, quaestor,* an officer accompanying the army on

campaigns, having charge of money and supplies, sometimes detailed for military service in charge of troops.

quaestus, -ūs, [cf. **quaerō**], m., *getting* of money, *gain*. vi. 17, C. III. 60.

quālis, -e, [cf. **quis**], inter. adj., *of what sort? what sort of?* i. 21.

quam [quī], adv. and conj., *how much, how;* with superlatives (with or without **possum**), *as possible;* after comparatives and comparative expressions, *than, as;* with expressions of time, *after*. **quam vetus**, *how old*. **quam diū**, *as long as*. **nāvēs quam plūrimās**, *as many ships as possible*. **quam celerrimē**, *as quickly as possible*. **post diem quārtum quam**, *the fourth day after*.

quamvīs [**quam** + **vīs**, from **volō**], adv., *however much; however* (IV. 2).

quandō, adv., *ever, at any time*.

quantō opere, see **quantus**.

quantus, -a, -um, adj., *how great, how much, how large;* after **tantus**, *as;* **tantum . . . quantum**, *so much, so far . . . as*. As noun, with gen. of the whole, **quantum bonī**, *how much advantage, how great advantage* (i. 40); **quantum agrī**, *as much land as* (vi. 22). **quantō opere**, *how much, how deeply* (ii. 5). **quantō opere . . . tantō opere**, *as much as . . . so much* (vii. 52).

quantusvīs, **quantavīs**, **quantumvīs**, [**quantus** + **vīs**, from **volō**], adj., *however great, no matter how great*.

quārē [**quā** + **rē**], adv., *wherefore, and for this reason*.

quārtus, -a, -um, [**quattuor**], adj., *fourth*. **quartus decimus**, or **XIIII**, *fourteenth*. [quart.

quasi [**quam** + **sī**], conj., *as if*.

quattuor, or **IIII**, indeclinable num. adj., *four*.

quattuordecim, or **XIIII**, [**quattuor** + **decem**], indeclinable num. adj., *fourteen*.

-que, enclitic conj., *and*, appended to a word which in construction belongs after it.

quem ad modum, see **modus**.

queror, querī, **questus**, 3, dep., *complain, lament; complain of, make complaint of*. [querulous.

questus, see **queror**.

quī, quae, quod, gen. **cuius**, rel. and inter. pron.:

(1) As rel. pron., *who, which;* at the beginning of a clause often best rendered by a personal or demonstrative pron., with or without *and*. **īdem quī**, *the same as*.

(2) As inter. adj. pron., *what? what kind of?*

quī, quae or **qua, quod**, indef. pron., *any, any one*, or *anything*, used both as subst. and as adj. **sī quī**, if *any one*.

quicquam, see **quisquam**.

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron., *whoever, whatever, whichever*.

quid, see **quis**.

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, indef. pron., *a certain one, a certain thing*. As adj., **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam**, *a certain, some, certain*.

quidem, adv., *indeed, at least*. **nē . . . quidem**, *not even*.

quidnam, see **quisnam**.

quiēs, -ētis, f., *rest, repose*. [quiet (noun).

quiētus, -a, -um, [part. of **quiēscō**, from **quiēs**], adj., *at rest, calm, quiet; peaceful, at peace*. [quiet (adj.).

quīn, [old abl. **quī** + **ne**], conj., *that not, but that, without;* after words

expressing doubt or suspicion, *that;* after **dēterreō**, **retineō**, etc., trans. by *from* with a participle. **quīn etiam**, *moreover*.

quīncūnx, -ūncis, [quīnque + ūncia], f., *quīncūnx*, an arrangement of trees or other objects like the five spots on the dice (*quīncūnx*), thus:

. . . . . .
. . . . .
. . . . . vii. 73.

quīndecim, or **XV**, [quīnque + decem], indeclinable num. adj., *fifteen*.

quīngentī, -ae, -a, or **D**, [quīnque + centum], num. adj., *five hundred*.

quīnī, -ae, -a, [quīnque], distrib. num. adj., *five each, five at a time*.

quīnquāgintā, or **L**, [quīnque], indeclinable num. adj., *fifty*.

quīnque, or **V**, indeclinable num. adj., *five*.

quīntus, -a, -um, [quīnque], adj., *fifth*. [quint.

Quīntus, -ī, m., (kwin′ tụs), a Roman first name.

quis, ——, **quid**, inter. pron., *who? what?* Neut. **quid**, with gen. of the whole, **quid cōnsilī**, *what plan?* neut. **quid**, as adverbial acc., *why?* **quid vōs sectāminī**, *why do ye pursue?* (vi. 35).

quis, ——, **quid**, indef. pron., *any one, anything*. As adj., **quī**, **quae** or **qua**, **quod**, *any*. **sī quis**, *if any one*. **nē quis**, *that not any one, that no one*. Neut. **quid**, with partitive gen., *any;* as, **sī quid cōnsilī**, *if any plan*.

quisnam, ——, **quidnam**, inter. pron., *who, pray? what, pray?* As adj., **quīnam**, **quaenam**, **quodnam**, *of what kind, pray* (ii. 30).

quispiam, ——, **quidpiam**, indef. pron., *any one, anything* (vi. 17). As adj., **quispiam**, **quaepiam**, **quodpiam**, *any* (v. 35).

quisquam, ——, **quicquam**, indef. pron., *any one, anything*. As adj., *any* (acc. **quemquam**, vi. 36).

quisque, ——, **quidque**, indef. pron., *each one, each thing*. As adj., **quisque**, **quaeque**, **quodque**, *each*.

quisquis, ——, **quicquid**, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever*.

quīvīs, **quaevīs**, **quidvīs**, [quī + vīs, from volō], indef. pron., *any one, anything you please*. As adj., **quīvīs**, **quaevīs**, **quodvīs**, *any whatever*.

quō, see **quī**.

quō, adv. and conj.:

(1) **quō** [dat. or abl. of **quī**], adv., relative and interrogative, *whither, where;* indefinite, after **sī** and **nē**, *to any place, at any point, anywhere*.

(2) **quō** [abl. of **quī**], conj., used especially with comparatives, followed by subj., *in order that, that, that thereby*. **quō minus**, *that not*, often best translated by *from* with a participle.

quoad [quō + ad], conj., *as long as* (iv. 12); *until, till* (iv. 11; v. 17, 24).

quod [acc. of **quī**], conj., *because, inasmuch as, since; as to the fact that, so far as*.

quō minus, see **quō** (2).

quoniam [quom, old form of **cum**, + iam], conj., *since, seeing that, because, inasmuch as*.

quoque, conj., following the emphatic word of a clause, *also, too*.

quōque, abl. of **quisque**, which see.

quōque = **et quō**.

quōque versus, see **versus**.

quot, indeclinable adj., *how many, as many as*. iv. 22, vii. 19.

quotannīs [quot + abl. pl. of annus], adv., *yearly, every year*.

quotiēns [quot], adv., *as often as*

(v. 34); *how often* (i. 43, C. III. 72). [quotient.

quotiēnscumque, [quotiēns + -cumque], adv., *just as often as*. C. I. 7.

R.

rādīx, -īcis, f., *root* (vi. 27); of an elevation, *foot, base*. **rādīcēs collis**, *the foot of the hill* (vii. 51, 69). **rādīcēs montis**, *the base of the height, the foot of the mountain*. [radish.

rādō, -ere, rāsī, rāsus, 3, *shave*. [razor.

raeda, -ae, f., *wagon* with four wheels. i. 51; vi. 30.

rāmus, -ī, m., *branch, bough, limb*.

rapiditās, -ātis, [rapidus, *swift*], f., *swiftness*. iv. 17. [rapidity.

rapīna, -ae, [cf. rapiō, *seize*], f., *pillaging, plundering*. i. 15. [rapine.

rārus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. rārissimus, adj., *not thick;* pl., *few, scattered, in small parties*. [rare.

rāsus, see rādō.

ratiō, -ōnis, [reor, *reckon*], f., *reckoning, enumeration; account; method, means, way; plan, theory, system, science; reason, ground; condition, situation*. **ratiōnem habēre**, *to keep an account* (vi. 19), *take account of* (v. 27, VII. 71; C. III. 82). **ratiōne initā**, *having made calculation* (vii. 71). **abs tē ratiōnem reposcent**, *they will call you to account, will hold you responsible* (v. 30). [ratio, ration, reason.

ratis, -is, f., *raft*.

Rauracī, -ōrum, m., pl., (râ′ ra-sī), a people along the upper Rhine, north of the Helvetians.

re-, red-, used only in composition, *again, back*.

rebelliō, -ōnis, [rebellis, from re- + bellum], f., *renewal of fighting, uprising*. **rebelliōnem facere**, *to enter into rebellion, rebel, revolt*. [rebellion.

Rebilus, (reb′ i-lus), see Canīnius.

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [re- + cēdō], 3, *withdraw*. [recede.

recēns, -entis, adj., *fresh; recent, late*. As noun, **recentēs**, -ium, m., pl., *those who were fresh, the unwearied* (v. 16; vii. 48; C. III. 94). [recent.

recēnseō, -ēre, recēnsuī, [re- + cēnseō], 2, *review, mobilize*. vii. 76.

receptāculum, -ī, [receptō], n., *place of shelter, retreat*. [receptacle.

receptus, see recipiō.

receptus, -ūs, [recipiō], m., *retreat; avenue of retreat* (vi. 9); *recall*, a signal given with a musical instrument to call soldiers back (vii. 47).

recessus, -ūs, [recēdō], m., *a receding; opportunity to draw back* (v. 43). [recess.

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, [re- + cadō], 3, *fall back; come upon, fall to the lot of* (vii. 1).

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [re- + capiō], 3, *take back, get back, recover, win; receive, admit; take upon one's self* (C. III. 82). **sē recipere**, *to retreat, withdraw; to recover one's self* (ii. 12; iv. 27, 34). **recipere in dēditiōnem**, *receive into submission*. [receive.

recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + citō, *quote*], 1, *read aloud, recite*. v. 48. [recite.

reclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + clīnō, *bend*], 1, *bend back*. **sē reclīnāre**, *to lean back* (vi. 27); part. **reclīnātus**, *leaning back* (vi. 27). [recline.

recordor, -ārī, -ātus, [re-, cor], 1, dep., *remember, call to mind*. C. III. 47, 72, 73. [record.

recreō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + creō], 1, *restore, renew.* C. III. 74. [recreate.

rēctē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [rēctus], adv., *rightly, properly; nobly* (vii. 80); *safely* (vii. 6).

rēctus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. rēctissimus, [part. of regō], adj., *straight, direct.*

recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-, cf. capiō], 3, *get back, recover.* [recuperate.

recūsātiō, -ōnis, [recūsō], f., *refusal, objection, protest.* C. III. 98.

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-, cf. causa], 1, *refuse, make refusal, decline; raise objections* (v. 6).

redāctus, see redigō.

redditus, see reddō.

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [red- + dō], 3, *give back, restore, return; render, make* (ii. 5). **iūs reddere**, *to dispense justice* (vi. 13). **supplicātiōnem reddere**, *to proclaim a thanksgiving* (vii. 90). **vītam prō vītā reddere**, *to give life for life* (vi. 16). [rendition.

redēmptus, see redimō.

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est, [red- + eō], irr., *go back, come back, return; slope down* (ii. 8); *be reduced* (v. 48); *be referred* (vi. 11). **ad gladiōs redīre**, *to resort to swords, draw swords* (C. III. 93).

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [red- + agō], 3, *force back; reduce; render, make* (ii. 27; iv. 3). [redact.

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [red- + emō], 3, *buy back, purchase;* of revenues, *buy up, farm* (i. 18). [redeem.

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [red- + integrō, *make whole*], 1, *commence again, renew; revive.* [redintegrate.

reditiō, -ōnis, [cf. redeō], f., *a going back, returning.* i. 5.

reditus, -ūs, [cf. redeō], m., *returning, return.* iv. 30; vi. 29, 36.

Redonēs, -um, m., pl., (red′ o̤-nēz), a people in northwestern Gaul (Fig. 206).

Figure 206. — Coin of the Redones.

Gold. Obverse, head with chaplet of laurel.

Reverse, horseman brandishing a spear and shield; in front of the horse, a head of wheat.

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [re- + dūcō], 3, *lead back, bring* or *conduct back; draw back* (vii. 22, 24); *carry back, put back,* (vii. 72). [reduce.

refectus, see reficiō.

referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus, [re- + ferō], 3, *bring back, carry back* (iv. 28); *bring, carry, convey* to a place or person; *report, announce.* **pedem referre**, *to retreat.* **grātiam referre**, *to make return, requite.* [refer.

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [re- + faciō], 3, *repair, refit, restore;* of troops, *refresh* (iii. 5; vii. 32, 83); *recruit* (C. III. 87). [refectory.

refrāctus, see refringō.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus, [re- + frangō], 3, *break* (vii. 56); *burst in, break down* (ii. 33). [refract.

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, [re- + fugiō], 3, *flee back* (v. 35); *flee away, escape.* [refuge.

Rēgīnus, (rẹ-jī′ nus), see Antistius.

regiō, -ōnis, [cf. **regō**, *keep straight*], f., *direction, line; boundary; region, tract, territory.* **rēctā regiōne**, *in a direct line* (vii. 46); *along the line* (vi. 25). **ē regiōne**, *directly opposite.* [region.

rēgius, -a, -um, [**rēx**], adj., *kingly, royal.* vii. 32, C. III. 104.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**rēgnum**], 1, *be king, reign.* v. 25. [reign.

rēgnum, -ī, [cf. **regō**], n., *kingship, sovereignty, royal power; absolute authority; territory* subject to a king or ruler, *kingdom.* [reign (noun.)

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, 3, *keep straight; regulate; control, manage* (iii. 13); *conduct, carry on* (vi. 17).

reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [re- + **iaciō**], 3, *throw back, hurl back* (i. 46); of ships, *cast back, carry back* (v. 5, 23); *drive back, repulse* (i. 24; ii. 33); *cast away* (v. 30); *throw away* (i. 52). [reject.

reiectus, see **reiciō**.

relanguēscō, -ere, -uī, [re- + **languēscō**], 3, *become enfeebled, become enervated.* ii. 15.

relātus, see **referō**.

relēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + **lēgō**, *depute*], 1, *banish, remove, treat as an outlaw.* [relegate.

relīctus, see **relinquō**.

religiō, -ōnis, f., *religious scruple, religious obligation, religious observance, superstition.* [religion.

religō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + **ligō**, *bind*], 1, *bind back; bind fast* (C. II. 6).

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictus, [re- + **linquō**, *quit*], 3, *leave, leave behind; desert, abandon;* of a siege or attack, *leave off, give up.* [relinquish.

reliquus, -a, -um, [cf. **relinquō**], adj., *remaining, left, the rest.* As noun, **reliquī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the rest;* **reliquī**, gen. sing. neut., **in nihil reliquī**, *nothing left* (i. 11).

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, [re- + **maneō**], 2, *remain, stay behind.* [remain.

rēmex, -igis, [**rēmus**, cf. **agō**], m., *rower.* iii. 9.

Rēmī, -ōrum, m., pl., (rē′ mī), a Belgic people, about the headwaters of the Axona (*Aisne*); chief city, Durocortorum, now *Reims.*

rēmigō, -āre, [**rēmex**], 1, *row.* v. 8.

remigrō, -āre, -āvī, [re- + **migrō**, *remove*], 1, *move back, return.* iv. 4, 27. [remigrate.

reminīscor, -minīscī, [re- + MEN in **mēns**], 3, dep., *remember, recollect.* i. 13. [reminiscent.

remissus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [part. of **remittō**], adj., *relaxed; mild.* **remissior**, *less severe* (v. 12). [remiss.

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [re- + **mittō**], 3, *send back; give back, restore* (vii. 20); *relax, diminish* (ii. 15; v. 49); *impair, lose* (vi. 14); of a tax, *remit* (i. 44). [remit.

remollēscō, -lēscere, [re- + **mollēscō**, *grow soft*], 3, *become weak.* iv. 2.

remōtus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [**removeō**], adj., *far off, remote.* i. 31; vii. 1. [remote.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [re- + **moveō**], 2, *move back, remove; dismiss* (i. 19). [remove.

remūneror, -ārī, -ātus, [re-, cf. **mūnus**], 1, dep., *recompense, repay.* i. 44. [remunerate.

rēmus, -ī, m., *oar.*

Rēmus, -ī, m., *one of the Remi, a Reman.*

rēnō, -ōnis, m., *reindeer skin, deerskin.* vi. 21.

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + novō, from novus], 1, *renew, again commence.* [renovate.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + nūntiō], 1, *bring back word, announce; declare elected* (vii. 33). [renounce.

repellō, -pellere, reppulī, repulsus, [re- + pellō], 3, *drive back, force back, repulse.* [repel.

repente, [abl. of repēns, *sudden*], adv., *suddenly.*

repentīnus, -a, -um, [repēns, *sudden*], adj., *sudden, unexpected.*

reperiō, -perīre, repperī, repertus, 4, *find, find out; discover, ascertain, learn.*

repetō, -petere, -petīvī or -petiī, -petītus, [re- + petō], 3, *seek again, again try to obtain* (v. 49); *demand* (i. 31); *exact* (i. 30). [repeat.

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [re- + pleō, *fill*], 2, *fill up; supply amply* (vii. 56). [replete.

repōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [re- + pōnō], 3, *replace; place, rest* (C. II. 41). [repository.

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + portō], 1, *carry back, convey back.* [report.

reposcō, -poscere, [re- + poscō], 3, *demand, require.* v. 30.

repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + praesentō, from praesēns], 1, *do at once, do forthwith.* i. 40. [represent.

reprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, [re- + prehendō], 3, *hold back; criticise, blame.* [reprehend.

repressus, see reprimō.

reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [re- + premō], 3, *restrain, check; repress.* [repress.

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *reject, scorn.* i. 40. [repudiate.

repugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + pugnō], 1, *fight back, resist.* [repugnant.

repulsus, see repellō. [repulse.

requiēscō, -ere, requiēvī, requiētus, [re- + quiēscō], 3, *take rest, rest.* C. III. 98.

requīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, [re- + quaerō], 3, *require, demand* (vi. 34); *wish back again, miss* (vii. 63); *seek* (C. II. 35). [require.

rēs, reī, f., *matter, affair; circumstance, fact, transaction; object, project, business.* rēs mīlitāris, *warfare, military science.* rēs novae, *a revolution.* praemia reī pecūniāriae, *rewards in money* (C. III. 59). [real.

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, [re- + scindō], 3, *cut down, break up, destroy.* [rescind.

rescīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, or -sciī, -scītus, [re- + scīscō, *inquire*], 3, *discover, find out.* i. 28.

rescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, [re- + scrībō], 3, *write again; enroll anew, transfer* from one branch of the service to another (i. 42). [rescribe.

reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + servō], 1, *keep back, keep.* [reserve.

resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, [re- + sedeō, *sit*], *linger, remain.* [reside.

resīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, [re- + sīdō, *sit down*], 3, *settle down, subside.* vii. 64.

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, [re- + sistō, *set*], 3, *remain, stay; stand still* (C. II. 35); *oppose, withstand, offer resistance.* [resist.

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [re- + speciō, *look*], 3, *look back* (ii. 24; v. 43, C. II. 35); *look at; consider* (vii. 77). [respect.

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī,

-spōnsus, [re- + **spondeō**, *promise*], 2, *answer, reply.* [respond.

respōnsum, -ī, [part. of **respondeō**], n., *answer, reply.* [response.

res pūblica, see **pūblicus**.

respuō, -spuere, -spuī, [re- + spuō], 3, *spit out; reject* (i. 42).

restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus, [re- + stinguō, *quench*], 3, *put out, extinguish.* vii. 24, 25.

restituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [re- + statuō], 3, *replace, restore; renew, revive; rebuild* (i. 28). [restitution.

retentus, see **retineō**.

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [re- + teneō], 2, *restrain, detain, keep back; hold* (vii. 21). [retain.

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [re- + trahō], 3, *bring back* by force. v. 7. [retract.

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus, [re- + vellō, *pull*], 3, *pull back* (i. 52); *tear away* (vii. 73).

reversus, see **revertor**.

revertō, revertī, [re- + vertō], 3, only in tenses from pf. stem, and **revertor**, -vertī, -versūrus, 3, dep., *return, go back.* [revert.

revinciō, -vincīre, -vinxī, -vinctus, [re- + vinciō], 4, *bind back, bind securely, fasten.*

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + vocō], 1, *call back, recall.* [revoke.

rēx, rēgis, [cf. **regō**, *rule*], m., *king, ruler, chieftain.*

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine.*

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone*, which rises in the Alps near the sources of the Rhine, and passing through Lake Geneva, follows at first a southwesterly direction, then flows south, reaching the Mediterranean after a course of about 500 miles.

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* of a stream. [river.

rīvus, -ī, m., *stream, brook.* [rival.

rōbur, -oris, n., *oak* (ii. 13); *strength* (C. iii. 87). [robust.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *ask, request.* [rogation.

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, [**Rōma**], adj., *Roman.* As noun, **Rōmānus**, -ī, m., *a Roman;* usually pl., *the Romans, Romans.* [Roman.

Rōscius, -ī, m., *Lucius Roscius* (rosh′-[y]ụs), a lieutenant in Caesar's army.

rōstrum, -ī, [cf. **rōdō**, *gnaw*], n., *beak;* of a ship, *beak.* [rostrum.

rota, -ae, f., *wheel.* [rotary.

Roucillus, -ī, m., (rụ-sil′ ụs), *an Allobrogian*, brother of Egus. C. iii. 59.

rubus, -ī, m., *brier, bramble.* ii. 17.

Rūfus, -ī, [**rūfus**, *reddish*], m., (rū′-fụs), a Roman cognomen.

rūmor, -ōris, m., *rumor, report, gossip.* [rumor.

rūpēs, -is, [cf. **rumpō**], f., *cliff.* ii. 29.

rūrsus, [for **revorsus**, from **revertō**], adv., *again, anew; in turn, on the contrary.*

Rutēnī, -ōrum, m., pl., (rụ-tē′ nī), a Gallic people, west of the Cebenna (*Cévennes*) Mountains; part of them were in the Province, and were called **Rutēnī prōvinciālēs.**

Rutilus (rụ′ tị-lụs), see **Semprōnius.**

S.

Sabīnus, see **Titūrius.**

Sabis, -is, m., *Sabis* (sā′ bịs), *the Sambre*, a river in the central part of Belgic Gaul flowing northeast into the Mosa (*Meuse*). ii. 16, 18.

Saburra, -ae, m., (sạ-bū′ rạ), a general in Juba's army. C. ii. 38–42.

sacerdōs, -dōtis, [**sacer**, cf. **dō**], m. and f., *priest.* vii. 33. [sacerdotal.

sacerdōtium, -ī, [**sacerdōs**], n., *priesthood.* C. iii. 82, 83.

sacrāmentum, -ī, [**sacrō**, *set apart as sacred*], n., *oath*. [sacrament.

Sacrātivir, -ī, m., *Marcus Sacrativir*, (sa-krat′ i-vir), a Roman knight. C. III. 71.

sacrificium, -ī, [**sacrificus**, from **sacrum** + FAC in **faciō**], n., *sacrifice*. vi. 13, 16, 21. [sacrifice.

saepe, comp. **-ius**, sup. **-issimē**, adv., *often, frequently*. Comp., *too often* (iii. 6). **saepe numerō**, *often-times, repeatedly*.

saepēs, -is, f., *hedge*. ii. 17, 22.

saeviō, -īre, -iī, -ītus, [**saevus**, *fierce*], 4, *rage; be violent* (iii. 13).

sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow*.

sagittārius, -ī, [**sagitta**], m., *archer, bowman*. [Sagittarius.

sagulum, -ī, [dim. of **sagum**, *mantle*], n., *small cloak, cloak*. v. 42.

sāl, **salis**, m., *salt*. C. II. 37. [salad.

salīnae, -ārum, f., pl., [**sāl**], *salt-works*. C. II. 37.

saltem, adv., *at any rate*. C. I. 6.

saltus, -ūs, m., *wooded valley, defile, glen, thicket*. vi. 43; vii. 19.

salūs, -ūtis, [cf. **salvus**, *well*], f., *health, welfare; safety*. [salutary.

salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**salūs**], 1, *greet, address*. C. III. 71. [salute.

Samarobrīva, -ae, f., (sam′′ a-ro-brī′ va), a city of the Ambiani on the Samara (*Somme*); now *Amiens*.

sanciō, **sancīre**, **sānxī**, **sānctus**, 4, *make sacred; make binding, ratify*. [sanction.

sānctus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [**sanciō**], adj., *hallowed, sacred*. [saint.

sanguis, -inis, m., *blood*. [sanguine.

sānitās, -tātis, [**sānus**], f., *soundness* of mind, *good sense*. [sanity.

sānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. **sānus**], 1, *make sound; make good, remedy* (vii. 29).

Santonēs, -um, or **Santonī**, -ōrum, m., pl., (san′ to-nēz, san′ to-nī), a Gallic people on the seacoast north of the Garumna (*Garonne*). Fig. 207.

Figure 207. — Coin of the Santones.

Silver. Obverse, helmeted head; inscription, SANTONOS.
Reverse, a galloping horse.

sānus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **sānissimus**, adj., *sound, healthy, rational*. As noun, **prō sānō**, *as a prudent man* (v. 7). [sane.

sapiō, -ere, -īvī, 3, *taste; be sensible, understand* (v. 30). [sapient.

sarcinae, -ārum, [**sarciō**], f., pl., *packs*, carried by the soldiers on their backs.

sarciō, -īre, **sarsī**, **sartus**, 4, *mend; make good* (vi. 1; C. III. 73); *wipe out* (C. III. 74). [sartorial.

sarmentum, -ī, [**sarpō**, *prune*], n., *a branch;* pl., *brushwood* (iii. 18).

satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently, tolerably, rather;* often used as a noun, especially with a gen. of the whole, as **satis causae**, *sufficient reason*.

satisfaciō [**satis** + **faciō**], -facere, -fēcī, -factus, irr., *satisfy, give satisfaction; make restitution* (i. 14, v. 1); *appease, placate* (vii. 89); *make apology, apologize* (i. 41, v. 54). [satisfy.

satisfactiō, -ōnis, [**satisfaciō**], f., *apology, excuse*. [satisfaction.

Sāturnīnus, -ī, m., *L. Appuleius Saturninus* (sat-ur-nī′ nus), a tribune in 100 B.C. C. I. 7.

satus, see **serō**.

saucius, -a, -um, adj., *wounded* (v. 36). As noun, **saucius**, -ī, m., *a wounded man* (iii. 4).

saxum, -ī, n., *stone, rock.*

Scaeva, -ae, m., *Cassius Scaeva* (sē′ va), a brave centurion in Caesar's army. C. III. 53.

scālae, -ārum, [cf. **scandō**, *climb*], f., pl., *ladder, scaling-ladder.* [scale.

Scaldis, -is, m., *the Schelde,* which rises in France near the headwaters of the *Somme* (Samara), and flows northeast to the sea. vi. 33.

scapha, -ae, [σκάφη], f., *skiff, small boat.*

scelerātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of **scelerō**, from **scelus**], adj., *wicked, infamous* (vi. 34). As noun, **scelerātus**, -ī, m., *a crime-polluted man* (vi. 13).

scelus, sceleris, n., *crime, wickedness.* i. 14.

scienter, comp. **scientius**, sup. **scientissimē**, [sciēns], adv., *cleverly, skilfully.* vii. 22.

scientia, -ae, [sciēns], f., *knowledge, skill.* [science.

scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus, 3, *tear, cut, split; tear down, break down* (iii. 5; v. 51).

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, 4, *know, understand.*

Scīpiō, -ōnis, m., *Q. Caecilius Metellus Scipio* (sip′ i-ō), a prominent partisan of Pompey, who married his daughter Cornelia as fifth wife. C. III. 82, 83, 88, 90.

scorpiō, -ōnis, [σκορπίων], m., *a scorpion; scorpion,* a military engine (vii. 25). [scorpion.

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, 3, *write, write down.* [scribe.

scrobis, -is, m. and f., *hole, pit; wolf-hole, wolf-pit.* [scrobicule.

scūtum, -ī, n., oblong *shield.*

sē, **sēsē**, see **suī**.

sē-, **sēd-**, in composition, *apart from, without.*

sēbum, -ī, n., *fat, tallow.* [sebaceous.

sēcessiō, -ōnis, [sēcēdō], f., *withdrawal.* C. I. 7. [secession.

sēclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, [sē- + **claudō**], 3, *shut off.* C. III. 97. [seclude.

secō, -āre, -uī, -tus, 1, *cut.* [sector.

sēcrētō [sēcrētus], adv., *secretly, privately.* i. 18, 31.

sectiō, -ōnis, [secō], f., *booty.* [section.

sector, -ārī, -ātus, [freq. of **sequor**], 1, dep., *pursue, chase.* vi. 35.

sectūra, -ae, [secō], f., *a cutting* through earth, *digging, excavation.* iii. 21.

secundum, [sequor], prep. with acc. only, *along, next to, by the side of* (ii. 18; vii. 34); *according to* (iv. 17); *besides* (i. 33).

secundus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [sequor], adj., *second, next; propitious, fortunate, favorable.* [second.

secūris, -is, [cf. secō], f., *axe;* pl. referring to the axes of the lictors, *the lictor's axe* (vii. 77).

sed, conj., *but; yet, but yet.*

sēd-, see **sē-**.

sēdecim, or **XVI**, [sex + decem], indeclinable num. adj., *sixteen.*

sēdēs, -is, [cf. **sedeō**, *sit*], f., *seat; habitation, abode, settlement, home.*

sēditiō, -ōnis, [sēd- + itiō, from īre], f., *mutiny, revolt.* vii. 28. [sedition.

sēditiōsus, -a, -um, sup. -issimus, [sēditiō], adj., *mutinous.* [seditious.

Sedulius, -ī, m., (se-dū′ li-us), a leader of the Lemovices. vii. 88.

Sedūnī, -ōrum, m., pl., (se-dū′ nī), a people in the Alps southeast of Lacus Lemannus (*Lake Geneva*).

Sedusiī, **-ōrum**, m., pl., (sẹ-dū′-sh[y]-ī), a German tribe. i. 51.

seges, **-etis**, f., *grain-field.* vi. 36.

Segnī, **-ōrum**, m., pl., (seg′ nī), a German tribe settled in Belgic Gaul. vi. 32.

Segontiācī, **-ōrum**, m., pl., (seg′′-ọn-shi-ā′ sī), a people in the southern part of Britain. v. 21.

Segovax, **-actis**, m., (seg′ ọ-vaks), a British chieftain. v. 22.

Segusiāvī, **-ōrum**, m., pl., (seg′′ ū-shi-ā′ vī), a Gallic people, subject to the Aeduans. Fig. 208.

Figure 208. — A Coin of the Segusiavi.

Silver. Obverse, helmeted head; inscription, SEGVSIAVS, perhaps a man's name. Reverse, Hercules with his club and lion's skin.

semel, adv., *once.*

sēmentis, **-is**, [**sēmen**, *seed*], f., *sowing, seeding* (i. 3).

sēmita, **-ae**, f., *path, by-way.*

semper, adv., *always, ever, constantly.*

Semprōnius, **-ī**, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus* (sẹm-prō′ nị-ụs rū′ tị-lụs), a Roman cavalry officer. vii. 90.

senātor, **-ōris**, [cf. **senex**], m., member of the Roman Senate, *senator;* member of a Gallic state-council, *councillor, senator* (ii. 28). [senator.

senātōrius, **-a**, **-um**, [**senator**], adj., *senatorial.* **ōrdō senātōrius**, *senatorial rank* (C. iii. 83, 97). [senatorial.

senātus, **-ūs**, [cf. **senex**], m., *council of elders, senate.* [senate.

senex, **-is**, comp. **senior**, adj., *old, aged.* As noun, m., *old man* (i. 29); **seniōrēs**, **-um**, m., pl., *older men* (C. ii. 4). [senile.

sēnī, **-ae**, **-a**, [**sex**], distrib. num. adj., *six each, six.* i. 15.

Senonēs, **-um**, m., pl., (sen′ ọ-nēz), a Gallic people south of the Matrona (*Marne*); chief city Agedincum, now *Sens.*

sententia, **-ae**, [cf. **sentiō**], f., *opinion, view, notion, conviction; decision, judgment.* **sententiam dīcere**, *to express an opinion.* **sententiās ferre**, *to vote* (C. iii. 83). [sentence.

sentiō, **sentīre**, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**, 4, *perceive* through the senses, *become aware, learn; feel, think; know.* [sense.

sentis, **-is**, m, *thorn-bush.* ii. 17.

sēparātim [**sēparātus**], adv., *separately, apart.*

sēparātus, **-a**, **-um**, [part. of **sēparō**], adj., *separate, marked off.* [separate.

sēparō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**sē-** + **parō**], 1, *part, separate.* vii. 63. [separate (verb).

septem, or **VII**, indeclinable num. adj., *seven.* [September.

septentriō, **-ōnis**, [**septem** + **triō**, *plough-ox*], m., generally pl., **septentriōnēs**, **-um**, *the seven plough-oxen,* the seven stars forming the constellation of the Great Bear; *the North.* [septentrional.

Septimius, **-ī**, m., *Lucius Septimius* (sep-tim′ ị-ụs), a military tribune. C. iii. 104.

septimus, **-a**, **-um**, [**septem**], num. adj., *the seventh.* [septimal.

septingentī, **-ae**, **-a**, or **DCC**, [**septem** + **centum**], num. adj., *seven hundred.* v. 13; vii. 51.

septuāgintā, or **LXX**, indeclinable num. adj., *seventy.* [Septuagint.

sepultūra, **-ae**, [cf. **sepelīō**, *bury*], f., *burial.* i. 26. [sepulture.

Sēquana, -ae, f., *Sequana* (sek′-wạ-nạ), *the Seine*, the principal river of Northern France.

Sēquanī, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Sequanians, Sequani* (sek′ wạ-nī), a Gallic people west of the Jura; chief city Vesontio, now *Besançon*.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., *Sequanian, of the Sequanians* (i. 31). As noun, **Sēquanus**, -ī, m., *a Sequanian* (i. 3).

sequor, -quī, -cūtus, 3, dep., *follow, follow after; pursue; take advantage of* (v. 8); *hold to, maintain* (vii. 63). **Caesaris fidem sequī**, *to attach one's self to Caesar* (v. 20, 56). [sequence.

Ser., = Servius.

sermō, -ōnis, m., *talk, conversation*. [sermon.

sērō, comp. **sērius**, sup. **-issimē**, [**sērus**, *late*], adv., *late; too late* (v. 29).

serō, **serere**, **sēvī**, **satus**, 3, *sow, plant*.

Sertōrius, -ī, m., *Quintus Sertorius* (sẹr-tō′ rị-ụs), a Roman general. III. 23.

servīlis, -e, [**servus**], adj., *servile, of slaves*. i. 40; vi. 19. [servile.

serviō, -īre, -īī, -ītus, [**servus**], 4, *be the slave of, follow* (iv. 5); *devote one's self to* (vii. 34). [serve.

servitūs, -tūtis, [**servus**], f., *slavery, bondage, subjection*. [servitude.

Servius, -ī, m., (sėr′ vị-ụs), a Roman first name.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *save; keep, maintain, retain; save up* (vi. 19); *keep watch of, watch* (v. 19); *keep up the watch* (ii. 33).

servus, -ī, m., *slave*. [serf.

sescentī, -ae, -a, or **DC**, [**sex** + **centum**], num. adj., *six hundred*.

sēsē, see **suī**.

sēsquipedālis, -e, [**sēsqui-**, *one half more*, + **pedālis**; **sēsqui-** = **sēmis**, *one half*, + **-que**], adj., *a foot and a half* in thickness. iv. 17.

sēstertius, -a, -um, [for **sēmis tertius**, *three less one half*], num. adj., *two and a half*. As subst., **sēstertius**, -ī, (originally sc. **nummus**), gen. pl. **sēstertium**, m., *sesterce*, a small silver coin, originally $2\frac{1}{2}$ *asses*, = about $4\frac{1}{10}$ cents.

sētius, adv., comp., *less*. **nihilō sētius**, *none the less, nevertheless*.

seu, see **sīve**.

sevēritās, -tātis, [**sevērus**, *severe*], f., *sternness, rigor, strictness*. vii. 4. [severity.

sēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**sē-** + **vocō**], 1, *call apart, call aside*.

sex, or **VI**, indeclinable num. adj., *six*. [sextet.

sexāgintā, or **LX**, indeclinable num. adj., *sixty*.

Sextius, -ī, m., (seks′ tị-ụs):

(1) *Publius Sextius Baculus*, see Baculus.

(2) *Titus Sextius*, a lieutenant.

sī, conj., *if, whether*. **quod sī**, *but if, now if*. **sī quidem**, *if indeed, in so far as* (vi. 36).

Sibusātēs, -um, m., pl., (sib-ụ̄-sā′-tēz), a people in Aquitania. iii. 27.

sīc, adv., *so, in this way, thus; as follows* (II. 4). **ut . . . sīc**, *as . . . so*. **sīc . . . ut**, *so . . . that*.

siccitās, -tātis, [**siccus**, *dry*], f., *dryness, drouth*.

Sicilia, -ae, f., the island of *Sicily*.

sīcut or **sīcutī**, [**sīc** + **utī**], adv., *just as, as*.

sīdus, -eris, n., *constellation;* pl., **sīdera**, *heavenly bodies*, sun, moon and stars (vi. 14). [sidereal.

signifer, -ferī, [**signum**, cf. **ferō**], m., *standard-bearer, ensign*. ii. 25.

significātiō, -ōnis, [**significō**], f., *sign, signal, intimation; demeanor* (vii. 12). **significātiōnem facere**,

to give notice, convey information (II. 33, V. 53, VI. 29). [signification.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**signum**, + FAC in **faciō**], I, *show by signs, show, intimate, indicate; transmit the news* (vii. 3). [significant.

signum, -ī, n., *signal; standard, ensign.* **signum dare**, *to give the signal.* [sign.

Sīlānus, -ī, m., *Marcus Silanus* (sĭlā′nŭs), a lieutenant of Caesar. vi. 1.

silentium, -ī, [silēns, *silent*], n., *silence, stillness.* [silence.

Sīlius, -ī, m., *Titus Silius* (sĭl′ĭ-ŭs), a military tribune. iii. 7, 8.

silva, -ae, f., *wood, forest.* [sylvan.

silvestris, -e, [silva], adj., *covered with woods, wooded.* [sylvestral.

similis, -e, comp. **similior**, sup. **simillimus**, adj., *like, similar.* [similar.

similitūdō, -inis, [similis], f., *likeness, similarity.* [similitude.

simul, adv., *at the same time, at once; as soon as* (iv. 26). **simul . . . simul**, *both . . . and, partly . . . partly.* **simul atque**, *as soon as.*

simulācrum, -ī, [cf. simulō], n., *image.* vi. 16, 17.

simulātiō, -ōnis, [cf. simulō], f., *pretence, deceit.* [simulation.

simul atque, see **simul**.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [similis], I, *make like; pretend, feign* (i. 44; iv. 4). [simulate.

simultās, -tātis, [simul], f., *rivalry, jealousy, bitterness* toward a rival (v. 44).

sīn [sī + ne], conj., *if however, but if.*

sincērē [sincērus, *pure*], adv., *frankly, sincerely.* vii. 20.

sine, prep. with abl. only, *without.*

singillātim, [singulī], adv., *one by one, singly.* iii. 2; v. 4, 52.

singulāris, -e, [singulī], adj., *one by one, one at a time* (iv. 26; vii. 8); *singular, extraordinary.* [singular.

singulī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., *one to each, one by one, one apiece; separate, single.* [single.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left.* [sinister.

sinistra, -ae, [sc. **manus**], f., *left hand* (i. 25). **sub sinistrā**, *on the left* (v. 8).

sinistrōrsus [sinister + vorsus, cf. vertō], adv., *to the left.* vi. 25.

sī quidem, see **sī**.

situs, -ūs, [cf. sinō], m., *situation, location, site.* [site.

sīve or **seu** [sī + ve], conj., *or if.* **sīve (seu) . . . sīve (seu)**, *if . . . or if, whether . . . or, either . . . or, it might be . . . or.*

socer, -erī, m., *father-in-law.* i. 12.

societās, -tātis, [socius], f., *fellowship; alliance, confederacy* (vi. 2); *corporation, association* for business purposes (C. III. 103). [society.

socius, -ī, m., *comrade, ally;* in Caesar generally pl., **socīī**, *allies.* [social.

sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun.* **oriente sōle**, *at sunrise* (VII. 3). [solar.

Sōl, -is, m., *god of the sun, sun-god.* vi. 21.

sōlācium, -ī, [cf. sōlor, *console*], n., *consolation, comfort.* vii. 15. [solace.

soldurius, -ī, m., *retainer, follower, vow-beholden.* iii. 22.

soleō, -ēre, -itus sum, semi-dep., 2, *be wont, be accustomed.*

sōlitūdō, -inis, [sōlus], f., *wilderness, waste* (iv. 18; vi. 23). [solitude.

sollertia, -ae, [sollers, *skilful*], f., *skill, cleverness, ingenuity.*

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sollicitus, *agitated*], I, *instigate, urge, incite; tamper with, tempt.* [solicit.

sollicitūdō, -inis, [sollicitus], f., *anxiety, apprehension.* [solicitude.

solum, -ī, n., *lowest part, ground;* of a trench, *bottom* (VII. 72). **agrī solum**, *the bare ground* (i. 11).

sōlum [acc. of sōlus], adv., *only.* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also.*

sōlus, -a, -um, gen. sōlīus, adj., *only, alone.* [sole.

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, [se-, = sē-, + luō, *loose*], 3, *loose; set sail* (iv. 23, 28; v. 23). [solve.

somnus, -ī, m., *sleep.* C. II. 38.

sonitus, -ūs, [cf. **sonō**, *sound*], m., *noise, sound.* vii. 60, 61.

sonus, -ī, m., *sound.* vii. 47. [sound.

soror, -ōris, f., *sister.* [sorority.

sors, sortis, f., *lot, chance.* [sort.

Sōtiātēs, -ium, m., pl., (sō-shi-ā'-tēz), a people in northern Aquitania. iii. 20, 21.

spatium, -ī, n., *space, distance; interval, time, period, duration.* **nactus spatium**, *having gained time* (v. 58). [space.

speciēs, -iēī, [cf. speciō, *look*], f., *sight, show, appearance; pretence.* **ad speciem**, *for show* (i. 51). [species.

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of speciō, *look*], 1, *look at, regard* (i. 45; v. 29); *have in view* (C. III. 85); *face, lie* (i. 1; v. 13; vii. 69). [spectacle.

speculātor, -tōris, [speculor], m., *spy, scout.* [speculator.

speculātōrius, -a, -um, [speculātor], adj., *scouting, spying.* **speculātōrium nāvigium**, *spy-boat* (iv. 26). [speculatory.

speculor, -ārī, -ātus, [cf. specula, *watch-tower*], 1, dep., *spy out, spy.* i. 47. [speculate.

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. spēs], 1, *hope, expect.*

spēs, speī, f., *hope, expectation.*

Spinther, -ēris, m., (spin' ther), *P. Cornelius Lentulus Spinther*, a prominent adherent of Pompey in the Civil War. C. III. 83.

spīritus, -ūs, [cf. spīrō, *breathe*], m., *breath, air;* pl., *haughtiness, pride* (i. 33; ii. 4). [spirit.

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [spolium, *booty*], 1, *strip, despoil.* [spoil (verb).

spolium, -ī, n., usually in pl., *booty, spoils.* C. II. 39. [spoil (noun).

sponte, abl., and **spontis**, gen., only forms in use of an obsolete nom. spōns, f., *of one's own accord, willingly.* **suā sponte**, *of their own accord, of their own initiative* (I. 44, vi. 14, C. III. 93); *on their own account, unaided* (v. 28; vii. 65); *by their own influence* (i. 9). [spontaneous.

stabiliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [stabilis], 4, *make steady; make fast* (vii. 73).

stabilitās, -tātis, [stabilis], f., *steadiness.* iv. 33. [stability.

statim [stō], adv., *on the spot; immediately, at once, straightway.*

statiō, -ōnis, [cf. stō], f., *outpost, picket, guard; reserves* (v. 16). **in statiōne**, *on guard.* [station.

statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [status], 3, *set, place; determine, resolve; judge, think.* [statute.

statūra, -ae, [cf. stō], f., *height, stature.* ii. 30; vi. 21. [stature.

status, -ūs, [stō], m., *condition, position, situation.* [status.

stimulus, -ī, m., *goad; pricker* like a goad (vii. 73, 82). [stimulus.

stīpendiārius, -a, -um, [stīpendium], adj., *tributary, subject to payment of tribute* (i. 30, 36). As noun, **stīpendiāriī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *tributaries, dependents* (vii. 10). [stipendiary.

stīpendium, -ī, [stips, *coin*, cf.

pendō, *weigh*], n., *tribute;* of soldiers, *pay*. [stipend.

stīpes, -itis, m., *stock* of a tree, *log*. vii. 73.

stirps, -is, f., *stem; stock, race* (vi. 34).

stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus, 1, *stand, stand upright* (vi. 27); *be posted, be placed* (v. 35, 43); *abide by* (vi. 13).

strāmentum, -ī, [cf. **sternō**, *strew*], n., *thatch* of houses (v. 43); *pack-saddle* (vii. 45).

strepitus, -ūs, [**strepō**], m., *noise, uproar*.

stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictus, 3, *bind tight;* of a sword, *draw* (C. III. 93). [stringent.

struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus, 3, *build, construct*. C. III. 96.

studeō, -ēre, -uī, 2, *be eager for, strive for; be devoted to, pay heed to; eagerly desire, strive*. [student.

studiōsē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [**studiōsus**, *eager*], adv., *eagerly, diligently*.

studium, -ī, [cf. **studeō**], n., *eagerness, energy, enthusiasm; goodwill* (i. 19); *pursuit*. **studia reī mīlitāris**, *pursuits of war, military pursuits* (vi. 21). [study.

stultitia, -ae, [**stultus**], f., *folly, lack of foresight*. vii. 77.

stultus, -a, -um, adj., *foolish*. C. III. 59. [stultify.

sub, prep.:

(1) With acc., after verbs of motion, *under, towards, near to, just before*.

(2) With abl., *under, at the foot of, close by;* of time, *on, in, during*.

subāctus, see **subigō**.

subdolus, -a, -um, [**sub** + **dolus**], adj., *crafty, cunning*. vii. 31.

subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**sub** + **dūcō**], 3, *lead up* from a lower to a higher position (i. 22, 24); of ships, *draw up, haul on shore, beach* (iv. 29; v. 11, 24).

subductiō, -ōnis, [**subdūcō**], f., *hauling on shore, beaching*. v. 1.

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, [**sub** + **eō**], irr., *go under* (i. 36); *come up, approach, go up* (*to*), from a lower position (ii. 25, 27; vii. 85); *undergo, suffer*.

subfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, [**sub** + **fodiō**], 3, *stab underneath*. iv. 12.

subfossus, see **subfodiō**.

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**sub** + **iaciō**], 3, *throw under, place near; throw from beneath* (i. 26); *expose* (iv. 36, C. III. 85); *make subject* (vii. 1, 77).

subiectus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [**subiciō**], adj., *lying near, adjacent*. v. 13. [subject.

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [**sub** + **agō**], 3, *subdue; constrain, reduce to straits* (vii. 77).

subitō, [abl. of **subitus**], adv., *suddenly, on a sudden*.

subitus, -a, -um, [**subeō**], adj., *sudden, unexpected*.

sublātus, see **tollō**.

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**sub** + **levō**], 1, *lift up, support, hold up* (i. 48; vi. 27; vii. 47); *relieve, assist, aid, support* (i. 16, 40; vii. 14, 65); of labor, *lighten* (vi. 32); *retrieve* (C. III. 73).

sublica, -ae, f., *stake, pile*.

subluō, -luere, ——, -lūtus, [**sub** + **luō**], 3, *wash* (vii. 69); *flow at the foot of* (C. III. 97).

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, [**sub** + **ruō**, *fall*], 3, *undermine*.

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [**sub** + **sequor**], 3, dep., *follow close upon, follow after, follow up*. [subsequent.

subsidium, -ī, [cf. **subsīdō**], n., *re-*

serve, reserve force, auxiliaries; support, relief, help, aid; relieving force; resource, remedy. **mittere subsidiō**, *to send help.* [subsidy.

subsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, [sub + sīdō, *sit*], 3, *stay behind, remain behind.* vi. 36. [subside.

subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, [sub + sistō, *set*], 3, *halt, make a stand* (i. 15); *hold out* (v. 10). [subsist.

subsum, -esse, [sub + sum], irr., *be near* (i. 25; v. 29); of time, *be close at hand, not far off* (iii. 27; v. 23, C. III. 97).

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [sub + trahō], 3, *carry off, draw off underneath* (vii. 22); *withdraw, take away* (i. 44). [subtract.

subvectiō, -ōnis, [subvehō], f., *transportation.* vii. 10.

subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, [sub + vehō], 3, *bring up.* i. 16.

subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, subventum est, [sub + veniō], 4, *come to the help of, come to the rescue of; assist, succor, render assistance.* [subvention.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [sub + cēdō], 3, *come up, approach, advance; succeed* to another's place, *take the place of, relieve, follow; become the successor* (vi. 13); *prosper, succeed* (vii. 26). [succeed.

succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus, [sub, cf. candeō], 3, *set on fire, set fire to.*

succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [sub + caedō], 3, *cut down.*

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, [sub + cumbō, for cubō], 3, *yield, succumb.* vii. 86. [succumb.

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum est, [sub + currō], 3, *run to help, succor.* v. 44; vii. 80. [succor.

sudis, -is, f., *stake, pile.*

sūdor, -ōris, [cf. sūdō, *sweat*], m., *sweat; toil, effort* (vii. 8). [sudary.

Suēba, -ae, [Suēbus, cf. Suēbī], f., *a Swabian woman.* i. 53.

Suēbī, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Swabians, Suebi* (swē′ bī), a powerful German people.

Suessiōnēs, -um, m., pl., (swes-i-ō′-nēz), a Belgic people north of the Matrona (*Marne*); the name survives in *Soissons.*

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [sub + faciō], 3, *hold out.* vii. 20. [suffice.

suffrāgium, -ī, n., *vote.* [suffrage.

Sugambrī, -ōrum, m., pl., (sū-gam′-brī), a German people.

suggestus, -ūs, [suggerō, *raise up*], m., *platform* (vi. 3).

suī, sibi, sē or **sēsē**, nom. wanting, reflex. pron., *himself, herself, itself, themselves, him, her, it.*

Sulla, -ae, m., (sul′ a):

(1) *Lucius Cornelius Sulla*, born 138 B.C.; consul 88, dictator 81–79 B.C.; leader of the aristocratic party in the first Civil War, enemy of Marius; died 78 B.C. i. 21; C. I. 7.

(2) *Faustus Cornelius Sulla*, son of the dictator. C. I. 6.

(3) *Publius Cornelius Sulla*, nephew of the dictator, who fought under Caesar. C. III. 89, 99.

Sulpicius, -ī, m., (sul-pish′ [y]us):

(1) *Publius Sulpicius Rufus*, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul and afterwards in the Civil War. iv. 22, vii. 90.

(2) *Servius Sulpicius*, a Roman senator. C. II. 44.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, irr., *be, exist.* [future.

summa, -ae, [summus; sc. rēs], f., *sum total, aggregate, whole* (i. 29; vi. 11, 34; C. III. 89); *general management, control, administra-*

tion; determination, deciding (vi. 11). **summa imperiī**, *the supreme command.* [sum.

sumministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sub + ministrō, *serve*], 1, *supply, provide, furnish.*

summittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [sub + mittō], 3, *send secretly; send as reinforcement, send as help.* [submit.

summoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [sub + moveō], 2, *force back.*

summus, see superus.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, 3, *take* (i. 7, 16; vii. 65); *take to one's self, take on, assume* (i. 33; ii. 4); *put forth, expend, spend* (iii. 14). **dē aliquō supplicium sūmere**, *to inflict punishment on any one* (i. 31; vi. 44).

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [sūmptus], adj., *costly.* vi. 19. [sumptuous.

sūmptus, -tūs, [sūmō], m., *expense.* i. 18. [sumptuary.

superbē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [superbus, *proud*], adv., *haughtily.*

superior, see superus.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [superus], 1, *conquer, overcome, vanquish, defeat; surpass* (vi. 24); *surmount* (vii. 24); *rise above* (iii. 14); *prove superior* (iii. 14); *carry the day* (v. 31); *survive* (vi. 19). [superable.

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, [super + sedeō, *sit*], 2, *refrain from.* ii. 8. [supersede.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, [super + sum], irr., *remain, be left* (i. 23; iii. 28; v. 22; C. III. 91); *survive* (i. 26; ii. 27, 28).

superus, -a, -um, comp. superior, sup. summus or suprēmus, [super], adj., *above, on high.* Comp. **superior**, -ius, *higher, upper, superior;* of time, *former, earlier*, as **superiōre nocte**, *the previous night* (v. 10). Sup., **summus**, -a, -um, *highest; greatest, very great; most important, chief; all together, all* (v. 17; vii. 41); often denoting a part, as **summus mōns**, *the top of the height* (i. 22). As noun, **summum**, -ī, n., *top, end.* **ab summō**, *from the top* (ii. 18); *at the end* (vii. 73); *from the end* (vi. 26). [superior, supreme.

suppetō, -petere, -petīvī or -iī, -petītus, [sub + petō], 3, *be at hand, be available; hold out* (vii. 77, 85).

supplēmentum, -ī, [suppleō, *fill up*], n., *raw contingent*, a body of recruits under training, not yet assigned to the legions in which they will serve. [supplement.

supplex, -icis, m. and f., *suppliant.* ii. 28.

supplicātiō, -ōnis, [supplicō], f., *solemn thanksgiving, thanksgiving.* [supplication.

suppliciter [supplex], adv., *after the manner of a suppliant, humbly.*

supplicium, -ī, [cf. supplex], n., *punishment; death-penalty, execution.*

supportō, -āre, -āvī, [sub + portō], 1, *bring up, transport, convey.* [support.

suprā, adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., *above; before, previously.*

(2) As prep., with acc., *above;* of time, *beyond, before* (vi. 19).

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [subs, for sub, + capiō], 3, *undertake, take up; take upon one's self, assume* (i. 3). **bellum suscipere**, *to commence war.* [susceptible.

suspectus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, adj., *under suspicion.* [suspect.

suspīciō, -ōnis, f., *suspicion; reason to suspect* (i. 4). [suspicion.

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus, [cf. **suspiciō**], 1, dep., *suspect, mistrust, surmise.*

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **sustineō**], 1, *sustain, endure, bear, hold out.*

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [**subs**, for **sub**, + **teneō**], 2, *hold up* (vii. 56); *check, pull up* (iv. 33); *hold out, bear, endure; hold out against, withstand.* [sustain.

sustulī, see **tollō**.

suus, -a, -um, [cf. **suī**], possessive pronominal adj., *his, her, its, their; his own, her own, their own*, etc.; with **locō, locīs**, *favorable* to himself, to themselves. As noun, **suī**, m., pl., *his, their friends, people, party, side;* **suum**, -ī, n., *their own* (i. 43); **sua**, n., pl., *his, her, their property, possessions.* **sē suaque**, *themselves and their possessions* (i. 11, ii. 31).

Syria, -ae, [Συρία], f., (sir′ i-ą), a country lying east of the Mediterranean Sea, between Cilicia and Palestine; organized into a Roman province in 64 B.C. C. I. 6, III. 103.

Syriacus, -a, -um, [**Syria**], adj., *Syrian.* C. III. 88.

T.

T. = **Titus** (tī′ tụs), a Roman first name.

tabella, -ae, [dim. of **tabula**], f., *tablet; voting-tablet, ballot* (C. III. 83).

tabernāculum, -ī, [**taberna**, *hut*], n., *tent, hut.* [tabernacle.

tabula, -ae, f., *board; writing-tablet; list* written on a tablet (i. 29). [table.

tabulātum, -ī, [cf. **tabula**], n., *floor, story.* vi. 29. [tabulate.

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, 2, *be silent, remain silent* (i. 17); *say nothing of, pass over in silence* (i. 17).

tacitus, -a, -um, [part. of **taceō**], adj., *silent.* i. 32. [tacit.

tālea, -ae, f., *stick, block* (vii. 73); *bar* (v. 12). [tally.

tālis, -e, adj., *such.*

tam, adv., *so, so very.*

tamen, adv., *yet, still, for all that, nevertheless, however.*

Tamesis, -is, m., *the Thames.*

tametsī [**tam**, = **tamen**, + **etsī**], conj., *although, though.*

tandem [**tam**], adv., *at length, finally;* in questions, *pray* (i. 40).

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, 3, *touch, border on.* v. 3. [tact.

tantopere [**tantō opere**], adv., *so earnestly, with so great effort.* i. 31.

tantulus, -a, -um, [dim. of **tantus**], adj., *so small, so slight, so trifling.*

tantum [acc. of **tantus**], adv., *only so much, so far, merely.* **tantum modo**, *only* (iii. 5).

tantundem [acc. neut. of **tantusdem**], adv., *just so much.* vii. 72.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so large, so much, so extensive, so important.* **tantus . . . quantus**, *so great, so much, only so much . . . as.*

Tarbellī, -ōrum, m., pl., (tạr-bel′ ī), a people in Aquitania, near the Ocean. iii. 27.

tardē, comp. **-ius**, sup. **-issimē**, [**tardus**], adv., *slowly;* comp., *rather slowly* (iv. 23, C. III. 82).

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**tardus**], 1, *check, delay, impede, hinder.*

tardus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, adj., *slow.* Comp., *less active* (ii. 25). [tardy.

Tarusātēs, -ium, m., pl., (tär-ū-sā′ tēz), a people in Aquitania. iii. 23, 27.

Tasgetius, -ī, m., (tạs-jē′ sh[y]ụs), a ruler of the Carnutes. v. 25, 29.

Tauroïs, -entis, acc. **Tauroenta**, [Ταυρόεις], (tâ′ rọ-ịs), a fortified place

on the seacoast near Massilia. C. II. 4.

taurus, -ī, m., *bull*. vi. 28. [Taurus.

Taximagulus, -ī, m., (tak-si̯-mag′ū-lus), a British chieftain. v. 22.

taxus, -ī, f., *yew*. vi. 31.

Tectosagēs, -um, m., pl., (tek-tos′-a̯-jēz), a division of the Volcae, in the Province; represented also by a branch settled near the Hercynian forest (vi. 24).

temere, adv., *blindly*, *recklessly*, *rashly* (I. 40, v. 28; vii. 37, C. III. 87); *without good reason* (iv. 20).

temeritās, -tātis, [cf. **temere**], f., *rashness*, *recklessness*. [temerity.

tēmō, -ōnis, m., *pole*, *tongue*, of a wagon or chariot. iv. 33.

Tempē [Τέμπη], n., indeclinable pl.; *Tempe*, a narrow valley, famed for its beauty, in the northern part of Thessaly, through which the river

Figure 209. — A view in the Vale of Tempe.

Through this beautiful valley Pompey rode in mad haste after the battle of Pharsalus.

tēctum, -ī, [tegō], n., *roof* (I. 36); *house* (vii. 66).

tegimentum, -ī, [tegō], n., *covering*. ii. 21; vi. 21. [tegument.

tegō, **tegere**, **tēxī**, **tēctus**, 3, *cover* (v. 43); *hide*, *conceal*, *protect*.

tēlum, -ī, n., general word for *missile*; *dart*, *spear*.

temerārius, -a, -um, [temere], adj., *rash*, *headstrong*. I. 31; VI. 20.

Xerias (ancient *Peneius*) flows eastward to the sea; it lies between Mt. Olympus and Mt. Ossa (Map 19, and Fig. 209).

temperantia, -ae, [temperāns, *temperate*], f., *moderation*, *sound judgment*. i. 19. [temperance.

temperātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [temperō], adj., *moderate*, *temperate*, *mild* (v. 12). [temperate.

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. tempus], I, *control one's self, refrain* (i. 7, 33). [temper.

tempestās, -tātis, [tempus], f., *weather; stormy weather, bad weather, storm.* [tempest.

templum, -ī, n., *temple.* C. I. 7, II. 5. [temple.

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of tendō], I, *try, attempt; make an attack on, attack, assail* (vii. 73, 86); *try to win over* (vi. 2). [tempt.

tempus, -oris, n., *period of time; time, period; season; occasion, circumstances.* **prō tempore**, *according to the emergency* (v. 8). **in reliquum tempus**, *for the future, for all time to come.* [temporal.

Tencterī, -ōrum, m., pl., (tengk′-tẹ-rī), a German people, driven from their territories by the Suebi.

tendō, **tendere**, **tetendī**, **tentus**, 3, *stretch, extend; put up* (C. III. 82); *have one's tent* (vi. 37). [tend.

tenebrae, -ārum, f., pl., *darkness.*

teneō, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, 2, *hold, keep, occupy; hold in, keep in, hold back, restrain, hem in; bind* (i. 31). **sē tenēre**, *to keep one's self, to remain.* [tenet.

tener, -era, -erum, comp. -ior, sup. **tenerrimus**, adj., *tender, young.* ii. 17. [tender (adj.).

tenuis, -e, comp. **tenuior**, sup. **tenuissimus**, adj., *thin; poor, trifling* (vi. 35); *feeble, delicate* (v. 40).

tenuitās, -ātis, [tenuis], f., *thinness; weakness; poverty, destitution* (vii. 17). [tenuity.

tenuiter, comp. **tenuius**, sup. -issimē, [tenuis], adv., *thinly.* iii. 13.

ter, num. adv., *three times, thrice.*

teres, -etis, [cf. terō, *rub*], adj., *smooth* (vii. 73).

tergum, -ī, n., *back.* **ā tergō**, **post tergum**, *in the rear, on the rear.* **terga vertere**, *to flee.* [tergant.

ternī, -ae, -a, [ter], distrib. num. adj., *by threes, three each.* [ternary.

terra, -ae, f., *earth; land, ground; territory, country, region.* [terrace.

Terrasidius, -ī, m., (ter-ạ-sid′ ị-ụs), an officer under Publius Crassus. iii. 7, 8.

terrēnus, -a, -um, [terra], adj., *of earth, earthy.* i. 43. [terrain.

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, 2, *frighten, terrify, alarm;* followed by **quō minus**, *deter, frighten* from an action (vii. 49).

territō, -āre, [freq. of terreō], I, *frighten greatly, terrify.* **metū territāre**, *to fill with apprehension* (v. 6).

terror, -ōris, [cf. terreō], m., *fear, fright, alarm.* **īnferre terrōrem**, *to strike terror* (vii. 8). [terror.

tertius, -a, -um, [ter], num. ord. adj., *third.* **tertius decimus**, or XIII, *thirteenth.* [tertiary.

testāmentum, -ī, [cf. testor], n., *will.* i. 39. [testament.

testimōnium, -ī, [cf. testis], n., *proof, evidence.* [testimony.

testis, -is, m. and f., *witness.*

testūdō, -inis, [cf. testa, *potsherd*], f., *turtle; turtle-shell roof, testudo*, a covering formed by the soldiers' shields held above their heads and overlapping (ii. 6; v. 9; vii. 85); *turtle-shell shed*, a movable shed to protect soldiers near the enemy's wall (v. 42, 43, 52). [testudinate.

Teutomatus, -ī, m., (tū-tom′ ạ-tụs), a king of the Nitiobroges. vii. 31, 46.

Teutonī, gen. -um, m., pl., *Teutons, Teutoni* (tū′ tọ-nī); see **Cimbrī**.

Thessalia, -ae, [Θεσσαλία], f., *Thessaly*, the northeastern part of Greece. C. III. 82.

Thrācēs, -um, m., pl., *Thracians*, natives of Thrace, east of Macedonia. C. III. 95.

tignum, -ī, n., *log*, *pile*. iv. 17.

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, adj., *Tigurian*. As noun, **Tigurīnī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Tigurians*, one of the four divisions of the Helvetians. i. 12.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, 2, *fear*, *be afraid of*; *be afraid*, *be apprehensive* (i. 14, 41). Pres. part. as noun, **timentēs**, m., pl., *the fearful* (vii. 7).

timidē, comp. -ius, [**timidus**], adv., *timidly*. iii. 25; v. 33.

timidus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cf. **timeō**], adj., *timid*, *cowardly*. i. 39; vi. 40. [timid.

timor, -ōris, [cf. **timeō**], m., *fear*, *apprehension*, *alarm*. [timorous.

Titūrius, -ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus* (tī-tū′ rĭ-ŭs sa-bī′ nŭs), a lieutenant of Caesar.

Titus, -ī, m., (tī′ tŭs), a Roman first name; abbreviation, T.

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *bear*, *support*, *endure*; *sustain* (VII. 77); *hold out* (vii. 71). [tolerate.

tollō, **tollere**, **sustulī**, **sublātus**, 3, *lift*, *raise*; of an anchor, *weigh* (iv. 23); *take on board* (iv. 28); *puff up*, *elate* (i. 15; v. 38, C. II. 37); *take away*, *remove* (vi. 17; vii. 14); *do away with* (I. 42).

Tolōsa, -ae, f., (tŏ-lō′ sa), a city in the Province, now *Toulouse*. iii. 20.

Tolōsātēs, -ium, [**Tolōsa**], m., pl., (tol-ŏ-sā′ tēz), a people in the territory of the Volcae Tectosages, in the Province, about Tolosa.

tormentum, -ī, [cf. **torqueō**, *twist*], n., *windlass* (vii. 22); as a military term, pl., *torsioners*, *engines*, *artillery* (vii. 41, 81); *missile*, thrown by the torsioners (iv. 25); *means of torture*, *rack*, *torture* (vi. 19; vii. 4). [torment.

torreō, **torrēre**, **torruī**, **tostus**, 2, *roast*; *burn*, *scorch* (v. 43). [torrid.

tot, indeclinable num. adj., *so many*.

totidem [**tot**], indeclinable num. adj., *just as many*, *just so many*.

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. **tōtīus**, adj., *the whole*, *all*, *all the*, *entire*. [total.

trabs, **trabis**, f., *beam*, *timber*.

trāctus, see **trahō**.

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [**trāns** + **dō**], 3, *hand over*, *give up*, *deliver*, *surrender*; *intrust*, *commit*, *confide*; *commend*, *recommend* (vii. 39); *hand down* (iv. 7); *teach*, *impart* (vi. 14, 17; vii. 22).

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**trāns** + **dūcō**], 3, *lead across*, *bring over*; *lead*, *transport*, *transfer*; *win over* (VI. 12, VII. 37). [traduce.

trāgula, -ae, f., *dart*, *javelin*, perhaps having a barbed point, and hurled by means of a leather thong.

trahō, **trahere**, **trāxī**, **trāctus**, 3, *drag along* (i. 53); *draw along*, *drag* (VI. 38). [tract.

trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**trāns** + **iaciō**], 3, *throw across*; *strike through*, *pierce*, *transfix* (v. 35, 44; vii. 25, 82). [trajectory.

trāiectus, see **trāiciō**.

trāiectus, -ūs, [cf. **trāiciō**], m., *passage*, iv. 21; v. 2.

trānō, -āre, -āvī, [**trāns** + **nō**, *swim*], 1, *swim across*. i. 53.

tranquillitās, -ātis, [**tranquillus**, *still*], f., *stillness*, *calm* (iii. 15). **summa tranquillitās**, *a profound calm* (v. 23). [tranquillity.

trāns, prep. with acc. only, *across*, *over*; *on the further side of*, *beyond*.

Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um, [**trāns** + **Alpīnus**, from **Alpēs**], adj., *beyond the Alps*, *Transalpine*. vii. 1, 6.

trānscendō, -scendere, -scendī, [**trāns** + **scandō**, *climb*], 3, *climb*

over (vii. 70); of ships, *board* (III. 15). [transcend.

trānseō, **-īre**, **-iī** or **-īvī**, **-itum est**, [**trāns** + **eō**], irr., *go over, go across, pass over, cross over; pass by, march through;* of time, *pass* (iii. 2). [transit (verb).

trānsferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātus**, [**trāns** + **ferō**], irr., *carry across; transfer.* [transfer.

trānsfīgō, **-fīgere**, **-fīxī**, **-fīxus**, [**trāns** + **fīgō**, *fix*], 3, *pierce through, transfix.* [transfix.

trānsfixus, see **trānsfīgō**.

trānsfodiō, **-fodere**, **-fōdī**, **-fossus**, [**trāns** + **fodiō**], 3, *pierce through, impale* (vii. 82).

trānsgredior, **-gredī**, **gressus**, [**trāns** + **gradiōr**, *walk, go*], 3, dep., *pass over, go across, cross.* ii. 19; vii. 25, 46. [transgress.

trānsitus, **-ūs**, [cf. **trānseō**], m., *going over, crossing* (v. 55; vi. 7; vii. 57). [transit (noun).

trānslātus, see **trānsferō**.

trānsmarīnus, **-a**, **-um**, [**trāns** + **mare**], adj., *beyond the sea.* vi. 24. [transmarine.

trānsmissus, **-ūs**, [cf. **trānsmittō**], m., *passage.* v. 13.

trānsmittō, **-mittere**, **-mīsī**, **-missus**, [**trāns** + **mittō**], 3, *send across, convey across.* vii. 61. [transmit.

Trānspadānus, **-a**, **-um**, [**trāns** + **Padus**], adj., *beyond the Po.* C. III. 87. [Transpadane.

trānsportō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**trāns** + **portō**], 1, *carry over, convey across, transport.* [transport.

Trānsrhēnānus, **-a**, **-um**, [**trāns** + **Rhēnus**], adj., *beyond the Rhine, on the other side of the Rhine* (v. 2). As noun, **Trānsrhēnānī**, **-ōrum**, m., pl., *the people beyond the Rhine* (iv. 16; vi. 5). [Transrhenane.

trānstrum, **-ī**, [**trāns**], n., *thwart, cross-beam.* iii. 13.

trānsversus [part. of **trānsvertō**], adj., *crosswise.* ii. 8. [transverse.

Trebius, **-ī**, m., *Marcus Trebius Gallus* (trē′ bi̯-u̯s gal′ u̯s), an officer under Publius Crassus. iii. 7, 8.

Trebōnius, **-ī**, m., (trę-bō′ ni̯-u̯s):

(1) *Gaius Trebonius*, quaestor 60 B.C., tribune of the people 55 B.C., a lieutenant of Caesar in the Gallic and Civil wars; afterwards one of the conspirators against Caesar's life.

(2) *Gaius Trebonius*, a Roman knight. vi. 40.

trecentī, **-ae**, **-a**, or **CCC**, [**trēs** + **centum**], num. adj., *three hundred.*

trepidō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [cf. **trepidus**], 1, *hurry about anxiously.* v. 33; vi. 37. [trepidation.

trēs, **tria**, gen. **trium**, or **III**, num. adj., *three.*

Trēverī, **-ōrum**, m., pl., *Treverans, Treveri* (trev′ ę-rī), a Belgic people near the Rhine.

Trēverus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *Treveran, of the Treveri* (ii. 24).

Triārius, **-ī**, m., *Gaius Triarius* (tri-ā′ ri̯-u̯s), a commander under Pompey. C. III. 92.

Tribocēs, **-um**, or **Tribocī**, **-ōrum**, m., pl., (trib′ o̤-sēz, trib′ o̤-sī), a German people near the Rhine.

tribūnīcius, **-a**, **-um**, [**tribūnus**], adj., *of a tribune, tribunicial.* C. I. 7.

tribūnus, **-ī**, [**tribus**, *tribe*], m., *tribune.* **tribūnus mīlitum**, *military tribune.* **tribūnus plēbis**, *tribune of the people.* [tribune.

tribuō, **-ere**, **-uī**, **-ūtus**, [cf. **tribus**], 3, *assign, ascribe; allot, give, concede; grant, pay, render.*

tribūtum, **-ī**, [part. of **tribuō**], n., *tax, tribute.* vi. 13, 14. [tribute.

trichila, **-ae**, f., *arbor, bower.* C. III. 96.

trīduum, -ī, [tri, = trēs, cf. diēs], n., *space of three days, three days.*

triennium, -ī, [tri-, = trēs, + annus], n., *period of three years, three years.* iv. 4. [triennial.

trīgintā, or **XXX**, indeclinable num. adj., *thirty.*

trīnī, -ae, -a, [trēs], distrib. num. adj., *three each; three; threefold, triple* (i. 53). [trinal.

Trinovantēs, -um, m., pl., (trin-ọ-van′ tēz), a tribe in Britain.

tripertītō, [tripertītus, tri- + partītus], adv., *in three divisions, in three columns.* [tripertite.

triplex, -icis, [tri, = trēs, cf. plicō, *fold*], adj., *threefold, triple.* [triple.

triquetrus, -a, -um, adj., *three-cornered, triangular.* v. 13.

trirēmis, -e, [trī, = trēs, + rēmus], adj., *having three banks of oars.* C. II. 6. [trireme.

trīstis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *sad, dejected, disconsolate.* i. 32.

trīstitia, -ae, [trīstis], f., *sadness, dejection.* i. 32.

Troucillus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Troucillus* (trụ-sil′ ụs), a Gaul who acted as interpreter for Caesar. i. 19.

truncus, -ī, m., *trunk* of a tree. [trunk.

tū, **tuī**, pl. **vōs**, **vestrum**, personal pron., *thou, you.*

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet.* [tuba.

tueor, **tuērī**, 2, dep., *gaze at, behold, watch; guard, protect, defend.*

tulī, see **ferō**.

Tulingī, -ōrum, m., pl., (tụ-lin′ jī), a people near the Helvetians.

Tullius, see **Cicero**.

Tullus, see **Volcacius**.

tum, adv., *then, at that time; thereupon; besides, moreover.* **cum . . . tum**, *both . . . and, not only . . . but also.*

tumultuor, -ārī, -ātus, [tumultus], 1, dep., *make a disturbance; be in confusion* (VII. 61).

tumultuōsē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [tumultuōsus], adv., *with confusion.* Comp., *with more confusion* than usual (vii. 45).

tumultus, -ūs, m., *disturbance, confusion, disorder, uproar; uprising, rebellion* (i. 40; v. 26). [tumult.

tumulus, -ī, [tumeō, *swell*], m., *mound, hillock.* [tumulus.

tunc, adv., *then, at that time, at this juncture.* v. 41.

turba, -ae, f., *disorder, confusion.* C. II. 35.

turma, -ae, f., *troop, squadron* of cavalry.

turmātim, [turma], adv., *by squadrons.* C. III. 93.

Turonī, -ōrum, m., pl., (tū′ rọ-nī), a Gallic people, on the Liger (*Loire*).

turpis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *ugly; disgraceful, shameful.*

turpiter, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [turpis], adv., *basely, disgracefully.*

turpitūdō, -inis, [turpis], f., *baseness, disgrace.* ii. 27. [turpitude.

turris, -is, f., *tower*; movable *tower*, built on wheels so that it could be moved up to the wall of a besieged city. [tower.

Tūticānus, -ī, m., (tū-ti-kā′ nụs), a Gaul in Caesar's army. C. III. 71.

tūtō, comp. **tūtius**, [abl. of **tūtus**], adv., *in safety, safely, securely.*

tūtus, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of **tueor**], adj., *safe, secure.*

tuus, -a, -um, [tū], possessive pronominal adj., *thy, your.* v. 44.

U.

ubi or **ubī**, adv., of place, *where*; of time, *when.* **ubi prīmum**, *as soon as.*

Ubiī, -ōrum, m., pl., *Ubians, Ubii* (ū′ bi-ī), a German people.

ubīque [ubī + -que], adv., *anywhere, everywhere.* iii. 16. [ubiquity.

Ubius, -a, -um, adj., *Ubian, of the Ubians* (vi. 29).

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus, 3, dep., *take vengeance on* (i. 14; iv. 19; v. 38); *avenge* (i. 12); *to take vengeance* (vi. 34).

ūllus, -a, -um, gen. **ūllīus,** adj., *any.* As noun, *anyone, anybody* (i. 8).

ulterior, -ius, [ultrā], adj. in comp. degree, *farther, beyond, more remote, more distant.* Sup. **ultimus,** *farthest, most distant, most remote; last.* As noun, **ulteriōrēs, -um,** m., pl., *those who were further off* (vi. 2); **ultimī, -ōrum,** m., pl., *the last* (v. 43). [ulterior, ultimate.

ultrā, prep. with acc. only, *on the farther side of; beyond* (i. 48, 49).

ultrō, adv., *to the farther side; besides, moreover, also* (v. 28, vi. 35); *actually* (v. 40); *of one's own accord, voluntarily.*

ultus, see **ulcīscor.**

ululātus, -ūs, [ululō, *yell*], m., only in acc. and abl., *shouting, yell.*

umerus, -ī, m., *shoulder.* vii. 50, 56.

umquam, adv., *at any time, ever.*

ūnā [ūnus], adv., *into one place* (vii. 87); *in the same place* (ii. 29; vii. 38); *at the same time; together, in company.* **ūnā cum,** *along with, together with.*

unde, adv., *whence, from which.*

ūndecim, or **XI,** [ūnus + **decem**], indeclinable num. adj., *eleven.*

ūndecimus, -a, -um, [undecim], num. ord. adj., *eleventh.*

ūndēquadrāgintā, or **XXXIX,** [ūnus + dē + **quadrāgintā**], indeclinable num. adj., *thirty-nine.*

ūndēvīgintī, or **XVIIII,** [ūnus + dē + **vīgintī**], indeclinable num. adj , *nineteen.* i. 8.

undique [**unde** + **-que**], adv., *from all sides, on all sides, everywhere.*

ūniversus, -a, -um, [**ūnus** + **versus,** from **vertō**], adj., *all together, all, in a body; the whole of, entire.* As noun, **ūniversī, -ōrum,** m., pl., *all the men together, the whole body, all together.* [universe.

ūnus, -a, -um, gen. **ūnīus,** num. adj., *one; one alone, only one, only, sole; one and the same.* Pl., **ūnī,** *alone, only.* **ūnō tempore,** *at one and the same time.* **ad ūnum omnēs,** *all to a man* (v. 37). [unite.

urbānus, -a, -um, [**urbs**], adj., *of the city,* referring to Rome. [urban.

urbs, urbis, f., *city;* often *the city,* referring to Rome.

urgeō, urgēre, ursī, 2, *press;* pass., *be hard pressed* (ii. 25, 26). [urge.

ūrus, -ī, m., *wild ox.* vi. 28.

Usipetēs, -um, m., pl., (ū-sip' ẹ-tēz), a German people.

ūsitātus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior,** sup. **-issimus,** [part. of **ūsitor**], adj., *usual; common, familiar* (vii. 22).

ūsque, adv., *as far as, even.* **ūsque ad,** *as far as;* of time, *up to, until* (i. 50; iii. 15). **ūsque eō,** *even so far as this, even to this degree* (vi. 37; vii. 17).

ūsus, see **ūtor.**

ūsus, -ūs, [cf. **ūtor**], m., *use, practice, exercise, employment; experience, familiarity* (*with*), *skill; control; advantage, benefit; need, necessity.* **ex ūsū,** *of advantage.* [use (noun).

ut, utī, adv. and conj.:

(1) As adv., interrogative, *how* (i. 43, 46); relative, *as, just as.*

(2) As conj., with indic., *as* (i. 4); *when, as soon as* (i. 31); with subj., *that, so that; in order that; though, although* (iii. 9).

uter, utra, utrum, gen. **utrīus**, pronominal adj., often used as subst., *which* of two, *whichever, which*.

uterque, -traque, -trumque, gen. **utrīusque**, [uter + -que], adj., *each, both*. As subst., **uterque, utrīusque**, m., *both, each*. Pl., **utrīque**, *both sides, both forces* (iv. 26; v. 50; vii. 70, 80, 85); *both peoples* (ii. 16; vii. 7).

utī, see **ut**.

Utica, -ae, f., (ū′ ti-cą), a city in northern Africa, on the sea-coast.

Uticēnsēs, -ium, m., pl., *Uticans, the inhabitants of Utica*. C. II. 36.

ūtilis, -e, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [**ūtor**], adj., *useful, serviceable* (iv. 7; vii. 20); *helpful* (vii. 76).

ūtilitās, -ātis, [**ūtilis**], f., *usefulness, advantage, benefit*. [utility.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, 3, dep., *use, employ, adopt; avail one's self of, have, enjoy, find; observe, maintain; exercise, display, show*. [use (verb).

utrimque [uterque], adv., *on both sides*.

utrum, [uter], conj., *whether*.

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife*. [uxorious.

V.

Vacalus, -ī, m., *Waal, Vacalus* (vak′ ą-lụs), an arm of the Rhine, which flows west into the Meuse. iv. 10.

vacātiō, -ōnis, [cf. **vacō**], f., *exemption*. vi. 14. [vacation.

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *be unoccupied, lie waste*. [vacate.

vacuus, -a, -um, sup. **vacuissimus**, [**vacō**], adj., *empty, clear, vacant, unoccupied; destitute* (ii. 12). [vacuum.

vadum, -ī, n., *shoal, shallow* (iii. 9, 12, 13; iv. 26); *ford, shallow place*.

vāgīna, -ae, f., *scabbard, sheath*. v. 44.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, 1, dep., *wander, wander about, roam about*.

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, 2, *be powerful, be strong; have power, have influence; prevail*. [value.

Valerius, -ī, m., (vą-lē′ ri-ụs):

(1) *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus*, a lieutenant defeated and killed in Aquitania a few years before 56 B.C. iii. 20.

(2) *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, a Roman governor in Gaul. i. 47.

(3) *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who received the Roman franchise, B.C. 83. i. 47; vii. 65.

(4) *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, son of (3); sent by Caesar as envoy to Ariovistus. i. 47, 53.

(5) *Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus*, a Gaul, son of (3). vii. 65.

(6) *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, see **Troucillus**. i. 19.

(7) *Valerius Flaccus*, an officer in Pompey's army. C. III. 53.

Valetiācus, -ī, m., (val′ ę-shi-ā′ kụs), vergobret of the Aeduans in 53 B.C. vii. 32.

valētūdō, -inis, [cf. **valeō**], f., *health*. v. 40; vii. 78. [valetudinarian.

vallēs or **vallis, -is**, f., *valley*. [valley.

vāllum, -ī, [**vāllus**], n., *rampart* set with palisades, *wall, intrenchment*. [wall.

vāllus, -ī, m., *stake, pole; rampart stake, palisade;* rampart stakes in position, *stockade, palisade;* sharpened *point* (vii. 73).

Vangionēs, -um, m., pl., (vąn-jī′ ọ-nēz), a German tribe. i. 51.

varietās, -ātis, [**varius**], f., *variety, diversity* (vii. 23); *mottled appearance* (vi. 27). [variety.

varius, -a, -um, adj., *different, diverse*. [various.

Vārus, -ī, a Roman name: see **Attius**.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vāstus], 1, *lay waste, devastate.*

vastus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *vast, immense.* [vast.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, [vāticinor, *predict*], f., *prophecy.* i. 50. [vaticination.

Vatīnius, -ī, m., *Publius Vatinius* (vạtin′ i̯-ụs), a partizan of Caesar. C. III. 90.

-ve, enclitic conj., *or.*

vectīgal, -ālis, [cf. vehō], n., *tax, tribute* (v. 22); *revenue* (i. 18, 36).

vectīgālis, -e, [vectīgal], adj., *paying tribute, tributary.* iii. 8; iv. 3.

vectōrius, -a, -um, [vector, cf. vehō], adj., *for carrying.* **vectōrium nāvigium**, *transport ship* (v. 8). [vectorial.

vehementer, comp. vehementius, sup. -issimē, [vehemēns, *eager, violent*], adv., *vigorously, violently; exceedingly, greatly.*

vehō, -ere, vexī, vectus, 3, *carry.* **equō vectus**, *riding on horseback* (C. II. 44). [vehicle.

vel, [volō], conj., *or.* **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or.* As adv., *even* (vii. 37).

Velānius, -ī, m., *Quintus Velanius* (vẹ-lā′ ni̯-us), an officer under Crassus. iii. 7, 8.

Veliocassēs, -ium, and **Veliocassī**, -ōrum, m., pl., (vel′′ i̯-ọ-kas′ ēz, vel′′ i̯-ọ-kas′ ī), a small state north of the Sequana (*Seine*).

Vellaunodūnum, -ī, n., (vel′′ â-nọ-dū′ nụm), a town of the Senones. vii. 11, 14.

Vellaviī, -ōrum, m., pl., (vẹ-lā′ vi̯-ī), a small state in the Cebenna (*Cévennes*) Mountains. vii. 75.

vēlōcitās, -ātis, [vēlōx], f., *swiftness, speed.* vi. 28. [velocity.

vēlōciter, comp. vēlōcius, sup. vēlōcissimē, [vēlōx], adv., *swiftly, quickly.* v. 35.

vēlōx, -ōcis, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *swift, fast.* i. 48. [velox.

vēlum, -ī, n., *sail.* iii. 13, 14.

velut [vel + ut], adv., *just as.* **velut sī**, *just as if* (i. 32).

vēnātiō, -ōnis, [cf. vēnor, *hunt*], f., *hunting, hunting expedition.*

vēnātor, -ōris, [vēnor, *hunt*], m., *hunter.* vi. 27.

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [vēnum, *sale*, + dō], 3, *sell.* [vend.

Venellī, -ōrum, m., pl., (vẹ-nel′ ī), a Gallic people, on the northwest coast (Fig. 210).

Figure 210. — A Venellan coin.

Gold. Reverse, two-horse chariot; the charioteer holds aloft the model of a ship. In front of the horses is a head of wheat, on a sinuous stalk.

The head on the obverse wears a laurel wreath.

Venetī, -ōrum, m., pl., *Venetans, Veneti* (ven′ ẹ-tī), a sea-faring Gallic people, on the west coast.

Venetia, -ae, f., (vẹ-nē′ sh[y]ạ), *the country of the Venetans.* iii. 9.

Veneticus, -a, -um, [Venetia], adj., *of the Venetans, Venetan.* **Veneticum bellum**, *the war with the Venetans* (iii. 18; iv. 21).

venia, -ae, f., *pardon, forgiveness* (vi. 4); *permission* (vii. 15). [venial.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum est, 4, *come.*

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, [freq. of veniō], 1, *come often, go often, keep coming.*

ventus, -ī, m., *wind.* [ventilate.

vēr, vēris, n., *spring.* **prīmō vēre**,

at the commencement of spring (vi. 3). [vernal.

Veragrī, -ōrum, m., pl., (ver′ ạ-grī), an Alpine tribe.

Verbigenus, -ī, m., *Verbigen, Verbigenus* (vẹr-bij′ ẹ-nụs), a canton of the Helvetians. i. 27.

verbum, -ī, n., *word.* **verba facere**, *to speak* (ii. 14). [verb.

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, m., (vẹr-kas′′-ị-vẹ-lâ′ nụs), one of the four generals in command of the Gallic army raised for the relief of Alesia.

Vercingetorīx, -īgis, m., (ver-sịn-jet′ ọ-riks), an Arvernian, commander-in-chief of the Gallic forces in 52 B.C.

vereor, -ērī, -itus, 2, dep., *fear, be afraid; be afraid of, dread.*

vergō, -ere, 3, *lie, slope; be situated.* [verge.

vergobretus, -ī, m., [Celtic word, 'He that renders judgment'; as a title, 'Dispenser of Justice'], *vergobret*, title of the chief magistrate of the Aeduans. i. 16.

veritus, see **vereor**.

vērō [abl. neuter of **vērus**], adv., *in truth, in fact, truly, certainly; but, but in fact, however.*

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **vertō**], 1, *turn often; shift, change the position of* (v. 44). Pass. **versor**, -ārī, -ātus, as dep., lit., *turn one's self about, move about* in any place; *dwell, live, be; be occupied, be engaged, be busy.* **in bellō versārī**, *to engage in war* (vi. 15). [versatile.

versus, -ūs, [**vertō**], m., *line, verse* (vi. 14). [verse.

versus, [part. of **vertō**], prep. and adv.:

(1) As prep., with acc. only, sometimes following a word governed by **ad** or **in**, *towards, in the direction of.* **ad . . . versus**, **in . . . versus**, *towards.*

(2) As adv., *turned, facing.* **quōque versus**, *in all directions* (iii. 23; vii. 4, 14).

Verticō, -ōnis, m., (vẹr′ tị-kō), a Nervian of rank. v. 45, 49.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, 3, *turn, turn about; change.* **terga vertere**, *to turn and flee, to flee.*

Verucloetius, -ī, m., (ver-ụ̄-klē′-sh[y]ụs), a Helvetian who went as envoy to Caesar. i. 7.

vērus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **vērissimus**, adj., *true* (i. 18, 20); *right, proper, fitting* (iv. 8). As noun, **vērum**, -ī, n., *the truth.* **vērī similis**, *probable* (iii. 13).

verūtum, -ī, [**verū**, *spit* for roasting meat], n., *dart.* v. 44.

Vesontiō, -ōnis, m., (vẹ-son′ sh[y]ō), chief city of the Sequanians, on the Dubis (*Doubs*) river; now *Besançon.* i. 38, 39.

vesper, -erī, m., *evening.* [vespers.

vester, -tra, -trum, [**vōs**], possessive pronominal adj., *your, yours.*

vēstīgium, -ī, n., *footprint, track* (vi. 27); *spot, place* (iv. 2); of time, *moment, instant.* [vestige.

vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [**vestis**], 4, *clothe* (v. 14; vii. 31); *cover* (vii. 23). [vestment.

vestis, -is, f., *clothing.* vii. 47. [vest.

vestītus, -ūs, [cf. **vestiō**], m., *clothing, garb.* iv. 1; vii. 88.

veterānus, -a, -um, [**vetus**], adj., *old, veteran.* i. 24. [veteran.

vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus, 1, *forbid* (ii. 20); *not allow* (vii. 33). [veto.

vetus, -eris, sup. **veterrimus**, adj., *old, former; ancient, long-standing.*

vetustās, -ātis, [**vetustus**, **vetus**], f., *antiquity, ancient times.* C. 1. 6.

vēxillum, -ī, [cf. **vēlum**], n., *banner, flag.*

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **vehō**], I, *harass, assail* (i. 14; vi. 43); *lay waste, overrun* (ii. 4; iv. 15). [vex.

via, -ae, f., *way, road; journey, march.* **bīduī via**, *a two days' march* (vi. 7). [via.

viātor, -ōris, [cf. **via**], m., *traveller, wayfarer.* iv. 5.

vīcēnī, -ae, -a, [vīgintī], distrib. num. adj., *twenty each, twenty.*

vīcēsimus, -a, -um, [vīgintī], num. adj., *twentieth.* vi. 21.

vīciēs [vīgintī], num. adv., *twenty times.* **vīciēs centum mīlia passuum**, *two thousand miles* (v. 13).

vīcīnitās, -ātis, [vīcīnus, *near*], f., *neighborhood; neighbors* (vi. 34). [vicinity.

vicis, -is, f., nom., dat. and voc. sing. and gen. and voc. pl. not in use, *change, succession.* **in vicem**, *in turn* (iv. 1, C. III. 98). [vicar.

victima, -ae, f., *victim.* vi. 16. [victim.

victor, -ōris, [**vincō**], m., *conqueror, victor.* As adj., *victorious* (i. 31; vii. 20, 62). [victor.

victōria, -ae, [**victor**], f., *victory.* [victory.

victus, see **vincō**.

vīctus, -ūs, [vīvō], m., *living* (I. 31); *mode of life* (vi. 24); *food, provisions* (vi. 22, 23). [victuals.

vīcus, -ī, m., *village, hamlet.*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, 2, *see, perceive, observe; understand.* Pass., generally as dep., **videor**, **vidērī**, **vīsus sum**, *be seen, seem, appear; seem proper, seem good, seem best.* [vision.

Vienna, -ae, f., (vi-en′ a), a city of the Allobroges; now *Vienne.* vii. 9.

vigilia, -ae, [**vigil**, *watchman*], f., *watching, sleeplessness* (v. 31, 32); *watch*, a division of the night; *sentry duty* (C. III. 49). [vigil.

vīgintī, or **XX**, indeclinable num. adj., *twenty.*

vīmen, -inis, n., *pliant shoot, twig, withe.* ii. 33; vii. 73. [Viminal.

vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctus, 4, *bind.* i. 53.

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, 3, *conquer, overcome, defeat, subdue; exceed, surpass* (vi. 43); *carry one's point, have one's own way* (v. 30). **victī**, **-ōrum**, part., used as noun, m., pl., *the conquered.* [vincible.

vinculum, -ī, [**vinciō**], n., *chain, bond, fetters.* [vinculum.

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. **vindex**], I, *claim, demand* (vii. 76); *restore* to liberty (vii. 1); *inflict punishment* (iii. 16). [vindicate.

vīnea, -ae, f., *arbor-shed, sappers' hut.*

vīnum, -ī, n., *wine.* [wine.

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**vīs**], I, *do violence to, maltreat* (vi. 23); *invade, lay waste* (vi. 32). [violate.

vir, virī, m., *man; husband* (vi. 19). [virile.

vīrēs, see **vīs**.

virgō, -inis, f., *maiden.* [virgin.

virgultum, -ī, [**virga**, *a shoot*], n., *small brush; fascine.* iii. 18; vii. 73.

Viridomārus, -ī, m., (vir′′ i-dọ-mā′-rụs), a prominent Aeduan.

Viridovīx, -īcis, m, (vi-rid′-ọ-viks), a leader of the Venelli. iii. 17–18.

virītim, [**vir**], adv., *man by man, to each individually.* vii. 71.

Viromanduī, -ōrum, m., pl., (vir-ọ-man′ dụ-ī), a Belgic people about the headwaters of the Samara (*Somme*) and the Scaldis (*Schelde*). Fig. 211.

virtūs, -ūtis, [**vir**], f., *manliness; courage, bravery, prowess; vigor, energy, initiative* (vii. 6, 59); *efficiency, effort* (v. 8; vii. 22); *worth* (i. 47). Pl., *remarkable qualities, virtues* (i. 44). [virtue.

vīs, acc. **vim**, abl. **vī**, pl. **vīrēs**, **-ium**, f., *strength* (vi. 28); *force, violence; influence, control* (vi. 14, 17); *number* (vi. 36). Pl., *physical powers, strength.* [vim.

Figure 211. — A Viromanduan coin.
Bronze; crude fanciful designs.

vīsus, see **videō**.

vīta, **-ae**, [cf. **vīvō**], f., *life.* [vital.

vitium, **-ī**, n., *defect, failing, fault.* C. II. 4, III. 72. [vice.

vītō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, 1, *shun, avoid, try to escape.*

vitrum, **-ī**, n., *woad*, a plant used for dyeing blue. v. 14.

vīvō, **vīvere**, **vīxī**, **vīctūrus**, 3, *live;* with abl., *sustain life, live on* (iv. 1, 10; v. 14). [vivacious.

vīvus, **-a**, **-um**, [cf. **vīvō**], adj., *living, alive.* As noun, **vīvī**, **-ōrum**, m., pl., *the living* (vi. 19). [vivisection.

vix, adv., *scarcely, barely; with difficulty, hardly* (i. 6; vi. 37; vii. 46).

Vocātēs, **-ium**, m., pl., (vọ-kā′ tēz), a people in Aquitania. iii. 23, 27.

Vocciō, **-ōnis**, m., (vok′ sh[y]ō), a king of the Norici. i. 53.

vocō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [cf. **vōx**], 1, *call, summon; call for, demand; name, call* (v. 21). [vocative.

Vocontiī, **-ōrum**, m., pl., (vọ-kon′ sh[y]ī), a Gallic people in the Province. i. 10.

Volcācius, **-ī**, m., *Gaius Volcacius Tullus* (vol-kā′ sh[y]ụs tul′ ụs), an officer in Caesar's army.

Volcae, **-ārum**, m., pl., (vol′ sē), a Gallic people in the Province having two branches, **Arecomicī** and **Tectosagēs**.

volō, **velle**, **voluī**, irr., *be willing, wish, desire; mean, intend, purpose.*

voluntārius, **-a**, **-um**, [**volō**], adj., *willing; serving as a volunteer* (C. III. 91). As noun, **voluntārius**, **-ī**, m., *volunteer* (v. 56). [voluntary.

voluntās, **-ātis**, [**volō**], f., *will, wish, inclination, desire; good-will, loyalty* (i. 19; v. 4; vii. 10); *consent, approval* (I. 7, 20, 30, 39).

voluptās, **-ātis**, [**volō**], f., *pleasure, indulgence, enjoyment; amusement* (v. 12). [voluptuous.

Volusēnus, **-ī**, m., *Gaius Volusenus Quadratus* (vol-ū-sē′ nụs kwạ-drā′ tus), a military tribune.

Vorēnus, **-ī**, m., *Lucius Vorenus* (vọ-rē′ nụs), a centurion. v. 44.

Vosegus, **-ī**, m., (vos′ ẹ-gụs), a range of mountains in eastern Gaul, now *Vosges* (vōzh).

vōtum, **-ī**, [**voveō**], n., *vow.* C. I. 6. [vote.

voveō, **vovēre**, **vōvī**, **vōtus**, 2, *vow.* VI. 16. [vow.

vōx, **vōcis**, f., *voice* (ii. 13; v. 30; IV. 25); *utterance* (VII. 17); *word, reply* (I. 32). Pl. **vōcēs**, *words, sayings, language, speeches, statements.* [voice.

Vulcānus, **-ī**, m., *Vulcan*, son of Jupiter and Juno, god of fire and of work in metals. VI. 21. [volcano.

vulgō [**vulgus**], adv., *generally, commonly, everywhere.* I. 39; II. 1; V. 33.

vulgus, **-ī**, n., *common people; multitude, crowd;* of soldiers, *rank and file* (I. 46). [vulgar.

vulnerō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [**vulnus**], 1, *wound, hurt.* [vulnerable.

vulnus, **-eris**, n., *wound.*

vultus, **-ūs**, m., *countenance, features, expression of face.* I. 39.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY[1]

Regular verbs of the first conjugation are indicated by the figure 1.

abandon, relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus.
ability, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
  natural ability, ingenium, -ī, *n.*
  have ability, possum, posse, potuī.
able, be able, possum, posse, potuī.
about, concerning, dē, *prep. with abl.*
  about, around, circum, *prep. with acc.*
  about (*with numerals*), circiter.
accept, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
accident, cāsus, -ūs, *m.*
accomplish, perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus.
account, on account of, propter, *prep. with acc.*
accuse, accūsō, 1.
accustomed, be accustomed, soleō, -ēre, solitus.
across, trāns, *prep. with acc.*
act (*noun*), factum, -ī, *n.*
act (*verb*), faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
actively, ācriter.
admit, cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus.
adopt, *of a plan*, ūtor.
advance, prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus.
advantage, bonum, -ī, *n.*; commodum, -ī, *n.*
advise, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
affair, rēs, reī, *f.*
  public affairs, rēs pūblica.
afraid, be afraid, timeō, -ēre, -uī.
after, post, *prep. with acc.;* postquam, *conj.*
afterward, post, posteā.
again, iterum.
against, in, ad, contrā, *prepositions with acc.*
ago, ante.
agriculture, agrī cultūra, -ae, *f.*
aid (*noun*), auxilium, -ī, *n.*
aid (*verb*), adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *with acc.*
alarm, permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.
all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um.
allow, patior, patī, passus.
ally, socius, -ī, *m.*
almost, ferē, paene.
alone, sōlus, -a, -um.
already, iam.
also, quoque (*postpositive*).
  not only . . . but also, nōn modo . . . sed etiam.
although, cum, quamquam.
always, semper.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
ambuscade, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f., pl.*
among, apud, *prep. with acc.*
ancestors, maiōrēs, -um, *m.*
anchor, ancora, -ae, *f.*
  at anchor, ad ancoram.
and, et, atque, -que.
and . . . not, neque.
  and so, itaque.
announce, nūntiō, 1.
another, alius, -a, -ud.
answer, respondeō, -ēre, -dī, respōnsus.
any, any one, anything, aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (quod); *after* sī, nisi *or* nē, quis, qua, quid (quod); *with negatives*, quisquam quidquam (*pron.*); ūllus, -a, -um (*adj.*).
appeal to, implōrō, 1.
approach, appropinquō, 1.
approve, probō, 1.

[1] Reproduced, with the consent of the authors, from *Latin Composition*, by Bernard M. Allen and John L. Phillips.

arise, coörior, -īrī, -ortus.
arm, armō, 1.
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
arouse, incitō, 1.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum est.
as, just as, ut, sīcut, *with indic.*
  as if, quasi, velut sī.
  as soon as, simul atque.
ask, request, rogō, 1.
  ask, seek, petō, -ere, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītus.
  ask, inquire, quaerō, -ere, -sīvī *or* -siī, -sītus.
assistance, auxilium, -iī, *n.*
at, in *with abl.*; ad *with acc.; sign of locative case.*
Atrebatian, Atrebās, -ātis, *m.*
attack (*noun*), impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attack (*verb*), oppugnō, 1; adgredior, -ī, -gressus; lacessō, -ere, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītus.
  make an attack on, impetum faciō in *with acc.*
attempt (*noun*), cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*
attempt (*verb*), cōnor, 1.
authority, auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*
avenge, ulcīscor, -ī, ultus.
avoid, vītō, 1.
await, exspectō, 1.
away, be away, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.

baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n., pl.*
band (*of men*), manus, -ūs, *f.*
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*
battle, pugna, -ae, *f.*; proelium, -iī, *n.*
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
  be at hand, adsum, adesse, affuī.
bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
because, quod.
  because of, propter, *prep. with acc.*
befall, accidit, -ere, accidit.
before (*adv.*), ante, anteā.
before (*conj.*), prius quam, ante quam.
before (*prep.*), ante, *with acc.*
before (*adj.*), prior, superior.
  on the day before, prīdiē.
beg, ōrō, 1; petō, -ere, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītus.
began, coepī, coepisse, coeptus. *Use the pass. when the inf. is pass.*
begin, incipiō, -ere (*see* **began**).
behalf, in behalf of, prō, *prep. with abl.*
behind, post, *prep. with acc.*
  behind him, them, etc., post tergum.
Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, *m., pl.*
believe, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus; putō, 1.
belittle, minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.
betray, prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.
between, inter, *prep. with acc.*
bitterly, ācriter.
board, go on board, nāvem (nāvēs) ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus.
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
both, each, uterque, utraque, utrumque.
  both . . . and, et . . . et.
boundaries, fīnēs, -ium, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
break down, perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; dūcō, -ere, dūxī, -ductus.
  bring about, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
bring on, upon, īnferō.
bring to, afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus; addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
  bring together, comportō, 1.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
Britons, Britannī, -ōrum, *m., pl.*
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
build,
  (*of a bridge*), faciō, -ere, fēcī, -factus.
  (*of a road*), mūniō, -īre, -īvī, *or* -iī, -ītus.
  (*of a rampart*), perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus.
building, aedificium, -iī, *n.*
burn, set fire to, incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus.
burning, incendium, -iī, *n.*
but, sed.
buy, emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus.
by, *abl. case;* ab, *with abl. of agent.*

call (*by name*), appellō, 1.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n., pl.*
can, possum, posse, potuī.

capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
(*by storming*), expugnō, 1.
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
carefully, dīligenter.
carriage with four wheels, wagon, raeda, *f.*
carry, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
carry back, referō, referre, rettulī, relātus.
carry on, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.
carry out, accomplish, perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
case, causa, -ae, *f.*
in the case of, in, *prep. with abl.*
cast off, cast out, abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus; ēiciō.
cause (*noun*), causa, -ae, *f.*
cause (*verb*), efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
cavalry (*adj.*), equester, -tris, -tre.
cavalry (*noun*), equitātus, -ūs, *m.*; equitēs, -um, *m., pl.*
Celts, Celtae, -ārum, *m., pl.*
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*
certain (*indef. pron.*), quīdam, quaedam, quiddam.
certainly, certē.
chain, vinculum, -ī, *n.*
chance, occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*
by chance, forte.
charge,
be in charge, praesum, -esse, -fuī.
put in charge, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
chariot, currus, -ūs, *m.*
chief, chief man, prīnceps, -cipis, *m.*
children, puerī, -ōrum, *m., pl.*
(*free born*), līberī, -ōrum, *m., pl.*
choose, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus; deligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
clear, make clear, dēclārō, 1.
it is clear, cōnstat.
client, cliēns, -entis, *m.*
close, be close at hand, subsum, -esse.
cohort, cohors, cohortis, *f.*
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum est.
come back, redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est.
come together, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum est.
come to pass, fiō, fierī, factum est.
come up, arise, coörior, -īrī, -ortus.
comfort, cōnsōlor, 1.
command, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus; imperō, 1.
be in command, praesum, -esse, -fuī, *with dat.*
commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
commence battle, proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
commit, do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
common, commūnis, -e.
common people, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
companion, socius, -iī, *m.*
compare, comparō, 1.
compel, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus.
complain, queror, -ī, questus.
concern, it concerns, interest, -esse, -fuit.
concerning, dē, *prep. with abl.*
confer, colloquor, -ī, -locūtus.
conference, colloquium, -iī, *n.*
confess, cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus.
confidence, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
have confidence in, cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus.
conquer, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus; superō, 1.
consider, believe, putō, 1; exīstimō, 1.
consider, regard, habeō, -ēre, habuī, habitus.
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
conspire, coniūrō, 1.
consul, cōnsul, -is, *m.*
consulship, cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.*
in the consulship of, *abl. absol. with* cōnsul.
consult, cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -sultus.
contention, contentiō, -ōnis, *f.*
continent, continēns, -entis, *f.*
contrary to, contrā, *prep. with acc.*
convict, damnō, 1.
council, concilium, -iī, *n.*
council of war, cōncilium, -iī, *n.*
counsel, advice, cōnsilium, -iī, *n.*
take counsel, cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -sultus.
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
have courage, audeō, -ēre, ausus.
courageously, fortiter.
course, cursus, -ūs, *m.*

court of law, jūdicium, -iī, *n.*
covet, adamō, 1.
crime, facinus, -oris, *n.*; scelus, -eris, *n.*
cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum est.
crowd, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*
crush, frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus.
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*; cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, *f.*
cut down (*of grain*), succīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus; (*of a bridge*), rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus.
cut off, interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus.

daily, cotidiānus, -a, -um.
damage, afflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus.
danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um.
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*
day (*noun*), diēs, -ēī, *m.*
  on the next day, postrīdiē.
  on the day before, prīdiē.
day (*adj.*), diurnus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
decide, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.
decision, iūdicium, -iī, *n.*
declare, dēclārō, 1; cōnfirmō, 1.
decree, dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus.
deed, factum, -ī, *n.*
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defeat, superō, 1.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.
delay, wait, moror, 1.
deliver (*of a speech*), habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
demand (*noun*), postulātum, -ī, *n.*
demand (*verb*), imperō, 1, *with dat. of person from whom;* postulō, 1, *with* ab *and abl.*
deny, negō, 1.
depart, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum est.
descendants, posterī, -ōrum, *m.*
deserve, mereor, -ērī, meritus.
design (*noun*), cōnsilium, -iī, *n.*
desire, cupiō, -ere, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītus.
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um.
despoil, spoliō, 1.
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.
detain, teneō, -ēre, -uī; dētineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
determine, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.
devise, cōgitō, 1.
devote, dō, dare, dedī, datus; dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus.
devoted, dēditus, -a, -um.
devotion, studium, -iī, *n.*
die, morior, morī, mortuus.
  die, be put to death, *pass. of* interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
  die, perish, pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.
differ, differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus.
difference, there is a difference, interest, -esse, -fuit.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
difficulty, difficultās, -tātis, *f.*
diminish, dēminuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.
direction, pars; partis, *f.*
  in that direction, in eam partem.
disaster, calamitās, -tātis, *f.*
discover, reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus.
disembark (*trans.*), ex nāvī (nāvibus) expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus; (*intrans.*), ex nāvī (nāvibus) ēgredior, -ī, -gressus.
disgraceful, turpis, -e.
dislodge, summoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.
dismiss, dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
dismount, ex equō (equīs) dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, -sultus.
disorder, tumultus, -ūs, *m.*
disregard, neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus.
distance, at a distance, procul, in locīs longinquīs.
disturb, commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus; perturbō, 1.
divide, dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus.
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
  be done, happen, fīō, fierī, factum est.
  be done, go on, *pass. of* gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.
  do not (*in prohibitions*), nōlī, nōlīte, *with inf.*
doubt, dubitō, 1.
  there is no doubt, nōn est dubium.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
draw up (*of soldiers*), īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus; (*of ships*), subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
drive, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus.
  drive back, repellō, -ere, repulī, repulsus.

dry, āridus, -a, -um.
dry land, āridum, -ī, *n.*
Dumnorix, Dumnorīx, -rīgis, *m.*
dust, pulvis, -veris, *m.*
duty, officium, -ī, *n.*
do one's duty, officium praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus.

each (*of any number*), quisque, quaeque, quidque *and* quodque.
eager, cupidus, -a, -um.
eagle, aquila, -ae, *f.*
eagle-bearer, aquilifer, -erī, *m.*
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
effort, labor, -ōris, *m.*
eight, octō.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut.
elect, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; creō, 1.
else (*adj.*), reliquus, -a, -um.
nothing else, nihil aliud.
eminent, clārus, -a, -um.
empty (*of a river*), īnfluō, īnfluere, -flūxī.
encounter, occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, *with dat.;* subeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *with acc.*
encourage, hortor, 1.
end, fīnis, -is, *m.*
each end, utraque pars, utrīusque partis, *f.*
endure, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
enemy (*in war*), hostis, -is, *m.*, hostēs, -ium, *pl.;* (*personal*), inimīcus, -ī, *m.*
enjoy, fruor, -ī, frūctus.
enlist, enroll, cōnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus.
enough (*adv. and indecl. noun*), satis.
entreat, ōrō, 1.
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
equal, pār, paris; īdem, eadem, idem.
equinox, aequinoctiī diēs.
escape, effugiō, -ere, -fūgī.
establish, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.
become established, inveterāscō, -ere, -rāvī.
even, etiam.
not even, nē . . . quidem.
even if, etsī, etiam sī.
ever, umquam.
every, all, omnis, -e.
every, each, quisque, quaeque, quidque *and* quodque.
everybody, omnēs, -ium, *m., pl.*
everything, omnia, omnēs rēs.
every part of, tōtus, -a, -um; omnis, -e.
every sort of, omnis, -e.
in every way, omnī modō.
evidence, indicium, -iī, *n.*
evident, it is evident, cōnstat.
except, praeter, *prep. with acc.;* nisi (*conj.*).
exchange, inter sē dō, dare, dedī, datus.
excuse, pūrgō, 1.
exercise, exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
exist, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
exposed, apertus, -a, -um.
extend, pertineō, -ēre, -uī.

face to face, adversus, -a, -um.
fact, rēs, reī, *f.*
fall, cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.
fall on, fall in with, incidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsūrus.
fall upon, overwhelm, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus.
far, longē.
far and near, longē latēque.
farther, ulterior, -ius.
father, pater, -tris, *m.*
favorable, secundus, -a, -um.
fear (*noun*), timor, -ōris, *m.*; metus, -ūs, *m.*
fear (*verb*), timeō, -ēre, timuī.
feel, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus.
feeling, sēnsus, -ūs, *m.*
feelings, animus, -ī, *m.*
fellow soldier, commīlitō, -ōnis, *m.*
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
not a few, complūrēs, -ia *or* -a.
fickleness, levitās, -ātis, *f.*
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fiercely, ācriter.
fifteen, quīndecim, XV.
fight (*noun*), pugna, -ae, *f.*; proelium, -iī, *n.*
fight (*verb*), pugnō, 1; contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus; congredior, -ī, -gressus.
fill, compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.

finally, dēnique, postrēmō.
find, inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus; nancīscor, -ī, nactus *or* nanctus.
  find out, reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus.
finish, end, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
  finish, make perfect, perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
fire, set fire to, incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus.
first, prīmus, -a, -um.
  at first, prīmō.
  in the first place, prīmum.
fit, idōneus, -a, -um.
five, quīnque, V.
flank, latus, -eris, *n.*
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī.
flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*
  put to flight, in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus.
foe, *see* **enemy.**
follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus; īnsequor.
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
  on foot, pedibus.
for (*conj.*), nam, enim (*postpositive*).
for, in behalf of, prō, *prep. with abl.*
for, toward, in, *prep. with acc.; often expressed by dat. case.*
force, vīs, *f.*
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f., pl.*
forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
forget, oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus.
form, make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; (*of plans*), capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
former, early, prīstinus, -a, -um.
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītus.
fortune, good fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
four, quattuor, IIII.
free, līber, -era, -erum.
  free, unencumbered, expedītus, -a, -um.
free, set free, līberō, 1.
freedom, lībertās, -ātis, *f.*
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
from, *sign of abl. case;* ā *or* ab, ē *or* ex, dē, *prepositions with abl.*
front, frōns, frontis, *f.*
  in front of, prō, *prep. with abl.;* ante, *prep. with acc.*
full, plēnus, -a, -um.

gain, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus.
  gain possession of, potior, -īrī, -ītus, *with abl.*
gather, bring together, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus.
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*
  Gauls, Gallī, -ōrum, *m., pl.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*; imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, *m., pl.*
get to, arrive, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum est.
  get possession of, potior, -īrī, -ītus, *with abl.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus.
  give up, *see* **surrender.**
  give opportunity, potestātem faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
glad, be glad, gaudeō, -ēre, gavīsus.
glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*
go, eō, īre, īvī, *or* iī, itum est.
  go back, redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est.
  go out, exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est.
  go on, be done, *pass. of* gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.
god, deus, deī, *m.*
good, bonus, -a, -um.
grain (*threshed*), frūmentum, -ī, *n.*; (*growing or unthreshed*), frūmenta, -ōrum, *n., pl.*
  grain supply, rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, *f.*
gratitude, grātia, -ae, *f.*
great, magnus, -a, -um.
greatly, magnopere.
grief, dolor, -ōris, *m.*
guard (*noun*), praesidium, -ī, *n.*
  off one's guard, inopīnāns, -antis.
  on guard, in statiōne (statiōnibus).

habit, cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.*
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
  on the other hand, contrā.
  be at hand, adsum, -esse, affuī.
happen, accidit, -ere, accidit; fit, fierī, factum est.
harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
harm, dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*
hasten, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus.
hastily, repente.
hate, ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus.
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

have in mind, propōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *with reflex.*
he, is, hīc, ille. *Usually not expressed.*
hear, hear of, audiō, -īre, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītus.
height, altitūdō, -inis, *f.*
held, cf. hold.
help (*noun*), auxilium, -iī, *n.*
help (*verb*), adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus.
helpful, ūsuī, *dat. of* ūsus.
Helvetians, Helvētiī, -ōrum, *m., pl.*
here, hīc (*adv.*).
hesitate, dubitō, 1, *with inf.*
hide, abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.
high (*of position*), superus, -a, -um.
(*of extent*), altus, -a, -um.
(*of wind or tide*), magnus, -a, -um.
himself, ipse (*intensive*); suī (*reflexive*).
hinder, impediō, -īre, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītus.
hire, condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
his, eius; suus, -a, -um (*reflex.*).
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī.
(*of an office*), gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.
(*of a council*), habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
home, house, domus, -ūs, *f.*
at home, domī.
from home, domō.
(*to one's*) **home**, domum.
honor, honor, -ōris, *m.*
honorable, honestus, -a, -um.
hope (*noun*), spēs, -eī, *f.*
hope (*verb*), spērō, 1.
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *m.*
hostile, īnfēstus, -a, -um.
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.*
how, in what degree, quam; **in what way**, quō modō, quem ad modum.
how many, quot, quam multī, -ae, -a.
how much, quantus, -a, -um; *as subst.*, quantum, -ī, *n.*
how often, quotiēns.
however (*adv.*), quamvīs.
however (*conj.*), autem (*postpositive*).
human, humānus, -a, -um.
hundred, centum, C.
hurl, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.
hurry (*intrans.*), contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus.
hurry off (*trans.*), rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptus.

I, ego, meī. *Usually not expressed.*
if, sī.
if not, nisi.
if only, dum modo.
if (*in indirect questions*), num, -ne.
but if, quod sī; *after another condition*, sīn.
immortal, immortālis, -e.
import, importō, 1.
importance, it is of importance, rēfert.
impunity, impūnitās, -ātis, *f.*
with impunity, impūne.
in, in, *prep. with abl.*
increase (*trans.*), augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus.
(*intrans.*), crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus.
incredible, incrēdibilis, -e.
incur, subeō, -īre, -iī.
induce, addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
infantry, peditēs, -um, *m., pl.*; peditātus, -ūs, *m.*
inflict, īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus.
influence, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*
influence (*verb*), addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
inform, certiōrem (certiōrēs) faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
inhabit, incolō, -ere, -uī.
injury, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
inquire, quaerō, -ere, -sīvī *or* -iī, -sītus.
inspire, iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *with dat. of person and acc. of thing.*
intention, cōncilium, -iī, *n.*
interests of state, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
highest interests of state, summa rēs pūblica.
it is to the interest, interest, interesse, interfuit.
intimate friend, familiāris, -is, *m.*
into, in, *prep. with acc.*
investigate, search into, quaerō, -ere, -sīvī *or* -siī, -sītus.
investigate, inspect, perspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus.
invincible, invictus, -a, -um.

island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
it, hīc, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.
Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*
its, eius; suus, -a, -um (*reflex.*).
itself, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
judge, **pass judgment**, iūdicō, 1.
jump down, dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, -sultus.
Jupiter, Juppiter, Jovis, *m.*
just as, sīcut.
justly, iūre.

keep, teneō, -ēre, -uī.
keep, **hold**, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
keep, **prevent**, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
kill, interficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus; occīdo, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus.
knight, eques, -itis, *m.*
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus.
know, **have learned**, cognōvī.
not know, ignōrō, 1; nesciō, -īre, -īvī.
known, nōtus, -a, -um.

lack, **be lacking**, **be wanting**, dēsum, -esse, -fuī.
lake, lacus. **Lake Geneva**, lacus Lemannus.
land, ager, agrī, *m.*
large, magnus, -a, -um.
large number, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*
last (*adv.*), proximē.
at last, tandem.
later (*adv.*), posteā.
latter, **the latter**, hīc, haec, hoc.
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lay aside, dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.
lay down (*of arms*), pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus.
lead across, trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
lead back, redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
lead out, ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
leading man, prīnceps, -cipis, *m.*
leadership, prīncipātus, -ūs, *m.*
learn, cognōscō, -ere, -ōvī, -itus; reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus.
leave, relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus; discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *followed by* ab *with abl.*
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
less, minor, minus, *gen.* minōris.
liberty, lībertās, -ātis, *f.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
listen to, audiō, -īre, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītus.
little, parvus, -a, -um.
a little while, breve tempus, -oris, *n.*
live, vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctus.
live in, **inhabit**, inco.ō, -ere, -uī (with accusative).
long, longus, -a, -um.
for a long time, diū.
look at, spectō, 1.
lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
loud, magnus, -a, -um.
low, īnferus, -a, -um.

madness, furor, -ōris, *m.*; āmentia, -ae, *f.*
make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
make (*of a plan*), capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus; ineō, inīre, iniī, initus.
make war, bellum faciō, *or* bellum īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus, *both with dat.*
make use of, ūtor, -ī, ūsus.
man, homō, hominis, *m.*; vir, virī, *m.*
men, **soldiers**, mīlitēs, -um, *m.*
a man who, is quī.
many, multī, -ae, -a; complūrēs, -a *or* -ia.
march, iter, itineris, *n.*
march, **make a march**, iter faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
Mark, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*
marriage, mātrimōnium, -iī, *n.*
material, māteria, -ae, *f.*
matter, rēs, reī, *f.*
meet (*trans.*), conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum est, *with acc.*; occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, *with dat.*
mercy, misericordia, -ae, *f.*
mere, ipse, -a, -um.
message, nūntius, -iī, *m.*

messenger, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
miles, mīlia passuum.
military matters, rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris, *f.*
mind, mēns, mentis, *f.*; animus, -ī, *m.*
misdeed, facinus, -oris, *n.*
misfortune, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *f.*
moon, lūna, -ae, *f.*
more (*adj.*), plūs, plūris; (*adv.*), magis.
moreover, autem (*postpositive*).
motive, causa, -ae, *f.*
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus.
moved, disturbed, commōtus, -a, -um.
much (*adj.*), multus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), multum; *in comparisons*, multō.
multitude, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*

name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
nation, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
near at hand, be near at hand, adsum, -esse, affuī.
nearer (*adj.*), propior, -ius; (*adv.*), propius.
nearly, ferē.
necessary, necessārius, -a, -um.
  it is necessary, opus est; necesse est.
neglect, neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus.
neighbor, fīnitimus, -ī, *m.*
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque; nec . . . nec.
never, numquam.
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um.
news, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
next, proximus, -a, -um.
  on the next day, posterō diē.
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
  by night, noctū.
no, nūllus, -a, -um.
  no one, nobody, nēmō, *m. and f.*, *gen.* nūllīus, *dat.* nēminī, *acc.* nēminem, *abl.* nūllō.
noise, strepitus, -ūs, *m.*
not, nōn; *in negative purpose, wish, or command*, nē.
  and not, neque.
not only . . . but also, nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam.
not yet, nōndum.
notable, īnsignis, -e.
nothing, nihil (*indecl.*).
notice, animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus.
now, at the present time, nunc; **by this time**, iam.
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

obtain a request, impetrō, 1.
occur, occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus.
of, concerning, dē, *prep. with abl.*
offer, offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātus; *of terms*, ferō.
office, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*; honor, -ōris, *m.*
often, saepe.
on, in, *prep. with abl.*
once, at once, statim.
one, ūnus, -a, -um.
  one . . . another, alius . . . alius.
  one who, is quī.
  only (*adv.*), modo.
  only one, sōlus, -a, -um.
opinion, opīniō, -ōnis, *f.*
opportunity, facultās, -ātis, *f.*
oppose, resistō, -ere, -stitī.
oppress, premō, -ere, pressī, pressus.
or, aut; *in questions*, an.
order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *with acc. and inf.*; imperō, 1, *with dat.*, ut *and subj.*
  in order that, ut, *with subj.*
other, another, alius, -a, -ud.
  on the other hand, autem (*postpositive*).
  others, the remaining, cēterī, -ae, -a.
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus; oportet, -ēre, oportuit.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
  our men, nostrī, -ōrum, *m., pl.*
outcry, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
overwhelm, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus.
own, *reflex. poss. adj., or gen. of* ipse.

pack-animal, iūmentum, -ī, *n.*
pain, dolor, -ōris, *m.*
pardon, īgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus.
part, pars, partis, *f.*
party, pars, partis, *f.*
pass judgment, iūdicō, 1.

peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people, populus, -ī, *m.*
  their people (*reflex.*), suī, suōrum, *m., pl.*
perceive, perspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus.
peril, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
perish, pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.
permission, **it is permitted**, licet, licēre, licuit, *with dat. and inf.*
permit, patior, patī, passus, *with acc. and inf.*; permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *with dat.*, ut, *and subj.*
personal enemy, inimīcus, -ī, *m.*
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum est, *with dat.*, ut, *and subj.*
picked, dēlēctus, -a, -um.
pick out, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.
pitch camp, castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.
place (*noun*), locus, -ī, *m.*; *pl.* loca, -ōrum, *n.*
place (*verb*), collocō, 1; pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.
  place (*in different positions*), dispōnō.
plan (*noun*), cōnsilium, -iī, *n.*
plan, arrange, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.
plan, think (of), cōgitō, 1.
pleasure, voluptās, -ātis, *f.*
plot, ambuscade, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f., pl.*
plot against, īnsidior, 1, *with dat.*
point, at this point, hīc.
possession, gain possession of, potior, -īrī, -ītus.
power, ability, facultas, -ātis, *f.*; **power, might**, potentia, -ae, *f.*; **military power**, imperium, -iī, *n.*
powerful, to be very, plūrimum posse.
practice, exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
praetor, praetor, -ōris, *m.*
praise, laus, laudis, *f.*
pray (*verb*), vōtum faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
pray (*in commands and questions*), tandem.
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī.
prepare, comparō, 1; parō, 1.
prepared, parātus, -a, -um.
preserve, cōnservō, 1.
press hard, premō, -ere, pressī, pressus.
pretend, simulō, 1.
prevail, valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.
prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *with inf.*
  not prevent, nōn dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *with* quīn *and subj.*
previous, superior, -ius; prior, -us.
private, prīvātus, -a, -um.
privilege, give the privilege, potestātem faciō.
prolong, prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
proof, indicium, -iī, *n.*
property, rēs, reī, *f.*
proportion, in proportion to, prō.
prosperous, flōrēns, -entis.
protect, dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsus.
protection, praesidium, -iī, *n.*
prove, probō, 1.
provided, provided that, dum.
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
provision, make provision, prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus.
public, pūblicus, -a, -um.
public welfare, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
punish, ulcīscor, -ī, ultus.
punishment, supplicium, -iī, *n.*; poena, -ae, *f.*
purpose, mēns, mentis, *f.*
put down, conquer, superō, 1.
  put in charge, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
put to death, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
put to flight, fugō, 1.
put under the power, permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.

quickly, celeriter.

rampart, vāllum, -ī, *n.*
rank, ōrdō, -inis, *f.*
rather, potius.
reach, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum est, *with* ad *and acc.*
reach (*of land*), attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus.
ready, parātus, -a, -um.
  get ready, comparō, 1.

realize, intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus.
reason, causa, -ae, *f.*
  for this reason, quā dē causā.
reasonable, iūstus, -a, -um.
reasonableness, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
recall, revocō, 1.
receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
  receive under protection, in fidem recipiō.
recently, nūper.
recklessness, audācia, -ae, *f.*
regard, in regard to, dē *with abl.*
region, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
reject, repudiō, 1.
rejoice, gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum.
relief, subsidium, -ī, *n.*
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus.
remove, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus; removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.
renown, glōria, -ae, *f.*
repair, reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
repeatedly, saepe.
repent, paenitet, -ēre, -uit.
reply, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus.
report, nūntiō, 1.
report back, renūntiō, 1.
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
reputation, opīniō, -ōnis, *f.*
request, obtain a request, impetrō, 1.
reserve, reservō, 1.
resist, resistō, -ere, -stitī, *with dat.*
rest of, remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.
restore, restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus; reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.
restrain, retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus; prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus; reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus.
retreat (*noun*), receptus, -ūs, *m.*
retreat (*verb*), recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *with reflexive.*
return (*noun*), reditus, -ūs, *m.*
return, give back, reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.
return, go back, redeō, -īre, -iī, -tum est; revertor, -ī.
  in return for, prō *with abl.*
revolt, tumultus, -ūs, *m.*
reward, praemium, -iī, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*
Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*
right, fair (*adj.*), aequus, -a, -um.
  right (*in the sight of the gods*), fās, *n., indecl. noun.*
rightly, iūre.
risk, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*
road, via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
royal power, regnum.
rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus.
rumor, rūmor, -ōris, *m.*

safe, incolumis, -e; tūtus, -a, -um.
safely, tūtō; *translate when possible by adj.*, safe.
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
sail (*verb*), nāvigō, 1.
sake, for the sake of, causā, *following its gen.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
savage, ferus, -a, -um.
save, cōnservō, 1.
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus.
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
secure, (*adj.*), tūtus, -a, -um.
secure (*verb*), cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus; conciliō, 1; nancīscor, -ī, nactus.
see, see to it, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
seek, petō, -ere, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītus.
seem, videor, -ērī, vīsus.
seize, occupō, 1; comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus.
self, myself, etc. *If emphatic*, ipse, -a, -um; *if reflexive*, meī, tuī, suī, *etc.*
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
senator, senātor, -ōris, *m.*
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus.
  send ahead, praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
  send back, remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
  send out or **away** (*in different directions*), dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
separate, dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus.
serious, gravis, -e.
servant, servus, -ī, *m.*
service, officium, -iī, *n.*; meritum, -ī, *n.*
service, be of service, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī.

set fire to, incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus.
set out, proficīscor, -ī, -fectus.
set sail, solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *with or without* navem *or* nāvēs.
settle (*down*), cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessūrus.
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
several, complūrēs, -a *or* -ia.
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
  war ship, nāvis longa.
short, brevis, -e.
shout, shouting, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
show, ostendō, -ere, -dī, -tus; indicō, 1; doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus.
shrewdness, cōnsilium, -iī, *n.*
sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*
since, cum, *with subj.*; quoniam, *with indic.*
sister, soror, -ōris, *f.*
situation, locus, -ī, *m.*; *pl.* loca, -ōrum, *n.*
skilful, skilled, perītus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*
slay, occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus.
slight, parvus, -a, -um.
so (*with adjectives and adverbs*), tam; (*with verbs*), ita, sīc.
  and so, itaque.
  so great, tantus, -a, -um.
  so long, tam diū.
  so long as, dum, *with indic.*
  so much (*as noun*), tantum, -ī, *n.*
  so often, totiēns.
soldier, mīles, -litis, *m.*
some (*adj.*), aliquī, -qua, -quod; nōn nūllus, -a, -um; *pl. as subst.*
  some one, something (*subst.*), aliquis, aliquid.
  some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī.
  some in one direction, others in another, aliī aliam in partem.
  there are some who, sunt quī.
sometimes, nōn numquam.
soon, brevī tempore.
  as soon as, simul atque.
sort, genus, -eris, *n.*
  of this sort, ēius modī.
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī *or* parsī, parsūrus.
speak, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus.
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
speed, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*
  at full speed (*of horses*), incitātus, -a, -um.
spot, locus, -ī, *m.*; *pl.* loca, -ōrum, *n.*
spy, spy out, speculor, 1.
stab, percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus.
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, stātus.
  stand, get a footing, cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī.
  stand in the way of, obsistō, -ere, -stitī, *with dat.*
standard, signum, -ī, *n.*
start, proficīscor, -ī, profectus.
state, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
stay, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus.
still, now, nunc; **still, nevertheless**, tamen.
stir up, concitō, 1.
storm, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*
strange, novus, -a, -um.
strangeness, novitās, -tātis, *f.*
strong, fīrmus, -a, -um.
such, of such a sort, tālis, -e; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um.
suddenly, subitō.
sufficient, satis (*indecl.*), *n.*
sufficiently, satis.
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um, *with dat. or* ad *with acc.*
summon, vocō, 1.
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
support, alō, -ere, -uī, altus *or* alitus.
suppose, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus; exīstimō, 1.
sure, certus, -a, -um.
surpass, superō, 1, *with acc.*; praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitus, *with dat.*
surrender (**oneself**), dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus, *with reflex.*
surround, get around, circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.
suspect, suspicor, 1.
suspicion, suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.*
Swabians, Suēbī, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*
sword, gladius, -iī, *m.*

take, bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
  take, lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus.

take, take up, capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
take away, ēripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus.
take by storm, expugnō, 1.
take place, fīō, fierī, factum est.
take possession of, potior, -īrī, -ītus.
tear, lacrima, -ae, *f.*
tear up, ēripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus.
tell, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus; prōnūntiō, 1.
tell, show, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus.
tempest, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*
ten, decem.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terms, condiciō, -ōnis, *f., sing. or pl.*
terrify, perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
territory, territories, ager, agrī, *m.*; fīnēs, -ium, *m.*
than, quam, *or abl. after a comparative.*
that (*dem. pron.*), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id.
that, so that, in order that, ut; *after verbs of fearing,* nē; *after negative expressions of doubt,* quīn.
that . . . not, *introducing a negative clause of purpose,* nē.
would that, utinam.
their, suus, -a, -um (*reflex.*); eōrum.
them, *cf.* **he.**
then, at that time, tum.
then, therefore, igitur (*usually postpositive*).
there, in that place, ibi.
therefore, itaque.
these, *cf.* **this.**
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*
think, putō, 1; exīstimō, 1; arbitror, 1.
think, feel, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus.
this, hīc, haec, hoc.
though, cum.
thousand, mīlle (*indecl. adj.*).
thousands, mīlia, -ium, *n., pl.* (*followed by partitive gen.*).
threaten, impendeō, -ēre.
three, trēs, tria.
a period of three days, trīduum, -ī, *n.*
three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.
through, per, *prep. with acc.*
throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus; conīciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.
throw back, rēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.
throw down, away, abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.
tide, aestus, -ūs, *m.*.
tilling the land, agrī cultūra, -ae, *f.*
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*
on time, ad tempus.
time and again, semel atque iterum.
timid, timidus, -a, -um.
to, ad, *prep. with acc.; often translated by dat.*
to-day, hodiē.
together with, unā cum, *with abl.*
toward (*in space*), ad *with acc.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
trader, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*
transport, *adj.*, onerārius, -a, -um.
travel, eō, īre, iī *or* ivī, itum est.
treachery, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f., pl.*
trial, iūdicium, -iī, *n.*
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
tribune of the people, tribūnus plēbis.
tributary, vectīgālis, -e.
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f., pl.*
true, vērus, -a, -um.
truth, vērum, -ī, *n.*
try, cōnor, 1.
turn and flee, tergum vertō, -ere, vertī, versum.
twelve, duodecim; XII.
two, duo, -ae, -o.

unacquainted, imperītus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
unbelievable, incrēdibilis, -e.
uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.
uncovered, nūdus, -a, -um.
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus.
undertake, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
ungrateful, ingrātus, -a, -um.
unharmed, incolumis, -e.
unjust, inīquus, -a, -um.
unjustly, iniūriā.
unless, nisi.
unprepared, imparātus, -a, -um.

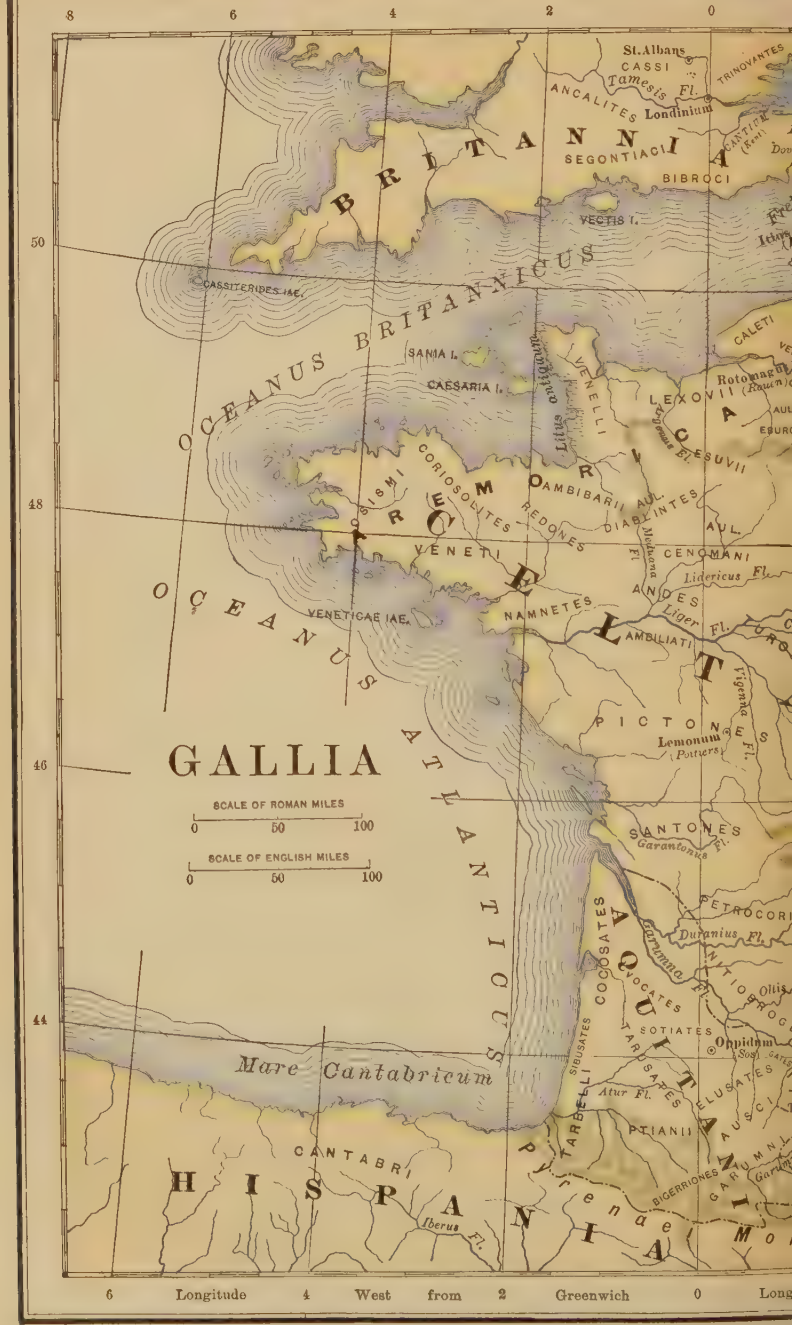
unskilful, imperītus, -a, -um.
until, ad, *prep. with acc.*
until, dum; quoad, *conj.; when equivalent to* before, prius quam.
urge, hortor, 1; cohortor, 1.
use (*noun*), ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
  of use, ūsuī (*dative*).
use, **make use of**, ūtor, -ī, ūsus.

vacant, **lie vacant**, vacō, 1.
valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
vengeance, **take vengeance on**, ulcīscor, -ī, ultus.
verdict, iūdicium, -iī, *n.*
very (*adj.*), ipse, -a, -um.
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
village, vīcus, -ī, *m.*
violence, vīs, *f.*
virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

wait, **delay**, moror, 1.
  wait for, exspectō, 1.
wander about, vagor, 1.
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
warn, admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
way, **manner**, modus, -ī, *m.*
  way, **road**, via, -ae, *f.*
we, nōs, *gen.*, nostrum *or* nostrī.
weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
weather, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*
weigh (*of anchor*), tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus.
welfare, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
  public welfare, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae.
what (*inter. pron.*), quid; (*inter. adj.*), quī, quae, quod.
what (*rel. pron.*), (id) quod, (ea) quae.
what great, **how great**, quantus, -a, -um.
whatever, quidquid.
what sort of, quālis, -e.
when, cum; ubi.
where (*place in which*), ubi; (*place to which*), quō.
wherever, **whithersoever**, quōcumque.
whether, num, -ne, sī, utrum.
which, *see* **who.**
which (*of two*), uter, utra, utrum.
while, dum.
who, **what** (*inter. pron.*), quis, quid.
who, **which**, **what** (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod.
whoever, **whatever**, quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque.
whole, tōtus, -a, -um.
wholly, omnīnō.
why, cūr.
wicked, improbus, -a, -um.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
width, lātitūdō, -inis, *f.*
wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*
willing, **be willing**, volō, velle, voluī.
winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*
  pass the winter, hiemō, 1.
  winter quarters, hīberna, -ōrum, *n., pl.*
wisdom, cōnsilium, -iī, *n.*
wish, volō, velle, voluī.
  not wish, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
with, cum, *prep. with abl.*
with, **near**, apud, *prep. with acc.*
withdraw, **go away**, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus.
without, sine, *prep. with abl.*
withstand, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
woman, mulier, -eris, *f.*
word, verbum, -ī, *n.*
work (*noun*), opus, operis, *n.*
work (*verb*), labōrō, 1.
worth, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
would that, utinam.
wound, volnus, -eris, *n.*
wrong, **do wrong**, peccō, 1.

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
  every year, quotannīs.
yet, tamen.
yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus.
you, tū, tuī.
young man, adulēscēns, adulēscentis, *m.*
your (*sing.*), tuus, -a, -um; (*plu.*) vester, -tra, -trum.

zeal, studium, -iī, *n.*



GALLIA
SCALE OF ROMAN MILES
0 50 100
SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES
0 50 100
BRITANNIA
OCEANUS BRITANNICUS
OCEANUS ATLANTICUS
Mare Cantabricum
HISPANIA
Pyrenaei Mo
CELTICA
AQUITANIA
REMORICA
St. Albans
CASSI
Tamesis Fl.
TRINOVANTES
ANCALITES
Londinium
SEGONTIACI
BIBROCI
VECTIS I.
CASSITERIDES IAE.
SANIA I.
CAESARIA I.
Litus antiquum
VENELLI
CALETI
Rotomagus
LEXOVII
ESUVII
AMBIBARII
DIABLINTES
AUL.
CORIOSOLITES
REDONES
OSISMI
VENETI
CENOMANI
Lidericus Fl.
ANDES
Liger Fl.
NAMNETES
VENETICAE IAE.
AMBILIATI
PICTONES
Lemonum
(Poitiers)
Vigenna Fl.
SANTONES
Garantonus Fl.
PETROCORI
Duranius Fl.
Garumna Fl.
COCOSATES
VOCATES
SOTIATES
Oppidum
SIBUSATES
TARUSATES
ELUSATES
Atur Fl.
TARBELLI
PTIANII
AUSCI
CANTABRI
BIGERRIONES
Iberus Fl.
8 6 4 2 0
50 48 46 44
6 Longitude 4 West from 2 Greenwich 0 Long

2
4
6
8
10
50
48
46
44
Insula Batavorum
USIPETES
TENCTERI
Lupia Fl.
Rura Fl.
Mosa
Vacalus
Yssel Fl.
MENAPII
SUGAMBRI
CHERUSCI
Silva
GERMANIA
Silva Herc
Silva Bacenis
Luppia Fl.
Nuemia Fl.
Lauona Fl.
Andernach
Coblenz
Moenus Fl.
MARCOMANI
EBURONES
ATREBATES
NERVII
Scaldis Fl.
Lys
Sabis Fl.
Oppidum Ubiorum
Atuatuca
Liège
CONDRUSI
SEGNI
Ardenna Silva
TREVERI
VIROMANDUI
Noviodunum
Bibrax
Berry-au Bac
Mosa Fl. (Meuse R.)
Treves
Moselle Fl.
VANGIONES
SUEBI
Silva Nemet
Nicer Fl.
Durocortorum (Reims)
Arona
REMI
MEDIOMATRICI
Mons. Nemetes
TRIBOCI
Danubius Fl.
Matrona Fl.
Lutecia (Paris)
Agedincum (Sens)
Sequana
LINGONES
Nasegus Mons
Mons Abnoba
LATOBRIGI
HARUDES
TULINGI
Lac. Venetus
Vellaunodunum
Alesia (Alise St Reine)
Vesontio (Besançon)
Dubis
Mons Jura
Ognus Fl.
Noviodunum
Noviodunum (Nevers)
Bibracte (Mt. Beuvray)
Decetia (Decize)
Gorgobina
AEDUI
BOII
Elaver Fl.
Arar Fl.
Cabillonum (Chalons sur Saône)
Dubis Fl.
Mons Vogesus
Lacus Lemannus
Rhodanus Fl.
Rhenus Fl.
RHÆTIA
LEPONTII
Verbanus Lacus
Toulon
Matisco (Mâcon)
AMBARRI
Genava
VERAGRI
SEDUNI
Octodurus (Martigny)
Lugdunum
Gergovia
ARVERNI
Vienna
ALLOBROGES
CEUTRONES
GRAIOCELI
Mediolanum (Milan)
Laus Pompeia
Vercellae
Ticinum (Pavia)
Cremona
Mantua
Padus Fl.
CISALPINA
Augusta Taurinorum (Turin)
Ocelum (Usseau)
Mt. Genèvre
Cottian Alps
Tanarus Fl.
Brigantio (Briançon)
VOCONTII
HELVII
Genua
LIGURIA
Pisæ
Portus Herculis Monoeci
Arelate (Arles)
Aquae Sextiae (Aix)
Massilia (Marseilles)
SALLYES
MASSILIENSES
Narbo (Narbonne)
MARE INTERNUM
CORSICA
ECTOSAGES
Tarnis Fl.
Cebenna Mons
VOLCAE
ARECOMICI
VOLCAE TECTOSAGES
Rhodanus Fl.
Druentia Fl.
Isara
Ondara
VELLAVII
GABALI
MODUBII
SEQUANI
Arar
Liger Fl.
Allier
BRANNOVICES
AMBIVARETI
AMBIVARITI
CATURIGES
Tigurinus pagus
Verbigenus pagus
Helvetii
Rauraci
Sequani
Aedui
Ligeris Fl.
Sequana
Matrona Fl.
Jenne
Melun
Melodunum
Parisii
Meldi
Suessiones
Leuci
Nemetes
Triboci
Latobrigi
Suebi
Harudes
Tulingi
Rhætia
Lepontii
Helvetii
Sequani
Allobroges
Graioceli
Ceutrones
Caturiges
Vocontii
Helvii
Gabali
Volcae Tectosages
Volcae Arecomici
Salyes
Massilienses
Liguria
Cisalpina
Gallia Transalpina
Gallia Cisalpina
Provincia Romana
Germania
Gallia
Belgica
Aquitania
Narbonensis
Mare Internum
Corsica
East from Greenwich

DATE DUE

OCT 14 1999			
NOV 04 1999			
2/14/06			

#47-0108 Peel Off Pressure Sensitive

A[illegible]

3 5134 00144 5234

PA 6235 .K3 1918
Caesar, Julius.
Caesar's Commentaries

878
C12K
c.1

GENERAL LOAN COLLECTION

Oregon State Library
Salem

RULES GOVERNING MAIL ORDER LOANS

Books loaned through local public libraries or through traveling libraries are subject to the rules governing them.

No charge for books.—The books circulated by the State Library are free to all citizens of Oregon who will agree to observe the rules of the library and pay transportation charges both ways on books loaned. Shipment is made by mail or express and all prepaid charges must be remitted upon receipt or return of package.

Borrowers.—Adults not previously registered as borrowers should if possible apply through librarian of local public or traveling library, school officers or principal, county school superintendent, member of the Legislature, officers of the local grange or other permanent organization, or give reference to some state officer located in Salem. Reference is not essential to service. Minors must obtain signature of local librarian or school principal.

Number of Volumes.—Any reasonable request for books will be granted if applicant wishes them for study or research work, and books are not needed elsewhere.

Time Kept.—Books must be received at the State Library within 28 days from date of loan. They may be renewed for two weeks upon request as long as needed for study, unless reserved for other borrowers. Date upon which books will be due in the library is given on notice of shipment. Some books will be issued for shorter period and may not be renewed.

Groups of books for home clubs and libraries are loaned for longer periods of from three to six months.

Fines.—A fine of two cents a day must be paid for books kept, without renewal, beyond period for which loan is made. No book will be loaned to anyone who has failed to meet the obligations of borrowers as given in these rules. Notice will be sent when books are five days overdue without having been renewed.

Lost and Injured Books.—Borrowers are held responsible for books and are required to pay for lost and injured volumes. Number of pieces loaned is given on notification postal and borrowers are held responsible for this number unless notice of shortage or error is sent immediately upon receipt of package.

Books must be kept clean, must not be marked and corners of leaves must not be turned down.

S0-EKA-560